

DR-5020/5080C

SERVICE MANUAL

REVISION 0

Canon

JUNE 1999

MY8-1391-000

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON ELECTRONICS INC.

Printed in Japan
Imprimé au Japon

Use of this manual should be strictly supervised to avoid disclosure of confidential information.

PREFACE

This Service Manual describes necessary basic information for after-sales service and maintenance for maintaining the product quality and functions of the DR-5020/5080C.

Contents

Chapter 1: General Description

Features, specifications, names of parts, description of operation

Chapter 2: Basic Description

Outline of principle of image processing

Chapter 3: Functions & Operation

Description of principle of operation of electrical and mechanical systems

Chapter 4: Disassembly & Reassembly

Description of disassembly, reassembly, and adjustment

Chapter 5: Installation

Location and installation procedure

Chapter 6: Maintenance & Servicing

Parts to be replaced periodically, consumable parts

Chapter 7: Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting and service modes

Appendix: General circuit diagrams, etc.

Information in this manual is subject to change. Notification of such changes will be given in Service Information Bulletins.

Thoroughly read the information contained in this Service Manual and the Service Information Bulletins to gain a correct and deeper understanding of the machine. This is one way of fostering response for ensuring the prolonged quality and function, and for investigating the cause of trouble during troubleshooting.

Quality Assurance Center
Canon Electronics Inc.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

I. FEATURES	1-1	V. EXPLANATION OF OPERATION.....	1-7
II. SPECIFICATIONS	1-2	VI. REGULAR INSPECTION	
III. PRECAUTIONS	1-5	BY USERS	1-10
IV. NAMES OF PARTS	1-6		

CHAPTER 2 BASIC DESCRIPTION

I. OUTLINE	2-1	III. IMAGE PROCESSING	2-6
II. IMAGE READING ASSEMBLY	2-3		

CHAPTER 3 FUNCTIONS & OPERATION

I. OUTLINE	3-1	VII. POWER SUPPLY	3-46
II. EXPOSURE SYSTEM	3-11	VIII. LAYOUT OF ELECTRICAL	
III. DOCUMENT FEED SYSTEM	3-12	COMPONENTS	3-49
IV. DESCRIPTION OF ELECTRICAL		IX. LIST OF VARIABLE RESISTORS,	
CIRCUITS	3-19	SWITCHES & LEDS FOR EACH	
V. OPTIONS	3-37	CIRCUIT BOARD	3-52
VI. INTERFACE	3-43		

CHAPTER 4 DISASSEMBLY & REASSEMBLY

I. EXTERNAL	4-1	IV. EXPOSURE	4-27
II. DRIVE (MOTORS).....	4-11	V. ELECTRICAL (PCBS, ETC.).....	4-30
III. FEED (ROLLERS)	4-16		

CHAPTER 5 INSTALLATION

I. SELECTION OF LOCATION.....	5-1	IV. RED LED MOUNTING	
II. UNPACKING & INSTALLATION.....	5-2	PROCEDURE	5-8
III. IMPRINTER MOUNTING		V. MEMORY 128MB MOUNTING	
PROCEDURE	5-4	PROCEDURE	5-10

CHAPTER 6 MAINTENANCE & SERVICING

- | | | | |
|--|-----|-----------------------------------|-----|
| I. BASIC PERIODIC SERVICING
PROCEDURE | 6-1 | III. CONSUMABLE PARTS | 6-3 |
| II. PARTS TO BE REPLACED
PERIODICALLY | 6-2 | IV. PERIODIC SERVICING LIST | 6-4 |

CHAPTER 7 TROUBLESHOOTING

- | | | | |
|--|-----|---------------------------------|------|
| I. ERROR INDICATION AND
DISPOSITION | 7-1 | IV. FEED TROUBLESHOOTING | 7-15 |
| II. IMAGE TROUBLESHOOTING | 7-4 | V. SERVICE MODES | 7-16 |
| III. OPERATION TROUBLESHOOTING .. | 7-7 | VI. AFTER REPLACING PARTS | 7-35 |

APPENDIX

- | | | | |
|---------------------------------|-----|---------------------------------|-----|
| I. GENERAL CIRCUIT DIAGRAM..... | A-1 | II. LIST OF SPECIAL TOOLS | A-3 |
|---------------------------------|-----|---------------------------------|-----|

CHAPTER 1

GENERAL DESCRIPTION

I. FEATURES	1-1	V. EXPLANATION OF OPERATION.....	1-7
II. SPECIFICATIONS	1-2	VI. REGULAR INSPECTION	
III. PRECAUTIONS	1-5	BY USERS	1-10
IV. NAMES OF PARTS	1-6		

I. FEATURES

1. Capable of scanning A3/Ledger size document

Standard sizes up to A3/Ledger size can be scanned.

2. High speed scanning

Approx. 50 sheets can be scanned per minute.

(When 200 dpi × 200 dpi binary is output using A4 size CCITT No. 1 documents)

3. High durability

Expected life is 6 million sheets feeding A4/LTR size documents.

(Replacements of consumables and periodically replaced parts are required)

4. Gray scale output and color output (DR-5080C only)

Up to 8 bits of gray scale and 8 bits of color output of each color, RGB, are available.

5. Additional functions by options

Imprinter, barcode decoder and others can be attached.

Expected life of product

Whichever of the following two conditions comes

- 1) 5 years
- 2) 6,000,000 sheets fed (A4/LTR size)

Windows is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and other countries. Other company names and product names mentioned in this manual are registered trademarks or trademarks of respective companies.

II. SPECIFICATIONS

Category	Item	Specifications	
		DR-5080C	DR-5020
Appearance/Installation	1. Configuration	Desktop type	
	2. Power supply	100 VAC 50/60 Hz 120 VAC 60 Hz 230 VAC 50 Hz	
	3. Weight	196N (20kgf)	
	4. Temperature range	15 to 27.5°C (59 to 81.5°F)	
	5. Humidity range	25 to 75% RH	
	6. Max. power consumption or input current	100 V model : 120 W 120 V model : 1.0 A 230 V model : 0.5 A	
	7. Noise	Operation : 72 dB or less, except buzzer noise and when very high speed feed Standby : 40 dB or less	
	8. Dimensions	Tray opened : 427 (W) × 663 (D) × 291 (H) mm Tray closed : 427 (W) × 485 (D) × 262 (H) mm	
	9. Output interface	SCSI-2 (Available for Fast SCSI)	
Document scan	1. Photosensitive element	Contact Sensor (CMOS CIS)	
	2. Picture element	Density of element 300 dpi, 3488 effective elements (295.3 mm)	
	3. Light source	RGB 3 colors 1 line LED	Yellow-green 1 line LED
	4. Scanning method	Movement of documents	
	5. Scanning mode	Front side/Back side/Both sides	
	6. Image output mode	1) Binary 2) Gray scale (2/4/8 bit) 3) Color (3/6/12/24 bit)	1) Binary
	7. Output resolution (Horizontal × Vertical)	1) 400 dpi × 400 dpi 2) 300 dpi × 300 dpi 3) 200 dpi × 200 dpi 4) 300 dpi × 150 dpi 5) 200 dpi × 100 dpi 6) Optional setting: Every 10 dpi between 300 dpi and 200 dpi Horizontal and vertical resolution are same.	

Table 1-1 (cont.)

Category	Item	Specifications			
		DR-5080C		DR-5020	
Document feed	1. Pickup method	Automatic / Manual			
	2. Document size	1) Typical size A3/A4/A5/A6, B4/B5/B6, LDR/LGL/LTR 2) Atypical size Width: 55 to 297 mm, Length: 70 to 432 mm 3) Thickness Automatic: 0.06 to 0.15 mm, Manual: 0.05 to 0.20 mm			
	3. Document requirements	1) Carbon-backed paper: Cannot be used 2) Pressure sensitive paper: Can be used (face-up only) 3) Perforations for binding: Can not be used 4) Curled paper: 5 mm or less			
	4. Max. pickup storage	1) A4/LTR or under: Document height 45 mm (or 500 sheets) 2) Over A4/LTR: Document height 20 mm (or 200 sheets)			
	5. Pickup start mode	1) Semi-Auto: Automatic pickup when start button is pushed 2) Auto: Automatic pickup when document is set 3) Manual: Manual pickup when document is set 4) Remote: Pickup by operation of personal computer			
	6. Feed speed	1) Very high speed: 587 mm/sec. (200 dpi × 100 dpi) 2) High speed: 391 mm/sec. (300 dpi × 150 dpi) 3) Medium speed: 293 mm/sec. (200 dpi × 200 dpi) 4) Low speed: 195 mm/sec. (300 dpi × 300 dpi) 5) Very low speed: 146 mm/sec. (400 dpi × 400 dpi) * When binary or gray scale mode is selected			
	7. Delivery direction	Face down			
	8. Max. delivery storage	1) A4/LTR or under: Document height 45 mm (or 500 sheets) 2) Over A4/LTR: Document height 20 mm (or 200 sheets)			
	9. Number of scanned documents	Document size: A4		Unit: Sheets/min.	
	Mode		200 × 100	200 × 200	400 × 400
	Binary	Simplex	84.0	49.5	19.0
		Duplex	84.0	49.5	19.0
	Gray scale (8 bit)	Simplex	61.0	30.5	10.0
		Duplex	44.5	22.5	6.5
	Color (24 bit)	Simplex	20.5	10.0	3.0
		Duplex	15.0	7.5	2.0
	* These number may differ depending on the computer used or other conditions. DR-5020 is binary only.				

Table 1-1 (cont.)

Category	Item	Specifications	
		DR-5080C	DR-5020
Image processing	1. Density adjustment	256 gradations (13 gradations for operation panel)	
	2. Automatic density (AE)	Possible only for binary (Binary AE)	
	3. Edge emphasis	5 steps	
	4. Contrast adjustment	13 steps	
	5. Black compensation	Possible (Black clump and Dark compensation)	
	6. Shading compensation	Possible	
	7. Gamma compensation	Possible	
	8. Image resolution conversion	Possible (Horizontal and Vertical)	
	9. Binarizing	Simple binary/Error diffusion	
	10. Neg./Pos. reversion	Possible	
	11. Others	Thin line complement/Dot erasing/Notch compensation	
Others	1. Other functions	1) Double feed detection by paper thickness 2) Double feed detection by paper length 3) Add-on 4) Function sheet 5) Dropout color (only LED colors)	
	2. Software packed	1) ISIS/TWAIN device driver 2) Canon device drive/Sample software (Scanning Utility 5000)	
	3. Options	1) Extension memory 2) Imprinter 3) Bar code decoder 4) Endorser	1) Red LED unit

Table 1-1

These specifications are subject to change without notice for improvement of the machine.

III. PRECAUTIONS

This section describes items that require particular care, for example, regarding human safety. These precautions must be observed. Explain to the user items that relate to user safety, and instruct the user to take appropriate actions.

1. Electromagnetic Wave Interference Countermeasures

This machine complies with the electromagnetic wave interference standards (VCCI-A, FCC-A, etc.). However, the user might have to carry out separate countermeasures if the machine causes electromagnetic wave interference.

Do not change nor modify this machine's specifications. If this has been carried out, its use may be forcibly discontinued on site. If this machine's specifications have been changed, or the machine has been disassembled and reassembled, follow the instructions described in this manual or in Service Information Bulletins.

The "CAUTION LABEL" is affixed on the rear of the machine.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This Class A digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Regulations.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe A respecte toutes les exigences du Règlement sur le matériel brouilleur du Canada.

2. Power OFF in emergency

When such anomalies as abnormal noise, smoke, heat and odor occur, turn the power off immediately and unplug the power cord.

As it may cause injury, be careful not to get clothing (ties, long hairs, etc.) caught in the machine. If happened, turn the power off immediately.

Also, do not insert fingers in the feed assembly or under the document board while feeding documents.

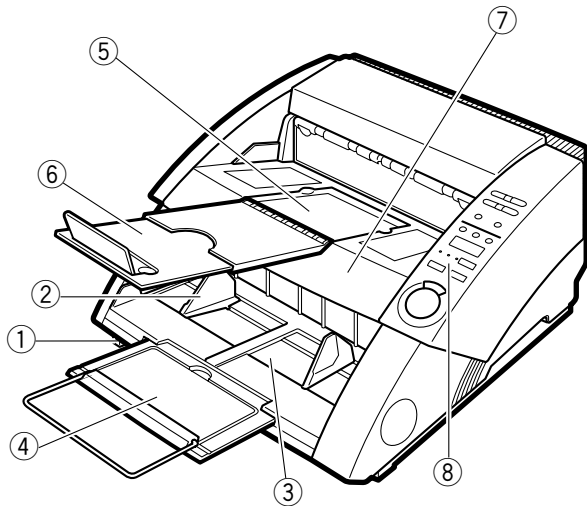
3. Instruction Manual

Read the instruction manual thoroughly before using this machine.

CAUTION LABEL (120V machines)

IV. NAMES OF PARTS

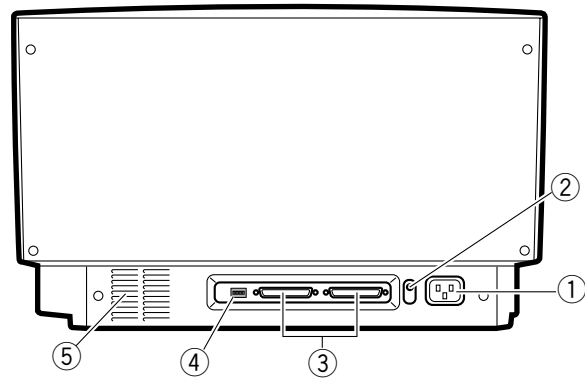
1. Front view



- ① Power switch
- ② Document guide
- ③ Document tray
- ④ Document tray extension
- ⑤ Document eject (delivery) tray
- ⑥ Document eject (delivery) tray extension
- ⑦ Upper unit
- ⑧ Operation panel

Fig. 1-1

2. Rear view



- ① Power cord connector
- ② Grounding terminal
- ③ SCSI connector
- ④ DIP switch
- ⑤ Air vent

Fig. 1-2

V. EXPLANATION OF OPERATION

1. Basic operation

The basic operational procedure for recording is as follows.

For details, refer to the instruction manual.

- 1) Turn the power of the machine on. "0000" will appear on the counter display of the operation panel.
- 2) Turn a personal computer on.
- 3) Start up the application software.
- 4) Set the feeding and recording conditions.
- 5) Place documents.
- 6) Start feeding.
- 7) After the recording is completed, quit the application software.
- 8) Turn the personal computer off.
- 9) Turn the power of the machine off.

Note 1: As to the system requirements for the personal computer and others, refer to the instruction manual.

Note 2: As to the driver software and the application software, refer to the instruction manuals of each software.

Note 3: For use of trays, refer to the instruction manual.

2. Operation Screen

The operation screen of the "Scanning Utility 5000" packed with this machine is as shown below.

As to the operation screens of other driver software and application software, refer to the instruction manuals of each software.

- 1) "Start up" screen
It appears by starting up the application software.
Start with this screen to carry out the various operations.

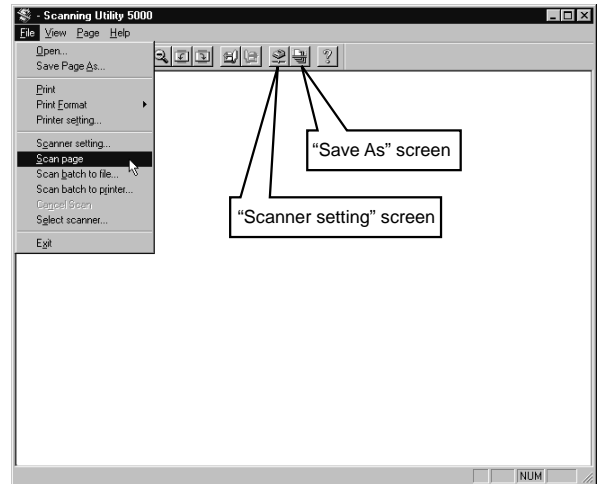



Fig. 1-3

- 2) "Scanner setting" screen
It appears by selecting "File" - "Scanner setting" is selected on the "Start up" screen, or clicking  in the tool bar.
Set the basic conditions on this screen.

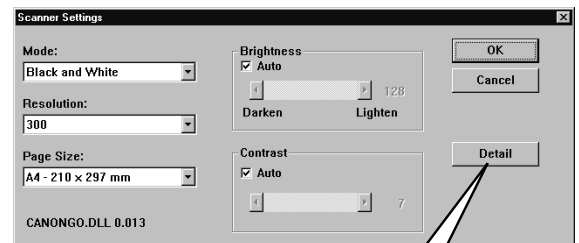


Fig. 1-4

- 3) "Detail setting" screen
 It appears by clicking "Details" on the "Scanner setting" screen.
 Set the details on this screen.

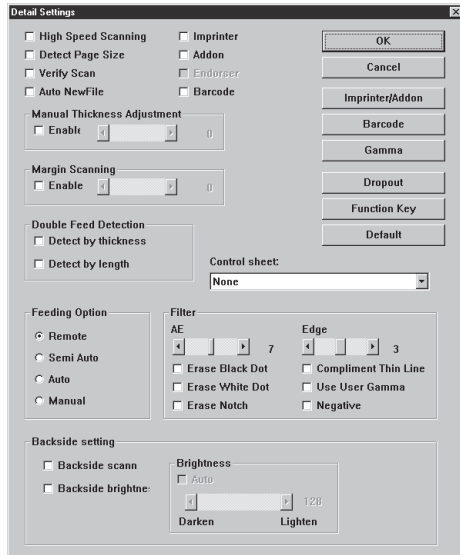


Fig. 1-5

- 5) "Start Scanning" screen
 It appears by clicking "Save" on the "Save As" screen.
 Operate the simplex/duplex switching, the partition setting, and the scanning (feeding) start/stop.

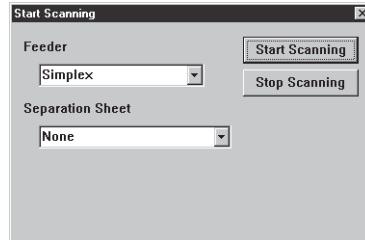



Fig. 1-7

Note: It also appears when "File" - "Scan batch to print" is selected on the "Start up" screen, when the placed documents are run out, or when the scanning is suspended.

- 4) "Save As" screen
 It appears by selecting "File" - "Scan batch to file" on the "Start up" screen, or clicking  in the tool bar.
 Determine the files to be saved on this screen.

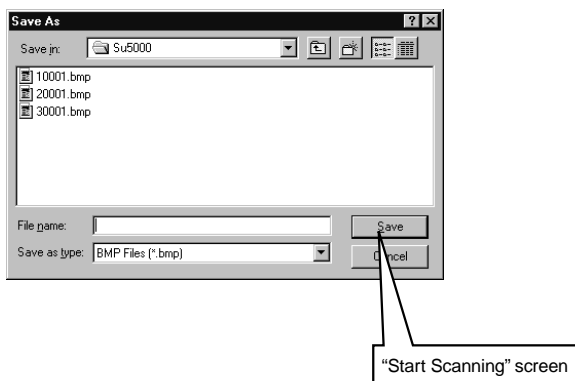


Fig. 1-6

3. Operation Panel

The layout of the operation panel of this machine is as shown below.

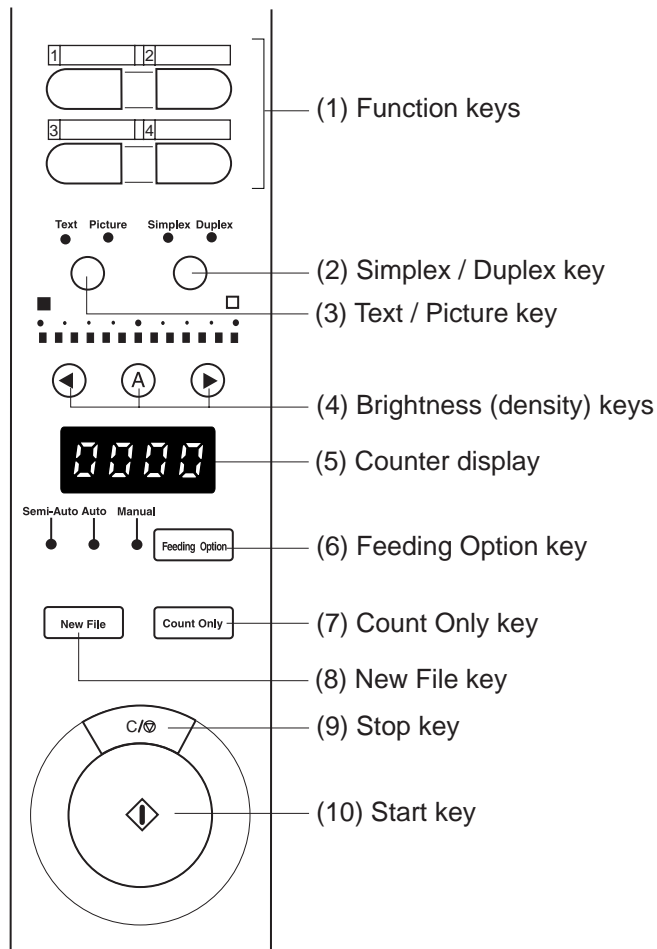


Fig. 1-8

VI. REGULAR INSPECTION BY USERS

Fully explain to the user that the following locations must be cleaned about once every week, and that the power must be turned OFF and the power plug must be disconnected before the user starts cleaning.

1. Exterior

- Covers
Wipe with a cloth moistened with water or neutral detergent, and then wipe dry.

2. Optical Path

- Guide glass (Upper, Lower)
Wipe with a cloth moistened with water, and then wipe dry.

3. Document Feed

Wipe the following rollers with a cloth moistened with water, and then wipe dry:

- Pick-up roller
- Feed roller
- Separation roller
- Registration roller (Upper, Lower)
- Upper reading rollers (two pcs.)

Note: Clean each of the rollers rotating them in the feed direction.

Moreover, as the power cord is plugged to the outlet for a long period of time, dust lay on the connected part and may cause leakage, fire and electric shock. To prevent this, instruct users to clean it regularly.

For the option (imprinter, etc.), refer to the instruction manual about regular inspection by users.

CHAPTER 2

BASIC DESCRIPTION

This chapter describes the basic knowledge required for this machine. For a more detailed description of operations and functions, see Chapter 3, Functions and Operation.

I. OUTLINE	2-1	III. IMAGE PROCESSING	2-6
II. IMAGE READING ASSEMBLY	2-3		

I. OUTLINE

Fig. 2-1 shows a block diagram of the image processing.

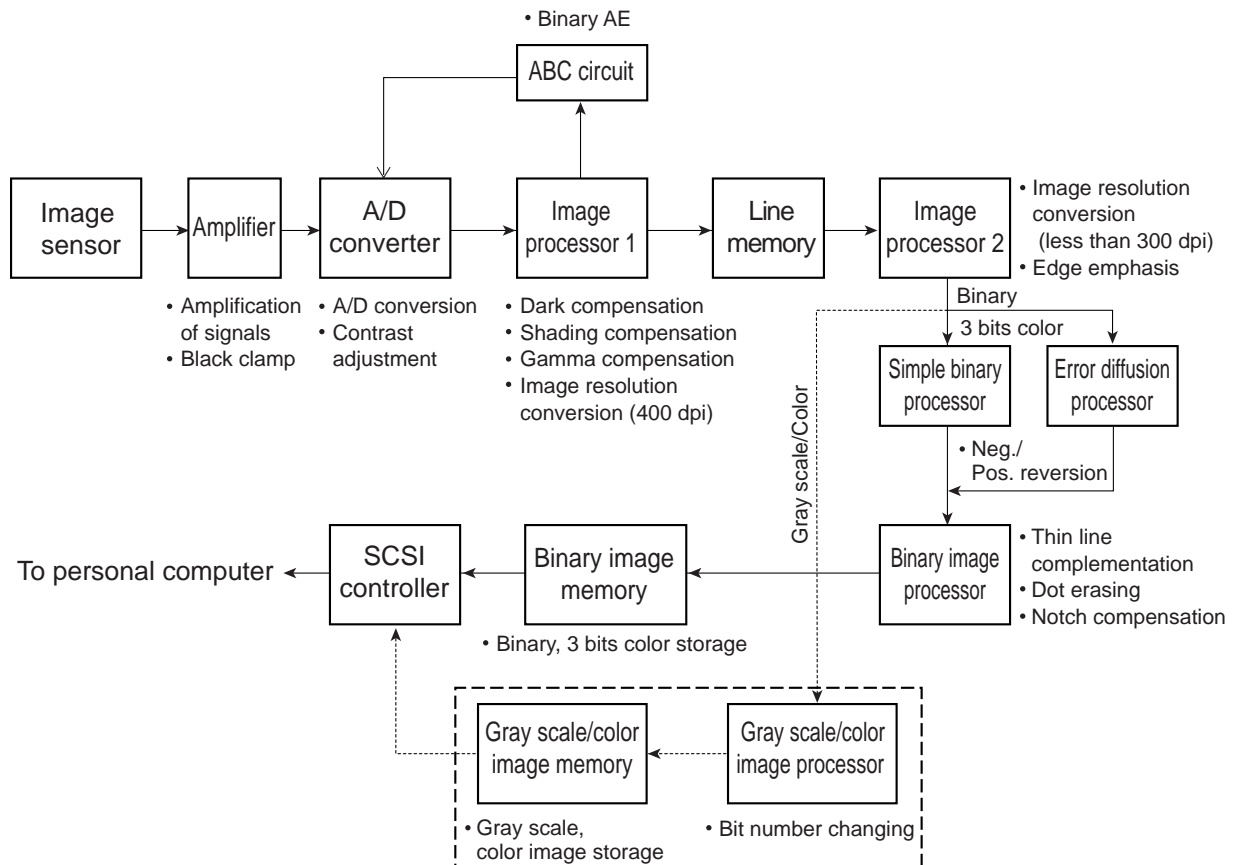


Fig. 2-1

Electric signals (analog) proportional to the density of each picture element, read by the image sensor, are sent one after another to the amplifier. After the signals are amplified and black clumped by the amplifier, they are sent to the A/D converter. At the A/D converter, the signals are contrast adjusted and at the same time converted to the digital signals proportional to the density.

Next, they are sent to the image processor 1 where the following image processing is carried out.

- Dark compensation
- Shading compensation
- Gamma compensation
- Image resolution change (from 300 dpi to 400 dpi)

At this time, if binary AE is selected, the signals are sent to the ABC circuit and judged for density.

The digital signals, after being processed by image processor 1, are sent, via the line memory, to image processor 2 where the following is carried out.

- Image resolution change (less than 300 dpi)
- Edge emphasis

In case of binary mode, the data processed by image processor 2 are binarized by the simple binary processor or the error diffusion processor. At this time, if neg./pos. reversion is selected, the reversing process is carried out and then the signals are sent to the binary image processor. The following processes are carried out at the binary image processor.

- Thin line complement
- Dot erasing
- Notch compensation

The image data thus processed, after being stored in the binary image memory, are sent, via the SCSI controller, to the personal computer.

In case of gray scale or color mode, the data processed by image processor 2 are sent to the gray scale/color image processor. At the gray scale/color image processor, the bit number of the gray scale data is changed and, after being stored in the gray scale/color memory, the data is sent, via the SCSI controller, to the personal computer.

However, in the case of 3 bits color processing is carried out by the same flow as the binary mode.

II. IMAGE READING ASSEMBLY

1. Outline

Fig. 2-2 shows a composite diagram of the image reading assembly.

First, the front and back of a document are illuminated by two, upper and lower, LED arrays. The reflected light is detected by photosensitive elements and converted into electrical signals.

The image of the document is broken down into picture elements by the photosensitive elements, and the electrical signals, which correspond to the density of each picture element, are subjected to various processes by the image processor of the main CPU PCB assembly.

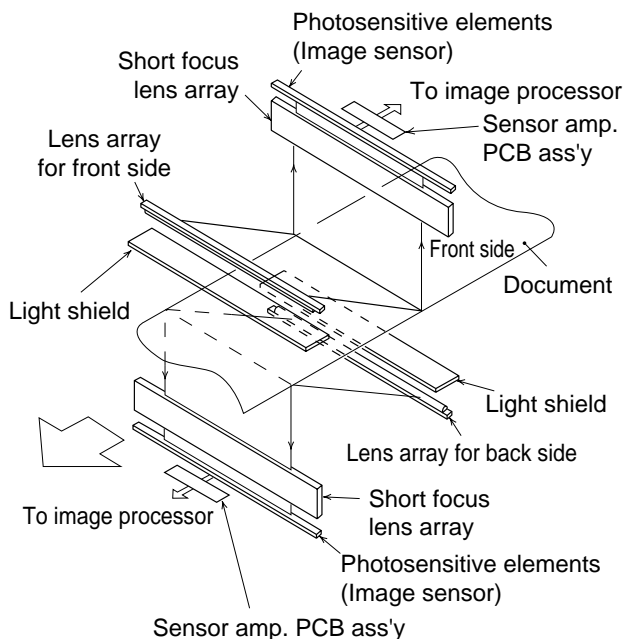


Fig. 2-2

2. Image Sensor

In this machine, CMOS CIS (Contact Image Sensor) is used as a photosensitive element device.

Although this sensor has a CMOS structure, its function is the same as BASIS used in the previous machines.

On a single PCB assembly, there are 3,510 photosensitive elements lined up every 84.7 μm in a row and 15 chips which respectively contain a circuit to provide the scanning function. In this manual, this entire PCB assembly is called the image sensor.

Fig. 2-3 is the equivalent circuit of one photosensitive element (single picture element).

The function of one photosensitive element is explained as follows.

First, by turning on the T_{RES} terminal signal, the potential of the buffer 1 (BUF1) gate is made the same as the bias potential, and by turning off the T_{RES} terminal signal. The voltage converted light by the photo-diode (PD) is accumulated in buffer 1.

Next, by turning on the T_M terminal signal, the accumulated voltage is stored in the condenser memory (CM), read out by buffer 2 (BUF2), and voltage E_{OUT} corresponding to the density is obtained.

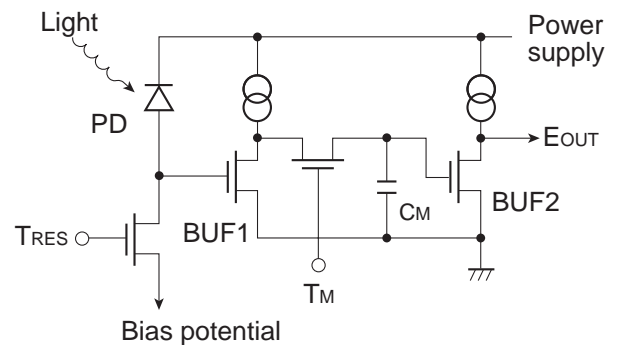


Fig. 2-3

3. LED Array

Yellow-green LEDs are used in the LED array of DR-5020.

DR-5080 uses 3 color LEDs, Red/Green/Blue (RGB), in its LED array so it is able to read color documents. The 3 color LEDs are arranged as shown in Fig. 2-4.

In the case of color mode, its composition is read by illuminating the RGB LEDs in succession and detecting the respective reflected RGB light with the image sensor. The reading position slides a very little, because the document is fed with a constant speed.

In case of binary and gray scale mode, the white light generated by illuminating the RGB LEDs simultaneously is read.



Fig. 2-4

4. Short Focus Lens Array

The short focus lens has a fiber type configuration as shown in Fig. 2-5. The characteristic of this lens is that only a short focal distance is required.

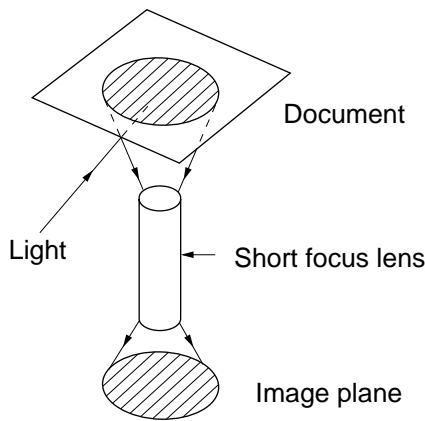


Fig. 2-5

Light rays entering the lens are repeatedly reflected inside the lens as shown in Fig. 2-6. The interval between these light ray reflections is proportionate to the wave length of the incident light.

For instance, when the lens is shorter than the ratio of the light wave length as in (A) of Fig. 2-6, the emerging light rays are focused. When it is longer as in (B), the emerging light rays are diffused. When the lens matches the ratio of the wave lengths as in (C), the emerging light rays are parallel rays and the image of the document is focused in its original size on the image plane.

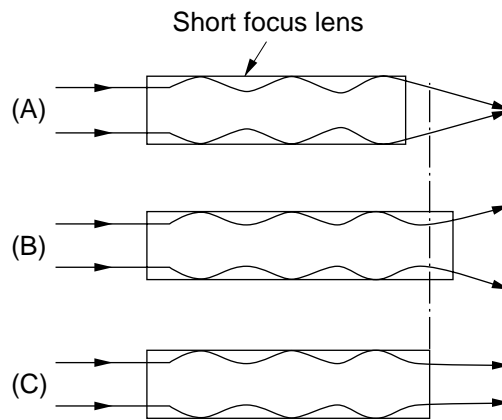


Fig. 2-6

In this machine, short focus lenses that do not produce RGB color aberrations are used. Also, in order to increase the amount of light entering into the lenses, the short focus lenses are arranged in two rows (Refer to Fig. 2-7).

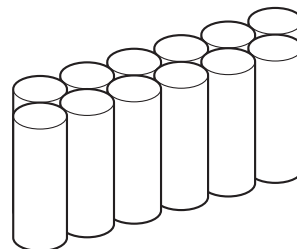


Fig. 2-7

5. Sensor Amplifier PCB Assembly

A sensor amplifier PCB assembly is equipped, it lowers impedance so as to lessen the effect of noise for the output from the image sensor.

When the image sensor reads an image, a voltage proportionate to the density of the image and a standard voltage are output from the image sensor. The sensor amp. circuit amplifies and outputs the difference between the voltage proportionate to the image density and the standard voltage. (Refer to Fig. 2-8.)

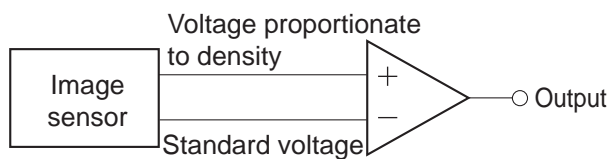


Fig. 2-8

6. Image Data

This machine scans an image and outputs it as image data to a personal computer.

DR-5020 outputs binary image data and DR-5080C selects and outputs binary image data, gray scale image data and color image data.

The following describes the differences between the respective image data.

a. Binary image data

Image data that expresses an image in two values, black and white, is called binary image data.

As binary image data has just two tones, black and white, per picture element, it cannot output gray and other half tones. (Refer to Fig. 2-9.)

There are two processing, simple binary processing which divides tones into two at the specified level and error diffusion processing which compensates the reproducibility of the tones.

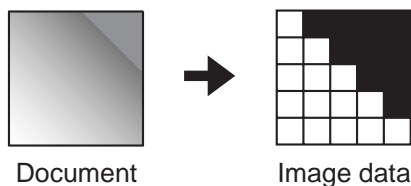


Fig. 2-9

b. Gray scale image data (DR-5080C only)

DR-5080C can produce gray scale image data.

Image data which can express not only black and white but gray and other half tones is called gray scale image data.

The number of tones become greater the more the number of bits per picture element. (Refer to Fig. 2-10.)

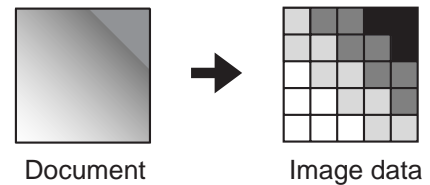


Fig. 2-10

c. Color image data (DR-5080C only)

DR-5080C can produce color image data.

It expresses color by the mixed ratios of the three basic colors of light, red (R), green (G), and blue (B). (Refer to Fig. 2-11.)

Each picture element contains RGB data and, as in gray scale image data, each data has its tone.

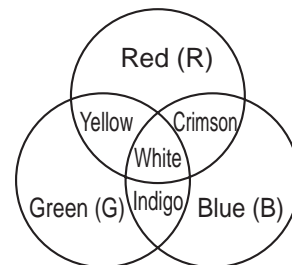


Fig. 2-11

III. Image Processing

The following describes the various image processings. (Refer to Fig. 2-1 for the whole block diagram.)

1. Black Clamp

Amplifying and black clamping of signals are carried out at the amplifier.

The light from the LEDs can not reach some parts of the photosensitive elements of the image sensor. The signals of those parts are called black level signals.

The difference between the voltage proportionate to the image density and the standard voltage is output from the image sensor.

As the true signal is the difference between the voltage proportionate to the image density and the black level signal, if the black level signal differs from the standard voltage, the true signal will not be amplified. (Refer to Fig. 2-12.)

Making the black level signal the same as the standard voltage is called black clamping. This process makes it possible to amplify the true signal.

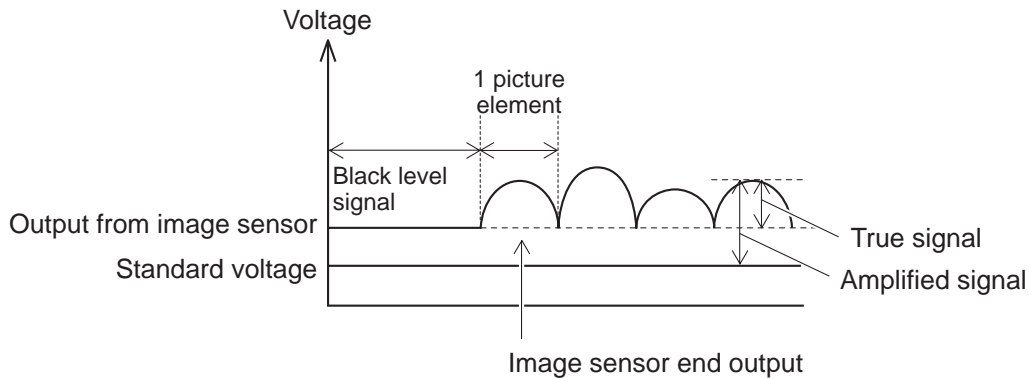


Fig. 2-12

2. A/D Conversion

As mentioned previously, the signals sent from the image sensor are analog signals. These signals are converted into digital signals in order to process them into an image.

Fig. 2-13 shows the outputs of digital signals after A/D conversion when they are 4 bit signals. (The input voltages shown differ from the actual values.)

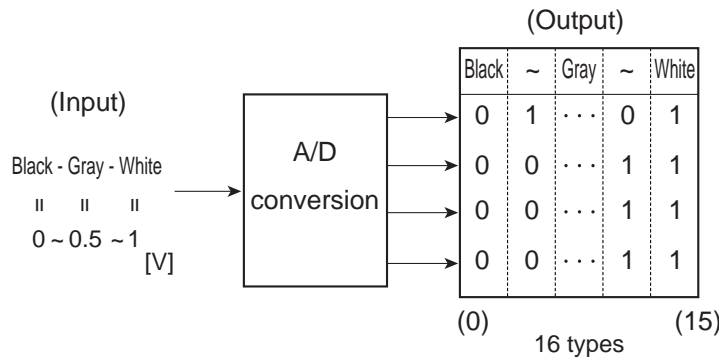


Fig. 2-13

If it were only necessary to judge whether the image density of the document was black or white, the output need be only one bit. However, actually, it is necessary to reproduce half tones such as gray.

If the output is 4 bits, it is possible to output 16 types of values. Consequently, the input signal (analog) which changes from 1 [V] to 0 [V] as the image of the document changes progressively through white, gray, and black, is converted to a digital signal of one of the above 16 levels corresponding to the particular values.

This machine outputs 8 bits, so 256 tonal values can be obtained.

As the number of output bits increases, the resulting digital signal represents the changes in image density of the document more faithfully with good tonality.

3. Contrast Adjustment

In addition to the analog signals from the image sensor, a white comparison voltage (VH) and a black comparison voltage (VL) are input into the A/D converter. The analog signals are converted to digital signals proportionate to the density of the document in accordance with the levels between those two voltages. (Refer to Fig. 2-14 and Fig. 2-15.)

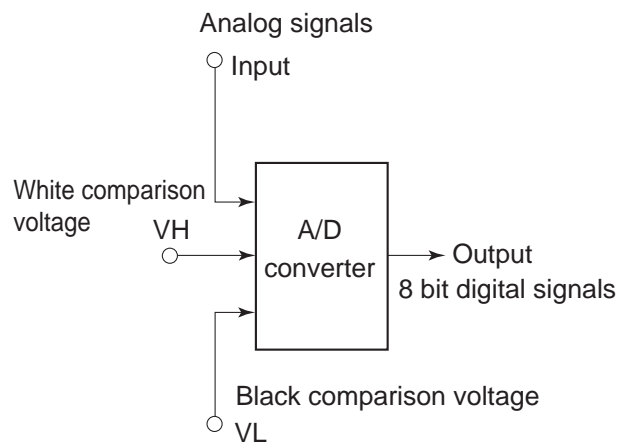


Fig. 2-14

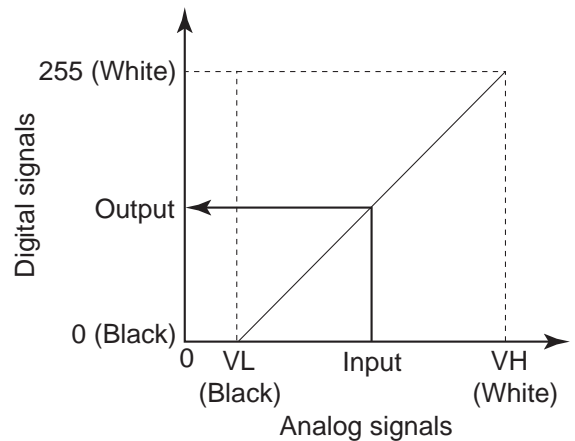


Fig. 2-15

This machine adjusts contrast by changing the white comparison voltage. Fig. 2-16 shows the differences in output caused by the changes in comparison voltage.

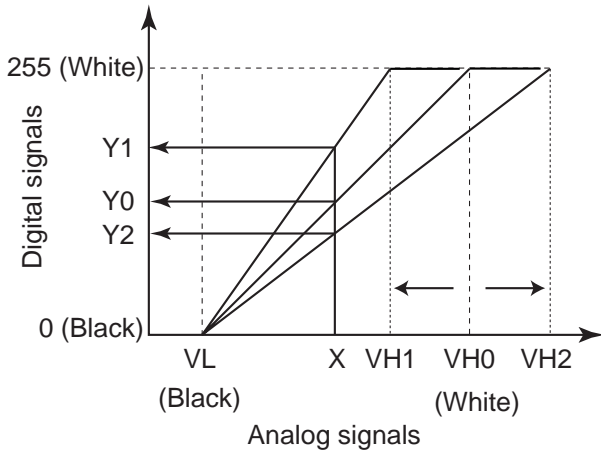


Fig. 2-16

The analog signal input is X, the white comparison voltage when contrast is not adjusted is VH0, and output is Y0.

When the white comparison voltage is changed from VH0 to VH1, the tilt of the straight line of the A/C conversion becomes greater, and an output Y1 brighter than Y0 is obtained from input X. The whole input signals are converted more brightly and contrast becomes higher.

When the white comparison voltage is changed from VH0 to VH2, the tilt of the straight line of the A/C conversion becomes smaller, and an output Y2 darker than Y0 is obtained from input X. The whole input signals are converted more darkly and contrast becomes lower.

4. Dark Compensation

The dark output of the photosensitive elements in the image sensor (the output when light does not reach the elements) differs with each element. Therefore, the output at reading a black document is not definite, because it becomes the added output with different values depending on each element. To compensate this output is called dark compensation.

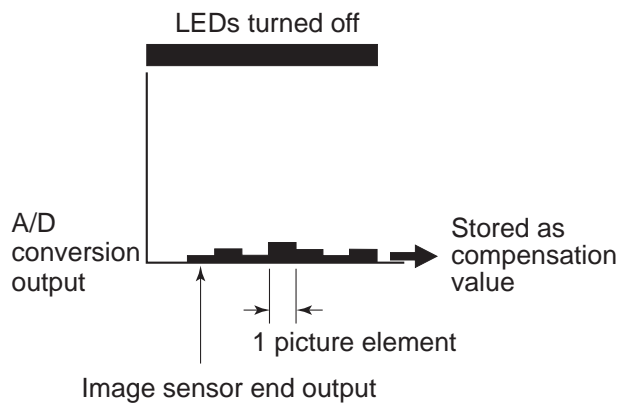


Fig. 2-17

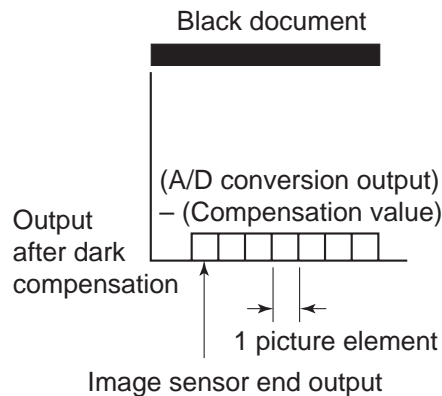


Fig. 2-18

Compensation is done by storing in memory as compensation values the output from the image sensor on the condition that LEDs are turned off, and then subtracting the compensation values from the output when an image is scanned. (Refer to Fig. 2-17 and Fig. 2-18.)

Black clamping together with dark compensation is sometimes called the black compensation.

5. Shading Compensation (White Compensation)

The output from the image sensor for each picture element can not be a uniform value, even if all the reflected light is detected by image sensor from a document whose whole density is uniform in the scanning direction. The reasons are as follows;

- 1) The light intensity of each LED is different.
- 2) The light intensity irradiated on the image sensor differs depending on each individual short focus lens.
- 3) Each sensitivity of photosensitive elements in the image sensor is different.

To compensate unevenness in the output from the image sensor, as mentioned above, is called shading compensation.

In other words, when the reflected light from a

document with uniform density is detected by image sensor, as each output from image sensor is different, compensation is carried out by multiplying each image sensor output (corresponding to each picture element) with a fixed compensation factor so that all the outputs are equal. (Refer to Fig. 2-19 and Fig. 2-20.)

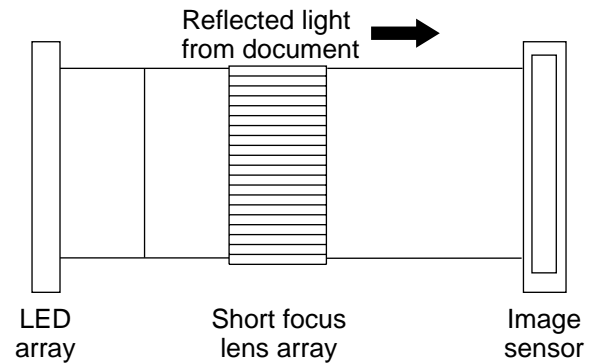


Fig. 2-19

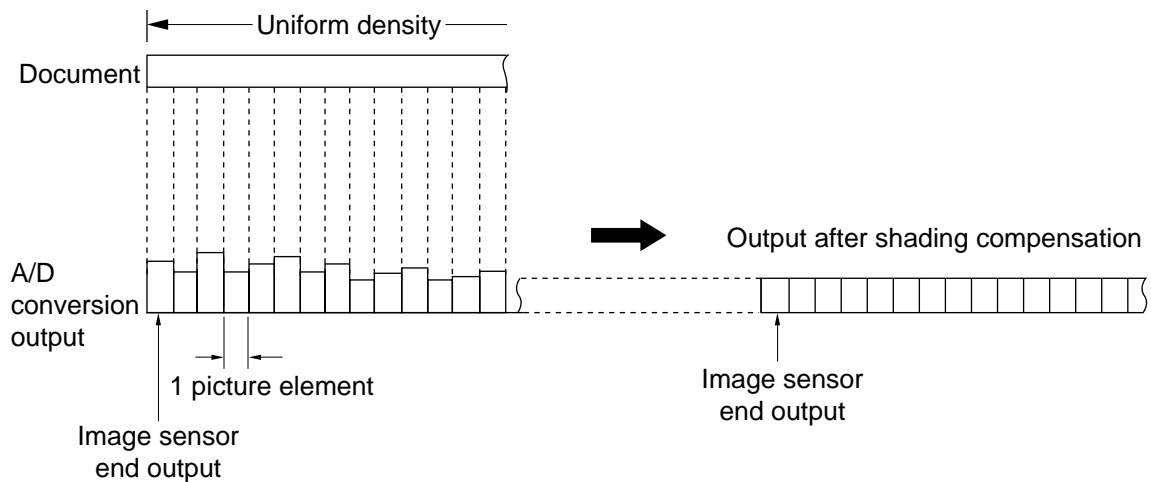


Fig. 2-20

Fig. 2-21 shows the output of a picture element (A) of the image sensor when the document density changes from black to white, and the output of the standard value of the image sensor, if the A/D conversion output is assumed to be 4 bits.

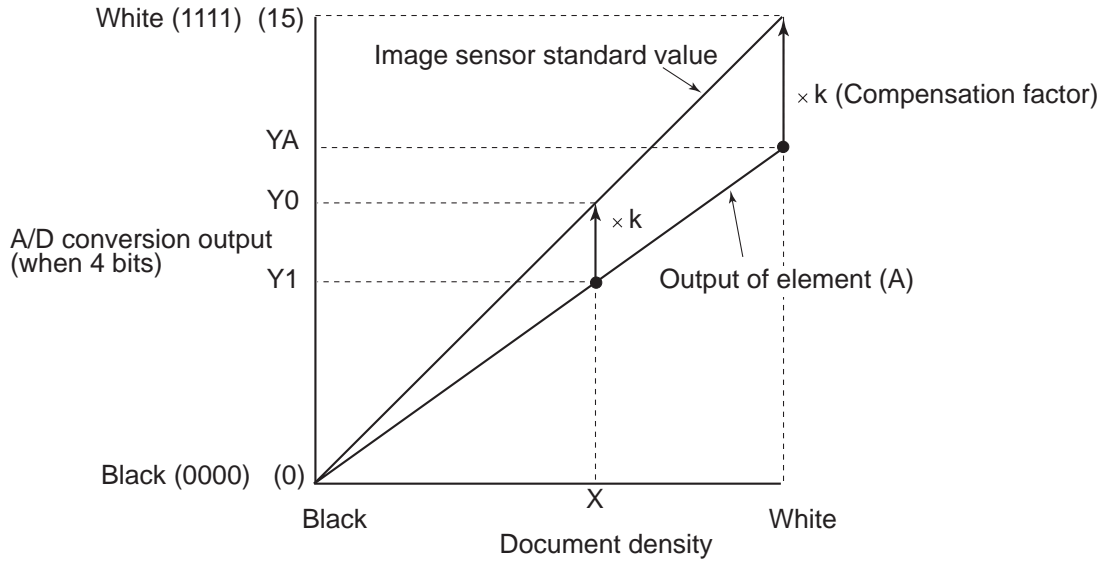


Fig. 2-21

At first, a standard white sheet is scanned, and the respective output data of the image sensors is stored in memory.

Then, comparing with the standard value of image sensor, the compensation factor is calculated so as to make each output data level from image sensor to be uniform. And it is stored in the index table RAM.

Output YA of element (A) is stored in memory when a standard white sheet is scanned. Compensation factor k required to obtain the same output from element (A) as the image sensor's standard value is calculated and stored in the index table RAM.

When scanning a document actually and its image density is X, the output Y0 after shading compensation is obtained by multiplying the pre-compensation output Y1 with the compensation factor k.

6. Gamma Compensation (Tone Compensation)

As there is a difference between the density of a document detected by an image sensor and sensitive density by human eyes, it is necessary to compensate the output in order to obtain the appropriate density depending on the type of document.

This is called gamma compensation (tone compensation).

a. Binary mode

Fig. 2-22 shows the relationship of gamma compensation in binary mode (simple binary and error diffusion). In binary mode, the output is compensated on the dark side so that characters come out sharp and clear.

Also, density adjustment in simple binary mode is done by selecting slice level but as the slice level is fixed for error diffusion, density adjustment is carried out by changing the gamma compensation curve and thus changing the output.

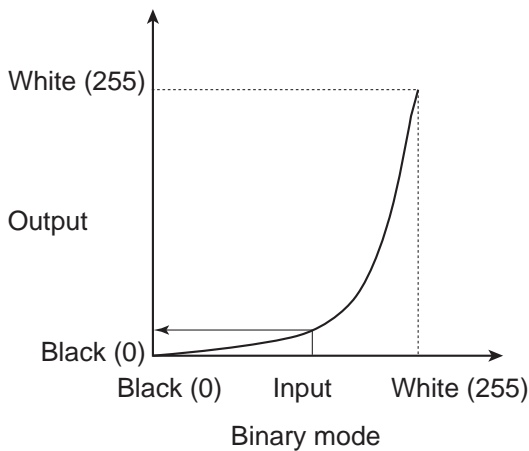


Fig. 2-22

b. Gray scale and color modes

Fig. 2-23 shows the relationship of gamma compensation in gray scale and color modes. Contrary to binary mode, in gray scale and color modes, compensation is carried out to obtain a faithful reproduction from a light image to a dark image.

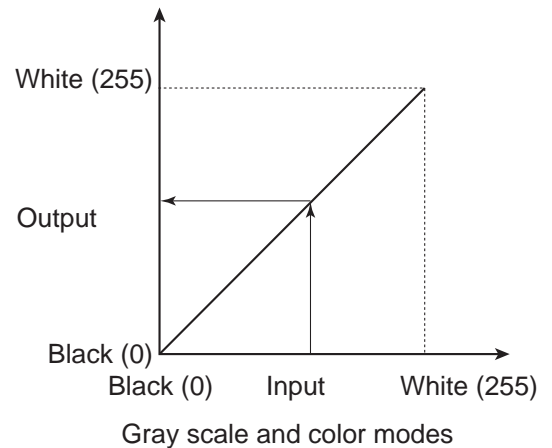


Fig. 2-23

7. Binary AE (Automatic density)

Binary AE is a process for automatically adjusting density in accordance with the density of the background of the document.

This machine judges the density of each line and then adjusts density by adjusting the level of A/D conversion from the next line it scans. The circuit that carries out this process is called ABC circuit.

Density is judged by the number of the brightest picture elements in one line.

The number of the brightest picture elements in one line is counted and when it becomes more than the value prescribed depending on the size of the document, the white comparison voltage is gradually changed in each line until it becomes the voltage of the brightest picture elements.

Fig. 2-24 shows the difference in output caused by binary AE when a document with characters on the colored background is scanned.

If the analog signal of the brightest picture elements in the colored background is X, then the output after normal A/D conversion becomes Y0, and the background color is replaced with black picture elements when binarized.

When binary AE is selected, the white comparison voltage VH is lowered to VH1 by judging the density, output of X after A/D conversion becomes Y1, and the background is replaced with white picture elements when binarized.

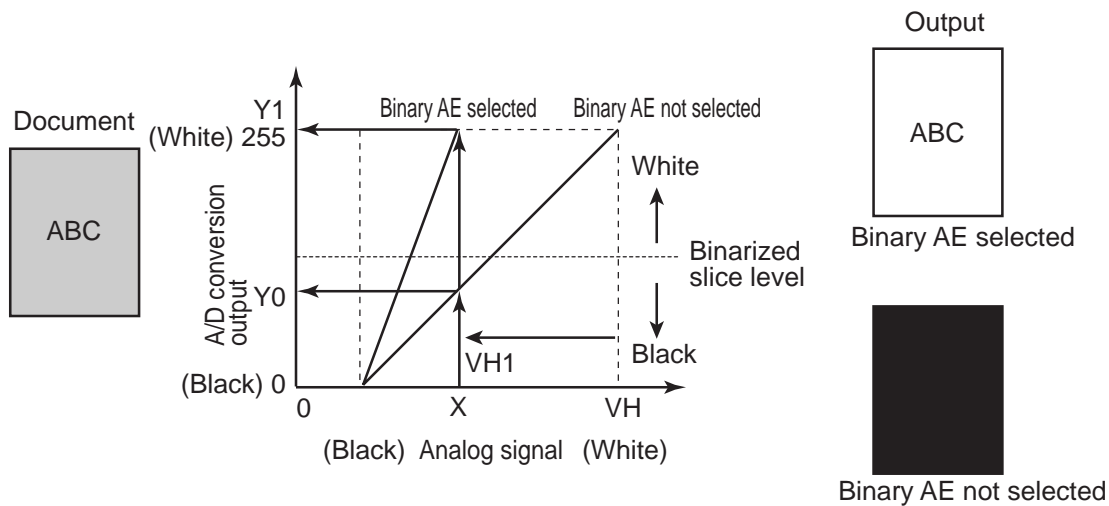


Fig. 2-24

8. Line Memory

Line memory is used for comparing the image density of the former and the next when processing the image by edge emphasis.

In the case of DR-5020, by being equipped with two line memories, it can compare the data of three lines. (Refer to Fig. 2-25.)

The following shows the flow of image data of each line. The data of the three lines are called Line 1, Line 2, and Line 3 in the order in which they are read from the image sensor.

1) Line 1 is read into image processor 2. At the same time, it is written into line memory (A).

- 2) Line 2 is read into image processor 2. Line 1 is read from line memory (A) and at the same time, Line 2 is written into line memory (A). Line 1 is written into line memory (B).
- 3) Line 3 is read into image processor 2. Line 2 is read from line memory (A) and at the same time, Line 3 is written into line memory (A). Line 1 is read from line memory (B) and at the same time, Line 2 is written into line memory (B).

The data of subsequent lines are successively read and written in the same manner.

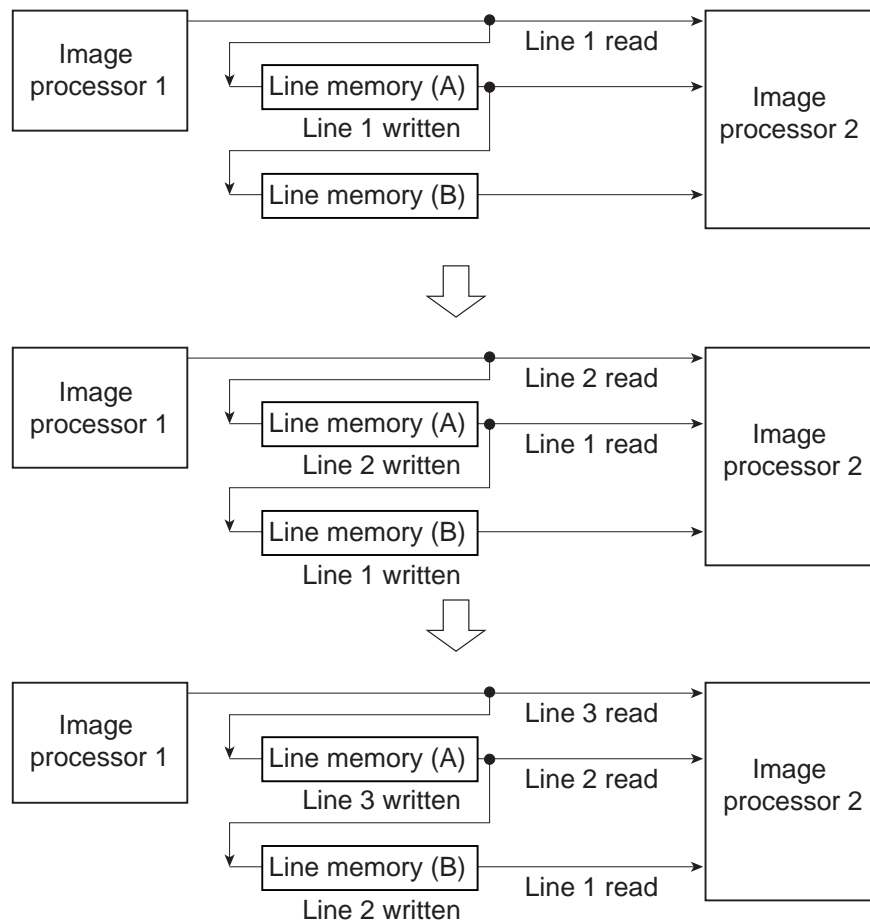


Fig. 2-25

DR-5080C uses six line memories in order to process color image data. (Refer to Fig. 2-26.)

When the color mode is selected, data of each color RGB is sent in successively one line at a time. In order to carry out edge emphasis, three times the line memory is required to compare the former and the next RGB lines. Also, since only two line memories are required for binary and gray scale mode, the line memories are switched.

When processing color image data, switching is done by selecting A1 or A2. Data of each color is read from line memory (A) successively to (B), (C), (D), (E), and (F). In the case of binary and gray scale image data, switching is done by selecting B1 or B2, and the same process as in the preceding Fig. 2-25 is carried out.

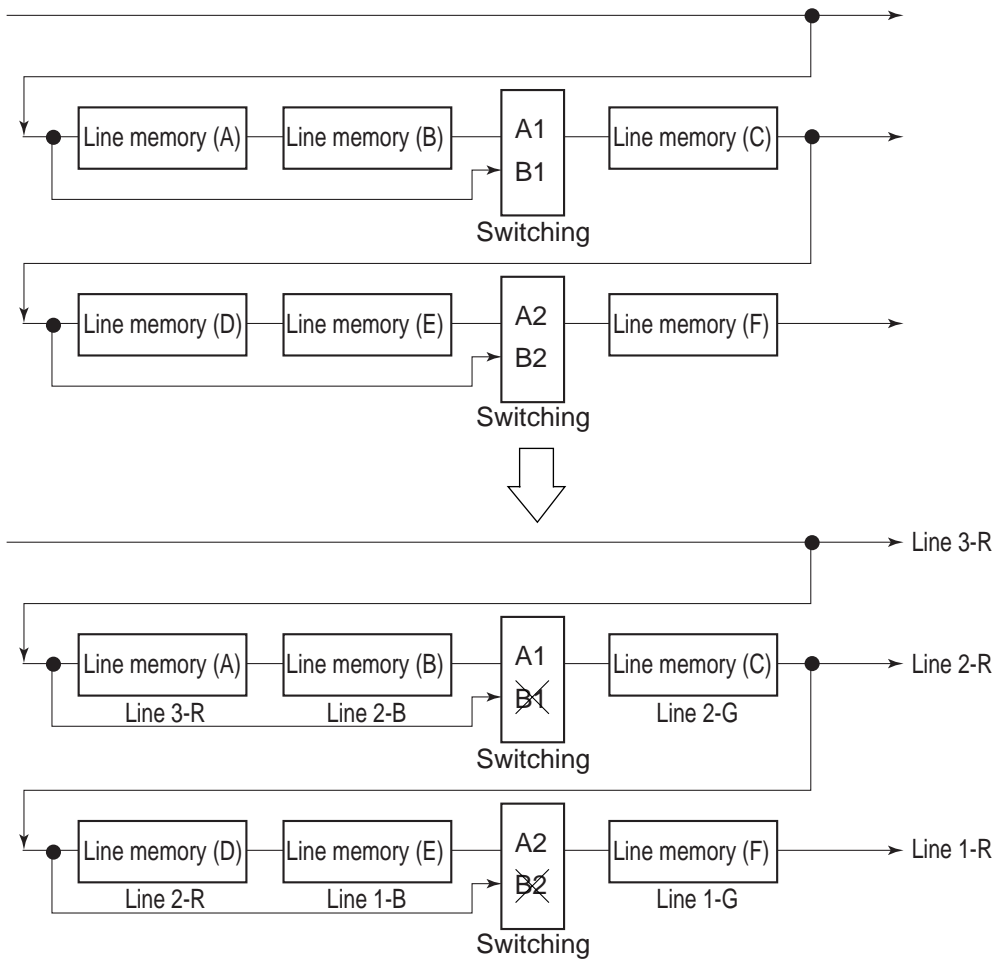


Fig. 2-26

9. Resolution Conversion

Resolutions, in the horizontal scanning direction, can be selected in this machine from 400 dpi and, 300 dpi to 200 dpi (optionally set at 10 dpi intervals). In the vertical scanning direction, the resolution is basically the same as the resolution selected at horizontal scanning direction. But a half resolution can be selected, when the resolution of horizontal is 300 dpi or 200 dpi. It is called high speed scanning.

a. Vertical scanning direction

The document is scanned in the vertical scanning direction, with changing the feed speed of the document. In the case of 200 dpi, feed speed is made 1.5 times that of 300 dpi, and in the case of 150 dpi, twice the speed. (Refer to Fig. 2-27.)

• Conversion of Vertical Scanning Resolution

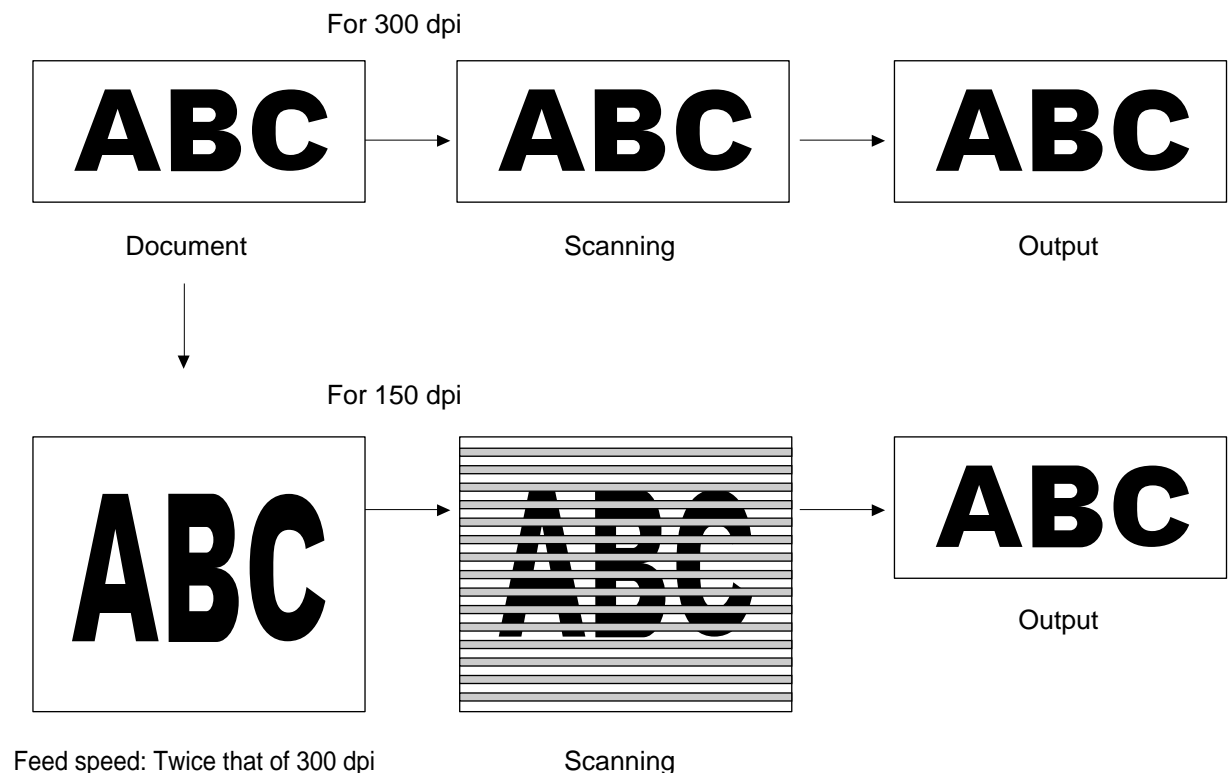


Fig. 2-27

b. Horizontal scanning direction

Conversion of the horizontal scanning resolution to less than 300 dpi is done by thinning out the standard clocks for image processing in accordance with the resolution.

When Converting to 150 dpi, use the standard clocks thinned out to 1/2 as the operating clocks. (Refer to Fig. 2-28.)

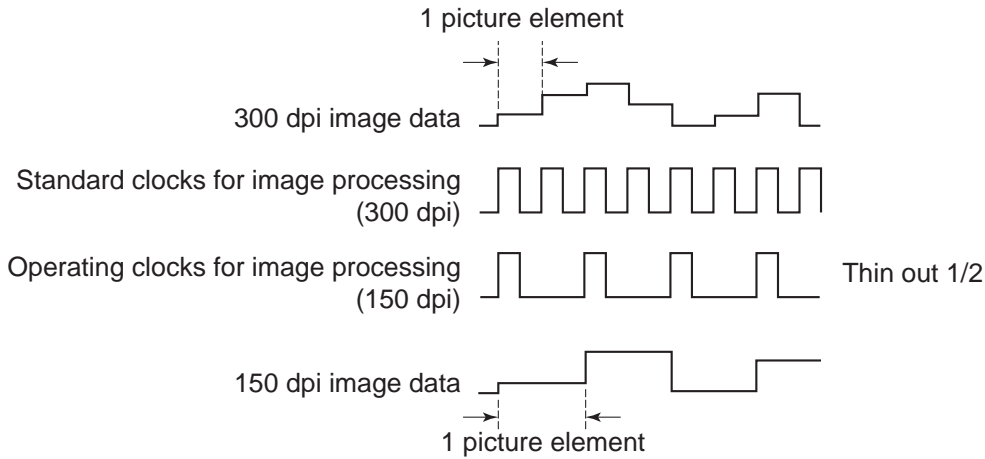
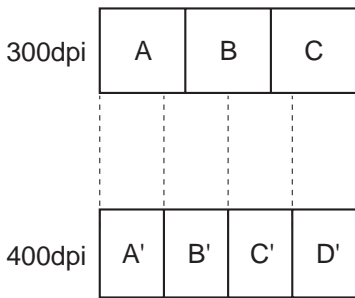


Fig. 2-28

The resolution of the image sensor of this machine is 300 dpi, so conversion to 400 dpi is processed artificially by calculation.

Calculations for each three picture elements of one line are made as in Fig. 2-29 and, by increasing the three picture elements to four picture elements, 300 dpi is made to become 400 dpi.

The changes in output in such a case are shown in Fig. 2-30.



$A'=A$
 $B'=1/3A + 2/3B$
 $C'=2/3B + 1/3C$
 $D'=C$

Fig. 2-29

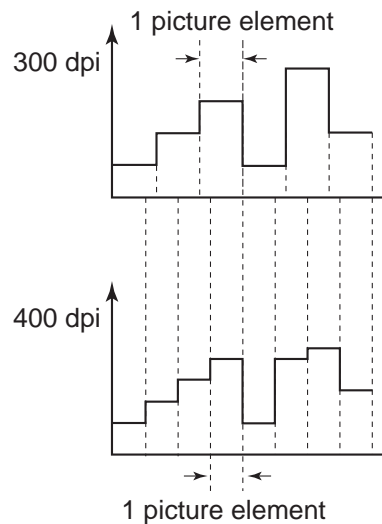


Fig. 2-30

10. Edge Emphasis

Edge emphasis is a kind of processing which emphasizes light and shade in order to make the image appear sharp. (Refer to Fig. 2-31.)

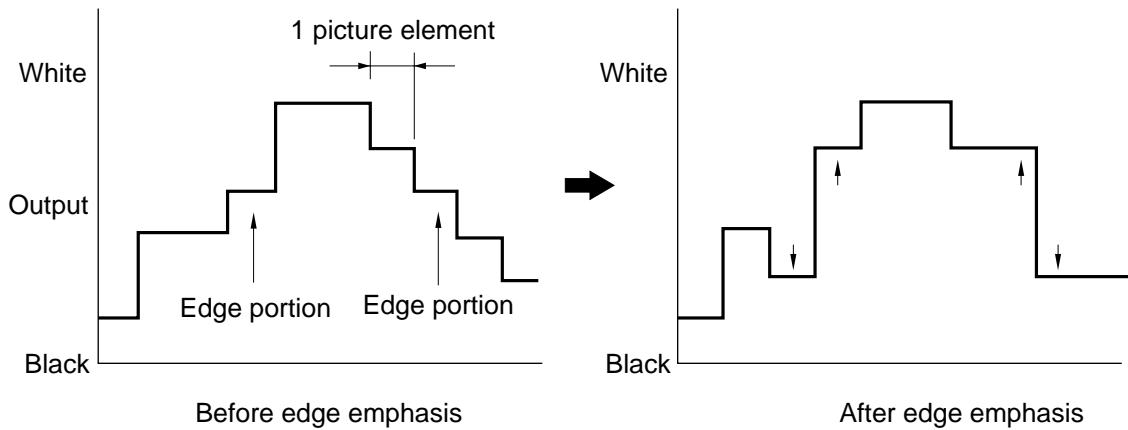


Fig. 2-31

Density processing is performed by comparing the data in the conversion table provided for performing edge emphasis, with the target picture element. (Refer to Fig. 2-32.)

The stages in edge emphasis can be changed by changing the conversion table and reproduction ratio (B) of the conversion table.

If the density of the target picture element is increased fourfold and the density of the other four points multiplied by -1, the overall density will remain unchanged.

Arithmetic processing in the horizontal scanning direction is done at the same time with data read. Arithmetic processing in the vertical scanning direction is done by using the line memory to convert the data in the previous line.

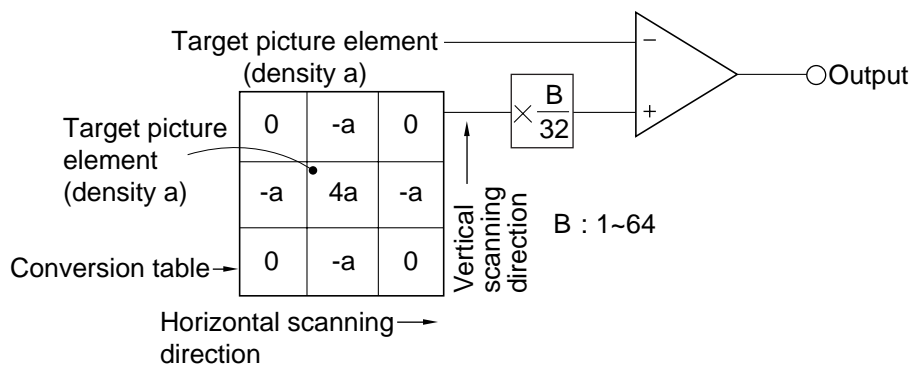


Fig. 2-32

11. Simple Binarizing

As mentioned previously, binary image data can only express picture elements in either “black” or “white.”

In order to separate one picture element into either black or white, signals corresponding to the image density of the document must be cut off at a certain level, and anything above that level judged as “white” and anything below as “black.” This is called binarizing. And, the level at which picture elements is to be divided into white or black is called the “slice level” (or threshold value).

To binarize by changing the slice level without the error diffusion processing (refer to next item), is called the simple binarizing. This is good for text documents.

For example, when the image sensor output is converted to 4 bit digital signals by A/D conversion, one of the values from “0” to “15” is set as the slice level, and compared with the digital signals. (Refer to Fig. 2-33.)

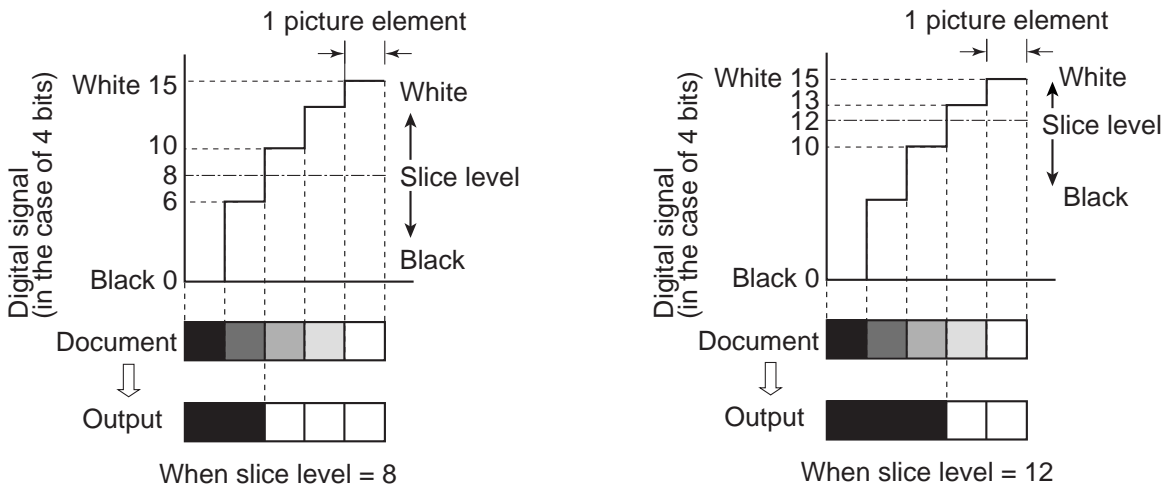


Fig. 2-33

Fig. 2-34 shows examples of when digital signal output after A/D conversion is 4 bits and slice level is "8." (This machine processes with 8 bits)

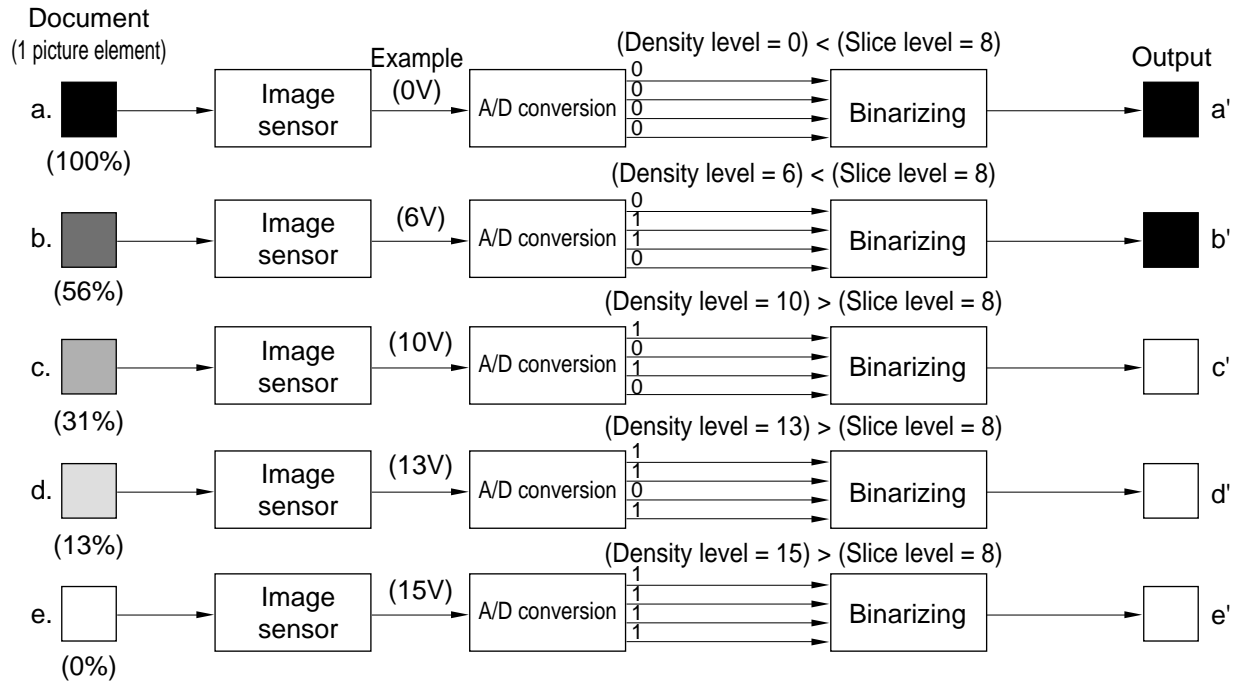


Fig. 2-34

12. Error Diffusion

Error diffusion processing is used to binarize for the document which has gray color like a picture and photo.

The value of 1 picture element of input image data is compared with the slice level. When it is smaller than the slice level, it is output as "0" and when it is bigger than the slice level, it is output as "15" (in the case of 4 bits).

The difference between the values of the input and output picture elements is then added to the next picture element to be processed.

The resultant picture element value with the added value is successively subjected to the next

process as the input picture element value. As a result, the input picture element converted into a simply-binarized value and the average value of the overall density of the output image that has been processed using the error diffusion process, are practically the same.

Specific examples of these are shown in Fig. 2-35 to Fig. 2-36.

Processing is done with the density slice level "8." First, when processing the first row of Line 1, since density (12) is bigger than the slice level "8," the output density is "15" and the resultant error is -3 (=12-15). (Refer to Fig. 2-35.)

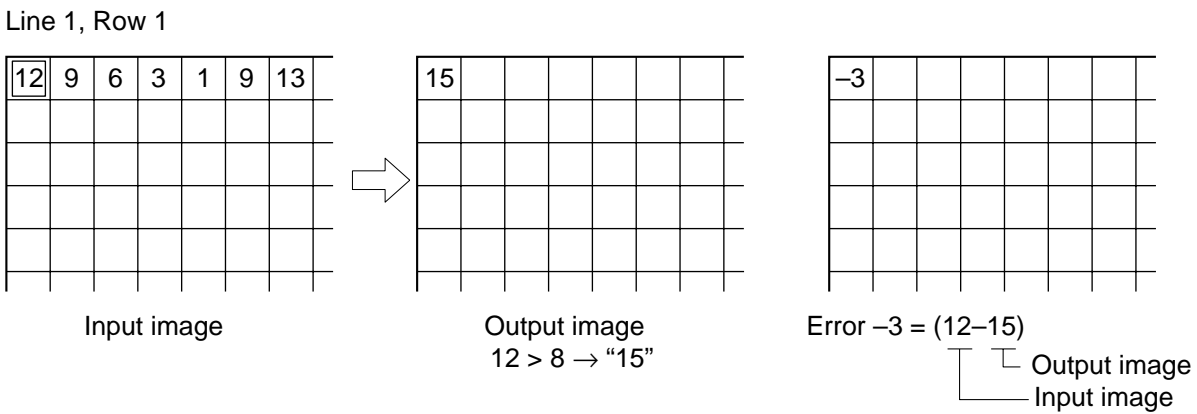


Fig. 2-35

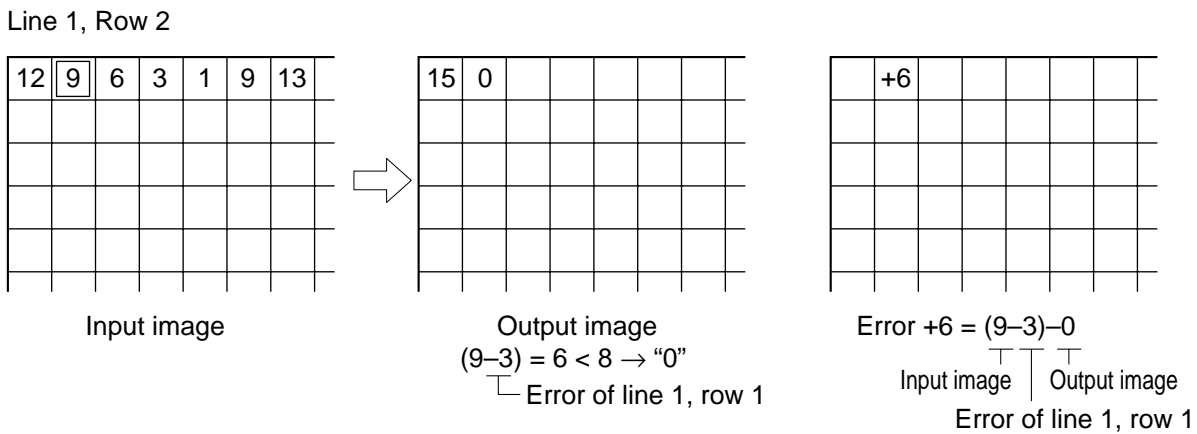


Fig. 2-36

Next, when processing the second row of Line 1, since the error is diffused to the right, the density of the picture element of Line 1, 2nd Row becomes "6" (= 9-3).

As this value is smaller than the slice level, the output density is "0" and the error becomes "+6" [= (9-3) -0]. (Refer to Fig. 2-36.)

As the density of the picture element of Line 1, 3rd Row is "12" (= 6 + 6) and thus bigger than the slice level "8," the output density becomes "15" and the error becomes "-3" [= (6 + 6) -15]. (Refer to Fig. 3-37.)

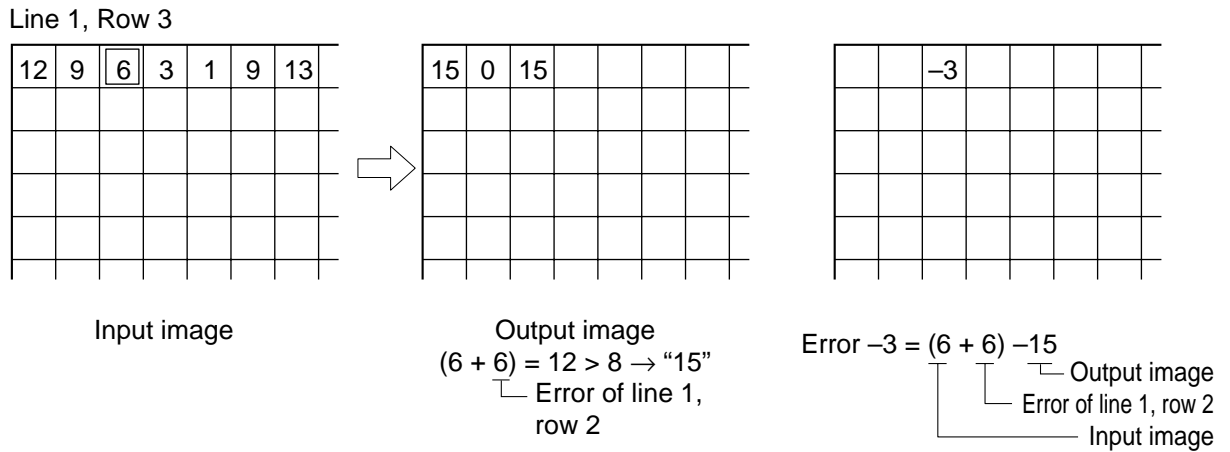


Fig. 2-37

If the rest is processed in the same manner, the images become as Fig. 2-38.

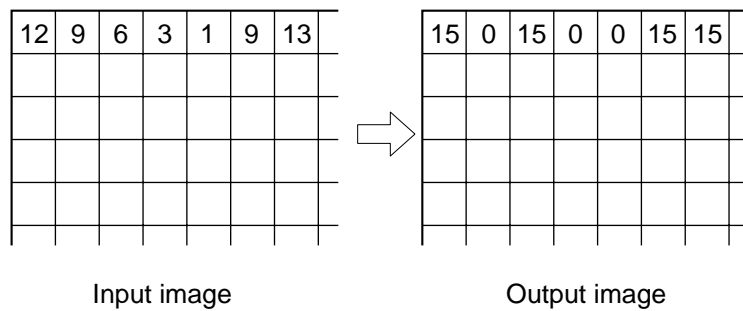


Fig. 2-38

In the case of Line 2, the processing is carried out using the density of Line 2, 1st Row as the standard. If the rest is processed in the same manner, the image becomes as Fig. 2-39.

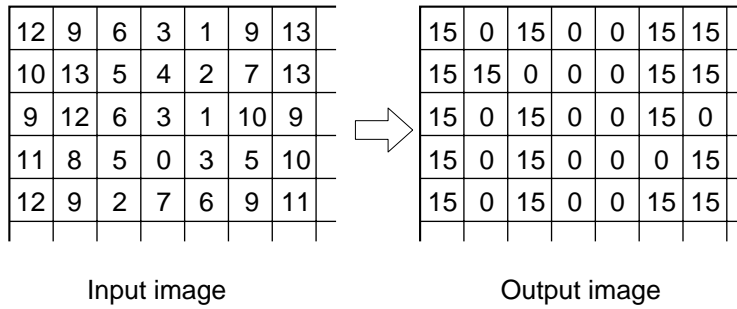


Fig. 2-39

Fig. 2-40 shows the results of binarizing with error diffusion processing and binarizing without error diffusion processing (simple binarizing).

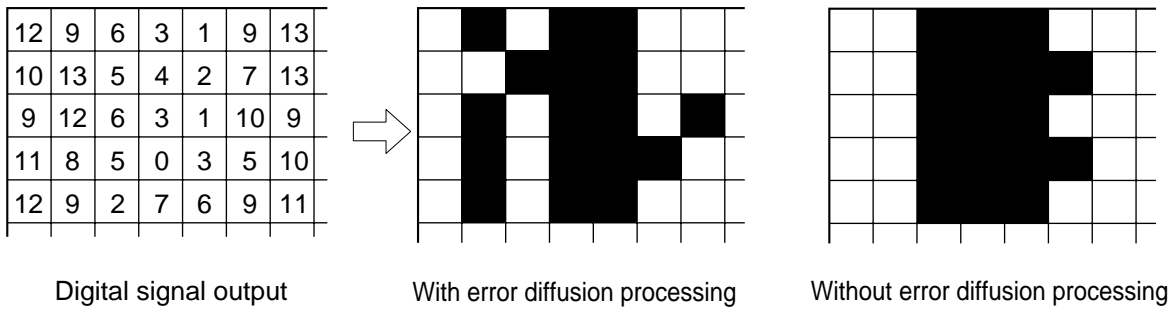


Fig. 2-40

13. Neg./Pos. Reversion (RIF)

The density level of image data is reversed against the document, as shown in Fig. 2-41, by reversing the binary data. It is called Negative/Positive reversion or RIF (Reverse Image Function).

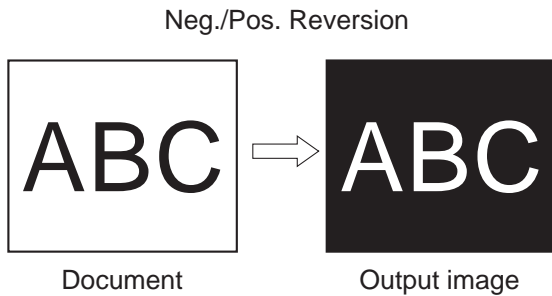


Fig. 2-41

14. Thin Line Complementation

Thin line complementation is the process of compensating for any omission in binary output when a thin line is scanned. (Refer to Fig. 2-42.)

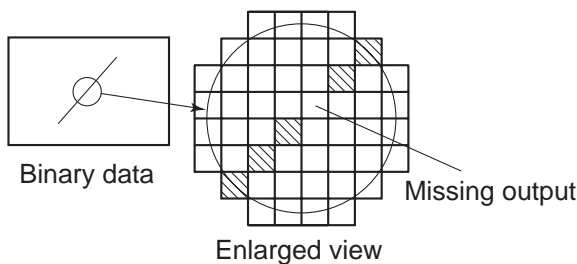


Fig. 2-42

Thin line complementation is done using a conversion table such as shown in Fig. 2-43.

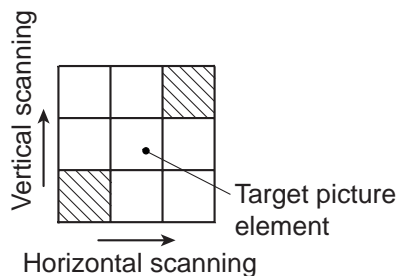


Fig. 2-43

A target picture element is judged to be included in a line under the following conditions and its output is reversed.

- 1) The 2 dots above and below the target picture element differ in color from the target picture element and the other 6 dots are the same color as the target picture element. (Fig. 2-44a)
- 2) The 2 dots to the right and left of the target picture element differ in color from the target picture element and the other 6 dots are the same color as the target picture element. (Fig. 2-44b)
- 3) The 2 dots to the upper left and lower right of the target picture element differ in color from the target picture element and the other 6 dots are the same color as the target picture element. (Fig. 2-44c)
- 4) The 2 dots to the lower left and upper right of the target picture element differ in color from the target picture element and the other 6 dots are the same color as the target picture element. (Fig. 2-44d)



Fig. 2-44a



Fig. 2-44b



Fig. 2-44c



Fig. 2-44d

Note: In this machine, the image processings, thin line complementation, dot erasing, and notch compensation is done in order.

15. Dot Erasing

Dot erasing is the process of erasing any unnecessary small black dots in binary data.

It is called black dot erasing. (Refer to Fig. 2-45.)

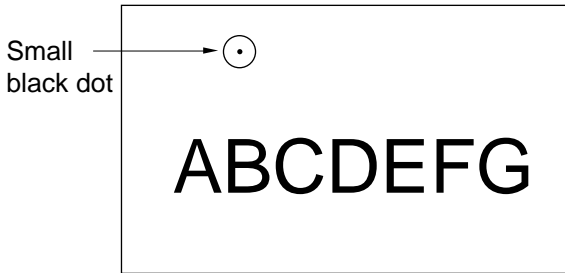


Fig. 2-45

This is a function for preventing the occurrence of a lot of small dots like sand soil as a result of edge emphasis as mentioned previously, if scanning a document with colored background or a dirty document.

Owing to this process, isolated dots on the image can be erased and the image is clearer, and at the same time, image compression ratio at encoding becomes higher and recording into the recording media can be more efficient.

For dot erasing, the conversion table shown in Fig. 2-46 is used.

When all the colors of the 8 dots around the target picture element differ from that of the target picture element, the target picture element is judged an "isolated dot" and erased.

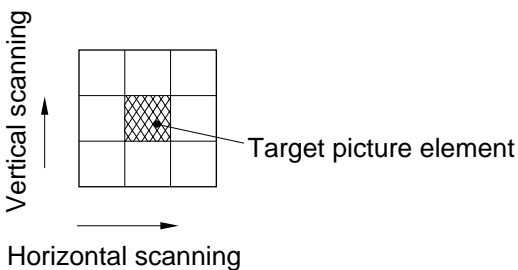


Fig. 2-46

The white dots in a document with black background can be erased by the same principle. It is called white dot erasing.

16. Notch Compensation

Notch compensation is the process of compensating for any unevenness in binary output when horizontal and vertical straight lines are scanned. (Refer to Fig. 2-47.)

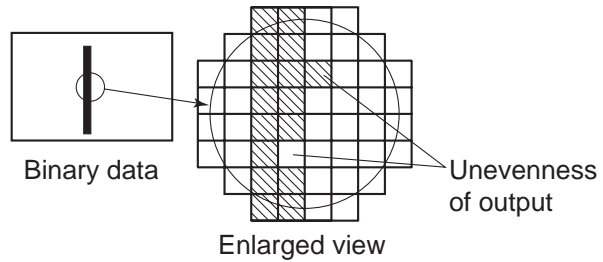


Fig. 2-47

Notch compensation is done using a conversion table such as shown in Fig. 2-48.

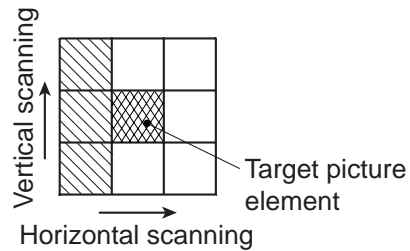


Fig. 2-48

A target picture element is judged a notch under the following conditions and its output is reversed.

- 1) The 3 dots to the right of the target picture element (right, upper right, and lower right) are the same color as the target picture element and the other 5 dots are a different color. (Fig. 2-49a)
- 2) The 3 dots to the left of the target picture element (left, upper left, and lower left) are the same color as the target picture element and the other 5 dots are a different color. (Fig. 2-49b)
- 3) The 3 dots above the target picture element (top, top right, and top left) are the same color as the target picture element and the other 5 dots are a different color. (Fig. 2-49c)
- 4) The 3 dots below the target picture element (bottom, bottom right, and bottom left) are the same color as the target picture element and the other 5 dots are a different color. (Fig. 2-49d)



Fig. 2-49a



Fig. 2-49b



Fig. 2-49c



Fig. 2-49d

Also, notch compensation uses the data resulting after processing the preceding line to process the next line.

Fig. 2-50 shows an example of 3 dots \times 7 lines.

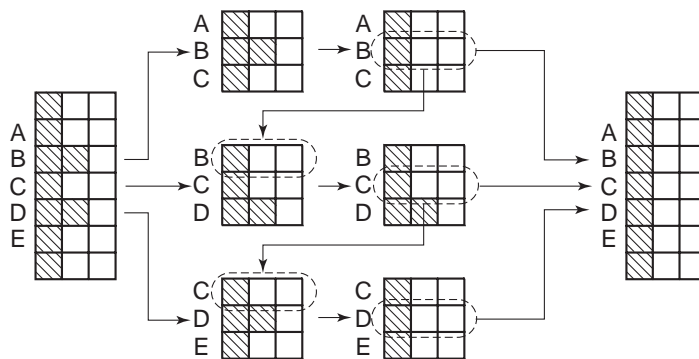


Fig. 2-50

17. Bit Number Changing

As this machine processes with 8 bits, DR-5080C can output multi valued data having 256 tones per one picture element, and by changing the number of bits of the image data, the number of tones of the image can be changed.

By lowering the number of tones, the compression ratio when compressing an image can be heightened.

4 bits multi valued data uses 4 upper-level bits of 8 bits multi valued data and has 16 tones.

2 bits multi valued data uses 2 upper-level bits of 8 bits multi valued data and has 4 tones. (Refer to Fig.s 2-51.)

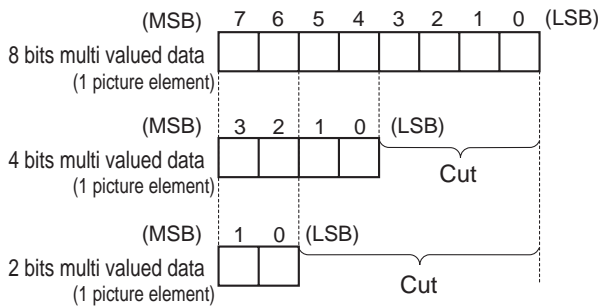


Fig. 2-51

In the case of color images, as each color of RGB, has tones, by changing the number of bits, 24 bits color respectively becomes 12 bits color and 6 bits color.

- 3 bits color

The tones of 3 bits color is 1 bit per picture element of each RGB color. In other words, the data of each RGB is binary, so the same processing as binary image data can be carried out.

It is not done by changing the number of bits.

18. Dropout Color

DR-5080C can be set so that it does not scan red, green or blue (the same colors as RGB of LEDs) in the document. It is called the dropout color.

When a dropout color is specified, the output becomes binary.

When red is specified as the dropout color, scanning is done with only the red LEDs illuminated. When the red in the document is the same color as the LED light, the reflected light has the same quantity of light as the white part and is detected as white. (Refer to Fig. 2-52.)

With DR-5020, red can be made the dropout color by changing the LED unit to the red LED (option).

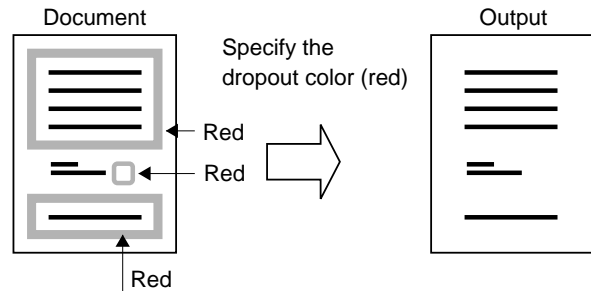


Fig. 2-52

With DR-5080C, it can be set a part of specified without the dropout color. This part is called a non-dropout area.

When red is specified as the dropout color, normally red stamp is not output, but by specifying a non-dropout area, the red stamp in that area can be made to be output. (Refer to Fig. 2-53.)

The starting and ending positions of the non-dropout area are specified by their distance from the leading edge of the paper.

A non-dropout area is read by simultaneously illuminating the LEDs of the 3 colors, RGB, and reading them as white light.

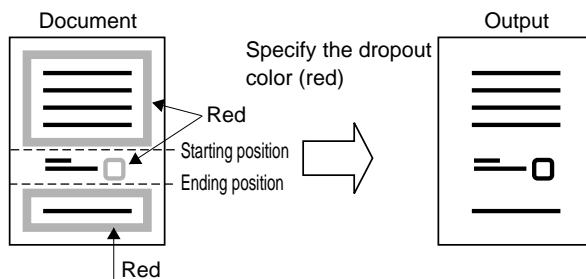


Fig. 2-53

19. Image compression



Image compression processing is not done within this machine, because it does not have priority for improvement of scanning speed. So, image compression processing is done within the personal computer.

When specifying a file format of recorded image data, a kind of image compression is decided. And, the kind of image compression will be restricted, depending on a kind of image output mode. For details, please refer to Instructions Manual.

- TIFF format → MMR
- JPEG format → JPEG
- JBIG format → JBIG
- BMP format → Non-compression

CHAPTER 3

FUNCTIONS & OPERATION

1. In this Chapter explanations are given about the purpose and role of each function and its relationship to the electrical and mechanical systems, and about the operational timing by functions of each component. In diagrams,  represents mechanical drive paths, and  indicates the flow of electrical signals.
2. Signals in digital circuits are identified as "H" for High and "L" for Low. However, voltages differ depending on the circuit.
Further, as PCB assemblies are not repaired at the customer's premises, only outlines of the operation of the circuits by means of block diagrams are given here.

I. OUTLINE	3-1	VII. POWER SUPPLY	3-46
II. EXPOSURE SYSTEM	3-11	VIII. LAYOUT OF ELECTRICAL	
III. DOCUMENT FEED SYSTEM	3-12	COMPONENTS	3-49
IV. DESCRIPTION OF ELECTRICAL		IX. LIST OF VARIABLE RESISTORS,	
CIRCUITS	3-19	SWITCHES & LEDS FOR EACH	
V. OPTIONS	3-37	CIRCUIT BOARD	3-52
VI. INTERFACE	3-43		

I. OUTLINE

1. System Configuration

System configuration is as shown in Fig. 3-1.

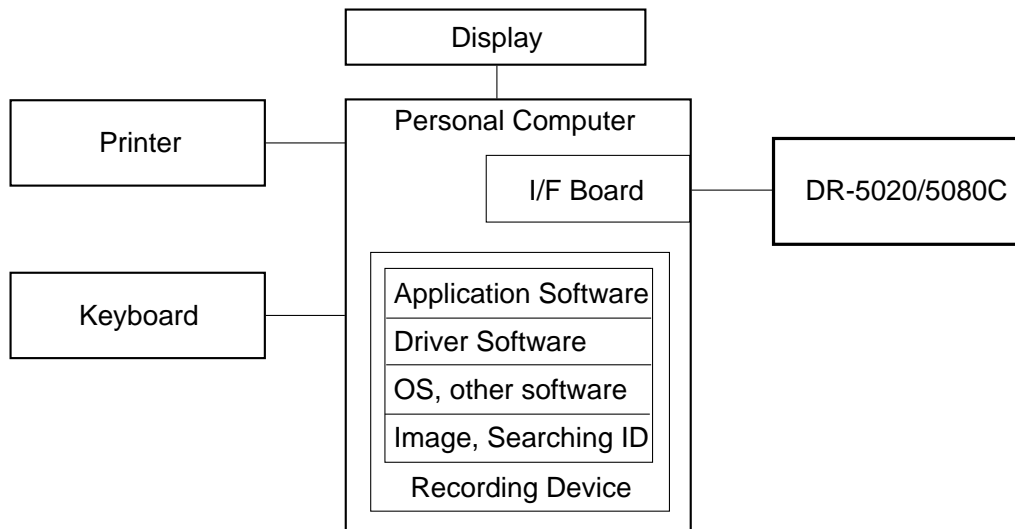


Fig. 3-1

Item	Function/Specification
DR-5020/5080C	Inputs images
Personal Computer	Controls the system, and is PC/AT compatible machine CPU : Pentium, Clock: Min. 133 MHz OS : Windows 95/98 or NT4.0 Workstation RAM : Min. 64 MB
Display	Displays image, and displays searching and setting screen, etc.
Printer	Prints out image
Keyboard	Instructs image input, searching, etc.
Recording Device	Records image, searching ID and, softwares
I/F Board	Interfaces with SCSI SCSI board for PC/AT compatible machine and driven by wnaspi32.dll Recommended: Adaptec AHA-2940AU, AHA-1540CP, etc.
Application Software	Software for recording and searching image
Driver Software	Software for operating DR-5020/5080C

Note: For details of the software supplied with DR-5020/5080C, refer to the instruction manuals of each software.

Table 3-1

2. Machine Configuration

Machine configuration is as shown in Fig. 3-2.

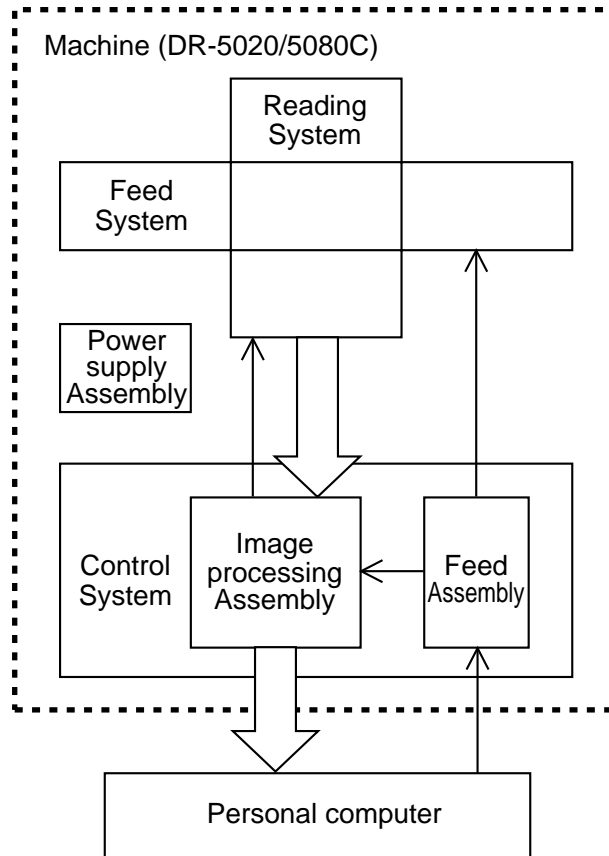


Fig. 3-2

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>a. Feed System
Pickup, feeds and delivers documents.</p> <p>b. Reading System
Reads out image data with image sensors.</p> <p>c. Control System
The control system consists of the image processing assembly and the feed assembly.
The image processing assembly controls the reading system and processes the image data read out by the reading system.
The feed assembly controls the feed system.</p> | <p>d. Power Supply Assembly
The power supply assembly converts the AC power supplied from outside into +24 VDC and supplies the converted power to the various PCB assemblies.</p> |
|---|--|

3. Main Drive

This machine employs four motors to feed the document - the main motor (M1), the pickup motor (M2), the feeding motor (M3), and the separation motor (M5). There is also a gap adjusting motor (M4) which is used to move the gap adjusting cam

to adjust the gap of the feeding roller and the separation roller, and a document board motor (M6) which is used to raise and lower the document board.

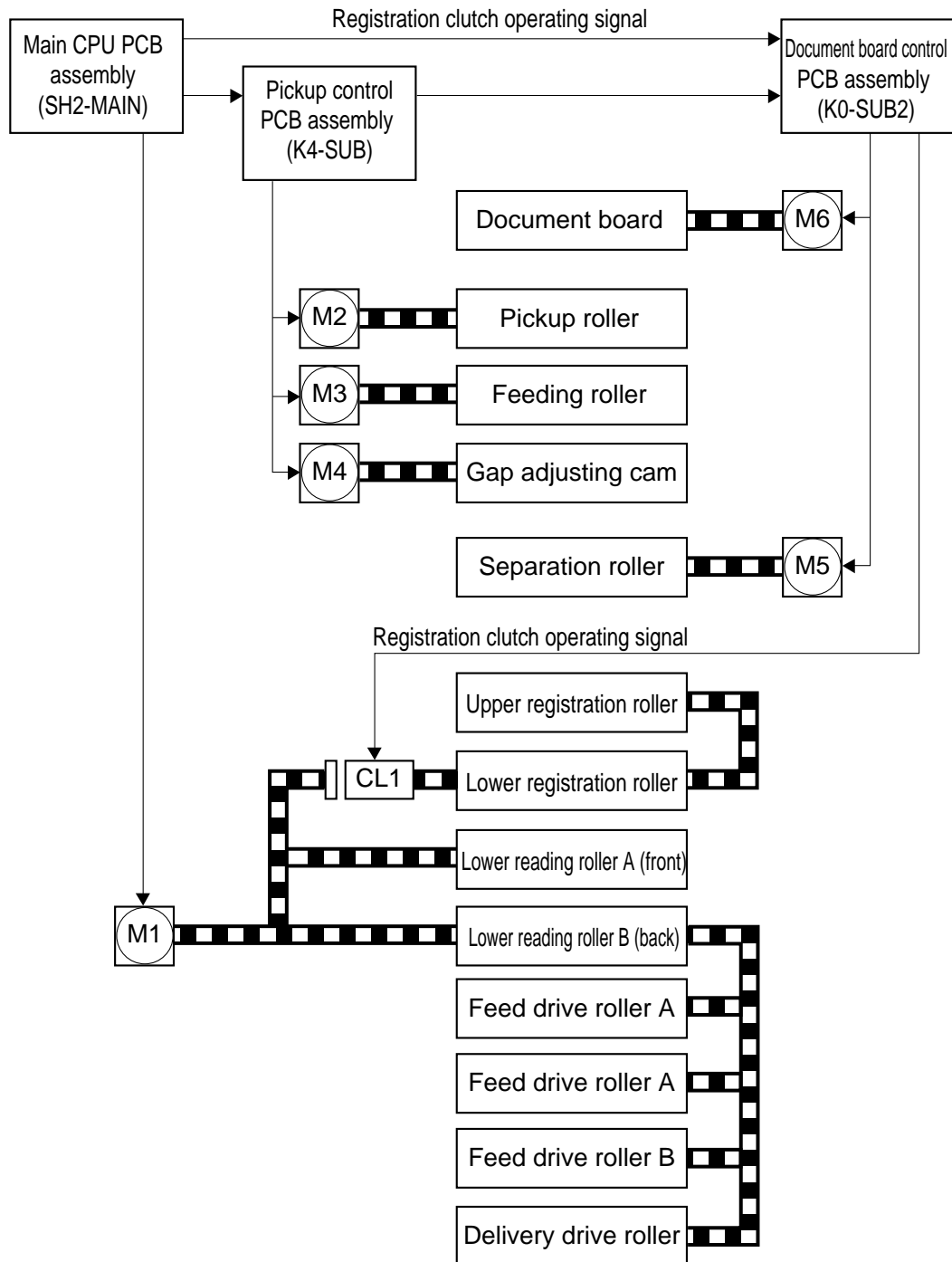


Fig. 3-3

4. Outline of Electrical Circuits

This machine uses three CPU PCB assemblies a main CPU PCB assembly (SH2-MAIN), a pickup control PCB assembly (K4-SUB), and a document

board control PCB assembly (K0-SUB2). Fig. 3-4 is a block diagram of the PCB assemblies.

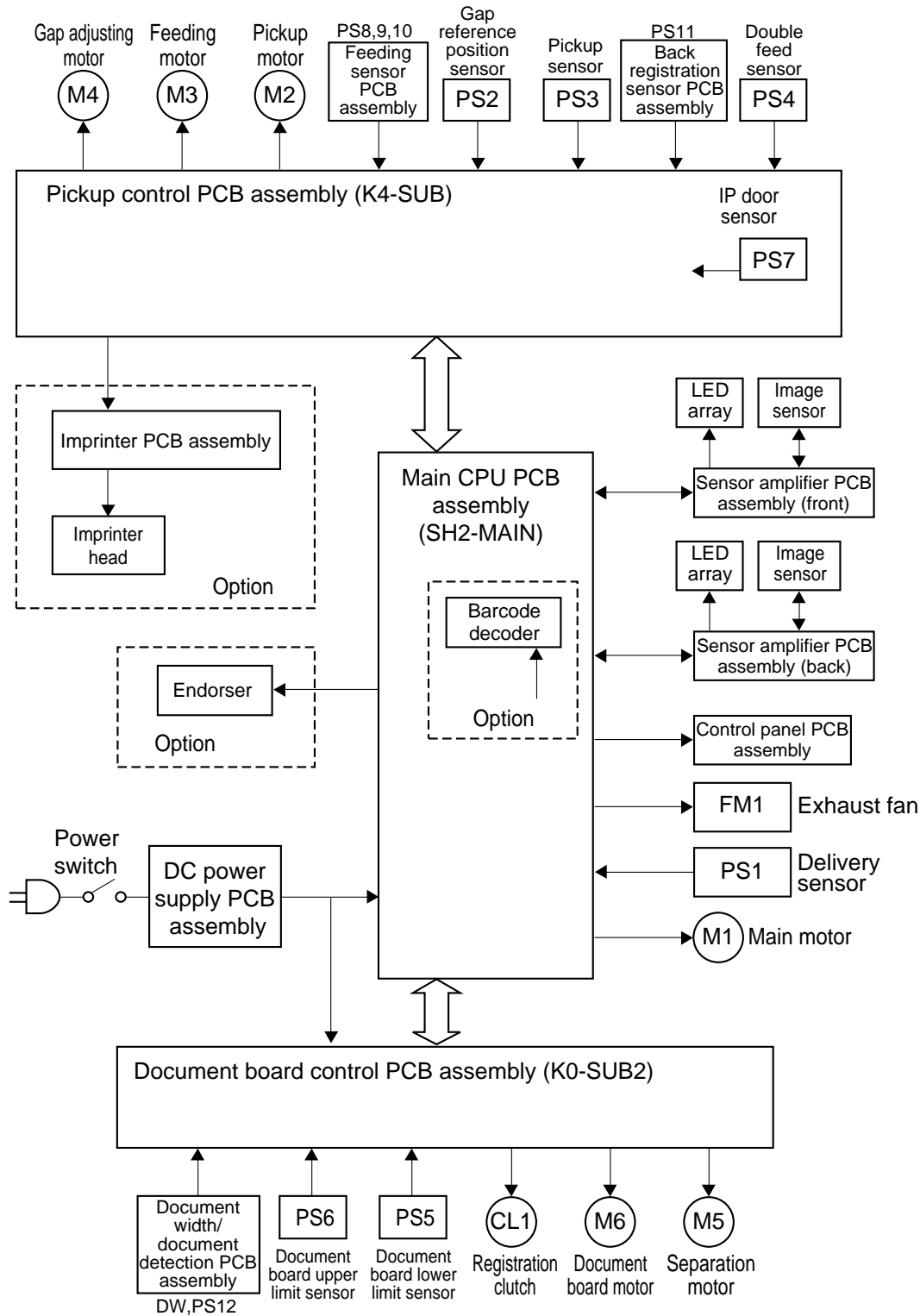


Fig. 3-4

The main electrical control of this machine is performed by a single CPU on the main CPU PCB assembly.

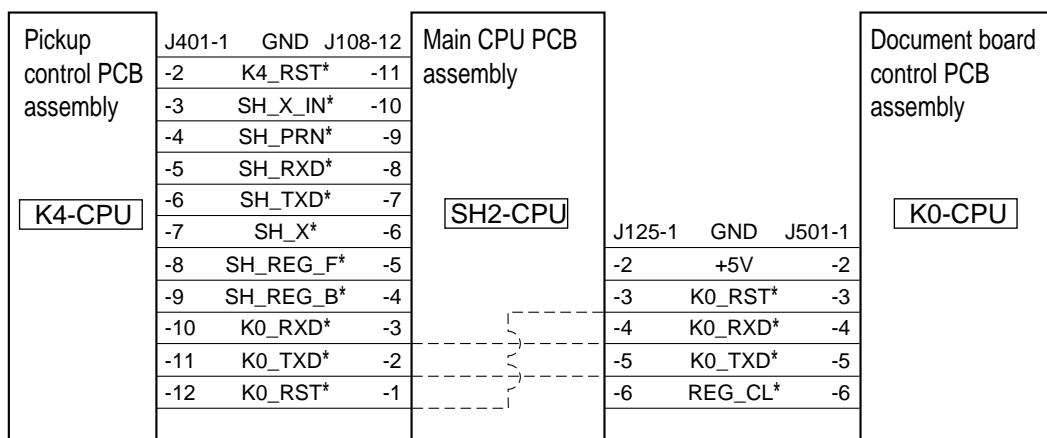
The main functions of SH2-CPU (IC135) are:

- Generation of operational timing on main CPU PCB assembly.
- Control of image data processing.
- Control of main motor and reading assembly
- Instructions to pickup control PCB assembly and document board control PCB assembly

CPU (K4-CPU) on the pickup control PCB assembly performs pickup control of the document based on signals from the main CPU PCB assembly.

CPU (K0-CPU) on the document board control PCB assembly performs document board control and other functions based on signals from the main CPU PCB assembly and the pickup control PCB assembly.

Fig. 3-5 shows the signals between PCB assemblies.



- K4_RST* : K4-CPU reset signal
- SH_X_IN* : Spare
- SH_PRN* : Imprinter (option) print starting position instruction
- SH_RXD*, SH_TXD* : For communication with SH2-CPU and K4-CPU
- SH_X* : Signal to permit driving registration roller
- SH_REG_F* : Front registration sensor document sensing signal
- SH_REG-B* : Back registration sensor document sensing signal
- K0_RXD*, K0_TXD* : For communication with K4-CPU and K0-CPU
- K0_RST* : K0-CPU reset signal
- REG_CL* : Registration clutch operating signal

Note:The asterisk “*” after the name of the signal denotes the signal is a low active signal.

Fig. 3-5

5. Input to and Output from Main PCB Assemblies

a. Main CPU PCB assembly (SH2-MAIN)

Fig. 3-6 shows the input to and output from the main CPU PCB assembly.

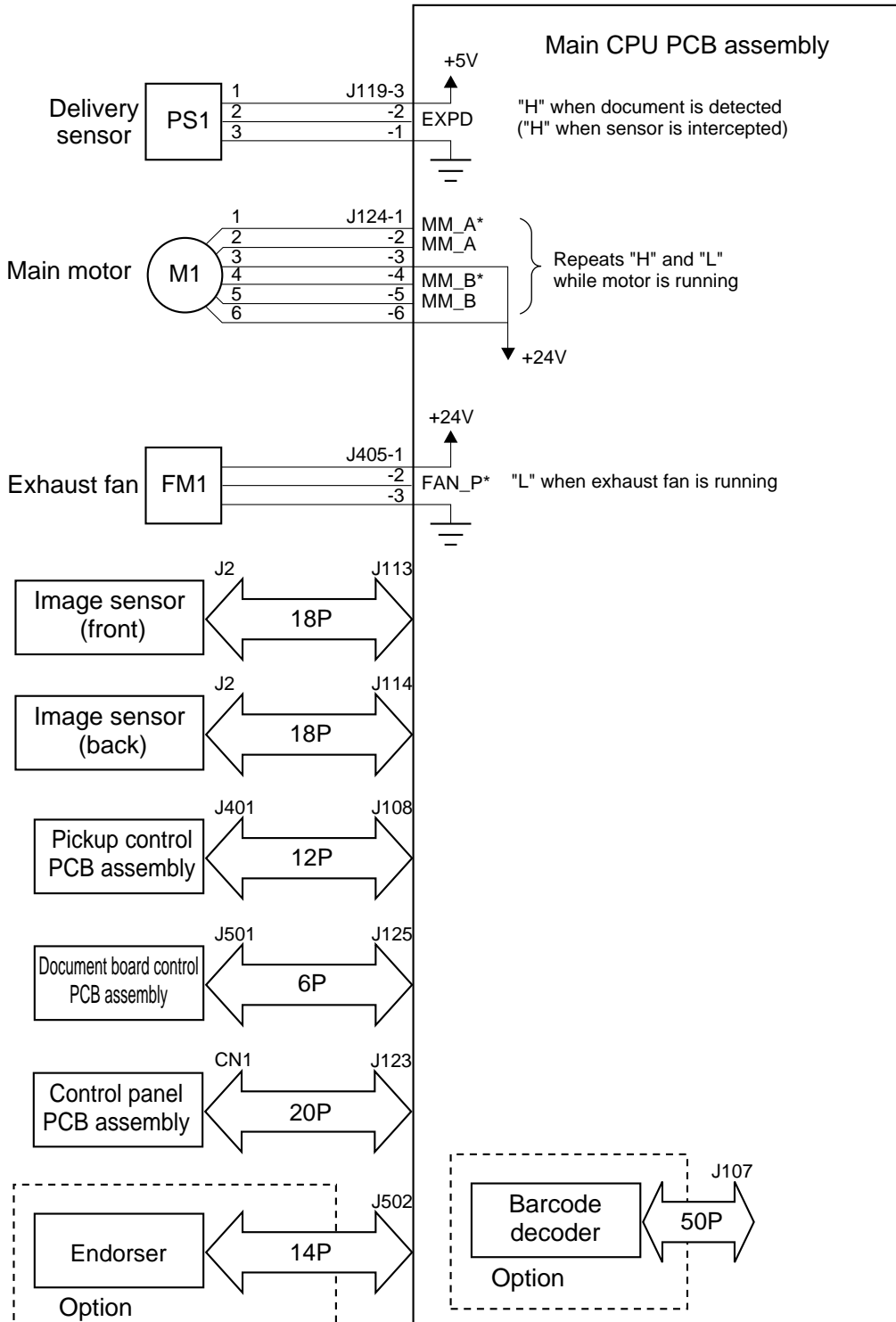


Fig. 3-6

b. Pickup Control PCB assembly (K4-SUB)

Figs. 3-7 and 3-8 show the input to and output from the pickup control PCB assembly.

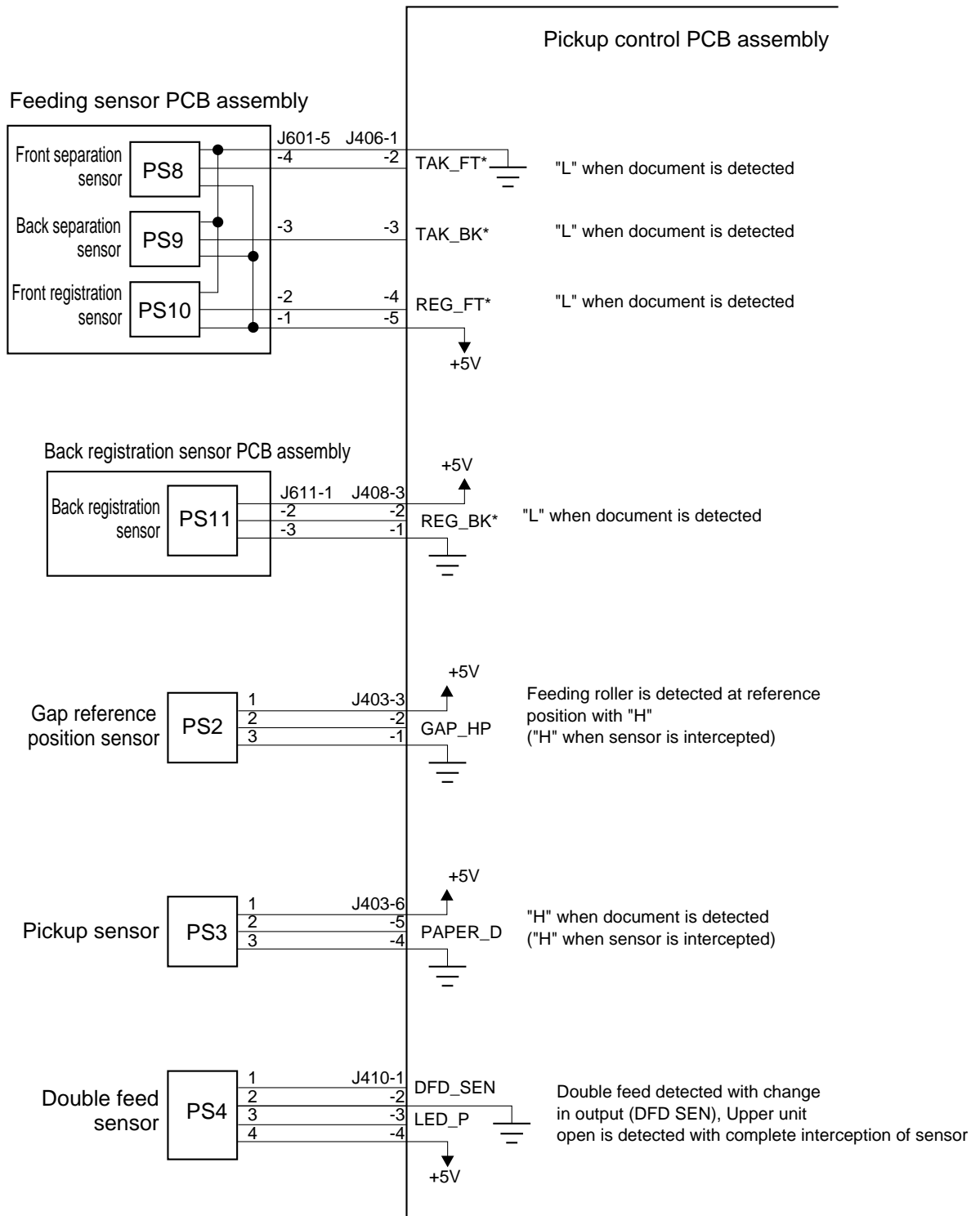


Fig. 3-7

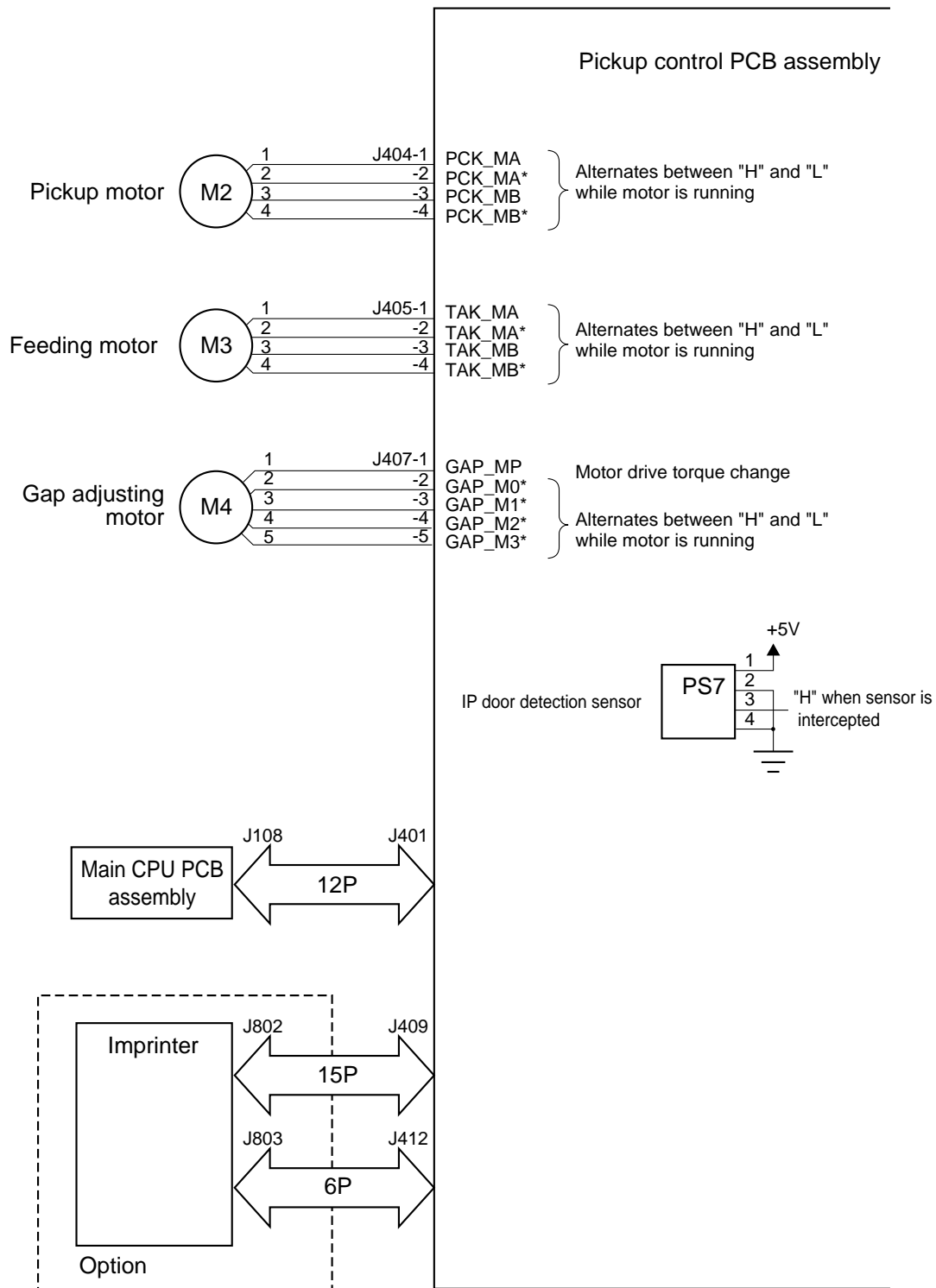


Fig. 3-8

c. Document Board Control PCB assembly (K0-SUB2)

Fig. 3-9 shows the input to and output from the document board control PCB assembly.

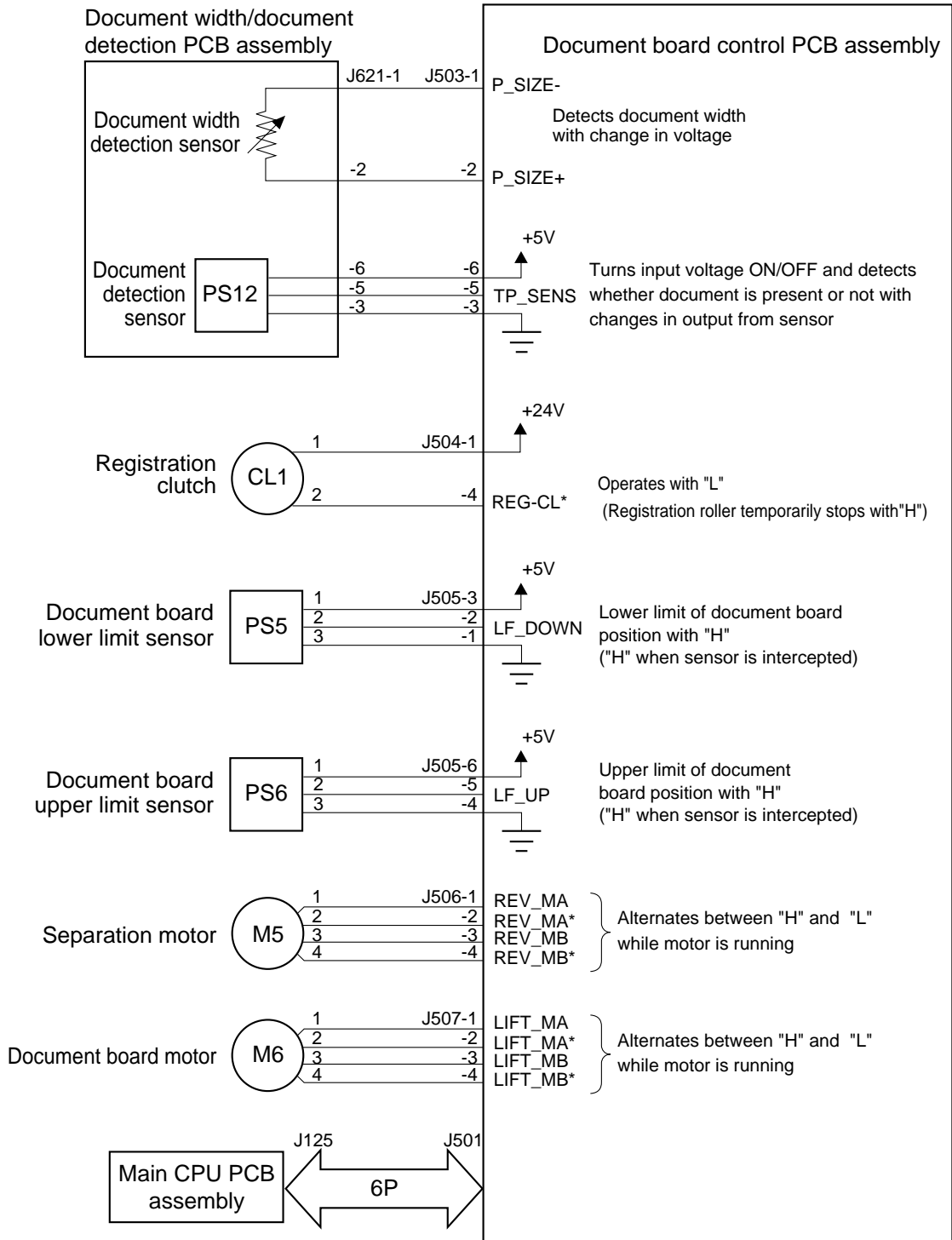


Fig. 3-9

6. Power ON Sequence

Fig. 3-10 shows the sequence of this machine when power is turned ON.

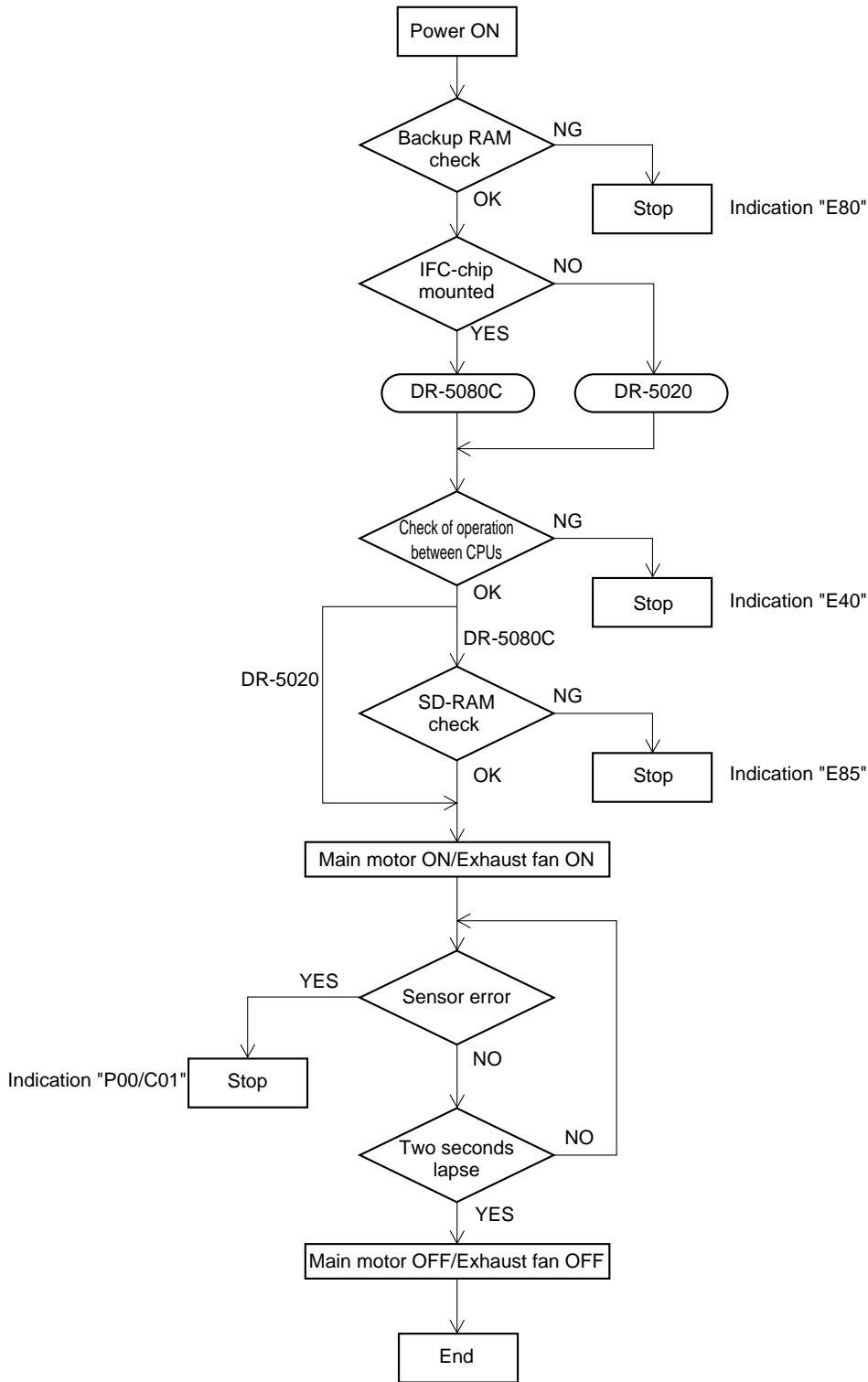


Fig. 3-10

II. EXPOSURE SYSTEM

1. Image Reading Assembly

Fig. 3-11 shows the image reading assembly.

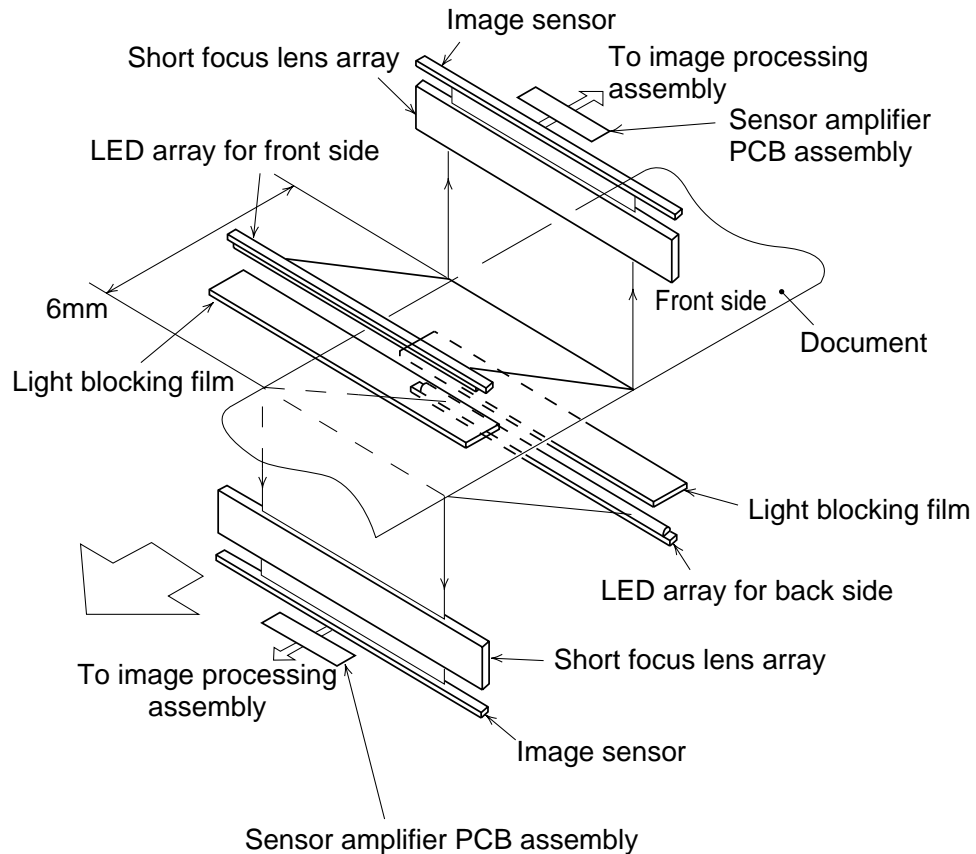


Fig. 3-11

The document is illuminated front and back at the image reading area by two LED arrays while being fed with the speed depend on the output mode and resolution.

The light reflected from the document converges, via the short focus lens arrays, on to the image sensor to form an image of equal size.

The front and back sides of the document are read at points that are offset by 6 mm in order to prevent the image on the back side of the document from being read through to the front side.

Light reflected from the document is photo-electrically converted by the image sensors and the resulting signals are variously processed by the image processing assembly.

While the image is being read out, light in the vertical direction from the LED array is blocked by a light blocking film. By this means, the outside of the document is made "black."

III. DOCUMENT FEED SYSTEM

A. OUTLINE

Fig. 3-12 shows the cross section of the document feed system and Fig. 3-13 shows the timing chart.

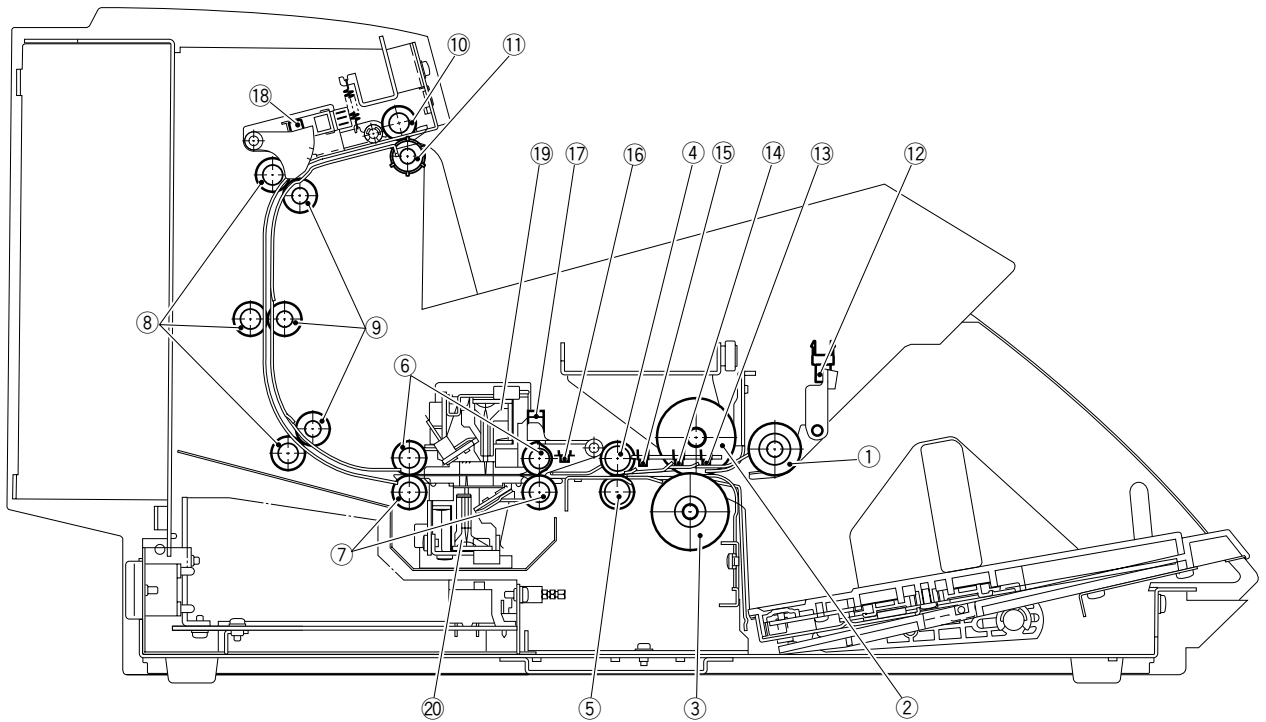
The various drive rollers are rotated by having drive transmitted from motors via gears and timing belts.

Also various sensors for control are positioned in the system.

The document feed system is equipped with the following mechanisms.

- Document board driving mechanism
During pickup, this assembly raises the document board, and when pickup is finished, lowers it.
- Pickup roller load changing mechanism
To change the pickup roller load, makes the pickup operation better for the thin and soft document include the pressure sensitive paper.
- Manual pickup switch-over mechanism
This mechanism is designed to switch over from automatic pickup to manual pickup. When the manual pickup is selected, the drive of the separation roller stops to cancel the separation function.
- Automatic paper thickness adjustment and skew feed correction mechanism
Adjusts paper thickness and corrects skew feed by moving the feeding roller up or down automatically. For details, refer to the next section, B.

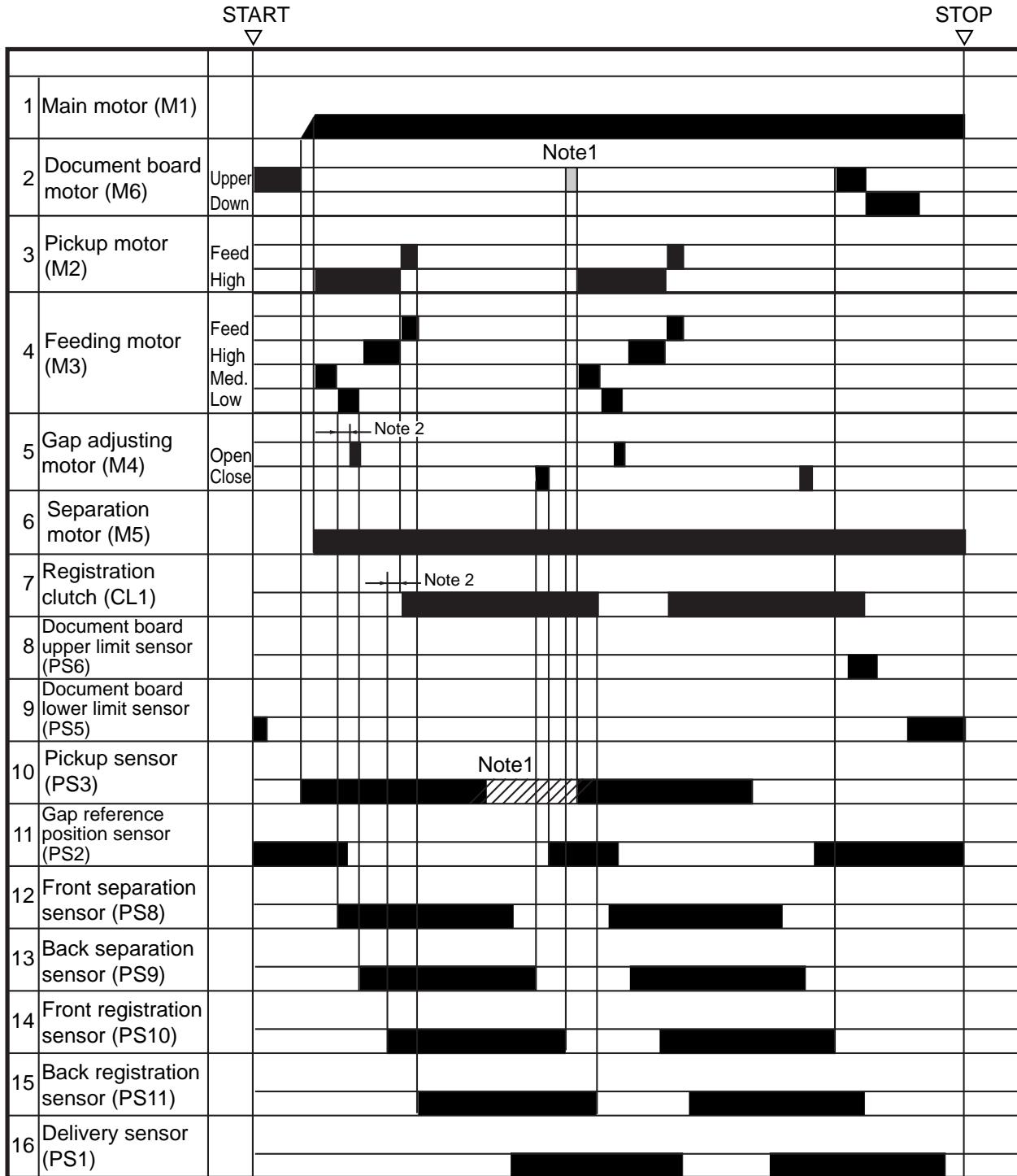
The roller parts of the lower registration roller and the lower reading roller, and part of the roller part of the feed drive roller are made of metal. This serves to reduce changes in the outside dimensions of the roller parts and variations in feed speed.



- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ① Pickup roller (drive) | ⑪ Delivery follower roller |
| ② Feeding roller (drive) | ⑫ Pickup sensor |
| ③ Separation roller (drive) | ⑬ Front separation sensor |
| ④ Upper registration roller (drive) | ⑭ Back separation sensor |
| ⑤ Lower registration roller (drive) | ⑮ Front registration sensor |
| ⑥ Upper reading roller | ⑯ Back registration sensor |
| ⑦ Lower reading roller (drive) | ⑰ Double feed sensor |
| ⑧ Feed drive roller | ⑱ Delivery sensor |
| ⑨ Feed follower roller | ⑲ Upper reading unit |
| ⑩ Delivery drive roller | ⑳ Lower reading unit |

Fig. 3-12

Feed conditions: 1. Automatic pickup 2. Automatic paper thickness adjustment
3. Two sheets 4. Non temporary stop



Note 1: For the thick documents, the pickup sensor with the oblique line area is OFF and the document board motor with the gray area is ON, then the document board goes up until the pickup sensor turn ON. For the thin documents, the document board does not go up.

Note 2: This is a waiting time for the screw feed correction.

Fig. 3-13

B. AUTOMATIC PAPER THICKNESS ADJUSTMENT AND SKEW FEED CORRECTION

1. Document Feed Flow

The following describes the document feed flow. Refer to Fig. 3-14.

- 1) The document is picked up by the pickup roller and arrives at the feeding roller and separation roller position.
- 2) As the feeding roller is underneath and there is no gap between the feeding roller and the separation roller, the document strikes the face of the roller.
- 3) As the pickup roller continues to rotate, if the document is skewed it is corrected.
- 4) The leading edge of the document is detected by the front separation sensor, and after the time set for skew correction is over, the feeding roller moves up.
- 5) The document is fed out when a gap for a single document has opened.
- 6) When the leading edge of the document is detected by the back separation sensor, the feeding roller stops moving up.
- 7) The document fed out strikes the face of the upper and lower registration rollers and is again corrected for skew feed.
- 8) The leading edge of the document is detected by the front registration sensor, and after the time set for skew correction is over, the registration clutch comes ON.
- 9) The upper and lower registration rollers start rotating, and the document is fed out.

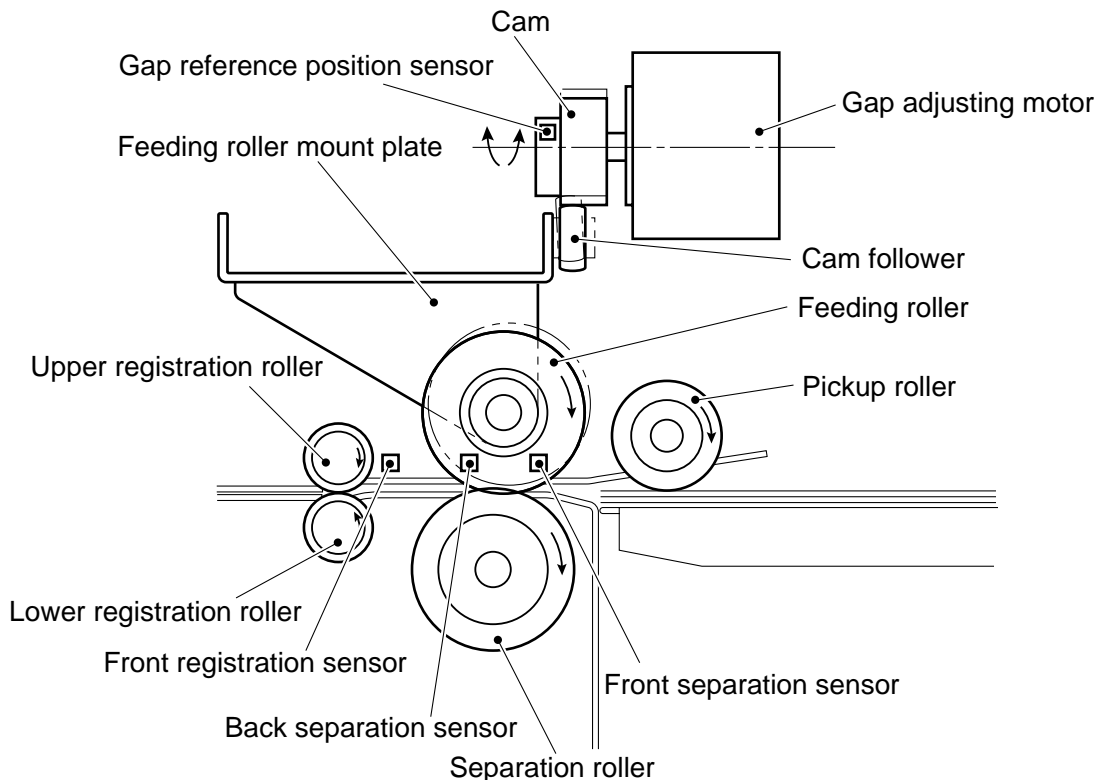


Fig. 3-14

2. Feeding Roller Raising and Lowering Drive Flow

A cam has been force-fitted on to the output shaft of the gap adjusting motor. This cam is in contact with a cam follower which is attached to the feeding roller mount plate. Refer to Fig. 3-14.

The following describes the raising and lowering drive flow of the feeding roller.

a. Raising

- 1) The leading edge of the document is detected by the front separation sensor, and after the time set for skew feed correction is over, the gap adjusting motor starts rotating.
- 2) When the gap adjusting motor rotates the cam follower rises. The feeding roller mount plate is under tension by a tension spring.
- 3) When the cam follower rises, the feeding roller mount plate tilts.
- 4) When the feeding roller mount plate tilts, the feeding roller rises.
- 5) When the leading edge of the document is detected by the back separation sensor, the gap adjusting motor stops.

b. Lowering

- 1) When the trailing edge of the document is detected by the back separation sensor, the gap adjusting motor starts to rotate in reverse.
- 2) The cam pushes the cam follower and makes the feeding roller descend.
- 3) When the gap reference position sensor comes ON, the gap adjusting motor stops.

3. Manual Paper Thickness Adjusting

For the documents which are thick or thin very much, the automatic paper thickness adjusting may not work. Therefore the manual paper thickness adjusting is selected.

When this manual mode is selected, the documents are fed through the fixed gap which is set in advance. Also, the skew correction does not work.

C. FEED ERROR DETECTION

1. Document jam

This machine is equipped with the sensors to detect document jams.

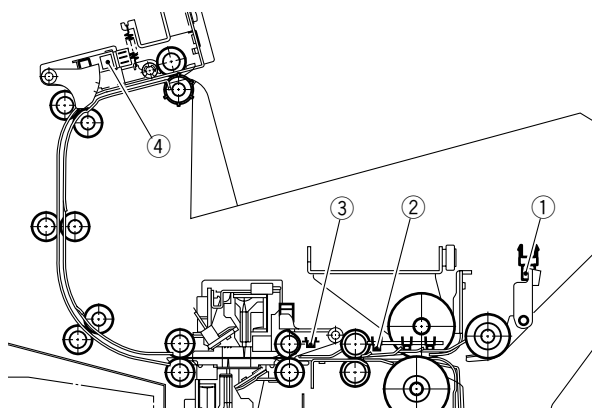


Fig. 3-15

No.	Sensor No.	Sensor Name
①	PS3	Pickup sensor
②	PS10	Front registration sensor
③	PS11	Back registration sensor
④	PS1	Delivery sensor

Table 3-2

An error code corresponding to the detected condition shall be displayed on the operation panel. The conditions of the respective error codes are as follows.

Note 1: In case that two conditions or more of error codes occur, the error code of the condition detected first shall be displayed.

Note 2: Each specified time depends on the feeding speed.

1) Error Code: P01

It took more than 30 seconds for a document to reach the front registration sensor after detected by the pickup sensor. (Delay jam at the front registration)

Usually the pickup error code "P80" is displayed first.

2) Error Code: P02

It took more than the specified time for a document to pass through the front registration sensor after detected by the back registration sensor. (Stagnation jam at the front registration)

3) Error Code: P04

It took more than the specified time for a document to reach the back registration sensor after detected by the front registration sensor. (Delay jam at the back registration)

4) Error Code: P08

It took more than the specified time for a document to pass through the back registration sensor after the passing of the document was detected by the front registration sensor. (Stagnation jam at the back registration)

5) Error Code: P10

It took more than the specified time for a document to reach the delivery sensor after detected by the back registration sensor. (Delay jam at the delivery)

6) Error Code: P20

It took more than the specified time for a document to pass through the delivery sensor after detected by the deliver sensor. (Stagnation jam at the delivery)

2. Pickup error detection

When the machine can not pickup the document, the document board retries the up and down three times maximum. Though the machine can not pickup the document, the error code "P80" is displayed. The conditions of the pickup error are as follows.

- 1) It took more than the specified time for a document to reach the front separation sensor (PS8) after detected by the pickup sensor (PS3).
- 2) It took more than the specified time for a document to reach the back separation sensor (PS9) after detected by the front separation sensor.
- 3) It took more than the specified time for a document to reach the front registration sensor (PS10) after detected by the back separation sensor.

3. Skew feed detection

Skew feed detection is carried out by the image sensor of the upper reading unit. It shall be judged as an error when there are more than 2 degrees of skew as a result of calculating the data of the right and left edge positions on the leading edge of the document and those at the 30mm fed point. The error code is "P18".

4. Double feed detection

Double feed detection is carried out by the double feed sensor (PS4). The output from the double feed sensor changes in an analog-like manner according to the rotating amount (angle) of the sensor lever at the passing of a document. By this change, not only the existence of the document but also the thickness of the document is detected. Moreover, this change is used for the detection to open and close the upper unit.

In the case that the double feed detection is set, it is judged as an double feed error when the second or later detected documents exceed the ranges between 0.8 and 1.5 times in thickness, or ± 50 mm in length based on the first detected document.

- 1) Error Code: d01
Detected by thickness.
- 2) Error Code: d02
Detected by length.
- 3) Error Code: d03
Detected by both thickness and length.

IV. DESCRIPTION OF ELECTRICAL CIRCUITS

A. MAIN CPU PCB ASSEMBLY

1. Outline

The main CPU PCB assembly (SH2-MAIN) mainly performs image processing.

Fig. 3-16 shows a block diagram of the flow of image data. The block diagram shows the main elements.

The analog signals output from the image sensor in four blocks are made into a composite by an amplifier and an analog switch. They are then converted to 8-bit digital signals by an A/D converter and sent to the image processing controller (CIS-Chip).

The image data input into the image processing controller are subjected to re-arranging of the picture elements and a combining of the front and back. After that, dark compensation, shading compensation, and gamma compensation are performed.

If binary AE is selected, the image data is output to the ABC circuit and judged for density by the CPU.

If a resolution of 400 dpi is selected, the resolution is converted and sent to the binary image processing controller (IFB-Chip) via the line memory.

At the binary image processing controller, edge emphasis is carried out using the line memory. If, at that time a resolution of less than 300 dpi is selected, the resolution is converted by thinning out the read-in clock.

After edge emphasis has been carried out, binarizing is performed by simple binarizing or by error diffusion. Error diffusion processing is carried out by an error diffusion processing controller (GENESIS).

If neg./pos. reversion is selected, the processing is performed when binarizing is carried out.

Thin line complementation, dot erasing and

notch compensation, are carried out on the binarized image data. After that, the data is stored in binary image memory and transmitted to external equipment via an SCSI protocol controller (SPC-Chip).

When processing gray scale and color image data with DR-5080C, the data is sent to the gray scale/color image processing controller (IFC-Chip) after edge emphasis.

At the gray scale/color image processing controller, after storing the image data in gray scale/color image memory, the data is transmitted to external equipment via the SCSI protocol controller (SPC-Chip).

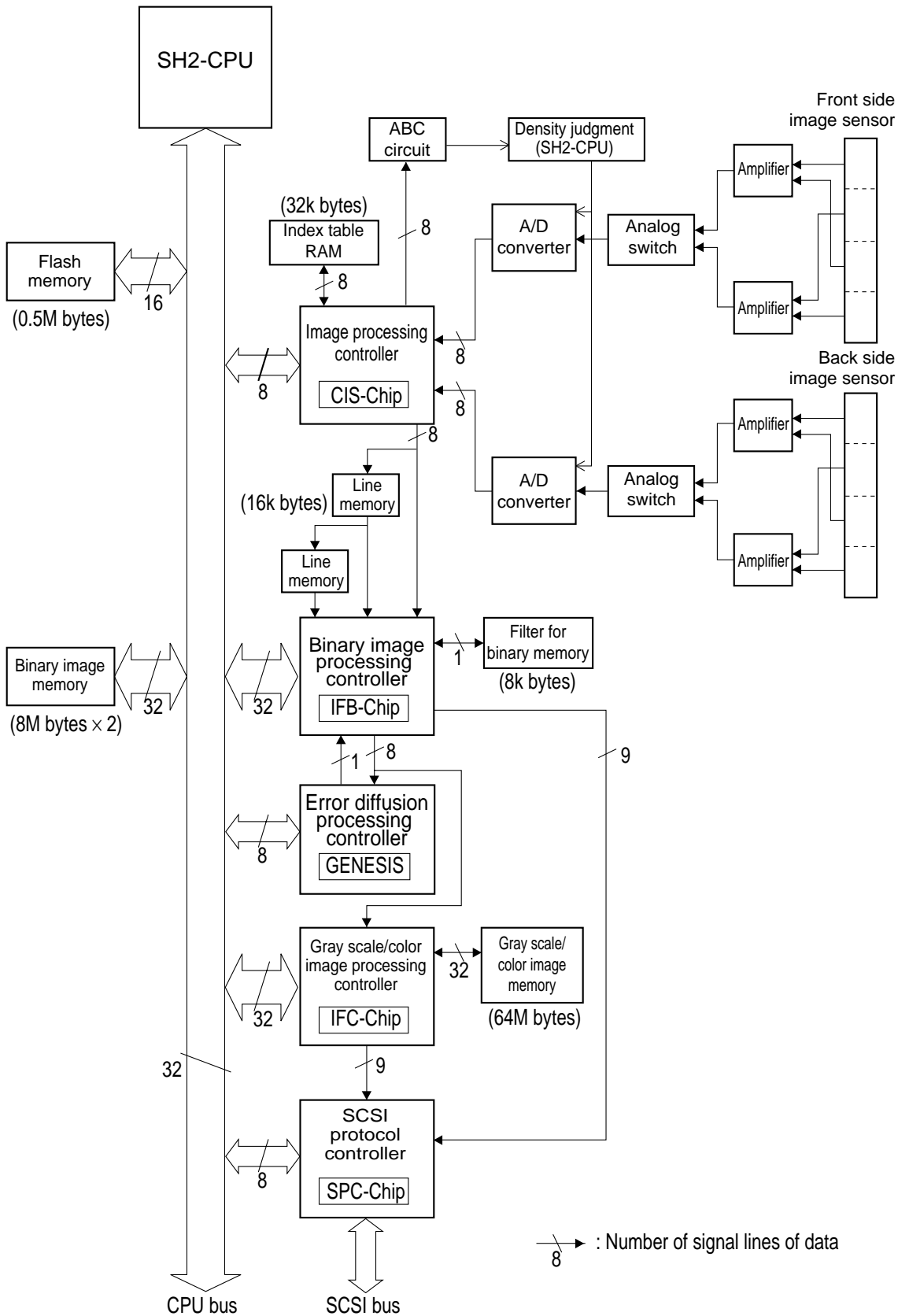


Fig. 3-16

2. CPU Circuit

Table 3-3 shows the main function of the IC and Fig. 3-17 shows a block diagram of the main CPU PCB assembly.

Control of this machine is performed by a 32-bit CPU (IC135).

IC101 (IFC-Chip)	Gate array for gray scale and color image processing (DR-5080C only)
IC111, IC114	Line memory (16k bytes × 2)
IC112, IC113, IC115, IC116	Line memory for color image data processing (16k bytes × 4) (DR-5080C only)
IC117	Index table RAM (32k bytes)
IC121 (CIS-Chip)	Gate array for driving image sensor and for gray scale image processing
IC133	Flash memory for writing various kinds of data (0.5M bytes)
IC135 (CPU)	Microprocessor which controls this machine
IC145 (SPC-Chip)	Gate array for controlling interface for SCSI
IC155, IC513 (GENESIS)	Gate array for error diffusion processing
IC156	Memory for thin line complement, dot erasing and notch compensation (8k bytes)
IC164 (IFB-Chip)	Gate array for binarizing and image processing
IC531, IC532	Memory for binary and 3-bit color image data (8M bytes × 2)
SD-RAM	Memory for gray scale and color image data (64M bytes) (DR-5080C only)

Table 3-3

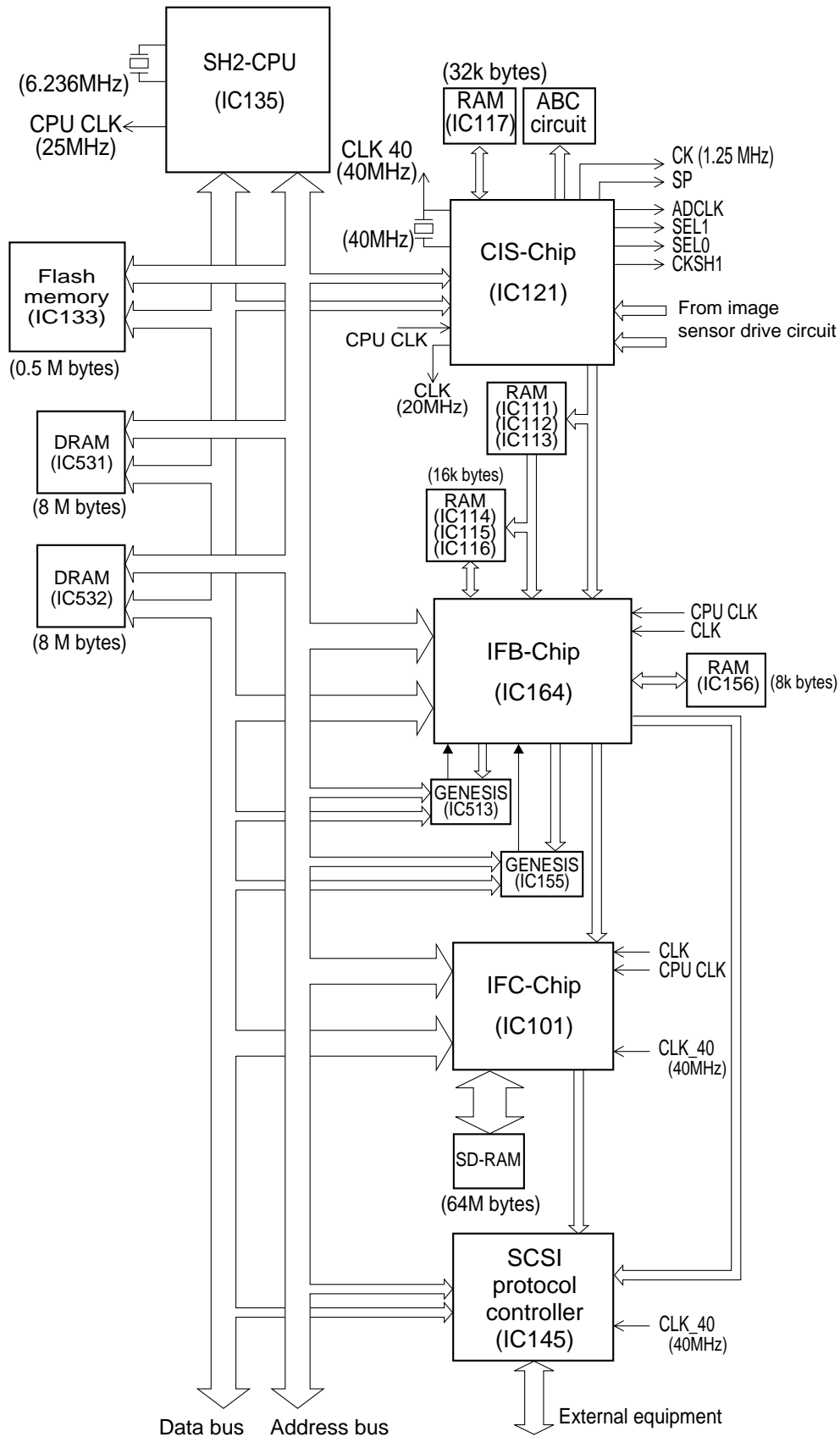


Fig. 3-17

3. Image Sensor Drive Circuit

a. Outline

This circuit consists of the amplifiers, analog switches and A/D converters.

It amplifies and combines the four blocks of analog signals that are output from the image sensor. After that, the signals are converted to digital signals and output to the image processing controller (CIS-Chip).

b. Configuration of Image Sensor

Fig. 3-18 shows the configuration of the image sensor.

The image sensor used in this machine is made up of 15 chips. Each chip has 234 photo-sensitive elements arranged in it.

The 15 chips are divided into four blocks of 4 : 4 : 3. The document is read at the same time by the four blocks and analog signals are output from each block.

The first 7 bits of chip 1 and the last 7 bits of chip 15 of the image sensor are not in use.

The maximum number of picture elements of the image sensor is:

15 (the number of chips) \times 234 (the number of elements per chip) - 14 (the number of elements not in use) = 3496 picture elements.

But each 32 bits processing is done in the image processing, $3,488$ multiple of 32 are effective picture elements. (When the output resolution is 300 dpi.)

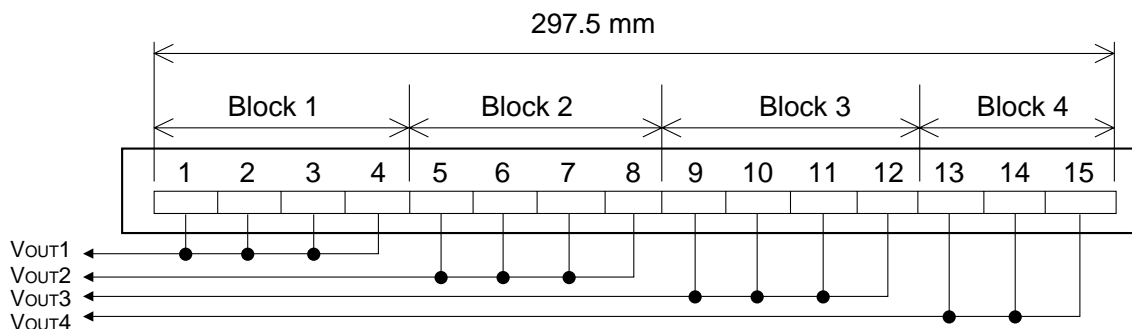


Fig. 3-18

There are two image sensors in this machine, which respectively read the image on the front and back of the document.

The data of each block are output at the same

time in order to speed up the reading of image data. Also, the front side and the back side data are output at the same time.

Fig. 3-19 shows the timing chart of the operation of the image sensor.

SP is the line interval signal indicating a one line interval.

CK is the image sensor drive clock and operates at 1.25 MHz.

The four blocks of signals output are denoted as V_{out1} , V_{out2} , V_{out3} , and V_{out4} .

The 1 to 26 pulse intervals of the CK signals of V_{out1} , V_{out2} , V_{out3} , and V_{out4} are the clamp intervals (52 bits).

The 27 to 30 pulse intervals of the CK signals of V_{out1} are the dummy bits (7 bits) and are the invalid bits of the image sensor.

In V_{out1} , 30 to 495 pulse intervals of CK signals are effective bits and are output from the 8th bit to the 936th bit as image signals (S1 to S929).

Blocks V_{out2} and V_{out3} are all effective bits, so 27 to 495 pulse intervals of CK signals are output as image signals (S930 to S1865, and S1866 to S2801).

In V_{out4} , 27 to 374 pulse intervals of CK signals are effective bits and are output from the 1st bit to the 695th bit as image signals (S2802 to S3496).

The 374 to 378 pulse intervals of CK signals of V_{out4} are dummy bits (7 bits) and the invalid bits of the image sensor.

Finally 3,496 (S1 to S3496) image signals per one line are output. For the color mode, 3496 image signals for each color RGB are output.

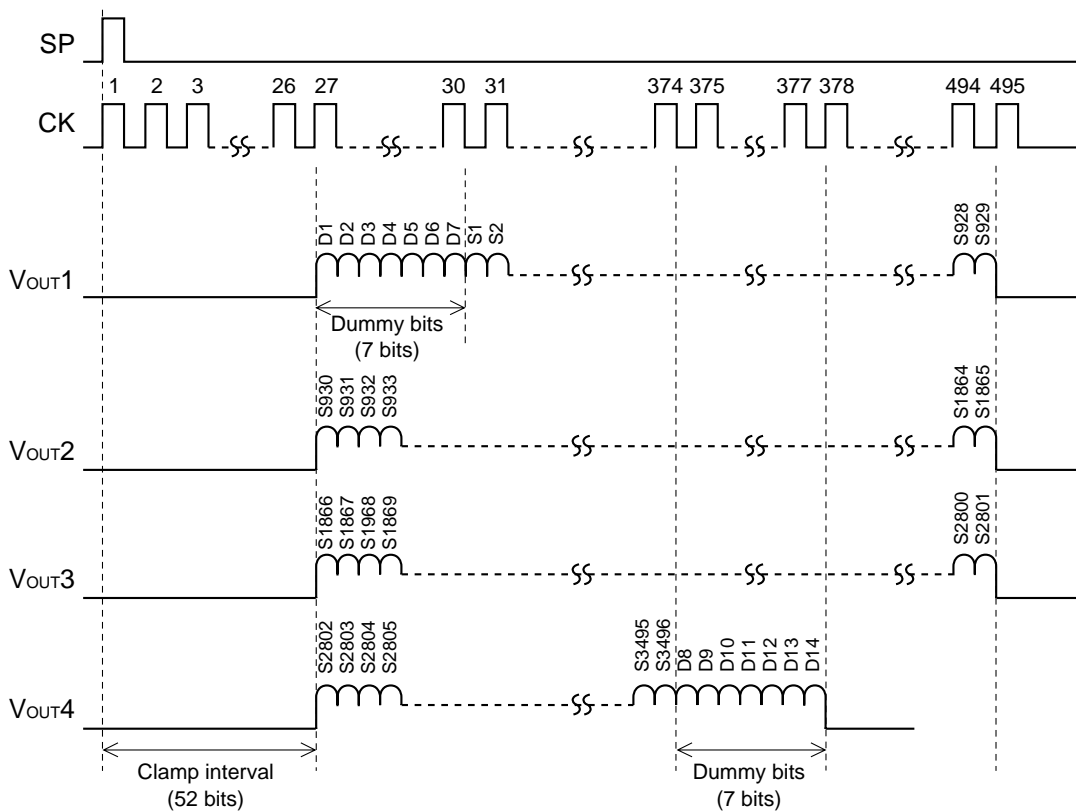


Fig. 3-19

c. Operation

Fig. 3-20 shows the block diagram of the image sensor drive circuit.

The four blocks of analog signals from the image sensor are respectively output to the main CPU PCB assembly as V_{out1} , V_{out2} , V_{out3} , and V_{out4} .

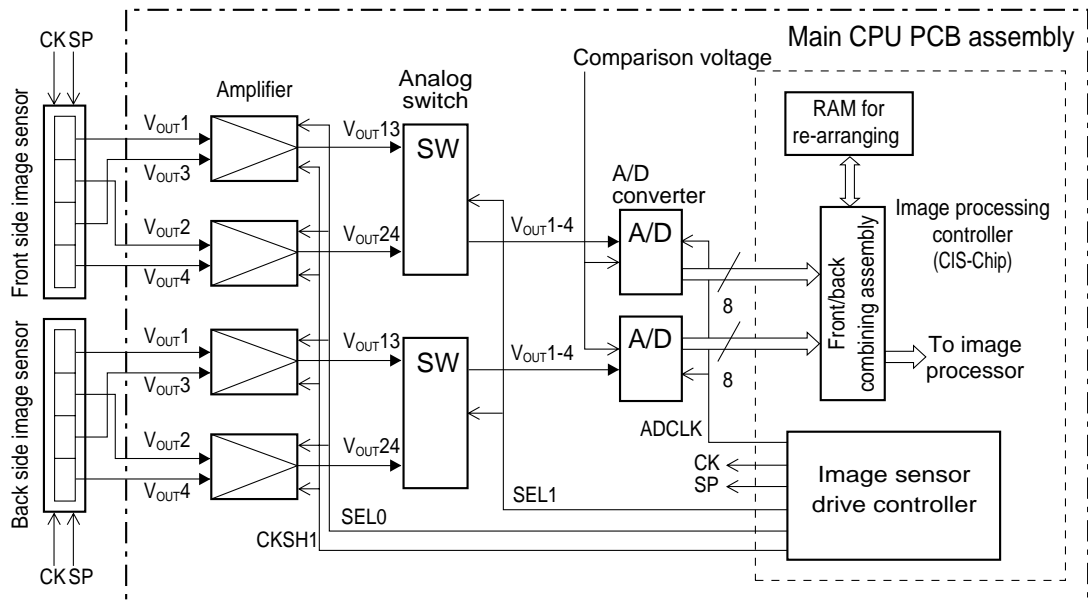
Image sensor drive clock (CK) and line interval signals (SP) are input in the image sensor.

When line interval signal comes ON, the potential held synchronizes with the drive clock and

is transmitted successively.

The analog signals output from the image sensor are amplified by amplifiers and are converted by A/D converters into 8-bit digital signals.

After that, they are sent to the image processing controller (CIS-Chip) where image data re-arrangement and combining of front and back are carried out.



- SP : Line interval signal
- CK : Image sensor drive clock
- CKSH1 : Amplifier read timing signal
- SEL0 : Amplifier read switching signal
- SEL1 : Analog switch switching signal
- ADCLK : A/D conversion sampling signal

Fig. 3-20

Fig. 3-21 is the procedure by which the analog signals output from one image sensor are combined. But, V_{OUT2} and V_{OUT4} are omitted in this figure, and this is for the binary and gray scale mode.

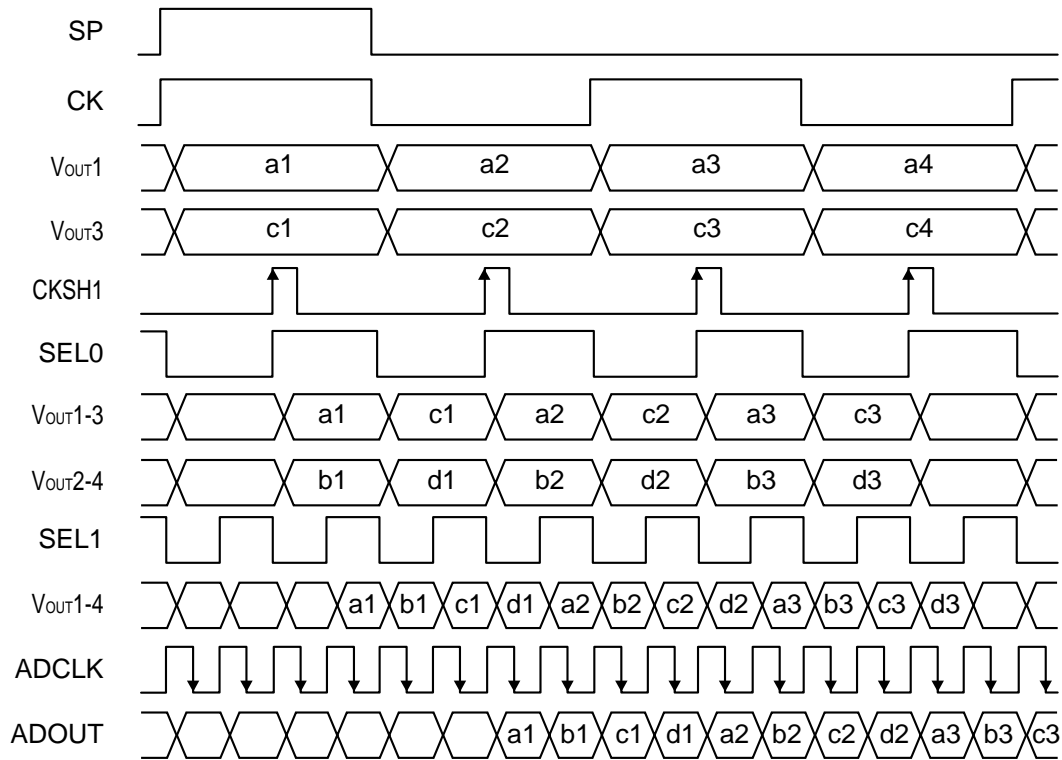


Fig. 3-21

The picture elements output from V_{out1} are each expressed as a1, a2, a3 and so on. Similarly, the output from V_{out2} is expressed as b1, b2, b3, ..., the output from V_{out3} as c1, c2, c3, ..., and the output from V_{out4} as d1, d2, d3,

The analog signal of each element of the 4 blocks is synchronized with the image sensor drive clock, and successively output and input into amplifiers as V_{out1} , V_{out2} , V_{out3} , and V_{out4} .

V_{out1} and V_{out3} , and V_{out2} and V_{out4} are input into the same amplifiers. The amplifiers combine the analog signals by means of read timing signals (CKSH1) and switching signals (SEL0)

The signals output from the amplifiers are respectively output as V_{out13} and V_{out24} .

The analog switch combines V_{out13} and V_{out24} by means of switching signals (SEL1), and outputs the resultant signals as V_{out1-4} .

The A/D converter converts V_{out1-4} into 8-bit digital signals by means of A/D sampling signals

(ADCLK), and outputs the signals to the image processing controller.

As the sequence of the picture elements of one line of combined image data has been interchanged, the picture elements are re-arranged using the RAM for that purpose in the image processing controller, and sent out with the front and back as one set to the image processor.

4. Image Processing Controller Circuit (CIS-Chip)

a. Outline

This circuit performs image processing of the image data output from the image sensor drive circuit, and outputs the result to the binary image processing controller (IFB-Chip).

This circuit has the following functions.

- Image processing
- Generating of standard clock for image processing
- Generating of drive timing signals for two (front and back) image sensors
- Controlling of LED for scanning color image data

b. Operation

Fig. 3-22 shows the block diagram of the image processing controller (CIS-Chip)

The image data from the image sensor drive circuit of the front side and back side of the document are sent at the same time to the image processing controller.

The front and back combining assembly in the image processing controller re-arranges the image data in one line and combines the front and back sides. (Refer to Fig. 3-23) The RAM in the image processing controller is used in these processes.

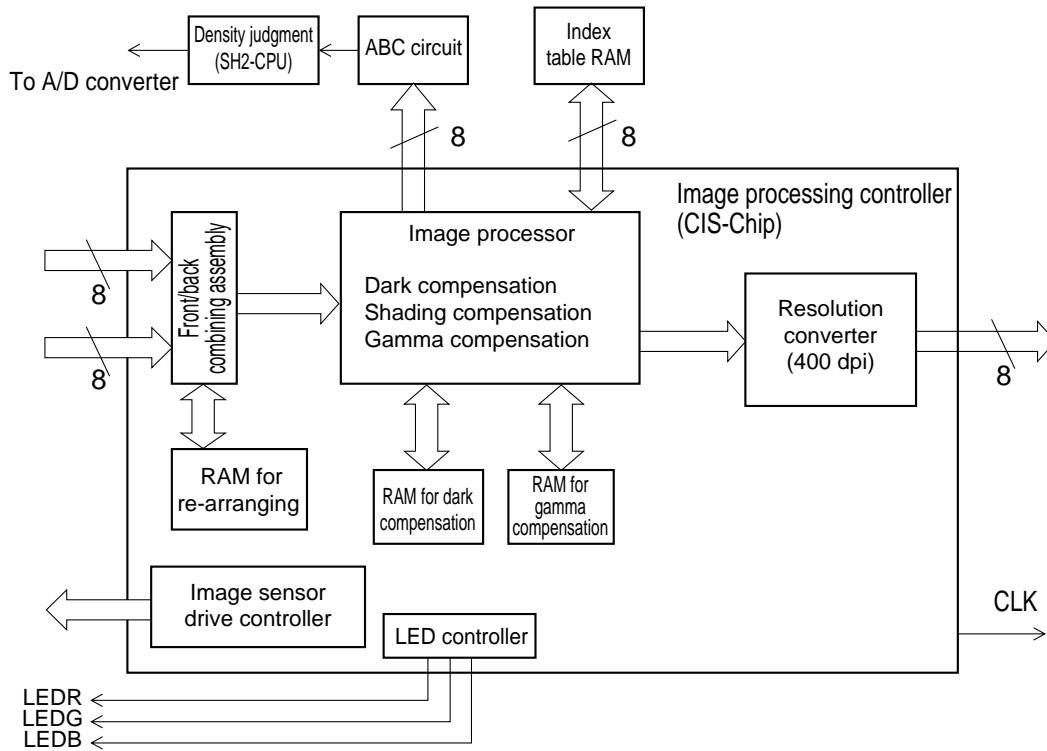
The combined image data is sent to the image processor where dark compensation, shading compensation and gamma compensation are carried out.

The compensation factor for shading compensation is stored in the index table RAM. The compensation values for dark compensation and gamma compensation are stored in the RAM in the image processing controller.

If binary AE is selected, the image data is sent to the ABC circuit and density judgment is made by the SH2-CPU.

If 400 dpi resolution is selected, processing is carried out by the resolution converter.

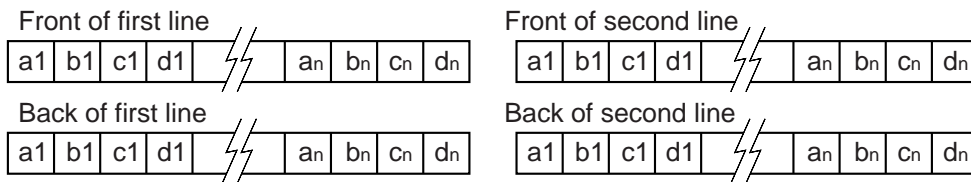
After that, the data is output to the binary image processing controller (IFB-Chip).



LEDR : Control signal of red (R) LED
 LEDG : Control signal of green (G) LED
 LEDB : Control signal of blue (B) LED
 CLK : Standard clock for image processing

Fig. 3-22

- Input into front/back combining assembly



- Output from front/back combining assembly

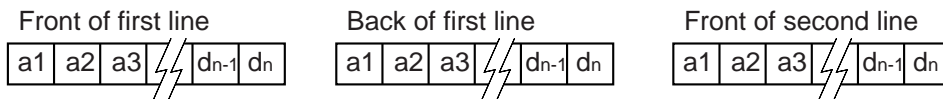


Fig. 3-23

5. Binary Image Processing Controller Circuit (IFB-Chip)

a. Outline

This circuit performs image processing of the image data output from the image processing controller (CIS-Chip), and after storing in the binary image memory, outputs the data to the SCSI protocol controller (SPC-Chip).

If gray scale or color mode is selected, the data is output to the gray scale/color image processing controller (IFC-Chip).

This circuit has the following functions.

- Image processing
- Serial/parallel conversion for transmitting image data at high speed

b. Description of Circuit

Fig. 3-24 shows the block diagram of the binary image processing controller (IFB-Chip).

Note that the numbers in the diagram correspond to the numbers (① to ⑧) in this description.

- 1) The 8 bit image data output from the image processing controller is input into the binary image processing controller via line memory.

①

Operation of edge emphasis in the vertical scanning direction is performed using line memory.

If a resolution less than 300 dpi is selected, resolution conversion is performed by thinning out the read timing signals at this time.

The read timing signals for resolution conversion are generated in the binary image processing controller based on the standard clock (CLK) for image processing.

- 2) After edge emphasis is carried out, binarizing of the image data is performed.

If simple binarizing is selected, the data is sent to the simple binarizing processor and binarized. ②

If error diffusion is selected, the data is sent to the error diffusion processing controller, ③ where error diffusion processing is performed, and then returned to the binary image processing controller.

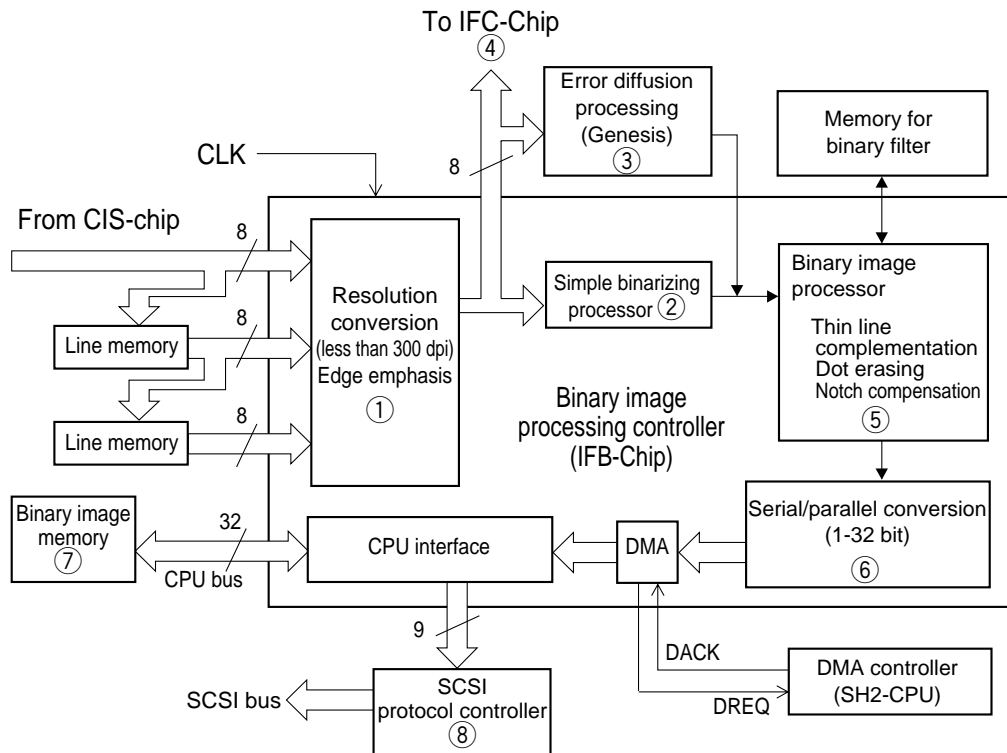
At this point, if a gray scale or color image is to be processed with DR-5080C, the data is sent to the gray scale/color image processing controller. ④

- 3) The binarized image data undergoes thin line

complementation, dot erasing, and notch compensation at the binary image processor. ⑤
The memory for binary filter is used in these processes.

- 4) After image processing has been performed, the data is converted to 32 bit parallel signals for high speed transmission, ⑥ and stored in the binary image memory by DMA transmission via CPU bus. ⑦

- 5) The image data stored in the binary image memory is again DMA transmitted via the CPU bus and returned to the binary image processing controller. The data is then sent via the exclusive 9 bit bus to the SCSI protocol controller. ⑧



DREQ : DMA transmission request signal
 DACK : DMA request acknowledgment signal
 CLK : Standard clock for image processing

Fig. 3-24

Information

- **DMA (Direct Memory Access)**
 This is transmission of data directly between memory and device without going through the CPU. Control is performed by the DMA controller.

6. Gray Scale/Color Image Processing Controller Circuit (IFC-Chip, DR-5080C only)

a. Outline

This circuit stores the 8 bit gray scale or color image data output from the binary image processing controller (IFB-Chip) in gray scale/color image memory, and outputs the data to the SCSI protocol controller (SPC-Chip).

This circuit has the following functions.

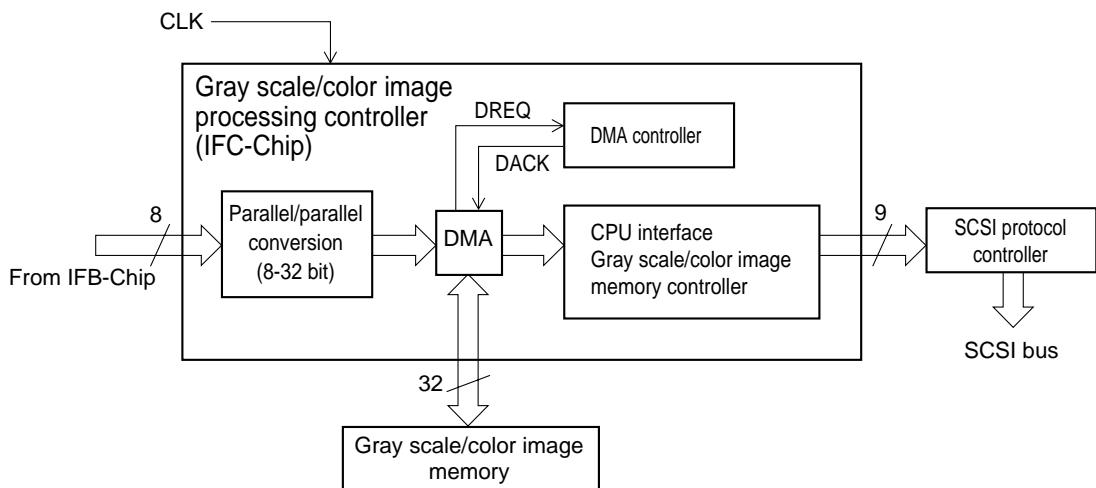
- Bit number changing of image data
- Parallel/parallel conversion for high speed transmission of image data
- Control of gray scale/color image memory

b. Description of Circuit

Fig. 3-25 shows the block diagram of the gray scale/color image processing controller (IFC-Chip)

The 8 bit gray scale or color image data output from the binary image processing controller (IFB-Chip) is converted to 32 bit parallel signals for high speed transmission, and stored in gray scale/color image memory by DMA transmission. At this time, if there is bit number changing, the data is stored in memory after bit number changing has been performed.

The image data stored in gray scale/color image memory is again DMA transmitted and returned to the gray scale/color image processing controller. After that, the data is sent via the exclusive 9 bit bus to the SCSI protocol controller.



DREQ : DMA transmission request signal
 DACK : DMA request acknowledgment signal
 CLK : Standard clock for image processing

Fig. 3-25

B. PICKUP CONTROL PCB ASSEMBLY

Fig. 3-26 shows the block diagram of the pickup control PCB assembly (K4-SUB).

K4-CPU in the pickup control PCB assembly has the following functions.

- Control of document pickup on command from main CPU PCB assembly

- Control of pickup motor, feeding motor, and gap adjusting motor
- Instructions to document board control PCB assembly
- Processing of signals from various sensors
- Printing of imprinter (option)

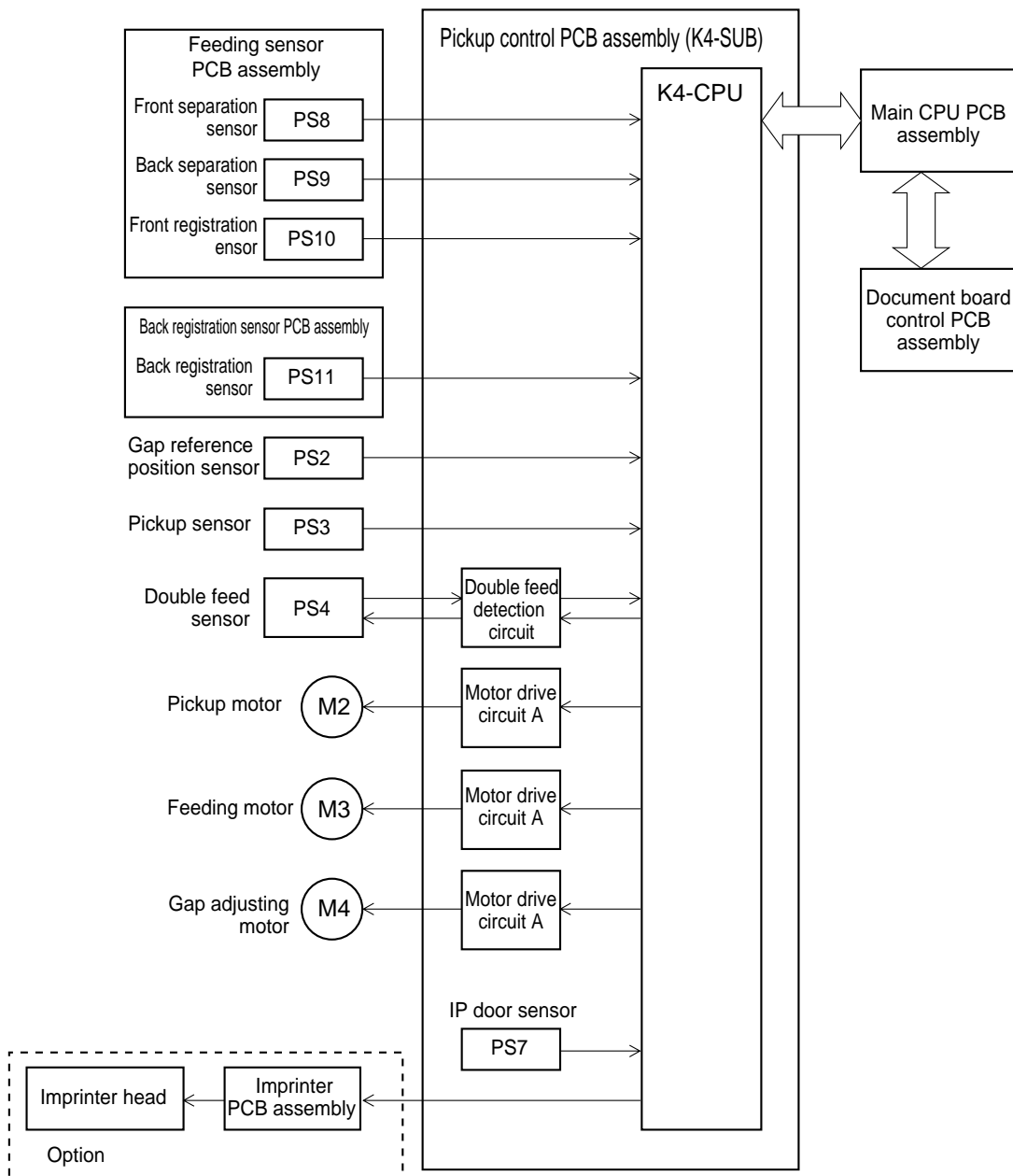


Fig. 3-26

C. DOCUMENT BOARD CONTROL PCB ASSEMBLY

Fig. 3-27 shows the block diagram of the document board control PCB assembly (K0-SUB2).

K0-CPU in the document board control PCB assembly has the following functions.

- Control of separation motor and document board motor on command from the pickup control PCB assembly
- Control of registration clutch on command from main CPU PCB assembly
- Processing of signals from various sensors

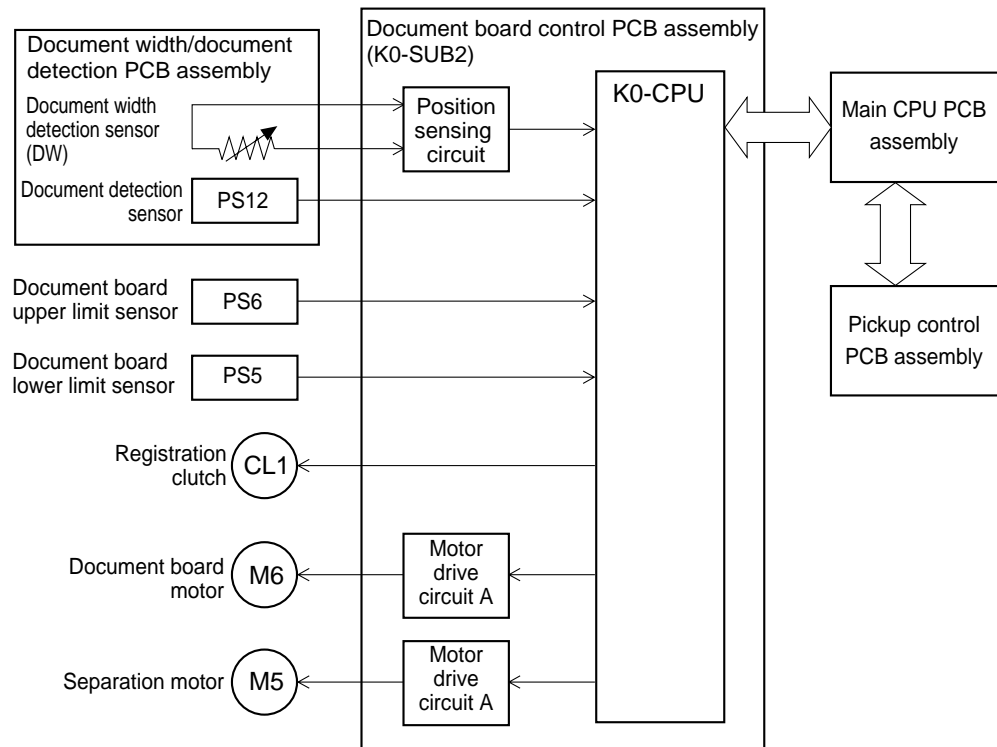


Fig. 3-27

D. MOTOR DRIVE CIRCUITS

This machine uses six stepping motors.

The following drive circuits are used in the six stepping motors.

M1	Main motor	Main motor drive circuit
M2	Pickup motor	Motor drive circuit A
M3	Feeding motor	Motor drive circuit A
M4	Gap adjusting motor	Motor drive circuit B
M5	Separation motor	Motor drive circuit A
M6	Document board motor	Motor drive circuit A

Table 3-4

1. Main Motor Drive Circuit

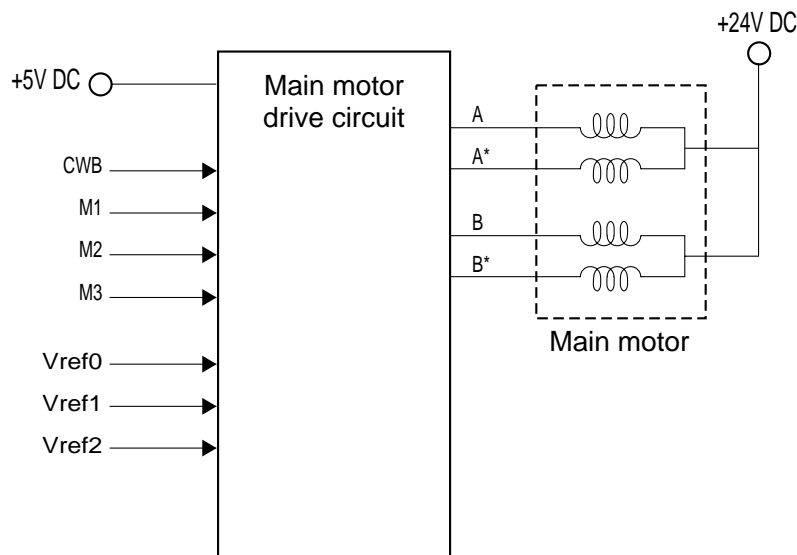
The main motor drive circuit is used in the main motor. The main motor is a 4-phase stepping motor.

The angle of rotation of the motor is 1.8°/step with 2 phase excitation.

Fig. 3-28 shows the block diagram of the drive circuit.

The drive circuit drives the motor with signals from the main CPU PCB assembly. The main motor changes the excitation mode by combinations of M1, M2, and M3 signals. Vref0, Vref1, and Vref2 signals are combined to change the motor drive current.

Table 3-5 shows examples of the combination of signals.



- CWB : Setting of rotating direction
- M1, M2, M3 : Switching of excitation mode
- Vref0, Vref1, Vref2 : Setting of electric current

Fig. 3-28

Binary/gray scale	Color	Excitation pattern	M1	M2	M3	Vref0	Vref1	Vref2
100~149 dpi		2 phase excitation	L	L	H	H	L	L
150~199 dpi		1 - 2 phase excitation	L	L	L	L	H	L
200~299 dpi		W1 - 2 phase excitation	H	L	L	H	H	L
300~399 dpi	100~149 dpi	W1 - 2 phase excitation	H	L	L	L	L	H
400 dpi	150~199 dpi	2W1 - 2 phase excitation	L	H	L	H	L	H
	200~299 dpi	4W1 - 2 phase excitation	H	H	L	L	H	H
	300 dpi or more	4W1 - 2 phase excitation	H	H	L	H	H	H

Table 3-5

2. Motor Drive Circuit A

Motor drive circuit A is used in the pickup motor, feeding motor, separation motor, and document board motor. Fig. 3-29 shows the block diagram of the drive circuit.

The circuit drives the motors by changing the electric current and direction of flow (polarity) of A phase and B phase. The stepping motors are 2 phase and the angle of rotation is 7.5-/step.

Various excitation patterns can be output by combinations of each input signals.

Table 3-6 shows the input and output.

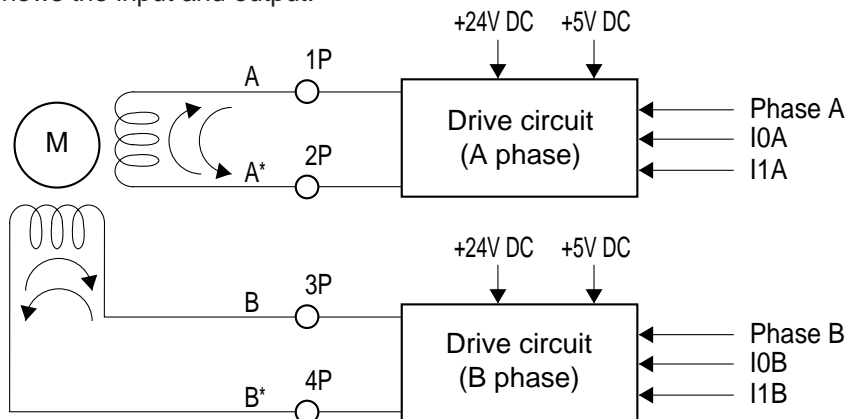


Fig. 3-29

Phase A / Phase B	Direction of current
L	A*→A / B*→B
H	A→A* / B→B*

I0A / I0B	I1A / I1B	Output current
L	L	500 mA
H	L	333 mA
L	H	167 mA
H	H	0 mA

Table 3-6

3. Motor Drive Circuit B

Motor drive circuit B is used in the gap adjusting motor. Fig. 3-30 shows the block diagram of the drive circuit.

The gap adjusting motor is a 4 phase stepping motor and is driven by 1 - 2 phase excitation. The angle of rotation of the motor is 3.75°/step with 1 - 2 phase excitation.

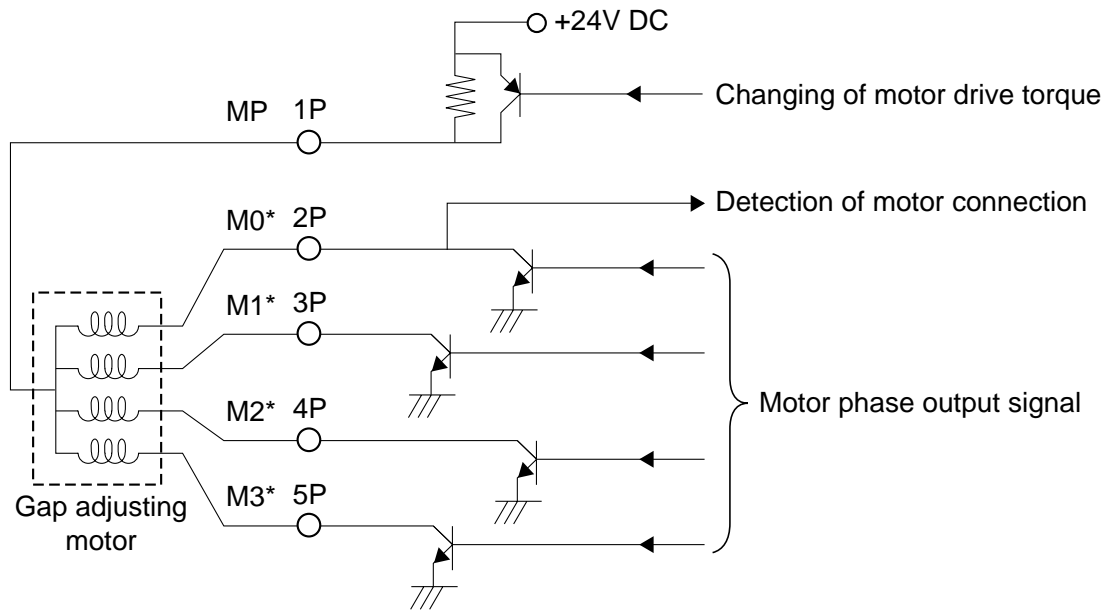


Fig. 3-30

V. OPTIONS

1. Imprinter (DR-5020/5080C)

a. Outline

This machine is capable of printing characters on the document if an imprinter is installed in the machine.

The printing position in the width direction is set by selecting one of the 15 installation holes in the machine. The printing position in the feed direction is set from the personal computer at a position 5 mm or more from the leading edge of the

document.

The printing ink is stored in the ink container which is an integral part of the IP head. The IP head is a consumable and is replaced by the user when it runs out of ink.

For setting the printing positions and for other operating methods, refer to the instruction manual.

The installation of the imprinter is done by the service technician. Refer to Chapter 5, Installation, on how to install the imprinter.

Table 3-7 shows the main specification and Fig. 3-31 shows the layout.

No.	Item	Specification
1	Printing method	On demand type, ink jet method
2	Configuration 1) Main body 2) Consumable	a) Imprinter (IP) PCB assembly b) IP mount unit c) IP drain pad unit d) IP PCB cable assembly e) FPC stopper 2 IP head
3	IP head related 1) Image density 2) Font 3) Ink 4) Setting method	12 nozzles/slant 1 row (about 50 dpi) a) 9 × 9 dots b) 12 × 12 dots Water base ink, Color : Black With lever
4	Printed related 1) Characters 2) Number of figures 3) Printing direction 4) Printing position	a) Numerals : 0 to 9 b) Alphabet : A to Z (Capital/small letter) c) Symbols : Refer to instruction manual Max. 32 a) Printing direction : Parallel to feed direction b) Character direction : Set angle of rotation a) Width direction : Select one from 15 installation holes b) Feed direction : Set 5 mm or more from leading edge
5	Power source	Supplied from DR-5020/5080C

Table 3-7

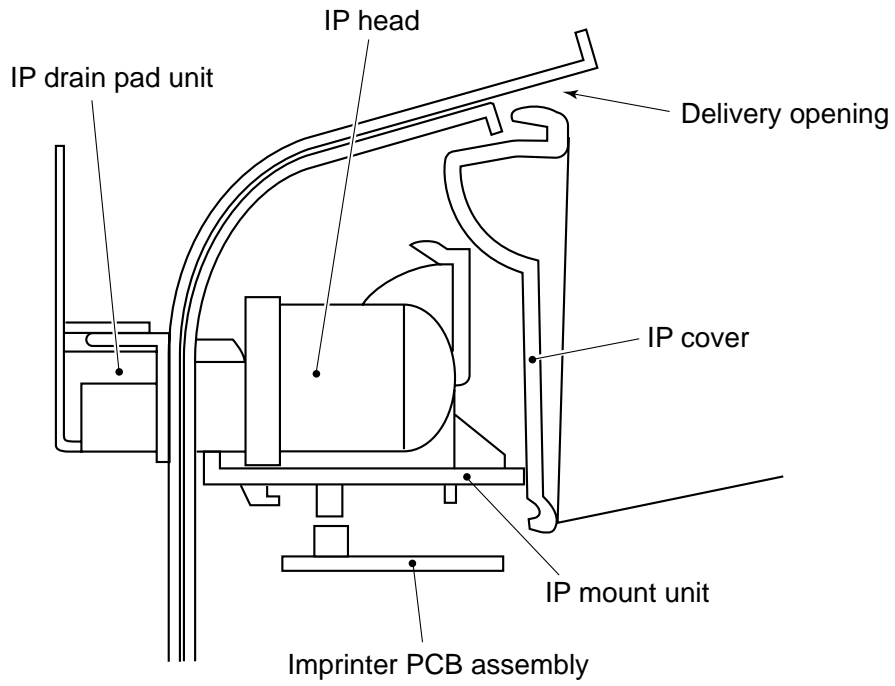


Fig. 3-31

b. Electrical circuit

Fig. 3-32 shows the signals of the PCB assemblies.

Pickup control PCB assembly (K4-SUB)	J412-1	+24V	J803-6	Imprinter PCB assembly	J801-1	P-PWR	J17-1	IP head
	-2	+5V	-5		-2	P-OUT11*	-2	
	-3	P-CLK	-4		-3	P-OUT12*	-3	
	-4	PP-SEN	-3		-4	P-OUT10*	-4	
	-5	GND	-2		-5	P-OUT1*	-5	
	-6	GND	-1		-6	P-OUT2*	-6	
	J409-1	P-IN1*	J802-15		-7	P-OUT3*	-7	
	-2	P-IN2*	-14		-8	P-OUT4*	-8	
	-3	P-IN3*	-13		-9	P-OUT5*	-9	
	-4	P-IN4*	-12		-10	P-OUT6*	-10	
	-5	P-IN5*	-11		-11	P-OUT7*	-11	
	-6	P-IN6*	-10		-12	P-OUT9*	-12	
	-7	P-IN7*	-9		-13	P-OUT8*	-13	
	-8	P-IN8*	-8					
	-9	P-IN9*	-7					
-10	P-IN10*	-6						
-11	P-IN11*	-5						
-12	P-IN12*	-4						
-13	P-REV*	-3						
-14	P-PWR-D	-2						
-15	P-PWR-S	-1						

P-CLK : Imprinter drive clock
 PP-SEN : Head position sensing signal
 P-IN1* to P-IN12* : Drive signal input
 P-REV* : Drive voltage sensing signal
 P-PWR-D : +38 V drive signal
 P-PWR-S : +38 V sensing signal
 P-OUT1* to P-OUT12* : Drive signal output

Fig. 3-32

Fig. 3-33 shows the block diagram of the imprinter PCB assembly.

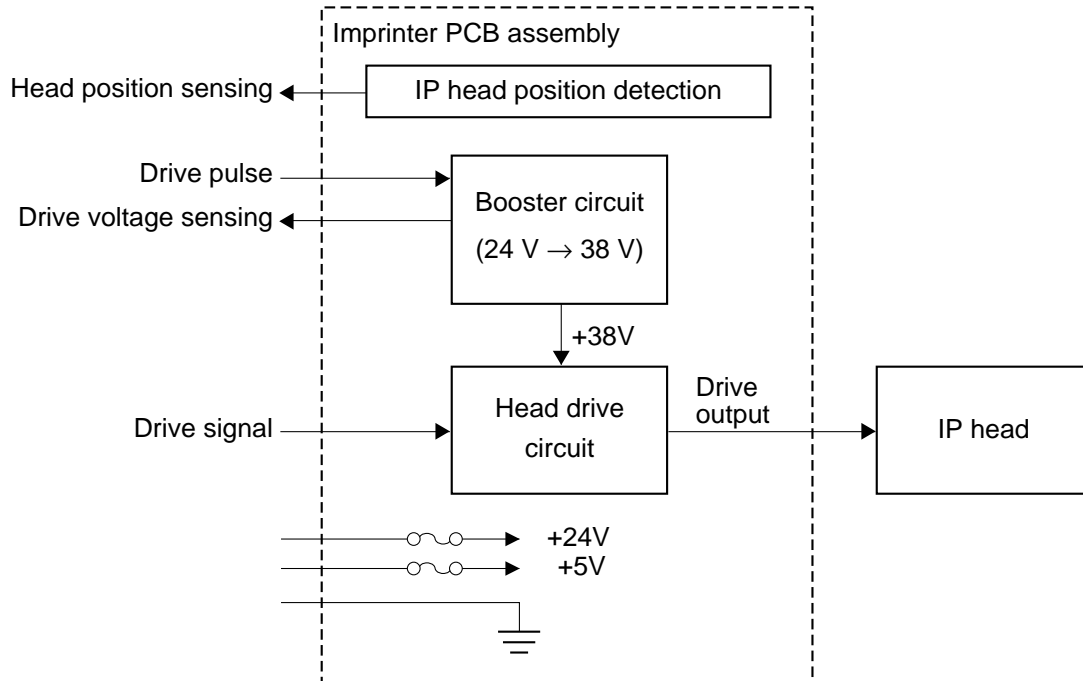


Fig. 3-33

2. Barcode Decoder (DR-5020/5080C)

a. Outline

This machine is capable of reading barcodes if a barcode decoder is installed in the main CPU PCB assembly.

The types of barcodes that can be read are UPC, EAN/JAN, Codabar, Code25/ITF, Code39, and Code128.

For how to operate the barcode decoder and other details, refer to the instruction manual.

The barcode decoder is installed by the service technician. For the method of installation, refer to Fig. 3-34.

Table 3-8 shows the main specifications.

No.	Item	Specification
1	Types	1) UPC 2) EAN/JAN 3) Codabar 4) Code25/ITF 5) Code39 6) Code128
2	Image mode	Binary or gray scale (not color)
3	Reading face	Front side or back side (not both sides)
4	Direction	Vertical to feed direction
5	Tilt	Shall be within $\pm 3^\circ$
6	Number	Four steps or less per one document (not side rows)

Table 3-8

b. Electrical circuits

The barcode decoder is made up of two PCB assemblies, a PCB assembly (BCR-CONV) which binarizes gray scale data for barcode use, and a PCB assembly (BCR-DEC) which decodes the barcode from that data.

The two integrated PCB assemblies are connected to the connector (J107) of the main CPU PCB assembly.

The layout is shown in Fig. 3-34.

The image data that is input into the barcode decoder is the gray scale data that is output from the line memory on the main CPU PCB assembly.

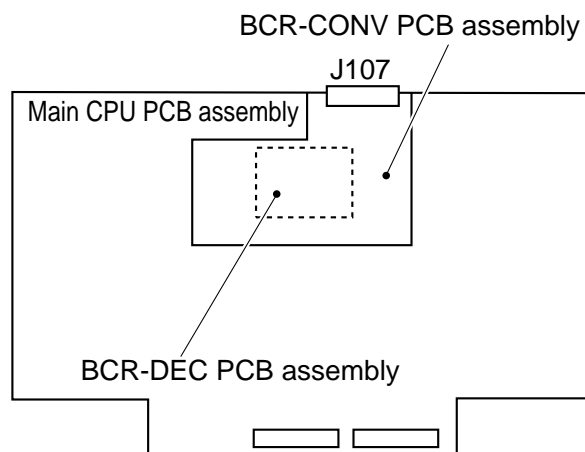


Fig. 3-34

3. Others

a. 128 MB Memory (DR-5080C)

DR-5080C is equipped with a 64 MB image memory for gray scale and color as standard equipment, but when the data size is great such as in 24 bit color output mode, the memory will not be able to cope. In such a case, it may be made possible by changing the 64 MB memory with a 128 MB memory.

The image memory is connected to the connector (J116) of the main CPU PCB assembly. On how to install the memory, refer to Chapter 5, Installation.

b. Red LED (DR-5020)

DR-5020 uses a yellow green LED unit, but by changing to a red LED unit, red dropout color becomes possible. On how to install the LED, refer to Chapter 5, Installation.

c. Endorser (DR-5020/5080C)

The endorser for DR-5020/5080C is expected to be placed on the market several months after sale of DR-5020/5080C has started.

Technical information will be issued separately, so refer to it when it is issued.

VI. INTERFACE

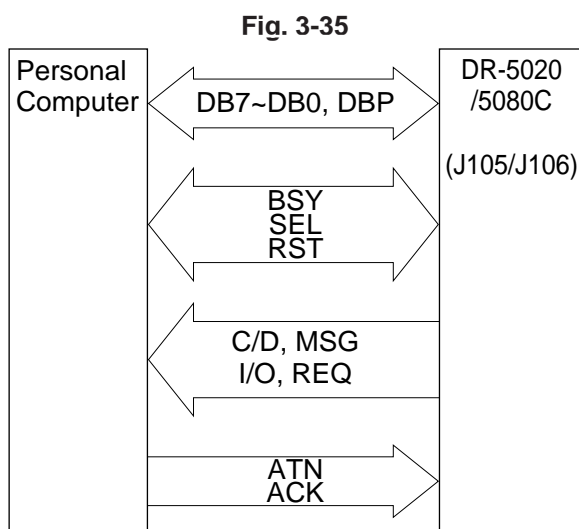
1. Outline

When sending data from this machine to a personal computer, the data is transmitted by an interface. This machine uses SCSI-2 (Small Computer System Interface-2) as the interface.

Also, as it handles Fast SCSI, data transmission of a maximum of 10 MB/sec. is possible.

Fig. 3-35 shows the input and output of data used by SCSI, and Table 3-9 shows the connectors and names of the signals.

The connector numbers of the main CPU PCB assembly are J105 and J106.



Pin No.	Name of Signal	Remarks
1-12	GND*	(Ground)
13	Open	(Non-connection)
14-25	GND	(Ground)
26	DB0*	(Data Bit 0)
27	DB1*	(Data Bit 1)
28	DB2*	(Data Bit 2)
29	DB3*	(Data Bit 3)
30	DB4*	(Data Bit 4)
31	DB5*	(Data Bit 5)
32	DB6*	(Data Bit 6)
33	DB7*	(Data Bit 7)
34	DBP*	(Odd Parity Data Bit)
35-37	GND	(Ground)
38	TERMPWR	(Termination Power)
39-40	GND	(Ground)
41	ATN*	(Attention)
42	GND	(Ground)
43	BSY*	(Busy)
44	ACK*	(Acknowledge)
45	RST*	(Reset)
46	MSG*	(Message)
47	SEL*	(Select)
48	C/D*	(Control/Data)
49	REQ*	(Request)
50	I/O*	(Input/Output)

The asterisk "*" at the end of the name of a signal denotes the signal is a low active one.

Table 3-9

The route of the data, SCSI bus, is made up of data signals (1 byte + parity bit = 9 signals) and control signals (9 signals) for a total of 18.

2. Control Method

The following is a brief explanation of the method of controlling DR-5020/5080C using SCSI bus.

Data is transmitted by setting the required state (phase) with control signals. Table 3-10 shows the explanation of the various phases.

The equipment connected to the SCSI bus is called the SCSI device. Also, the side that issues the command for data transmission is called the "initiator" and the side receiving the command and providing the data is called the "target." (Refer to Fig. 3-36)

No.	Name	Explanation	
1	BUS FREE phase	State in which SCSI bus is not used in any SCSI device	Phase which decides the state of use of the SCSI
2	ARBITRATION phase	Decides the SCSI device to use the SCSI bus	
3	SELECTION phase	Decides target when the initiator uses the SCSI bus	
4	RESELECTION phase	Target requests initiator for reconnection	
5	COMMAND phase	Command from initiator to target	Transmission phase of data
6	DATA phase	Data input/output is carried out in accordance with command	
7	STATUS phase	Denotes the result of whatever was carried out in accordance with command	
8	MESSAGE phase	Control data is being input/output between initiator and target	

Table 3-10

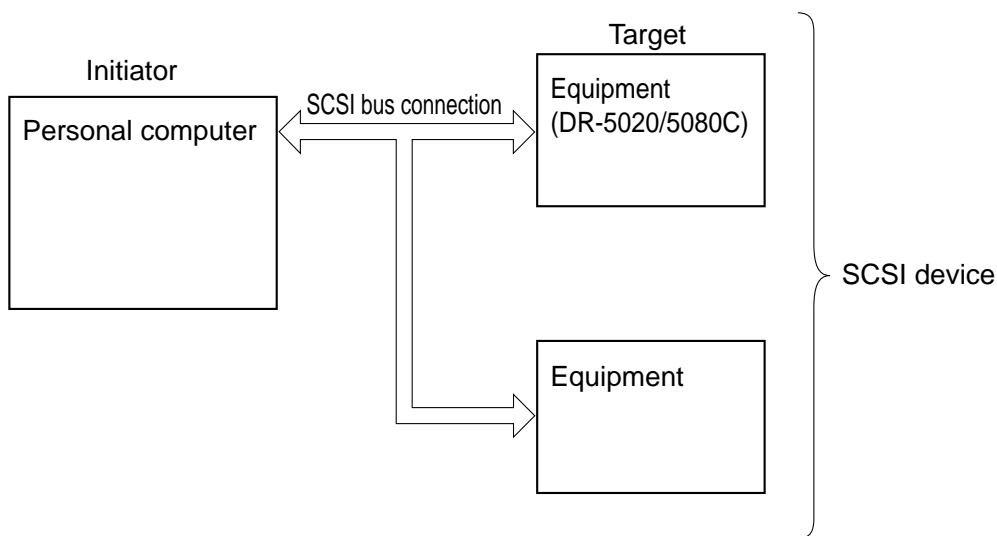


Fig. 3-36

Table 3-11 shows the basic communication sequence.

No.	Personal computer side	Direction of communication	DR-5020/5080C side
1	Command to start recording	→→	
2			Feed starts
3	Command inquiring about whether or not there is data and the state of feed	→→	
4		←←	Availability or not of data and status of feed
5	1) If during feeding and there is no data, return to No. 3. 2) If feeding is stopped and there is no data, go to No. 9. 3) If there is data, go to No. 6.		
6	Data read command	→→	
7		←←	Data output
8	1) Return to No. 6 until there is no more data for 1 page of document. 2) Return to No. 3 when there is no more data for 1 page of document.		
9	End		

Table 3-11

VII. POWER SUPPLY

1. Outline

The DC power supply PCB assembly of this machine is capable of handling power supply input of 100 to 240 VAC.

Fig. 3-37 shows the block diagram of the DC power supply PCB assembly.

AC power is supplied to the DC power supply PCB assembly by turning on the power switch.

The 100 to 240 VAC power supplied is converted by rectifying bridge to unsmoothed 100 to 240 VUN and sent to the booster assembly. At the

booster assembly, the power is temporarily raised to 380 VUN and then converted to DC voltage. After that, it is converted to 24 V by a DC/DC converter and output to the various PCB assemblies.

A fuse is used in the DC power supply PCB assembly to protect against overcurrent.

Only + 24 VDC is output from the DC power supply PCB assembly and the necessary voltage is then generated by the DC/DC converter in each PCB assembly.

Fig. 3-38 shows the power supply related block diagram.

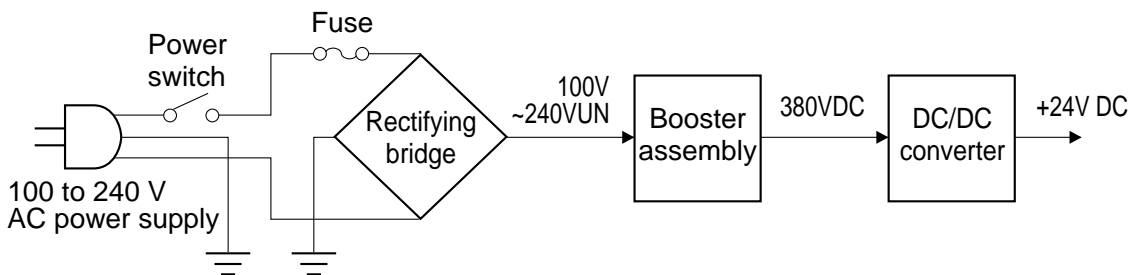


Fig. 3-37

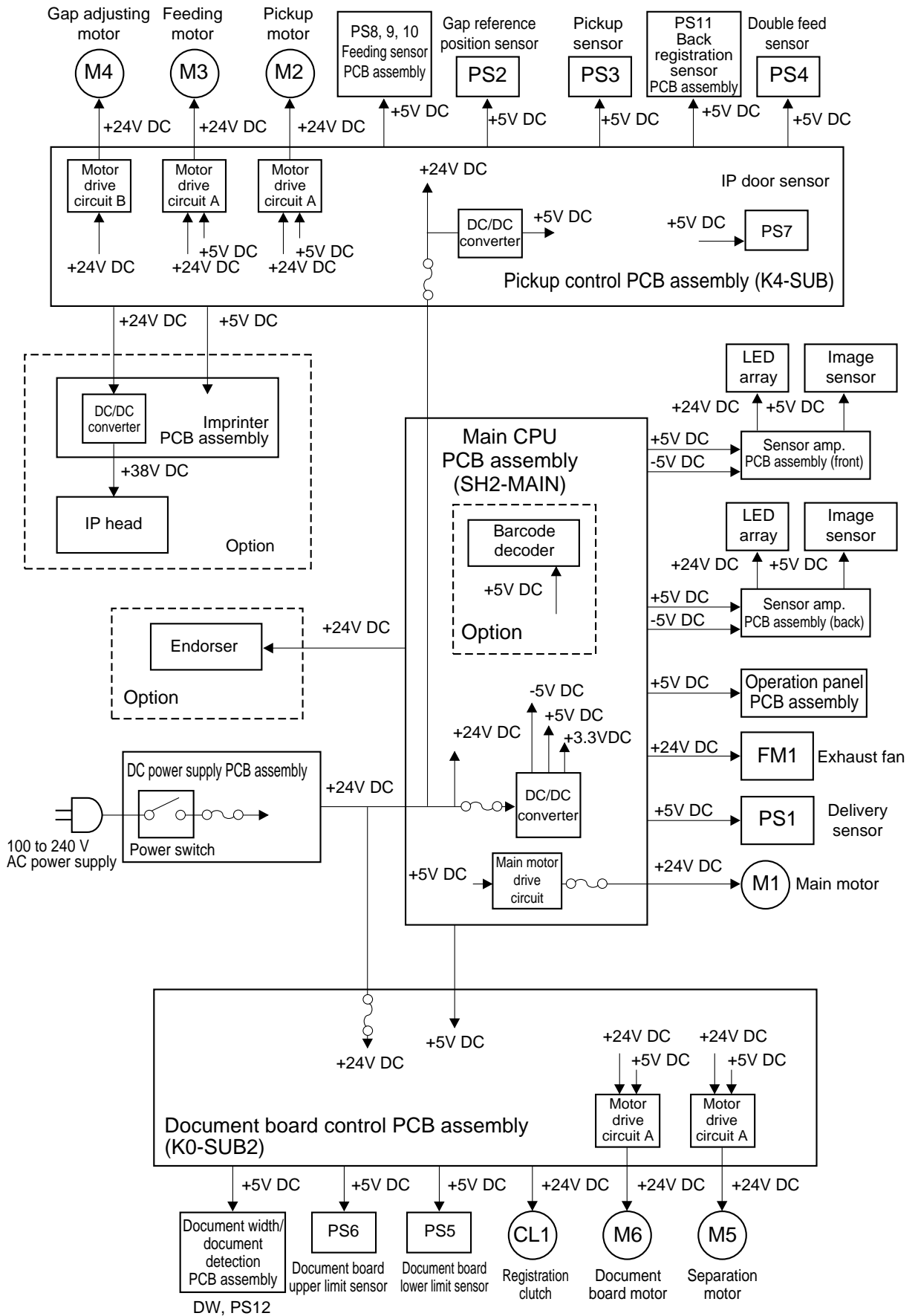


Fig. 3-38

2. Protective Function of Power Supply Circuit

The DC power supply PCB assembly is a switching regulator type.

If the load goes into a short circuit state due to some abnormality, and there is an overcurrent, the protective function is activated and output is stopped. Also, if the DC/DC converter generating ± 5 VDC and + 3.3 VDC in the main CPU PCB assembly breaks down causing +24 VDC to be applied, the protective function is activated and output is stopped.

When output stops, it can be automatically restored by turning the power switch off, eliminating the cause of the short circuit, discharging the capacitor (for about 10 minutes) and then turning on the power switch.

A fuse is used as protection in each PCB assembly. If an overcurrent flows into the DC/DC converter, the fuse blows and stops the power supply to the PCB assembly.

A fuse is also used for protection of the main motor. If an overcurrent flows into the part of the main motor where + 24 VDC is supplied, the fuse blows and stops the power supply to the main motor.

3. Battery

The following lithium battery is equipped in the main CPU PCB assembly as memory backup.

Maker : SANYO Electric Co., Ltd.

Model : CR14250SE

Voltage : + 3 VDC

Capacity : 850 mAh

When replacing the battery, a battery identical to the above should be used.

Also, when disposing of a used battery or a PCB assembly equipped with a battery, the instructions of the maker and the regulations of the region should be followed.

▲ CAUTION:
Replace the lithium battery with SANYO CR14250SE only. Use of another battery may present a risk of fire or explosion. The battery may present a fire or chemical burn hazard if mistreated. Do not recharge, disassemble or dispose of in fire. Keep the battery out of reach of children and discard used battery promptly.

VIII. LAYOUT OF ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

A. Switches and Sensors

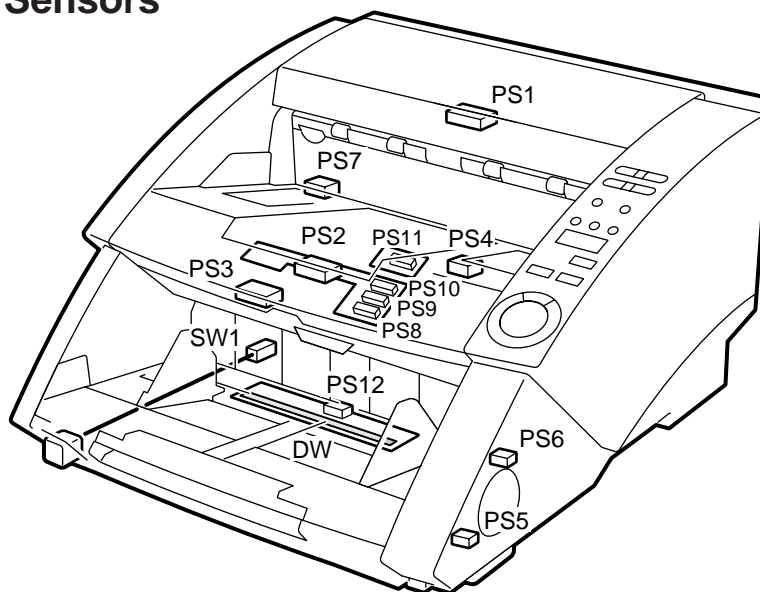


Fig. 3-39

Symbol	Name	Code	Function
	Micro-Switch	Sw1	Power ON/OFF
	Photo interrupter	PS1 PS2 PS3 PS4 PS5 PS6 PS7 PS8 PS9 PS10 PS11 PS12	Detection of document in delivery Detection of gap reference position Detection of document in pickup Detection of double feed, and upper unit open/close Detection of Lower limit for document board Detection of Upper limit for document board Detection of IP cover open/close Detection of document at front separation Detection of document at back separation Detection of document at frond registration Detection of document at back registration, and document length Detection of document on document board
	Slide resistance sensor	DW	Detection of document width

Table 3-12

B. Clutches and Motors

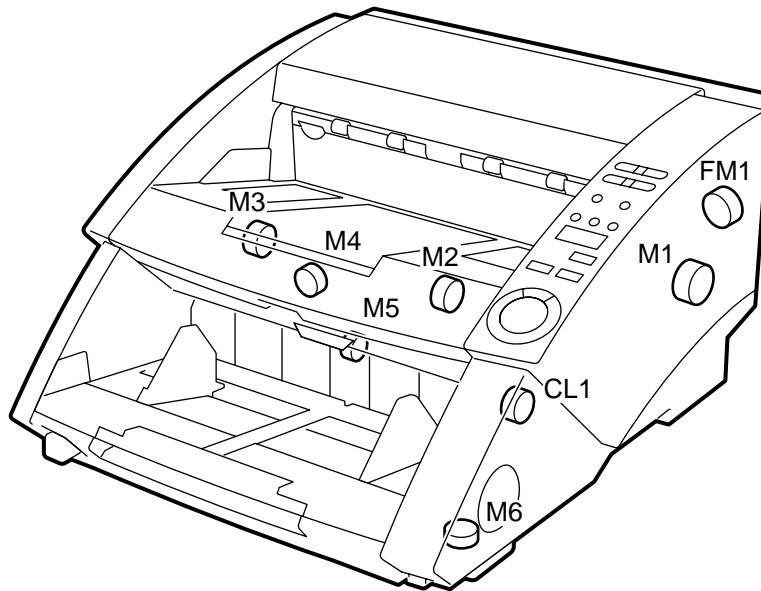


Fig. 3-40

Symbol	Name	Code	Function
Ⓞ CL	Clutch	CL1	Drive the Registration rollers ON/OFF
Ⓞ M	Motor	M1 M2 M3 M4 M5 M6	Feed the document (main moter) Drive the pickup roller Drive the feeding roller Ajust the gap Drive the separation roller Drive the document board up/down
Ⓞ FM	Fan motor	FM1	Cool the inside of machine (exhaust)

Table 3-13

C. PCB assemblies and Units

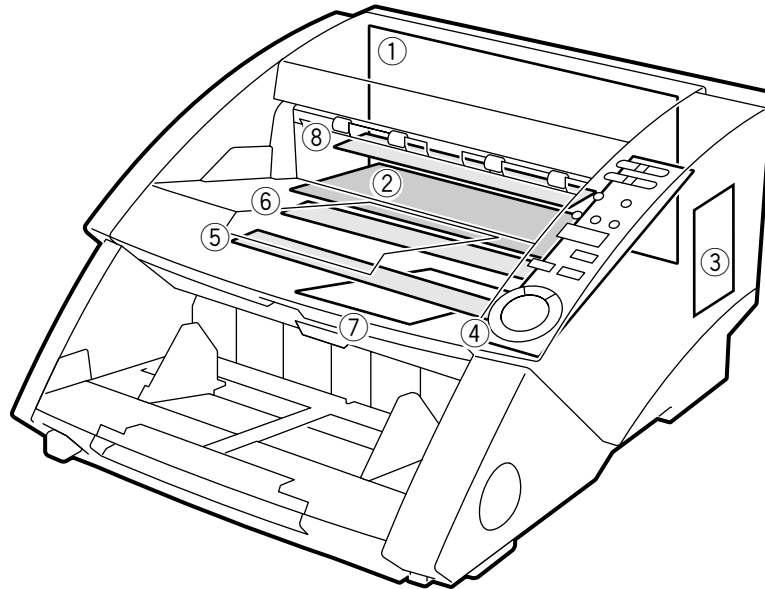


Fig. 3-41

Code	Name	Function
①	Main CPU PCB assembly (SH2-MAIN)	Image processing and main control
②	Pickup control PCB assembly (K4-SUB)	Control of the document feed
③	Document board control PCB assembly (K0-SUB2)	Control of the document board and the separation roller
④	Operation panel PCB assembly	Setting the conditions and display
⑤	Lower reading Unit	Reading the back side of document
⑥	Upper reading unit	Reading the front side of document
⑦	DC power supply PCB assembly	DC power supply
⑧	Imprinter PCB assembly	Driving the Imprinter

Note: For the PCB assemblies related with sensor, refer to the “A. Switches and Sensors.”

Table 3-14

IX. LIST OF VARIABLE RESISTORS, SWITCHES & LEDs FOR EACH CIRCUIT BOARD

Only the VRs (variable resistors), SWs (switches) and LEDs mounted on the PCB assemblies that are necessary for servicing the machine at the field are described below.

VRs, SWs and LEDs not listed in the tables are for factory adjustment only. Special tools and measuring instruments are required to perform adjustments and checks using these VRs, SWs and

LEDs. Often a high degree of accuracy is demanded. For this reason, do not touch these VRs, SWs and LEDs at the field.

Note: This machine does not have the VRs that may be adjusted in the field.

A. Main CPU PCB Assembly (SH2-MAIN)

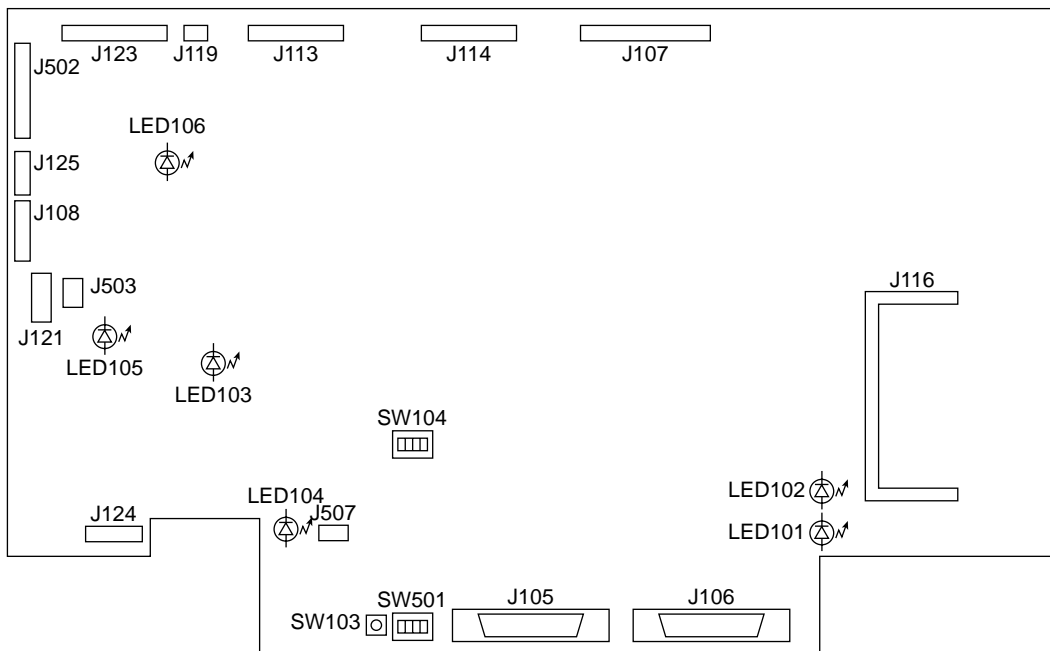


Fig. 3-42

LED No.	Display												
LED101 LED102	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Display the states of CPU <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>LED101</th> <th>LED102</th> <th>Meaning</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>OFF</td> <td>flashing</td> <td>Operating normally DR-5080C</td> </tr> <tr> <td>flashing</td> <td>OFF</td> <td>Operating normally DR-5020</td> </tr> <tr> <td>flashing</td> <td>flashing</td> <td>Writing the software</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	LED101	LED102	Meaning	OFF	flashing	Operating normally DR-5080C	flashing	OFF	Operating normally DR-5020	flashing	flashing	Writing the software
LED101	LED102	Meaning											
OFF	flashing	Operating normally DR-5080C											
flashing	OFF	Operating normally DR-5020											
flashing	flashing	Writing the software											
LED103	• +5V normal → lit												
LED104	• +3.3V normal → lit												
LED105	• +24V normal → lit												
LED106	• -5V normal → lit												

Table 3-15

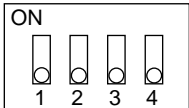
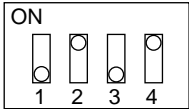
Switch No.	Setting
SW103	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switch for the service mode while pressing this switch, press the stop key on the operation panel, enter the service mode. <p>Note: Do not turn the power switch on, while pressing this switch. If it is done, turn the power off immediately.</p>
SW104	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switch for the designing section. Turn all switch off. Do not change the setting in the field. 
SW501	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switch for SCSI related <p>1: Terminator ON/OFF 2 to 4: SCSI ID setting For the details, refer to the instruction manual.</p> <p>Initial setting Terminator: OFF SCSI ID: 2</p> 

Table 3-16

B. Pickup control PCB Assembly (K4-SUB)

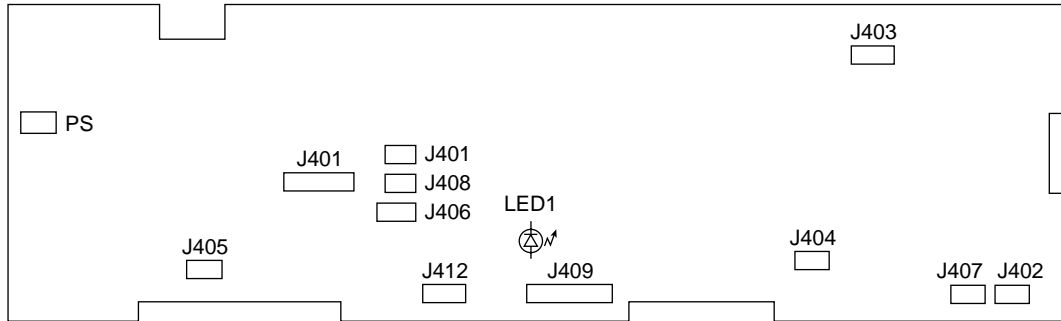


Fig. 3-43

LED No.	Display
LED1	• CPU operates normally → flashing

Table 3-17

**C. Document board control
PCB Assembly (K0-SUB2)**

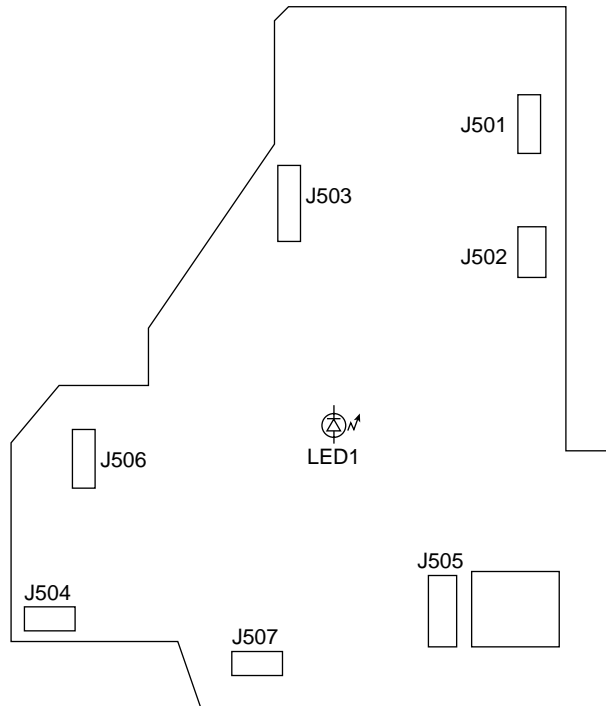


Fig. 3-44

LED No.	Display
LED1	• CPU operates normally → flashing

Table 3-18

Chapter 4

DISASSEMBLY & REASSEMBLY

This chapter describes the disassembly and reassembly procedure.
When disassembling and reassembling the machine, observe the following.

1. Before starting the disassembly and reassembly operations be sure to disconnect the power to the machine for safety sake.
2. Reassembly can be performed in the opposite way to disassembly unless otherwise mentioned.
3. In reassembly, do not confuse the type of screws (length and diameter) and their location.
4. To ensure positive continuity of electricity, a toothed washer is used as a ground retaining screw. Be sure to use this washer when reassembling the machine.
5. As a rule, do not operate the machine with any part removed.

I. EXTERNAL	4-1	IV. EXPOSURE	4-27
II. DRIVE (MOTORS).....	4-11	V. ELECTRICAL (PCBS, ETC.).....	4-30
III. FEED (ROLLERS)	4-16		

I. EXTERNAL

A. Outside Covers

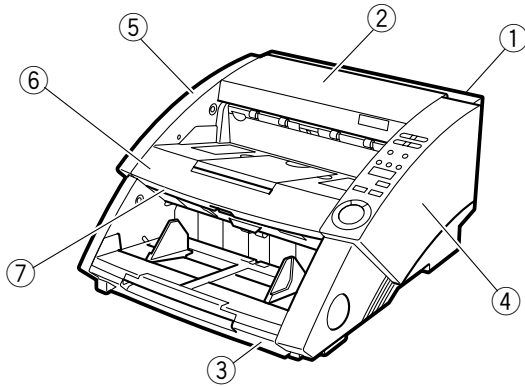


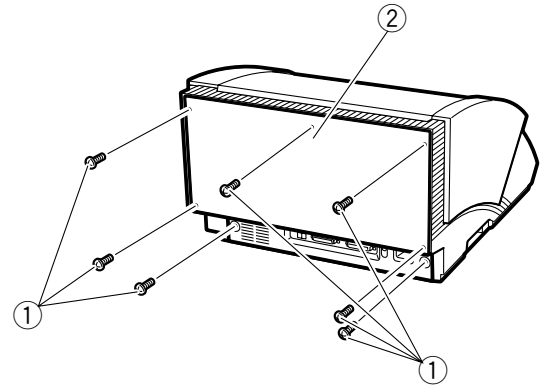
Fig. 4-101

	Screw	Hook
① Rear cover	(7)	[0]
② Top cover	(1)	[2]
③ Lower front cover	(0)	[4]
④ Right cover assembly	(2)	[1]
⑤ Left cover assembly	(2)	[1]
⑥ Upper delivery cover assembly	(4)	[0]
⑦ Front delivery cover	(4)	[0]

Note 1: The figures in () and [] mean the numbers of fixing screw and mounting hooks, respectively.

1. Rear cover

- 1) Remove seven screws ①, and remove the rear cover ②.



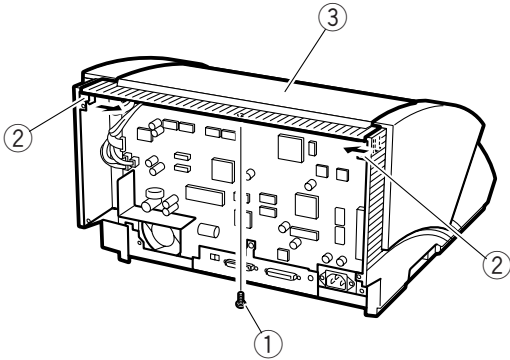
① Screw

② Rear cover

Fig. 4-102

2. Top cover

- 1) Remove the rear cover.
- 2) Remove one screw ① (self-tapping) and detach two hooks ②, and remove the top cover ③.



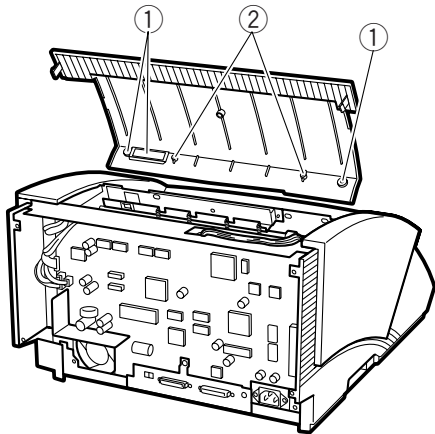
- ① Screw
③ Top cover

② Hook

Fig. 4-103

Note 1: Be careful as the blind plates A/B ① sometimes fall of their own weight.

Note 2: When reassembling, make sure to insert the positioning boss ② of the top cover into the hole in the main body.



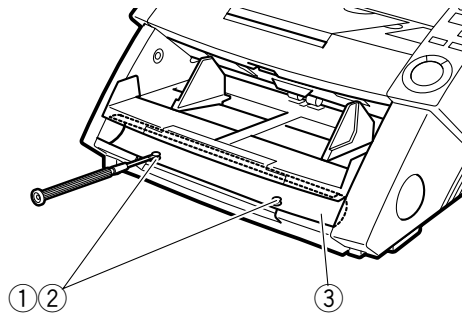
- ① Blind plates A/B ② Boss

Fig. 4-104

3. Lower front cover

- 1) Insert a thin and flat-tipped tool (screw driver or nipper etc.) between the pin ① and stopper ② and pull out the pins, remove the stoppers, and then remove the lower side of the safety shield ③.

Note 1: Do not make a hurt at removing the pin and stopper.

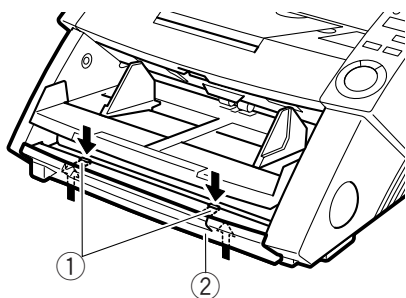


- ① Pin
③ Safety shield

② Stopper

Fig. 4-105

- 2) Detach the four hooks ① (two on each side), and remove the lower front cover ②.



① Hook

② Front cover

Fig. 4-106

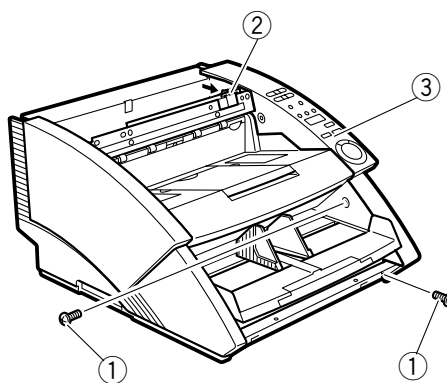
Note 1: The work will be easier to do if the document board is stopped in its topmost position.

Note 2: If the pin and the stopper should become deformed or damaged, replaced them with new parts.

Note 3: When inserting the pin and stopper, be careful as they are tight.

4. Right cover (assembly)

- 1) Remove the top cover.
- 2) Remove the lower front cover.
- 3) Remove two screws ① (of which one screw is the self-tapping), detach one hook ②, and pull out the right cover assembly ③.



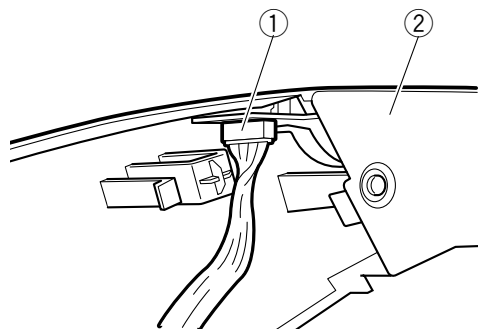
① Screw

② Hook

③ Right cover assembly

Fig. 4-107

- 4) Disconnect one connector ①, and remove the right cover assembly ②.

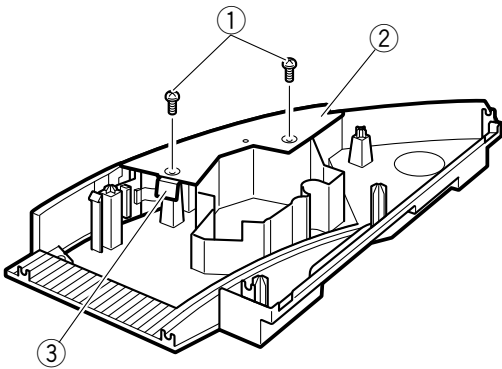


① Connector

② Right cover assembly

Fig. 4-108

- 5) Remove two screws ① (self-tapping), and remove the right inner cover ②. Be careful as a leaf spring ③ is fastened together with the right inner cover.



- ① Screw
② Right inner cover
③ Leaf spring

Fig. 4-109

Note 1: When reassembling the leaf spring, make sure it is facing in the proper direction. After the right cover assembly is assembled in the main body, the tipped face of the leaf spring should contact with the side plate of the main body.

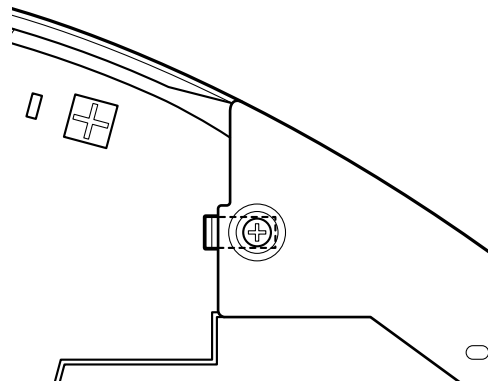
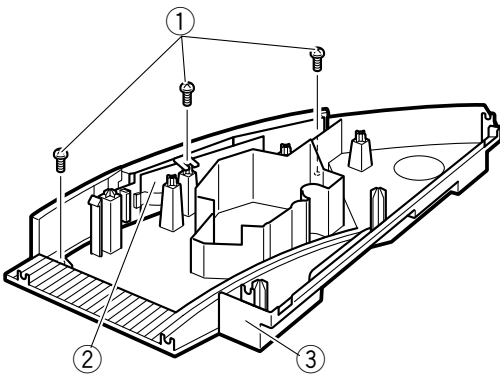


Fig. 4-111

- 6) Remove three screws ① (self-tapping), remove the operation panel ②, and separate the right cover ③.

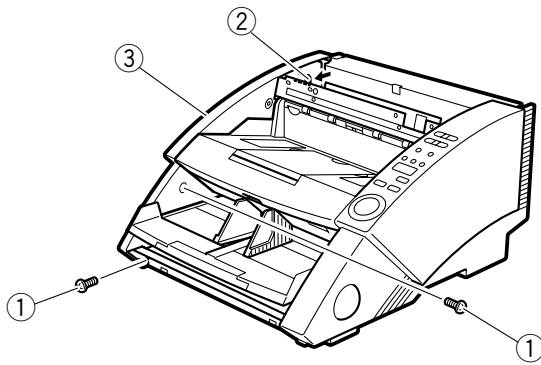


- ① Screw
② Operation panel
③ Right cover

Fig. 4-110

5. Left cover (assembly)

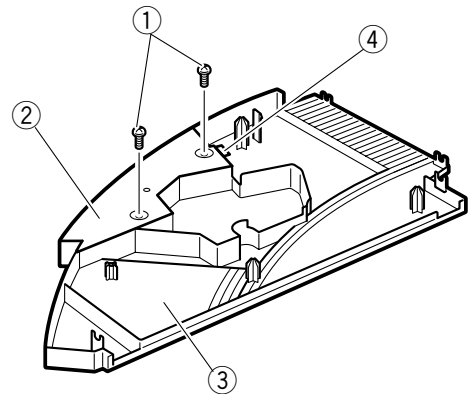
- 1) Remove the top cover.
- 2) Remove the lower front cover.
- 3) Remove two screws ① (of which one screw is the self-tapping), detach one hook ②, and remove the left cover assembly ③.



- ① Screw
- ② Hook
- ③ Left cover assembly

Fig. 4-112

- 4) Remove two screws ① (self-tapping), remove the left inner cover ② and separate the left cover ③. Be careful as a leaf spring ④ is fastened together with the left inner cover.
- 5) Remove three screws (self-tapping), remove the operation panel, and separate the right cover.



- ① Screw
- ② Left inner cover
- ③ Left cover
- ④ Leaf spring

Fig. 4-113

Note 1: When reassembling the leaf spring, make sure it is facing in the proper direction. After the left cover assembly is assembled in the main body, the tipped face of the leaf spring should contact with the side plate of the main body.

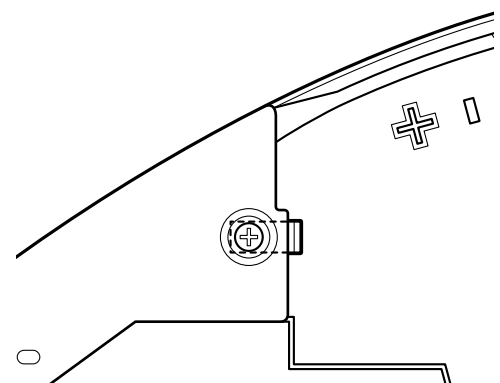
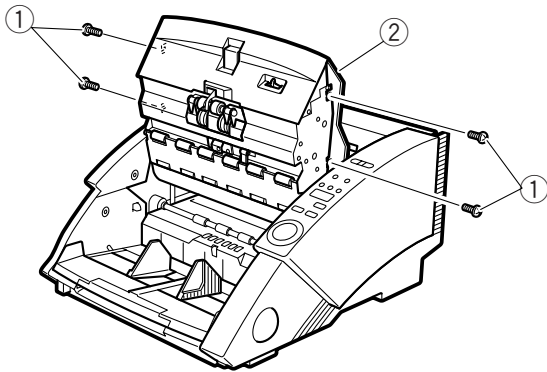


Fig. 4-114

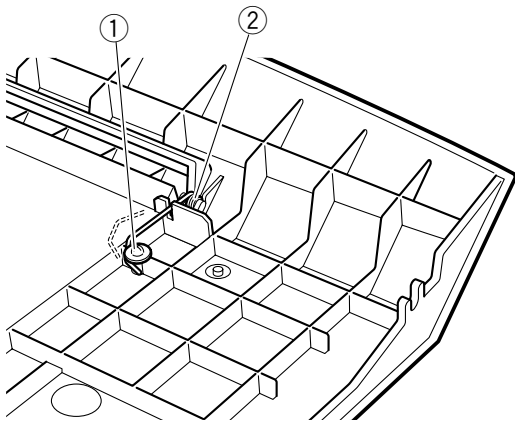
6. Upper delivery cover (assembly)

- 1) Remove four screws ① (two on each side), and remove the upper delivery cover assembly ②.



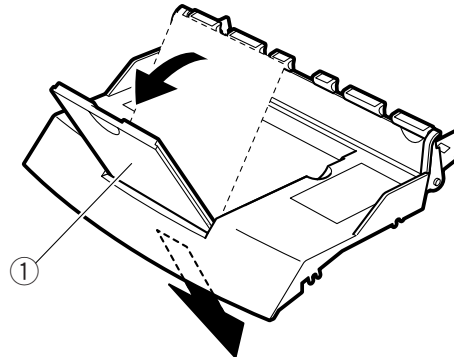
- ① Screw
 - ② Upper delivery cover assembly
- Fig. 4-115**

- 2) Loosen one screw ①, detach the end of the spring ② at the reverse side. Be careful not to lose or deform the spring.



- ① Screw
 - ② Spring
- Fig. 4-116**

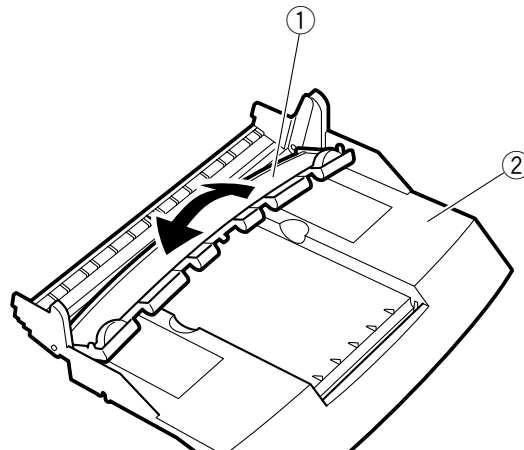
- 3) Remove the delivery tray assembly ① while turning it.



- ① Delivery tray assembly
- Fig. 4-117**

- 4) Remove the bosses on the both sides warping the IP cover ① and separate it from the upper delivery cover ②.

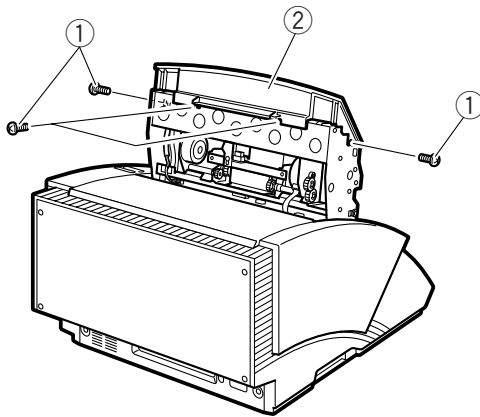
Note 1: In the case that the fixing hooks of the IP cover are not cut off, stretch the upper delivery cover slightly by pulling the both sides to release the fixing hooks.



- ① IP cover
 - ② Upper delivery cover
- Fig. 4-118**

7. Front delivery cover

- 1) Remove the upper delivery cover assembly.
- 2) Remove four screws ①, and remove the front delivery cover ②. Be careful because when the front delivery cover is removed, the open/close button shaft assembly will come off.

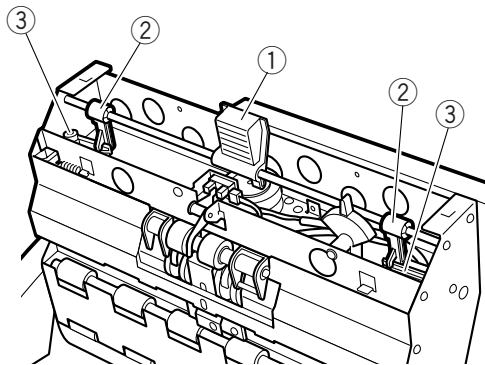


① Screw

② Front delivery cover

Fig. 4-119

Note 1: When reassembling the open/close button shaft assembly ①, hook the left and right arms ② on the lock release arm ③.



① Open/close button shaft assembly

② Arm

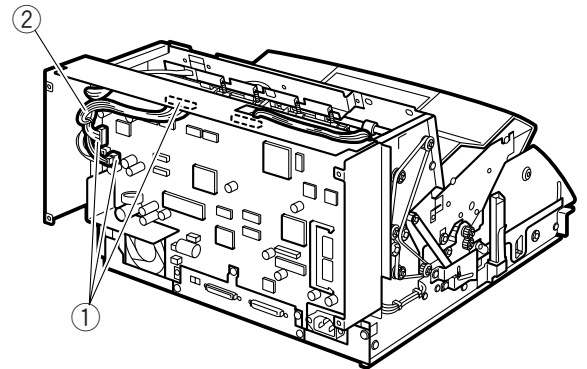
③ Lock release arm

Fig. 4-120

B. Other external parts (units)

1. Upper unit

- 1) Remove the left cover assembly and the right cover assembly.
- 2) Disconnect three connectors ① and pull out the cable assembly ②.

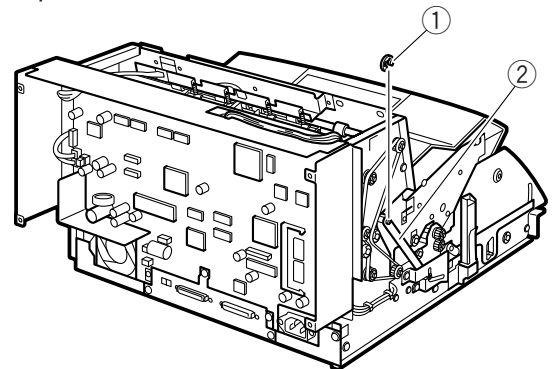


① Connector

② Cable assembly

Fig. 4-121

- 3) Remove one E-ring ①, and remove the lock plate ②.

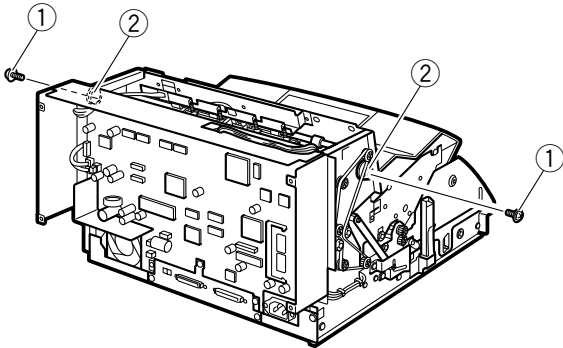


① E-ring

② Lock plate

Fig. 4-122

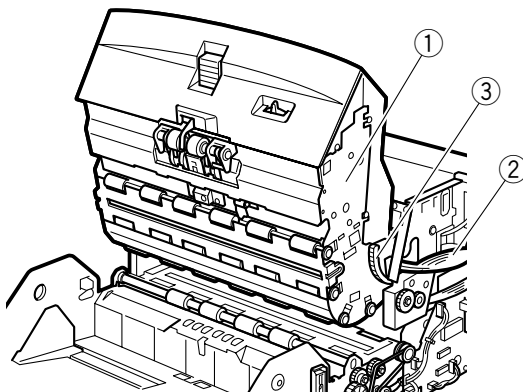
- 4) Remove two screws ① (one on each side), and take off the pivot assemblies ②.



- ① Screw ② Pivot assembly

Fig. 4-123

- 5) Hold the upper unit ①, and, while paying attention to the cable assembly ②, disengage the damper gear ③, and remove the upper unit.



- ① Upper unit ② Cable assembly
③ Damper gear

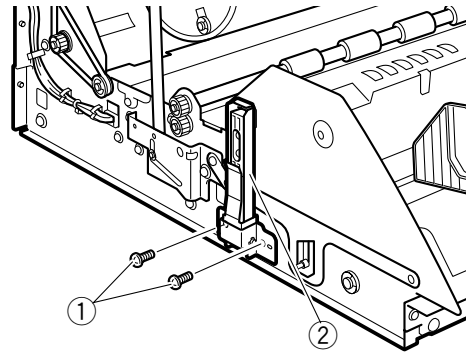
Fig. 4-124

Note 1: Be careful not to scratch or damage the reading glasses and the rollers.

Note 2: When reassembling, if the lock is activated in the closed state, first release the left lock mechanism and then reattach the lock plate. Check that the lock catches when the upper unit is opened.

2. Document board assembly

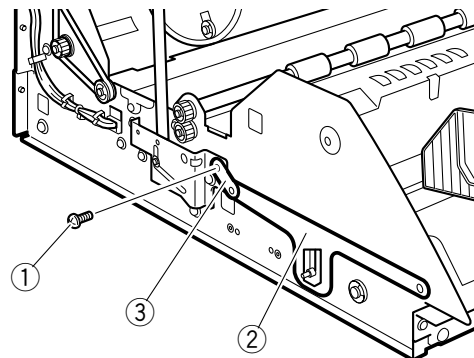
- 1) Remove the left cover assembly and the right cover assembly.
2) Remove two screws ① and remove the catch arm assembly ②.



- ① Screw ② Catch arm assembly

Fig. 4-125

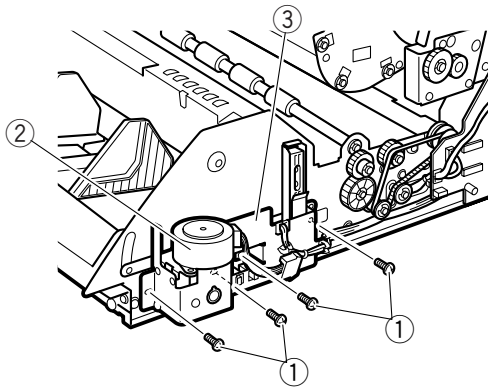
- 3) Remove one screw ①, and remove the document board arm (left) ② and the link plate ③.



- ① Screw
② Document board arm (left)
③ Link plate

Fig. 4-126

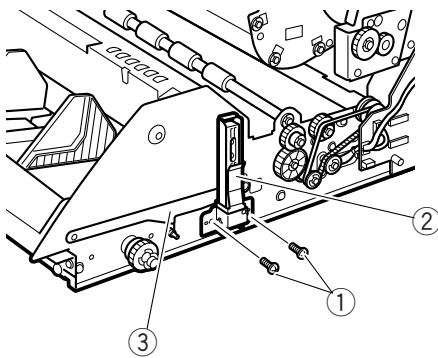
- 4) Remove four screws ①, and remove the document board drive assembly ②, Then remove the document board raising/lowering sensor assembly ③.



- ① Screw
- ② Document board drive assembly
- ③ Document board raising/lowering sensor assembly

Fig. 4-127

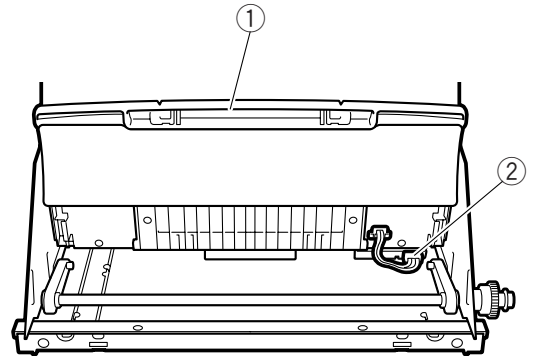
- 5) Remove two screws ①, and remove the catch arm assembly ② and then the document board arm (right) ③.



- ① Screw
- ② Catch arm assembly
- ③ Document board arm (right)

Fig. 4-128

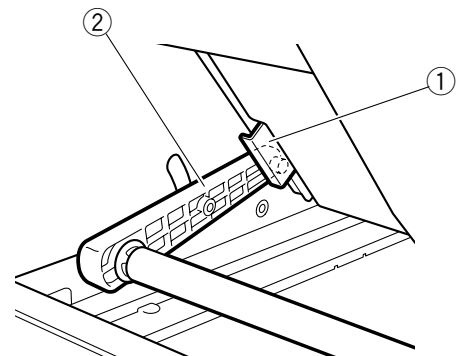
- 6) Lift up the document board assembly ①, disconnect one connector ②, and remove the document board assembly.



- ① Document board assembly
- ② Connector

Fig. 4-129

Note 1: When reassembling, after connecting the connector, place the left and right guides ① of the back of the document board assembly in the protruding portion of the document board raising/lowering arm ②.



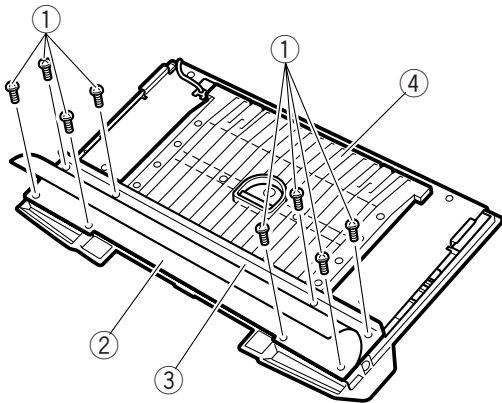
- ① Left and right guide
- ② Document board raising/lowering arm

Fig. 4-130

Note 2: Use M3 × 4 screws. If longer screws are used, there are places where they will strike the parts in the back.

3. Document guide

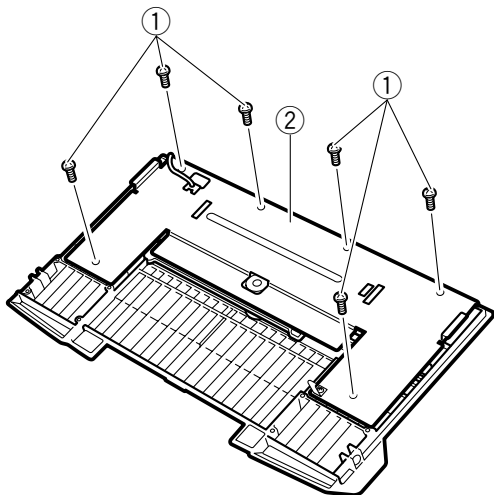
- 1) Remove the document board assembly.
- 2) Remove eight screws ① (self-tapping), and remove the safety shield ②, the expandable tray mount plate ③ and the expandable tray assembly ④.



- ① Screw
- ② Safety shield
- ③ Expandable tray mount plate
- ④ Expandable tray assembly

Fig. 4-131

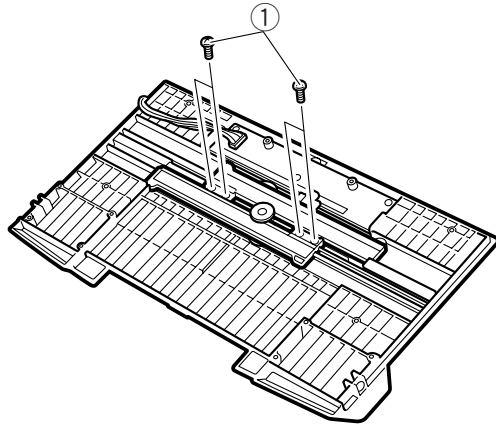
- 3) Remove six screws ① (self-tapping), and remove the document board reinforcing plate ②.



- ① Screw
- ② Document board reinforcing plate

Fig. 4-132

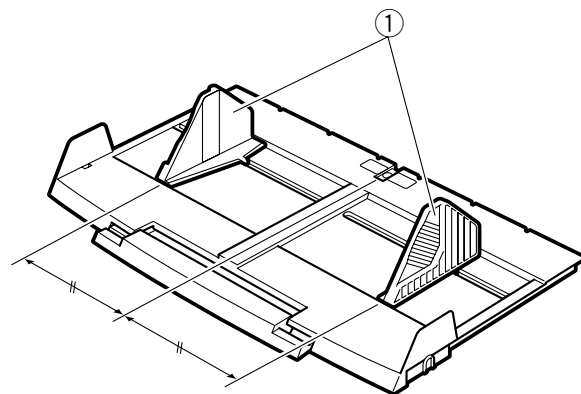
- 4) Remove four screws ① (two on each side, M2.6 × 5, self-tapping), and remove the document board guides (left and right). Do not make dirty the contacts and the contact faces on the PCB assembly.



- ① Screw

Fig. 4-133

Note 1: When reassembling, arrange the document guides ① in symmetrical positions on the left and right sides.



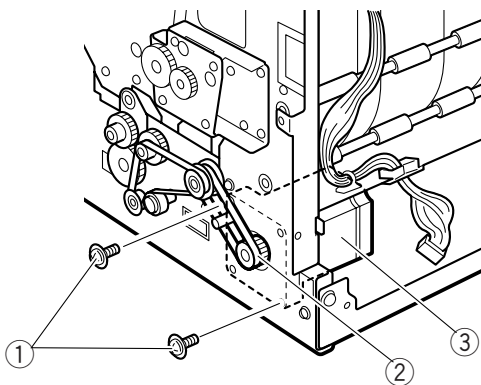
- ① Document guide

Fig. 4-134

II. DRIVE (MOTORS)

1. Main motor

- 1) Remove the DC power supply PCB assembly. For details, refer to another section.
- 2) Remove the document board control PCB assembly (K0-SUB2). For details, refer to another section.
- 3) Remove two screws ①, and remove the belt ②, then the main motor ③.



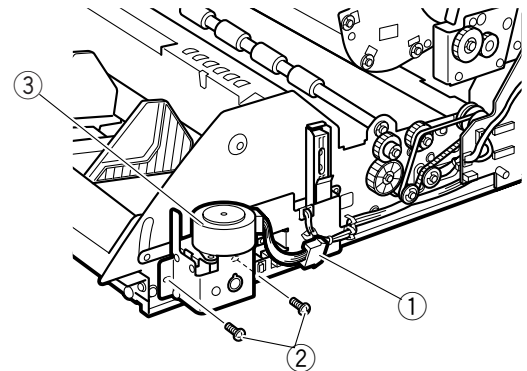
- ① Screw ② Belt
③ Main motor

Fig. 4-201

Note 1: When reassembling, secure the main motor so that the belt does not loosen.

2. Document board motor

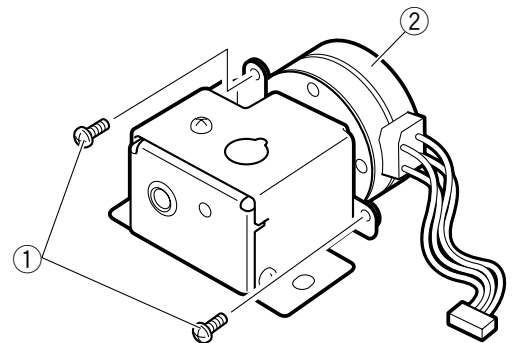
- 1) Remove the right cover assembly.
- 2) Disconnect one connector ①, remove two screws ②, and then remove the document board drive assembly ③. When the document board drive assembly is removed, be careful because the bushing may come off.



- ① Connector ② Screw
③ Document board assembly

Fig. 4-202

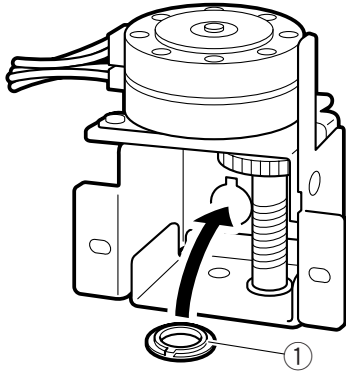
- 3) Remove two screws ①, and remove the document board motor ②.



- ① Screw ② Document board motor

Fig. 4-203

Note 1: When reassembling the document board drive assembly, place the protruding portion of the bushing ① in the groove of the mount plate.

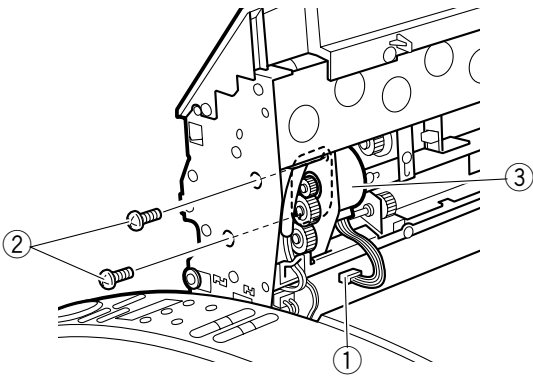


① Bushing

Fig. 4-204

3. Pickup motor

- 1) Remove the upper delivery cover assembly.
- 2) Disconnect one connector ①, remove two screws ②, and then remove the pickup motor ③.



① Connector

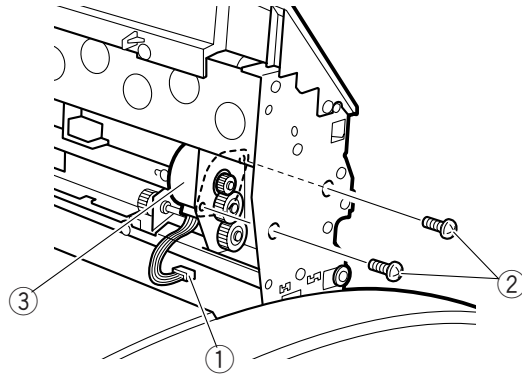
② Screw

③ Pickup motor

Fig. 4-205

4. Feeding motor

- 1) Remove the upper delivery cover assembly.
- 2) Disconnect one connector ①, remove two screws ②, and then remove the feeding motor ③.



① Connector

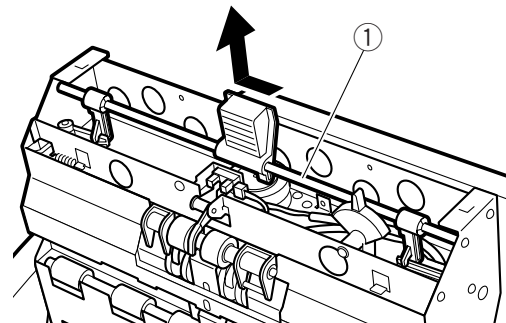
② Screw

③ Pickup motor

Fig. 4-206

5. Gap adjusting motor

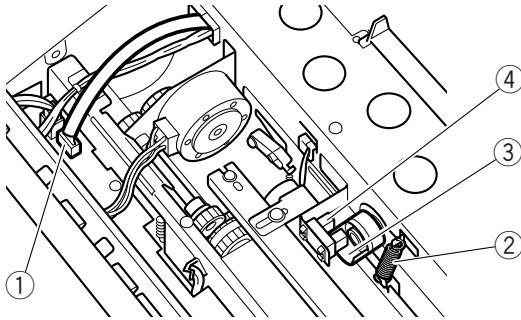
- 1) Remove the front delivery cover assembly.
- 2) Move the open/close button shaft assembly ① horizontally and take it off.



① Open/close button shaft assembly

Fig. 4-207

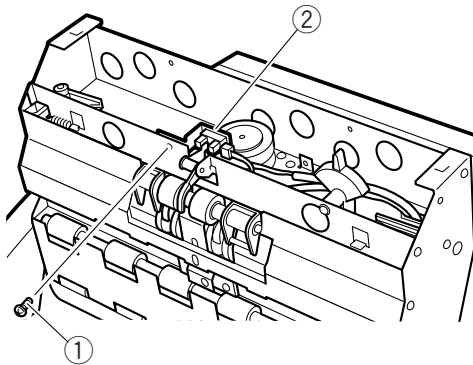
- 3) Disconnect one connector ① and then remove the spring ②. Turn the shutter ③ and disengage it from the sensor ④ of the sensing portion.



- ① Connector ② Spring
③ Shutter ④ Sensor

Fig. 4-208

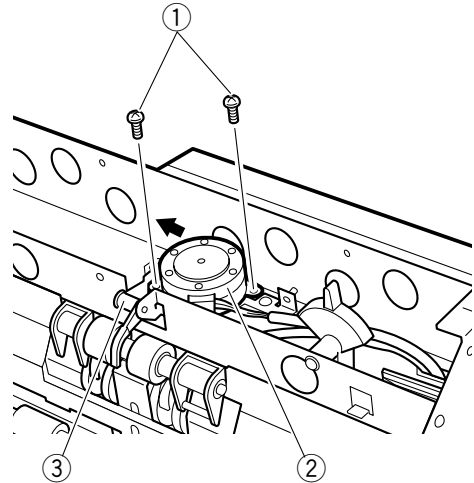
- 4) Remove one screw ① and remove the pickup sensor assembly ②.



- ① Screw
② Pickup sensor assembly

Fig. 4-209

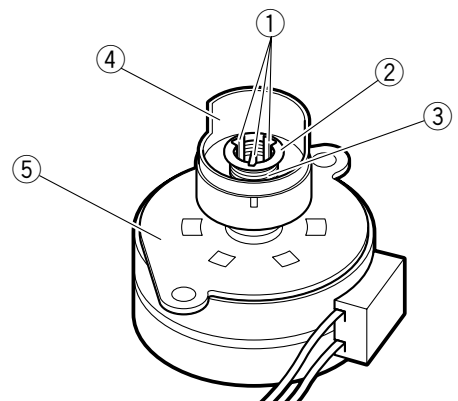
- 5) Remove two screws ①, shift the gap adjusting motor assembly ② to the left and remove it. Be careful not to damage the pickup sensor lever ③.



- ① Screw
② Gap adjusting motor assembly
③ Pickup sensor lever

Fig. 4-210

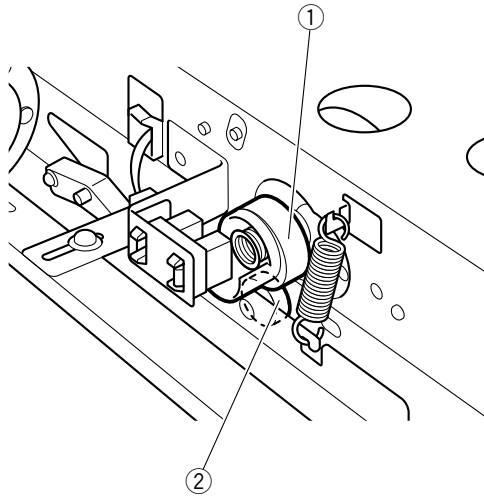
- 6) Remove washer ②, spring ③ and shutter ④ in that order while detaching the three hooks ①, and separate the gap adjusting motor ⑤. Be careful not to damage the hooks.



- ① Hook ② Washer
③ Spring ④ Shutter
⑤ Gap adjusting motor

Fig. 4-211

Note 1: When reassembling, place the cam ① on top of the cam follower ②.

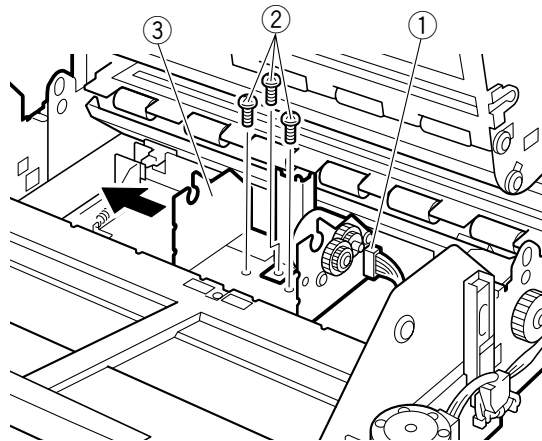


① Cam ② Cam follower
Fig. 4-212

Note 2: After reassembling, position the cam and shutter properly, and check and adjust the gap reference position. For details, refer to the section on troubleshooting in chapter 7.

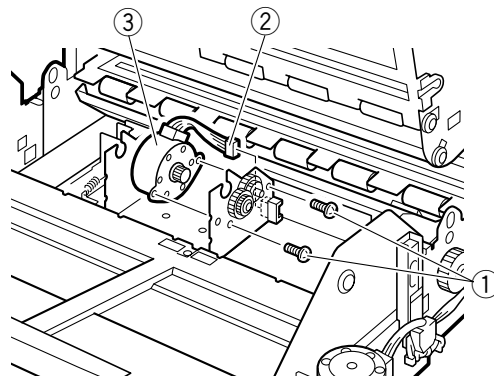
6. Separation motor

- 1) Remove the lower registration roller. For details, refer to another section.
If the document board assembly is removed, start from the step 2.
- 2) Remove the separation roller. For details, refer to another section.
- 3) Disconnect one connector ①, remove three screws ②, and shift the separation roller base assembly ③ to the left.



① Connector ② Screw
③ Separation roller base assembly
Fig. 4-213

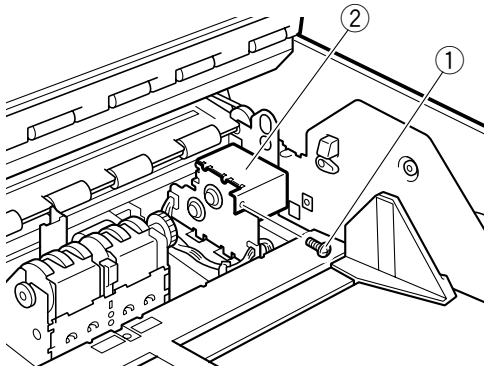
- 4) Remove two screws ①, disconnect one connector ②, and remove the separation motor ③.



① Screw ② Connector
③ Separation motor
Fig. 4-214

7. Registration clutch

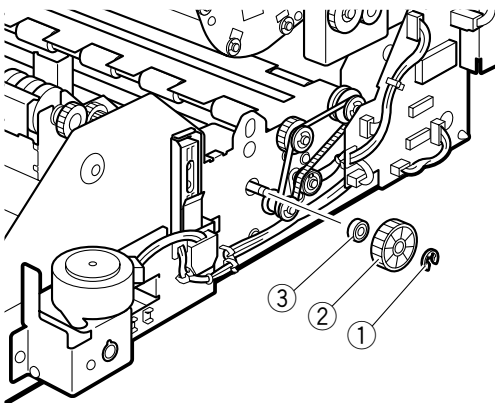
- 1) Remove the lower registration roller. For details, refer to another section.
- 2) Remove one screw ① and remove the cover ②.



- ① Screw ② Cover

Fig. 4-215

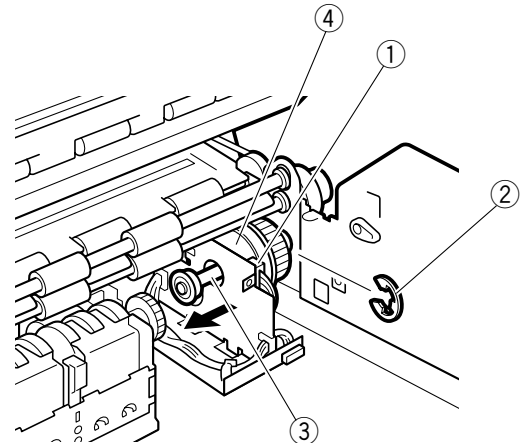
- 3) Remove one E-ring ①, and then remove the gear ② and ball bearing ③.



- ① E-ring ② Gear
③ Ball bearing

Fig. 4-216

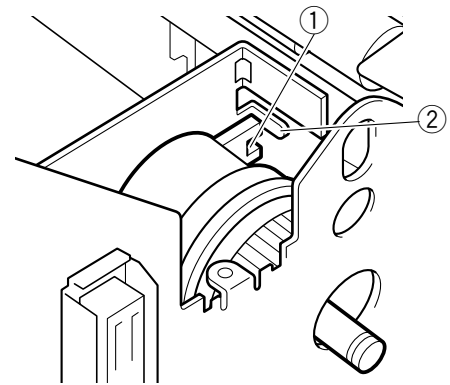
- 4) Disconnect one connector ①, remove one E-ring ② and pull out the clutch shaft assembly ③ from the left. And remove the registration clutch ④.



- ① Connector ② E-ring
③ Clutch shaft assembly
④ Registration clutch

Fig. 4-217

Note 1: When reassembling, place the positioning groove ① of the registration clutch on the protruding portion ② of the mount plate.



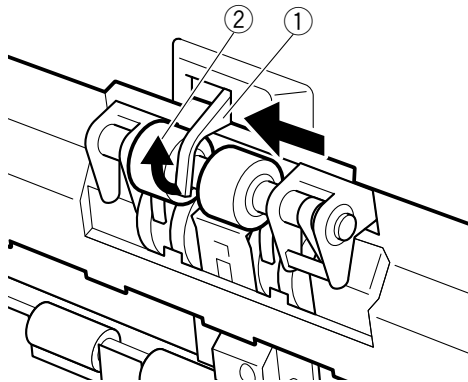
- ① Positioning groove ② Protruding portion

Fig. 4-218

III. FEED (ROLLERS)

1. Pickup roller

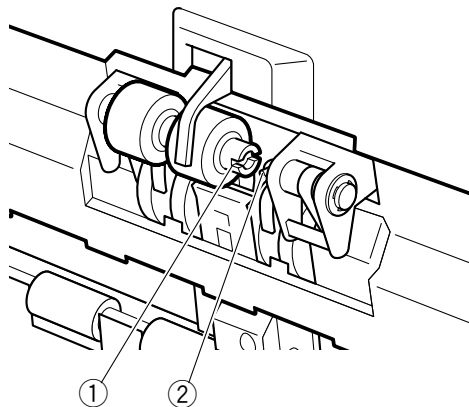
- 1) Lift up the sensor lever ①, push the pickup roller ② against the left, move and remove it.



- ① Sensor lever ② Pickup roller

Fig. 4-301

Note 1: When reassembling, match the groove of the pickup roller ① to the pin ② position.

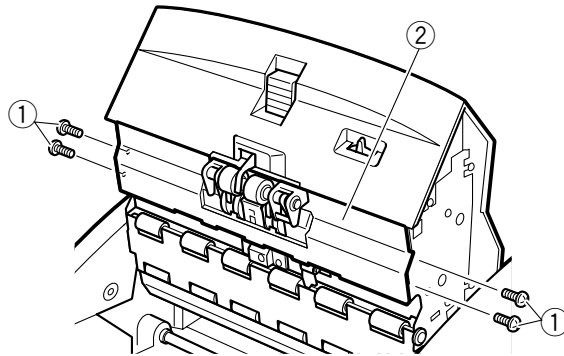


- ① Groove of the pickup roller
② Pin

Fig. 4-302

2. Feeding roller

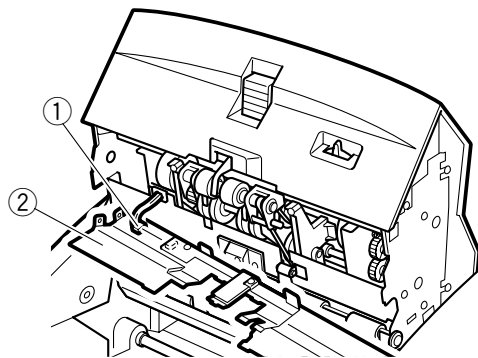
- 1) Remove four screws ① (two on each side), and pull out the upper pickup guide plate ②.



- ① Screw
② Upper pick up guide plate

Fig. 4-303

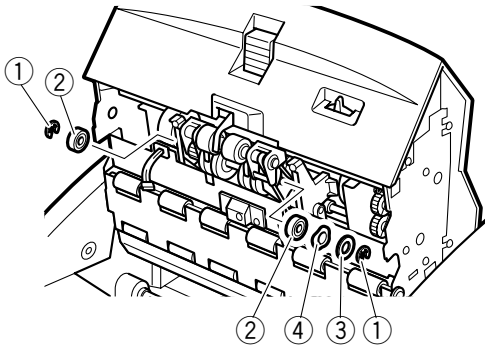
- 2) Disconnect one connector ① and remove the pickup guide plate ②.



- ① Connector ② Pickup guide plate

Fig. 4-304

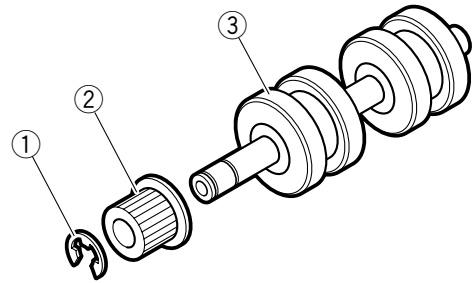
- 3) Remove two E-rings ①, and remove the ball bearings ②, washer ③ and wave washers ④.



- ① E-ring
② Ball bearing
③ Washer
④ Wave washer

Fig. 4-305

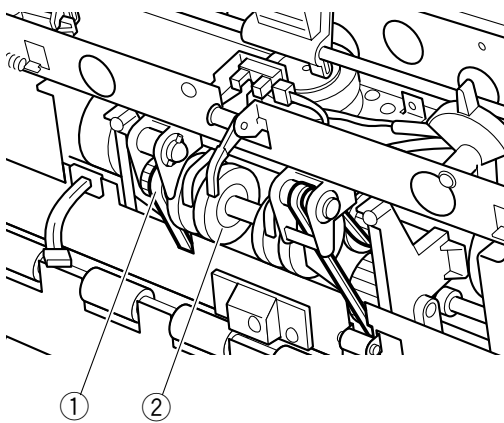
- 5) Remove one E-ring ①, remove the pulley ② and separate the feeding roller ③.



- ① E-ring
② Pulley
③ Feeding roller

Fig. 4-307

- 4) Remove the belt ① and then remove the feeding roller assembly ②.

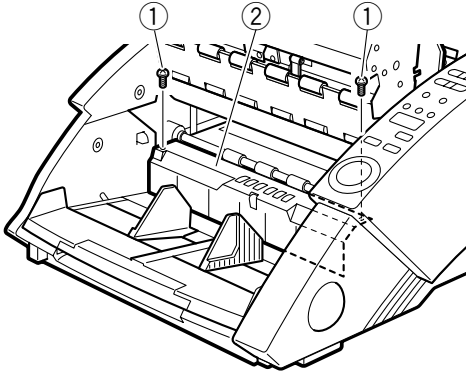


- ① Belt
② Feeding roller assembly

Fig. 4-306

3. Separation roller

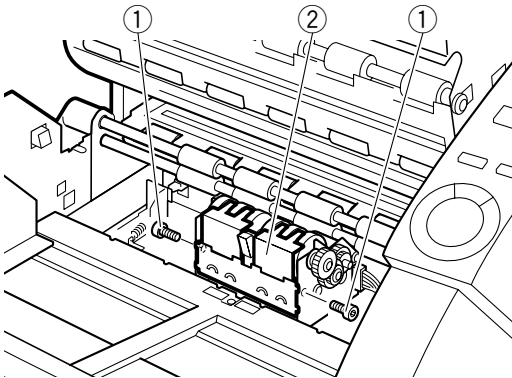
- 1) Remove two screws ① (M3×6, black), and remove the lower entry guide plate ②.



- ① Screw
- ② Entry guide plate

Fig. 4-308

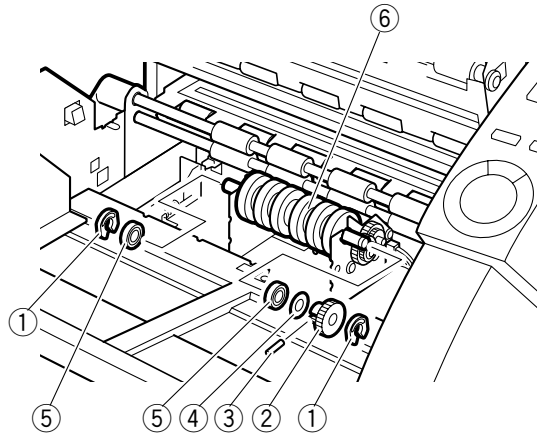
- 2) Remove two hexagon socket head bolts ①, and remove the guide plate assembly ②.



- ① Hexagon socket head bolt
- ② Guide plate assembly

Fig. 4-309

- 3) Remove two plastic rings ①, gear ②, pin ③, washer ④ and ball bearings ⑤, and then remove the separation roller ⑥. Be careful not to drop and lose the pin.



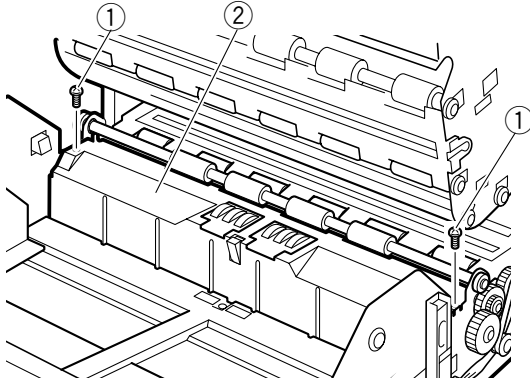
- ① Plastic ring
- ② Gear
- ③ Pin
- ④ Washer
- ⑤ Ball bearing
- ⑥ Separation roller

Fig. 4-310

Note 1: When reassembling, be careful not to touch the guide plate assembly and the separation roller.

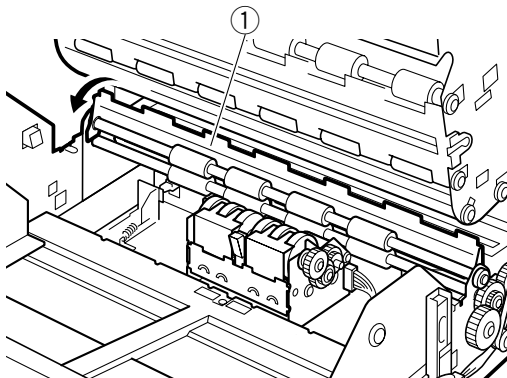
4. Upper registration roller

- 1) Remove the left cover assembly and the right cover assembly.
- 2) Remove two screws ① (M3×6, black), and remove the lower entry guide plate ②.



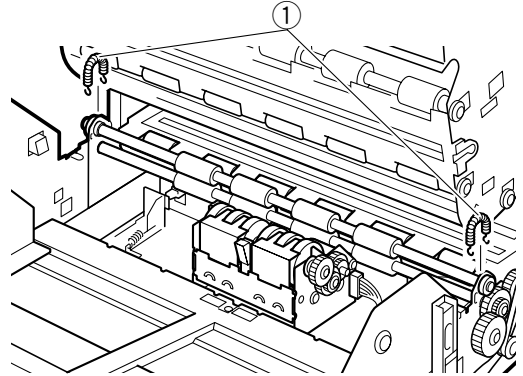
- ① Screw
 - ② Lower entry guide plate
- Fig. 4-311**

- 3) Turn the upper registration guide plate ① and remove it.



- ① Upper registration guide plate
- Fig. 4-312**

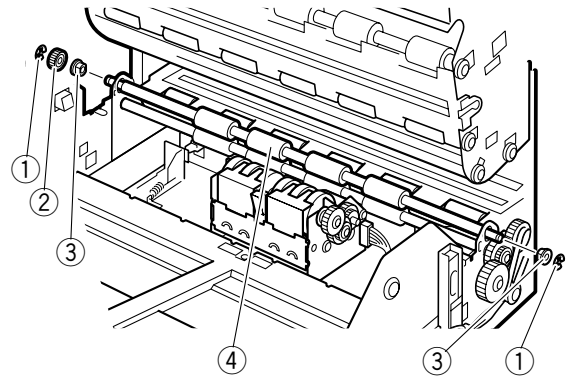
- 4) Remove two springs ① (one from each side) by taking them off the hooks.



- ① Spring

Fig. 4-313

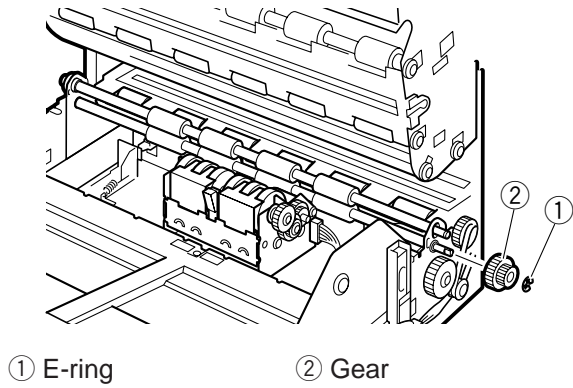
- 5) Remove two E-rings ① (one from each side), remove the gear ② and metal bushings ③, and then remove the upper registration roller ④.



- ① E-ring
- ② Gear
- ③ Metal bushing
- ④ Upper registration roller

Fig. 4-314

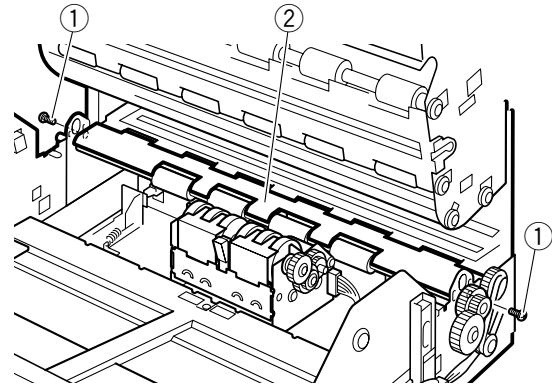
Note 1: When reassembling, if the right side metal bushing does not go in, remove the right side E-ring ① of the lower registration roller, and then remove the gear ②.



① E-ring
② Gear
Fig. 4-315

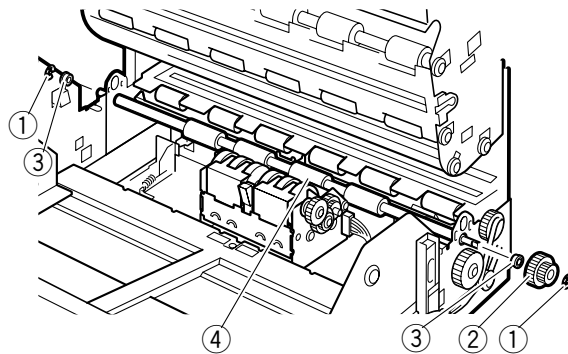
5. Lower registration roller

- 1) Remove the upper registration roller.
- 2) Remove two screws ① (one from each side), and remove the lower registration guide plate ②.



① Screw
② Lower registration guide plate
Fig. 4-316

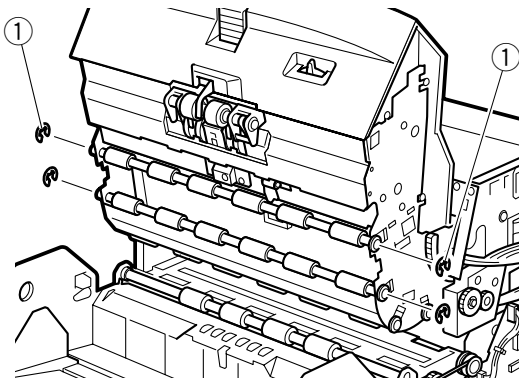
- 3) Remove two E-rings ① (one from each side), remove the gear ②, remove the ball bearings ③, and then remove the lower registration roller ④.



① E-ring
② Gear
③ Ball bearing
④ Lower registration roller
Fig. 4-317

6. Upper reading roller (feed follower roller 1: 2 pieces)

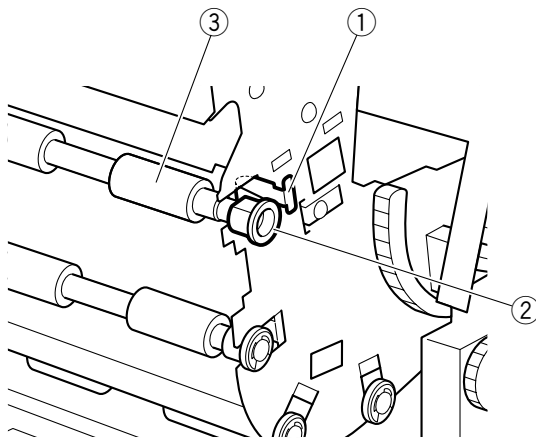
- 1) Remove the upper reading unit. For details, refer to another section.
- 2) Remove two E-rings ① (one from each side) per one roller.



① E-ring

Fig. 4-318

- 3) Remove the leaf spring ① from the groove, remove the metal bushing ② and leaf spring at the same time, and then remove the upper reading roller ③ (feed follower roller 1).



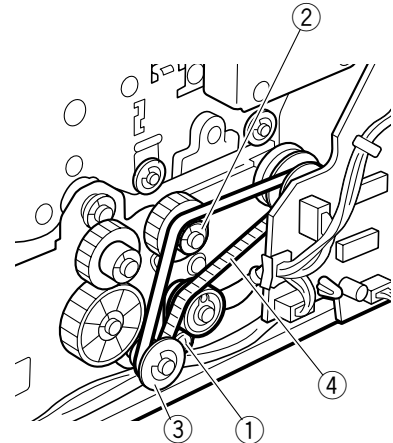
① Leaf spring ② Metal bushing
③ Upper reading roller

Fig. 4-319

Note 1: These rollers are the two feed follower rollers 1 on the upper reading unit.

7. Belt (right)

- 1) Remove the right cover assembly.
- 2) Loosen one screw ①, remove one E-ring ② and flange ③, and then remove the belt (right) ④.



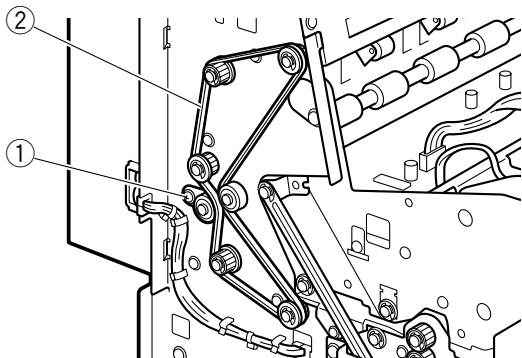
① Screw ② E-ring
③ Flange ④ Belt (right)

Fig. 4-320

Note 1: When reassembling, make sure the belt is not loose.

8. Belt (left)

- 1) Remove the left cover assembly.
- 2) Loosen one screw ① and remove the belt (left) ②.



① Screw

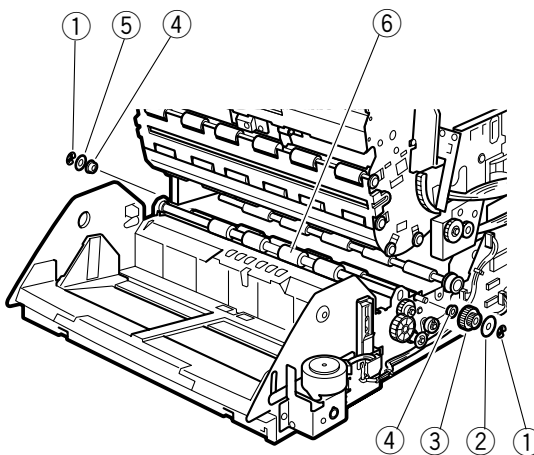
② Belt (left)

Fig. 4-321

Note 1: When reassembling, make sure the belt is not loose. Also, make sure not to make a mistake in the direction of flange side with the pulley.

9. Lower reading roller A (front side)

- 1) Remove the lower reading unit. For details, refer to another section.
- 2) Remove the belt (right).
- 3) Remove two E-rings ① (one from each side), remove the flange ②, pulley ③, ball bearings ④, and washer ⑤, and then remove the lower reading roller A ⑥ (front side).



① E-ring

② Flange

③ Pulley

④ Ball bearing

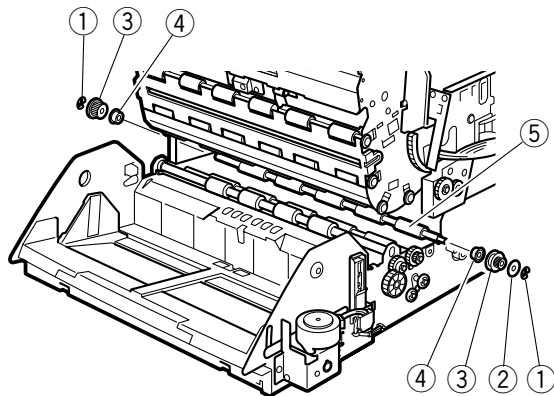
⑤ Washer

⑥ Lower reading roller A

Fig. 4-322

10. Lower reading roller B (rear side)

- 1) Remove the lower reading unit. For details, refer to another section.
- 2) Remove the document board control PCB assembly (K0-SUB2). For details, refer to another section.
- 3) Remove the belt (left).
- 4) Remove two E-rings ① (one from each side), remove the flange ②, pulleys ③, and ball bearings ④, and then remove the lower reading roller B ⑤ (rear side).

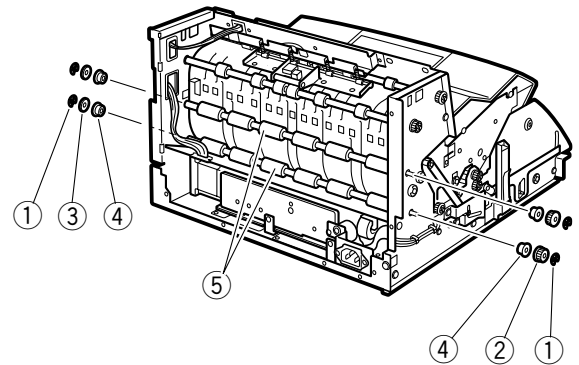


- ① E-ring
- ② Flange
- ③ Pulley
- ④ Ball bearing
- ⑤ Lower reading roller B

Fig. 4-323

11. Feed drive roller A

- 1) Remove the back plate assembly. For details, refer to another section.
- 2) Remove the document board control PCB assembly (K0-SUB2). For details, refer to another section.
- 3) Remove the belt (left).
- 4) Remove two E-rings ① (one from each side) per one roller, remove the pulley ②, washer ③, and ball bearings ④, and then remove the feed drive roller A ⑤.



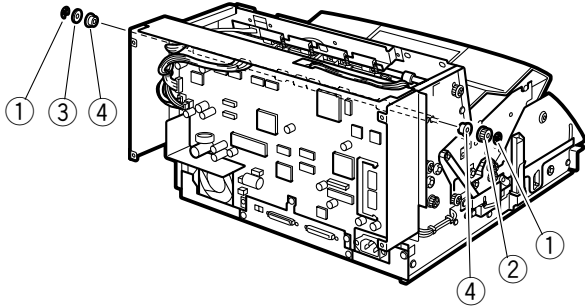
- ① E-ring
- ② Pulley
- ③ Washer
- ④ Ball bearing
- ⑤ Feed drive roller A

Fig. 4-324

Note 1: When reassembling the belt, make sure it is not loose.

12. Feed drive roller B

- 1) Remove the left cover assembly and the right cover assembly.
- 2) Remove the belt (left).
- 3) Remove two E-rings ① (one from each side), remove the pulley ②, washer ③ and ball bearings ④ in that order, and then remove the feed drive roller B ⑤.

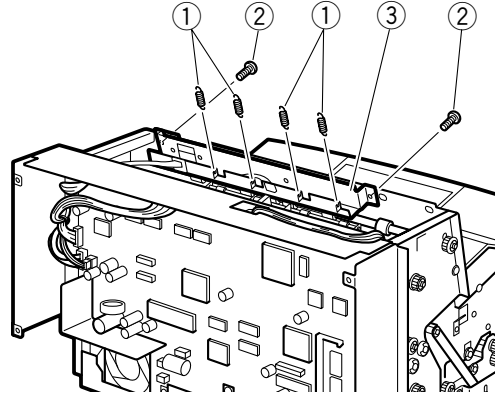


- ① E-ring
- ② Pulley
- ③ Washer
- ④ Ball bearing
- ⑤ Feed drive roller B

Fig. 4-325

13. Delivery drive roller

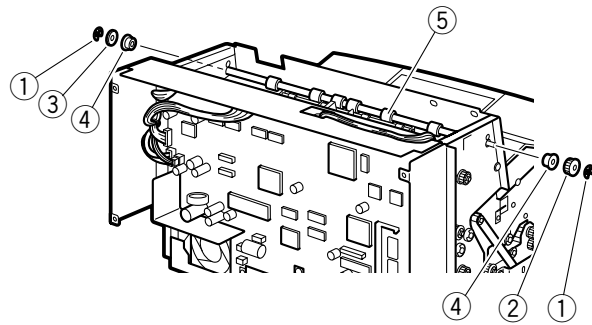
- 1) Remove the left cover assembly and the right cover assembly.
- 2) Remove the belt (left).
- 3) Remove four springs ①, remove two screws ②, and then remove the spring mount plate ③.



- ① Spring
- ② Screw
- ③ Spring mount plate

Fig. 4-326

- 4) Remove two E-rings ① (one from each side), remove the pulley ②, washer ③ and ball bearings ④, and then remove the delivery drive roller ⑤.

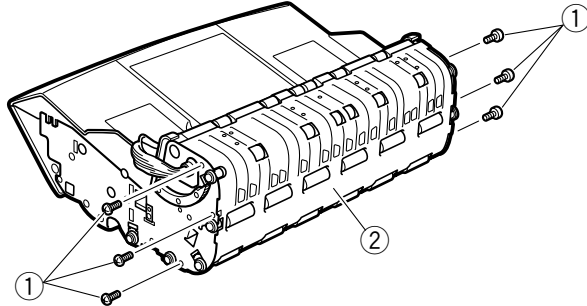


- ① E-ring
- ② Pulley
- ③ Washer
- ④ Ball bearing
- ⑤ Delivery drive roller

Fig. 4-327

14. Feed follower roller 1 and 2

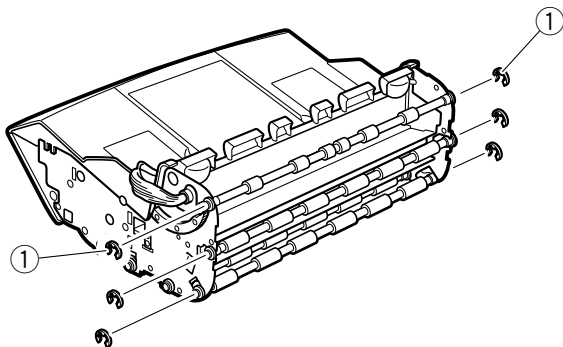
- 1) Remove the upper unit. For details, refer to another section.
- 2) Remove six screws ① (three from each side) and then remove the guide plate assembly ②.



- ① Screw ② Guide plate assembly

Fig. 4-328

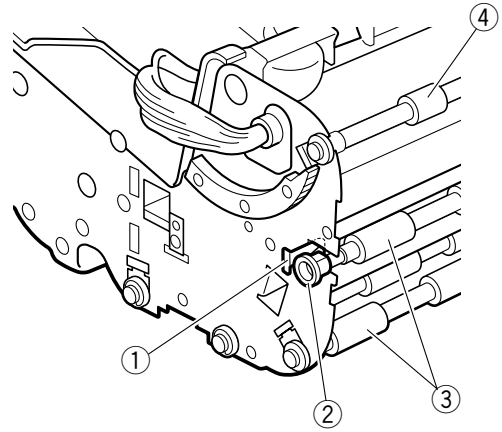
- 3) Remove two E-rings ① (one from each side) per one roller.



- ① E-ring

Fig. 4-329

- 4) Remove the leaf spring ① from the groove, remove the metal bushing ② and leaf spring at the same time, and then remove feed follower roller 1 ③ and feed follower roller 2 ④.



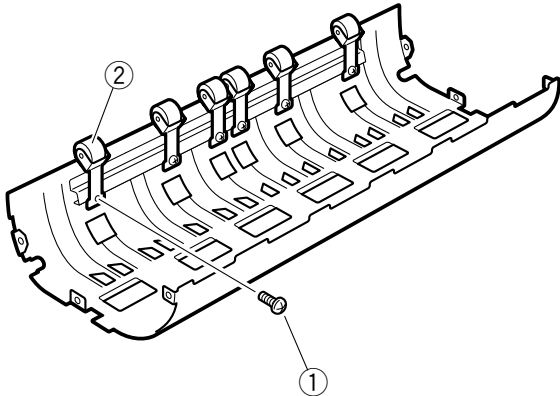
- ① Leaf spring ② Metal bushing
③ Feed follower roller 1 ④ Feed follower roller 2

Fig. 4-330

Note 1: The rear feed follower roller 1 can also be removed by first removing the upper delivery cover assembly and then carrying out the above procedure from step 3.

15. Delivery follower roller assembly

- 1) Remove the upper unit. For details, refer to another section.
- 2) Remove six screws (three from each side) and then remove the guide plate assembly.
- 3) Remove one screw ① per one roller assembly and then remove the delivery follower roller assembly ②.



- ① Screw
- ② Delivery follower roller assembly

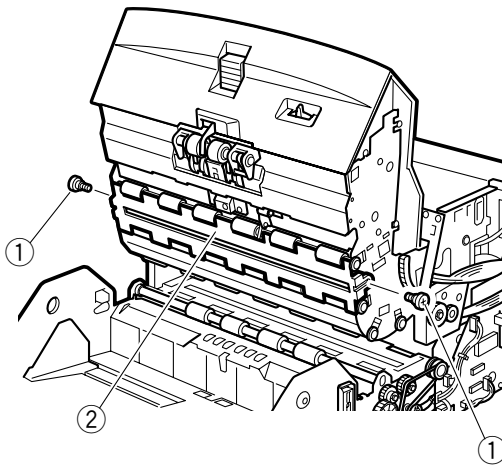
Fig. 4-331

Note 1: The shape of the two roller assemblies in the middle is different from that of the two roller assemblies on each side.

IV. EXPOSURE

1. Upper reading unit

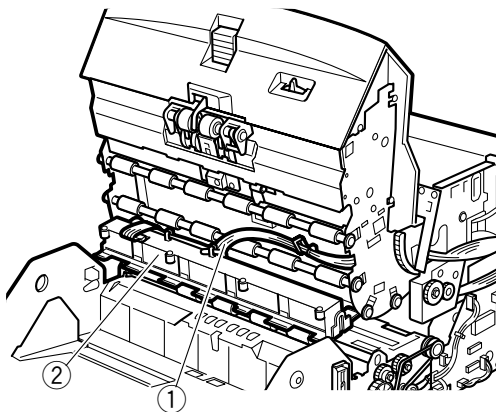
- 1) Remove the left cover assembly and the right cover assembly.
- 2) Remove two screws ① (stepped) and pull out the upper reading unit ② to the front.



- ① Screw ② Upper reading unit

Fig. 4-401

- 3) Disconnect one connector ① and take out the upper reading unit ②.



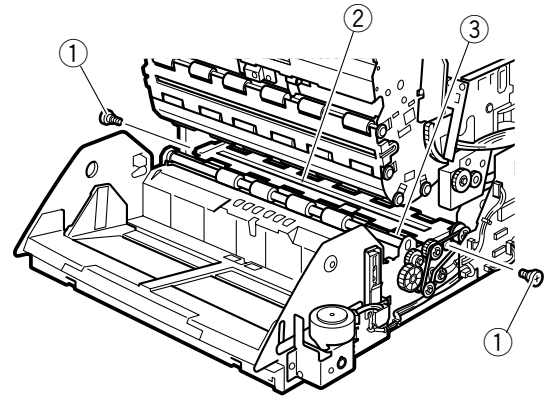
- ① Connector ② Upper reading unit

Fig. 4-402

Note 1: When reassembling, assemble the unit so that the cut out for the double feed sensor lever 2 is in the front.

2. Lower reading unit

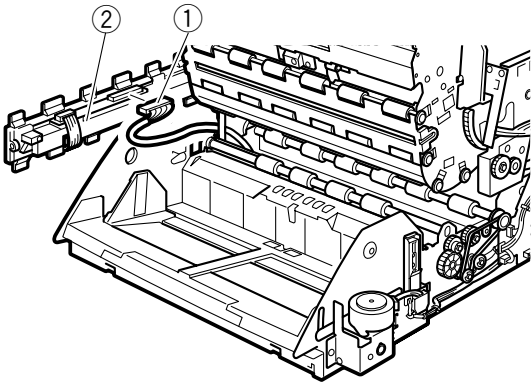
- 1) Remove the left cover assembly and the right cover assembly.
- 2) Remove two screws ① (stepped), lift the lower reading unit ②, and while turning the upper registration guide plate ③, pull out the unit to the left.



- ① Screw ② Lower reading unit
③ Upper registration guide plate

Fig. 4-403

- 3) Disconnect one connector ①, and take out the lower reading unit ②.



① Connector ② Lower reading unit

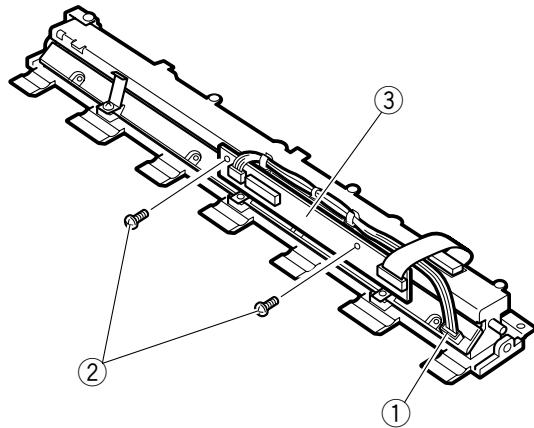
Fig. 4-404

Note 1: When reassembling, be careful not to pinch or jam the connected cable assembly.

Note 2: When reassembling, assemble the unit so that the face of double feed sensor reference plate touching with the double feed sensor lever 2 is in the front. Also, make sure that the upper registration guide plate is on top of the front side of the unit.

3. Upper LED unit

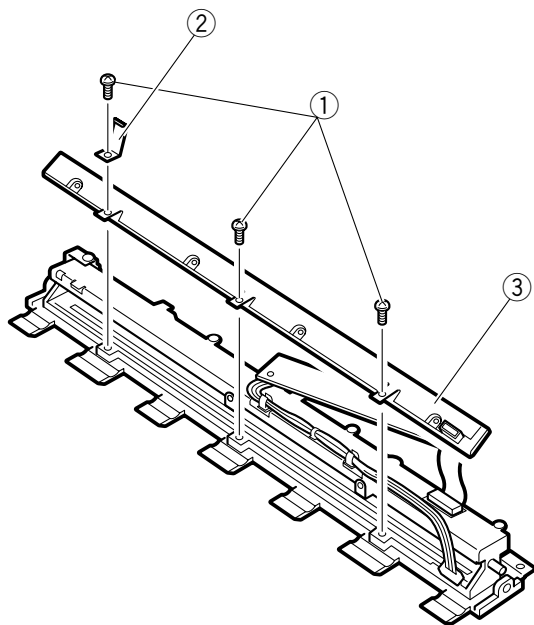
- 1) Remove the upper reading unit.
- 2) Disconnect one connector ①, remove two screws ② and then remove the PCB assembly ③.



① Connector ② Screw
③ PCB assembly

Fig. 4-405

- 3) Remove three screws ①, and remove the leaf spring ② and then the LED unit ③.



① Screw ② Leaf spring
③ LED unit

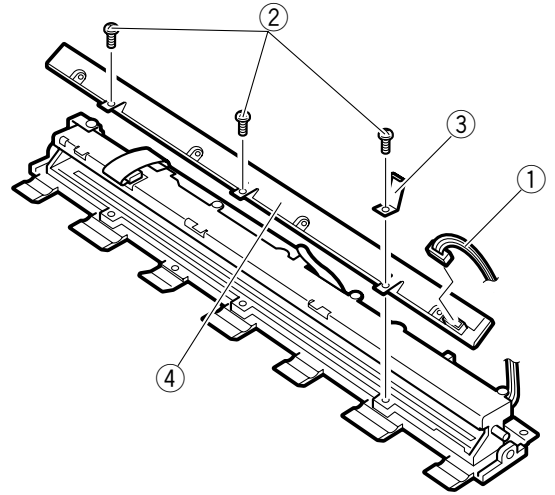
Fig. 4-406

Note 1: When reassembling, secure the leaf spring so that its tip comes in contact with the metal portion.

Note 2: The upper LED unit and the lower LED unit are identical parts.

4. Lower LED unit

- 1) Remove the lower reading unit.
- 2) Disconnect one connector ①, remove three screws ②, and then remove the leaf spring ③ and the LED unit ④.



- | | |
|---------------|------------|
| ① Connector | ② Screw |
| ③ Leaf spring | ④ LED unit |

Fig. 4-407

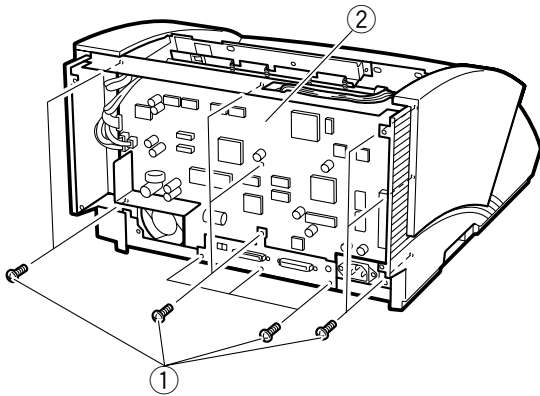
Note 1: When reassembling, secure the leaf spring so that its tip comes in contact with the metal portion.

Note 2: The upper LED unit and the lower LED unit are identical parts.

V. ELECTRICAL (PCBs, ETC.)

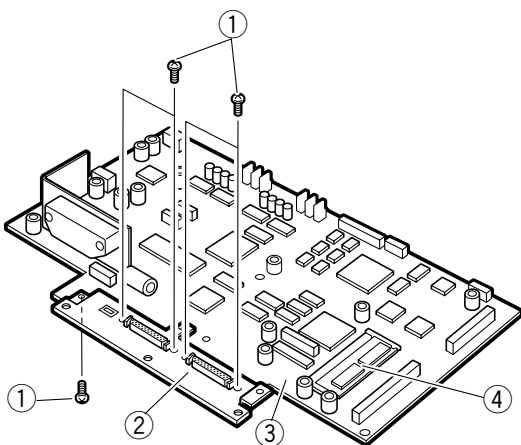
1. Main CPU PCB Assembly (SH2-MAIN)

- 1) Remove the rear cover.
- 2) Disconnect all connectors, remove 11 screws ①, and remove the PCB assembly unit ②.



- ① Screw ② PCB assembly unit
Fig. 4-501

- 3) Remove five screws ①, remove the connector cover ②, and then separate the main CPU PCB assembly ③. In the case of DR-5080C, remove the memory ④.

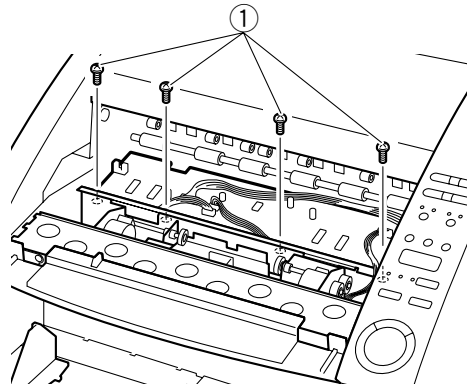


- ① Screw ② Connector cover
 ③ Main CPU PCB assembly
 ④ Memory

Fig. 4-502

2. Pickup control PCB assembly (K4-SUB)

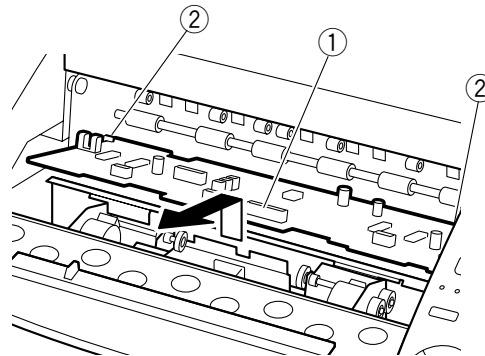
- 1) Remove the upper delivery cover assembly.
- 2) Disconnect all connectors, and remove four screws ①.



- ① Screw

Fig. 4-503

- 3) Lift and tilt the front of the pickup control PCB assembly ①, remove it from the left and right guides ②, and then remove the PCB assembly.

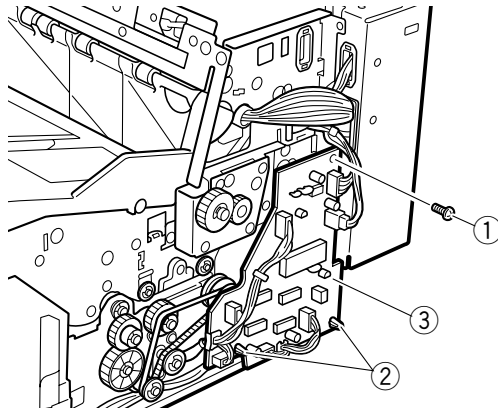


- ① Pickup control PCB assembly
 ② Guide

Fig. 4-504

3. Document board control PCB assembly (K0-SUB2)

- 1) Remove the right cover assembly.
- 2) Disconnect all connectors, remove one screw ①, remove two locking supports ②, and then remove the document board control PCB assembly ③.

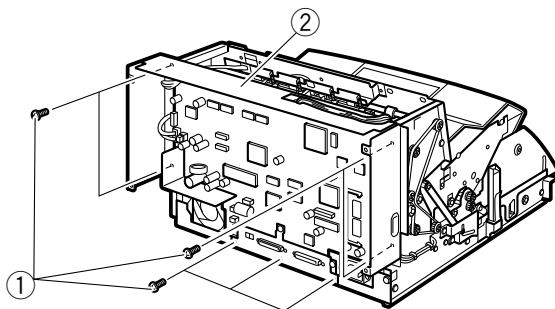


- ① Screw ② Locking support
③ Document board control PCB

Fig. 4-505

4. Back plate assembly

- 1) Remove the left cover assembly and the right cover assembly.
- 2) Disconnect all connectors, pull out the cable assembly from the hole, remove seven screws ①, and then remove the back plate assembly ②.



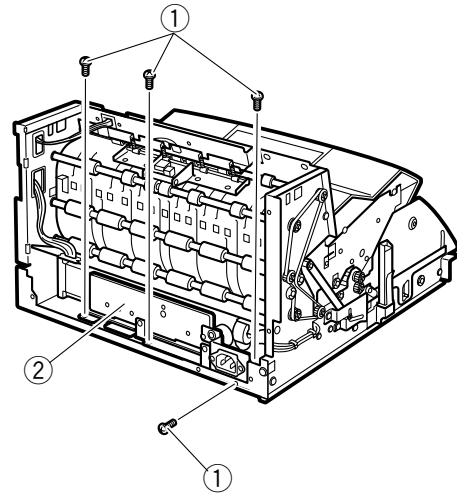
- ① Screw ② Back plate assembly

Fig. 4-506

Note 1: When reassembling, fit the positioning tab of the main body side into the hole and insert the tab.

5. DC power supply PCB assembly

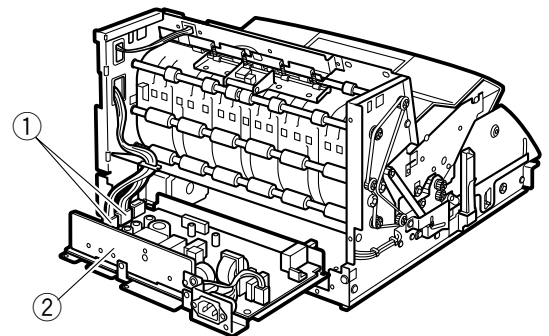
- 1) Remove the back plate assembly.
- 2) Remove four screws ① (round-tipped), and pull out the DC power supply PCB assembly ②.



- ① Screw
② DC power supply PCB assembly

Fig. 4-507

- 3) Disconnect two connectors ①, and remove the DC power supply PCB assembly ②.

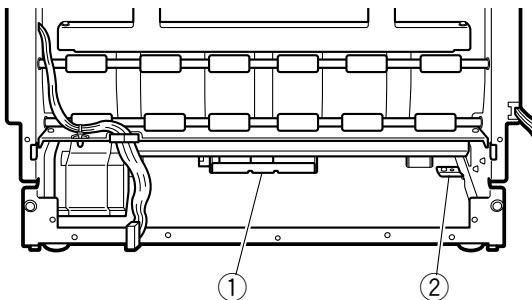


- ① Connector
② DC power supply PCB assembly

Fig. 4-508

Note 1: When reassembling, make sure to keep the power switch turned off (the state in which the front end is extending out a long way). Also, make sure to connect the 4P connector to CN3.

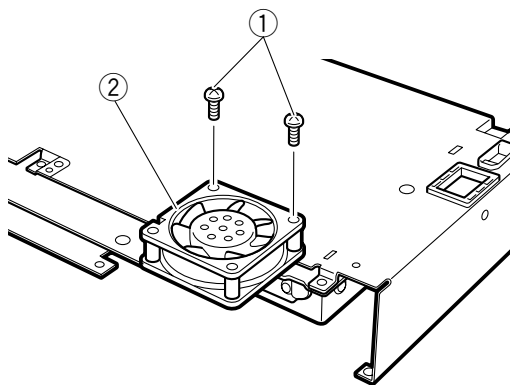
Note 2: As there is a positioning hole ① and a leaf spring ② in the rear of the main body, when assembling the PCB assembly into the main body, set the position, then insert the PCB assembly while keeping it in contact with the bottom face.



① Positioning hole ② Leaf spring
Fig. 4-509

6. Exhaust fan

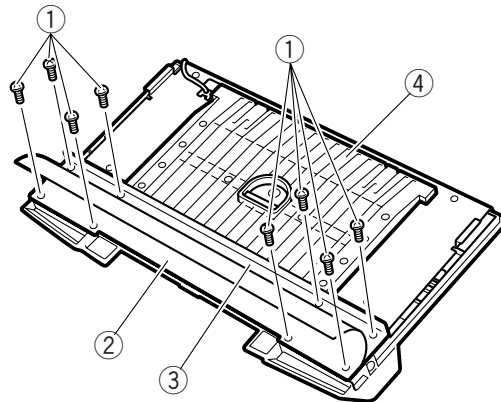
- 1) Remove the back plate assembly.
- 2) Remove two screws ① and remove the exhaust fan ②.



① Screw ② Exhaust fan
Fig. 4-510

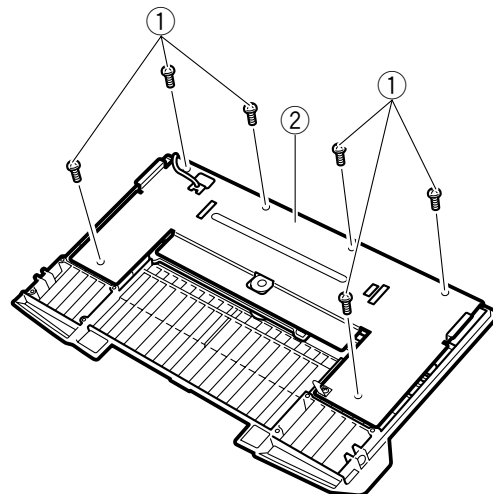
7. Document width/document detection PCB assembly

- 1) Remove the document board assembly.
- 2) Remove eight screws ① (self-tapping), remove the safety shield ②, the expandable tray mount plate ③, and the expandable tray assembly ④.



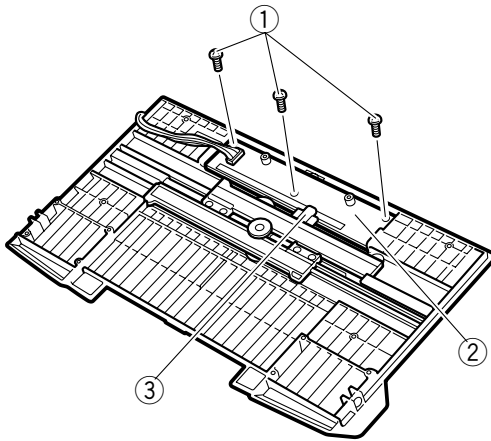
① Screw ② Safety shield
③ Expandable tray mount plate
④ Expandable tray assembly
Fig. 4-511

- 3) Remove six screws ① (self-tapping) and remove the document board reinforcing plate ②.



① Screw
② Document board reinforcing plate
Fig. 4-512

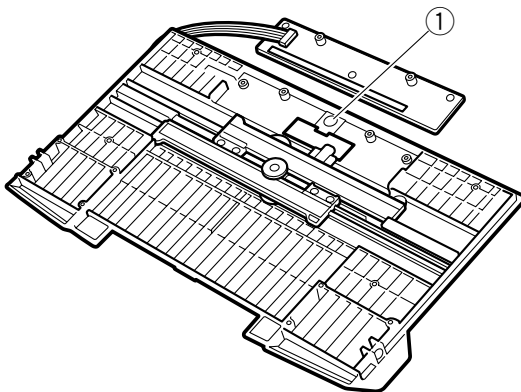
- 4) Remove three screws ① (M2.6 × 5, self-tapping) and remove the document width/document detection PCB assembly ②. Be careful not to distort the contacts ③.



- ① Screw
 ② Document width/document detection PCB assembly
 ③ Contacts

Fig. 4-513

Note 1: Do not make dirty the contacts and the contact faces on the PCB assembly. Also, the document detection window ① may fall of its own weight so be careful.



- ① Document detection window

Fig. 4-514

8. Operation panel PCB assembly

This is included in the Operation panel. Do not remove from the operation panel.

For the disassembling of operation panel, refer to the section of the right cover (assembly).

CHAPTER 5

INSTALLATION

This product undergoes exhaustive adjustment and testing before it is shipped from the factory. Installation after unpacking at the field is important for demonstrating the machine's performance to be the same as when it passed factory inspections.

The service technician must fully understand the machine's performance before installing and inspecting the machine at a suitable environment according to the described procedure.

I. SELECTION OF LOCATION.....	5-1	IV. RED LED MOUNTING	
II. UNPACKING & INSTALLATION.....	5-2	PROCEDURE	5-8
III. IMPRINTER MOUNTING		V. MEMORY 128MB MOUNTING	
PROCEDURE	5-4	PROCEDURE	5-10

I. SELECTION OF LOCATION

It is recommended that the customer engineer personally inspects the customer's premises before installing any machine. The location should meet the following requirements.

- The power supply should be connected to an outlet capable of supplying the voltage shown on the rating plate plus or minus 10%. A grounded plug must be used.

Grounding Items

- 1) Power outlet grounding terminal
- 2) Earth lead that has been grounded for office equipment

- The temperature should be between 15 to 27.5°C (59 to 81.5°F), and relative humidity between 25 and 75% RH. In particular, do not install the machine near water faucets, humidifiers, hot water heaters, and refrigerators.
- The machine should not be exposed to open flame, dust, ammonia or other corrosive gases, direct sunlight, intensive vibration or near machinery that generates electromagnetic waves.
 - Prevent cigarette smoke from coming into direct contact with the machine.
 - In applications where installation of the machine in the direct sunlight is unavoidable, a heavy curtain should be installed on the windows to protect the machine.

- Maintain sufficient space around the machine during operation and maintenance, and to allow ventilation.
 - The exhaust fan and power cord are located at the rear of the machine. So, do not push the machine against the wall.
 - Allow sufficient space on both sides of the machine so that you can insert your hands to lift it up when the machine is to be moved.

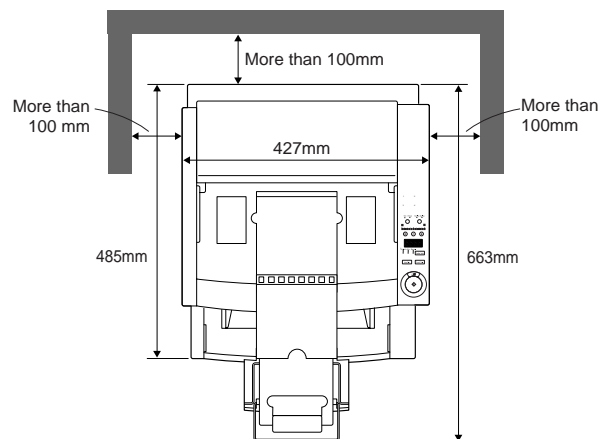
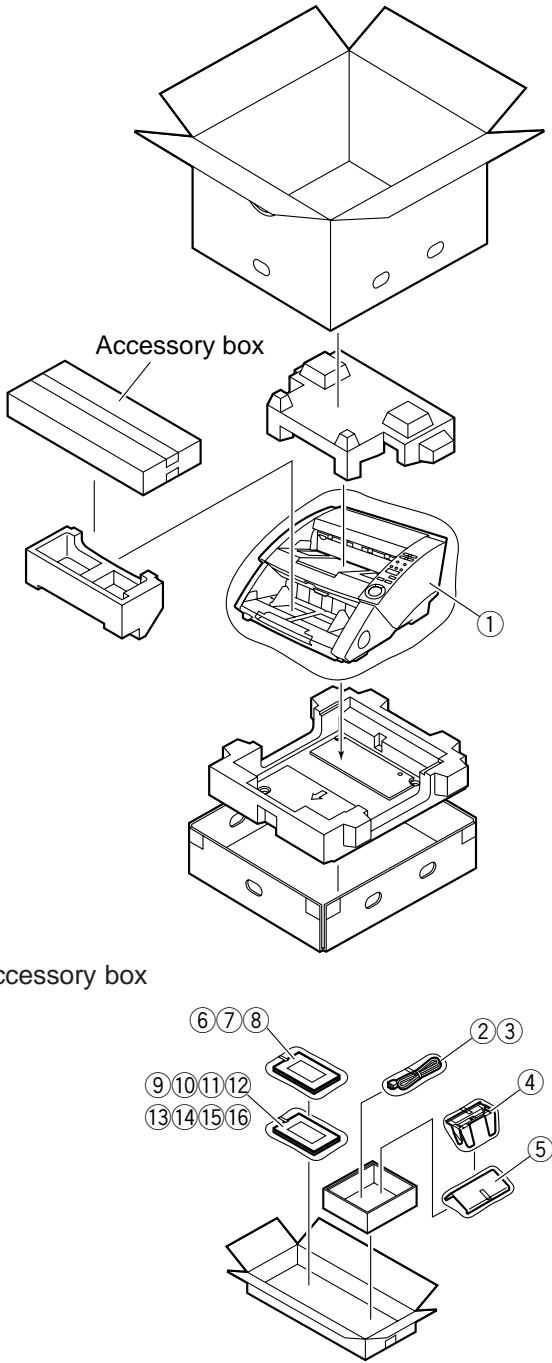


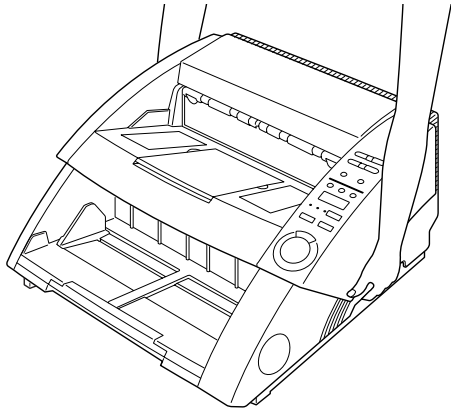
Fig. 5-1

II. UNPACKING & INSTALLATION

If the machine (in its shipping container) has been stored in a cold location, it should not be un-

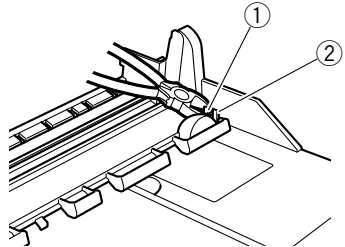
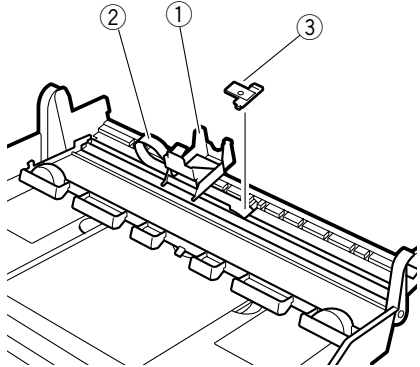
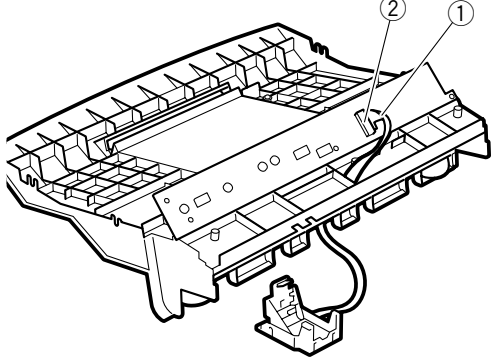
packed in a warm room until it has had time to warm up. Otherwise, moisture may condense on the metal and glass parts, resulting in trouble. At least one hour should be allowed for the machine to warm up to room temperature before the shipping container is opened.

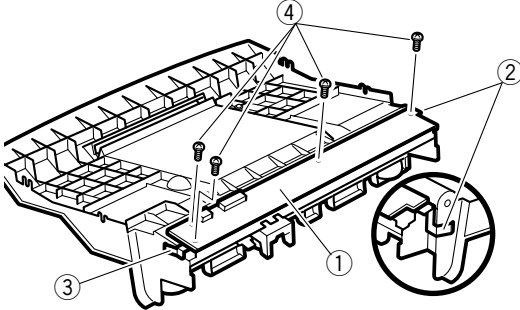
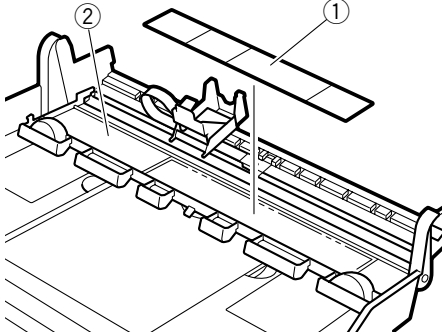
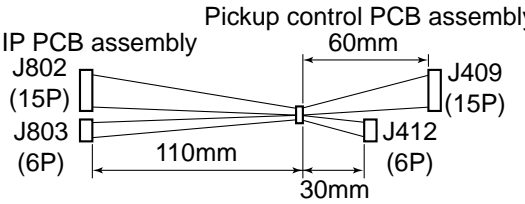
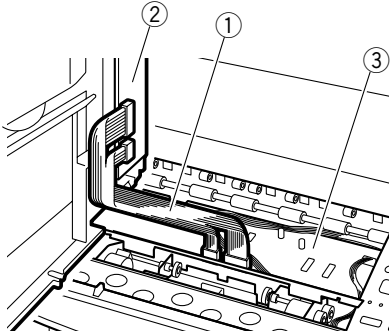
No.	Procedure	Inspection and Remarks
1	<p>Open the container and take out the parts and other materials packed inside. Check if anything is missing. The container weight approx. 245N (25kgf). Its external dimensions are approx. 600 (W) × 670 (D) × 430 (H) mm.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ① Main body ② Power cord ③ Grounding wire (100V model only) ④ Removable tray ⑤ Delivery support plate ⑥ Instruction manual (Driver software) ⑦ ISIS/TWAIN device driver ⑧ Device driver license agreement (for ISIS/TWAIN) ⑨ Instruction manual (Hardware) ⑩ Instruction manual (Application software) ⑪ Canon device driver + Scanning utility 5000 ⑫ Device driver license agreement (for Canon) ⑬ Function sheets ⑭ Function key label ⑮ Warranty card (100V and 120V models only) ⑯ Customer registration card (100V model only) 	 <p>Accessory box</p> <p>• Accessory box</p>

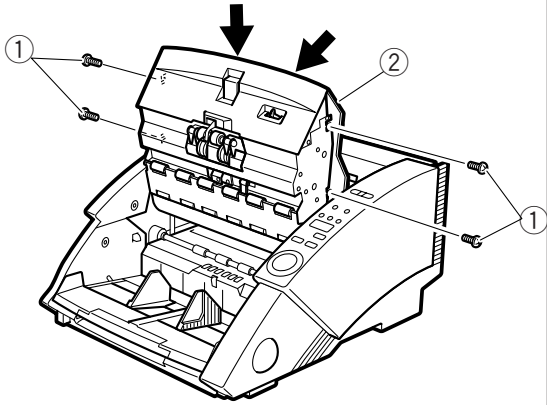
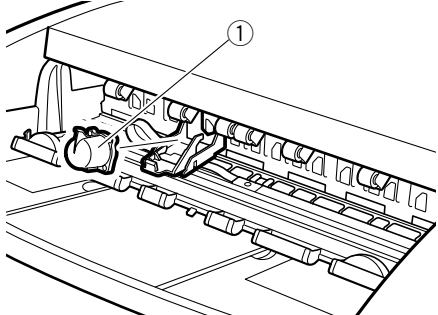
No.	Procedure	Inspection and Remarks
2	<p>Move the main body to where it is to be installed.</p> <p>Note: When moving it, hold the bottom center at the right and left sides of the cover with both hands. The machine weighs approx. 196N (20 kgf).</p>	
3	<p>Peel off all the filament tapes securing the various parts. Also remove the protective pad from the document guide assembly.</p>	<p>Check all the covers for possible damage incurred during transportation.</p>
4	<p>Open the upper unit and remove the protective sheet from the reading glasses.</p>	
5	<p>Connect the power cord. In the case of 100V model, connect the grounding wire also.</p>	
6	<p>Connect a personal computer to the main body using a SCSI cable. Change the SCSI ID and terminator settings if necessary.</p>	
7	<p>After turning on the power of the machine, turn on the power of the personal computer. Note: Before turning on the power of the personal computer, make sure that "0000" appears on the counter display of the operation panel.</p>	
8	<p>Install the driver software and application software in the personal computer. For details, refer to the instruction manual.</p>	
9	<p>Check if the machine operates normally. For details on how to operate it, refer to the instruction manual. Affix the function key labels if necessary.</p>	

III. IMPRINTER MOUNTING PROCEDURE

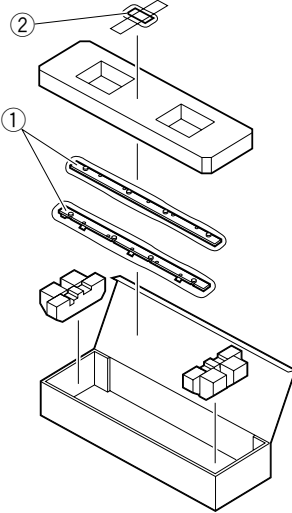
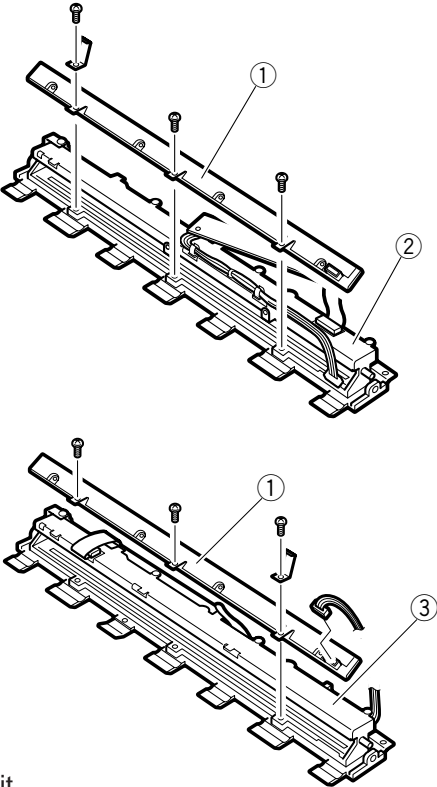
No.	Procedure	Inspection and Remarks
1	<p>Open the container and take out the parts and other materials packed inside. Check if anything is missing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ① IP mount unit ② IP PCB assembly ③ IP cable assembly ④ IP drain unit ⑤ IP plate spring 1 ⑥ IP plate spring 2 ⑦ Screws (M3 × 6, BH, black): 2 screws ⑧ Screws (M3 × 6, self-tapping, black): 4 screws ⑨ FPC stopper 2 ⑩ IP operation label ⑪ Instruction manual ⑫ Warranty card (100V model only) <p>Note: IP head is sold separately.</p>	
2	<p>Remove the rear cover of the main body. Note: For details on how to disassemble it, refer to Chapter 4, the Disassembly/Assembly section.</p>	
3	<p>Remove the upper cover.</p>	
4	<p>Install the IP drain unit. Make the IP drain unit fixed by pressing it to the IP head side.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ① IP drain unit ② Screws (M3 × 6, BH, black): 2 screws

No.	Procedure	Inspection and Remarks
5	Remove the delivery upper cover assembly.	
6	Cut off the fixing hooks (1 on the right, 1 on the left) of the IP cover with a cutting nipper. Do not cut off the opening/closing hooks (1 on the right, 1 on the left). Treat the cutting edges.	 <p>① Fixing hook ② Opening/closing hook</p>
7	Install the IP mount unit. 1) Peel off the separate paper from the adhesive double coated tape stuck on the back of FPC, and then affix the FPC straight on the upper delivery cover. 2) Insert the FPC stopper 2 and make it fixed.	 <p>① IP mount unit ② FPC ③ FPC stopper 2</p>
8	Connect the FPC in the IP mount unit to the connector of the IP PCB assembly.	 <p>① FPC ② Connector</p>

No.	Procedure	Inspection and Remarks
9	<p>Mount the IP PCB assembly, IP plate spring 1 and IP plate spring 2.</p> <p>The each spring should be inserted between the IP PCB assembly and the upper delivery cover, and fastened together by the screws.</p>	 <p>① IP PCB assembly ② IP plate spring 1 ③ IP plate spring 2 ④ Screws (M3 × 6, self-tapping, black): 4 screws</p>
10	<p>Peel off the separate paper from the IP operation label and affix the label on the inside of the IP cover.</p> <p>Match the directions of the label and the main body so that how to mount the IP head is understood when opening the IP cover from the front side of the main body.</p>	 <p>① IP operation label ② IP cover</p>
11	<p>Insert the IP cable assembly into the connectors (2 connectors) of the IP PCB assembly, and then insert the other end of the cable into the connectors (2 connectors) of the pickup control PCB assembly.</p> <p>In order to prevent the connectors from disengaging, connect them in the specified order.</p>	<p>• Connecting the IP cable assembly</p>  <p>IP PCB assembly Pickup control PCB assembly</p> <p>J802 (15P) J409 (15P) J803 (6P) J412 (6P)</p> <p>110mm 60mm 30mm</p>  <p>① IP cable assembly ② IP PCB assembly ③ Pickup control PCB assembly</p>

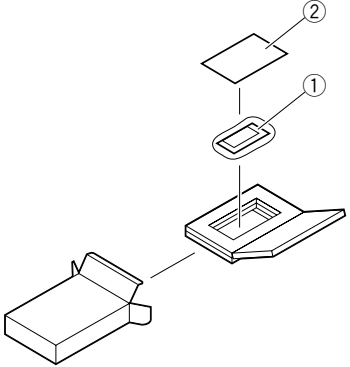
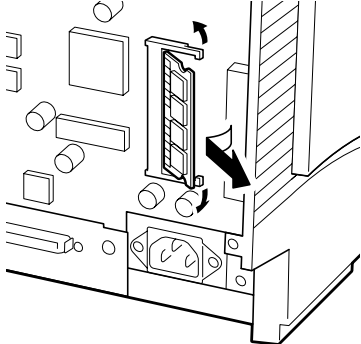
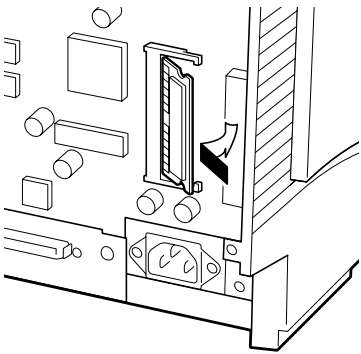
No.	Procedure	Inspection and Remarks
12	Attach the upper delivery cover. Fasten the screws pressing the cover down so that it does not rise.	 <p>① Screw ② Upper delivery cover</p>
13	Attach the IP head. For details on how to attach it, refer to the instruction manual for the imprinter or the IP operation label. Clean the external cover or the inside when they are stained with the ink during operation.	 <p>① IP head</p>
14	Check if the imprinter operates normally. For details on how to operate it, refer to the instruction manuals for the machine and the imprinter. In the case of checking the imprinter operation without connecting to a personal computer, use "Imprinter operation check mode" in the service mode.	

IV. RED LED MOUNTING PROCEDURE

No.	Procedure	Inspection and Remarks
1	<p>Open the container and take out the parts packed inside. Check if anything is missing. ① LED unit (red): 2 units ② Label (red)</p>	
2	<p>Replace the LED units in the upper reading unit and the lower reading unit. For details on its procedure, refer to Chapter 4, the Disassembly/Assembly section. The LED units in the upper reading unit and the lower reading unit are all the same.</p>	 <p>① LED unit ② Upper reading unit ③ Lower reading unit</p>

No.	Procedure	Inspection and Remarks														
3	Open the upper unit and affix the label (red) on the left side plate.															
4	Enter the service mode and change the setting to 1 (red) in the LED selection setting for the binary mode of Address "05." For details on its procedure, refer to Chapter 7, V. Service Mode.															
5	Open the upper unit and change the value of Address "05" to 1 in the setting label stuck on the right side plate.	<p>* Setting label</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Address</th> <th>Factory Default</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>05</td> <td>⊗ ① 2 4 7</td> </tr> <tr> <td>09</td> <td>14</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0B</td> <td>15</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>MA2-5608</p>	Address	Factory Default	05	⊗ ① 2 4 7	09	14	0B	15						
Address	Factory Default															
05	⊗ ① 2 4 7															
09	14															
0B	15															
6	Carry out the gain adjustment/shading compensation mode in Address "F8."															
7	Check if the machine operates normally. For details on how to operate it, refer to the instruction manual.															

V. MEMORY 128MB MOUNTING PROCEDURE

No.	Procedure	Inspection and Remarks
1	<p>Open the container and take out the parts and other materials packed inside. Check if anything is missing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ① Memory ② Warranty card (100V model only) 	
2	<p>Remove the rear cover. For details on its procedure, refer to Chapter 4, the Disassembly/Assembly section.</p>	
3	<p>Replace the memory.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Removal Release the stoppers at the both sides so that the memory pops up slantwise. Pull out the memory slantwise. • Installation Insert the 128 MB memory slantwise and press it until the stoppers lock. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Removal  • Installation 
4	<p>Enter the service mode and make sure in the SD-RAM display of Address "28" that the memory is changed to the designated capacity.</p>	
5	<p>Check if the machine operates normally. For details on how to operate it, refer to the instruction manual.</p>	

CHAPTER 6

MAINTENANCE & SERVICING

I. BASIC PERIODIC SERVICING PROCEDURE	6-1	III. CONSUMABLE PARTS	6-3
II. PARTS TO BE REPLACED PERIODICALLY	6-2	IV. PERIODIC SERVICING LIST	6-4

I. BASIC PERIODIC SERVICING PROCEDURE

Before you visit the user site for periodic servicing, check the Service Ledger, and take any parts that you expect need to be replaced.

No.	Procedure	Inspection	Remarks
1	Pay your respects to the supervisor.	Check current status	
2	Record a document and conduct a document search.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Document feed • Results of document record & search • Abnormal noise 	Confirm the counters into the service mode.
3	Replace parts (only when necessary).		
4	Clean the document feed assembly and optical assembly.		
5	Shading compensation (only when necessary)		For details, refer to the section on service mode in chapter 7.
6	Re-check the results, and record a document and conduct a document search again.		
7	Clean around the machine.		
8	Make any required entries into the Service Sheet, and report to the supervisor.		

Table 6-1

II. PARTS TO BE REPLACED PERIODICALLY

Parts must be replaced periodically to maintain the machine's functions to a constant stand-

ard. The following table shows parts that must be replaced periodically (parts that greatly influence machine operation when they are no longer functional but are not externally deformed or damaged).

Preferably these parts should be replaced when periodic servicing is carried out closest to the recommended replacement cycle.

As of May 10, 1999

No.	Parts Name		Parts No.	Q'ty	Replacement Cycle (number of sheets)	Remarks
1	Separation roller		MA2-5412	1	250,000	
2	Pickup roller		MA2-5520	1	500,000	
3	Feeding roller		MA2-5539	1	500,000	
4	Double feed sensor lever 2		MA2-5545	1	1,500,000	
5	Double feed sensor reference plate		MA2-5510	1	1,500,000	
6	Delivery sensor lever		MA2-5463	1	1,500,000	
7	LED unit	DR-5020	MG1-2976	2	(1,500,000)	lit: 500 hours
	LED unit	DR-5080C	MG1-2975	2	(1,500,000)	lit: 500 hours
	LED unit	Red LED (option)	(MG1-3036) M18-0551	(2) 1 set	(1,500,000)	lit: 500 hours
8	Separarion motor		RH7-1278	1	3,000,000	

Table 6-2

Note 1: The above figures are for reference only. So, they may vary according to conditions of use.

Note 2: The LED unit is replaced every 500 hours the LED is illuminated. Estimate the approximate number of sheets from the record obtained at the periodic servicing.

III. CONSUMABLE PARTS

This machine has not consumable parts.

The following table shows the IP head for the imprinter (option) that is set as a consumable (sales goods). This is replaced by user.

As of May 10, 1999

No.	Parts Name	Destination	Catalog No.	Remarks
1	IP head	World wides	M99-0041	Replace when the ink runout Expected life is 500,000 characters.

Table 6-3

Note: Used IP head must be collected and disposed of according to local bylaws.

IV. PERIODIC SERVICING LIST

Note: Use only the specified solvents and oils.
Do not use other solvents and oils.

[△: Cleaning ●: Replacement ☆: Oiling □: Adjustment ◎: Inspection]

Unit Name	Location	Maintenance Cycle				Remarks
		Every 250,000 sheets	Every 500,000 sheets	Every 1.5 million Sheets	others	
Document feed	Separation roller	●				
	Pickup roller	△	●			
	Feeding roller	△	●			
	Registration rollers (upper, lower)	△				
	Reading rollers (upper, lower)	△				
	Double feed sensor lever 2			●		
	Double feed sensor reference plate			●		
	Delivery sensor lever			●		
Optical path	Reading glasses	△				
	LED units				●	LED lit 500 hours
	Reading units				□	LED lit 150 hours (expect 0.5 million sheets) Operate the Shading compensation again
Motor	Separation motor				●	3 million sheets

Table 6-4

Note 1: For the cleaning of each roller and reading glasses, wipe with a cloth moistened with water, and then wipe dry. Be sure to clean the rollers while turning them into the direction of document feed. If the rollers and reading glasses are very dirty, instruct the user to perform "Daily User Inspection" again.

CHAPTER 7

TROUBLESHOOTING

I. ERROR INDICATION AND DISPOSITION	7-1	IV. FEED TROUBLESHOOTING	7-15
II. IMAGE TROUBLESHOOTING	7-4	V. SERVICE MODES	7-16
III. OPERATION TROUBLESHOOTING ..	7-7	VI. AFTER REPLACING PARTS	7-35

I. ERROR INDICATION AND DISPOSITION

1. Error codes

When various types of errors occur, this machine indicates the error code on the display of the operation panel. Error codes are shown in three alphanumeric digits. Table 7-1 shows a list of the error codes. The list includes errors that the user must take care of and those that are for checking. Errors such as document jams that the user can

correct, are taken care of by the user. However, when an error taken care of by the user is not corrected, the service technician takes care of it. For details, refer to this chapter.

For error indications on the display connected to the personal computer, refer to the instruction manual or the instruction manual of the software being used.

Note 1: The error indication for endorser is not described in this manual. Refer to the technical information which will be issued separately.

Category	Code	Description	Disposition
Docu- ment jam	P00	After clearing double feed detection, document is inside machine. After correcting document jam, document is inside machine.	Process document jam (user)
	P01	Document does not come to front registration sensor.	Process document jam (user)
	P02	Document does not come out of front registration sensor. Document has the perforations for binding.	Process document jam (user)
	P03	Document is removed from front registration sensor.	Retry after opening and closing upper unit (user)
	P04	Document does not come to back registration sensor.	Process document jam (user)
	P06	Document come up to back registration sensor earlier. Document has the perforations for binding.	Process document jam (user)
	P08	Document does not come out of back registration sensor.	Process document jam (user)
	P10	Document does not come to delivery sensor.	Process document jam (user)
	P18	Skew feed was detected.	Process document jam (user)
	P20	Document does not come out of delivery sensor.	Process document jam (user)
Double feed indication	P80	Pickup failed and document board goes down.	Retry after opening and closing upper unit (user)
	d01	Double feed detection by paper thickness.	Clear indication and process document jam (user)
	d02	Double feed detection by paper length.	Clear indication and process document jam (user)
Door open indication	d03	Both d01 and d02 detected.	Clear indication and process document jam (user)
	C01	Upper unit is open.	Close upper unit completely (user)
	C02	Imprinter cover is open.	Close imprinter cover completely (user)
	C03	Both C01 and C02 detected.	Close both completely (user)

Category	Code	Description	Disposition
Error indication	E20	Main motor trouble	Check of connection and load, replacement of motor
	E21	Document board motor trouble	Check of connection and load, replacement of motor
	E22	Separation motor trouble	Check of connection and load, replacement of motor
	E23	Gap adjusting motor trouble	Check of connection and load, replacement of motor
	E24	Feeding motor trouble	Check of connection and load, replacement of motor
	E25	Pickup motor trouble	Check of connection and load, replacement of motor
	E29	Registration clutch trouble	Check of connection and load, replacement of clutch
	E30	Exhaust fan trouble	Check of connection and load, replacement of fan
	E40	Communication error between CPUs (SH2 - K4)	Check of connection, replacement of PCB assemblies (SH2, K4, power supply)
	E41	Communication error between CPUs (K4 - K0)	Check of connection, replacement of PCB assemblies (K4, K0, power supply)
	E80	Back-up RAM error	Check of connection, replacement of SH2 PCB assembly
	E81	SD-RAM read/write error	Check of connection, replacement of SD-RAM/SH2 PCB assembly
	E85	SD-RAM connection error	Check of connection, replacement of SD-RAM/SH2 PCB assembly
Warning indication	L01	Setting by key operation or function sheet cannot be handled by SD-RAM capacity.	Correct setting and retry (user)
	L02	Setting by key operation or function sheet cannot be handled by line memory capacity.	Correct setting and retry (user)
	U01	There is a count mismatch (counter < number of scanned sheets).	Check number of documents (user)
	U02	There is a count mismatch (counter > number of scanned sheets).	Check if documents have all been recorded (user)
	H01	Imprinter head has not been mounted.	Mount head (user)

2. Document jam processing

- 1) Remove the documents left on the document board and delivery tray.

Take off the removable tray and auxiliary delivery plate, and close the auxiliary delivery tray.

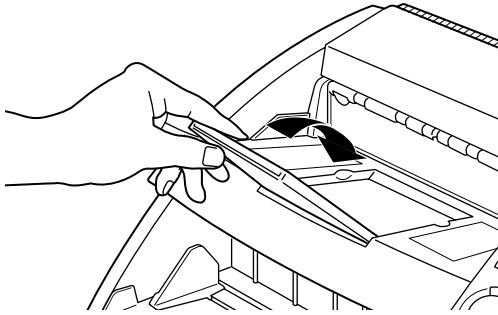


Fig. 7-1

- 4) Push the upper unit to the rear and then slowly close it. Finally, push it lightly from the top and close it completely.

Note 1: Do not forcibly push it down.

Note 2: Check the pages that have been recorded.

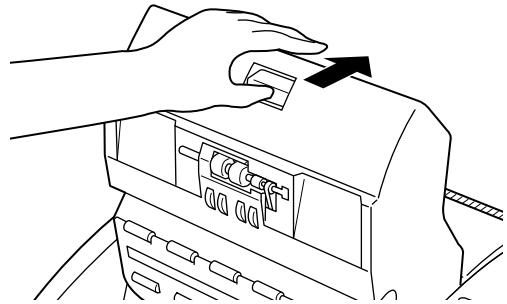


Fig. 7-4

- 2) Press the button, and slowly open the upper unit until it stops.

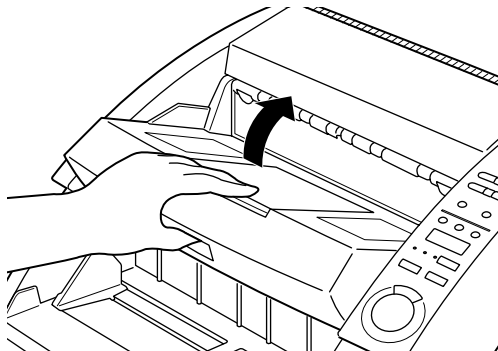


Fig. 7-2

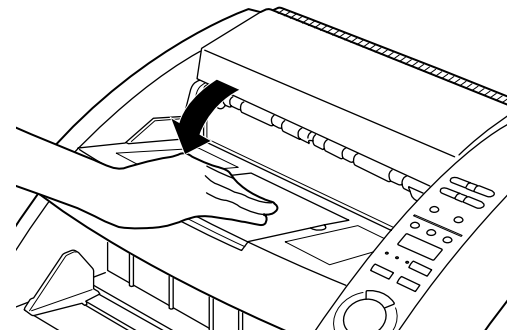


Fig. 7-5

- 3) Remove the documents remaining inside the machine paying attention not to break the documents.

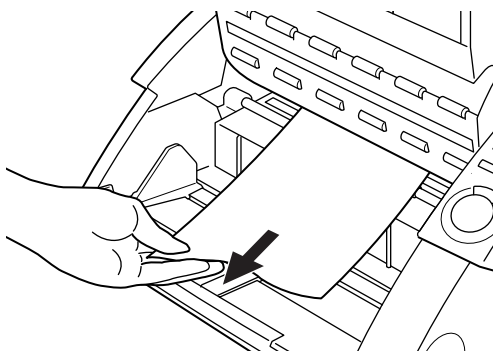


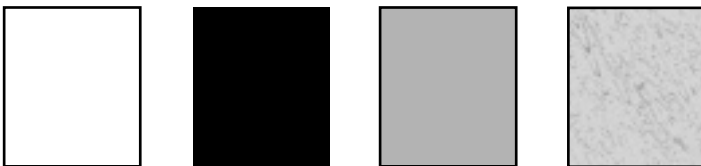
Fig. 7-3

II. IMAGE TROUBLESHOOTING

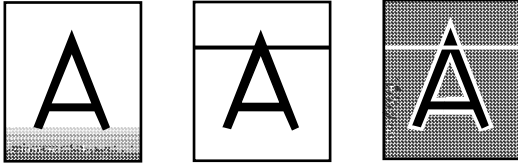
Note 1: There are times when image trouble is caused by the display device or the printer used by the user. In such a case, the trouble cannot be corrected with this machine.

Note 2: There are times when, depending on the type of the image and on the settings, document reproducibility becomes poor. Uneven color may occur particularly when a fine grain image is output in color mode. In such a case, the image may become better by changing the setting items.

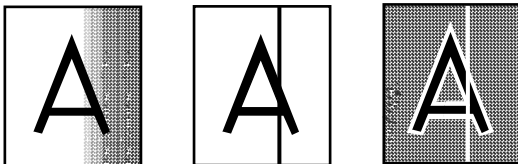
1 Image not displayed (completely white, completely black, all grey, mottled)



Cause/Faulty Location	Step	Check Item	Result	Action
"Brightness" setting	1	Is setting of "Brightness" appropriate?	NO	Change the setting. Also change "Contrast" if necessary.
Reading glass	2	Is reading glass clean?	NO	Clean. Also clean roller if necessary.
Reading unit connection	3	Are J113/J114 of SH2-MAIN and J1/J2/J3/J4/J5 of reading unit correctly connected?	NO	Connect properly.
Shading compensation	4	Is trouble solved when F8/F9 of service mode are carried out?	YES	End.
LED unit	5	Is trouble solved when LED unit is replaced?	YES	End.
Reading unit	6	Is trouble solved when reading unit is replaced?	YES	End.
SH2-MAIN	7	Is trouble solved when SH2-MAIN is replaced?	YES	End.

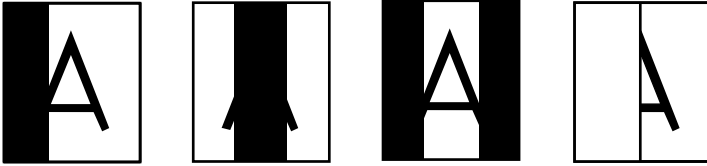
2 Uneven density, streak (horizontal scanning direction)

Cause/Faulty Location	Step	Check Item	Result	Action
Roller	1	Dirty or deformed?	NO	Clean, replace roller.
Gear, belt	2	Turning smoothly?	NO	Adjust assemblage, replace parts.
Main motor	3	Is trouble solved when main motor is replaced?	YES	End.
Reading unit	4	Is trouble solved when reading unit is replaced?	YES	End.
SH2-MAIN	5	Is trouble solved when SH2-MAIN is replaced?	YES	End.

3 Uneven density, streak (vertical scanning direction)

Cause/Faulty Location	Step	Check Item	Result	Action
Reading glass	1	Is reading glass clean?	NO	Clean. If necessary clean roller too.
Shading compensation	2	Is trouble solved when F8/F9 of service mode is carried out?	YES	End.
LED unit	3	Is trouble solved when LED unit is replaced?	YES	End.
Reading unit	4	Is trouble solved when reading unit is replaced?	YES	End.
SH2-MAIN	5	Is trouble solved when SH2-MAIN is replaced?	YES	End.

4 Part of image is not displayed



Cause/Faulty Location	Step	Check Item	Result	Action
Document width/document detection PCB assembly	1	Is image only displayed for minimum width of document guide?	YES	Replace document width/document detection PCB assembly.
Shading compensation	2	Is trouble solved when F8/F9 of service mode is carried out?	YES	End.
LED unit	3	Is trouble solved when LED unit is replaced?	YES	End.
Reading unit	4	Is trouble solved when reading unit is replaced?	YES	End.
SH2-MAIN	5	Is trouble solved when SH2-MAIN is replaced?	YES	End.

III. OPERATION TROUBLESHOOTING

1 Personal computer does not recognize the machine

Note 1: The cause of the trouble is related to SCSI I/F connection. Refer to the instruction manual for this machine or personal computer used.

2 Power does not come on

Note 1: When power switch is turned on but LEDs on operation panel do not light up, faulty power supply is suspect.

Note 2: Immediately after AC power supply is turned off the capacitor of the DC power supply PCB assembly is charged, so connect/disconnect connectors 10 seconds or more after the AC power supply is turned off.

Cause/Faulty Location	Step	Check Item	Result	Action
Connection of power cord	1	Is power cord connected?	NO	Connect properly.
AC power supply voltage	2	Is specified voltage being supplied to outlet?	NO	Explain to the customer that the trouble is not with this machine?
Connection of connector (operation panel related)	3	Are J123 of SH2-MAIN and CN1 of operation panel PCB assembly properly connected?	NO	Connect properly. If LED of operation panel still does not light, then replace the operation panel.
Connection of connector (DC power supply related)	4	Is LED105 of SH2-MAIN lit? (+24VDC)	NO	Check if J121 of SH2-MAIN is properly connected.
	5	Is LED1 of K4-SUB flashing? (+24VDC)	NO	Check if J503 of SH2-MAIN and J402 of K4-SUB are properly connected.
	–	When the above two LEDs are lit or flashing, the AC power supply and the DC power supply PCB assembly are in order.	–	
	6	Is LED1 of K0-SUB2 flashing? (+24VDC)	NO	Check if J502 of K0-SUB2 is properly connected.
	7	Are CN2 and CN3 of the DC power supply PCB assembly properly connected?	NO	Connect properly.
DC power supply PCB assembly	8	Is the trouble solved when the DC power supply PCB assembly is replaced?	YES	End.
SH2-MAIN	9	Are LED103 (+5VDC), LED104 (+3.3VDC), and LED106 (-5VDC) lit?	NO	Replace SH2-MAIN.

3 Main motor (M1) does not rotate

Cause/Faulty Location	Step	Check Item	Result	Action																		
DC power supply	1	Is power being supplied to the machine?	NO	Carry out the section on "Power does not come on."																		
Connection of connector	2	Is J124 of SH2-MAIN properly connected?	NO	Connect properly.																		
Load of transmission system	3	Is transmission system, which is the load on the motor, in order?	NO	Eliminate the abnormal load.																		
SH2-MAIN Main motor	4	Disconnect J124, and carry out "FF-02" of service mode. At that time, when the terminal voltage of SH2-MAIN is measured with a tester, does the voltage become the specified voltage? Note: As the output is a pulse waveform, the tester will indicate the following voltages, but the actual voltages are different. Also, they are rough voltages.	YES	Check the wiring from SH2-MAIN to the motor, and if it is good, replace the motor.																		
		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Connector</th> <th>Terminal</th> <th>Voltage</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="10">J124</td> <td>6 ⊕</td> <td>0V →</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 ⊖</td> <td>+12VDC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6 ⊕</td> <td>0V →</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 ⊖</td> <td>+12VDC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6 ⊕</td> <td>0V →</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4 ⊖</td> <td>+12VDC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6 ⊕</td> <td>0V →</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5 ⊖</td> <td>+12VDC</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Connector	Terminal	Voltage	J124	6 ⊕	0V →	1 ⊖	+12VDC	6 ⊕	0V →	2 ⊖	+12VDC	6 ⊕	0V →	4 ⊖	+12VDC	6 ⊕	0V →	5 ⊖	+12VDC
Connector	Terminal	Voltage																				
J124	6 ⊕	0V →																				
	1 ⊖	+12VDC																				
	6 ⊕	0V →																				
	2 ⊖	+12VDC																				
	6 ⊕	0V →																				
	4 ⊖	+12VDC																				
	6 ⊕	0V →																				
	5 ⊖	+12VDC																				
	(4)	When a tester can not be used, first replace the motor, and if the trouble is not solved, then replace SH2-MAIN.																				

4 Pickup motor (M2) does not rotate

Cause/Faulty Location	Step	Check Item	Result	Action										
DC power supply	1	Is power being supplied to the machine?	NO	Carry out the section on "Power does not come on."										
Connection of connector	2	Is J404 of K4-SUB properly connected?	NO	Connect properly.										
Load of transmission system	3	Is transmission system, which is the load on the motor, in order?	NO	Eliminate the abnormal load.										
K4-SUB Pickup motor	4	Disconnect J404, and carry out "FF-08" of service mode. At that time, when the terminal voltage of K4-SUB is measured with a tester, does the voltage become the specified voltage? Note: As the output is a pulse waveform, the tester will indicate the following voltages, but the actual voltages are different. Also, they are rough voltages.	YES	Check the wiring from K4-SUB to the motor, and if it is good, replace the motor.										
		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Connector</th> <th>Terminal</th> <th>Voltage</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="4">J404</td> <td>1 ⊕</td> <td>0V ←→</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 ⊖</td> <td>+24VDC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3 ⊕</td> <td>0V ←→</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4 ⊖</td> <td>+24VDC</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Connector	Terminal	Voltage	J404	1 ⊕	0V ←→	2 ⊖	+24VDC	3 ⊕	0V ←→	4 ⊖	+24VDC
Connector	Terminal	Voltage												
J404	1 ⊕	0V ←→												
	2 ⊖	+24VDC												
	3 ⊕	0V ←→												
	4 ⊖	+24VDC												
	(4)	When a tester can not be used, first replace the motor, and if the trouble is not solved, then replace K4-SUB.												

5 Feeding motor (M3) does not rotate

Cause/Faulty Location	Step	Check Item	Result	Action												
DC power supply	1	Is power being supplied to the machine?	NO	Carry out the section on "Power does not come on."												
Connection of connector	2	Is J405 of K4-SUB properly connected?	NO	Connect properly.												
Load of transmission system	3	Is transmission system, which is the load on the motor, in order?	NO	Eliminate the abnormal load.												
K4-SUB Feeding motor	4	Disconnect J405, and carry out "FF-0E" of service mode. At that time, when the terminal voltage of K4-SUB is measured with a tester, does the voltage become the specified voltage? Note: As the output is a pulse waveform, the tester will indicate the following voltages, but the actual voltages are different. Also, they are rough voltages.	YES	Check the wiring from K4-SUB to the motor, and if it is good, replace the motor.												
			NO	Replace K4-SUB.												
		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Connector</th> <th>Terminal</th> <th>Voltage</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="4">J405</td> <td>1 ⊕</td> <td>0V ↔</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 ⊖</td> <td>+22VDC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3 ⊕</td> <td>0V ↔</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4 ⊖</td> <td>+22VDC</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Connector	Terminal	Voltage	J405	1 ⊕	0V ↔	2 ⊖	+22VDC	3 ⊕	0V ↔	4 ⊖	+22VDC		
Connector	Terminal	Voltage														
J405	1 ⊕	0V ↔														
	2 ⊖	+22VDC														
	3 ⊕	0V ↔														
	4 ⊖	+22VDC														
(4)		When a tester can not be used, first replace the motor, and if the trouble is not solved, then replace K4-SUB.														

6 Gap adjusting motor (M4) does not rotate

Cause/Faulty Location	Step	Check Item	Result	Actixon																		
DC power supply	1	Is power being supplied to the machine?	NO	Carry out the section on "Power does not come on."																		
Connection of connector	2	Is J407 of K4-SUB properly connected?	NO	Connect properly.																		
Load of transmission system	3	Is transmission system, which is the load on the motor, in order?	NO	Eliminate the abnormal load.																		
K4-SUB Gap adjusting motor	4	Disconnect J407, and carry out "FF-16" of service mode. At that time, when the terminal voltage of K4-SUB is measured with a tester, does the voltage become the specified voltage? Note: As the output is a pulse waveform, the tester will indicate the following voltages, but the actual voltages are different. Also, they are rough voltages.	YES	Check the wiring from K4-SUB to the motor, and if it is good, replace the motor.																		
		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Connector</th> <th>Terminal</th> <th>Voltage</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="8">J407</td> <td>1 ⊕</td> <td>+22V →</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 ⊖</td> <td>+23VDC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 ⊕</td> <td>0V →</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3 ⊖</td> <td>+9VDC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 ⊕</td> <td>0V →</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4 ⊖</td> <td>+9VDC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 ⊕</td> <td>0V →</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5 ⊖</td> <td>+9VDC</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Connector	Terminal	Voltage	J407	1 ⊕	+22V →	2 ⊖	+23VDC	1 ⊕	0V →	3 ⊖	+9VDC	1 ⊕	0V →	4 ⊖	+9VDC	1 ⊕	0V →	5 ⊖	+9VDC
Connector	Terminal	Voltage																				
J407	1 ⊕	+22V →																				
	2 ⊖	+23VDC																				
	1 ⊕	0V →																				
	3 ⊖	+9VDC																				
	1 ⊕	0V →																				
	4 ⊖	+9VDC																				
	1 ⊕	0V →																				
	5 ⊖	+9VDC																				
(4)	When a tester can not be used, first replace the motor, and if the trouble is not solved, then replace K4-SUB.																					

7 Separation motor (M5) does not rotate

Cause/Faulty Location	Step	Check Item	Result	Action
DC power supply	1	Is power being supplied to the machine?	NO	Carry out the section on "Power does not come on."
Connection of connector	2	Is J506 of K0-SUB2 properly connected?	NO	Connect properly.
Load of transmission system	3	Is transmission system, which is the load on the motor, in order?	NO	Eliminate the abnormal load.
K0-SUB2 Separation motor	4	Disconnect J506, and carry out "FF-18" of service mode. At that time, when the terminal voltage of K0-SUB2 is measured with a tester, does the voltage become the specified voltage? Note: As the output is a pulse waveform, the tester will indicate the following voltages, but the actual voltages are different. Also, they are rough voltages.	YES	Check the wiring from K0-SUB2 to the motor, and if it is good, replace the motor.
			NO	Replace K0-SUB2.
	(4)	When a tester can not be used, first replace the motor, and if the trouble is not solved, then replace K0-SUB2.		

Connector	Terminal	Voltage
J506	1 ⊕	0V ↔
	2 ⊖	+22VDC
	3 ⊕	0V ↔
	4 ⊖	+22VDC

8 Document board motor (M6) does not rotate

Cause/Faulty Location	Step	Check Item	Result	Action												
DC power supply	1	Is power being supplied to the machine?	NO	Carry out the section on "Power does not come on."												
Connection of connector	2	Is J507 of K0-SUB2 properly connected?	NO	Connect properly.												
Load of transmission system	3	Is transmission system, which is the load on the motor, in order?	NO	Eliminate the abnormal load.												
K0-SUB2 Document board motor	4	Disconnect J507, and carry out "FF-1E" of service mode. At that time, when the terminal voltage of K0-SUB2 is measured with a tester, does the voltage become the specified voltage? Note: As the output is a pulse waveform, the tester will indicate the following voltages, but the actual voltages are different. Also, they are rough voltages.	YES	Check the wiring from K0-SUB2 to the motor, and if it is good, replace the motor.												
			NO	Replace K0-SUB2.												
		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Connector</th> <th>Terminal</th> <th>Voltage</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="4">J507</td> <td>1 ⊕</td> <td>0V ←→</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 ⊖</td> <td>+22VDC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3 ⊕</td> <td>0V ←→</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4 ⊖</td> <td>+22VDC</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Connector	Terminal	Voltage	J507	1 ⊕	0V ←→	2 ⊖	+22VDC	3 ⊕	0V ←→	4 ⊖	+22VDC		
Connector	Terminal	Voltage														
J507	1 ⊕	0V ←→														
	2 ⊖	+22VDC														
	3 ⊕	0V ←→														
	4 ⊖	+22VDC														
(4)		When a tester can not be used, first replace the motor, and if the trouble is not solved, then replace K0-SUB2.														

9 Registration clutch (CL1) does not rotate

Cause/Faulty Location	Step	Check Item	Result	Action							
DC power supply	1	Is power being supplied to the machine?	NO	Carry out the section on "Power does not come on."							
Connection of connector	2	Is J504 of K0-SUB2 properly connected?	NO	Connect properly.							
Load of transmission system	3	Is transmission system, which is the load on the registration roller, in order?	NO	Eliminate the abnormal load.							
K0-SUB2 Registration clutch	4	Disconnect J504, and carry out "FF-03" of service mode. At that time, when the terminal voltage of K0-SUB2 is measured with a tester, does the voltage become the specified voltage? Note: The following voltages are rough values.	YES	Check the wiring from K0-SUB2 to the clutch and if it is good, replace the clutch.							
	(4)	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Connector</th> <th>Terminal</th> <th>Voltage</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">J504</td> <td>1 ⊕</td> <td>+20V →</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4 ⊖</td> <td>+24VDC</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> When a tester can not be used, first replace the clutch, and if the trouble is not solved, then replace K0-SUB2.	Connector	Terminal	Voltage	J504	1 ⊕	+20V →	4 ⊖	+24VDC	NO
Connector	Terminal	Voltage									
J504	1 ⊕	+20V →									
	4 ⊖	+24VDC									

IV. FEED TROUBLESHOOTING

Note 1: This machine is equipped with manual paper thickness adjusting and pickup roller

load switching functions. When feeding extremely thick, thin, or pliant documents, faulty feeding can be improved by the customer changing the feed condition settings. For details, refer to the instruction manual.

1	Jam, double feed, wrinkles occur
----------	---

Cause/Faulty Location	Step	Check Item	Result	Action
Document	1	Does document conform to specifications (in thickness, dimensions, fold, curl, etc.)?	NO	Get the customer to use documents that conform to specifications.
Roller	2	Is roller clean?	NO	Clean. If necessary, clean the reading glass too.
Parts in feed path	3	Are the parts that the document contacts properly assembled (not floated, tilted)?	NO	Assemble properly.
	4	Is the surface in contact with the document smooth (not scratched, no burrs)?	NO	Replace the defective parts.
Drive transmission system	5	Is an abnormal noise emitted when feeding? Is gear broken or belt loose?	YES	Replace the defective parts. Rectify the tautness of the belt.

V. SERVICE MODES

A. List of Service Modes

Table 7-2 shows a list of Service modes. In addition to modes used by the service technician in the field, the list includes modes used by the factory and development group. Do not use modes other than those instructed.

Note: The service mode for endorser is not described in this manual. Refer to the technical information which will be issued separately.

The following is a large grouping of the modes.
 Address 00 to 1F Items set by Service/Factory
 Address 20 to 4F Items displayed by Service/Factory
 Address 50 to 6F Spare
 Address 70 to BF ... Items set by Development (not made public)
 Address C0 to EF .. Items displayed by Development (not made public)
 Address F0 to FF ... Items adjusted by Service/Factory

Address	Sub-address	Description	Purpose	Initial Value
00		Clearing-related	(Note: Do not use by mistake)	
	-C0	Clears total paper feed counter	Do not use in field.	
	-C1	Clears replacement part counter 1	Use after replacing each periodical replacement part. <u>For details, refer to paragraph G.</u>	
	-C2	Clears replacement part counter 2		
	-C3	Clears replacement part counter 3		
	-C4	Clears replacement part counter 4		
	-C5	Clears replacement part counter 5		
-C6	Clears replacement part counter 6			
-CA	Clears all counters	Do not use in field.		
-CF	Clears back up RAM	Use when returning back up RAM data to initial values. Re-set when there are items to be changed from the initial values. <u>For details, refer to paragraph D.</u>		
01		Sets horizontal scanning face registration	Use when changing values registration-adjusted with address "FA." No need to change in the field. (Unit: 0.1 mm). At time of installation, settings are on factory shipment values.	000
02		Sets horizontal scanning back registration		000
03		Sets vertical scanning leading edge registration		010
04		Sets vertical scanning trailing edge registration		010
05		Sets LED selection when in binary mode 0: Yellow Green (YG), 1: Red (R), 2: Green (G), 4: Blue (B), 7: White = Red + Green + Blue (RGB)	Use when type of LED unit is changed. In the field, use when LED unit is changed to DR-5020 red LED.	0, 7
06		Sets feeding speed when on count only	Use when changing the feeding speed of count only. Normally there is no need to change this in the field. (Unit: dpi) Should be "200" when user is using the machine. Refer to address "F6."	200

Table 7-2 (cont.)

Address	Sub-address	Description	Purpose	Initial Value
07		Sets document guide correction value	Use when changing the value of the document width detection sensor. Use when increasing/decreasing recording width when setting automatic paper size detection with only the document guides. Normally there is no need to change this in the field. (Unit: 0.1 mm)	-080
08		Fine-adjusts binary AE	Use when changing binary AE slice level very slightly. Normally handled by changing user setting and does not need to be changed in the field.	000
09		Sets document board position when on manual feed	Use for changing upper stopping position of document board when feeding paper manually. Do this after changing document board parts, etc. At time of installation, setting is on factory shipment value. <u>For details, refer to paragraph E.</u>	001
0A		Sets paper thickness opening when on manual feed	Use for changing gap when feeding paper manually. Change only when extremely thick or thin document is used with manual feed and feed is otherwise not possible. Normally there is no need to change this in the field	020
0b		Sets light intensity of double feed sensor LED	Use when changing setting to match characteristic of double feed sensor. Use after changing double feed sensor. At time of installation, setting is on factory shipment value. <u>For details, refer to paragraph F.</u>	050
20		Displays total paper feed count	Displays various numerical values. Use when checking status of use and time for periodic replacement. As display is up to four digits, paper feed count is displayed by lower four digits and upper four digits. Values at time of shipment from factory are the same as the initial values. <u>For details, refer to paragraphs G.</u>	0000
21		Displays replacement part counter 1		0000
22		Displays replacement part counter 2		0000
23		Displays replacement part counter 3		0000
24		Displays replacement part counter 4		0000
25		Displays replacement part counter 5		0000
26		Displays replacement part counter 6		0000

Table 7-2 (cont.)

Address	Sub-address	Description	Purpose	Initial Value
27		Displays model name 5020 : DR-5020 5080 : DR-5080C	Use when checking whether machine is DR-5020 or DR-5080C.	
28		Displays SD-RAM capacity 000 : No SD-RAM (DR-5020) 064 : Equipped with 64MB (DR-5080C standard) 128 : Equipped with 128MB (DR-5080C option)	Use when checking what capacity of SD-RAM is mounted on machine.	
29		Displays version of SH2-MAIN	Use when checking the version of each PCB software.	
2A		Displays version of K4-SUB		
2b		Displays version of K0-SUB2		
30		Displays detection of front separation/back separation/front registration/back registration sensors	Use when checking the status of detection of each sensor. The detection of each sensor can be checked by using jointly with manual or count only mode. For details, refer to paragraphs H.	
31		Displays detection of document board lower limit/document board upper limit/pickup sensors		
32		Displays detection of delivery sensor		
33		Displays detection of gap adjusting sensor		
34		Displays data of document width detection sensor		
35		Displays analog value of double feed sensor		
36		Displays analog value of front registration sensor		
37		Displays analog value of back registration sensor		
38		Displays analog value of front separation sensor		
39		Displays analog value of back separation sensor		
3A		Displays analog value of document width detection sensor	The analog value being output by each sensor can be checked. Normally not used in the field.	

Table 7-2 (cont.)

Address	Sub-address	Description	Purpose	Initial Value
3b		Displays analog value of pickup motor	The analog value being output by each motor can be checked. Normally not used in the field. Note: "3d" is the analog indication of the output showing the position of the imprinter head.	
3C		Displays analog value of feeding motor		
3d		Displays analog value of imprinter		
3E		Displays analog value of separation motor		
3F		Displays analog value of document board motor		
40		Displays analog value of main motor		
44		Displays analog value of double feed detection (high sensitivity)	Value of double feed detected is displayed. Normally not used in the field.	
45		Displays analog value of double feed detection (low sensitivity)		
46		Displays length of double feed detection.		
70 bF		Development setting items (not publicly disclosed)	Do not use in the field. Do not change settings.	
C0 EF		Development indicating items (not publicly disclosed)	Do not use in the field.	
			Note: For details of "F0," "F2," and "F8" to "Fb," refer to paragraphs L to M.	
F0		Gap adjustment mode	Used when adjusting the attached position of the gap adjusting motor.	
F2		Double feed sensor adjustment mode	Used when adjusting the attached position of the double feed sensor.	
F6		Count only mode for Service/Factory	Used when checking the feeding operation. Feeding speed of count only can be changed separately from normal count only. Setting value is a vertical resolution (dpi).	
F8		Gain adjustment/shading compensation mode	Use when adjusting LED light intensity and writing in shading data.	
F9		Color LED light intensity adjustment mode	Use together with "F8" when making LED adjustments of DR-5080C.	
FA		Registration adjustment mode	Use when making registration adjustments.	

Table 7-2 (cont.)

Address	Sub-address	Description	Purpose	Initial Value
Fb		Imprinter operation check mode	Use when checking the operation of the imprinter.	
FC		Timer feed mode	Use for special operation and when changing that operation mode. Normally not used in the field.	
Fd		Count only image take-in mode		
FE		Count only image take-in/timer feed mode		
FF		Operation check-related	Use for checking each operation. "FF-26" can be used to check that bar code decoder is working when LED on bar code decoder lights up.	
	-01	All LEDs flashing on operation panel		
	-02	Main motor drive (400 dpi)		
	-03	Clutch ON/Main motor drive (400 dpi)		
	-04	Main motor drive (200 dpi)		
	-05	Clutch ON/Main motor drive (200 dpi)		
	-06	Main motor drive (100 dpi)		
	-07	Clutch ON/Main motor drive (100 dpi)		
	-08	Pickup motor forward drive (low torque)		
	-09	Pickup motor reverse drive (low torque)		
	-0A	Pickup motor forward drive (medium torque)		
	-0b	Pickup motor reverse drive (medium torque)		
	-0C	Pickup motor forward drive (high torque)		
	-0d	Pickup motor reverse drive (high torque)		
-0E	Feeding motor forward drive (low torque)			
-0F	Feeding motor reverse drive (low torque)			
-10	Feeding motor forward drive (medium torque)			
-11	Feeding motor reverse drive (medium torque)			
-12	Feeding motor forward drive (high torque)			
-13	Feeding motor reverse drive (high torque)			

Table 7-2 (cont.)

Address	Sub-address	Description	Purpose	Initial Value
	-14	Feeding motor forward drive (ultra high torque)		
	-15	Feeding motor reverse drive (ultra high torque)		
	-16	Gap adjusting motor forward drive		
	-17	Gap adjusting motor reverse drive		
	-18	Separation motor forward drive (low torque)		
	-19	Separation motor reverse drive (low torque)		
	-1A	Separation motor forward drive (medium torque)		
	-1b	Separation motor reverse drive (medium torque)		
	-1C	Separation motor forward drive (high torque)		
	-1d	Separation motor reverse drive (high torque)		
	-1E	Document board motor forward drive (low torque)		
	-1F	Document board motor reverse drive (low torque)		
	-20	Document board motor forward drive (medium torque)		
	-21	Document board motor reverse drive (medium torque)		
	-22	Document board motor forward drive (high torque)		
	-23	Document board motor reverse drive (high torque)		
	-24	Front LED all illuminated		
	-25	Back LED all illuminated		
	-26	LED for checking that bar code decoder is illuminated		

Table 7-2

B. User Modes

A list of user modes is shown for reference in Table 7-3.

Method of operation is as follows.

- 1) User mode will be entered if AE key () is pressed for about five seconds in user operation state.
- 2) Address will change if density key (.) is pressed.
- 3) Setting will change if AE key is pressed.
- 4) User mode will be exit if stop key (C/) is pressed.
For other details of user mode, refer to the instruction manual.

Address Setting	Details
U1-0	Buzzer OFF
U1-1	Buzzer ON (initial value)
U2-0	Document width detection mode of document guide only (initial value)
U3-0	Skew feed detection OFF (initial value)
U3-1	Skew feed detection ON
U3-2	Skew feed detection ON except manual feed mode
U4-0	SCSI synchronized transmission OFF
U4-1	SCSI synchronized transmission ON (initial value)
U5-0	Bar code reading buzzer OFF
U5-1	Bar code reading buzzer ON (initial value)
U6-0	Output START/STOP codes in Codabar in small letter (initial value)
U6-1	Output START/STOP codes in Codabar in capital letter
U7-0	Number of times bar code is verified: None
U7-1	Number of times bar code is verified: Once (initial value)
U7-2	Number of times bar code is verified: Twice
U7-3	Number of times bar code is verified: Three times
U8-0	Imprint/endorsement OFF when on count only mode (initial value)
U8-1	Imprint/endorsement ON when on count only mode
U9-0	Check size endorsement (initial value)
U9-1	Standard size endorsement

Table 7-3

C. Operating Method

1. Entering Service Mode

- 1) Turn on the power to the main machine
- 2) Insert a pin of about 1 mm in diameter in the hole in the back and press the switch (SW103) of the main CPU PCB assembly (SH2-MAIN), while pressing the switch (SW103), press the Stop key (C/) on the operation panel.

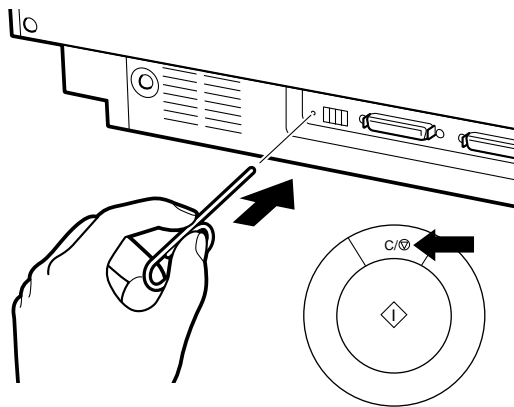


Fig. 7-6

- 3) Enter service mode. Display becomes "A-00" showing that address is "00." Also, while in service mode, the dot in the lower right remains flashing.

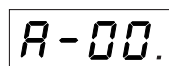


Fig. 7-7

2. Exiting Service Mode

- 1) Service mode will be exited by pressing the Stop key for about three seconds while the address is displayed. The address display will change to the usual number-of-sheets-fed display.

3. Basic Operation

- 1) The address can be changed by pressing the density key (,) while the address is displayed. Pressing the key increases and pressing the key decreases the address. However, the changes are an endless chain.
- 2) Pressing the AE key (.) while the address is displayed will display the data of that address. Ex.: "010," etc.

- 3) Pressing the density key while the data is displayed will change the data.
- 4) Pressing the AE key while the data is displayed will fix that data.
- 5) Pressing the Stop key while the data is displayed will return the display to the address.
- 6) In case of automatic adjustment mode, pressing the AE key (.) while the address is displayed, will enable automatic adjustment to start. Also, when completed, the display will automatically return to the address. Ex.: "F8," etc.

4. Basic Operation When There are Sub-addresses

When there are sub-addresses such as "FF-01" in the address, operate as follows.

- 1) Pressing the AE key (.) while the address is displayed will change the display to "0000."
- 2) Next, pressing the density key, will change the sub-address.
- 3) Pressing the AE key while the sub-address is displayed, will activate the corresponding mode.
- 4) Pressing the Stop key while the sub-address is displayed will return the display to the address.

Notes of Caution:

- 1) When service mode is entered, the error code will not be displayed even when a document jam, etc. occurs because the address and settings will be displayed in the display panel. As it is conceivable that an error has occurred when service mode cannot be operated, take steps to eliminate the document jam. If the machine is not restored even then, exit service mode and check the error indication.

D. Clearing Backup RAM

1. Address-Sub

“00-CF”

2. Purpose

Use to return backup RAM data to the initial value.

- 1) When error code “E80” is displayed. Also includes after replacement of SH2-MAIN.
- 2) When it is necessary to return the setting to the initial value.

3. Operating Procedure.

Refer to the basic operation.

4. Notes of Caution

As all the data recorded in the backup RAM will return to the initial value, there will be items that will require re-setting.

a. Items returning to initial value.

- 1) Service mode
 - Various settings: From “01” to “0b”
 - Paper feed and other counters: From “20” to “26”
 - Double feed detected display: From “44” to “46”
 - Set time of timer feed mode: “FC”

Note 1: Data that do not return to the initial value are

- Model name, SD-RAM capacity, version displays: “27” to “2b”
- Various adjustment values: “F0” to “FA”

Note 2: Double feed detection-related: “44” to “46” will return to initial values when power is rest.

- 2) Scanner settings
 - Basic settings
 - Detailed settings (including function key setting)
- 3) User mode settings
- 4) Development set values, etc. (re-setting not required)

b. Items requiring re-setting

If the initial value is good, the re-setting is not necessary

- 1) Service mode
 - LED selection setting when on binary mode: “05”
 - Document board position setting when on manual feed: “09”
 - Double feed detection LED light quantity setting: “0b”
- 2) Scanner settings
 - Basic settings
 - Detailed settings (including function key setting)
- 3) User mode settings

E. Setting Document Board Position When on Manual Feed

1. Address

“09”

Note 1: At time of installation, settings are on factory shipment values. Refer to the “Setting label” attached on the right side plate of the upper unit.

Address	Factory Default
05	0 1 2 4 ⑦
09	14 ←
0B	50

MA2-5608

2. Purpose

Use for changing the upper stopping position of the document board when on manual feed.

When the relative positions of the upper stopping position of document board and the pickup sensor (lever) slip out of position, upper stopping position of document board, the pickup sensor will sometimes not come ON when on manual feed even though a document is set on the board or the pickup sensor will come ON at the upper surface of the document board even though no document is set on the board. Carry out this setting when the pickup operation becomes faulty during manual feed.

- 1) When the document board is removed and re-assembled.
- 2) When the document board and the parts related to document board raising and lowering operations are replaced or re-assembled.
- 3) When the Document board upper limit sensor is replaced or re-assembled.
- 4) When the pickup sensor and the sensor lever are replaced or re-assembled.
- 5) When the backup RAM is cleared, and the SH2-MAIN is replaced.

Note 1: The set value is the applied pulse number of the motor from the time the document board upper limit sensor comes ON until the document board motor stops. Increasing the set value will prolong the time until the motor comes to a stop so the stopping position of the document board becomes higher.

3. Operating Procedure

- 1) Loosen the screws of the left and right document board stoppers, so that the document board stoppers move.

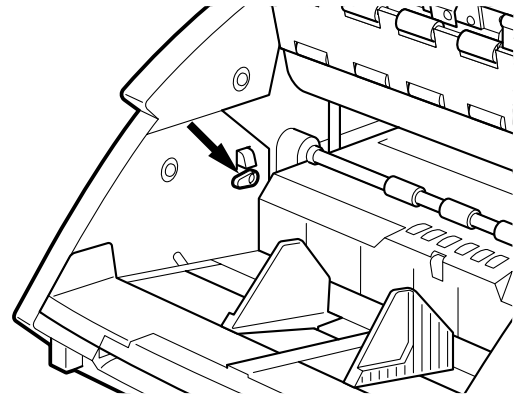


Fig. 7-8

- 2) Enter “09” of service mode. The present set value will be displayed.
- 3) Set and fix the setting at “005.”
- 4) Press the “Count Only” button to go on count only mode.
- 5) Set the pickup start mode at “Manual.” The document board will rise.
- 6) When the pickup roller does not turn:
 - 6-1) Raise the set value by 2 and fix it.
 - 6-2) After changing the pickup start mode and lowering the document board, again set to “Manual” and raise the document board.
 - 6-3) Repeat steps 6-1 and 6-2 until the pickup roller begins to turn.
 - 6-4) When the pickup roller begins to turn, the document board will lower due to the pickup error.
 - 6-5) Lower the set value by 4 and fix it. Continue the operation from step 8.
- 7) When the pickup roller turns at the set value “005”:

As faulty assembling on the sensor and other document board raising/lowering related parts is conceivable, check the state of assembly. If assembly is in order and the pickup roller begins to turn again at “005,” fix the set value at “001.”
- 8) Clear the pickup error by opening and closing the upper unit.

- 9) Open the upper unit, and place the weight of approx. 2.9N (300gf) on the far back center of the document board (where the pickup roller hits).
- 10) Fix the left and right document board stoppers in position so that their ends contact the upper face of the document board. Do not push the document board down.
- 11) Close the upper unit, and check that the thin paper (0.05 mm in thickness) is fed manually at this position.
The thin paper should not have curl, burr or pleat on its edge.
- 12) If the thin paper is not fed or the pickup roller turns when there is no thin paper, go back to step3 and resume the procedure.
- 13) Exit service mode.
- 14) If change the setting value, correct the number on the "setting label."

4. Notes of Caution

- 1) The criteria for fixing the set value is "005" to "015," but out of this range does not mean the setting is faulty.
- 2) When document jam such as pickup error occurs, the operating keys will not work.
In such a case, opening the upper unit, eliminating the document jam, and closing the upper unit will allow operation to proceed again.

F. Setting Light Intensity of Double Feed Sensor LED

1. Address

"0b"

Note 1: At the time of installation, the setting is on factory shipment values. Refer to the "setting label."

2. Purpose

Use to change the set value to match the characteristic of the double feed sensor.

- 1) Use when double feed sensor is replaced.
- 2) When backup RAM is cleared and SH2-MAIN is replaced.

3. Operating procedure

- 1) Read the number indicated on the cable assembly of the double feed sensor. Or read the number on the "setting label."

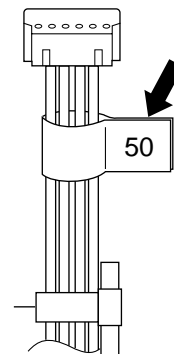


Fig. 7-9

- 2) Enter "0b" of service mode. The present set value will be displayed.
- 3) Change the setting value to the number read at step 1 and fix it.
- 4) Exit service mode.
- 5) If change the setting value, correct the number on the "setting label."

G. Displaying and Clearing of Counters

1. Adress-Sub

Display: From "20" to "26"; Clear: From "00-C1" to "00-C6"

Note 1: In the field, do not use "00-C0" clear of the total paper feed counter and "00-CA" clear of the all counters.

2. Purpose

Use to check the status of use and the time for periodical replacement.

3. Operating procedure

- 1) Refer to the basic operation and enter into each service mode.
- 2) Replacement part counter 1 display "21" shows the LED illuminated time (in Hours) and others show the number of sheets fed.

- 3) As the display for the number of sheets fed is four digitals, the number of sheets is shown divided into the lower four digits and the upper four digits. Switching between the lower four digits and the upper four digits is done by the density keys.

Ex.: When number of sheets fed is 123,456 sheets,

Lower four digits 3456. 00 12. Upper four digits

⏩ key →

← ⏪ key

- 4) After checking the display, exit service mode.
- 5) When the LED unit or other replacement parts are replaced, enter the corresponding sub-address in service mode "00," and clear. Assign the replacement part counters as follows.

Name of Counter	Display	Clear	Applicable part
Replacement part counter 1	[21]	[00-C1]	LED unit
Replacement part counter 2	[22]	[00-C2]	Part with replacement criteria of 250,000 sheets (separation roller)
Replacement part counter 3	[23]	[00-C3]	Part with replacement criteria of 500,000 sheets (pickup roller, etc.)
Replacement part counter 4	[24]	[00-C4]	Part with replacement criteria of 1.5 million sheets (Double feed sensor lever 2, etc.)
Replacement part counter 5	[25]	[00-C5]	Part with replacement criteria of 3 million sheets (separation motor)
Replacement part counter 6	[26]	[00-C6]	Spare

Note 1: LED unit replacement shall basically be replacement of the front and back at the same time.

Table 7-4

4. Notes of Caution:

- 1) After a set value is cleared, it cannot be returned to its previous setting, so be sure not make a mistake when clearing. Also, the count is cleared when the backup RAM is cleared and the SH2-MAIN is replaced. It would be wise to record the count in a separate service record at the time of checking.

H. Sensor Detection Display

1. Address

Table 7-5 shows the addresses and the corresponding sensor names.

Address	Sensor Name
[30]	Front separation/back separation/ front registration/back registration sensors
[31]	Document board lower limit/docu- ment board upper limit/pickup sensors
[32]	Delivery sensor
[33]	Gap adjustment sensor
[34]	Document width detection sensor
[35]	Double feed sensor

Table 7-5

2. Purpose

Use for checking the state of detection of the sensors. The sensors can be checked whether in order or not by using jointly with feeding by count only mode, or blocking the light by hand.

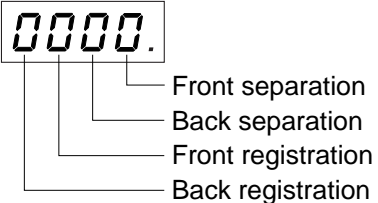
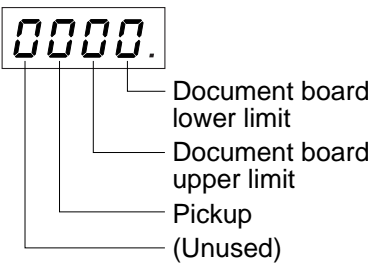
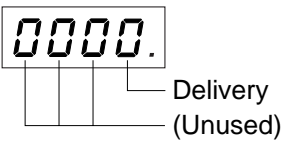
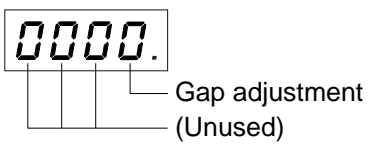
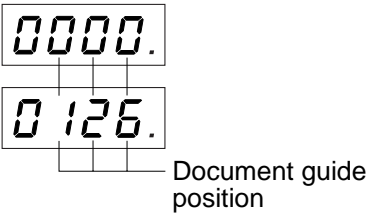
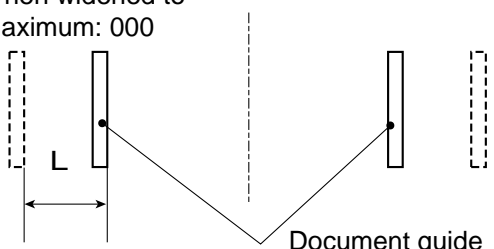
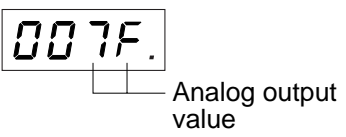
3. Operating Procedure

- 1) Data is displayed when the AE key is pressed in the corresponding address state. For other operating methods, refer to the paragraph on basic operation.
- 2) In the data displayed state, check that the data changes by covering the sensor unit with the hand and blocking the light by moving the sensor lever. Also, it is possible to check that the data changes by feeding paper in the count only mode.

Note 1: If the data displayed does not change, it is possible that the sensor is defective or it has been incorrectly installed, or there is a faulty connection, so carry out the necessary repairs.

4. Display

Table 7-6 shows the displays and the corresponding addresses.

Address	Display Position	Display Details
[30]	 <p>Front separation Back separation Front registration Back registration</p>	0: Sensor OFF 1: Sensor ON (light blocked)
[31]	 <p>Document board lower limit Document board upper limit Pickup (Unused) (Unused)</p>	0: Sensor OFF 1: Sensor ON (light blocked) However, unused display is "0."
[32]	 <p>Delivery (Unused) (Unused)</p>	0: Sensor OFF 1: Sensor ON (light blocked) However, unused display is "0."
[33]	 <p>Gap adjustment (Unused) (Unused)</p>	0: Sensor OFF 1: Sensor ON (light blocked) However, unused display is "0."
[34]	 <p>Document guide position</p>	Displays document guide position (L) in mm When widened to maximum: 000  <p>Document guide</p>
[35]	 <p>Analog output value</p>	Displays analog output value of double feed sensor in two digits. Numerical values are hexadecimal numbers from "00" to "FF." Adjust with service mode "F2."

I. Gap Adjustment Mode

1. Address

"F0"

2. Purpose

Use when adjusting installed position of gap adjusting motor. Re-adjustment is necessary when the relative positions of the shutter on which the gap adjusting motor is attached and the gap adjusting sensor slip out of position.

- 1) When the gap adjusting motor and the gap adjusting sensor are replaced.
- 2) Even when only disassembling and re-assembling are involved check the value and, if necessary, re-adjust.

3. Operating Procedure

- 1) Remove the front delivery cover. Shield the IP door sensor from the light with thick paper or the like. Also, check that the mark for checking the position of the shutter and cam is correctly located. If it is not, correct by turning the shutter.

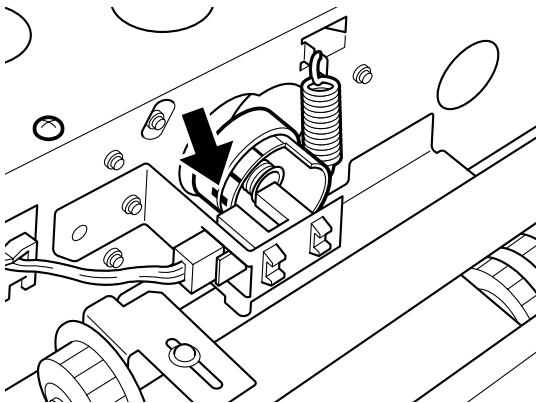
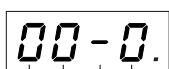


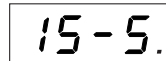
Fig. 7-10

- 2) Have address "F0" displayed and press the AE key. Standard value "00-0." will be displayed.



(Unused)
Shows adjustment amount in hexadecimal numerals.

- 3) Set the pickup start mode at "Semi Auto".
- 4) Set test sheet: TKM-0267 (0.19 mm thick and free of curling, burrs, and folds) sideways on the document board and have it fed.
- 5) Read the indication.
- 6) When the adjustment amount is from "14" to "16", there is no need for adjustment. Continue from step 10.



- 7) If the adjustment amount is not from "14" to "16", loosen the fixing three screws for the motor attachment plate, turn the adjusting screw, and change the position of the motor attachment plate. When the motor moves downwards, the gap increases.

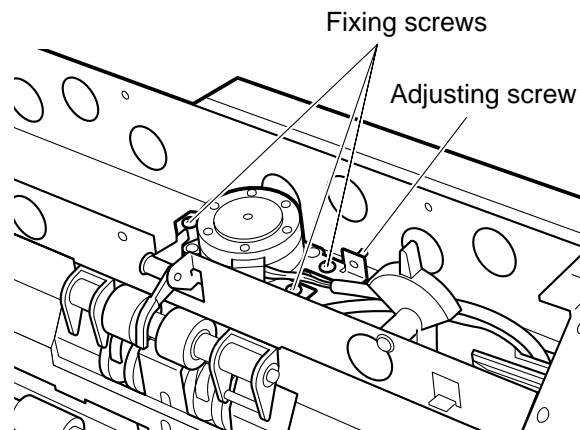


Fig. 7-11

- 8) Fix the motor attachment plate, try feeding the test sheet and read the indication.
- 9) Repeat the adjustment until the adjustment amount becomes from "14" to "16".
- 10) Feed the test sheet once more and check that the adjustment amount is from "14" to "16".
- 11) Exit service mode.
- 12) Attach the front delivery cover.

4. Notes of Caution.

- 1) The adjustment amount differs depending on the thickness of the paper that is fed. The adjustment range when $t = 0.26$ mm is 18 ± 1 , and when $t = 0.12$ mm (TKM-0271) is 12 ± 1 . However, variations occur when the paper becomes thinner so try to avoid using TKM-0271 as much as possible.

J. Double Feed Sensor Adjustment Mode

1. Address

"F2"

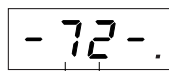
2. Purpose

Use when adjusting the attached position of the double feed sensor. Re-adjustment is necessary when the relative positions of the double feed sensor and the double feed sensor lever slip out of position.

- 1) When the double feed sensor and its attachment plate are replaced or disassembled/re-assembled.
- 2) When the double feed sensor lever 2 and the double feed reference plate of the lower read unit are replaced.

3. Operating Procedure

- 1) Remove the upper delivery cover and put the upper unit in the closed state.
- 2) Have address "F2" displayed and press the AE key. The present double feed sensor output value will be displayed.



Shows output value in hexadecimal numerals.

- 3) When the display is from "60" to "8F," there is no need for adjustment. Continue from step 6.
- 4) Slightly loosen the fixing screw of the double feed sensor attachment plate.

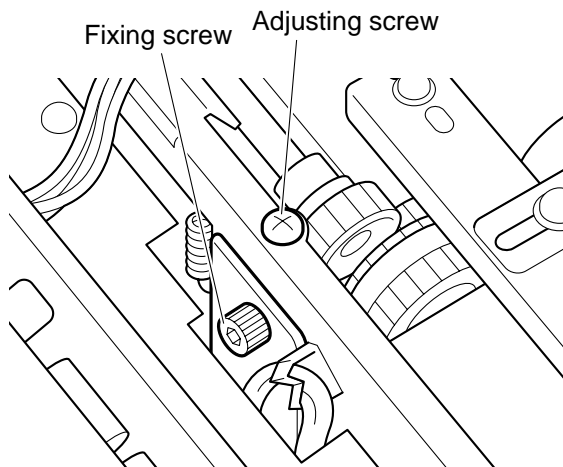


Fig. 7-12

- 5) After tightening the fixing screw, turn the adjusting screw to move the double feed sensor attachment plate up and down until the display becomes from "70" to "7F." When the adjusting screw is turned to the right, the attachment plate moves upwards and the number decreases. When the adjusting screw is turned to the left, the attachment plate moves downward and the numerical value increases.

Note 1: As the numerical value changes when the fixing screw is tightened, adjust with that change in mind.

Note 2: To decrease the amount of change of the numerical value, turn the adjusting screw while pushing the attachment plate downward.

- 6) Open and close the upper unit again. If the indication is from "60" to "8F" when the upper unit is closed, it is OK. If it is outside that range, re-adjust.
- 7) Exit service mode.
- 8) Attach the upper delivery cover.

4. Notes of Caution

- 1) The power is on when adjusting. As the fixing screw and adjusting screw are close to the pickup control PCB assembly, take care not to drop a tool on the PCB assembly.

K. Gain Adjustment/Shading Compensation Mode

1. Address

"F8"

2. Purpose

Use when adjusting the light intensity of the LED and when writing the shading data.

- 1) When the LED unit and reading unit are replaced.
- 2) When periodic maintenance is carried out: every 150 hours the LED is illuminated (equal to about 500,000 sheets), and when the LED unit is replaced: every 500 hours the LED is illuminated (estimate the approximate number of sheets from the record obtained at the time of the periodic maintenance).
- 3) When SH2-MAIN is replaced.

3. Data Processing Procedure

- 1) Check and adjust the LED light intensity. Obtain the light intensity adjustment data separately for the color of the LED, the output mode (color and black & white), and resolution (300 dpi or less and 400 dpi). There are 15 data for DR-5080C and three data for DR-5020. As the number of data of DR-5080C is more than that of DR-5020, the following steps will naturally take longer for DR-5080C than DR-5020.
- 2) Write in the LED light intensity data.
- 3) Obtain the black compensation data.
- 4) Obtain the basic shading data while feeding a standard white sheet (TKM-0299).
- 5) Write in the black compensation data and the basic shading data.
- 6) Obtain the shading data for each condition while feeding the standard white sheet.
- 7) Write in the shading data for each condition.

Note 1: The data is written into the flash memory (IC133).

4. Operating Procedure

- 1) Make sure to open the upper unit and clean the glass of the upper and lower reading unit, and rollers.
- 2) Widen the document guide to the maximum, and manually feed the standard white sheet (TKM-0299) between the registration rollers. Make sure to feed the sheet until its leading edge passes the reading unit.

Note 1: Make sure the sheet is not dirty, wrinkled, or folded.

Note 2: Make sure to feed the sheet straight in and not skewed.

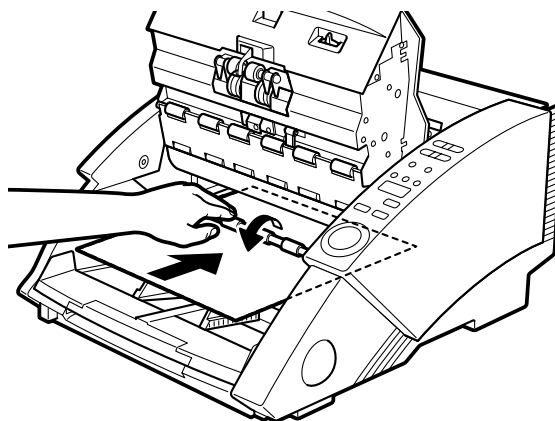


Fig. 7-13

- 3) Close the upper unit.
- 4) Enter service mode "F8" and press the AE key.
- 5) Processing will begin and "- F8 - ." will start flashing on the display unit.

- F8 - .

- 6) After obtaining the black compensation data, feed will start automatically and the next processing will start.
- 7) When the feeding stops and the processing is finished, the display will change to an illuminated "A-F8."

A - F8 .

- 8) Remove the standard white sheet and exit service mode.

5. Notes of Caution

- 1) When "EEEE." is displayed at step 5, it denotes that adjustment cannot be made because of lack of light quantity or because of dirtiness. Carry out again after resetting the power of the main machine. A proper adjustment cannot be made just by pressing the clear key and clearing the error indication. Always reset the power of the main machine. The following gives the causes of the error and the countermeasures to take.

- When the standard white sheet is not set in the machine, set it.
 - When the glass is dirty, clean it.
 - When the standard white sheet is dirty, replace the sheet or remove the dirt.
 - When the LED is not illuminated, check the connections.
 - When the time the LED has been illuminated exceeds 500 hours, replace the LED unit.
- 2) The following shows the processing times required.
 - In the case of DR-5020, step 5 takes 20 seconds and step 6 takes 10 seconds, total 30 seconds.
 - In the case of DR-5080C, step 5 takes 2 min. 30 secs. and step 6 takes 30 seconds, total 3 minutes.
 - 3) In the case of DR-5080C, carry out color LED adjustment mode "F9" when this mode is executed.
 - 4) When the red LED units are used for DR-5020, operate this mode after set the data to 1 for the LED selection "05."

L. Color LED Adjustment Mode

1. Address

"F9"

2. Purpose

Use when carrying out LED adjustment of DR-5080C, with "F8" together.

With "F8," adjustment was carried out by using a special uniform white colored sheet. With just this, the LED light intensity of the red color becomes increases causing the red of the image data to become too strong. To correct this, adjustment to lower the light intensity of the red color of the LED is carried out with "F9" using standard white copy paper.

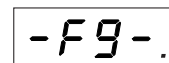
3. Operating Procedure

- 1) Make sure to open the upper unit and clean the glass of the upper and lower reading unit, and rollers.
- 2) Manually feed a standard white copy paper (A4/LTR size) between the registration rollers. Make sure to feed the copy paper until its leading edge passes the reading unit.

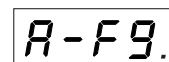
Note 1: Make sure the copy paper is not dirty, wrinkled, or folded.

Note 2: Make sure to feed the copy paper straight in and not skewed.

- 3) Close the upper unit.
- 4) Enter service mode "F9" and press the AE key.
- 5) Processing will begin. "- F9 - ." will start flashing on the display panel.



- 6) When the processing is finished, the display will change to an illuminated "A-F9." It takes about five seconds.



- 7) Remove the copy paper and exit service mode.

4. Notes of Caution

- 1) When "EEEE." is displayed at step 5, it denotes that adjustment cannot be made because of lack of light intensity or because of dirtiness. Carry out again after resetting the power of the main machine. The conceivable causes of the error and countermeasures to take are the same as in the case of "F8."
- 2) This mode is to match the light intensity of other LEDs to an LED whose light intensity is low. If adjustments are made many times, the overall light intensity is lowered and may cause an error to be indicated. In such a case, make sure to re-adjust from "F8."

M. Registration Adjustment Mode

1. Address

"FA"

2. Purpose

Use when adjusting registration. Re-adjustment becomes necessary when the positions of the back registration sensor and the reading unit change. This adjustment must also be carried out when SH2-MAIN is replaced.

The adjustment is to write in the leading edge and trailing edge registration correction data and the slippage correction data of the left and right registration of the top and back surfaces.

3. Operating Procedure

- 1) Enter service mode and have address "FA" displayed.
- 2) Set a standard white copy paper (A4/LTR size) on the document board with vertical direction.

Note: Make sure the copy paper is not dirty, wrinkled or folded.

- 3) Pressing the AE key will automatically feed the copy paper. "-FA - ." will start flashing on the display panel.



- 4) When processing is finished, the display will return to "A-FA."
- 5) Exit service mode.

4. Notes of Caution

- 1) When "EEEE." is displayed at step 3, it denotes that proper data could not be obtained. Check if there is any fault in the copy paper, and try again after resetting the power.

N. Imprinter Operation Check Mode

1. Address

"Fb"

2. Purpose

Use when checking the operation of the imprinter without a personal computer. The imprinter is an optional item.

3. Operating Procedure

- 1) Adjust the left and right printing positions as necessary. For details, refer to the instruction manual.
- 2) Enter service mode "Fb" and press the AE key.
- 3) Set a suitable sheet of paper on the document board and feed it.
- 4) "CANON DR-5020/5080C W/IMPRINTER" will be printed.
- 5) Check the state of printing.
- 6) Exit service mode.

VI. AFTER REPLACING PARTS

Some of the parts used in this machine require adjustments and settings of the service modes after replaced or disassembled/reassembled.

Table 7-7 shows the concerned parts and service modes. For details on the service modes, refer to V. SERVICE MODES.

As a basic procedure, check document feed and recorded images after the replacement or disassembly/reassembly of the parts. If any error occurs, correct it referring to this chapter 7: TROUBLESHOOTING.

Address	"00-CF"	"05"	"09"	"0b"	"F0"	"F2"	"F8"	"FA"
Parts	RAM clear	LED selection	Board position	DF LED light	Gap adjustment	DF sensor	Shading	Registration
Main CPU PCB ass'y	Replacing	Replacing	Replacing	Replacing			Replacing	Replacing
Reading unit, LED unit							Replacing	Replacing Disassembling
Document board ass'y, Up/Down related			Replacing Disassembling					
Pickup sensor, Pickup sensor lever			Replacing Disassembling					
Double feed sensor				Replacing		Replacing Disassembling		
DF sensor mount plate, DF sensor lever 2						Replacing Disassembling		
DF sensor reference plate						Replacing Disassembling		Replacing Disassembling
Gap adjusting motor, Gap reference sensor					Replacing Disassembling			
Registration back sensor PCB ass'y								Replacing Disassembling

Table 7-7

Note 1: In the case of DR-5080C, after adjustments are made in Address "F8," make adjustments in Address "F9" also.

Note 2: In the case that the upper unit is removed, check the adjusted value in Address "F2." Additionally, if Error code "C01" appears even after the upper unit is completely

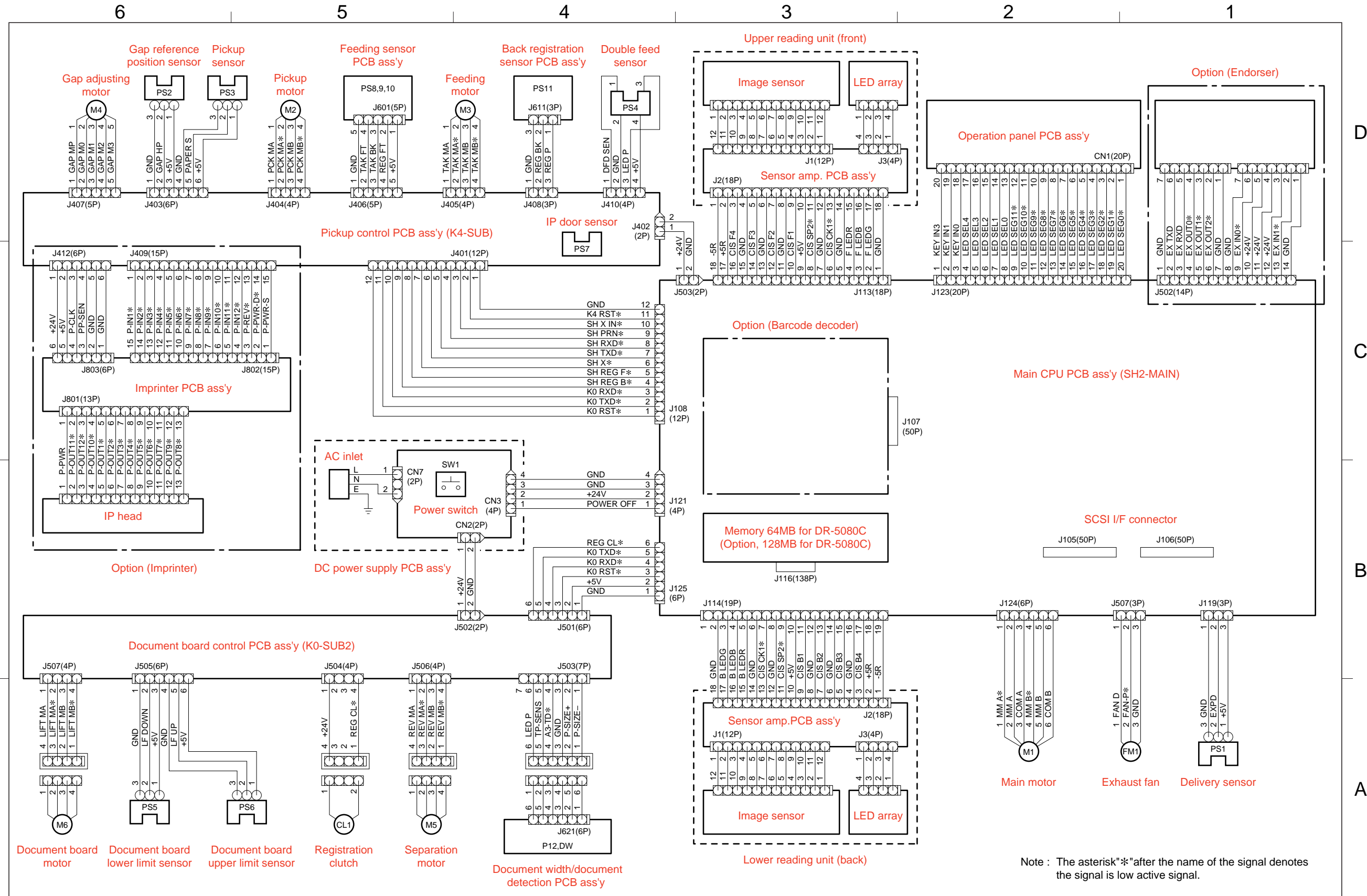
closed, make readjustment in Address "F2."

Note 3: Some corrective procedure will be required after the firmware in the Main CPU PCB Assembly is changed. For details, refer to the technical information issued separately.

APPENDIX

I. GENERAL CIRCUIT DIAGRAM.....	A-1		II. LIST OF SPECIAL TOOLS	A-3
---------------------------------	-----	--	---------------------------------	-----

I. GENERAL CIRCUIT DIAGRAM



Note : The asterisk "*" after the name of the signal denotes the signal is low active signal.

II. LIST OF SPECIAL TOOLS

The following lists the special tools that are required for servicing this machine in addition to the standard tool set.

No.	Tool name	Tool No.	Shape	Rank	Purpose/Remarks
1	Test sheet	TKM-0271	A4 copy size	A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 10 sheets/set • One side printed • Feed/Image checking
2	Test sheet	TKM-0267	Special size (230 × 100 mm)	B	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 10 sheet/set • Image checking for duplex document • Gap adjustment (t=0.19 mm)
3	Standard white sheet	TKM-0299	Special size (305 × 350 mm)	B	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 10 sheet/set • Shading compensation

Note: Rank

- A= Each service technician should carry one with him.
- B= A group of about five service technicians should share one.
- C= Each workshop should keep one.

Prepared by

**Quality Assurance Center
Canon Electronics Inc.**

Printed in Japan

FIRST EDITION (JUNE 1999) [63999]

**1248 Shimokagemori, Chichibu-shi
Saitama 369-1892, Japan**

Canon



The publication is printed on
70% reprocessed paper.

DR-5020/5080C

PARTS CATALOG

REVISION 1

DR-5020	100V	50/60Hz	M11-0291
	120V	60Hz	M11-0293
	220-240V	50/60Hz	M11-0294
	120V	60Hz,Taiwan	M11-0298

DR-5080C	100V	50/60Hz	M11-0281
	120V	60Hz	M11-0283
	220-240V	50/60Hz	M11-0284
	120V	60Hz,Taiwan	M11-0288

IMPRINTER 5000 (M18-0621)

RED LED (M18-0601)

Canon

MAY 2001

MY8-3190-010

A02

序

このパーツ・カタログは、DR-5020/5080C に対するサービス部品調達の手引として発行します。

サービス部品の要求は、キヤノン販売営業所にお願ひ致します。

製品に大きな変更がある場合は、改訂版のパーツ・カタログを発行しますが、その他の場合は随時新しい情報をお届けします。

このパーツ・カタログは当社品質保証部品質推進課が発行管理を行っています。

キヤノン電子株式会社
品質保証部 品質推進課

PREFACE

This Parts Catalog contains listings of parts used in the DR-5020/5080C.

Diagrams are provided with the listings to aid the service technician in identifying clearly, the item to be ordered.

Whenever ordering parts, consult this Parts Catalog for all of the information pertaining to each item. Be sure to include in the Parts Request, the full item description, the item part number and the quantity.

Quality Assurance Center
Canon Electronics Inc.

版權所有，無斷轉載，引用を禁ず。

Copyright © 2001 Canon Electronics Inc.

Printed in Japan

Imprimé au Japon

本マニュアルについては、機密保持等その取扱には十分注意して下さい。

万一取扱を誤りますと法律で処罰されることがあります。

Use of this manual should be strictly supervised to avoid disclosure of confidential information.

A03

目 次

	イラスト	リスト
A 主要部品配置図	1F-B01	
B イラスト索引-1, 2	1F-C01,C02	
100 外装カバー部	1F-D01	1F-D02
120 排紙カバー部	1F-D03	1F-D04
140 原稿台部	1F-D05	1F-D06
201 上部ユニット部-1	1F-D07	1F-D08
202A 上部ユニット部-2 (旧)	1F-D09	1F-D10
202B 上部ユニット部-2 (新)	1F-D11	1F-D12
203 上部ユニット部-3	1F-E01	1F-E02, E03
204 上部ユニット部-4	1F-E04	1F-E05
301 下部ユニット部-1	1F-E06	1F-E07
302 下部ユニット部-2	1F-E08	1F-E09
303 下部ユニット部-3	1F-E10	1F-E11
304 下部ユニット部-4	1F-E12	1F-E13
305 下部ユニット部-5	1F-F01	1F-F02
306 下部ユニット部-6	1F-F03	1F-F04
320 分離ローラ部	1F-F05	1F-F06
400 上下読取部	1F-F07	1F-F08
500 電装部	1F-F09	1F-F10
600 オプション	1F-F11	1F-F12
C 部品索引表	1F-G01 ~ G03	



CONTENTS

		ILLUST	LIST
A	ASSEMBLY LOCATION DIAGRAM	1F-B01	
B	ILLSTRATION INDEX-1,2	1F-C01, C02	
100	EXTERNAL COVERS	1F-D01	1F-D02
120	DELIVERY COVER ASSEMBLY	1F-D03	1F-D04
140	DOCUMENT BOARD ASSEMBLY	1F-D05	1F-D06
201	UPPER ASSEMBLY-1	1F-D07	1F-D08
202A	UPPER ASSEMBLY-2 (OLD)	1F-D09	1F-D10
202B	UPPER ASSEMBLY-2 (NEW)	1F-D11	1F-D12
203	UPPER ASSEMBLY-3	1F-E01	1F-E02, E03
204	UPPER ASSEMBLY-4	1F-E04	1F-E05
301	LOWER ASSEMBLY-1	1F-E06	1F-E07
302	LOWER ASSEMBLY-2	1F-E08	1F-E09
303	LOWER ASSEMBLY-3	1F-E10	1F-E11
304	LOWER ASSEMBLY-4	1F-E12	1F-E13
305	LOWER ASSEMBLY-5	1F-F01	1F-F02
306	LOWER ASSEMBLY-6	1F-F03	1F-F04
320	SEPARATION ROLLER ASSEMBLY	1F-F05	1F-F06
400	READING UNIT, UPPER/LOWER	1F-F07	1F-F08
500	ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS ASSEMBLY	1F-F09	1F-F10
600	OPTION	1F-F11	1F-F12
C	NUMERICAL INDEX	1F-G01 ~ G03	

パーツカタログの見方

主要部品配置図について

部品図番号 (Figure No.) および各アセンブリの位置を捜すとき、主要部品配置図を用います。

図中  内は部品図名称、 内は部品図番号とアドレス番号を示しています。

また、「イラスト索引」からも検索できます。

部品番号の捜し方

どのアセンブリに使用されている部品かを、主要部品配置図またはイラスト索引で調べその部品図番号 (Figure No.) のページをめくります。

部品図の中からその部品をみつけ、そのキーNo.を部品番号リストの中から捜し出せば、部品番号・部品名称を知ることができます。

注：電源電圧・周波数等の仕様が異なる場合は、同一のキーNo.に複数の部品番号が記されているので“REMARKS”欄を注意して見るようにしてください。

部品番号リストについて

部品番号リストの内容項目は次のとおりです。

(1) 部品図番号およびキーNo. (FIGURE & KEY No.)

部品図番号は、各部品番号リスト欄の左上に示しており、各部品図に対応しています。

また、キーNo.は、部品図中に示してある個々の部品に対応します。

(2) 部品番号 (PART NUMBER)

リストの2番目の欄には、部品番号が示してあります。

部品を発注する際は、必ずこの番号を明示してください。

注：部品番号の末尾3桁を訂番といいます。部品改良等の目的で部品の一部が変更になった場合、訂番が変わることがあります。これらの変更については、技術情報 (Service Information) で随時連絡されますので、常にこれらの情報も注意深く読むよう心がけてください。

(3) ランク (RANK)

Nと記載されている部品はサービスパーツに設定されていますが、在庫はされていません。注文を受けてからの受注生産になります。

(4) 使用個数 (Q'TY)

4番目の使用個数欄に示してある数字は、各部品図中における各部品の使用数量を示しています。

使用個数欄には数字の他に以下のアルファベット文字も表示されています。

AR 数量を限定せず、組立時に必要に応じた数量を使用するもの、および個数の明記できないもの

(5) 部品名称 (DESCRIPTION)

個々の部品の名称が英文と和文で記されています。部品発注の際、部品名称も必ず明示してください。

電気部品等の主な仕様・型番は、英文の末尾に記しているものもあります。

(6) 備考 (REMARKS)

電源電圧・周波数等の仕様の違いがある場合に、表示しています。

これらの表示のないものについてはすべての機械に適用できます。

部品索引表 (NUMERICAL INDEX)



部品番号の索引が巻末にあります。

部品番号がわかっている、使用場所を調べる場合に活用できます。

索引表の左の欄が部品番号 (PART No.)、中央の欄が部品番号 (FIGURE No.) とキーNo. (KEY No.)、右の欄が使用個数 (Q'TY) を示しています。

HOW TO USE PARATS CATALOG

Assembly Location Diagrams

These diagrams show Figure Number and the locations of major assemblies of the machine. Figure names are identified in rectangular boxes , and Figure numbers and address numbers are identified in elliptic boxes . Also, it is possible to be found out by "Illustration Index".

Finding a Parts Number

Refer to the Assembly Location Diagrams or Illustration Index, and find out the Figure Number. Turn to the page (s), and find its Key Number. Refer to the Parts List, and find the Key Number, Part Number and Description.

Note : While looking for a Part Number, pay particular attention to the voltage listed in the "REMARKS" column to ensure that the Part Number selected is for your type of machine.

Part List pages

The Parts List pages contain the following columns and information.

(1) Figure and Key Number.

The first column shows the Figure Number of the illustration corresponding to the Parts List, and the Key Number that identifies the part on the illustration.

(2) Part Number.

The second column shows the Part Number for the part. This Number must be used when ordering replacement parts or assemblies.

Note : The last three digits (suffix) of the Parts Number are called the Revision Number. The Revision Number is changed of the part is modified. Information regarding such changes will be provided by Service Information Bulletins. These Bulletins should be read carefully.

(3) Rank.

Parts marked "N" are service parts, but are not stock items. They are produced on a special-order basis.

(4) Quantity (Q'ty).

The quantity shown in this column is the number of parts used in the figure.

This column indicates the following alphabets as well as numeric characters.

AR This indicates that the quantity of a part is not specified, allowing the use of the number of parts needed for assembly and that the quantity cannot be mentioned clearly.

(5) Description.

The Description column lists the description in Japanese and in English. When ordering the part. Such description Should be use as well as the part number. Some major specifications and type numbers are described at the end of the description in English.

(6) Remarks.

When there are differences in the specifications of power supply voltage or others, the differences are described in this column.

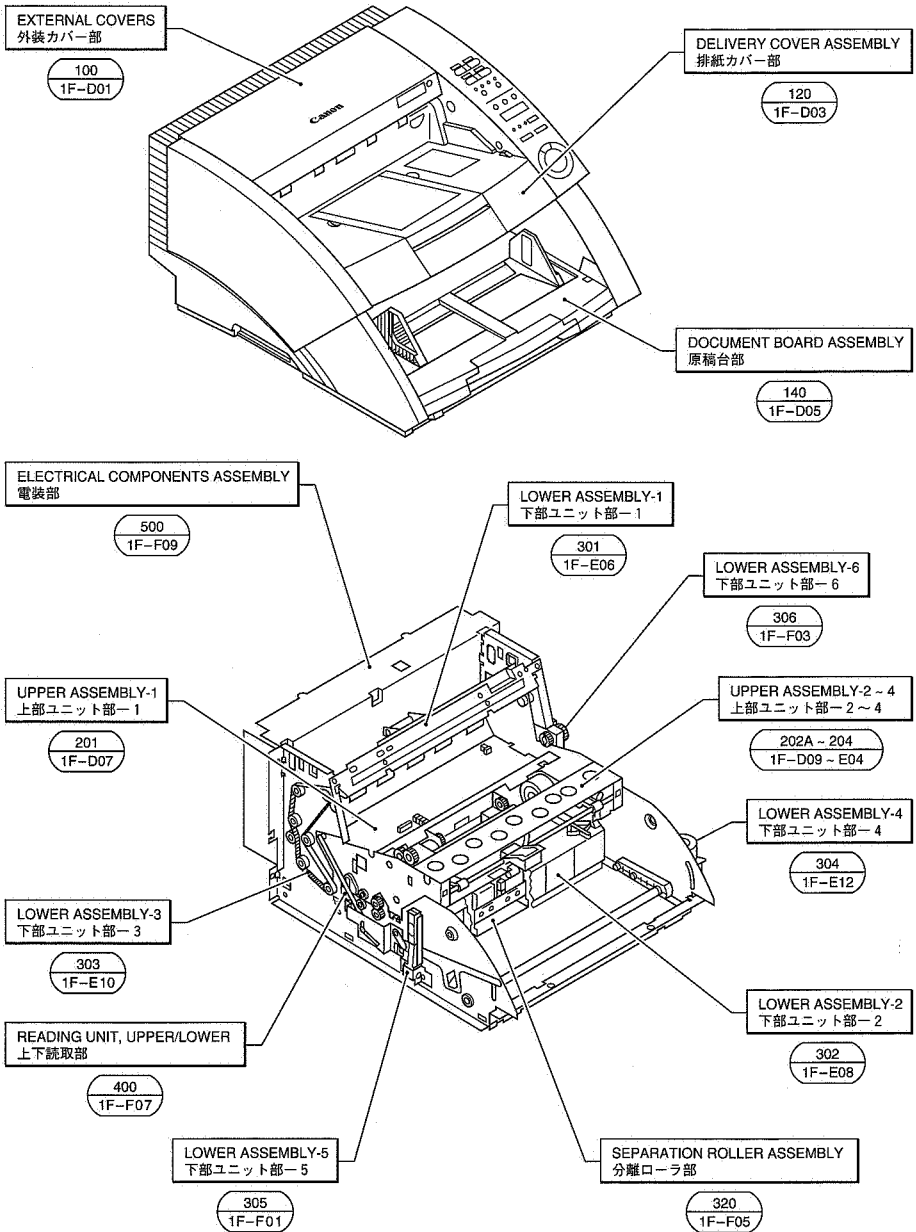
If there are not such differences, the part is available for all machines.

Numerical Index

There is a Numerical Index at the end of this catalog. It can be used when looking for the location where the part is used, if you know the part number. The first column shows the Part Number, the second column lists the Figure and Key Number and the third column shows the used quantities.

A07

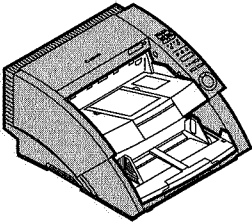
FIGURE A ASSEMBLY LOCATION DIAGRAM
 主要部品配置図



B01

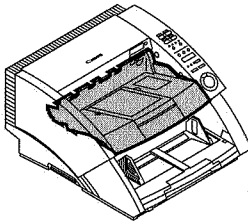
FIGURE B-1 ILLUSTRATION INDEX-1
イラスト索引-1

FIGURE 100



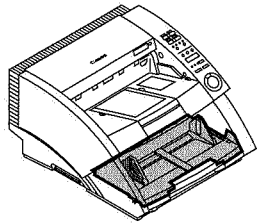
1F-D01

FIGURE 120



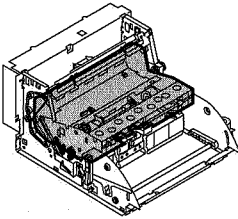
1F-D03

FIGURE 140



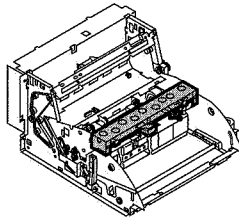
1F-D05

FIGURE 201



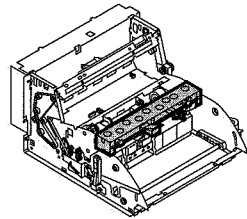
1F-D07

FIGURE 202A



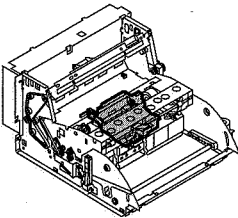
1F-D09

FIGURE 202B



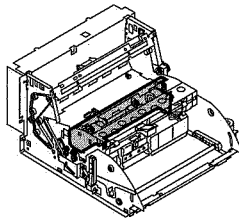
1F-D11

FIGURE 203



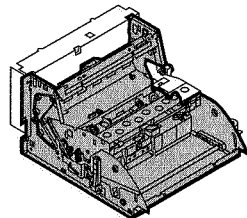
1F-E01

FIGURE 204



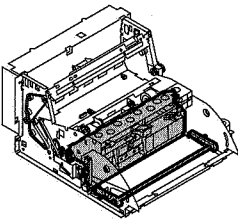
1F-E04

FIGURE 301



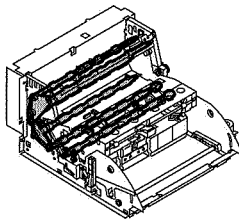
1F-E06

FIGURE 302



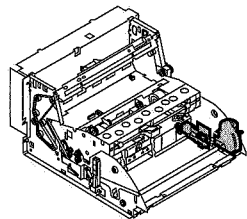
1F-E08

FIGURE 303



1F-E10

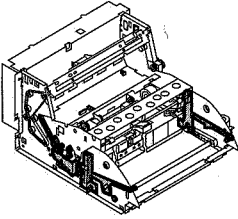
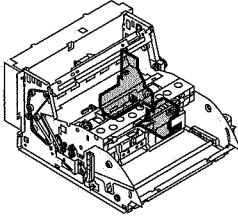
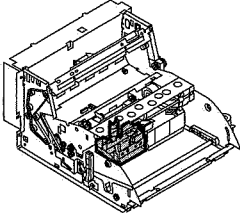
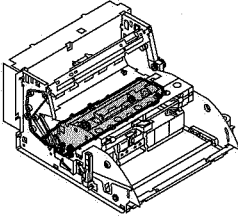
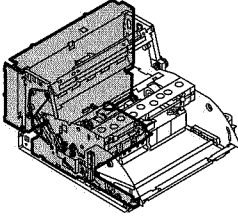
FIGURE 304



1F-E12

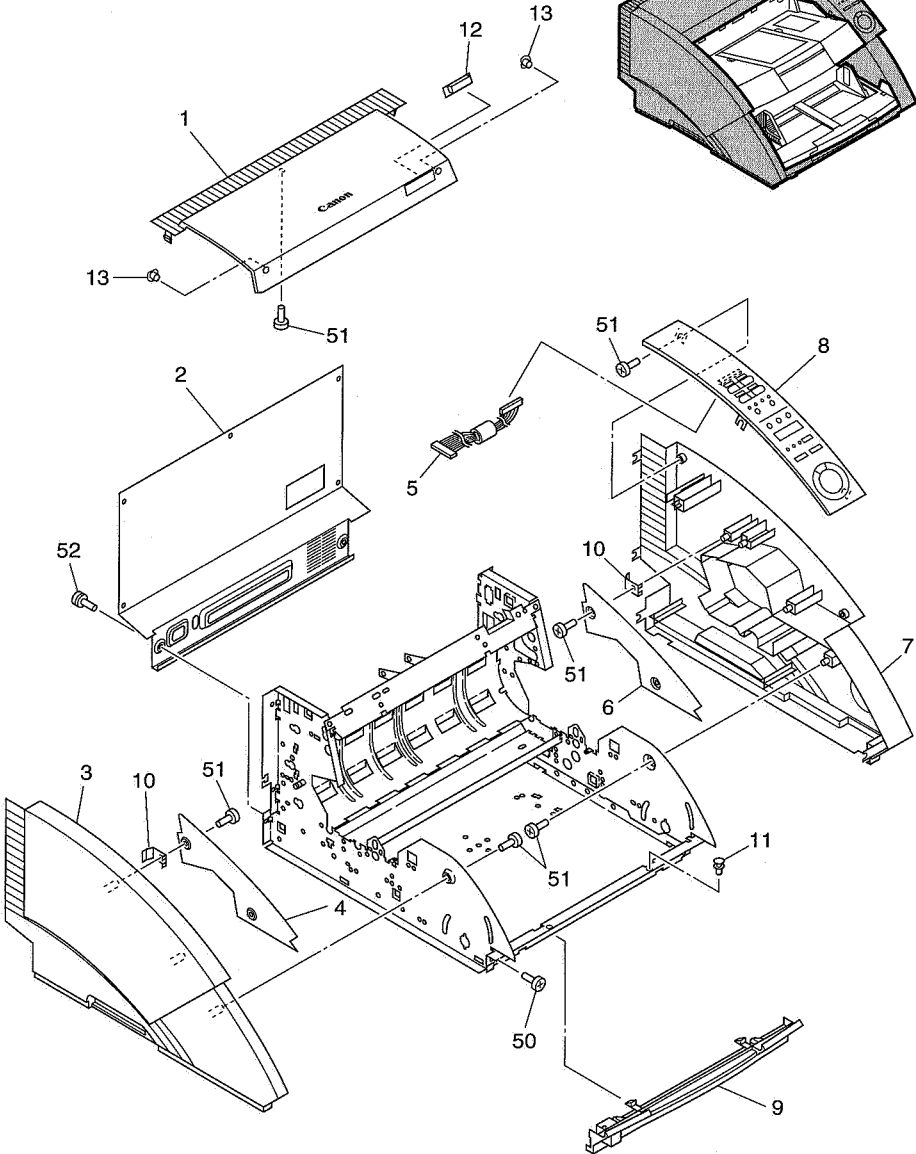
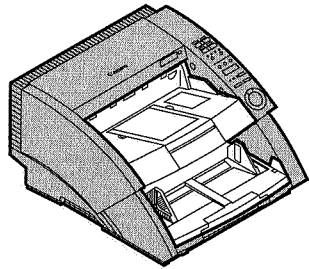
C01

FIGURE B-2 ILLUSTRATION INDEX-2
イラスト索引-2

<p>FIGURE 305</p>  <p>1F-F01</p>	<p>FIGURE 306</p>  <p>1F-F03</p>	<p>FIGURE 320</p>  <p>1F-F05</p>
<p>FIGURE 400</p>  <p>1F-F07</p>	<p>FIGURE 500</p>  <p>1F-F09</p>	<p>FIGURE 600</p> <p><u>OPTION</u></p> <p>1F-F11</p>

C02

FIGURE 100 EXTERNAL COVERS 外装カバー部



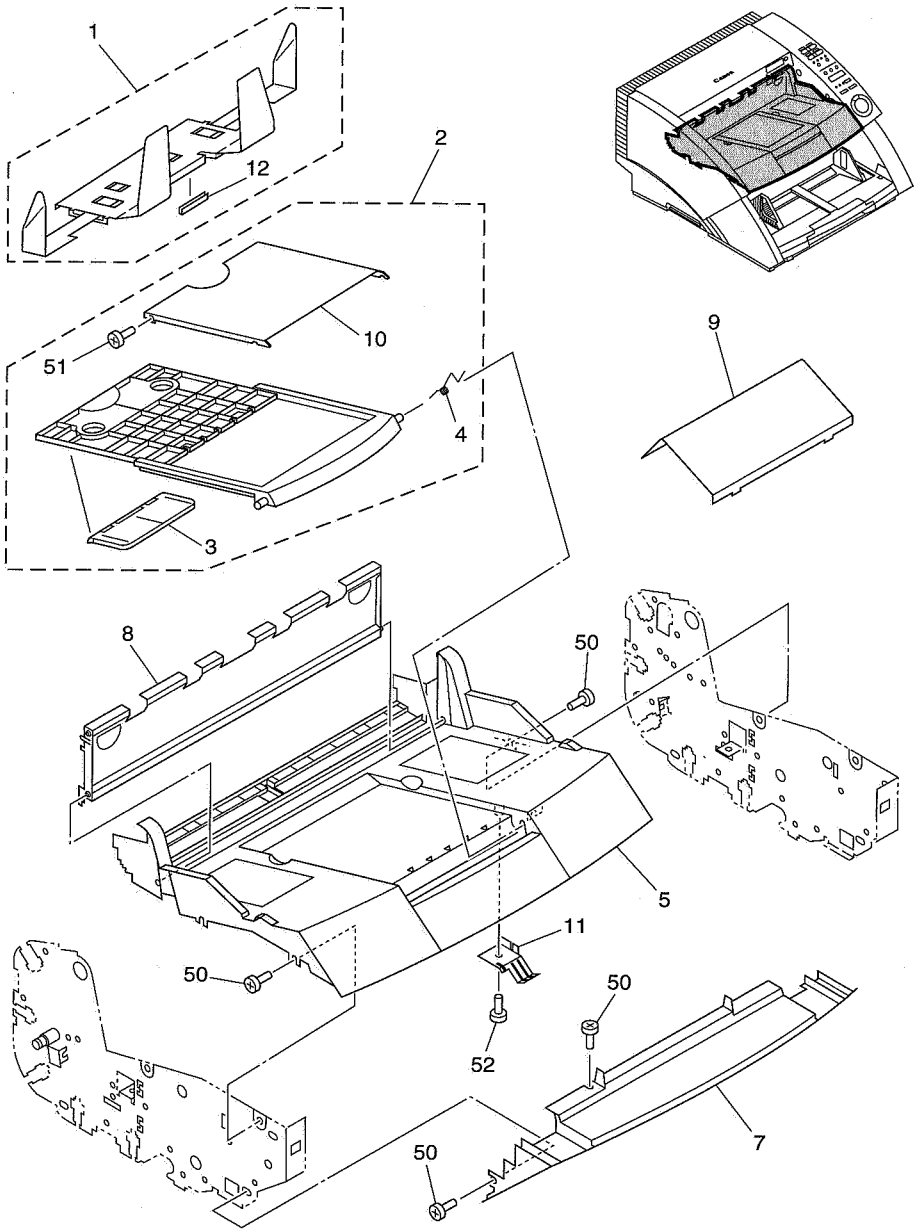
D01

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	QTY	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
100-	1 MA2-5363-000		1	COVER, UPPER ウエ カバー	DR-5080C
	MA2-5378-000		1	COVER, UPPER ウエ カバー	DR-5020
	2 MA2-5367-000		1	COVER, REAR ウシロ カバー	
	3 MA2-5361-000		1	COVER, LEFT ヒダリ カバー	
4	MA2-5362-000		1	PANEL, INNER LEFT ヒダリ ウチガワ カバー	
5	MG1-2980-020		1	CABLE ASS'Y, OPERATION PANEL ソウサブ タバセン	
6	MA2-5360-000		1	PANEL, INNER RIGHT ミギ ウチガワ カバー	
7	MA2-5359-000		1	COVER, RIGHT ミギ カバー	
8	MH6-0020-000		1	OPERATION PANEL ASS'Y ソウサブ	
9	MG1-2981-000		1	COVER, FRONT マエ カバー	
10	MA2-5374-000		2	SPRING, GROUNDING アース バネ	
11	XD9-0190-000		2	RIVET, PLASTIC プラスチック リベット	
12	MA2-5364-000	N	1	PLATE, BLIND A メカクシ パン A	
13	MA2-5365-000	N	2	PLATE, BLIND B, CAP メカクシ パン B	
50	XB1-2400-607		2	SCREW, BH M4X6 バインド コネジ M4 L 6	
51	XB4-7400-607		10	SCREW, TAP, BH M4X6 B タイト M4 L 6	
52	XB2-7400-807		7	SCREW, W/WASHER, M4X8 キクザツキ ネジ	

D02

FIGURE 120

DELIVERY COVER ASSEMBLY
排紙カバー部



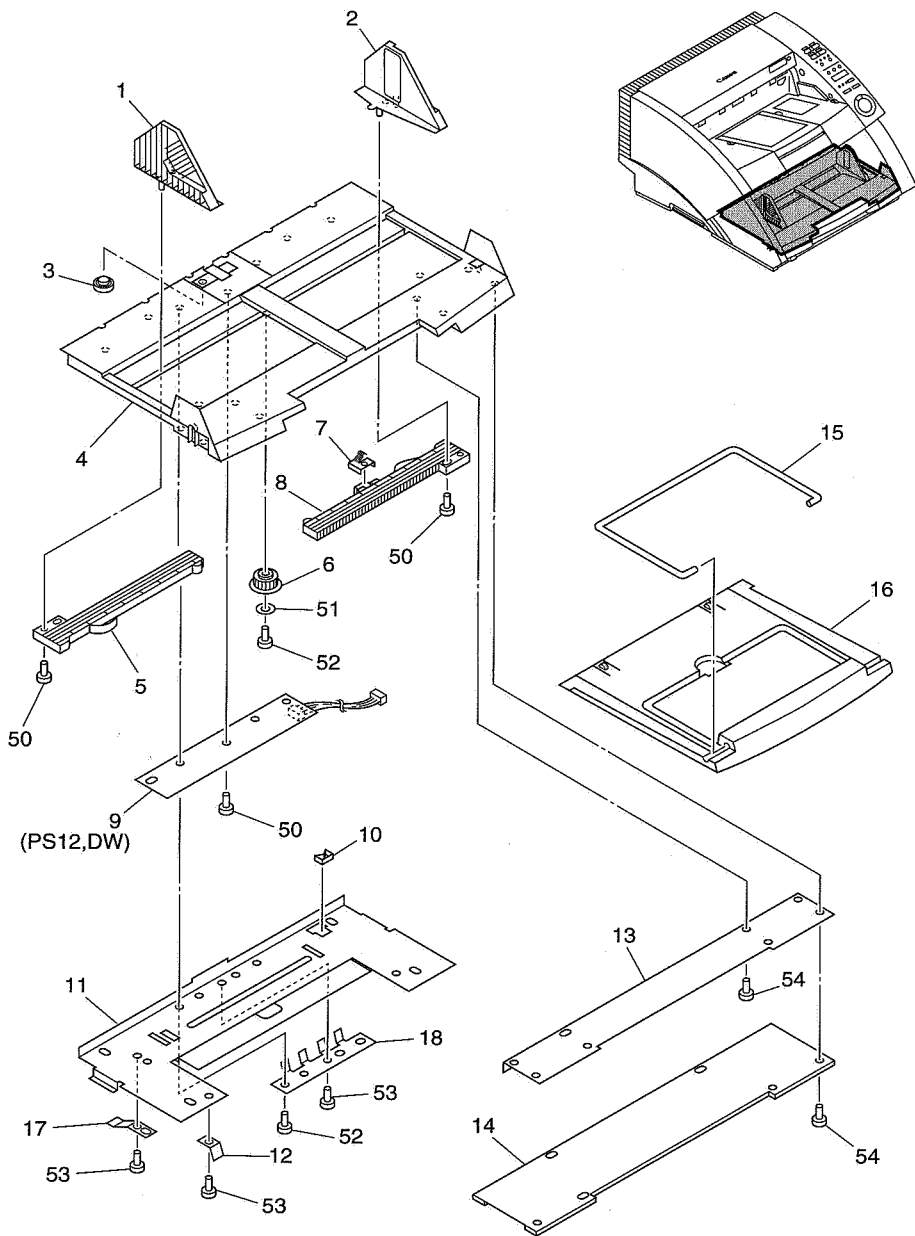
D03

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	R A N K	Q' T Y	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
120-	1 MF1-3953-030	N	1	TRAY, REMOVABLE チャックダツシキ トレイ	
	2 MG1-2984-030		1	TRAY ASSEMBLY, DELIVERY ハイシ トレイ ユニット	
	3 MA2-5553-000	N	1	STOPPER, DELIVERY TRAY ストッパ	
	4 MA2-5548-020		1	SPRING, TORSION, TRAY トレイ アース バネ	
	5 MF1-3966-020		1	COVER, UPPER DELIVERY ハイシ カバー	
	7 MF1-3945-000		1	COVER, FRONT, DELIVERY ハイシ マエ カバー	
	8 MF1-3946-020		1	COVER, IMPRINTER IP カバー	
	9 MA2-5511-000	N	1	PLATE, DELIVERY SUPPORT ハイシ ホジョ ステア	
	10 MA2-5552-020		1	PANEL, DELIVERY TRAY ハイシ トレイ イタ	
	11 MA2-5577-000		1	PLATE アース イタ	
	12 MA2-5570-000		2	SHEET シート	
	50 XB1-2400-607		8	SCREW, BH M4X6 バインド コネジ M4 L6	
	51 XB1-2200-507		2	SCREW, BH M2X5 バインド コネジ M2 L5	
	52 XB4-7300-609		1	SCREW, TAP, BH M3X6 B Bタイト M3 L6	

D04

FIGURE 140

DOCUMENT BOARD ASSEMBLY 原稿台部

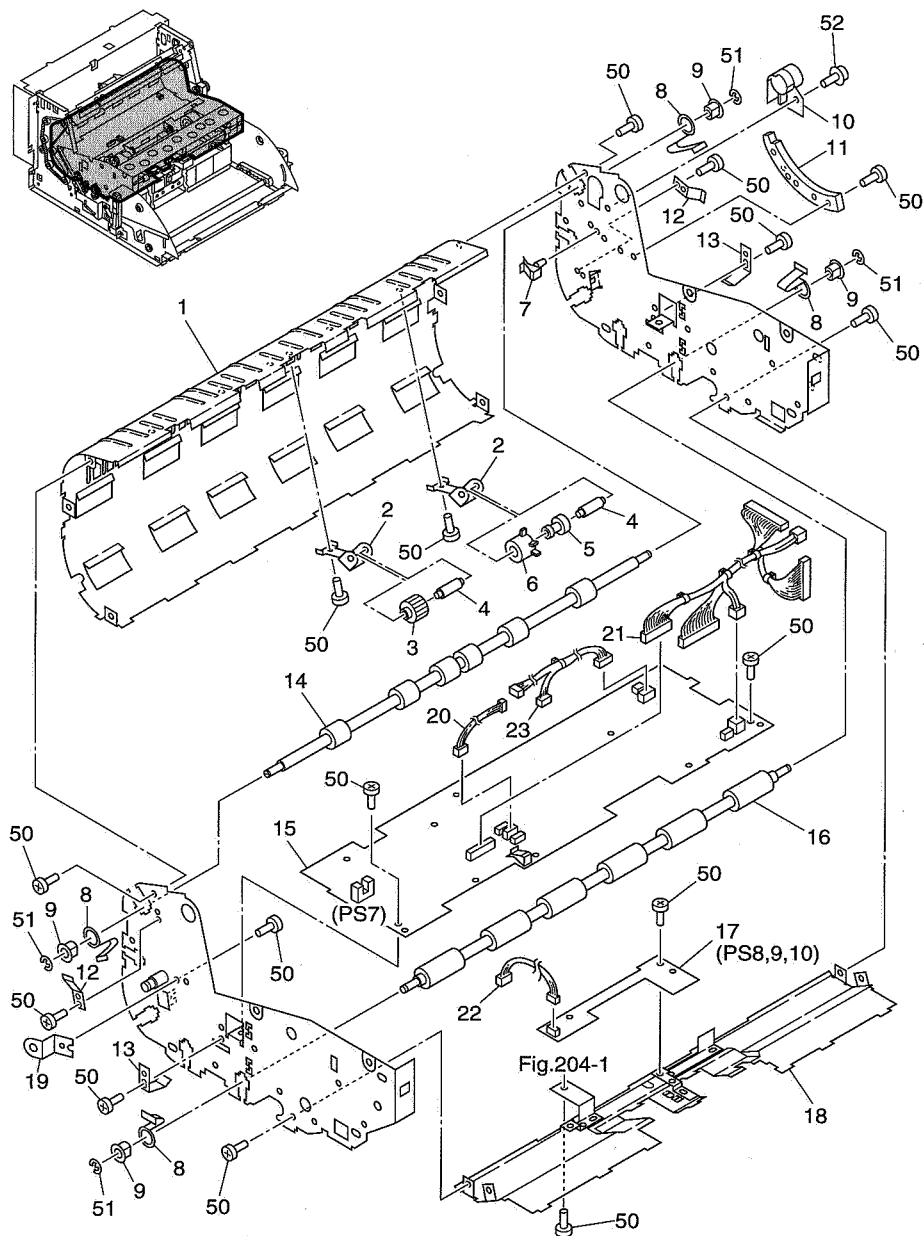


D05

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	R A N K	Q T Y	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
140-	1 MF1-3877-000	N	1	PLATE, WIDTH GUIDE, LEFT サイド キセイバン (L)	
	2 MF1-3876-000	N	1	PLATE, WIDTH GUIDE, RIGHT サイド キセイバン (R)	
	3 MA2-5403-000	N	1	PLATE, DOCUMENT SENSING ゲンコウ ケンチ マド	
	4 MF1-3875-020		1	PICK-UP TRAY ゲンコウダイ	
	5 MA2-5407-000		1	RACK, WIDTE GUIDE, LEFT サイド キセイ ラック (L)	
6 MS1-0714-000			1 GEAR, RACK ラック ギア		
7 MA2-5402-000			1 SPRING, CONTACT セッテン		
8 MA2-5399-000			1 RACK, WIDTH GUIDE サイド キセイ ラック		
9 MG1-3016-020			1 PCB ASS'Y, DOCUMENT SENSOR ゲンコウ ケンチ カイロキバン		
10 WT2-5056-000			1 CLIP, CORD エッジ サドル		
11 MA2-5397-030	N	1	PLATE, REINFORCE, PICK-UP TRAY ゲンコウダイ ホキョウ バン		
12 MA2-5089-000		1	SPRING, PLATE アース パネ		
13 MA2-5398-000	N	1	MOUNT, EXTENTION TRAY シンシュク トレイ トリツケ バン		
14 MA2-5394-000	N	1	SHEET, BARRIER アンゼン マク		
15 MA2-5404-000	N	1	EXTENTION TRAY, WIRE END エンド ワイヤ		
16 MA2-5396-000	N	1	TRAY, EXTENTION シンシュク トレイ		
17 MA2-5393-000		1	SPRING, PLATE ゲンコウダイ パネ		
18 MA2-5391-000		1	PLATE, BLOCKER ゲンコウ フロッカ		
50 XB4-7260-509		7	SCREW, TAP, BH M2.6X5 B Bタイト M2.6 L5 B		
51 XD1-2100-307		1	WASHER, PLAIN, 3.0 ヒラザガネ 3.0		
52 XB4-7300-607		7	SCREW, TAP, BH M3X6 B Bタイト M3 L6 B		
53 XBT-2300-407		3	SCREW, BH M3X4 バインド コネジ M3 L4		
54 XB4-7300-809		8	SCREW, TAP, BH M3X8 B Bタイト M3 L8 B		

D06

FIGURE 201 UPPER ASSEMBLY-1
 上部ユニット部ー1



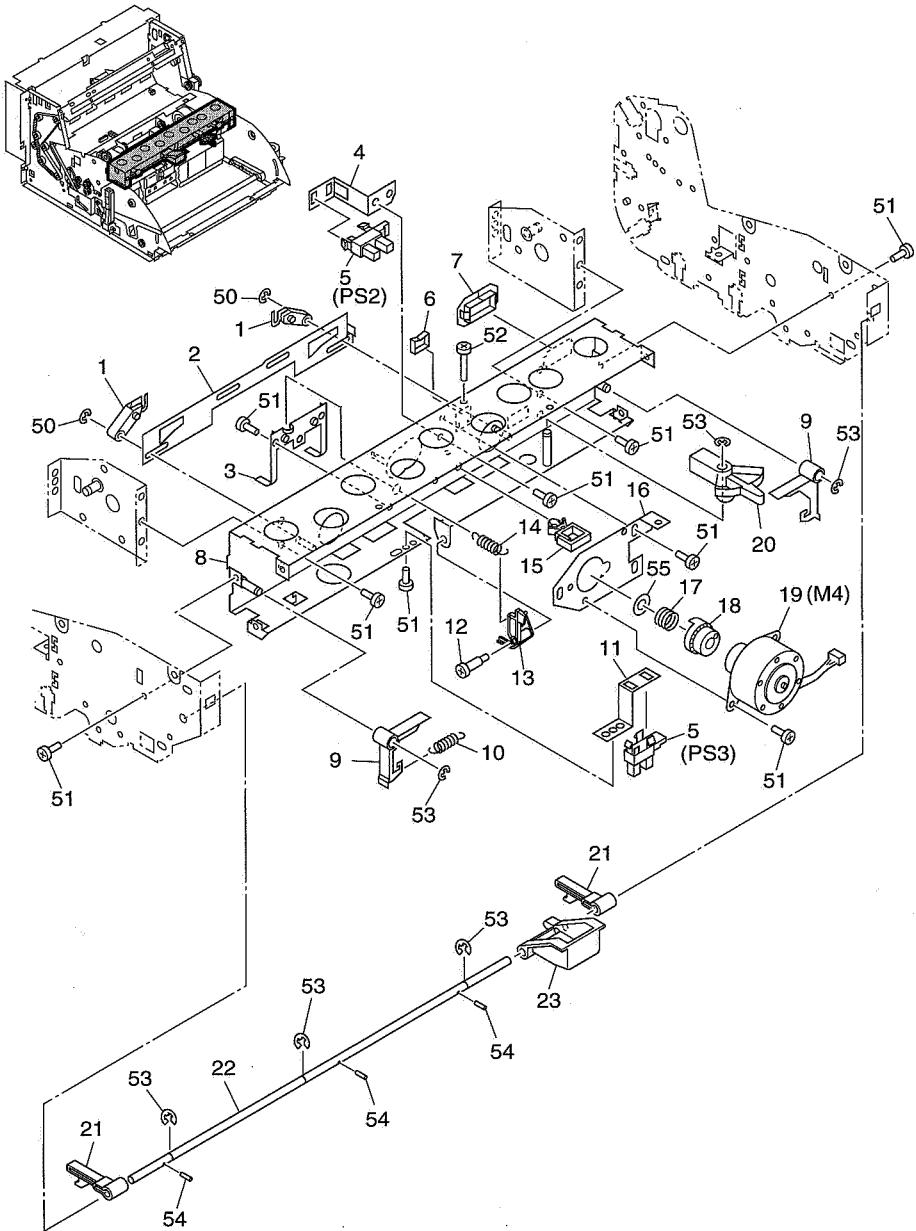
D07

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	R A N K	Q' T Y	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
201 -	1 MF1-3947-000	N	1	GUIDE, U-TURN, UPPER Uターン ガイド ウエ	
	2 MA2-5567-000		6	SPRING, SLAVE DELIVERY ROLLER ハイシ ジュウドウ ローラ バネ	
	3 MA2-5569-000	N	2	ROLLER, DELIVERY 2 ハイシ ジュウドウ ローラ 2	
	4 MA2-5568-000		6	SHAFT, SLAVE DELIVERY ROLLER ハイシ ジュウドウ ローラ ジク	
	5 MA2-5566-000		4	MOUNT, SLAVE DELIVERY ROLLER ハイシ ジュウドウ ローラ コロ	
6 MA2-4349-000		4	ROLLER, DELIVERY ハイシ ジュウドウ ローラ		
7 WT2-5089-000		1	CLAMP, CABLE タバセン オサエ		
8 MA2-5563-020		10	SPRING, PLATE, FEEDER ROLLER ジュウドウ ローラ バネ		
9 FS1-1422-000		10	BUSHING, 6X8 ジク ウケ (マル6 X 8)		
10 MA2-5565-000		1	BUSHING, CABLE ケーブル ブッシュ		
11 MA2-5473-000		1	GEAR, DAMPING ダンピング ギア		
12 MA2-5497-000		2	SPRING, PLATE オウアツ バン		
13 MA2-5564-000		2	SPRING, PLATE, READING ヨミトリ オサエ バネ		
14 MA2-5562-020		1	ROLLER, SLAVE, FEEDER 2 ハンソウ ジュウドウ ローラ 2		
15 MG1-2967-040		1	PCB ASS'Y, CPU, K4-SUB K4-SUB CPU カイロキバン		
16 MA2-5561-000		4	ROLLER, SLAVE, FEEDER 1 ハンソウ ジュウドウ ローラ 1		
17 MG1-2968-000		1	PCB ASS'Y, FEEDING SENSORS オクリ センサ カイロキバン		
18 MA2-5518-020	N	1	GUIDE, PAPER INLET, UPPER キュウシ ウエ ガイド バン		
19 MA2-5572-000	N	1	PLATE, LOCKING, OPEN-CLOSE カイハイ ロック ホキョウバン		
20 MG1-2974-000		1	CABLE ASS'Y, REGISTRATION SENSOR レジスト センサ タバセン		
21 MG1-2971-000		1	CABLE ASS'Y, UPPER UNIT ジョウブ ユニット タバセン		
22 MG1-2973-000		1	CABLE ASS'Y, FEEDING SENSORS オクリ センサ タバセン		
23 MG1-2972-000		1	CABLE ASS'Y, PICK-UP&GAP SENSOR キュウシ & GAP センサ タバセン		
50 XB1-2300-607		31	SCREW, BH M3X6 バインド コネジ M3 L6		
51 XD2-1100-502		4	RING, E 5.0 Eガタ トメワ 5.0		
52 XB6-7300-609		1	SCREW, TP M3X6 B TP コネジ M3 L6 B		

D08

FIGURE 202A

UPPER ASSEMBLY-2 (OLD)
上部ユニット部-2 (旧)



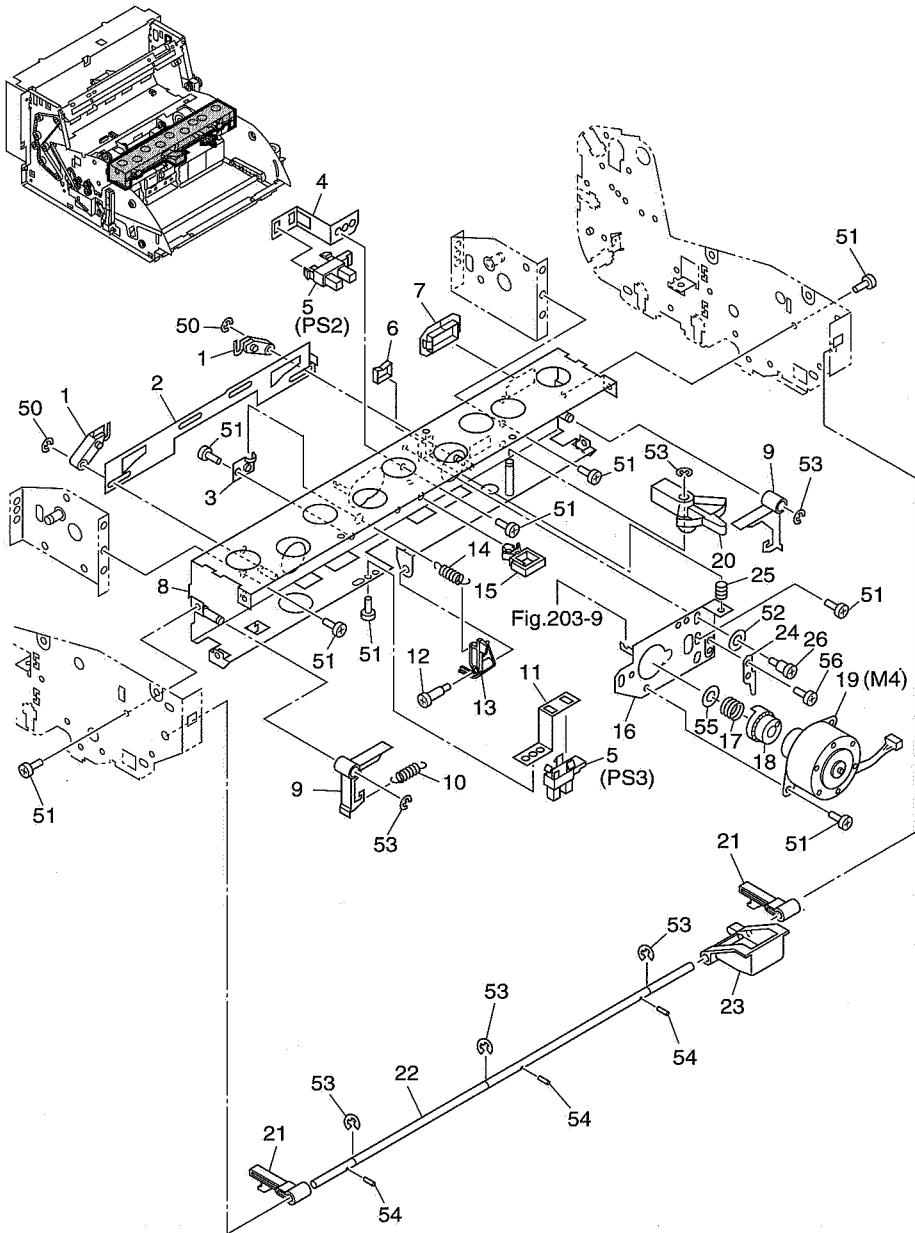
D09

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	R A N K	Q' T Y	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
202A-	1 MA2-5484-000	N	2	ARM, CHANGE キリカエ アーム	
	2 MA2-5483-000	N	1	PLATE, CHANGE キリカエ バン	
	3 MA2-5560-000		1	GUIDE, PICK-UP ROLLER キューシ ローラ ガイド	
	4 MA2-5536-020	N	1	MOUNT, GAP SENSOR ギャップ センサ ステア	
	5 FH7-7312-000		2	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER フォトインタラプタ	
6 WT2-5056-000		1	CLIP, CORD エッジ サドル		
7 WT2-5062-000		1	BUSHING スクウェア ブッシュ		
8 MF1-3956-000	N	1	CROSSMEMBER, FRONT, GAP MOTOR モータ ステア マエ		
9 MA2-5538-000	N	2	HOOK, RELEASE カিজヨ フック		
10 MS1-2413-000		1	SPRING, SEPARATION ブンリ バネ		
11 MA2-5519-020	N	1	MOUNT, SENSOR, PICK-UP キューシ センサ ステア		
12 FS1-9121-000		1	SCREW, TWO-STEP M3 M3 ダン ビス		
13 MA2-5540-000	N	1	LEVER, PICK-UP キューシ レバー		
14 MS1-2362-000		1	SPRING, LEVER レバー バネ		
15 WT2-0317-000		1	CLIP, CABLE ワイヤ サドル		
16 MA2-5533-000	N	1	PLATE, GAP MOTOR ギャップ モータ ステア		
17 MS1-2410-000		1	SPRING, COMPRESION, GAP ギャップ バネ		
18 MA2-5535-000	N	1	GAP SHUTTER ギャップ シャッタ		
19 MF1-3964-000		1	MOTOR, GAP CAM ギャップ モータ		
20 MA2-5482-000	N	1	LEVER, CHANGE キリカエ レバー		
21 MA2-5574-000	N	2	LEVER, RELEASE カিজヨ レバー		
22 MA2-5575-000	N	1	SHAFT, RELEASE LEVER カিজヨ レバー ジク		
23 MA2-5573-000	N	1	BUTTON, OPEN-CLOSE カイハイ ボタン		
50 XD2-1100-322		2	RING, E 3.2 Eガタ トメワ 3.2		
51 XB1-2300-607		17	SCREW, BH M3X6 バインド コネジ M3 L6		
52 XB1-2301-009		1	SCREW, BH M3X10 B バインド コネジ M3 L10 B		
53 XD2-1100-502		6	RING, E 5.0 Eガタ トメワ 5.0		
54 XD3-2200-122		3	PIN, DOWEL, 2.0X12 ヘイコウ ピン 2.0 X 12		
55 XD1-1107-215		1	SHIM, 7.2X0.5 ヒョウジエン ワッシャ		

D10

FIGURE 202B

UPPER ASSEMBLY-2 (NEW) 上部ユニット部-2 (新)



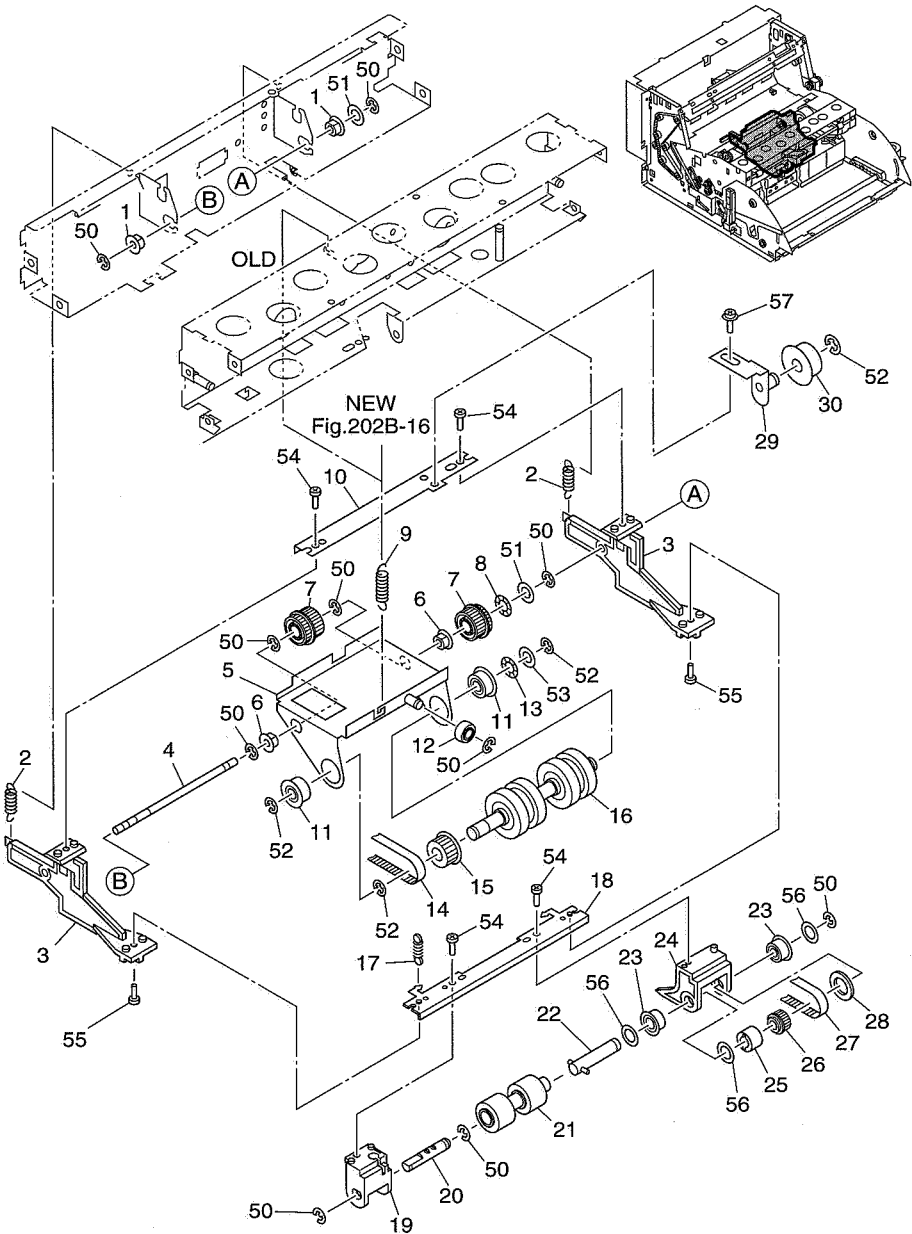
D11

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	R A N K	Q' T Y	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
202B-	1 MA2-5484-000	N	2	ARM, CHANGE キリカエ アーム	
	2 MA2-5483-000	N	1	PLATE, CHANGE キリカエ パン	
	3 MA2-5560-000		1	GUIDE, PICK-UP ROLLER キュウシ ローラ ガイド	
	4 MA2-5536-020	N	1	MOUNT, GAP SENSOR ギャップ センサ ステア	
	5 FH7-7312-000		2	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER フォトインタラプタ	
6	WT2-5056-000		1	CLIP, CORD エッジ サドル	
7	WT2-5062-000		1	BUSHING スクウェア プッシュ	
8	MF1-3956-020	N	1	CROSSMEMBER, FRONT, GAP MOTOR モータ ステア マエ	
9	MA2-5538-000	N	2	HOOK, RELEASE カイジヨ フック	
10	MS1-2413-000		1	SPRING, SEPARATION ブプリ バネ	
11	MA2-5519-020	N	1	MOUNT, SENSOR, PICK-UP キュウシ センサ ステア	
12	FS1-9121-000		1	SCREW, TWO-STEP M3 M3 ダン ビス	
13	MA2-5540-000	N	1	LEVER, PICK-UP キュウシ レバー	
14	MS1-2362-000		1	SPRING, LEVER レバー バネ	
15	WT2-0317-000		1	CLIP, CABLE ワイヤ サドル	
16	MA2-5588-000	N	1	PLATE, GAP MOTOR ギャップ モータ ステア	
17	MS1-2410-000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION, GAP ギャップ バネ	
18	MA2-5535-000	N	1	GAP SHUTTER ギャップ シャッタ	
19	MF1-3964-000		1	MOTOR, GAP CAM ギャップ モータ	
20	MA2-5482-000	N	1	LEVER, CHANGE キリカエ レバー	
21	MA2-5574-000	N	2	LEVER, RELEASE カイジヨ レバー	
22	MA2-5575-000	N	1	SHAFT, RELEASE LEVER カイジヨ レバー ジク	
23	MA2-5573-000	N	1	BUTTON, OPEN-CLOSE カイハイ ボタン	
24	MA2-5589-000		1	PLATE, STOPPER ストッパ	
25	MS1-2412-000		1	SPRING, LEVER バネ	
26	FS1-9010-000		3	SCREW, STEPPED M3 M3 ダン ビス	
50	XD2-1100-322		2	RING, E 3.2 Eガタ トメワ 3.2	
51	XB1-2300-607		14	SCREW, BH M3X6 バインド コネジ M3 L 6	
52	XD1-1104-135		3	SHIM, 4.1X0.5 ヒョウジュン ワッシャ	
53	XD2-1100-502		6	RING, E 5.0 Eガタ トメワ 5.0	
54	XD3-2200-122		3	PIN, DOWEL, 2.0X12 ヘイコウ ピン 2.0 X 12	
55	XD1-1107-215		1	SHIM, 7.2X0.5 ヒョウジュン ワッシャ	
56	XB1-2300-309		2	SCREW, BH M3X3 B バインド コネジ M3 L 3 B	

D12

FIGURE 203

UPPER ASSEMBLY-3 上部ユニット部-3



E01

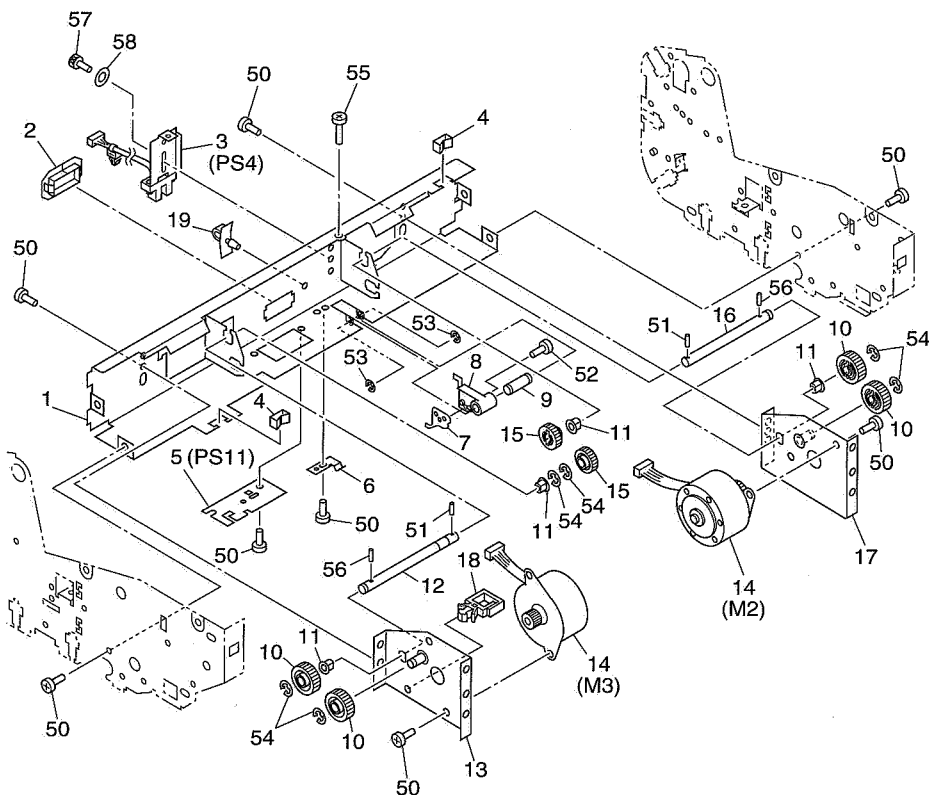
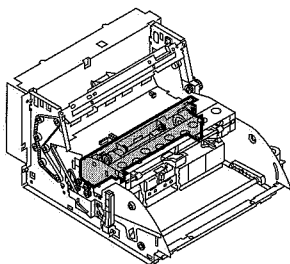
FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	QTY	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
203-	1 RS1-1042-000		2	BUSHING, 6X3.5 ジク ウケ (マル6 X 3.5)	
	2 MS1-2399-000		2	SPRING, TENSION, DELIVERY ハイン スプリング	OLD
	MS1-2413-000		2	SPRING, TENSION, DELIVERY ハイン スプリング	NEW
	3 MA2-5529-000	N	2	ARM, PICK-UP ASSEMBLY キュウシ アーム	
	4 MA2-5528-000	N	1	SHAFT, FEEDING ROLLER オクリ ローラ ステージク	
	5 MF1-3959-000	N	1	MOUNT, FEEDING ROLLER オクリ ローラ ステージ	
	6 FS1-1422-000		2	BUSHING, 6X8 ジク ウケ (マル6 X 8)	
	7 MF1-3960-000		2	PULLEY, GEAR, PICK-UP キュウシ ギア プーリ	
	8 X71-9773-000		1	WASHER, WAVE 6.4 ウェイブ ワッシャ	
	9 MS1-2246-000		1	SPRING, SEPARATION フンリ パネ	OLD
	MS1-2411-000		1	SPRING, SEPARATION フンリ パネ	NEW
	10 MA2-5532-000	N	1	PLATE, PICK-UP LEVER ヒックアップ レバー ステージ	
	11 XG9-0405-000		2	BEARING, BALL ボール ベアリング	
	12 MA2-5537-000	N	1	CAM FOLLOWER カム フォロワ	
	13 X71-9774-000		1	WASHER, WAVE 8.5 ウェイブ ワッシャ	
	14 XF2-1106-940		1	BELT, TIMING 69T タイミング ベルト 69T	
	15 MF1-3961-000		1	PULLEY, ONE-WAY, FEEDING ROLLER オクリ ローラ ワンウェイ プーリ	
	16 MA2-5539-000		1	ROLLER, FEEDING オクリ ローラ	
	17 MS1-2401-000		2	SPRING, TENSION, CHANGE キリカエ パネ	
	18 MA2-5557-000	N	1	PLATE, PICK-UP ROLLER キュウシ ローラ ステージ	
	19 MF1-3955-020		1	HOLDER, PICK-UP SHAFT, LEFT キュウシ ローラ ジク ウケ ヒダリ	
	20 MA2-5559-000		1	SHAFT, PICK-UP ROLLER, LEFT キュウシ ローラ ジク ヒダリ	
	21 MA2-5520-000		1	ROLLER, PICK-UP キュウシ ローラ	
	22 MF1-3969-000		1	SHAFT, PICK-UP ROLLER, RIGHT キュウシ ローラ ジク ミギ	
	23 XG9-0440-000		2	BEARING, BALL, FLANGE フランジツキ ベアリング	
	24 MA2-5554-020		1	HOLDER, PICK-UP SHAFT, RIGHT キュウシ ローラ ジク ウケ ミギ	
	25 MF1-3963-000		1	ROLLER, ONE-WAY, PICK-UP キュウシ ワンウェイ ローラ	
	26 MS1-3139-000		1	PULLEY, PICK-UP, 20T キュウシ ローラ プーリ (Z=20)	
	27 XF2-1109-640		1	BELT, TIMING 96T タイミング ベルト 96T	
	28 X71-5435-000		1	WASHER, NYLON ポリ スライダ	
	29 MF1-3970-000		1	PLATE, TENSION, PICK-UP テンション	
	30 MA1-8912-000		1	ROLLER コロ	
	50 XD2-1100-502		10	RING, E 5.0 Eガタ トメワ 5.0	
	51 XD1-1106-235		2	SHIM, 6.2X0.5 ヒョウジュン ワッシャ	
	52 XD2-1100-642		4	RING, E 6.4 Eガタ トメワ 6.4	

E02

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	R A N K	Q T Y	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
203- 53	XD1-1108-225		1	SHIM, 8.2X0.5 ヒョウジュン ワッシャ	
54	XB4-7300-609		4	SCREW, TAP, BH M3X6 B Bタイト M3 L 6 B	
55	XB1-2300-809		2	SCREW, BH M3X8 B バインド コネジ M3 L 8 B	
56	XD1-1106-213		3	SHIM 6.2X0.3 ヒョウジュン ワッシャ	
57	XB6-7300-409		1	SCREW, TP M3X4 B T P コネジ M3 L 4 B	

E03

FIGURE 204 UPPER ASSEMBLY-4 上部ユニット部-4



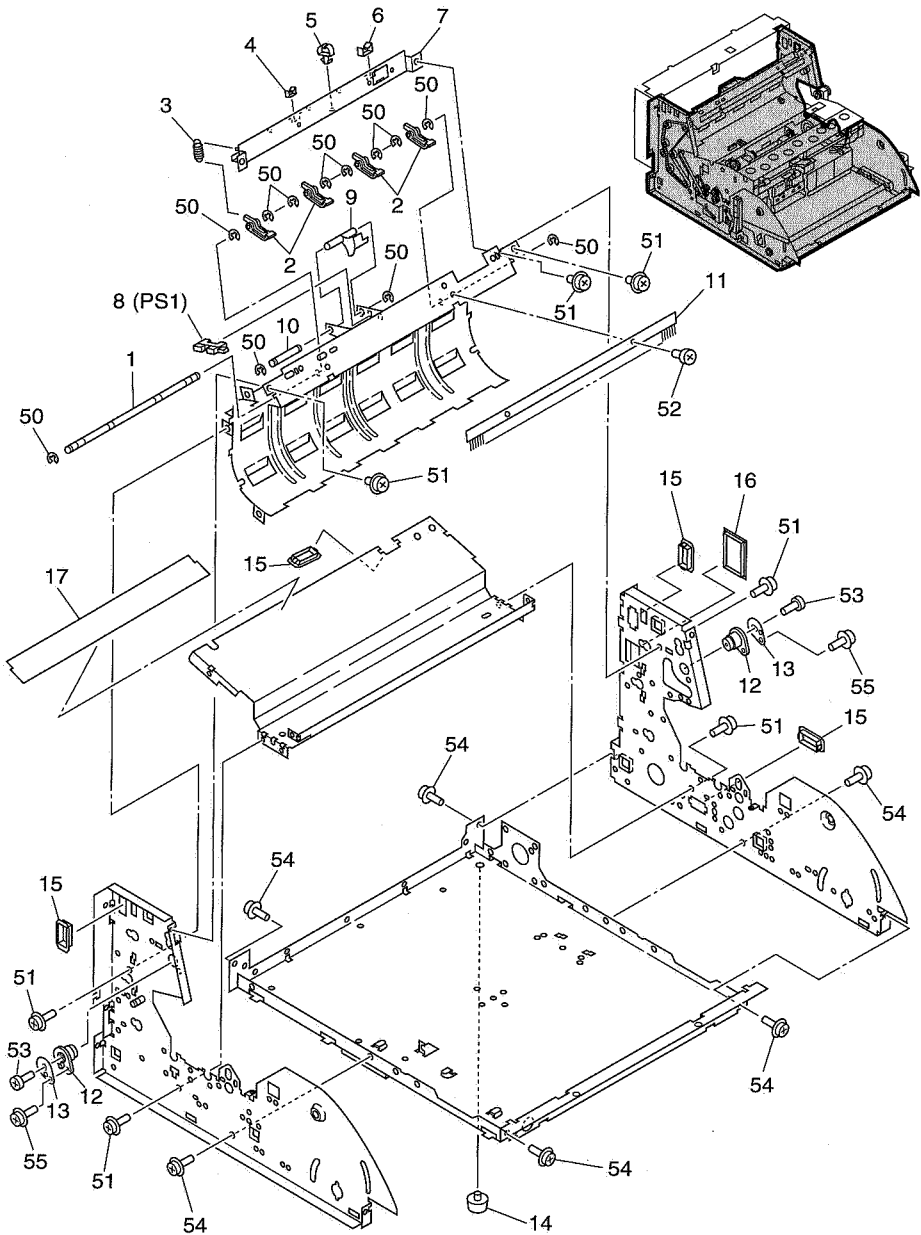
E04

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	QTY	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
204-	1 MA2-5522-020	N	1	CROSSMEMBER, MOTOR, REAR モータ ステア オク	
	2 WT2-5062-000		1	BUSHING スクウェア ブッシュ	
	3 MG1-2983-000		1	SENSOR ASSEMBLY, DOUBLE FEED ケンチ センサ ユニット	
	4 WT2-5056-000		2	CLIP, CORD エッジ サドル	
	5 MG1-2969-000		1	PCB ASS'Y, REGISTRATION SENSOR レジスト センサ カイロキパン	
6	MA2-5543-000	N	1	SPRING, PLATE, DOUBLE FEED LEVER ジュウソウ レバー パネ	
	7 MA2-5545-000		1	LEVER, DOUBLE FEED 2 ジュウソウ レバー 2	
	8 MA2-5541-000	N	1	LEVER, DOUBLE FEED ジュウソウ レバー	
	9 MA2-5542-000	N	1	SHAFT, DOUBLE FEED LEVER ジュウソウ レバー ジク	
	10 MS1-0985-000		4	GEAR, IDLER, 30T アイドラ ギア (30ハ)	
	11	FS1-1422-000		4	BUSHING, 6X3.5 ジク ウケ (マル6 X 3.5)
12 MA2-5526-000		N	1	SHAFT, IDLER, LEFT アイドラ ジク ヒダリ	
13 MF1-3958-000		N	1	MOUNT, LEFT, FEEDING MOTOR モータ ステア ヒダリ	
14 RH7-1278-000			2	MOTOR, STEPPING ステッピング モータ	
15 MS1-0986-000			2	GEAR, IDLER, 24T アイドラ ギア (24ハ)	
16		MA2-5525-000	N	1	SHAFT, IDLER, RIGHT アイドラ ジク ミギ
	17 MF1-3957-000	N	1	MOUNT, RIGHT, PICK-UP MOTOR モータ ステア ミギ	
	18 WT2-0317-000		1	CLIP, CABLE ワイヤ サドル	
	19 WT2-0434-000		1	CLAMP, CABLE ケーブル クランプ	
	50 XB1-2300-607		13	SCREW, BH M3X6 バインド コネジ M3 L6	
	51	XD3-2200-102		2	PIN, DOWEL, 2.0X10 ヘイコウ ビン 2.0 X 10
52 XB1-2200-407			1	SCREW, BH M2X4 バインド コネジ M2 L4	
53 XD2-1100-322			2	RING, E 3.2 Eガタ トメワ 3.2	
54 XD2-1100-502			6	RING, E 5.0 Eガタ トメワ 5.0	
55 XB1-2301-009			1	SCREW, BH M3X10 バインド コネジ M3 L10	
56		XD3-2200-122		2	PIN, DOWEL, 2.0X12 ヘイコウ ビン 2.0 X 12
	57 XB7-1030-069		1	BOLT, HEX SOCKET M3X6 ロツカク アナツキ ボルト M3 L6	
	58 XD1-2100-307		1	WASHER, PLAIN, 3.0 ヒラザガネ 3.0	

E05

FIGURE 301

LOWER ASSEMBLY-1 下部ユニット部-1



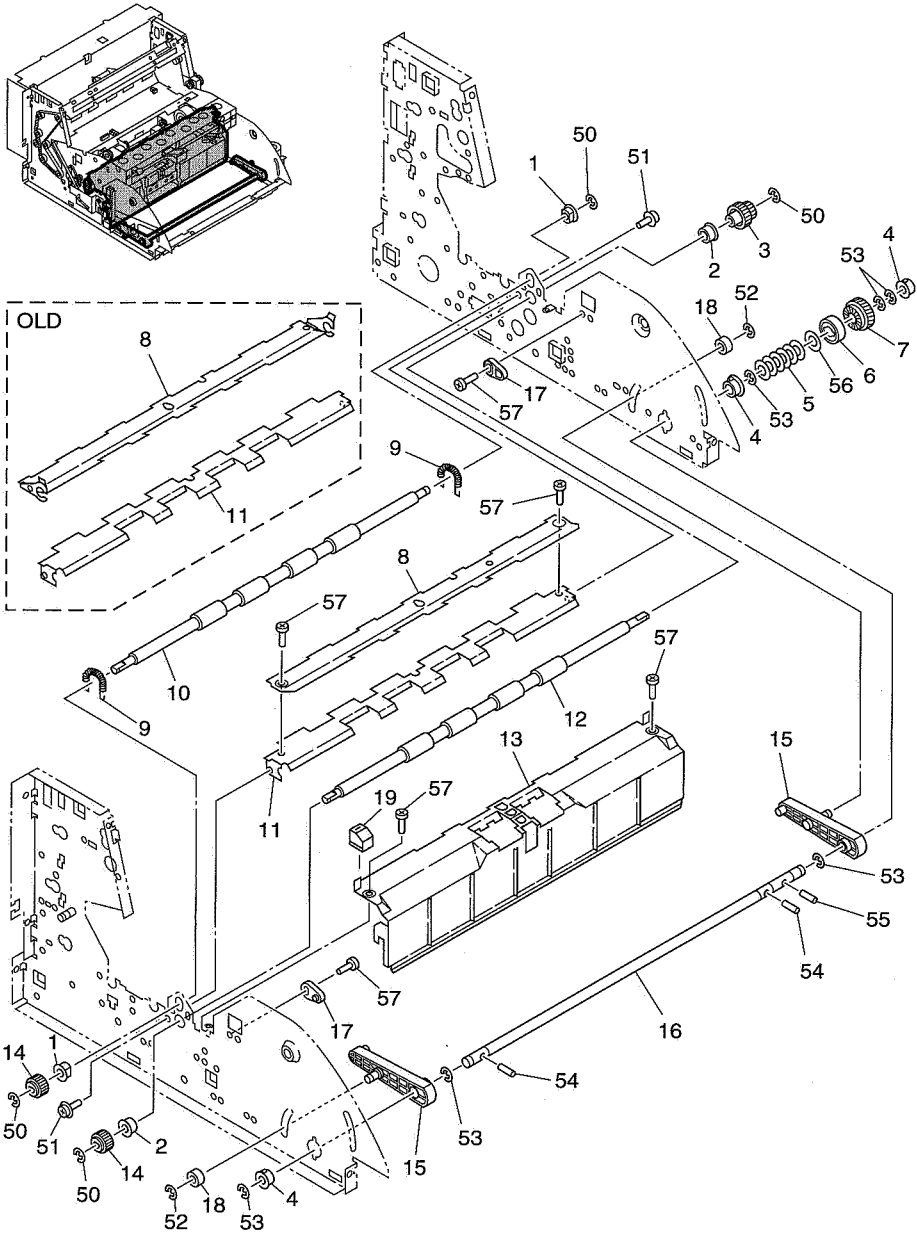
E06

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	QTY	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
301 -	1 MA2-5461-000	N	1	SHAFT, DELIVERY LEVER ハイシ レバー ジク	
	2 MA2-5460-000	N	4	LEVER, DELIVERY ハイシ レバー	
	3 MS1-2399-000		4	SPRING, TENSION, DELIVERY ハイシ スプリング	
	4 WT2-5056-000		1	CLIP, CORD エッジ サドル	
	5 WT2-0495-000		2	CLAMP, CABLE タバセン オサエ	
6 WT2-5011-000		1	CLIP, CABLE エッジ サドル		
7 MA2-5462-000	N	1	PLATE, AUXILIARY, DELIVERY ハイシ ホジヨ バン		
8 FH7-7312-000		1	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER フォトインタラプタ		
9 MA2-5463-000	N	1	LEVER, SENSING, DELIVERY ハイシ ケンチ レバー		
10 MA2-5464-000	N	1	SHAFT, SENSING, DELIVERY ハイシ センサ ジク		
11 MA2-5465-000	N	1	BRUSH, ELIMINATOR ジヨデン ブラシ		
12 MA2-5471-000		2	PIVOT ヒンジ		
13 MA2-5472-000	N	2	PLATE, PIVOT ヒンジ イタ		
14 XH9-0107-000	N	4	FOOT アシ		
15 WT2-5062-000		4	BUSHING スクウェア プッシュ		
16 WT2-5098-000		1	SUPPORT, CABLE スクウェア プッシュ		
17 MA2-5385-000		1	SHEET, MYLAR マイラ シート		
50 XD2-1100-322		12	RING, E 3.2 Eガタ トメワ 3.2		
51 XB6-7300-609		16	SCREW, TP M3X6 B TP コネジ M3 L6 B		
52 XB1-2300-609		2	SCREW, BH M3X6 B バインド コネジ M3 L6 B		
53 XB4-7301-009		2	SCREW, TAP, BH M3X10 B Bタイト M3 L10 B		
54 XB6-7400-609		10	SCREW, TP M4X6 B TP コネジ M4 L6 B		
55 XB6-7400-809		2	SCREW, TP M4X8 B TP コネジ M4 L8 B		

E07

FIGURE 302

LOWER ASSEMBLY-2 下部ユニット部-2



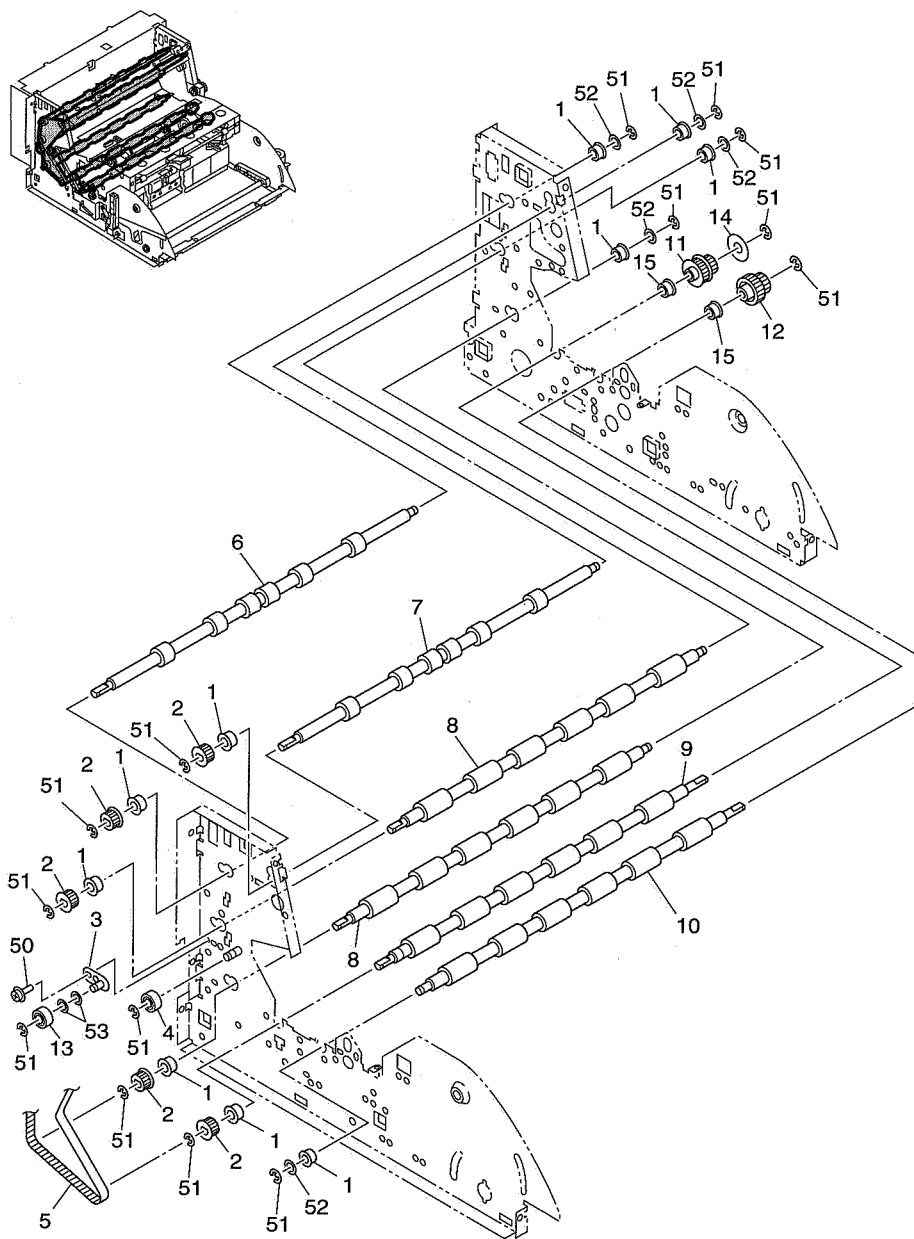
E08

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	R A N K	Q' T Y	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
302-	1 FS1-1422-000		2	BUSHING, 6X8 ジク ウケ (マル6 X 8)	
	2 XG9-0440-000		2	BEARING, BALL, FLANGE フランジ ツキ ベアリング	
	3 MS1-0976-000		1	GEAR, DRIVE, FEEDER ROLLER ハンソウ ローラ クドウ ギア	
	4 FS1-1273-000		3	BUSHING, 8X3.5 ジク ウケ (マル8 X 3.5)	
	5 XD9-0187-000		6	SPRING, WASHER 8.2 サラ パネ	
6 MA2-5436-000	N	1	PLATE, TORQUE LIMITER トルク リミッタ		
7 MS1-0975-000		1	GEAR, HELICAL, PICK-UP TRAY ハスバ ギア		
8 MF1-3886-000	N	1	GUIDE, REGISTRATION, UPPER レジスト ウエ ガイド	OLD	
MA2-5444-020	N	1	GUIDE, REGISTRATION, UPPER レジスト ウエ ガイド	NEW	
9 MS1-2400-000		2	SPRING, TENSION, REGISTRATION レジスト スプリング		
10 MA2-5446-000		1	ROLLER, REGISTRATION, UPPER レジスト ウエ ローラ		
11 MA2-5443-000	N	1	GUIDE, REGISTRATION, LOWER レジスト シタ ガイドパン	OLD	
MA2-5443-020	N	1	GUIDE, REGISTRATION, LOWER レジスト シタ ガイドパン	NEW	
12 MA2-5445-000		1	ROLLER, REGISTRATION, LOWER レジスト シタ ローラ		
13 MA2-5442-030	N	1	GUIDE, PAPER INLET, LOWER イリグチ シタ ガイドパン		
14 MS1-0980-000		2	GEAR, DRIVE, REGISTRATION レジスト クドウ ギア		
15 MA2-5435-000	N	2	ARM, DRIVE, PICK-UP TRAY ゲンコウダイ ショウコウ アーム		
16 MA2-5434-000	N	1	SHAFT, DRIVE, PICK-UP TRAY ゲンコウダイ クドウ ジク		
17 MA2-5470-000	N	2	STOPPER, PICK-UP TRAY ゲンコウダイ ストップ		
18 XG2-3006-255		2	BEARING, BALL ボール ベアリング		
19 MA2-5441-000		1	TIP イチホセイ コマ		
50 XD2-1100-322		4	RING, E 3.2 E ガタ トメワ 3.2		
51 XB6-7300-609		2	SCREW, TP M3X6 B T P コネジ M3 L 6 B		
52 XD2-1100-242		2	RING, E 2.4 E ガタ トメワ 2.4		
53 XD2-1100-642		6	RING, E 6.4 E ガタ トメワ 6.4		
54 XD3-2300-222		2	PIN, DOWEL, 3.0X22 ヘイコウ ピン 3.0 X 22		
55 XD3-2300-142		1	PIN, DOWEL, 3.0X14 ヘイコウ ピン 3.0 X 14		
56 XD1-1108-225		1	SHIM, 8.2X0.5 ヒョウジュン ワッシャ		
57 XB1-2300-609		6	SCREW, BH M3X6 B バインド コネジ M3 L 6 B		

E09

FIGURE 303

LOWER ASSEMBLY-3
下部ユニット部-3

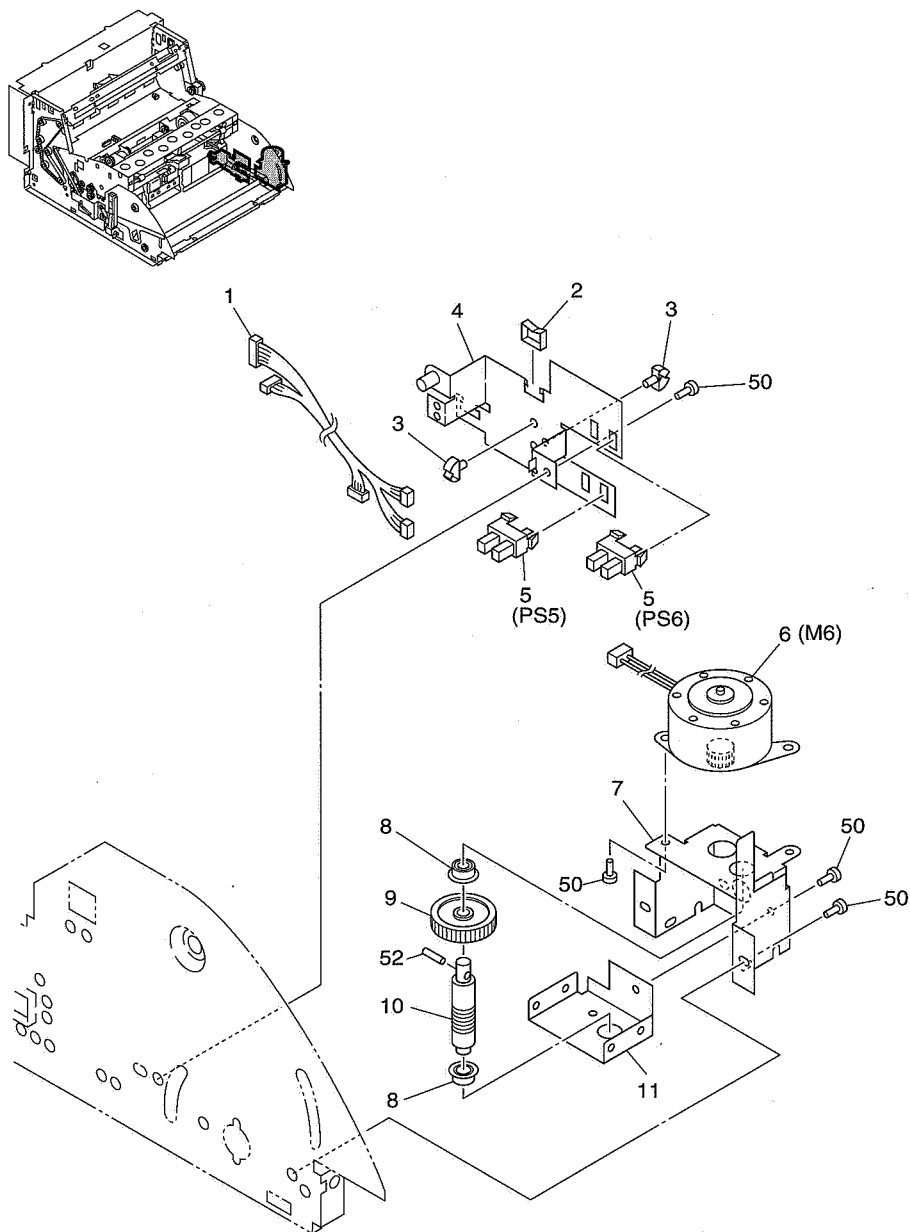


E10

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	R A N K	Q' T Y	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
303-	1 XG9-0440-000	N	10	BEARING, BALL, FLANGE フランジ ツキ ベアリング	
	2 MS1-3133-020		5	PULLEY, FEEDER, 20T プーリ (Z=20)	
	3 MF1-3885-000		1	PLATE, TENSION, REAR テンションナー (ウシロ)	
	4 XG2-6017-605		1	BEARING, BALL ボール ベアリング	
	5 XF2-1121-840		1	BELT, TIMING 218T タイミング ベルト 218T	
	6 MA2-5456-020		1	ROLLER, FEEDER B ハンソウ ローラ B	
	7 MA2-5457-020		1	ROLLER, DELIVERY ハイシ ローラ	
	8 MA2-5455-020		2	ROLLER, FEEDER A ハンソウ ローラ A	
	9 MA2-5454-030		1	ROLLER, READING, LOWER B ヨミトリ シタ ローラ B	
	10 MA2-5453-030		1	ROLLER, READING, LOWER A ヨミトリ シタ ローラ A	
	11 MS1-3134-000	N	1	PULLEY, FEEDER ROLLER ハンソウ ローラ プーリ	
	12 MS1-0976-000		1	GEAR, DRIVE, FEEDER ROLLER ハンソウ ローラ クドウ ギア	
	13 XG2-6015-505		1	BEARING, BALL ボール ベアリング	
	14 MA2-4530-000		1	FLANGE フランジ	
	15 XG3-6012-405		2	BEARING, BALL, FLANGE フランジ ツキ ベアリング	
	50 XB6-7300-609		1	SCREW, TP M3X6 B TP コネジ M3 L6 B	
	51 XD2-1100-402		14	RING, E 4.0 Eガタ トメワ 4.0	
	52 XD1-1106-215		5	SHIM, 6.2X0.5 ヒョウジュン ワッシャ	
	53 XD1-1106-235		2	SHIM, 6.2X0.5 ヒョウジュン ワッシャ	

E11

FIGURE 304 LOWER ASSEMBLY-4
下部ユニット部-4



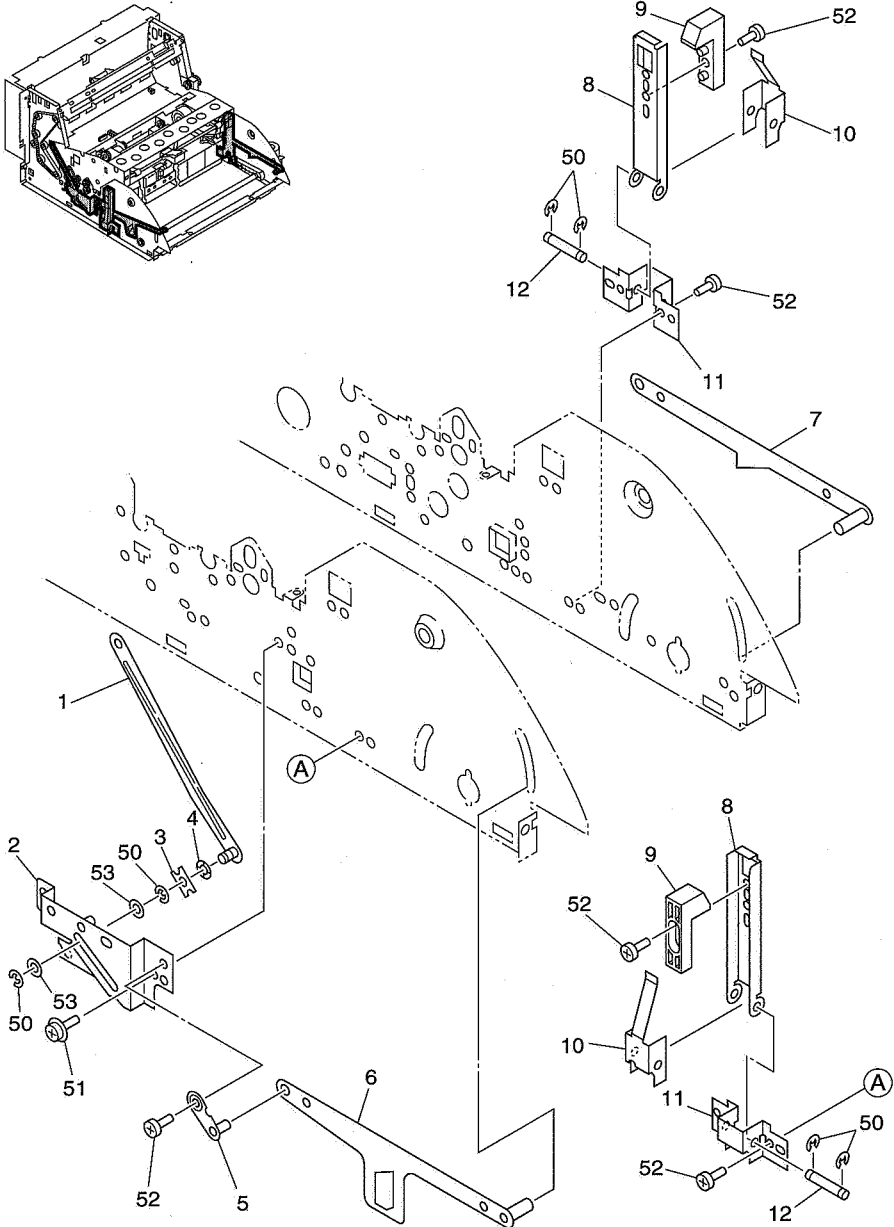
E12

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	R A N K	Q' T Y	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
304 -	1 MG1-2950-000	N	1	CABLE ASS'Y, PICK-UP TRAY 1 ゲンコウダイ タバセン 1	
	2 WT2-5056-000		2	CLIP, CORD エツジ サドル	
	3 WT2-0495-000		3	CLAMP, CABLE タバセン オサエ	
	4 MF1-3873-000		1	MOUNT, SENSOR, UP-DOWN センサ トリツケ バン	
	5 FH7-7312-000		2	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER フォトインタラプタ	
6 RH7-1278-000	N	1	MOTOR, STEPPING ステッピング モータ		
7 MA2-5388-000		1	MOUNT, DRIVE A, PICK-UP TRAY ゲンコウダイ クドウ バン A		
8 XG9-0440-000		2	BEARING, BALL, FLANGE フランジ ツキ ヘアリング		
9 MS1-0972-000		1	GEAR, DRIVE, PICK-UP TRAY ゲンコウダイ クドウ ギア		
10 MA2-5390-000		1	GEAR, WORM ウォーム ギア		
11 MA2-5389-000	N	1	MOUNT, DRIVE B, PICK-UP TRAY ゲンコウダイ クドウ バン B		
50 XB1-2300-407		9	SCREW, BH M3X4 バインド コネジ M3 L4		
52 XD3-2200-142		1	PIN, DOWEL, 2.0X14 ヘイコウ ピン 2.0 X 14		

E13

FIGURE 305

LOWER ASSEMBLY-5 下部ユニット部-5



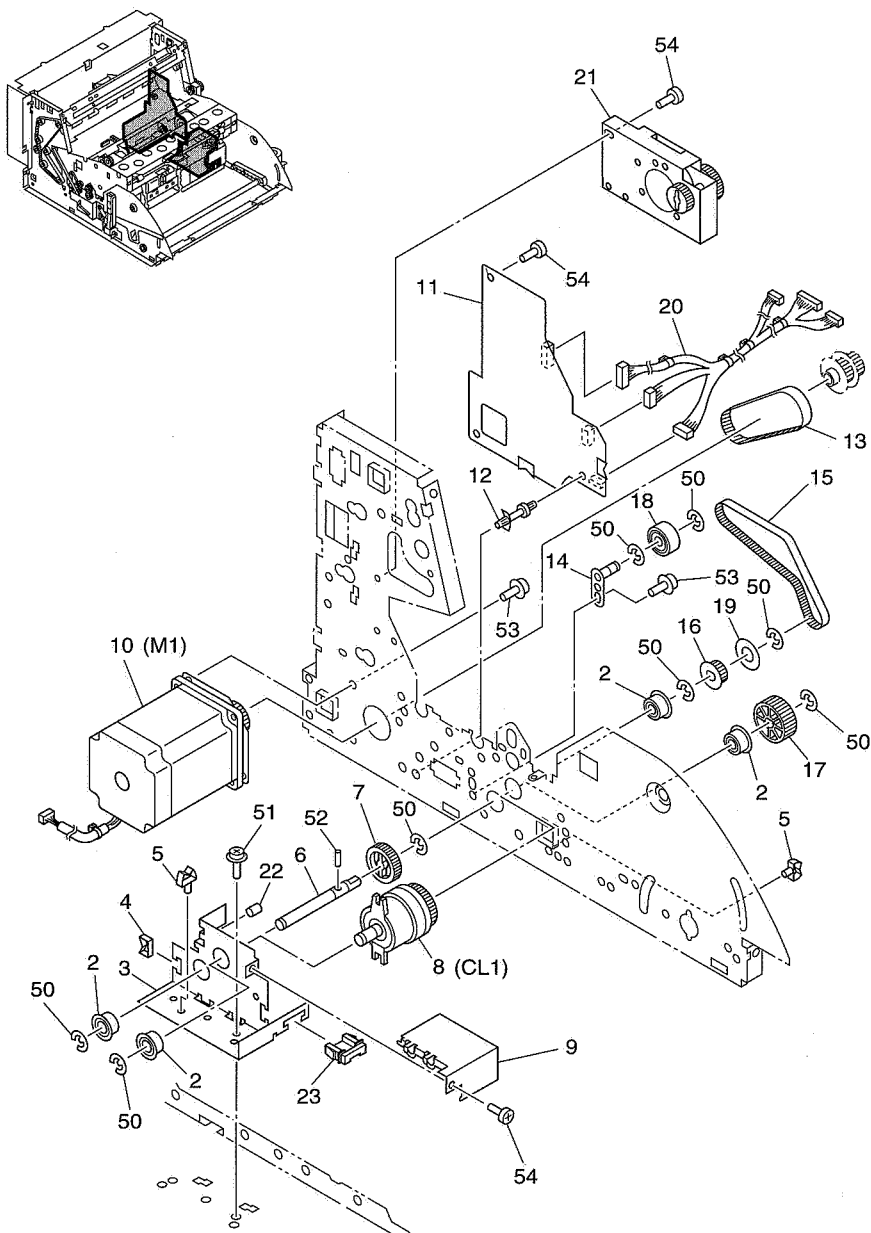
F01

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	R A N K	Q T Y	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
305-	1 MF1-3891-000	N	1	PLATE, LOCKING ロック ステー	
	2 MF1-3890-000	N	1	MOUNT, LOCKING ロック キダイ	
	3 MA2-4410-000	N	1	PLATE, ROTATION ガイドン パン	
	4 XD9-0032-000		1	WASHER, WAVE 4.3 ウェーブ ワッシャ	
	5 MF1-3874-000	N	1	PLATE, PIVOT, PICK-UP TRAY ゲンコウダイ ビボット パン	
6 MF1-3883-000	N	1	ARAM, PICK-UP TRAY, LEFT ゲンコウダイ アーム (L)		
7 MF1-3882-000	N	1	ARAM, PICK-UP TRAY, RIGHT ゲンコウダイ アーム (R)		
8 MA2-5428-000	N	2	ARM, CATCHER キャッチ アーム		
9 MA2-5429-000	N	2	BLOCK, LOCKING ロック コマ		
10 MA2-5430-000		2	SPRING, PLATE, CATCHER ARM キャッチ アーム スプリング		
11 MA2-5427-000	N	2	MOUNT, CATCHER ARM キャッチ アーム キダイ		
12 MA2-5431-000	N	2	SHAFT, CATCH ARM キャッチ アーム ジク		
50 XD2-1100-322		6	RING, E 3.2 E ガタ トメウ 3.2		
51 XB6-7400-609		3	SCREW, TP M4X6 B TP コネジ M4 L6 B		
52 XB1-2300-407		9	SCREW, BH M3X4 バインド コネジ M3 L4		
53 XD1-1104-125		2	SHIM, 4.1X0.5 ヒヨウジュン ワッシャ		

F02

FIGURE 306

LOWER ASSEMBLY-6 下部ユニット部-6



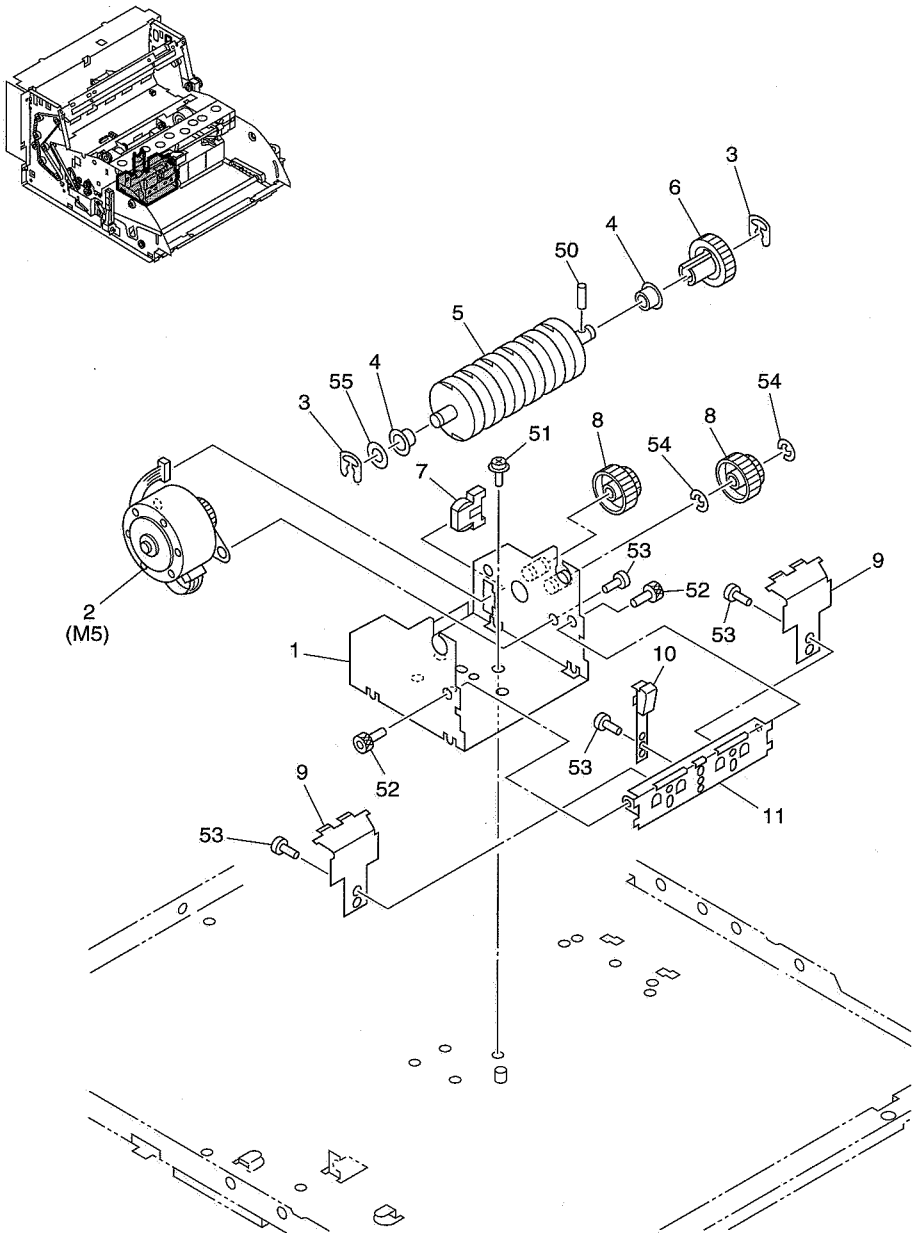
F03

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	R A N K	Q' T Y	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
306-	2 XG9-0404-000		4	BEARING, BALL ボール ベアリング	
	3 MA2-5447-020	N	1	PLATE, REGISTRATION, SIDE レジスト ソクパン	
	4 WT2-5035-000		2	CLIP, CABLE エッジ サドル	
	5 WT2-0495-000		2	CLAMP, CABLE タバセン オサエ	
	6 MA2-5448-020	N	1	SHAFT, DRIVE, REGISTRATION レジスト クドウ ニュウリョク ジク	
	7 MS1-0978-000		1	GEAR, INPUT, CLUTCH クラッチ ニュウリョク ギア	
	8 MG9-5461-000		1	CLUTCH デンジ クラッチ	
	9 MA2-5451-000	N	1	PLATE, CLUTCH COVER クラッチ カバー	
	10 MH7-1122-000		1	MOTOR, STEPPING ステッピング モータ	
	11 MG1-2943-030		1	PCB ASS'Y, CPU, K0-SUB2 K0-SUB2 CPU カイロキバン	
	12 VT2-0001-012		2	SUPPORT, PCB ロッキング サポート	
	13 XF2-1107-840		1	BELT, TIMING 78T タイミング ベルト 78T	
	14 MF1-3884-000	N	1	PLATE, TENSION, FRONT テンションナー (マエ)	
	15 XF2-1110-640		1	BELT, TIMING 106T タイミング ベルト 106T	
	16 MS1-3133-020		1	PULLEY, FEEDER, 20T プーリ (Z=20)	
	17 MS1-0979-000		1	GEAR, OUTPUT, CLUTCH クラッチ シュツリョク ギア	
	18 XG2-6017-605		1	BEARING, BALL ボール ベアリング	
	19 MA2-4530-000	N	1	FLANGE フランジ	
	20 MG1-2959-000		1	CABLE ASS'Y, PICK-UP TRAY 2 ゲンコウダイ タバセン 2	
	21 MG1-2966-000		1	DAMPER UNIT ダンパ ユニット	
	22 MA2-4533-000		1	TUBE チューブ	
	23 MA2-5498-000		1	HOLDER, CABLE タバセン ガイド	
	50 XD2-1100-402		8	RING, E 4.0 Eガタ トメワ 4.0	
	51 XB6-7300-609		3	SCREW, TP M3X6 B TP コネジ M3 L6 B	
	52 XD3-2200-102		1	PIN, DOWEL, 2.0X10 ヘイコウ ピン 2.0X10	
	53 XB6-7400-609		3	SCREW, TP M4X6 B TP コネジ M4 L6 B	
	54 XB1-2300-407		7	SCREW, BH M3X4 バインド コネジ M3 L4	

F04

FIGURE 320

SEPARATION ROLLER ASSEMBLY 分離ローラ部

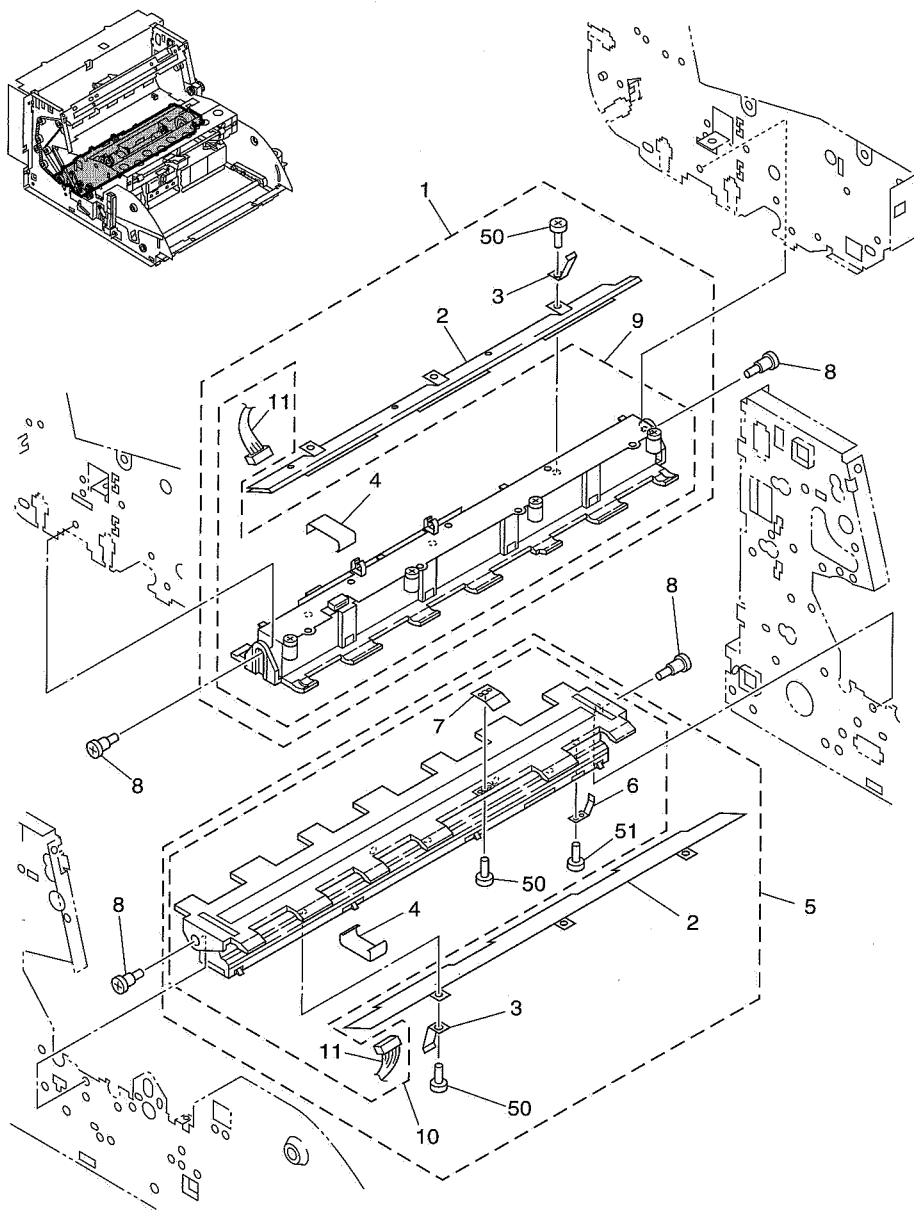


F05

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	R A N K	Q T Y	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
320-	1 MA2-5410-000	N	1	MOUNT, SEPARATION ROLLER ブンリ ローラ キダイ	
	2 RH7-1278-000		1	MOTOR, STEPPING ステッピング モータ	
	3 FA3-8727-000		2	RETAINING RING ジュシ キンタイ ワッシャ	
	4 XG3-6012-405		2	BEARING, BALL, FLANGE フランジツキ ベアリング	
	5 MA2-5408-000		1	ROLLER, SEPARATION ブンリ ローラ	
6 MS1-0974-000		1	GEAR, DRIVE, SEPARATOR ブンリ クドウ ギア		
7 VS1-5820-004		1	CONNECTOR チュウケイ コネクタ		
8 MS1-0973-000		2	GEAR, REDUCTION, SEPARATOR ブンリ ゲンソク ギア		
9 MA2-5414-020	N	2	GUIDE, SEPARATION, ENTER ブンリ トツニュー ガイド		
10 MA2-5413-020	N	1	BRIDGE, DOCUMENT ゲンコウ ブリッジ		
11 MA2-5411-000	N	1	PLATE, REINFORCE ホキョウ バン		
50 XD3-2200-102		1	PIN, DOWEL, 2.0X10 ハイコウ ピン 2.0 X 10		
51 XB6-7300-609		2	SCREW, TP M3X6 B TP コネジ M3 L6 B		
52 XB7-1030-069		2	BOLT, HEX SOCKET M3X6 ロッカク アナツキ ボルト M3 L6		
53 XB1-2300-407		5	SCREW, BH M3X4 B バインド コネジ M3 L4 B		
54 XD2-1100-402		2	RING, E4.0 Eガタ トメワ 4.0		
55 XD1-1106-215		1	SHIM, 6.2X0.5 ヒョウジュン ワッシャ		

F06

FIGURE 400 READING UNIT, UPPER/LOWER
 上下読取部



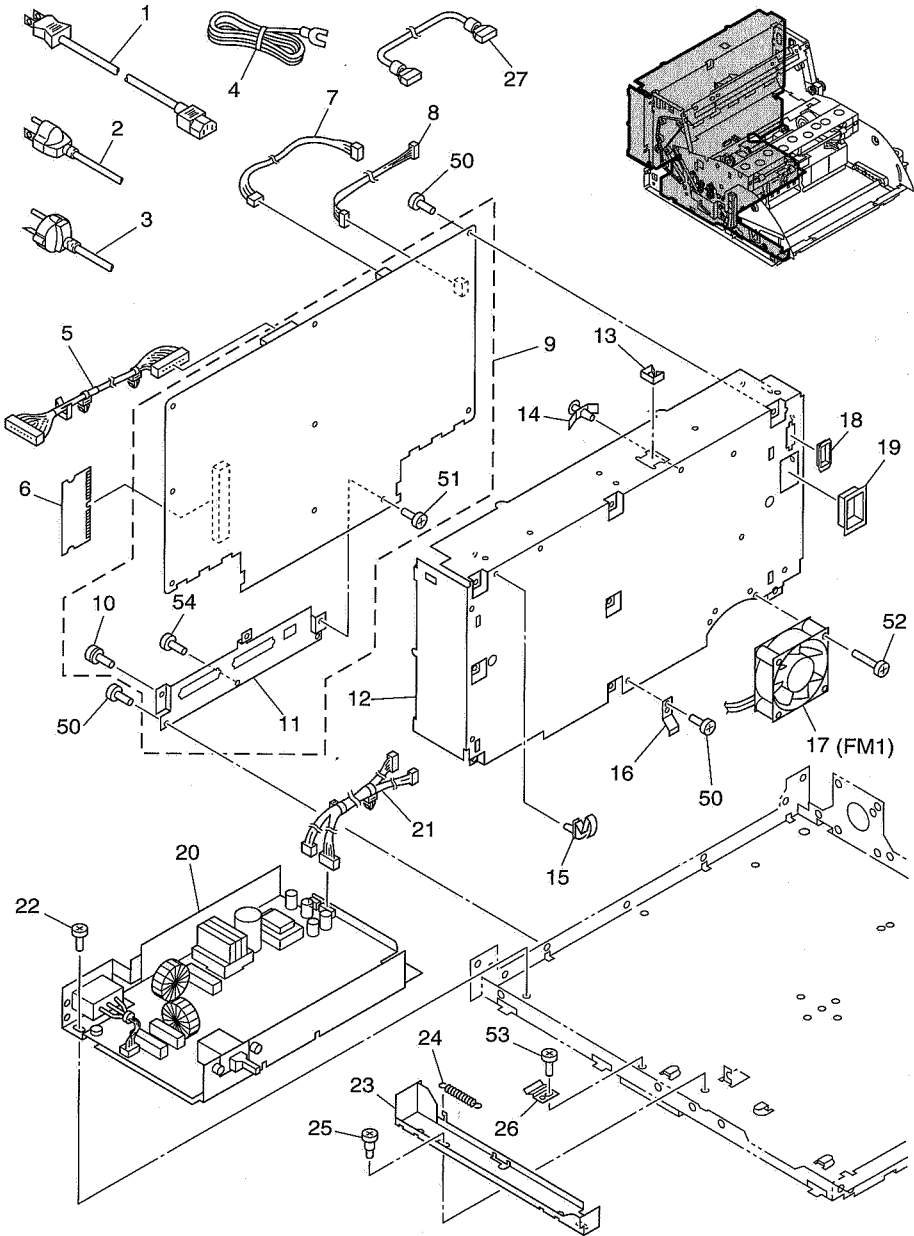
F07

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	QTY	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
400-	1 MG1-8200-000		1	READING UNIT, UPPER, CLR ウエ ヨミトリ ユニット (CLR)	DR-5080C
	MG1-8202-000		1	READING UNIT, UPPER, B/W ウエ ヨミトリ ユニット (B/W)	DR-5020
	2 MG1-2975-000		2	LED UNIT, RGB LED ユニット (RGB)	DR-5080C
	MG1-2976-000		2	LED UNIT, YG LED ユニット (YG)	DR-5020
	3 MA2-5509-000		2	SPRING, PLATE, LED LED アース バネ	
	4 MH2-5279-000		2	FPC, READING UNIT センサ アレイ ケーブル	
5 MG1-8199-020		1	READING UNIT, LOWER, CLR シタ ヨミトリ ユニット (CLR)	DR-5080C	
MG1-8201-020		1	READING UNIT, LOWER, B/W シタ ヨミトリ ユニット (B/W)	DR-5020	
6 MA2-5576-000		1	SPRING, PLATE, READING ヨミトリ オサエ バネ		
7 MA2-5510-000		1	PLATE, DOUBLE FEED DATUM DF キジュンバン		
8 FS1-9009-000		4	SCREW, TWO-STEP M3 M3 ダン ビス		
9 MG1-8236-000		1	READING UNIT, UPPER, W/O LED ウエ ヨミトリ ユニット		
10 MG1-8235-000		1	READING UNIT, LOWER, W/O LED シタ ヨミトリ ユニット		
11 MG1-2978-000		2	CABLE ASS'Y, LED LED タバセン		
50 XA1-7260-407		7	SCREW, PRECISION, PH M2.6X4 セイミツ ビス		
51 XB4-5300-805		1	SCREW, P-TAP, M3X8 Pタイト M3 L8		

F08

FIGURE 500

ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS ASSEMBLY 電装部



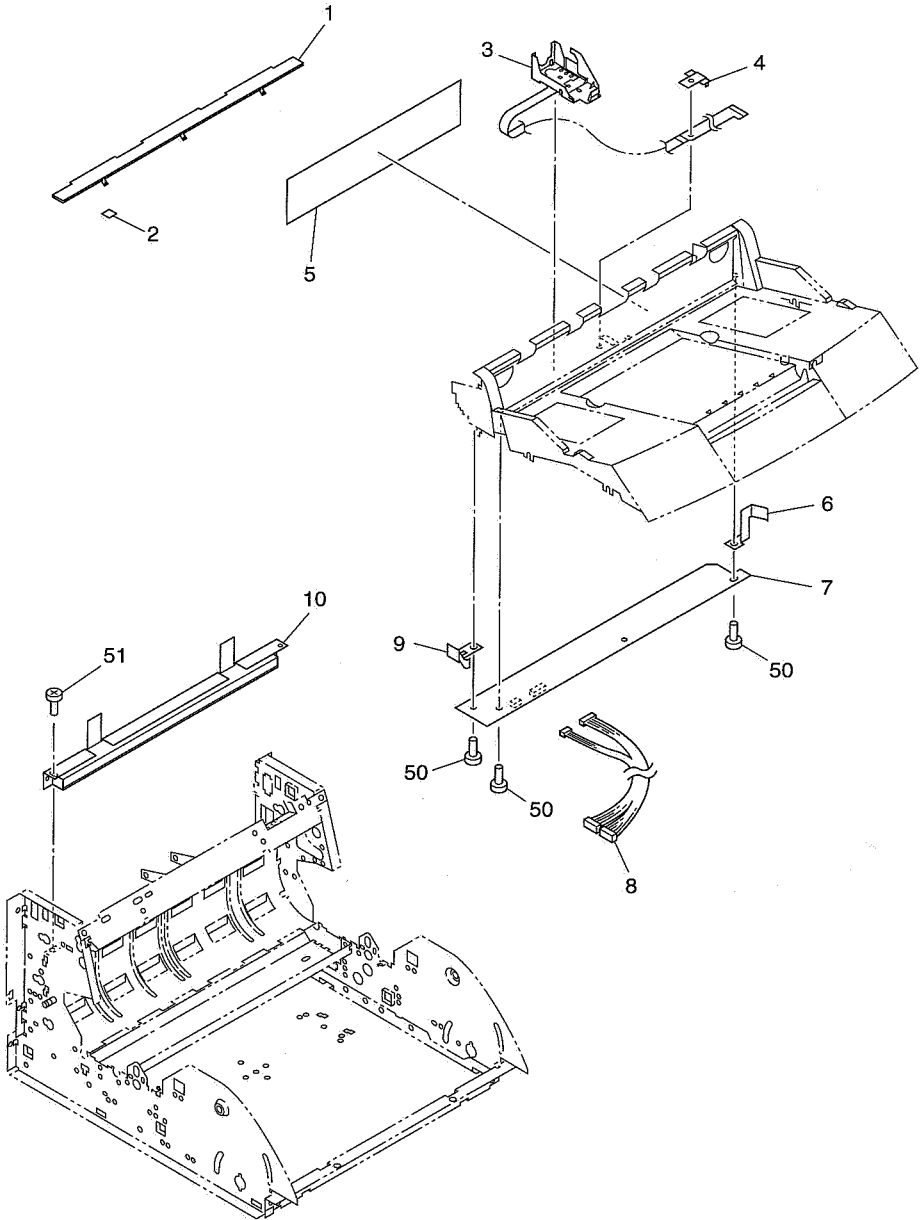
F09

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	RANK	QTY	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
500-	1 RH9-1015-000		1	POWER CORD デンゲン コード 100V	100V
	2 RH2-5145-020		1	POWER CORD デンゲン コード 120V	120V
	3 RH2-5116-030		1	POWER CORD デンゲン コード 230V	220-240V
	4 FH2-5006-000		1	GORD, GROUNDING アース コード 100V	100V
	5 MG1-2960-000		1	CABLE ASS'Y, CIS, BACK CIS ウラ タバセン	
6 WA7-1927-000		1	MEMORY MODULE, 64MB メモリ (64MB)	DR-5080C	
7 MG1-2961-000		1	CABLE ASS'Y, DELIVERY SENSOR ハイシ センサ タバセン		
8 MG1-2962-000		1	CABLE ASS'Y, SUB2-MAIN SUB2-MAIN タバセン		
9 MG1-2938-020		1	PCB ASS'Y, CPU, SH2 (MAIN) SH2 CPU カイロキバン	DR-5080C	
	MG1-2939-020		1	PCB ASS'Y, CPU, SH2 (MAIN) SH2 CPU カイロキバン	DR-5020
10 FA9-2113-000		N	1	SCREW, W/TOOTH WASHER, BH M4X8 キクザツキ バインド ビス M4 L8	
11 MA2-5499-000			1	PLATE, CONNECTOR COVER コネクタ カバー	
12 MA2-5496-020			1	PLATE, REAR ウシロ イタ	
13 WT2-5011-000			1	CLIP, CABLE エッジ サドル	
14 VT2-0002-003			2	SPACER, SUPPORT サポート スペーサ	
15 WT2-5135-000		N	2	CLAMP, CABLE ワイヤ ホルダ	
16 MA2-5497-000			1	SPRING, PLATE オウアツ バン	
17 MG1-2982-000			1	FAN DC ファン	
18 WT2-5062-000			1	BUSHING スクウェア ブッシュ	
19 WT2-5098-000			1	BUSHING スクウェア ブッシュ	
20 MH3-2046-020		N	1	PCB ASS'Y, POWER SUPPLY スイッチング デンゲン	
21 MG1-2958-000			1	CABLE ASS'Y, DC POWER DC パワー タバセン	
22 FB3-8873-000			4	SCREW, ROUND END, M4X4 サキマル バインド ビス M4 L4	
23 MA2-5467-020			1	PLATE, POWER SWITCH デンゲン SW バン	
24 MS1-2399-000			1	SPRING, TENSION, DELIVERY ハイシ スプリング	
25 FS1-9009-000		N	2	SCREW, TWO-STEP M3 M3 ダン ビス	
26 MA2-5468-000			1	SPRING, PLATE, POWER デンゲン オサエ バン	
27 MH2-5285-000			2	CABLE, SCSI SCSI ケーブル	120V TAIWAN
50 XB1-2300-407			10	SCREW, BH M3X4 バインド コネジ M3 L4	
51 XB1-2400-607			1	SCREW, BH M4X6 バインド コネジ M4 L6	
52 XB1-2402-509		N	2	SCREW, BH M4X25 B バインド コネジ M4 L25 B	
53 XB6-7300-609			1	SCREW, TP M3X6 B TP コネジ M3 L6 B	
54 XB1-2250-407			4	SCREW, BH M2.5X4 バインド コネジ M2.5 L4	

F10

FIGURE 600

OPTION
オプション



F11

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PARTS NUMBER	R A N K	Q T Y	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
600-	1 MG1-3036-000	N	2	LED UNIT, RED LED ユニット (R)	DR-5020
	2 MA2-5315-020		1	LABEL, RED シキベツ ラベル アカ	DR-5020
	3 MG1-2991-000		1	IP MOUNT UNIT IP マウント ユニット	
	4 MA2-5585-000		1	STOPPER, FPC 2 フレキロック 2	
	5 MA2-5597-000		1	LABEL, OPERATION IP IP ソウサ シール	
6 MA2-5579-000		1	SPRING, PLATE, IMPRINTER 1 IP アース 1		
7 MG1-2992-000		1	PCB ASS'Y, IMPRINTER (IP) IP-PCB ユニット		
8 MG1-2994-000		1	CABLE ASS'Y, IP PCB IP-PCB タバセン		
9 MA2-5580-000		1	SPRING, PLATE, IMPRINTER 2 IP アース 2		
10 MG1-2993-020		1	IP DRAIN PAD UNIT IP キュウシュウタイ ユニット		
50	XB4-7300-609		4	SCREW, TAP, BH M3X6 B Bタイト M3 L6	
51	XB1-2300-607		2	SCREW, BH M3X6 バインド コネジ M3 L6	

F12

NUMERICAL INDEX 部品索引表

PARTS NO.	FIGURE & KEY NUMBER	Q' TY	PARTS NO.	FIGURE & KEY NUMBER	Q' TY	PARTS NO.	FIGURE & KEY NUMBER	Q' TY
FA3-8727-000	320-03	2	MA2-5365-000	100-13	2	MA2-5460-000	301-02	4
			MA2-5367-000	100-02	1	MA2-5461-000	301-01	1
FA9-2113-000	500-10	1	MA2-5374-000	100-10	2	MA2-5462-000	301-07	1
			MA2-5378-000	100-01	1	MA2-5463-000	301-09	1
FB3-8873-000	500-22	4	MA2-5385-000	301-17	1	MA2-5464-000	301-10	1
			MA2-5388-000	304-07	1	MA2-5465-000	301-11	1
FH2-5006-000	500-04	1	MA2-5389-000	304-11	1	MA2-5467-020	500-23	1
			MA2-5390-000	304-10	1	MA2-5468-000	500-26	1
FA3-8727-000	320-03	2	MA2-5391-000	140-18	1	MA2-5470-000	302-17	2
			MA2-5393-000	140-17	1	MA2-5471-000	301-12	2
FA9-2113-000	500-10	1	MA2-5394-000	140-14	1	MA2-5472-000	301-13	2
			MA2-5396-000	140-16	1	MA2-5473-000	201-11	1
FB3-8873-000	500-22	4	MA2-5397-030	140-11	1	MA2-5482-000	202A-20	1
			MA2-5398-000	140-13	1	↓	202B-20	1
FH2-5006-000	500-04	1	MA2-5399-000	140-08	1	MA2-5483-000	202A-02	1
			MA2-5402-000	140-07	1	↓	202B-02	1
FH7-7312-000	202A-05	2	MA2-5403-000	140-03	1	MA2-5484-000	202A-01	2
	↓	2	MA2-5404-000	140-15	1	↓	202B-01	2
↓	301-08	1	MA2-5407-000	140-05	1	MA2-5496-020	500-12	1
↓	304-05	2	MA2-5408-000	320-05	1	MA2-5497-000	201-12	2
FS1-1273-000	302-04	3	MA2-5410-000	320-01	1	↓	500-16	1
			MA2-5411-000	320-11	1	MA2-5498-000	306-23	1
FS1-1422-000	201-09	10	MA2-5413-020	320-10	1	MA2-5499-000	500-11	1
	↓	2	MA2-5414-020	320-09	2	MA2-5509-000	400-03	2
↓	204-11	4	MA2-5427-000	305-11	2	MA2-5510-000	400-07	1
↓	302-01	2	MA2-5428-000	305-08	2	MA2-5511-000	120-09	1
FS1-9009-000	400-08	4	MA2-5429-000	305-09	2	MA2-5518-020	201-18	1
	↓	2	MA2-5430-000	305-10	2	MA2-5519-020	202A-11	1
FS1-9010-000	202B-26	3	MA2-5431-000	305-12	2	↓	202B-11	1
FS1-9121-000	202A-12	1	MA2-5434-000	302-16	1	MA2-5520-000	203-21	1
	↓	1	MA2-5435-000	302-15	2	MA2-5522-020	204-01	1
MA1-8912-000	203-30	1	MA2-5436-000	302-06	1	MA2-5525-000	204-16	1
			MA2-5441-000	302-19	1	MA2-5526-000	204-12	1
MA2-4349-000	201-06	4	MA2-5442-030	302-13	1	MA2-5528-000	203-04	1
			MA2-5443-000	302-11	1	MA2-5529-000	203-03	2
MA2-4410-000	305-03	1	MA2-5443-020	302-11	1	MA2-5532-000	203-10	1
MA2-4530-000	303-14	1	MA2-5444-020	302-08	1	MA2-5533-000	202A-16	1
	↓	1	MA2-5445-000	302-12	1	MA2-5535-000	202A-18	1
MA2-4533-000	306-22	1	MA2-5446-000	302-10	1	↓	202B-18	1
MA2-5089-000	140-12	1	MA2-5447-020	306-03	1	MA2-5536-020	202A-04	1
MA2-5315-020	600-02	1	MA2-5448-020	306-06	1	↓	202B-04	1
MA2-5359-000	100-07	1	MA2-5451-000	306-09	1	MA2-5537-000	203-12	1
MA2-5360-000	100-06	1	MA2-5453-030	303-10	1	MA2-5538-000	202A-09	2
MA2-5361-000	100-03	1	MA2-5454-030	303-09	1	↓	202B-09	2
MA2-5362-000	100-04	1	MA2-5455-020	303-08	2	MA2-5539-000	203-16	1
MA2-5363-000	100-01	1	MA2-5456-020	303-06	1	MA2-5540-000	202A-13	1
MA2-5364-000	100-12	1	MA2-5457-020	303-07	1	↓	202B-13	1

G01

PARTS NO.	FIGURE & KEY NUMBER	Q' TY	PARTS NO.	FIGURE & KEY NUMBER	Q' TY	PARTS NO.	FIGURE & KEY NUMBER	Q' TY
MA2-5541-000	204-08	1	MF1-3886-000	302-08	1	MG1-2991-000	600-03	1
MA2-5542-000	204-09	1	MF1-3890-000	305-02	1	MG1-2992-000	600-07	1
MA2-5543-000	204-06	1	MF1-3891-000	305-01	1	MG1-2993-020	600-10	1
MA2-5545-000	204-07	1	MF1-3945-000	120-07	1	MG1-2994-000	600-08	1
MA2-5548-020	120-04	1	MF1-3946-020	120-08	1	MG1-3016-020	140-09	1
MA2-5552-020	120-10	1	MF1-3947-000	201-01	1	MG1-3036-000	600-01	2
MA2-5553-000	120-03	1	MF1-3953-030	120-01	1	MG1-8199-020	400-05	1
MA2-5554-020	203-24	1	MF1-3955-020	203-19	1	MG1-8200-000	400-01	1
MA2-5557-000	203-18	1	MF1-3956-000	202A-08	1	MG1-8201-020	400-05	1
MA2-5559-000	203-20	1	MF1-3956-020	202B-08	1	MG1-8202-000	400-01	1
MA2-5560-000	202A-03	1	MF1-3957-000	204-17	1	MG1-8235-000	400-10	1
↓	202B-03	1	MF1-3958-000	204-13	1	MG1-8236-000	400-09	1
MA2-5561-000	201-16	4	MF1-3959-000	203-05	1			
MA2-5562-020	201-14	1	MF1-3960-000	203-07	2	MG9-5461-000	306-08	1
MA2-5563-020	201-08	10	MF1-3961-000	203-15	1			
MA2-5564-000	201-13	2	MF1-3963-000	203-25	1	MH2-5279-000	400-04	2
MA2-5565-000	201-10	1	MF1-3964-000	202A-19	1	MH2-5285-000	500-27	2
MA2-5566-000	201-05	4	↓	202B-19	1			
MA2-5567-000	201-02	6	MF1-3966-020	120-05	1	MH3-2046-020	500-20	1
MA2-5568-000	201-04	6	MF1-3969-000	203-22	1			
MA2-5569-000	201-03	2	MF1-3970-000	203-29	1	MH6-0020-000	100-08	1
MA2-5570-000	120-12	2						
MA2-5572-000	201-19	1	MG1-2938-020	500-09	1	MH7-1122-000	306-10	1
MA2-5573-000	202A-23	1	MG1-2939-020	500-09	1			
↓	202B-23	1	MG1-2943-030	306-11	1	MS1-0714-000	140-06	1
MA2-5574-000	202A-21	2	MG1-2950-000	304-01	1	MS1-0972-000	304-09	1
↓	202B-21	2	MG1-2958-000	500-21	1	MS1-0973-000	320-08	2
MA2-5575-000	202A-22	1	MG1-2959-000	306-20	1	MS1-0974-000	320-06	1
↓	202B-22	1	MG1-2960-000	500-05	1	MS1-0975-000	302-07	1
MA2-5576-000	400-06	1	MG1-2961-000	500-07	1	MS1-0976-000	302-03	1
MA2-5577-000	120-11	1	MG1-2962-000	500-08	1	↓	303-12	1
MA2-5579-000	600-06	1	MG1-2966-000	306-21	1	MS1-0978-000	306-07	1
MA2-5580-000	600-09	1	MG1-2967-040	201-15	1	MS1-0979-000	306-17	1
MA2-5585-000	600-04	1	MG1-2968-000	201-17	1	MS1-0980-000	302-14	2
MA2-5588-000	202B-16	1	MG1-2969-000	204-05	1	MS1-0985-000	204-10	4
MA2-5589-000	202B-24	1	MG1-2971-000	201-21	1	MS1-0986-000	204-15	2
MA2-5597-000	600-05	1	MG1-2972-000	201-23	1	MS1-2246-000	203-09	1
			MG1-2973-000	201-22	1	MS1-2362-000	202A-14	1
MF1-3873-000	304-04	1	MG1-2974-000	201-20	1	↓	202B-14	1
MF1-3874-000	305-05	1	MG1-2975-000	400-02	2	MS1-2399-000	203-02	2
MF1-3875-020	140-04	1	MG1-2976-000	400-02	2	↓	301-03	4
MF1-3876-000	140-02	1	MG1-2978-000	400-11	2	↓	500-24	1
MF1-3877-000	140-01	1	MG1-2980-020	100-05	1	MS1-2400-000	302-09	2
MF1-3882-000	305-07	1	MG1-2981-000	100-09	1	MS1-2401-000	203-17	2
MF1-3883-000	305-06	1	MG1-2982-000	500-17	1	MS1-2410-000	202A-17	1
MF1-3884-000	306-14	1	MG1-2983-000	204-03	1	↓	202B-17	1
MF1-3885-000	303-03	1	MG1-2984-030	120-02	1	MS1-2411-000	203-09	1

G02

PARTS NO.	FIGURE & KEY NUMBER	Q' TY	PARTS NO.	FIGURE & KEY NUMBER	Q' TY	PARTS NO.	FIGURE & KEY NUMBER	Q' TY
MS1-2412-000	202B-25	1	↓	500-18	1	XB4-7400-607	100-51	10
MS1-2413-000	202A-10	1	WT2-5089-000	201-07	1			
↓	202B-10	1	WT2-5098-000	301-16	1	XB6-7300-409	203-57	1
↓	203-02	2	↓	500-19	1	XB6-7300-609	201-52	1
MS1-3133-020	303-02	5	WT2-5135-000	500-15	2	↓	301-51	16
↓	306-16	1				↓	302-51	2
MS1-3134-000	303-11	1	X71-5435-000	203-28	1	↓	303-50	1
MS1-3139-000	203-26	1	X71-9773-000	203-08	1	↓	306-51	3
			X71-9774-000	203-13	1	↓	320-51	2
RH2-5116-030	500-03	1				↓	500-53	1
RH2-5145-020	500-02	1	XA1-7260-407	400-50	7	XB6-7400-609	301-54	10
						↓	305-51	3
RH7-1278-000	204-14	2	XB1-2200-407	204-52	1	↓	306-53	3
↓	304-06	1	XB1-2200-507	120-51	2	XB6-7400-809	301-55	2
↓	320-02	1	XB1-2250-407	500-54	4			
			XB1-2300-309	202B-56	2	XB7-1030-069	204-57	1
RH9-1015-000	500-01	1	XB1-2300-407	140-53	3	↓	320-52	2
			↓	304-50	9			
RS1-1042-000	203-01	2	↓	305-52	9	XD1-1104-125	305-53	2
			↓	306-54	7	XD1-1104-135	202B-52	3
VS1-5820-004	320-07	1	↓	320-53	5	XD1-1106-213	203-56	3
			↓	500-50	10	XD1-1106-215	303-52	5
VT2-0001-012	306-12	2	XB1-2300-607	201-50	31	↓	320-55	1
VT2-0002-003	500-14	2	↓	202A-51	17	XD1-1106-235	203-51	2
			↓	202B-51	14	↓	303-53	2
WA7-1927-000	500-06	1	↓	204-50	14	XD1-1107-215	202A-55	1
			↓	600-51	2	↓	202B-55	1
WT2-0317-000	202A-15	1	XB1-2300-609	203-55	2	XD1-1108-225	203-53	1
↓	202B-15	1	↓	301-52	2	↓	302-56	1
↓	204-18	1	↓	302-57	6	XD1-2100-307	140-51	1
WT2-0434-000	204-19	1	XB1-2301-009	202A-52	1	↓	204-58	1
WT2-0495-000	301-05	2	↓	204-55	1			
↓	304-03	3	XB1-2400-607	100-50	2	XD2-1100-242	302-52	2
↓	306-05	2	↓	120-50	8	XD2-1100-322	202A-50	2
WT2-5011-000	301-06	1	↓	500-51	1	↓	202B-50	2
↓	500-13	1	XB1-2402-509	500-52	2	↓	204-53	2
WT2-5035-000	306-04	2				↓	301-50	12
WT2-5056-000	140-10	1	XB2-7400-807	100-52	7	↓	302-50	4
↓	202A-06	1				↓	305-50	6
↓	202B-06	1	XB4-5300-805	400-51	1	XD2-1100-402	303-51	14
↓	204-04	2	XB4-7260-509	140-50	7	↓	306-50	8
↓	301-04	1	XB4-7300-607	140-52	7	↓	320-54	2
↓	304-02	2	XB4-7300-609	120-52	1	XD2-1100-502	201-51	4
WT2-5062-000	202A-07	1	↓	203-54	4	↓	202A-53	6
↓	202B-07	1	↓	600-50	4	↓	202B-53	6
↓	204-02	1	XB4-7300-809	140-54	8	↓	203-50	10
↓	301-15	4	XB4-7301-009	301-53	2	↓	204-54	6

G03

PARTS NO.	FIGURE & KEY NUMBER	Q ' TY	PARTS NO.	FIGURE & KEY NUMBER	Q ' TY	PARTS NO.	FIGURE & KEY NUMBER	Q ' TY
XD2-1100-642	203-52	4						
↓	302-53	6						
XD3-2200-102	204-51	2						
↓	306-52	1						
↓	320-50	1						
XD3-2200-122	202A-54	3						
↓	202B-54	3						
↓	204-56	2						
XD3-2200-142	304-52	1						
XD3-2300-142	302-55	1						
XD3-2300-222	302-54	2						
XD9-0032-000	305-04	1						
XD9-0187-000	302-05	6						
XD9-0190-000	100-11	2						
XF2-1106-940	203-14	1						
XF2-1107-840	306-13	1						
XF2-1109-640	203-27	1						
XF2-1110-640	306-15	1						
XF2-1121-840	303-05	1						
XG2-3006-255	302-18	2						
XG2-6015-505	303-13	1						
XG2-6017-605	303-04	1						
↓	306-18	1						
XG3-6012-405	303-15	2						
↓	320-04	2						
XG9-0404-000	306-02	4						
XG9-0405-000	203-11	2						
XG9-0440-000	203-23	2						
↓	302-02	2						
↓	303-01	10						
↓	304-08	2						
XH9-0107-000	301-14	4						

G04

〒369-1892

埼玉県秩父市下影森1 2 4 8 番地

キヤノン電子株式会社

品質保証部 品質推進課

1999年 6月 第1版発行

2001年 5月 第2版発行

Prepared by

QUALITY ASSURANCE CENTER

CANON ELECTRONICS INC.

Printed in Japan

FIRST EDITION (JUNE 1999)

SECOND EDITION (MAY 2001)

1248 Shimokagemori, Chichibu-shi, Saitama 369-1892, Japan

G05

Canon

G06



70%再生紙を使用しています。
70% Recycled Paper

Canon

DOCUMENT SCANNER

DR-5020/5080C

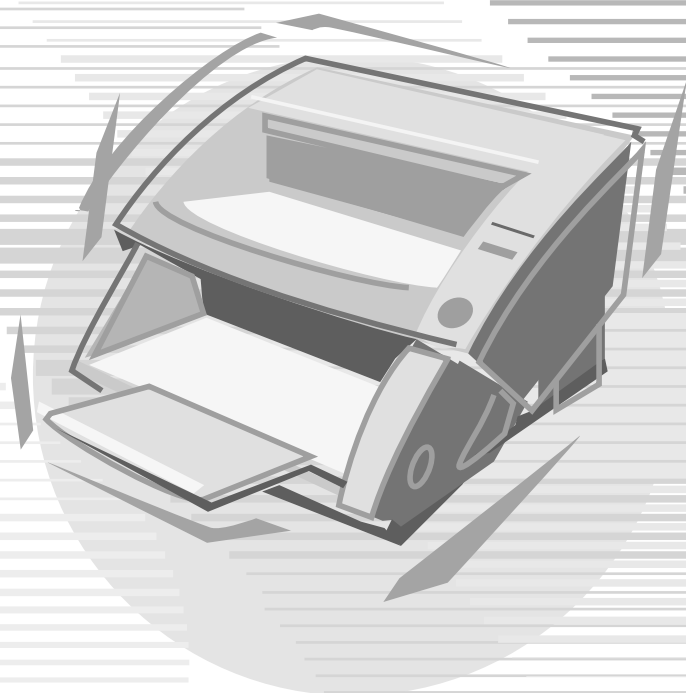
Instructions

Mode d'emploi

Bedienungsanleitung

Instrucciones

Intruzioni



ENGLISH

FRANÇAIS

DEUTSCH

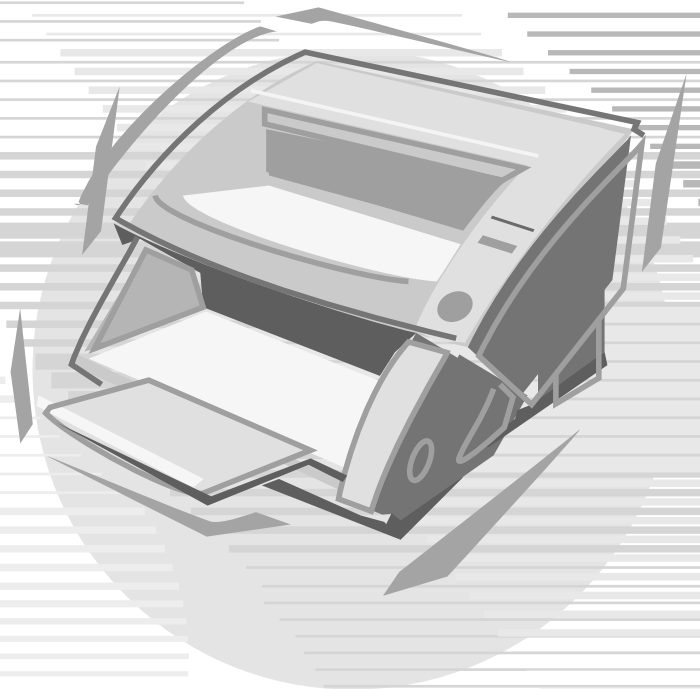
ESPAÑOL

ITALIANO

DR-5020/5080C

Instructions

Be sure to thoroughly read this Instructions before using this unit, and store this manual in a safe place after use.



NOTICE

- ① Copyright© 1999 by CANON ELECTRONICS INC. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language or computer language in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, manual, or otherwise, without the prior permission of CANON ELECTRONICS INC.
- ② The contents of this manual are subject to change without notice.
- ③ Every effort has been made to ensure the accuracy of information presented in this manual. However, Canon Electronics Inc. and the subsidiaries on the back cover assume no responsibility for any errors or their consequences.
- ④ We do not assume any responsibility for damage resulting from operations regardless of item ③.

Trademarks and Registered Trademarks

- Microsoft Windows® and Microsoft Windows NT® are registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and in other countries.
- ISIS® is a registered trademark of Pixel Translation A Division of ActionPoint Inc.
- Product names mentioned herein are for identification purposes only and may be trademarks and/or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

INTRODUCTION

Thank you purchasing the Canon Document Scanner DR-5020/5080C. In all, three manuals are provided with the DR-5020/5080C: DR-5020/5080C Instructions (this manual), Scanning Utility 5000 Instructions and ISIS/TWAIN Driver Instructions.

This manual describes handling of the scanner, for example, how to connect the scanner, load paper and remove jammed paper. It also describes precautions to follow when handling the scanner. To fully understand the functions of this scanner and ensure that its functions are effectively utilized, be sure to read this manual (DR-5020/5080C Instructions) and the separate Scanning Utility 5000 Instructions and ISIS/TWAIN Driver Instructions. Scanner drivers such as an ISIS or TWAIN driver are not required as the scanner application packaged with the DR-5020/5080C uses an exclusive scanner driver.

After you have read these manuals, be sure to store them in a safe place.

The following describes the contents of each of these manuals.

DR-5020/5080C Instructions (this manual)

This manual describes how to connect the scanner, load documents, remove jammed paper and other information on how to handle the scanner. Read this manual before you start to operate the DR-5020/5080C.

Scanning Utility 5000 Instructions

This manual describes how to operate the scanner application “Scanning Utility 5000” provided with the scanner.

ISIS/TWAIN Driver Instructions

This manual describes operations when the scanner is used with an ISIS driver or TWAIN driver compatible application.

■ Caution

Take note of the following when using the scanner to make copies:

- Reproducing money, other forms of currency or negotiable securities is an offense and may be subject to criminal prosecution.
- Reproducing official certificates, licenses, travel tickets, copyright protected and private documents and other items is also against the law and may be subject to criminal prosecutions.
- Obtain the copyright holder’s permission when a copied image will be used for anything other than your own personal use or use within the confines of your own household.

CONVENTIONS

This manual uses the following symbols and indications. Before you start reading this manual, read the following and familiarize yourself with their meanings.



Read carefully to avoid death or serious injury.



Read carefully to avoid damage to the equipment or loss of valuable data.



Memos indicate where you will find useful information in this manual. A number enclosed in parentheses refers to a page number that contains more information about the previous sentence or paragraph.



Tips about operations and how to avoid minor difficulties.

■ This Unit

This manual refers to the DR-5020 and DR-5080C collectively as the “scanner.” If a description is required for each individual machine type, this manual refers to the scanner specifically by DR-5020 and DR-5080C.

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION	1
CONVENTIONS	2
Safety Precautions	6
Chapter 1 About DR-5020/5080C	11
1.1 Features of DR-5020/5080C	12
1.2 Packaging: What's in the Box?	14
1.3 Part Names	15
◆ Front view	15
◆ Rear view	16
◆ Operation panel	17
◆ Removable tray	20
◆ Document eject support plate	20
◆ Function key labels	20
Chapter 2 Preparation Before Use	21
2.1 System Requirements	22
2.2 Installation and Connection	23
Carrying	23
Connecting to a Computer	24
◆ Connecting the SCSI cable	24
◆ Setting the SCSI ID and terminator	25
Connecting the Power Cord	26
◆ Connecting the power cord	26
2.3 Preparing for Paper Feed and Eject	27
Preparing the Document Tray Extension and Document Eject Tray Extension	27
◆ Document tray extension	27
◆ Document eject tray extension	29
◆ Document eject support plate	30
◆ Removable tray	31
Paper Feed Adjustment	32
Affixing the Document Guide Labels	32
2.4 Turning the Power ON/OFF	33
Turning the Power ON	33
Turning the Power OFF	34

Chapter 3 Preparing Documents 35

3.1 About Documents	36
3.2 Document Feeding and Scanning	38
Scan Procedure	39
◆ Remote mode	40
◆ Semi-Auto mode	43
◆ Auto mode	46
◆ Manual mode	50
Counting the Number of Originals In a Document	53
Function Sheets	55
3.3 Setting Scan Conditions	58
Basic Settings	59
Function Key Settings	60
◆ Manual Thickness Adjustment	61
◆ Imprinter ON/OFF	62
◆ Fixed Thickness Mode ON/OFF	62
◆ Double Feed Detection ON/OFF	63
◆ Restore Memorized Setting ON/OFF	63
Setting in the User Mode	64
◆ How to Set the User mode	65

Chapter 4 Troubleshooting 67

4.1 When The Scanner Is Not Recognized	68
4.2 Removing Paper Jams	70
Paper Jam in the Paper Feed Unit	70
Paper Jam in Paper Exit Section	73
4.3 Paper Feed Trouble	75
4.4 When The Scanned Image is Not Normal	77
4.5 When An Error Code is Displayed	78

Chapter 5 Daily Cleaning 81

5.1 Daily Cleaning	82
Cleaning the Main Unit	82
Cleaning the Scanning Glasses and Rollers	83
Power Cord	87
Imprinter	87

Appendix	88
◆ DR-5020/5080C Scan Mode Tables	88
DR-5020/5080C Specifications	90
Options	92
Index	93

Safety Precautions

Daily Maintenance

When you are working around the unit, follow these precautions to avoid the hazards of fire and electrical shock:



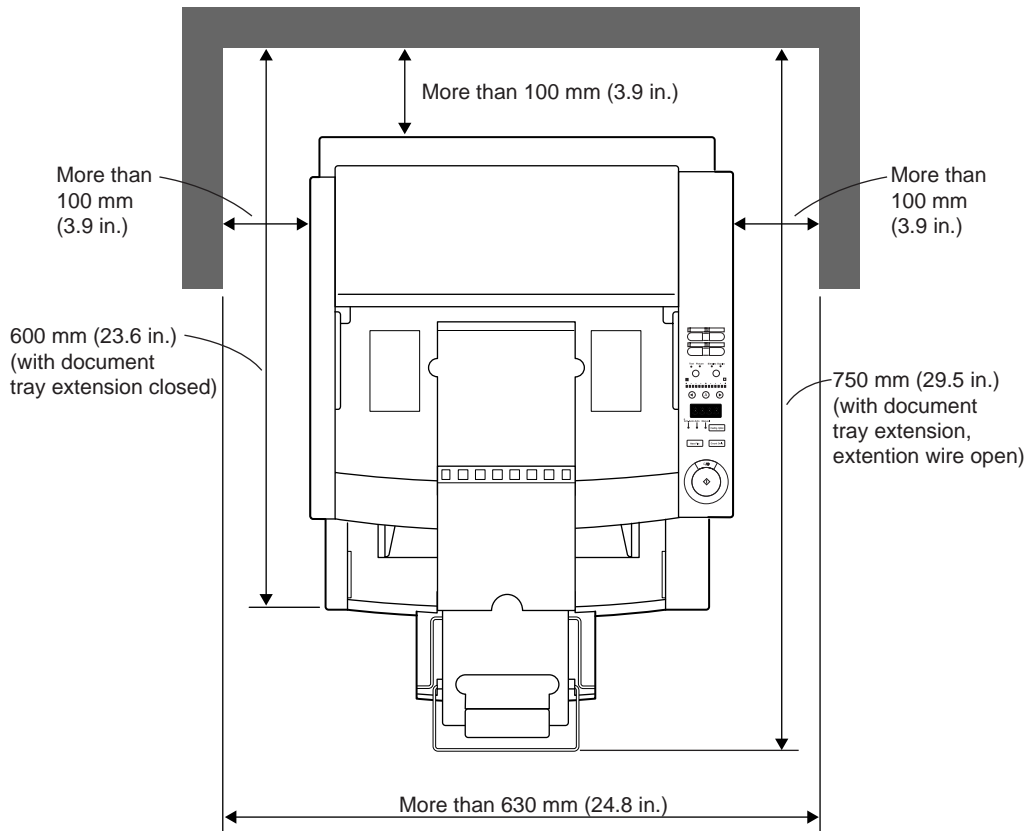
- Never install and operate the unit near flammable substances such as alcohol, paint thinner, benzene, or any other type of volatile solution.
- Never damage or modify the power cord, and never place heavy objects on the power cord.
- Always make sure that your hands are dry when you are handling the power cord or plug. Never grasp the plug when your hands are wet.
- Never plug the unit into a multi-plug power strip.
- Never bundle, wrap, or tie the power cord around itself or another object. Connect the plug securely to the power source.
- Use only the power cord and plug provided with the scanner.
- Never attempt to disassemble or modify the unit.
- Never use flammable aerosol products near the unit.
- Before you clean the unit, turn the power OFF and disconnect the power cord from the power outlet.
- To clean the unit exterior, use a firmly wrung cloth moistened slightly with water or mild detergent. Never use any type of volatile solution such as alcohol, benzine or paint thinner.
- If you hear a strange sound, detect smoke or abnormal heat, sense vibration, or smell odd odors around the unit, turn the power switch OFF immediately and disconnect the power cord from the outlet. Call for service immediately.
- Handle the unit with care. Avoid shocks and vibrations to the unit caused by reckless handling. If you suspect the unit has been accidentally damaged, turn the power switch OFF immediately, disconnect the power cord from the outlet, and call for service.
- Before you move the unit, always turn the power OFF and disconnect the power cord from the power outlet.



CAUTION

- To avoid damage to the unit, never place the unit on an unstable or vibrating surface. The unit may tip or fall over, and cause an injury.
- To avoid overheating and causing a fire, never block the air vents on the rear of the scanner.
- Keep all liquids, beverages, or any type of liquid, and clips, staples, necklaces or other metal objects away from the unit. If you accidentally spill liquid or drop a metal object into the unit, turn the unit power OFF, disconnect the power cord from the power outlet and call for service immediately.
- Never install the unit in humid or dusty locations. Doing so might cause fire or electric shock.
- Never place heavy objects on top of the unit. Such objects may tip or fall over, and cause an injury.
- When you remove the power cord, grip it by the plug head. Never attempt to disconnect the cord from the outlet by pulling on the cord. Doing so might expose or break the core leads, damage the power cord, and cause a fire or electrical shock.
- Keep the area around the power outlet clear of all obstacles so you can disconnect the power cord easily at all times.
- Never spill water or type of volatile solution (alcohol, benzene, paint thinner) into the unit. Doing so might cause a fire or electrical shock.
- When the unit is not being used for a long time, disconnect the power cord from the power outlet.
- Avoid wearing loose fitting clothing, dangling jewelry, long ties, or even long hair that could become entangled with moving parts, especially the rollers that feed the unit. If such objects become entangled, immediately disconnect the power plug from the power outlet to stop the unit.
- Be very careful when you are loading a document or removing a paper jam. You may be injured unexpectedly. For example, the paper edges may cut your fingers.
- Do not open the top unit while the scanner is operating. Doing so might result in malfunction or injury.
- Do not directly touch the pins and contacts on the scanner connector with your hands. Doing so might result in malfunction.

About the Installation Location



For operation, maintenance and ventilation, make sure that there is enough space around the scanner as shown in the illustration above.

Do not place the unit in the following places. Doing so might cause malfunction or machine trouble, and adversely affect the unit or your personal computer.

- Places subject to direct sunlight

If installation in such places is unavoidable, provide a curtain or similar object to shade the unit.

- Places subject to dust and fumes.

Dust and cigarette fumes adversely affect the components inside the unit.

- Near running water, a heat source, water vapor, or in an area such as a laboratory exposed to ammonia gas, paint thinner, or other volatile chemicals.

- Places subject to vibration and strong shock

- Places subject to rapid changes in temperature or humidity

Condensation occurring inside the unit may impair scan image quality. Place the scanner in a room that is well within the following range:

Room temperature 10°C to 32.5°C (50°F to 90.5°F)

Relative humidity 20% to 80% RH

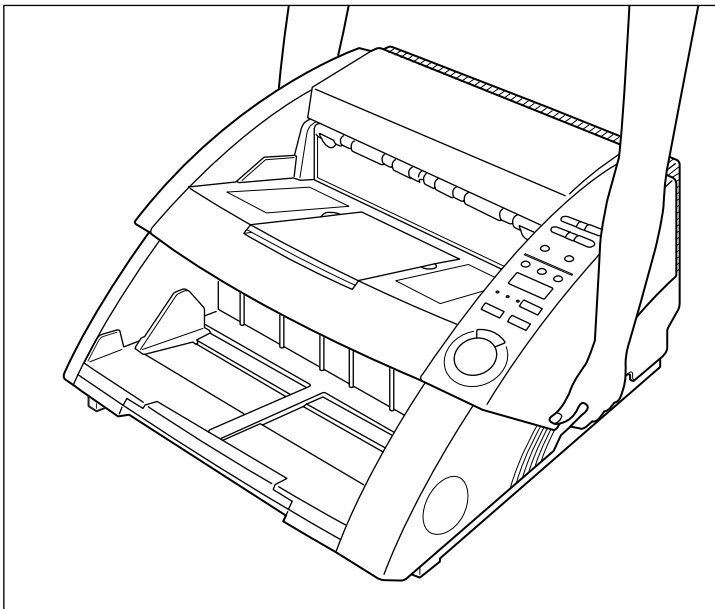
- Near electronic equipment or heavy equipment that generates a strong magnetic field such as speaker, TV and radio.

About the Power Supply

- Be sure to connect to a AC 220-240V (50/60 Hz)/AC 120V (60 Hz) power supply.
- Ensure that the scanner is connected to an independent power outlet. Do not plug the scanner into an outlet shared with another device. If you use an extension cable, pay attention to the total amperage of the cable.
- If you are unsure of anything relating to the power supply, contact your store of purchase or your local power company.
- Never place an object on top of the power cord or step on it.
- Never bundle the power cord or wrap the cord around an object such as a table leg.
- Do not tug the power cord. When you remove the power cord, grip it by the plug head.
- Keep the area around the power outlet free of obstacles.

Carrying

When you move the DR-5020/5080C, hold it firmly with both hands as shown in the figure below and carry it carefully. If you carry it without holding its handles, you may drop it, nip your fingers and cause unexpected injuries. The scanner weights approximately 20 kg (44.2 lb).



WARNING

Before you move the scanner, always turn the power switch OFF and disconnect the power cord from the power outlet. Also, disconnect the SCSI cable from the connector. Moving the scanner with the power still ON or the SCSI cable still connected might result in electrical shock.

Chapter 1

About DR-5020/5080C

This chapter describes the features of the scanner, what's in the box, and the names and functions of parts on the scanner.

1.1 Features of DR-5020/5080C	12
1.2 Packaging: What's in the Box?	14
1.3 Part Names	15



Features of DR-5020/5080C

The DR-5020/5080C are versatile document image scanners with high speed scanning performance. Both units deliver excellent black-and-white image data. The DR-5080C also includes features for color and grayscale scanning needs. Here is a summary of the outstanding features of both scanners.

- **High speed scanning**

Small documents such as business cards and check-size documents through to A3/11" x 17"-size documents can be scanned at high speed. The maximum scan speed is 50 sheets per minute (A4/LTR-size portrait in simplex and duplex mode, 200 dpi resolution) when scanning an A4/LTR-size document in the simplex mode.

- **Large capacity, reliable paper feeding**

- Up to 500 sheets of A4/LTR-size documents can be loaded at once.
- A wide range of size and thickness of documents can be scanned. Paper feeding is highly reliable. Document skew is automatically aligned as it passes through the scanner. The scanner accurately handles documents of various size and thickness.

- **Easy operation**

Documents are fed and output from the front of the unit. This means that you require limited installation place. Setups and operations, including Text/Picture mode selection, Simplex/Duplex selection, Brightness adjustment, and etc. can be performed by either from control panel or by the application.

- **Skew detection**

This function automatically detects if the document is fed in at an angle, and straightens skewed documents.

- **Highly durable**

The unit features a service life of up to 6 million scans.

- **Compact size**

262 (H) x 427 (W) x 485 (D) mm / 10.3 (H) x 16.8 (W) x 19.1 (D) in.

- **Simple color or black-and-white gray-scale output (DR-5080C)**

Besides black-and-white 2-bit output, this unit supports various output modes: gray-scale (4, 16, 256 levels) and color (3, 6, 12, 24 bits). Optional memory may need to be added on depending on the scanning mode. Also, not all modes are supported depending on the application and scanner driver in use. For more details, thoroughly read the instruction manuals for the application and scanner driver in use.

- **Drop-out color (DR-5080C)**

This function disables drop-out scanning of (that is, “drops out”) a specific color in the document.

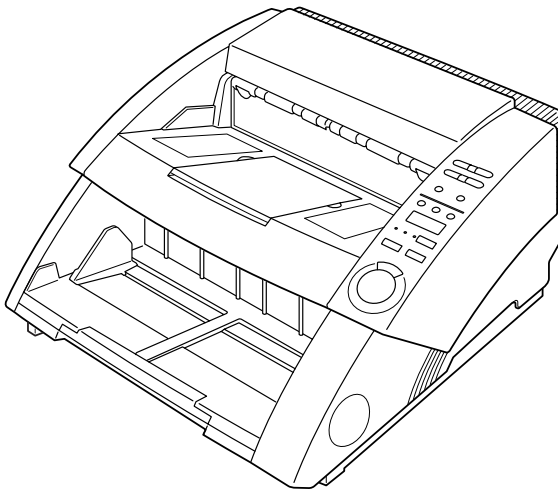
- **Various options**

The wide range of options includes the imprinter for printing characters on the document being scanned, bar code decoder for reading bar codes in documents, and the endorser for printing numbers and characters on the document after scanning.

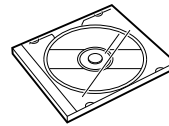
1.2

Packaging: What's in the Box?

Make sure that you have everything. Check every item you have removed from the box. If any items are missing, contact your store of purchase.



DR-5020/5080C



Setup CD-ROM

**(Scanning Utility 5000
and ISIS/TWAIN Driver)**

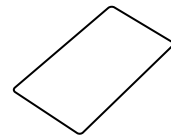


Instructions

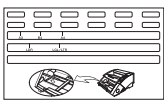
**(DR-5020/5080C Instructions
Scanning Utility 5000 Instructions
ISIS/TWAIN Driver Instructions)**



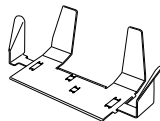
Function sheets



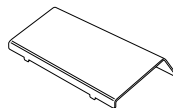
Warranty card^{*2}



Function key labels



Removable tray



**Document eject
support plate**



Power cord^{*1}

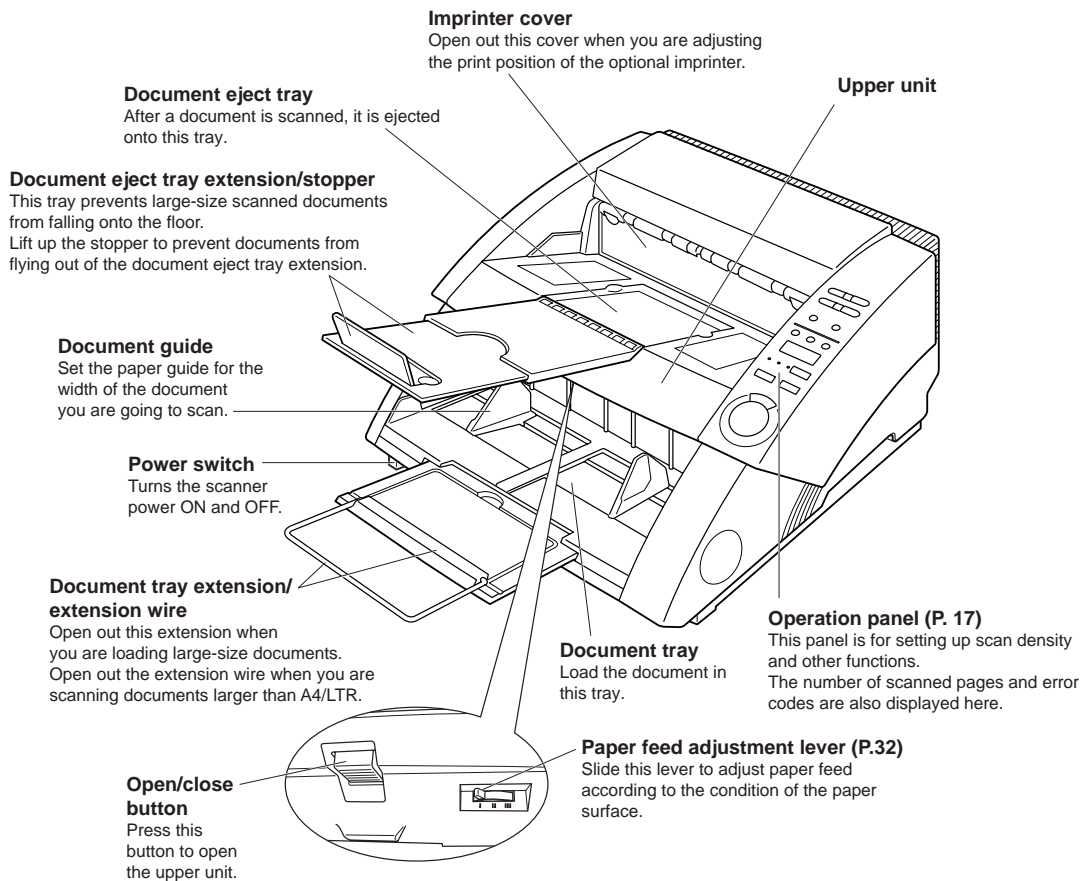
^{*1} The power cord varies according to country of purchase.

^{*2} For U.S.A. and Canada only.

1.3 Part Names

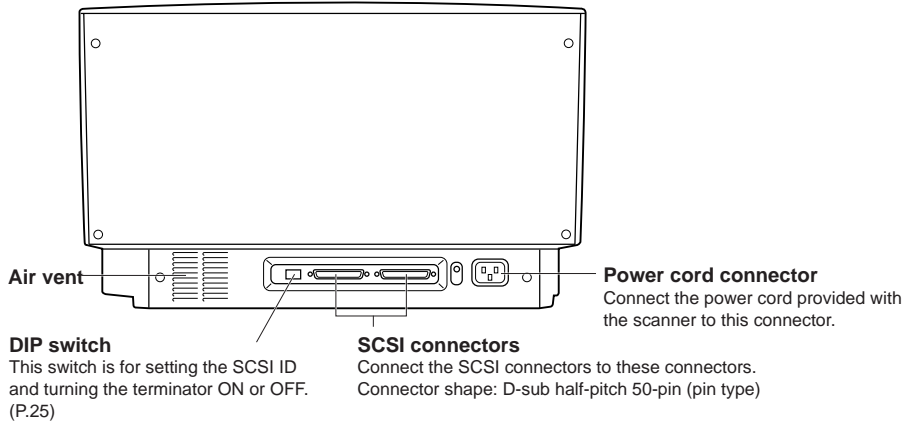
This section describes the names and functions of each part. Before you connect the DR-5020/5080C, take a few minutes to familiarize yourself with the main parts.

◆ Front view



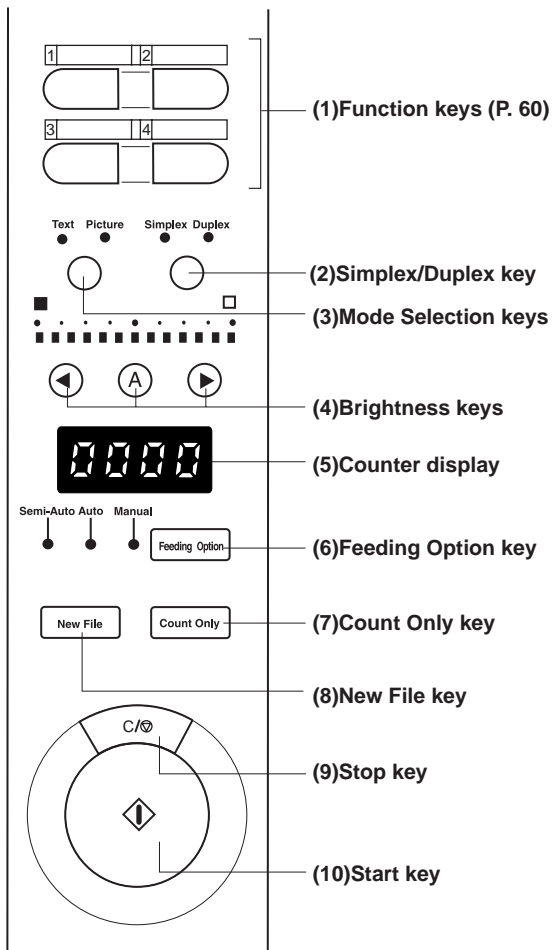
The imprinter cover does not open when the optional imprinter is not installed. Do not exert unnecessary force to open the imprinter cover.

◆ Rear view



To avoid overheating and causing a fire, never block the air vents on the rear of the scanner.

◆ Operation panel



(1) Function keys (P.60)

Frequently used functions can be registered to these keys so that they can be called up later by one-touch operation.

(2) Simplex/Duplex key

Selects whether to scan only one side of the document or both sides.

Simplex: Light to scan only side of the document.

Duplex: Light to scan both sides of the document.

(3) Mode Selection key

Select the document scanning mode. (“Black and white/Black and white error diffusion”)

Text: This is lighting, when scanning the text documents (including mostly characters) with black and white mode.

Picture: This is lighting, when scanning the picture documents including photographs with black and white error diffusion mode.

If any applications are set with gray scale mode or color mode for the image selection, either of above will not be lighting.

(4) Brightness key

Sets the brightness when the document is scanned.

To automatically adjust the brightness, press the $\text{\textcircled{A}}$ key to light $\text{\textcircled{A}}$.(*)

To manually set the brightness, press the $\text{\textcircled{L}}$ or $\text{\textcircled{R}}$ keys with the $\text{\textcircled{A}}$ key out, and move the indication on the key indicator to adjust the brightness. (Moving the indicator to the right increases the brightness, and to the left decreases the brightness. The brightness can be adjusted in 13 steps.)

If you press the $\text{\textcircled{L}}$ or $\text{\textcircled{R}}$ keys with the $\text{\textcircled{A}}$ key lit to adjust the indicator, the automatic adjustment level is adjusted.

In the Count Only mode, you can set the count start value with the $\text{\textcircled{L}}$ or $\text{\textcircled{R}}$ keys.

(*) Brightness can be automatically adjusted only when brightness is set to “Auto” in the scan condition setup on the application and the scan mode is set to “Black and White”.

If the scan mode is other than “Black and White” and brightness is set to “Auto”, the $\text{\textcircled{A}}$ key will not light, and the default (indicator center value) brightness is set. Brightness is not adjusted automatically in this case.

(5) Counter display

Displays an error code or the number of pages in the scanned document.

(6) Feeding Option key (P.39)

Selects the document feed mode.

Each press of the Feeding Option key changes the lamp indication on its left cyclically as follows:

OFF (Remote Mode) → [Semi-Auto] → [Auto] → [Manual] → and back to OFF (Remote Mode)

Remote: The three lamps to the left of this key are all out. The document is fed when the scanner receives a scan start instruction from the computer.

Semi-Auto: The scanner feeds the document when you press the Start key after loading the document.

Auto: The scanner automatically feeds the document when you load the document.

Manual: Manually load the document one sheet at a time.

(7)Count Only key (P.53)

Sets the scanner to the Count Only mode for just counting the number of pages in the document.

When you press this key, it will light. If you load the document and press the Start key in this state, the document will be fed and the scanner will count the number of pages. (The document will not be scanned.) The document page count is displayed on the counter display.

(8)New File key

Press this key to save scanned images to separate files.

When you press this key, it will light. When you scan the next document in this state, the scanned image will be saved to a folder separate from the folder for the previous document.

When Auto New File is set in the application, this key lights automatically when each document stack has finished being scanned.

(9)Stop key

Press this key to stop scanning midway.

Also use this key to cancel the currently set mode and cancel an error displayed on the counter display.

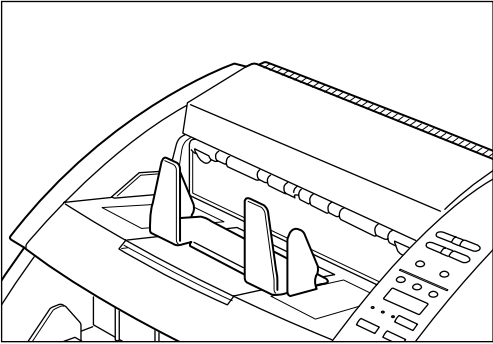
To reset the counter display to "0000" hold down this key for at least two seconds.

(10)Start key

Press this key to start scanning when the feed mode is set to Semi-Auto.

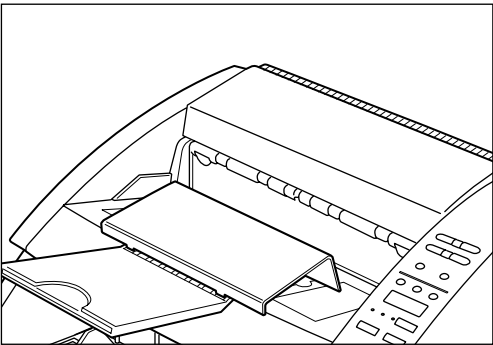
◆ Removable tray

This tray can be installed on the document eject tray to prevent short-length documents from flying out of the tray when they are ejected from the scanner.



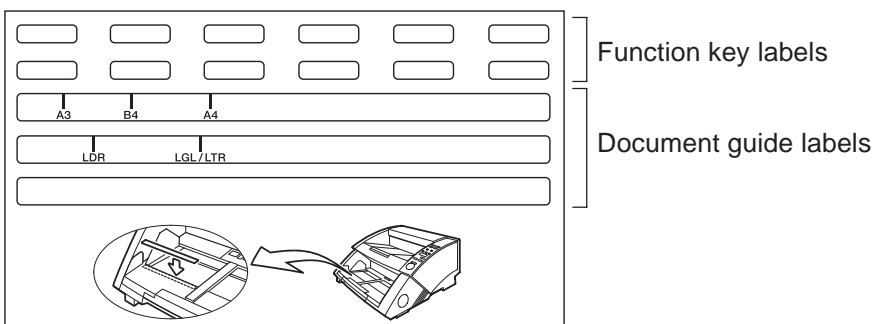
◆ Document eject support plate

Install this plate when scanning large-size (e.g. A3/11" x 17") thin documents. This plate prevents such documents from becoming caught on the document eject tray and curling.



◆ Function key labels

Two labels are provided: a label describing which function is registered to the function key and a label for fixing on the document tray as the document guide.



Chapter 2

Preparation Before Use

This chapter describes the procedure from scanner connection through to turning the power ON.

2.1 System Requirements	22
2.2 Installation and Connection	23
2.3 Preparing for Paper Feed and Eject..	27
2.4 Turning the Power ON/OFF	33

2.1 System Requirements

To use the DR-5020/5080C, you need the following items in addition to the standard accessories:

- Computer
- SCSI card
- SCSI cable
- Application



- The driver may not function properly depending on the application you are using.
- Select a computer, operating environment and SCSI card to suit the application you are using.

2.2 Installation and Connection

This section describes scanner installation and connection.

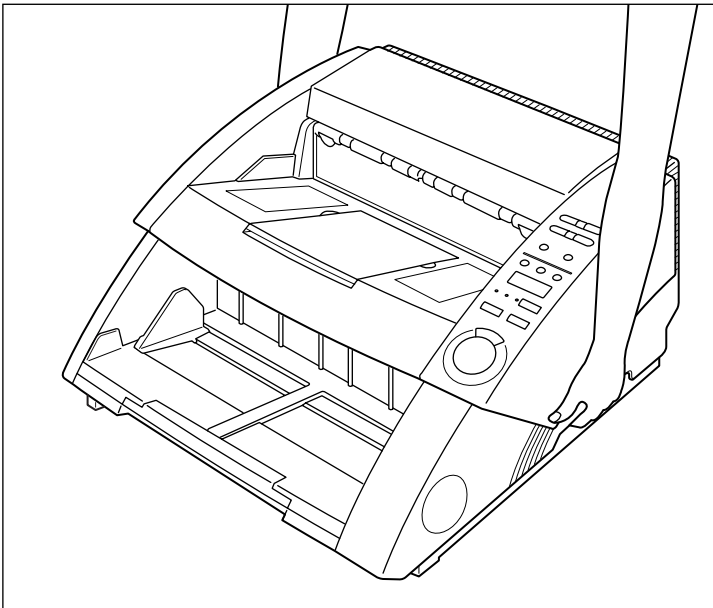


For details on the scanner installation location, see “About the Installation Location” in the Safety Precautions (P.8).

ENGLISH

Carrying

When you move the DR-5020/5080C, hold it firmly with both hands as shown in the figure below and carry it carefully. If you carry it without holding its handles, you may drop it, nip your fingers and cause unexpected injuries. The scanner weighs approximately 20 kg (44.2 lb).



Before you move the scanner, always turn the power switch OFF and disconnect the power cord from the power outlet. Also, disconnect the SCSI cable from the connector. Moving the scanner with the power still ON or the SCSI cable still connected might result in electrical shock.

Connecting to a Computer

Connect the scanner to the computer.



Before you connect the scanner to the computer, be sure to turn both the scanner and the computer OFF.



The following items are also needed when you connect the scanner:

- SCSI card
Check that the SCSI card is installed on your computer.
Use a SCSI card that is compatible with the driver application you are using.
- SCSI cable
The scanner's SCSI connector is a D-sub half-pitch 50-pin (pin type) connector.
Check the shape of the connector on your computer's SCSI card and on the SCSI device connected to your computer, and prepare a SCSI cable that is compatible with the connector that can be connected to the scanner.

Follow the procedure below to connect the scanner to the computer.

1. Connect the scanner to the computer by the SCSI cable. (P.24)
2. Set the SCSI ID and terminator. (P.25)

◆ Connecting the SCSI cable

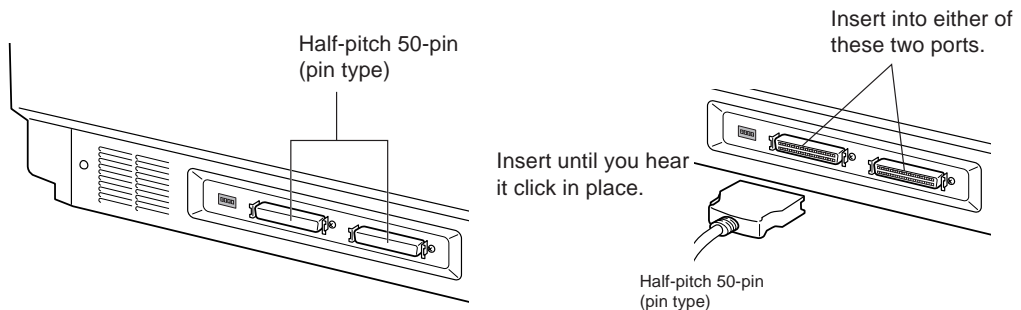


Before you connect the SCSI cable, make sure that the scanner and the computer are turned OFF.

Connect your computer to the scanner using the SCSI cable.

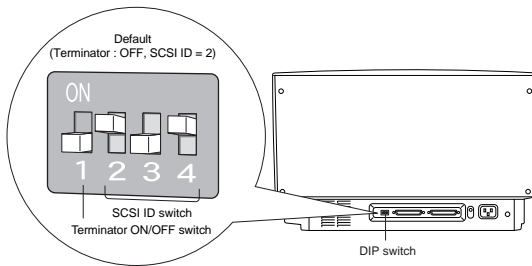
Two SCSI connectors are located on the rear of the scanner. Insert the SCSI cable from the computer into one of these connectors.

To connect another SCSI device to the computer, insert the other SCSI cable into the vacant SCSI connector on the rear of the scanner, and connect the other end of the SCSI cable into the SCSI device in a daisy chain.



◆ Setting the SCSI ID and terminator

Set the SCSI ID and terminator using the DIP switch on the rear of the scanner. The DIP switch is ON at the up position and OFF at the down position.



SCSI ID	SW2	SW3	SW4
0	ON	ON	ON
1	ON	ON	OFF
2	ON	OFF	ON
3	ON	OFF	OFF
4	OFF	ON	ON
5	OFF	ON	OFF
6	OFF	OFF	ON
7	OFF	OFF	OFF

Set the SCSI ID referring to the table above.
Set unique SCSI IDs to any other built-in SCSI devices or SCSI devices connected to the computer.



HINT

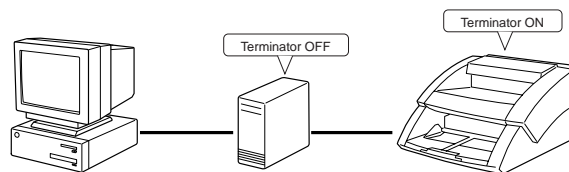
The SCSI ID default is set to 2.
Assign SCSI ID numbers ranging from 0 to 7 for each SCSI device. Do not select 7 as this is normally assigned to the SCSI controller. If a SCSI hard disk is mounted, do not use 0 and 1. Normally 0 and 1 are assigned for hard disks.

Set the terminator on the last SCSI device on a daisy chain to ON.

<When only the scanner is connected to your computer, or when another SCSI device is connected on a daisy chain and the scanner is the last SCSI device on the end of the daisy chain>

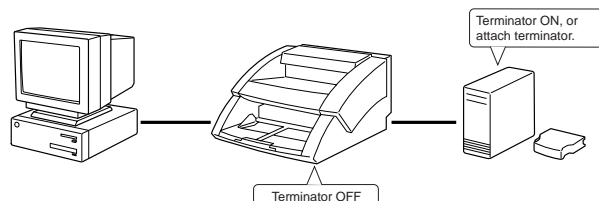
Set the terminator switch to ON.

In such a connection, be sure to set the terminator on all other SCSI devices to OFF.



<When another SCSI device is connected as the last device of the daisy chain>
Set the terminator switch on the scanner to OFF.

In such a connection, set the terminator on the SCSI device connected as the end device to ON.



Connecting the Power Cord

Connect the power cord.

Be sure to use only the power cord provided with the scanner.

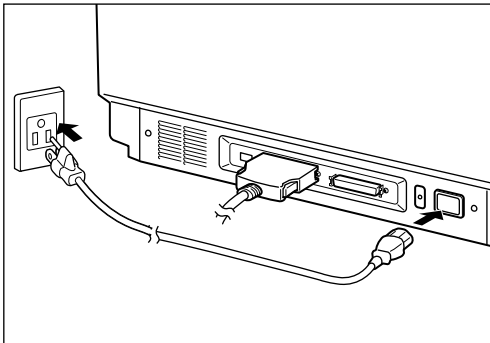
◆ Connecting the power cord



When connecting the power cord, follow these precautions. Failure to do so might cause a fire or electrical shock.

- Never grasp the plug when your hands are wet.
- Never plug the unit into a multi-plug power strip.
- Never bundle or tie the power cord around itself or another object. Connect the plug securely to the power source.
- Use only the power cord and plug provided with the scanner.
- Before you connect the power cord, be sure to turn the power switch OFF.
- Be sure to connect to a AC 220-240V (50/60 Hz)/AC 120V (60 Hz) power supply.
- Do not plug the scanner into an outlet shared with another device. If you use an extension cable, pay attention to the total amperage of the cable.

Connect the power cord to the rear of the scanner, and insert the power plug into the power outlet.



2.3

Preparing for Paper Feed and Eject

Pull out the paper feed section and eject section or detachable tray or support plate to accommodate the size of the document to be scanned. Also, affix the label for aiding adjustment of the document guide.

ENGLISH

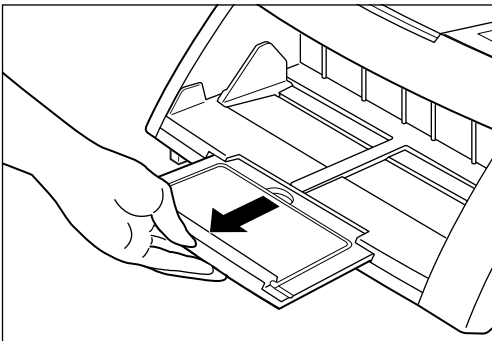
Preparing the Document Tray Extension and Document Eject Tray Extension

Use the document tray extension and document eject tray extension to accommodate the size of the document to be scanned. The document eject support plate and removable tray can also be used to accommodate difficult to scan documents.

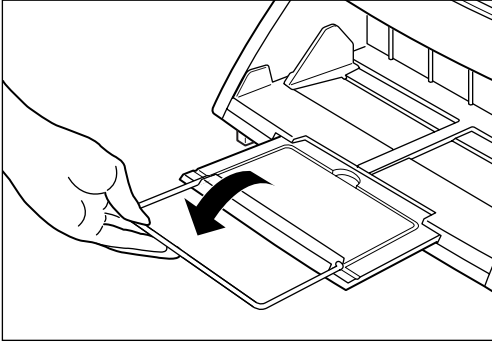
◆ Document tray extension

Pull the document tray extension to accommodate the size of the document to be scanned.

- 1 Pull out the document tray extension from the center of the document tray.



2 Gently open the wire extension.

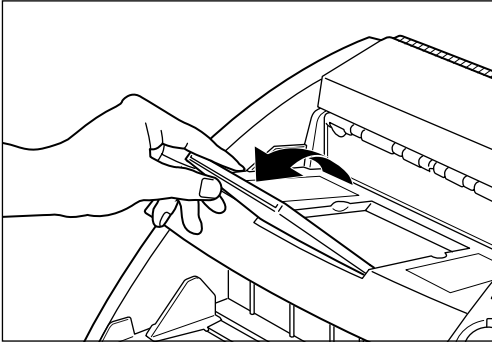


The wire extension is used when scanning documents larger than A4 or LTR.

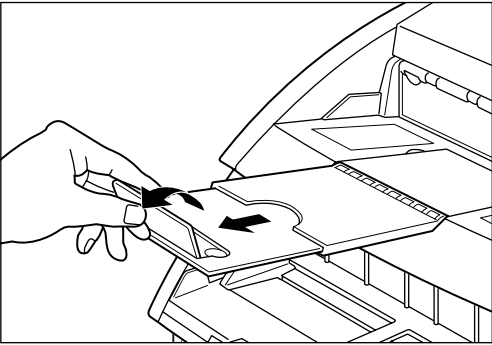
◆ Document eject tray extension

Use the document eject tray extension to accommodate the size of the document to be scanned. The document eject tray extension opens out in three stages to accommodate different types and sizes of document.

- 1 Pick up eject tray extension 1 from the center of the document eject tray.**



- 2 Draw out eject tray extension 2 from eject tray extension 1, and then set the stopper upright.**



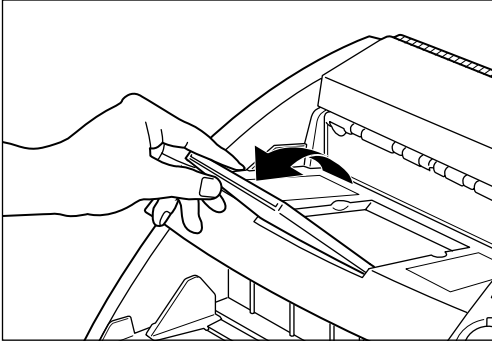
MEMO

The stopper is used to prevent documents that are output from the scanner from flying out from the document eject tray extension.

◆ Document eject support plate

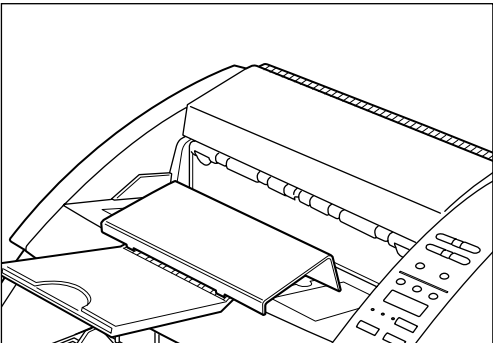
Install this plate when scanning large-size documents or documents with a slippery surface. When such documents are ejected from the scanner, they may become caught on the document eject section and become curled, or cause a paper jam. This plate prevents this.

1 Pull out the document eject tray extension.

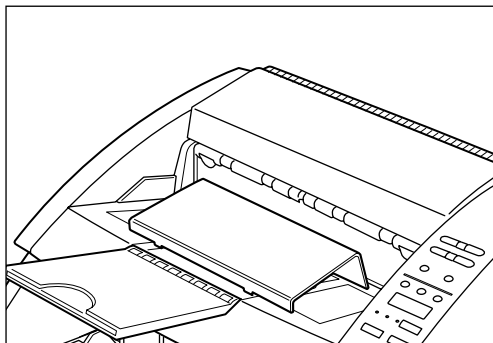


2 Install the document eject support plate.

Install so that the protrusions on the support plate fit into the holes on the document eject tray extension.



If documents become caught even with the document eject tray extension attached, draw out the extension as far as possible to prevent the documents from becoming caught.

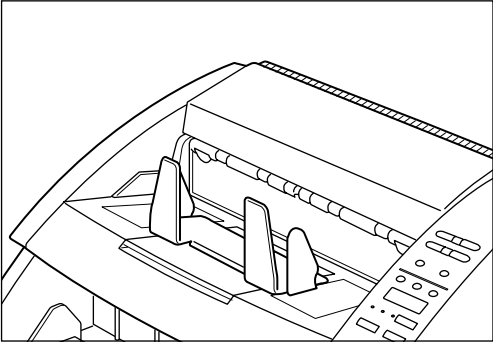


◆ Removable tray

Attach this tray when you are scanning small-size documents. This tray prevents documents from flying out of the tray when they are ejected from the scanner.

1 Install the removable tray on the center of the eject tray.

The removable tray is held in place by magnets. Align the tray position to accommodate the length of the document.

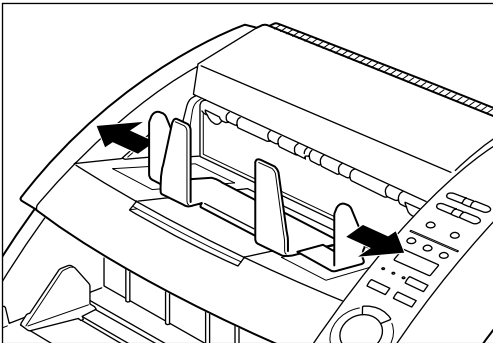


MEMO

Close the eject tray if it is open.

2 Set the left and right paper guides for the width of the document you are going to scan.

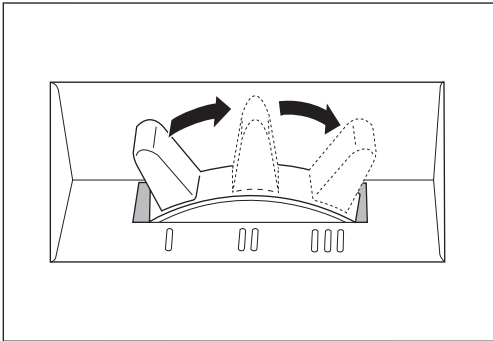
Allow a little bit of extra room on both of the guides.



Paper Feed Adjustment

Slide the paper feed adjustment lever to adjust paper feed when a paper feed error occurs because of friction arising from a slippery document surface.

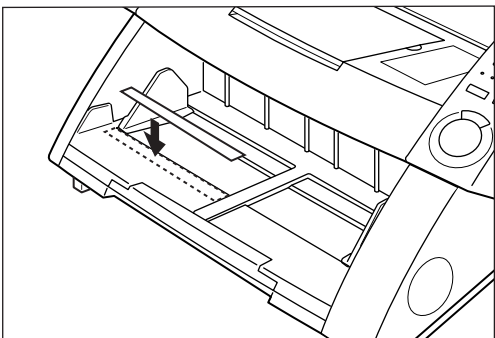
The paper feed adjustment lever can be adjusted to three positions. The normal setting is the left (|) position. If the paper is slightly slippery, adjust it to the center (||) position and to the right (|||) position if it is more slippery.



Affixing the Document Guide Labels

The scanner package contains function key labels and document guide labels. These labels aid adjustment of the document guide.

Affix them on the document tray as shown in the figure below.



2.4

Turning the Power ON/OFF

Follow the procedures below to turn the scanner power ON and OFF.

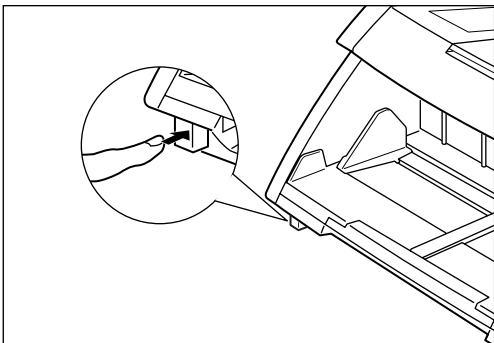
Turning the Power ON

ENGLISH



Be sure to turn the power of all connected SCSI devices ON before the computer ON.

1 To turn the scanner ON, press the power switch.



➔ "0000" is displayed on the counter display of the operation panel.



Settings on the operation panel other than the counter display are reverted to the settings before the scanner power was turned OFF.



If you hear a strange sound, detect smoke or abnormal heat, sense vibration, or smell odd odors around the unit, turn the power switch OFF immediately and disconnect the power cord from the outlet. Call for service immediately. Failure to do so might cause a fire.

2 Turn the computer ON.

➡ The OS on your computer starts up.



HINT

- If you are using Windows 95/98/Me or Windows 2000, then the first time that you turn on your PC after connecting this scanner to your PC Windows' Plug and Play function will automatically display a screen prompting you to install the scanner driver. (The name of this prompt screen varies among the different versions of Windows.)

In the case of "New Hardware Found" (Windows 95), select "Select from a list of alternative drivers" and click OK. On the next screen, select Other Devices and then click OK.

In the case of "Update Device Driver Wizard" (Windows 95), click Next and then click Finish on the next screen.

In the case of "Add New Hardware Wizard" (Windows 98), follow the procedure described below.

1. Click Next.
2. Select "Search for the best driver for your device (Recommended)" and then click next.
3. Clear all checkmarks and then click Next.
4. Click Next.
5. Click Finish.

In the case of "Add New Hardware Wizard" (Windows Me), select "Automatic search for a better driver (Recommended)", then click Next and then click Finish on the next screen.

In the case of "Found New Hardware Wizard" (Windows 2000), follow the procedure described below.

1. Click Next to advance to the "Install Hardware Device Drivers" screen.
2. Select "Search for a suitable driver for my device (recommended)", and then click Next to proceed to the "Locate Driver Files" screen.
3. Clear all of the checkmarks in the "Optional search locations", and then click Next to proceed to the "Driver Files Search Results" screen.
4. Select "Disable the device." and then click Finish.

- The driver application provided with the scanner must be installed to use the scanner. For details, refer to the separate "ISIS/TWAIN Driver Instructions" or "Scanning Utility 5000 Instructions."

Turning the Power OFF



CAUTION

For your safety, disconnect the power plug from the power outlet if you are not using the scanner for a long time.

1 Turn the computer OFF.

2 To turn the scanner OFF, press the power switch.



CAUTION

Wait at least 10 seconds before turning the scanner ON again.

Chapter 3

Preparing Documents

This chapter describes precautions regarding documents that can be handled on this scanner and document feed and scanning operations.

3.1 About Documents	36
3.2 Document Feeding and Scanning	38
3.3 Setting Scan Conditions	58

3.1

About Documents

The DR-5020/5080C can feed a wide variety of document sizes. The ranges of width and length for a document as follows:

- Width : 55 to 297 mm (2.2 to 11.7 in.)
(The actual maximum scanning width is 295 mm/11.6 in..)
- Length : 70 to 432 mm (2.8 to 17.0 in.)
- Thickness : 0.06 to 0.15 mm
(at manual feed: 0.06 to 0.2 mm)

Follow these guidelines when you prepare a document for scanning.

- Before scanning documents that contain pasted artwork, make sure that the ink or paste on the pages is thoroughly dry. If the documents are scanned with ink or paste still wet, the inside of the scanner may become dirty.
- If you scan a document written in pencil, the letters may disappear as the document is fed through the scanner or graphite from the surface of the document may transfer to and stain the scanning rollers. Before you scan these kind of documents, make a copy and then scan the copy. After scanning a document written in pencil or some other soft writing materials, be sure to clean the scanning rollers (P.83).
- If you scan thin paper in the Duplex mode, ink printed on one side may be legible on the other side. If this happens, adjust the scan density.
- If you scan a slippery surface document, friction may cause a feed error to occur. If this happens, slide the paper feed adjustment lever (P.32) to adjust paper feed.
- To avoid paper jams, damage to documents and scanner malfunction, do not feed the following types of paper into the scanner. If you want to scan these types of paper, first make a copy on a copier and the scan the copy.



Wrinkled or creased paper



Curled paper



Torn paper



Paper with clips or staples



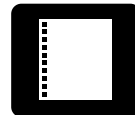
Carbon-backed paper



Coated paper or fax recording paper



Onion skin or other thin paper



Paper with binding holes

**MEMO**

- Documents comprising pages of differing thickness and size may cause a malfunction during feeding.
- Heavily curled documents or wrinkled or creased paper may cause double feed.
- Documents containing text or pictures within 5 mm (0.2 in.) of its edges or documents with a color background may cause erroneous skew detection or automatic size detection.

3.2

Document Feeding and Scanning

Load the document in the scanner and scan it. You can also count the number of pages in the document. This section describes the following items:

- Scan procedure (according to feed mode)
- Counting of pages in documents
- Control Sheets



- Avoid wearing loose fitting clothing, dangling jewelry, long ties, or even long hair that could become entangled with moving parts, especially the rollers that feed the unit. If such objects become entangled, immediately disconnect the power plug from the power outlet to stop the unit.
- Be very careful when you are loading a document or removing a paper jam. You may be injured unexpectedly. For example, the paper edges may cut your fingers.
- Check the stack and remove all clips, staples, pins, or any other type of metal or plastic fastener. Failure to do so might damage the document, or cause a paper jam or scanner malfunction.

Scan Procedure

The procedure for scanning a document varies according to which feed mode is set on the scanner.

You can choose from the following four feed modes using the Feeding Option key.

- **Remote mode (default)**

This mode is best suited to scanning only one document stack.

In this mode, the scanner starts scanning when you instruct scanning in the application with the document loaded on the scanner.

- **Semi-Auto**

This mode is best suited to continuously scanning different-size documents in separate stacks while adjusting the document guide.

In this mode, the scanner starts scanning when you instruct scanning in the application and press the Start key on the scanner with the document loaded in the scanner.

When the scanner has finished scanning a stack of documents, load the next stack and press the Start key to continue scanning.

- **Auto**

This mode is best suited to continuously scanning a stack of same-size documents.

In this mode, the scanner automatically starts scanning when you load the document after instructing scanning in the application.

When the scanner has finished scanning a stack of documents, load the next stack. The scanner automatically continues scanning.

- **Manual**

In this mode, you load the document one page at a time after you have instructed start of scanning on the computer.

Use this mode to feed documents that are not fed well (e.g. paper quality that is more likely to cause double feed) when loaded as a stack.

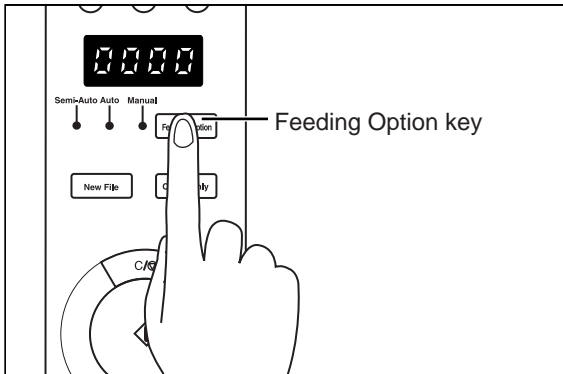
The following describes each of scan procedures according to the feed mode.

◆ Remote mode

This mode is best suited to scanning only one document stack.

1 Make sure that all of the Semi-Auto, Auto and Manual lamps are out.

If any of the lamps is lit, press the Feeding Option key until all lamps are out.



Each press of the Feeding Option key changes the lamp indication cyclically as follows:

OFF (Remote Mode) → [Semi-Auto] → [Auto] → [Manual] → and back to OFF (Remote Mode)

2 Select the following settings on the operation panel.

This setup is not required if it has already been made in the application.

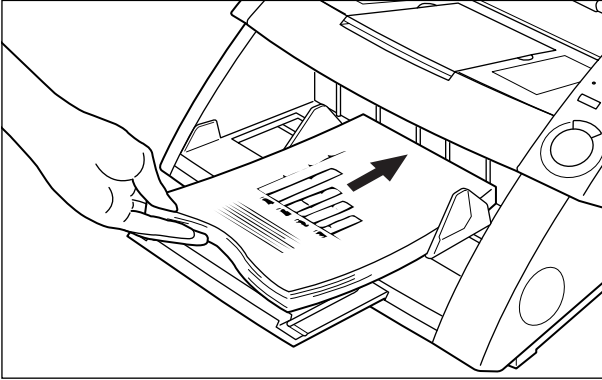
<p>Text/Picture</p> <p>[Text]: This is lighting, when scanning the text documents (including mostly characters) with black and white mode.</p> <p>[Picture]: This is lighting, when scanning the picture documents including photographs with black and white error diffusion mode.</p> <p>If any applications are set with gray scale mode or color mode for the image selection, either of above will not be lighting.</p>		<p>Simplex/Duplex</p> <p>[Simplex]: Select this when scanning only one side of the document.</p> <p>[Duplex]: Select this when scanning both sides of the document.</p> <p>Brightness keys</p> <p>Set the brightness when the document is scanned.</p> <p>To automatically adjust the brightness, press (A) key to light (A).</p> <p>To manually adjust the brightness, press ◀ or ▶ keys to move the indicator display above the key and adjust the brightness.</p>
---	--	--



For details on other setup parameters, see “3.3 Setting Scan Conditions.” (P.58)

3 Fan a group of pages to be scanned until the edges are even.

4 Load the document face up with the top edge of the document inserted first into the scanner.



MEMO

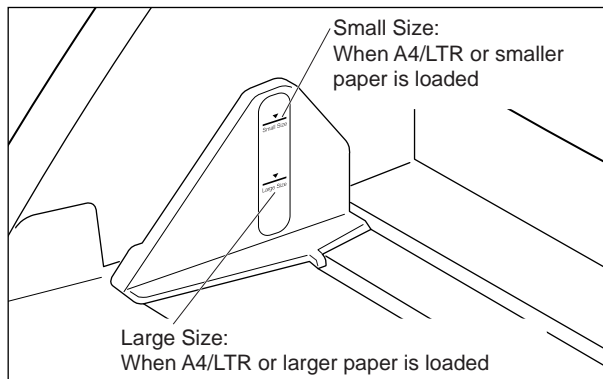
- When you load the document on the document tray, load the document with its top side face up.
- The weight of the loaded paper sometimes increases due to the environment (e.g. very humid locations) in which the document is stored. If this happens, the weight of the paper will exceed the maximum allowed stacked weight even if the number of stacked sheets is below the maximum, and sometimes prevent the document tray from rising. Reduce the number of document sheets loaded on the document tray and scan the document again.



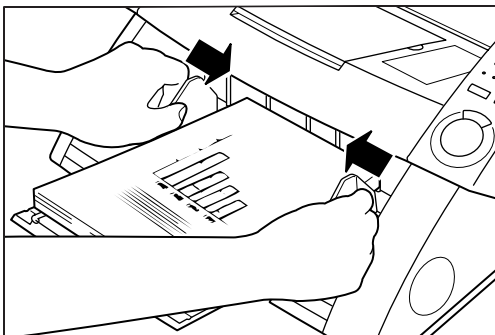
HINT

To avoid paper jams, check the load limit mark on the document tray. The stack should not be above this mark (▼).

The load limit is about 500 pages of standard A4/LTR size paper (80 g/m² (20-lb bond)) and about 200 pages of paper larger than A4 or LTR.



- 5 Set the paper guides for the width of the document you are going to scan.**



- 6 Instruct scanning in the application.**

- 7 The document tray rises, and scanning begins. When scanning of all pages in the document ends, the paper tray is lowered.**

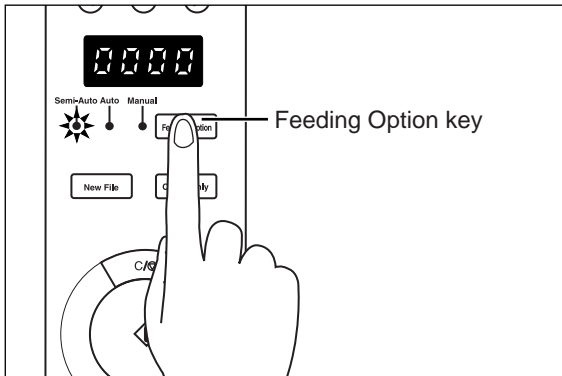


If paper feed stops during scanning due to a system error or paper jam, make sure that the last page of the original that was being fed in was recorded properly before continuing scanning.

◆ Semi-Auto mode

Use the Semi-Auto mode to continuously scan a stack of different-size documents.

- 1 Press the Feeding Option key on the operation panel to light [Semi-Auto].



- 2 Select the following settings on the operation panel.

This setup is not required if it has already been made in the application.

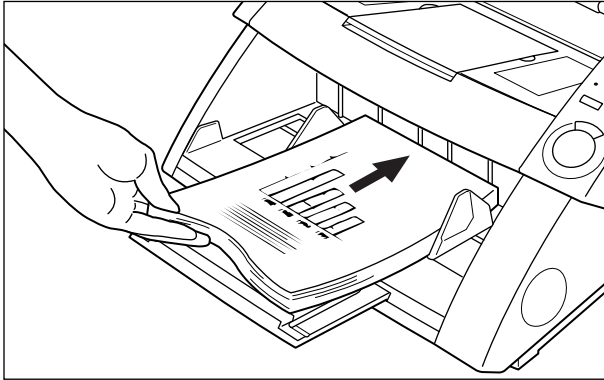
<p>Text/Picture</p> <p>[Text]: This is lighting, when scanning the text documents (including mostly characters) with black and white mode.</p> <p>[Picture]: This is lighting, when scanning the picture documents including photographs with black and white error diffusion mode.</p> <p>If any applications are set with gray scale mode or color mode for the image selection, either of above will not be lighting.</p>		<p>Simplex/Duplex</p> <p>[Simplex]: Select this when scanning only one side of the document.</p> <p>[Duplex]: Select this when scanning both sides of the document.</p> <p>Brightness keys</p> <p>Set the brightness when the document is scanned.</p> <p>To automatically adjust the brightness, press (A) key to light (A).</p> <p>To manually adjust the brightness, press (◀) or (▶) keys to move the indicator display above the key and adjust the brightness.</p>
---	--	--



For details on other setup parameters, see “3.3 Setting Scan Conditions.” (P.58)

3 Fan a group of pages to be scanned until the edges are even.

4 Load the document face up with the top edge of the document inserted first into the scanner.



MEMO

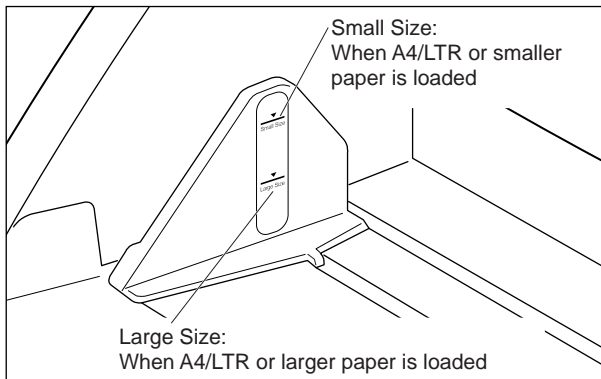
- When you load the document on the document tray, load the document with its top side face up.
- The weight of the loaded paper sometimes increases due to the environment (e.g. very humid locations) in which the document is stored. If this happens, the weight of the paper will exceed the maximum allowed stacked weight even if the number of stacked sheets is below the maximum, and sometimes prevent the document tray from rising. Reduce the number of document sheets loaded on the document tray and scan the document again.



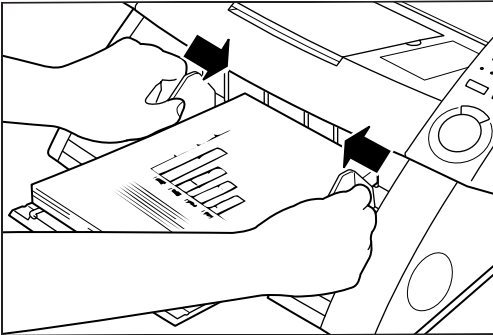
HINT

To avoid paper jams, check the load limit mark on the document tray. The stack should not be above this mark (▼).

The load limit is about 500 pages of standard A4/LTR size paper (80 g/m² (20-lb bond)) and about 200 pages of paper larger than A4 or LTR.



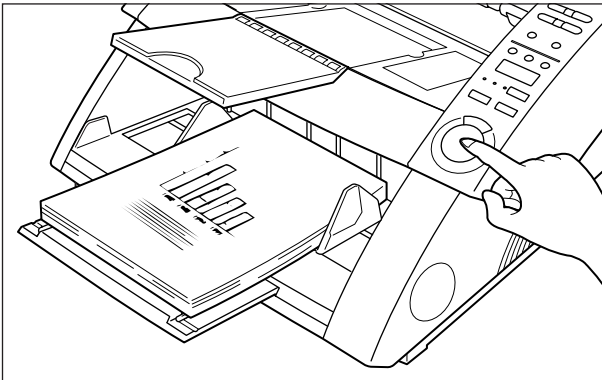
- 5** Set the paper guides for the width of the document you are going to scan.



- 6** Instruct scanning in the application.

➔ The Start key changes color from red to green.

- 7** Press the Start key.



- 8** The document tray rises, and scanning begins. When scanning of all pages in the document ends, the paper tray is lowered.



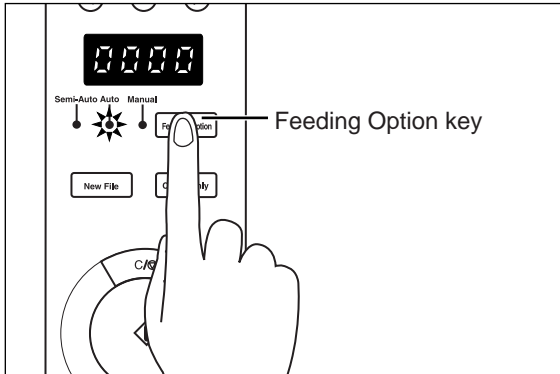
If paper feed stops during scanning due to a system error or paper jam, make sure that the last page of the original that was being fed in was recorded properly before continuing scanning.

- 9** If there are more pages in the document to scan, load the document and press the Start key. To end scanning, press the Stop key.

◆ Auto mode

Use the Auto mode to continuously scan a stack of same-size documents.

- 1 Press the Feeding Option key on the operation panel to light [Auto].



- 2 Select the following settings on the operation panel.

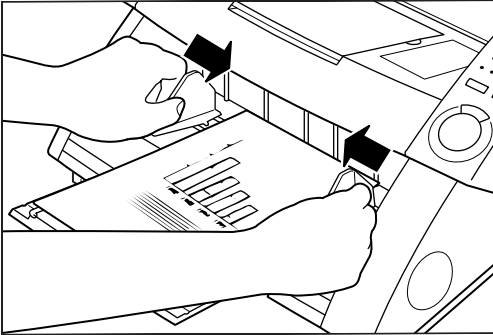
This setup is not required if it has already been made in the application.

<p>Text/Picture</p> <p>[Text]: This is lighting, when scanning the text documents (including mostly characters) with black and white mode.</p> <p>[Picture]: This is lighting, when scanning the picture documents including photographs with black and white error diffusion mode.</p> <p>If any applications are set with gray scale mode or color mode for the image selection, either of above will not be lighting.</p>		<p>Simplex/Duplex</p> <p>[Simplex]: Select this when scanning only one side of the document.</p> <p>[Duplex]: Select this when scanning both sides of the document.</p> <p>Brightness keys</p> <p>Set the brightness when the document is scanned.</p> <p>To automatically adjust the brightness, press (A) key to light (A).</p> <p>To manually adjust the brightness, press (◀) or (▶) keys to move the indicator display above the key and adjust the brightness.</p>
---	--	--



For details on other setup parameters, see “3.3 Setting Scan Conditions.” (P.58)

- 3** Load one page of the document you are going to scan, and set the paper guides for the width of the document.



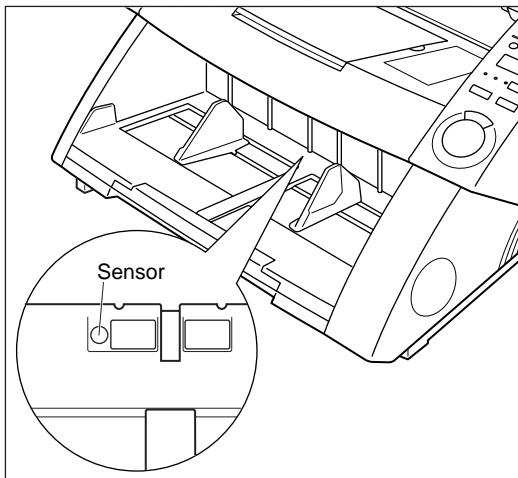
- 4** Instruct scanning in the application.

➞ The Start key changes color from red to green.



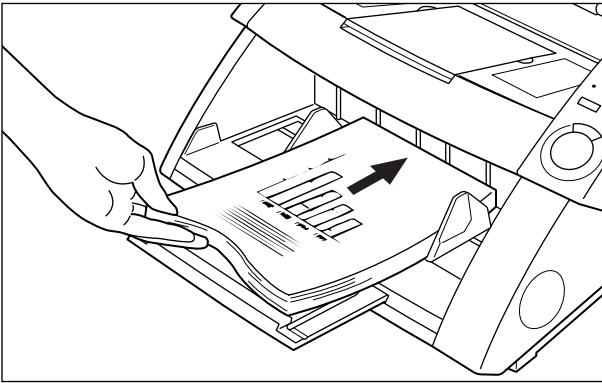
CAUTION

When the scanning mode is set to Auto, the sensor located on the document tray shown in the figure below automatically detects the document to start scanning. When something covers the sensor on the document tray after you have instructed scanning in the application, the scanner erroneously judges that a document has been loaded, and the document tray starts to move. Make sure that objects other than the document do not cover the sensor on the document tray.



- 5** Fan a group of pages to be scanned until the edges are even.

6 Load the document face up with the top edge of the document inserted first into the scanner.



MEMO

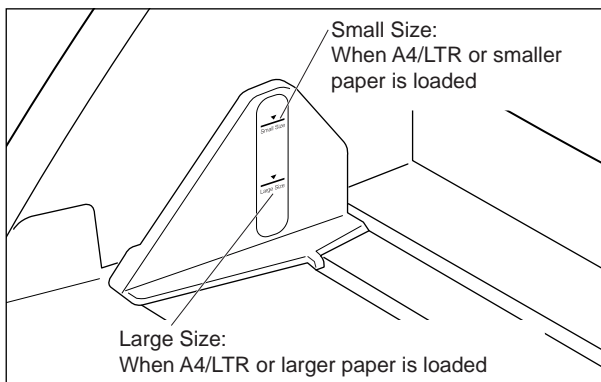
- When you load the document on the document tray, load the document with its top side face up.
- The weight of the loaded paper sometimes increases due to the environment (e.g. very humid locations) in which the document is stored. If this happens, the weight of the paper will exceed the maximum allowed stacked weight even if the number of stacked sheets is below the maximum, and sometimes prevent the document tray from rising. Reduce the number of document sheets loaded on the document tray and scan the document again.



HINT

To avoid paper jams, check the load limit mark on the document tray. The stack should not be above this mark (▼).

The load limit is about 500 pages of standard A4/LTR size paper (80 g/m² (20-lb bond)) and about 200 pages of paper larger than A4 or LTR.



7 The document tray automatically rises, and scanning begins. When scanning of all pages in the document ends, the paper tray is lowered.

Scanning does not start when the document is loaded first. In this case, either press the Start key, or remove and load the document again.



MEMO

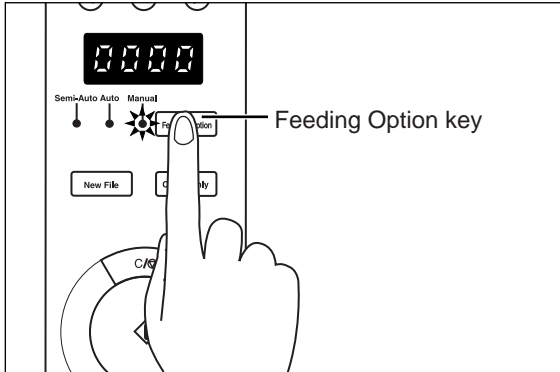
If paper feed stops during scanning due to a system error or paper jam, make sure that the last page of the original that was being fed in was recorded properly before continuing scanning.

8 If there are more pages in the document to scan, load the document, and scanning begins automatically. To end scanning, press the Stop key.

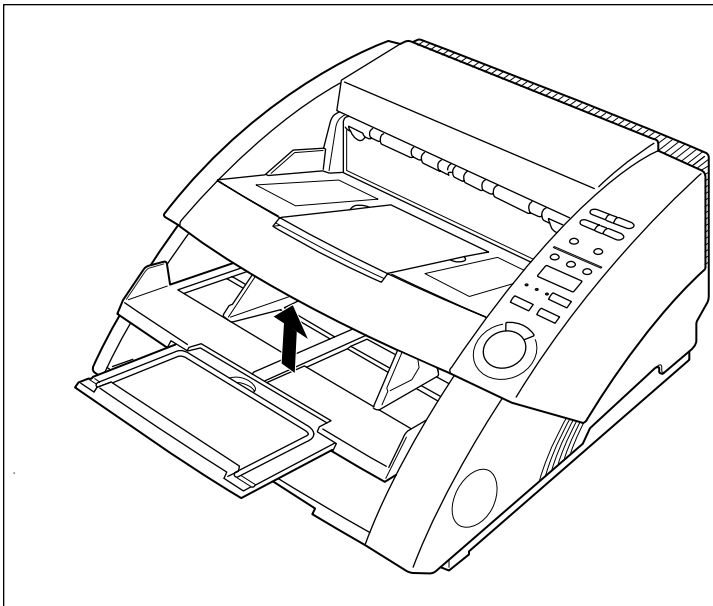
◆ Manual mode

Use this mode to scan documents that are not fed well (e.g. paper quality that is more likely to cause double feed). In this mode, you load the document one page at a time.

- 1 Press the Feeding Option key on the operation panel to light [Manual].



➡ The document tray rises.



Take care not to nip your fingers in the document tray.

2 Select the following settings on the operation panel.

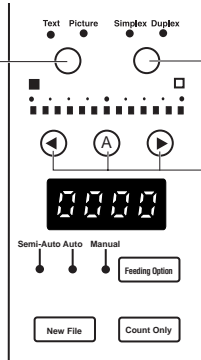
This setup is not required if it has already been made in the application.

Text/Picture

[Text]: This is lighting, when scanning the text documents (including mostly characters) with black and white mode.

[Picture]: This is lighting, when scanning the picture documents including photographs with black and white error diffusion mode.

If any applications are set with gray scale mode or color mode for the image selection, either of above will not be lighting.



Simplex/Duplex

[Simplex]: Select this when scanning only one side of the document.

[Duplex]: Select this when scanning both sides of the document.

Brightness keys

Set the brightness when the document is scanned.

To automatically adjust the brightness, press (A) key to light (A).

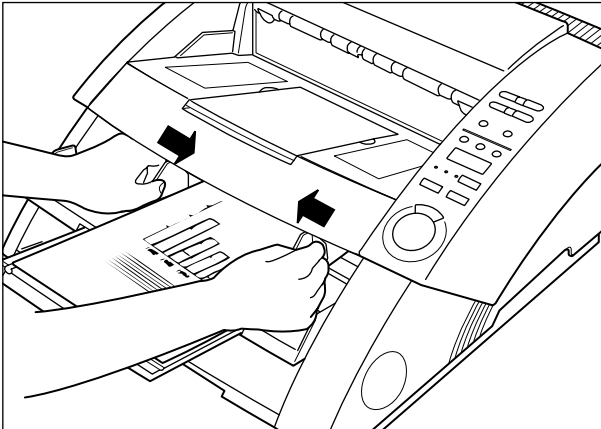
To manually adjust the brightness, press (◀) or (▶) keys to move the indicator display above the key and adjust the brightness.



MEMO

For details on other setup parameters, see “3.3 Setting Scan Conditions.” (P.58)

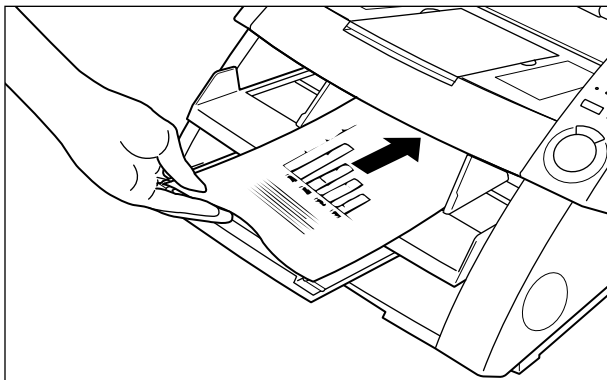
3 Load one page of the document you are going to scan, and set the paper guides for the width of the document.



4 Instruct scanning in the application.

5 Load one sheet face up with the top inserted into the scanner.

⇒ The document is scanned.



6 Insert the document one page at a time.

7 To end scanning, press the Stop key.



HINT

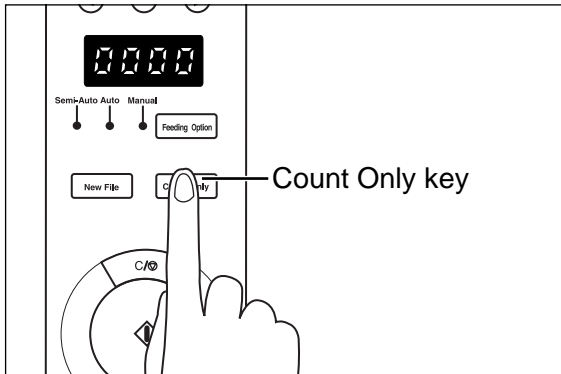
The document tray remains at the raised position. To return the document tray to its original position, press the Feeding Option key and then select any key other than [Manual].

Counting the Number of Originals In a Document

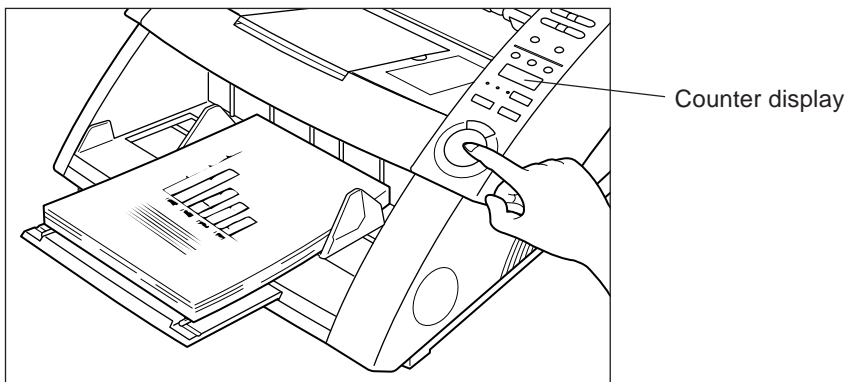
The number of originals in a document can be counted, for example, when the number is unknown by setting the scanner to the Count Only mode.

1 Press the Count Only key on the operation panel of the scanner.

➔ The Count Only key lamp lights to indicate the Count Only mode. The Semi-Auto lamp also lights.



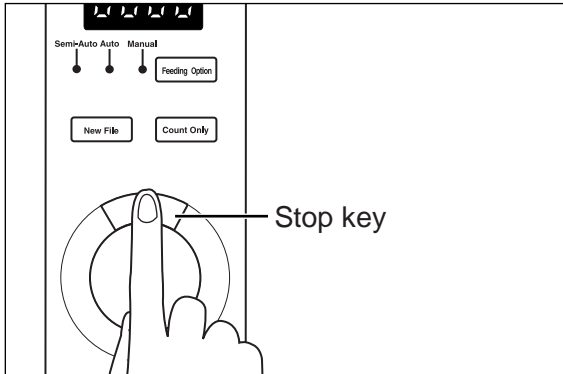
2 Load the document on the document tray and press the Start key.



➔ The document is fed and the number of pages in the document appears on the counter display.

3 When counting ends, press the **Count Only** key to cancel the **Count Only** mode.

To clear the count on the counter display, hold the Stop key down for at least two seconds.



HINT

You can use the above count to conduct a verify scan (automatically verify the number of pages in the document during scanning). For details on verify scan, refer to the separate ISIS/TWAIN Driver Instructions or Scanning Utility 5000 Instructions .

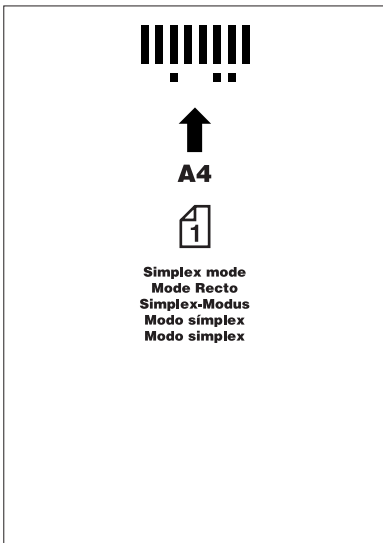
Function Sheets

The scanner comes with several Function Sheets which can be used to activate various functions. If you feed a Function Sheet together with documents, the scanner will detect the Function Sheet and automatically set the desired scanning mode.

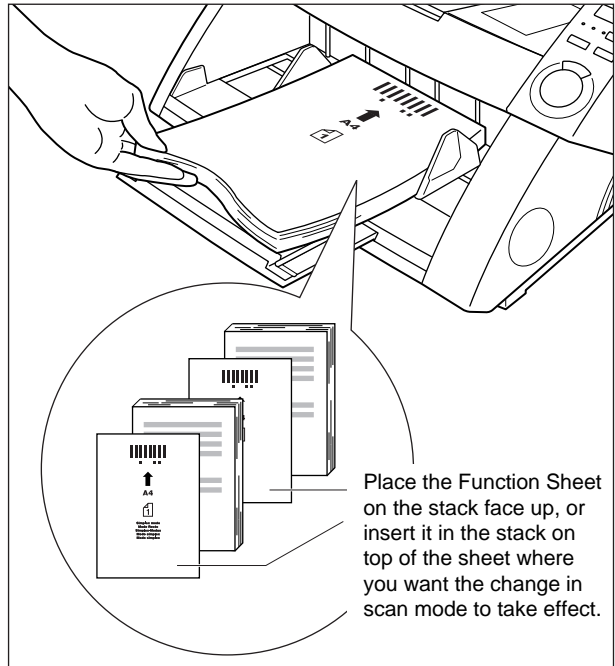


HINT

- This function is valid only when the scanner application supports scanning using Function Sheets. Set the scanner application beforehand so that this function can be used on the application. For details, refer to the Scanner Application Instructions.
- For details on Function Sheets, refer to the Function Sheet Instructions packaged with the Function Sheets.



Function sheet



The following five types of Function Sheets come with the DR-5020/5080C.

● **Scanner Control Sheets**

These sheets control the mode in which the document is scanned. The following Control Sheets for each of the scan modes are provided.

For Duplex mode

Tells the scanner to scan and store contents of front and back of the page. Insert this Function Sheet before the document to be scanned, and load it together with the document in the scanner.

For Simplex mode

Tells the scanner to scan and store only the front side of the page. Insert this Function Sheet before the document to be scanned, and load it together with the document in the scanner.

For Photo mode

Tells the scanner to turn ON the Photo mode for scanning and storing photographs. Insert this Function Sheet before the photo document, and load it together with the document in the scanner. This sheet is valid only when Scan Mode on the application is set to Black and White. This sheet is ignored if it is loaded with Scan Mode set to Grayscale or Color.

For Text mode

Tells the scanner to turn ON the Text mode for scanning and storing text. Insert this Function Sheet before the text document, and load it together with the document in the scanner. This sheet is valid only when Scan Mode on the application is set to Black and White. This sheet is ignored if it is loaded with Scan Mode set to Grayscale or Color.

● **Job Separation Sheet**

Automatically divides a document into separate files for storing the scanned image for each job. Insert this Function Sheet before the next document, and load it together with the document in the scanner.

**HINT**

- Make copies of the original Function Sheets and store the originals in a safe, clean place.
- If you copy Function Sheets, make sure that the copies are the same size as the originals and crisp and clear, neither too light nor too dark. Copies that are too light or too dark could cause scanning errors.
- When copying a Function Sheet, copy the Function Sheet on paper of the same thickness as the document you are scanning. If you make a copy of a Function Sheet on paper of different thickness, a double feed may be detected (P.63), resulting in a double feed error.
- If you make a copy of a Function Sheet at a page size other than A4 or LTR, adjust so that the pattern is 10 mm (0.4 in.) from the top edge of the sheet. Also, make sure that the pattern is copied at the center along the width of the sheet.
- Handle the function sheets carefully. Make sure that you do not bend, fold, mark, or stain the sheets in any way. In particular, prevent dirt within 51 mm (2 in.) of the top edge of the sheet. Marked or stained Function Sheets can cause scanning errors.
- Documents may not be scanned correctly if the density during scanning by Function Sheets is set too high or too low.

3.3 Setting Scan Conditions

The conditions that are applied when you scan a document are set on the operation panel. Basically, the following three items are set:

- **Basic settings**
Set the most basic scan conditions: feed mode, brightness, simplex/duplex, etc.
- **Setting by function keys**
Call up settings already registered to a function key to use these settings.
- **User mode setting**
Set the scanner operation mode (user mode) for items such as the original detection method.

The following describes each of these setting methods.

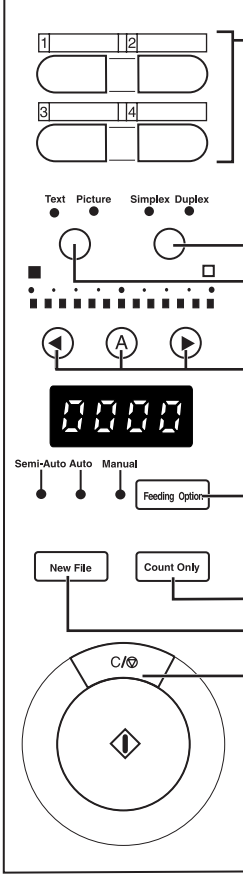


MEMO

Only some of the available scan conditions are set on the operation panel. More detailed settings are set in the application. For details, refer to the separate “ISIS/TWAIN Driver Instructions” or “Scanning Utility 5000 Instructions.”

Basic Settings

The following items can be set on the operation panel according to the type of document to be scanned.



The diagram shows the operation panel of the scanner with various keys and indicators. The keys are labeled as follows:

- Function keys (P.60):** A set of four keys labeled 1, 2, 3, and 4.
- Mode Selection keys:** Text, Picture, Simplex, and Duplex.
- Brightness keys:** A digital display showing '0000' and three arrow keys (left, center, right).
- Feeding Option key (P.39):** Semi-Auto, Auto, and Manual.
- Count Only key (P.53):** A key labeled 'Count Only'.
- New File key:** A key labeled 'New File'.
- Stop key:** A key labeled 'C/⊞'.

Function keys (P.60)

Simplex/Duplex key
Selects whether to scan only one side of the document or both sides.
Simplex: Light to scan only side of the document.
Duplex: Light to scan both sides of the document.

Mode Selection keys
Selects the document scanning mode ("Black and white/Black and white error diffusion").
Text: This is lighting, when scanning the text documents (including mostly characters) with black and white mode.
Picture: This is lighting, when scanning the picture documents including photographs with black and white error diffusion mode.
If any applications are set with gray scale mode or color mode for the image selection, either of above will not be lighting.

Brightness keys
Set the brightness when the document is scanned.
To automatically adjust the brightness, press the **A** key to light .
To manually adjust the brightness, press the **◀** or **▶** keys to move the indicator display above the key and adjust the brightness. (Pressing the **▶** key raises the brightness, while pressing the **◀** key lowers the brightness. Brightness can be adjusted in 13 steps.)
In the Count Only mode, you can use the **◀** or **▶** keys to set the count start value.

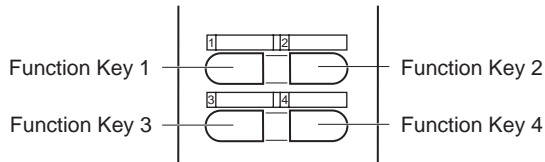
Feeding Option key (P.39)
Selects the document feed mode.
Remote: The three lamps to the left of this key are all out. The document is fed when the scanner receives a scan start instruction from the computer.
Semi-Auto: The scanner feeds the document when you press the Start key after loading the document.
Auto: The scanner automatically feeds the document when you load the document.
Manual: Manually load the document one sheet at a time.

Count Only key (P.53)
Sets the scanner to the Count Only mode for just counting the number of pages in the document.
When you press this key, it will light. If you load the document and press the Start key in this state, the document will be fed and the scanner will count the number of pages. (The document will not be scanned.) The document page count is displayed on the counter display.

New File key
Press this key to save scanned images to separate files.
When you press this key, it will light. When you scan the next document in this state, the scanned image will be saved to a folder separate from the folder for the previous document.
When Auto New File is set in the application, this key lights automatically when each document stack has finished being scanned.

Stop key
Press this key to stop scanning midway.
Also use this key to cancel the currently set mode and cancel an error displayed on the counter display.
To reset the counter display to "0000" hold down this key for at least two seconds.

Function Key Settings



Four function keys are located at the top of the operation panel. These keys can be used easily by one-touch operation on the operation panel by registering the following items.

The following settings can be registered to the function keys:

- **Manual Thickness Adjustment**
Manually adjusts the paper thickness.
- **Imprinter ON/OFF**
Selects use of the imprinter when the optional imprinter is installed.
- **Fixed Thickness Mode ON/OFF**
Sets the paper thickness to a fixed thickness.
- **Double Feed Detection ON/OFF**
Automatically detects simultaneous feed of two or more documents during scanning.
- **Restore Memorized Setting ON/OFF**
Registers the scanner settings that are set on the personal computer to the function keys. Once settings are registered, they can be restored to the scanner simply by pressing a function key.

Functions are registered to function keys in the application. For details on how to register settings to function keys, refer to the “ISIS/TWAIN Driver Instructions” or “Scanning Utility 5000 Instructions”.



MEMO

- Default settings are as follows:
Function key 1: Manual Thickness Adjustment
Function key 2: Imprinter ON/OFF (when this option is installed)
Function key 3: Fixed Thickness Mode ON/OFF
Function key 4: Double Feed Detection ON/OFF
- Details of functions registered to each function key are saved on the scanner. Note that these details will revert to their defaults if the scanner is submitted for repair.

◆ Manual Thickness Adjustment

This scanner is initially set to automatically detect the thickness of paper during scanning. This function, however, may not function properly when scanning extremely thick or thin paper. If this happens, the user must manually adjust the paper thickness so that documents are fed smoothly through the scanner. The procedure for manually adjusting the paper thickness is as follows:

1 Press the function key to which Manual Thickness Adjustment is registered (default is function key 1).

- ➔ The function key blinks, and “Adj” appears blinking on the counter display. The Semi-Auto lamp lights, and the center of the Start key blinks green.



To cancel the paper thickness adjustment function, press the blinking key or the Stop key.

2 Load one sheet from the document to be scanned on the document tray, and press the Start key.

- ➔ This scans the document, and the paper thickness is displayed on the indicator.

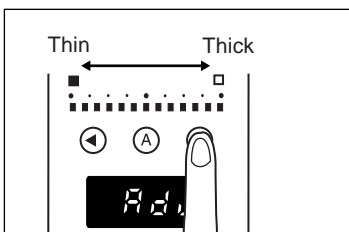


The paper thickness displayed on the indicator is not an accurate paper thickness, but serves as an aid when adjusting the paper thickness.

3 Press the ◀ or ▶ keys to adjust the paper thickness.

Pressing the ◀ or ▶ keys moves the indicator display to the left and right, respectively.

To set a thicker paper setting, press the ▶ key. To set a thinner paper setting, press the ◀ key. The paper thickness can be adjusted in 13 steps.



4 Press the blinking key again.

➡ This sets the paper thickness, and resets the counter display.



- To enable the value set in the above procedure, you must set Fixed Thickness Mode (P.62).
- The paper thickness can also be adjusted in the application. When the paper thickness has been adjusted on both the scanner operation panel and in the application, priority is given to the last made setting.

◆ Imprinter ON/OFF

When the optional imprinter is installed on the scanner, you can select whether or not to use the imprinter by a function key.

To enable use of the imprinter, press the function key to which the imprinter is registered, and scan the document with the key lamp lit.

To disable use of the imprinter, scan the document with the key lamp out.

◆ Fixed Thickness Mode ON/OFF

This scanner is initially set to automatically detect the paper thickness before scanning. It also, however, has the Fixed Thickness mode for fixing the paper thickness setting. When the scanner is set to the Fixed Thickness mode, the automatic paper thickness detection function is disabled, and the paper thickness is fixed to the value set at “Manual Thickness Adjustment” (P.61).

You can select whether to automatically detect paper thickness or to enable the Fixed Thickness mode by a function key.

To set to the Fixed Thickness mode, press the function key (default is function key 3) to which the Fixed Thickness mode is registered, and scan the document with the key lamp lit.

To return to automatic detection of paper thickness, press the key to which the Fixed Thickness mode is registered to turn the lamp OFF.

◆ Double Feed Detection ON/OFF

This scanner has a “double feed detection” function. This function memorizes the thickness and length of the paper to be used as the standard document, and automatically detects a double feed (simultaneous feeding of two or more pages), and displays an error when a double feed is detected.

You can select whether to turn the double feed detection function ON or OFF by a function key.

To detect double feed, press the function key (default is function key 4) to which double feed detection is registered, and scan the document with the key lamp lit.

To disable double feed detection, press the key to which the double feed detection is registered to turn the lamp OFF.

A double feed error occurs when a stack of different-size or -thickness originals is fed. Be sure to disable double feed detection before scanning such originals.



MEMO

- As the first document sheet is used as the standard for detecting double feed, double feed may not be detected if the first document sheet is double-fed. Check the scanned image to see if the first document sheet was fed and scanned correctly.
- Double feed detection is not possible on documents having a width of 130 mm (5.1 in.) or less.
- A double feed is automatically judged and an error message displayed when an original 5 cm (2.0 in.) longer than the standard document or an original 1.5 times thicker or more than the standard document is detected.
- When the double feed function is set to ON by a function key, double feed is detected by both the document length and thickness. Detection of double feed by either document length or document thickness cannot be set to function keys. Though this can be set in the driver or the application, the function key does not light in this case. The function key lights when detection of double feed by both document length and thickness are both set.
- The double feed detection settings are cleared from scanner memory when the power is turned OFF.

◆ Restore Memorized Setting ON/OFF

You can register scanner settings that are set on the personal computer to the function keys on the scanner.

You can register settings matched to the original you are scanning to each of the four function keys. Once scanner settings are registered to a function key, that function key lights. Note, however, that the mode, scan resolution and original size settings must be set before you start scanning as these settings cannot be registered to function keys.

To use registered scanner settings, press the function key to which the desired scanner setting is registered before you open the Scanner Settings dialog box on the application. The registered function key lights, and the scanner settings are restored to the scanner. When you change the restored scanner settings, the function key goes out. The function key lights again when you restore the changed settings to their original settings.

Setting in the User Mode

The DR-5020/5080C allows you to select which operation mode (user mode) is used for each of the items below.

(Settings U5 to U9 are available only when the corresponding optional device (imprinter, bar code decoder or endorser) is attached.)

Operation panel buzzer setting

- U1-0 Do not sound buzzer during key operation.
- U1-1 Sound buzzer during key operation. (default)

Document detection setting

- U2-0 Detect document width by document width.
- U2-1 Detect document width by paper guide width. (default)
- U3-0 Do not detect document skew. (default)
- U3-1 Detect document skew and stop scanning.
- U3-2 Detect document skew and stop scanning. (excluding manual mode)

SCSI synchronization setting

- U4-0 Do not transfer SCSI synchronization.
- U4-1 Transfer SCSI synchronization. (default)

Bar code setting

- U5-0 Do not sound buzzer during bar code reading.
- U5-1 Sound buzzer during bar code reading. (default)
- U6-0 Output START/STOP codes in Codabar bar code in lower case. (default)
- U6-1 Output START/STOP codes in Codabar bar code in upper case.
- U7-0 Do not verify bar code.
- U7-1 Verify bar code once. (default)
- U7-2 Verify bar code twice.
- U7-3 Verify bar code three times.

Count Only mode setting

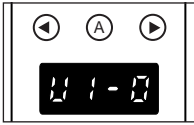
- U8-0 Do not use imprinter/endorser in Count Only mode. (default)
- U8-1 Use imprinter/endorser in Count Only mode.

Endorser stamp mode setting

- U9-0 Use the endorser in the check mode. (default).
- U9-1 Use the endorser in the A4 mode.

◆ How to Set the User mode

- 1 Hold down **(A)** key for at least five seconds.



⇒ The **(A)** blinks, and the user mode appears on the counter display.

- 2 Select the user mode address (one of U1 to U9) using the **(◀)** or **(▶)** keys.



- 3 Press the **(A)** key to select the mode (last number) to be used.



- 4 Press the **Stop** key.

⇒ This sets the selected mode, and returns the counter display to the counter display.

Chapter 4

Troubleshooting

This chapter describes causes of trouble that may occur on the DR-5020/5080C and how to remedy the trouble.

4.1 When The Scanner Is Not Recognized	68
4.2 Removing Paper Jams	70
4.3 Paper Feed Trouble	75
4.4 When The Scanned Image is Not Normal	77
4.5 When An Error Code is Displayed	78



When The Scanner Is Not Recognized

The following describes possible causes of your computer not recognizing the scanner. Remedy the problem by following the remedy for the respective cause.

Cause **Scanner is not correctly connected.**

Remedy Connect the scanner to the SCSI card correctly.

Cause **The SCSI card is not correctly recognized.**

Remedy Correctly connect the SCSI card referring to the SCSI card Manual. Also, check the following according to the OS that your computer is running on.

<Windows95>

Check under [Start] - [Settings] - [Control Panel] - [System] - [Device Manager] to see if "x" or "!" is displayed for the SCSI controller. If either of these is displayed, reset the SCSI card referring to the SCSI Card Manual.

<WindowsNT>

Check under [Start] - [Settings] - [Control Panel] - [SCSI Adapter] to see if the SCSI card is correctly recognized. If it is not, reset the SCSI card referring to the SCSI Card Manual.

Cause **Same SCSI ID is used for other SCSI devices.**

Remedy Check the SCSI ID of all connected SCSI devices, and make sure that the same SCSI ID is not set to two or more devices. Reset the SCSI IDs if the same SCSI ID is set.

Cause **The terminator is not correctly connected.**

Remedy Connect the terminator to the last SCSI device on the end of the daisy chain. Enable the terminator function if the SCSI device has a built-in terminator function.

Cause **The scanner was turned ON after the computer.**

Remedy Turn the computer and scanner OFF, turn the scanner ON and then turn the computer ON again.

Cause **The scanner is OFF.**

Remedy Turn the computer OFF, turn the scanner ON and then turn the computer ON again.

Cause **The scanner's power cord is disconnected from the scanner or the AC power outlet.**

Remedy Turn the computer OFF, and correctly connect the scanner's power cord. Then, turn the scanner ON and then turn the computer ON again.

Cause **The scanner does not support this SCSI card.**

Remedy Replace with a SCSI card compatible with the driver application.

4.2 Removing Paper Jams

Paper may have jammed if scanning stops midway or “PXX” appears on the counter display.

Follow the procedure below to remove jammed paper from inside the DR-5020/5080C.

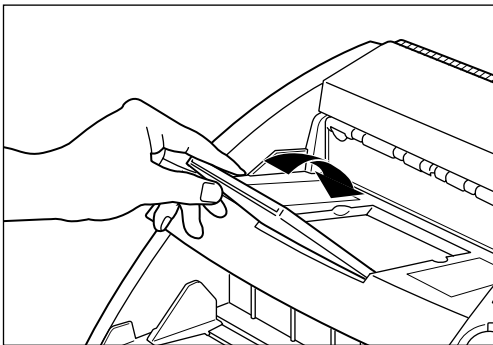


CAUTION

- Be very careful when you remove a paper jam. You may be injured unexpectedly. For example, the paper edges may cut your fingers, or the document may be damaged.
- Remove all jammed sheets of paper. Paper scraps left inside the unit may be drawn into the unit again, causing another paper jam or malfunction.
- When opening or closing the upper unit, take care not to nip your fingers.

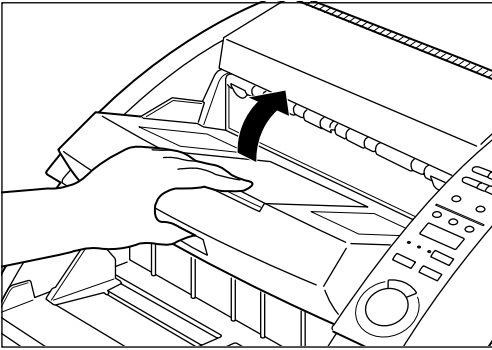
Paper Jam in the Paper Feed Unit

- 1** Remove the documents from the document tray and the eject tray.
- 2** Remove the removable tray or document eject support plate if it is installed on the document eject tray. Close the document eject tray guide if it is open.

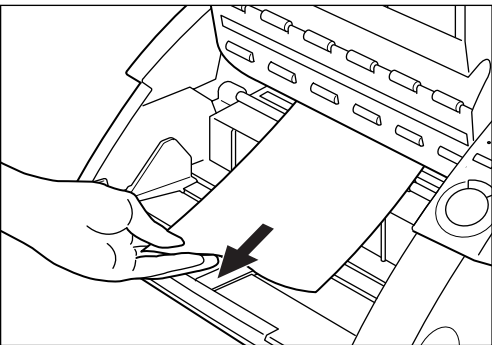


3 Open the upper unit.

Press the open/close button, and lift up the upper unit until it stops and is held at that position.



4 Remove the jammed paper from inside the scanner.



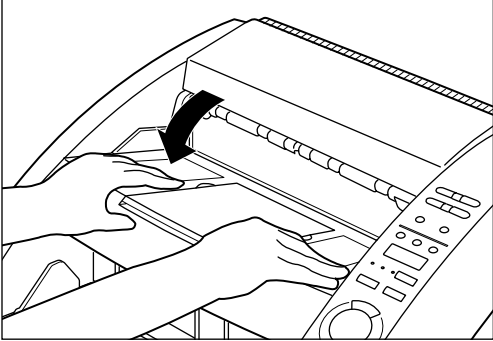
5 To close the upper unit, push the upper unit inwards as far as possible, and then release the upper unit.

When you release the upper unit, it slowly begins to fall down. Do not apply unnecessary force to push the upper unit down. Doing so might damage the scanner.



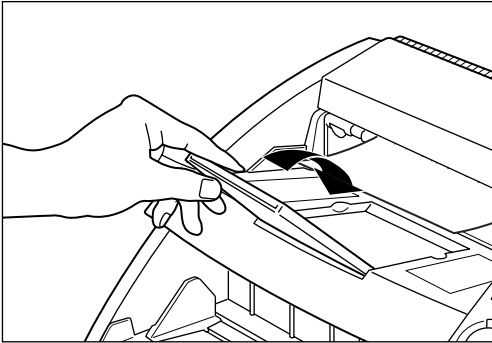
6 When the upper unit has fallen as far as it can go, press down firmly on both sides to close it.

If you press the upper unit down only on one side, the opposite side will not be full closed. Make sure that you hear it click into place.

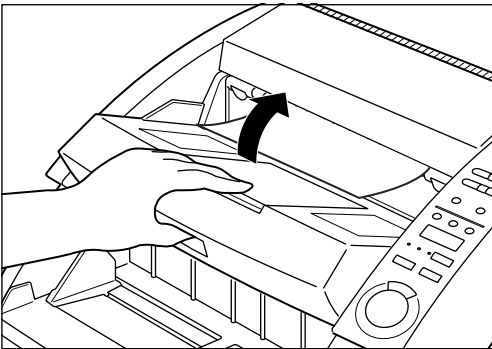


Paper Jam in Paper Exit Section

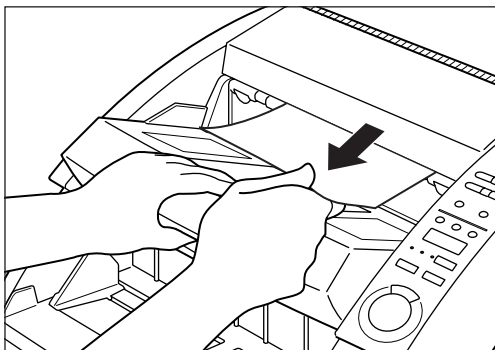
- 1** Remove the jammed paper from the document tray or the document eject tray.
- 2** Remove the removable tray or document eject support plate if they are installed on the document tray. Close the document eject tray extension if it is open.



- 3** Open the upper unit.
Press the open/close button, and slightly lift up the upper unit.

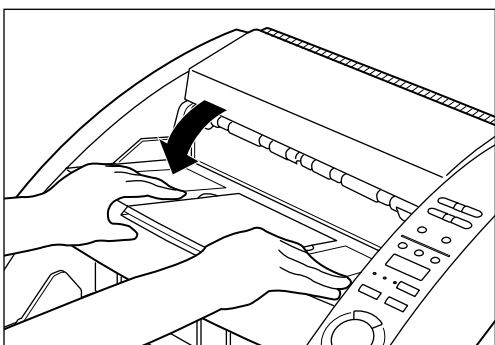


4 Remove any jammed paper from the exit section.



5 Press the upper unit down firmly on both sides to close it.

If you press the upper unit down only on one side, the opposite side will not be full closed. Make sure that you hear it click into place.



4.3

Paper Feed Trouble

If the document is not fed properly or the detection functions do not work smoothly, remedy the problem by following the remedies described below.

Condition	Paper jam has occurred.
Cause and remedy	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Check the document to see if the size and thickness of the document are within the ranges supported by the scanner, and to see if the quality of the document paper is appropriate. For cautions on handling documents, see “About Documents” (P.36).• Document slipping may be causing a paper feed error to occur (P.32). Slide the paper feed adjustment lever to adjust paper feed.• Dirty or worn rollers inside the scanner cause paper jams. Clean rollers if dirty. (P.83) Worn rollers must be replaced. Contact a Canon service department.

Condition	The document tray does not rise and clicks into place.
Cause and remedy	The weight of the loaded paper sometimes increases due to the environment (e.g. very humid locations) in which the document is stored. If this happens, the weight of the paper will exceed the maximum allowed stacked weight even if the number of stacked sheets is below the maximum, and sometimes prevent the document tray from rising. Reduce the number of document sheets loaded on the document tray and scan the document again.

Condition	Double feed error occurs even though documents are not being double-fed. (erroneous detection of double feed)
Cause and remedy	If the size and thickness of the paper on which the Function Sheet is copied differs from that of the document to be scanned when the Function Sheet is used, the scanner erroneously judges this to be a double feed, and this error occurs. If this happens, turn double feed detection OFF, and scan the document again. Or, copy the Function Sheet on paper of same size and thickness as the document, and use that copy.

Condition	Double feed cannot be detected.
Cause and remedy	Double feed detection is not possible on documents having a width of 130 mm (5.1 in.) or less even if double feed detection is set to ON.
Condition	Skew error occurs even though paper is not being fed at an angle.
Cause and remedy	The scanner erroneously judges that a skew is occurring. This error occurs when the area 5 mm (0.2 in.) from the top edge of the original contains text or pictures or the original has a dark background. If this error occurs, turn skew detection OFF and scan the document again. Or, make a copy of the document on different paper, provide a wider margin around the document (or lighten the background), and scan the document again.
Condition	When the document becomes dirty (with imprinter installed).
Cause and remedy	This is because ink is sticking to the holes on the guide plate on the inside of the imprinter. Clean these holes with a cotton wool bud.



When The Scanned Image is Not Normal

If there is a problem in the scanned image (image is not sharp or stripes appear in the image), one of the following may be a probable cause. Check as follows and take the appropriate remedy.

- **The scanning glasses and rollers on the scanner are dirty.**

If the scanning glasses and rollers on the scanner are dirty, that dirt will appear on the scanned image.

→ Clean the scanning glasses and rollers. For details, see Chapter 5 “Daily Cleaning” (P.83).

- **The scan conditions are inappropriate.**

When the scan condition setup is inappropriate, the scanned image will not be sharp or will appear darkish.

→ Check the brightness and other scanner settings.

If the scanned image is foggy or the document is not scanned at all, a probable cause is that brightness is set too high.

If the scanned image appears darkish, a probable cause is that the brightness is set too low.

Also, check the settings on the driver and the application.

- **The driver or application does not run correctly.**

If the document cannot be scanned correctly even if the scan conditions are adjusted, a probable cause is that the driver or the application is not functioning correctly.

→ Re-install the driver or application.

For details on how to install the driver, see the separate ISIS/TWAIN Driver Instructions.

For details on how to install the application, see the instruction manual for the application in use.

- **Other Causes**

The computer may be correctly recognizing the scanner, and scanning may not be possible with the driver and application correctly installed. If this happens, a probable cause is that the SCSI card not matched to the computer is installed. This error message is sometimes no longer output by turning asynchronous transfer in the scanner’s user mode OFF (P.64). If this does not rectify the problem, contact the computer or SCSI card manufacturer.

If the above remedies do not rectify the problem, contact a Canon service department.



When An Error Code is Displayed

When the scanner unit malfunctions or when trouble such as a paper feed or eject error occurs, an error code appears on the counter display of the operation panel. The following describes error codes that appear on the counter display and how to remedy the error.

Error codes d01, d02, d03

Cause Two or more document pages were scanned.

Remedy Press the Stop key to reset the counter to "0". Check the document with the scanned image, and scan the document again.

Error code C01

Cause The upper unit is open.

Remedy Close the upper unit.

Error code C02

Cause The imprinter cover is open. (with imprinter installed)

Remedy Close the imprinter cover.

Error code C03

Cause The upper unit and imprinter cover are open. (with imprinter installed)

Remedy Close the upper unit and imprinter cover.

Error code C04

Cause The endorser ED600 cover is open (with endorser ED600 installed)

Remedy Close the endorser ED600 cover.

Error code C05

Cause The upper unit and endorser ED600 cover are open (with endorser ED600 installed).

Remedy Close the upper unit and endorser ED600 cover.

Error code	C06
Cause	The imprinter cover and endorser ED600 cover are open (with imprinter and endorser ED600 installed).
Remedy	Close the imprinter cover and endorser ED600 cover.
Error code	C07
Cause	The upper unit, imprinter cover and endorser ED600 cover are open (with imprinter and endorser ED600 installed).
Remedy	Close all covers.
Error codes	E20, E21, E22, E23, E24, E25, E27, E28, E29, E30, E40, E41, E80, E85
Cause	Unit internal error
Remedy	The unit must be repaired by a service engineer. Turn the power OFF, contact the store of purchase or a Canon service department, and notify them of the error code.
Error code	L01
Cause	Too much data. Ran out of memory.
Remedy	Press the Stop key to reset the counter to "0". Optional memory must be added on to use an extra function. Contact the store of purchase or a Canon service department. For details on additional memory requirements when extra functions are set, see "DR-5020/5080C Scan Mode Tables." (P.88)
Error code	L02
Cause	Too much data. Ran out of memory.
Remedy	Press the Stop key to reset the counter to "0". This error occurs if you scan both sides of an A3/11" x 17"-size document. Either scan one side of the document at a time, or change the scanning mode.
Error code	U01
Cause	Number of document sheets to be scanned exceeds set number of sheets in the verify scan.
Remedy	Two or more sheets may have been fed when the number of sheets is counted. Press the Stop key to reset the counter to "0". Check the number of sheets to see if all document sheets have been counted, and scan the document again.

Error code	U02
Cause	Number of scanned document sheets is less than the set number of sheets in the verify scan.
Remedy	Two or more sheets may have been fed when the document is scanned. Press the Stop key to reset the counter to "0". Check the number of scanned images with the number of document sheets to see if all document sheets have been correctly scanned, and scan the document again.

Error code	H01
Cause	The optional imprinter's ink cartridge is not installed.
Remedy	Install the imprinter cartridge properly.

Error code	H02
Cause	Endorser ED600 (option) connection error
Remedy	Connect the endorser ED600 properly.

Error Code	P00, P01, P02, P03, P04, P06, P08, P10, P20
Cause	Scanner paper jam
Remedy	Remove the jammed paper. (P.70)

Error code	P30
Cause	Endorser ED600 paper jam
Remedy	Remove the paper jammed from inside the endorser ED600 according to the instructions in the Endorser ED600 Instructions.

Error code	P80
Cause	Paper feed error
Remedy	Open and close the upper unit.

Error code	J18
Cause	A document was skewed.
Remedy	Remove the skewed document. Then, scan the document again after checking that the image on the document for which this error occurred has been properly scanned.

Chapter 5

Daily Cleaning

This chapter describes daily cleaning of the scanner.

5.1 Daily Cleaning	82
---------------------------------	-----------

5.1 Daily Cleaning

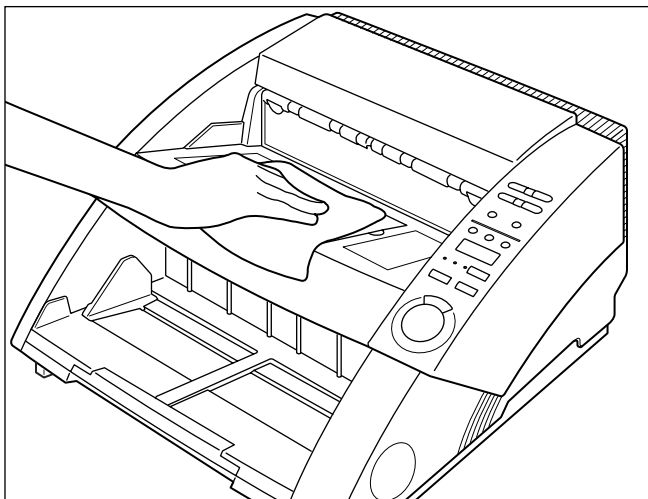
To ensure high-quality image scanning, regularly clean your DR-5020/5080C as described below.



- Before you clean the scanner, turn the scanner and computer power OFF and disconnect the power cord from the power outlet. Failure to do so might cause electrical shock.
- Never clean the scanner with any kind of organic solvent such as alcohol, benzene and paint thinner. Doing so might cause fire and electrical shock, or cause the exterior to disfigure or discolor.
- Never spray mild detergent or water directly on the scanning glasses. The spray could penetrate below the glass and contaminate the internal light source and lenses.

Cleaning the Main Unit

Wipe the scanner with a firmly wrung cloth moistened slightly with water or mild detergent. Then wipe off with a clean, dry cloth.



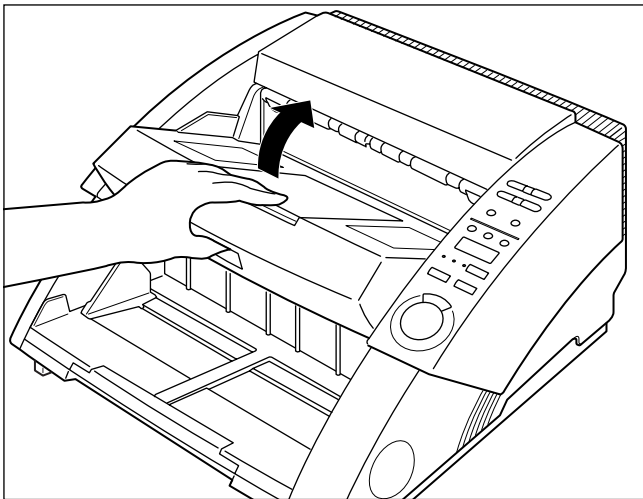
Cleaning the Scanning Glasses and Rollers

A probable cause of stripes appearing in scanned images or dirt appearing on scanned documents is dirt on the scanning glasses or rollers. Clean scanning glasses and rollers regularly.

- 1** Press the power switch to turn the scanner OFF, and unplug the power cord from the power outlet.
- 2** Remove the removable tray or document eject support plate on the document eject tray if it is installed. Close the document eject tray extension if it is open.

- 3** Open the upper unit.

Press the open/close button and raise the top of the upper unit gently until it locks in the open position.

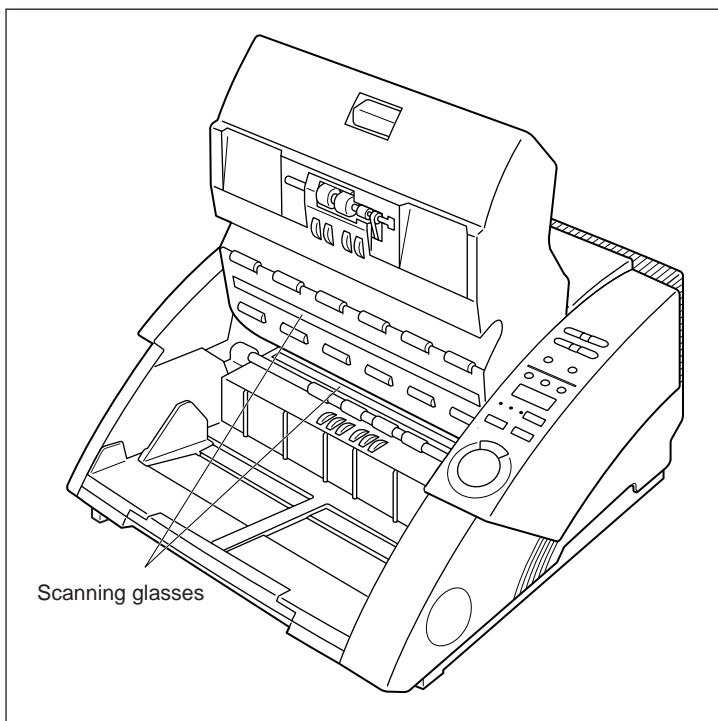


4 Use a clean, soft cloth to wipe the scanning glasses.

Be sure to clean both scanning glasses, the one below and one above.

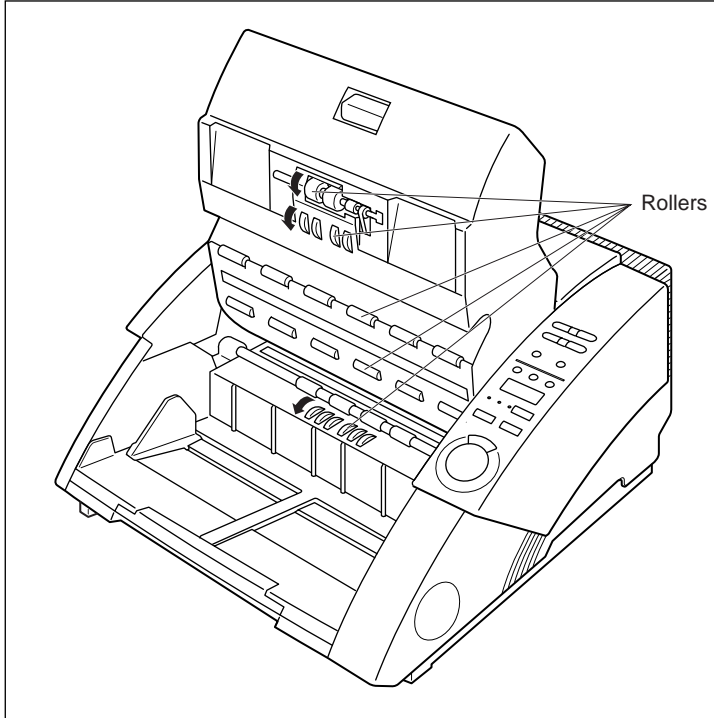


Never spray mild detergent or water directly on the scanning glasses. The spray could penetrate below the glass and contaminate the internal light source and lenses.



5 Wipe the rollers with a firmly wrung cloth moistened with water or mild detergent.

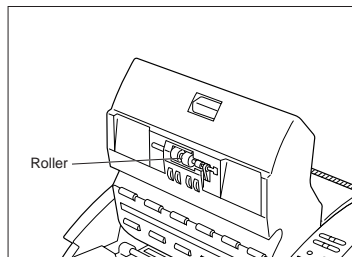
Rollers are located at the positions indicated in the figure below. Turn these rollers in the direction of the arrows as you wipe them clean.



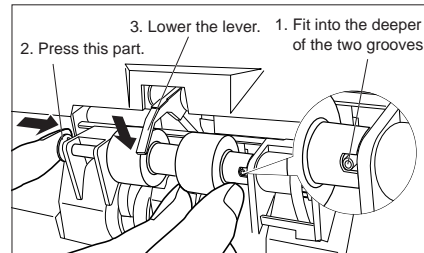
ENGLISH



HINT



A



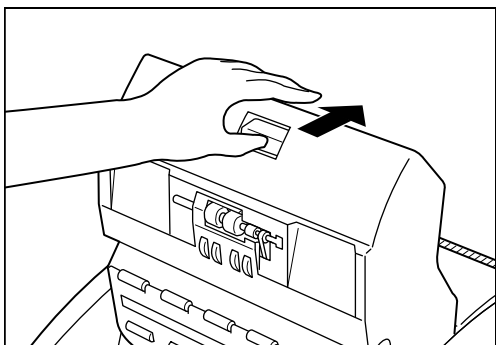
B

- If a roller becomes loose (Figure A), re-attach it as shown in Figure B.
- Before you return the upper unit to its original position, be sure to lower the lever on the feed unit (Figure B). If the document is scanned with the lever at the up position, a paper feed error will occur.

6 Use a clean, dry, soft cloth to wipe off any water from the rollers.

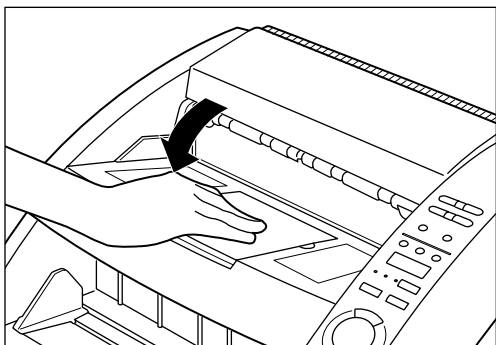
7 To close the upper unit, push the upper unit inwards as far as possible, and then release the upper unit.

When you release the upper unit, it slowly begins to fall down. Do not apply unnecessary force to push the upper unit down. Doing so might damage the scanner.



8 When the upper unit has fallen as far as it can go, press down firmly on both sides to close it.

If you press the upper unit down only on one side, the opposite side will not be full closed. Make sure that you hear it click into place.



MEMO

If paper jams or double-feed (feeding of two or more document pages) occurs frequently in spite of your having cleaned the rollers, a probable cause is roller friction. If this is the case, replace the rollers. Contact the store of purchase or a Canon service department.

Power Cord

If you leave the power plug connected to the power outlet for a long period of time, dust may accumulate at the connecting section of the power outlet, and cause fire or electric shock. We recommend periodically cleaning the power plug.

Imprinter

Dirt may stick to scanned documents when the imprinter is in use. This is because ink is sticking to the holes on the guide plate on the inside of the imprinter. Clean these holes with a cotton wool bud.

Appendix

◆ DR-5020/5080C Scan Mode Tables

Error messages are sometimes displayed as some scan modes are not supported on the scanner due to memory restrictions. If this happens, add on optional memory (DR-5080C only) referring to the table below.



MEMO

- Scanning is not possible when the width of the document exceeds 216 mm/8.5 in. in the duplex mode at a resolution of 400 x 400 dpi.
- Not all modes are supported depending on the application and scanner driver in use. For more details, thoroughly read the instruction manuals for the application and scanner driver in use.

64 MB of memory on DR-5080C (standard) O: Supported X: Not supported

Scan mode		Resolution (H x V)	Duplex					Simplex										
			A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR	A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR				
2-bit	Text mode (Black and White)	400 -400	~		~	~												
		300 -300																
		300 -150																
		240 -240																
		200 -200																
	Photo mode (Black and White ED)	400 -400	~		~	~												
		300 -300																
		300 -150																
		240 -240																
		200 -200																
Gray scale	4 levels	400 -400	~		~	~												
		300 -300																
		300 -150																
		240 -240																
		200 -200																
	16 levels	400 -400	~		~	~												
		300 -300																
		300 -150																
		240 -240																
		200 -200																
	256 levels	400 -400	~		~	~												
		300 -300																
		300 -150																
		240 -240																
		200 -200																
Color	3-bit	400 -400	~		~	~												
		300 -300																
		300 -150																
		240 -240																
		200 -200																
	6-bit	400 -400	~		~	~												
		300 -300																
		300 -150																
		240 -240																
		200 -200																
	12-bit	400 -400	~		~	~												
		300 -300																
		300 -150																
		240 -240	~															
		200 -200																
	24-bit	400 -400	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~	~
		300 -300	~		~	~	~											
		300 -150																
		240 -240	~															
		200 -200																

128 MB of memory on DR-5080C (option) O: Supported X: Not supported

Scan mode		Resolution (H x V)	Duplex						Simplex							
			A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR	A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR		
2-bit	Text mode (Black and White)	400 -400	~		~	~										
		300 -300														
		300 -150														
		240 -240														
		200 -200														
	Photo mode (Black and White ED)	400 -400	~		~	~										
		300 -300														
		300 -150														
		240 -240														
		200 -200														
Gray scale	4 levels	400 -400	~		~	~										
		300 -300														
		300 -150														
		240 -240														
		200 -200														
	16 levels	400 -400	~		~	~										
		300 -300														
		300 -150														
		240 -240														
		200 -200														
	256 levels	400 -400	~		~	~										
		300 -300														
		300 -150														
		240 -240														
		200 -200														
Color	3-bit	400 -400	~		~	~										
		300 -300														
		300 -150														
		240 -240														
		200 -200														
	6-bit	400 -400	~		~	~										
		300 -300														
		300 -150														
		240 -240														
		200 -200														
	12-bit	400 -400	~		~	~										
		300 -300														
		300 -150														
		240 -240														
		200 -200														
	24-bit	400 -400	~		~	~										
		300 -300														
		300 -150														
		240 -240														
		200 -200														

ENGLISH

DR-5020 O: Supported X: Not supported

Scan mode		Resolution (H x V)	Duplex						Simplex							
			A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR	A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR		
2-bit	Text mode (Black and White)	400 ~400	~		~	~										
		300 ~300														
		300 ~150														
		240 ~240														
		200 ~200														
	Photo mode (Black and White ED)	400 ~400	~		~	~										
		300 ~300														
		300 ~150														
		240 ~240														
		200 ~200														

DR-5020/5080C Specifications

	DR-5020	DR-5080C
Type	Desktop sheet fed type	
Document size	Width: 55 to 295 mm/2.2 x 11.6 in. Length: 70 to 432 mm/2.8 x 17.0 in. Thickness: 0.06 to 0.15 mm (Auto feeding) 0.06 to 0.2 mm (Manual feeding) *The maximum document feed width is 297 mm/11.7 in..	
Automatic feeding capacity	Maximum stack height: 45 mm (up to A4) 20 mm (~A3)	
Document feeding	Semi-Auto/automatic/manual	
Scanning method	Contact image sensor (CMOS)	
Light source	Green single-line LED array	3-color (RGB) single-line LED array
Scanning mode	Top side/Duplex/Simplex 2-bit Text/Photo mode	Top side/Duplex/Simplex 2-bit Text/Photo mode Gray scale 4/16/256 levels Color 3/6/12/24 bits
Scanning resolution (primary scanning direction x secondary scanning direction)	200 x 100 dpi - Simple/Duplex - Text mode/Photo mode 300 x 150 dpi - Simple/Duplex - Text mode/Photo mode 200 x 200 dpi - Simple/Duplex - Text mode/Photo mode 240 x 240 dpi - Simple/Duplex - Text mode/Photo mode 300 x 300 dpi - Simple/Duplex - Text mode/Photo mode 400 x 400 dpi - Simple/Duplex - Text mode/Photo mode Scalable from 200 to 300 dpi in 10 dpi steps	
Scanning speed (max.)	<A4, portrait, binary w/o AE> 79 ppm (200 x 100 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) 59 ppm (300 x 150 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) 50 ppm (200 x 200 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) 32 ppm (300 x 300 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) 18 ppm (400 x 400 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) <A3, binary w/o AE> 58 ppm (200 x 100 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) 42 ppm (300 x 150 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) 33 ppm (200 x 200 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) 22 ppm (300 x 300 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) 13 ppm (400 x 400 dpi - Simplex/Duplex)	
Automatic feed capacity	A4 (LTR) or smaller: Max. 500 sheets (80g/m ² or 20-lb bond) Larger than A4 (LTR): Max. 200 sheets (80g/m ² or 20-lb bond)	
Other functions	Automatic paper size detection, AE, Automatic paper thickness adjustment, Document sheet count function, Paper thickness and double feed detection, Skew compensation, Dropout color, Selection of modes by scanner Control Sheets, etc	
Dimensions	262 (H) x 427 (W) x 485 (D) mm 10.3 (H) x 16.8 (W) x 19.1 (D) in.	

Weight	Approx. 20 kg (44.2 lb)
Power requirement	AC 220-240V (50/60 Hz), 0.6A (max) AC 120V (60 Hz), 1A (max)
Power consumption	120 W (max)
Noise	Less than 70 dB
Operating environment	Temperature: 10°C to 32.5°C (50°F to 90.5°F) Humidity: 20% to 80% RH (with imprinter in use 30% to 80% RH)

Specifications are subject to change without notice.

Options

Name	Function
Add-on memory (128 MB) (only for DR-5080C)	Replacing standard 64 MB with add-on memory allows processing at more accurate scan conditions.* * For details on scan conditions (combinations of scan mode, resolution and paper size) that are enabled by adding optional memory on the scanner, refer to Appendix, DR-5020/5080C Scan Mode Tables (P.88).
Imprinter	Prints characters such as numbers, alphabet characters and symbols on the front side of the document after it is scanned.
Bar code decoder	Reads and recognizes bar codes in the document.
Endorser	Stamps an 8-digit number and any specified characters on the rear side of the document after it is scanned.

For details of each option, contact your sales agent.

Index

- A -

About documents	36
Add-on memory	92
Air vent	16
Auto mode	46

- B -

Bar code	64
Bar code decoder	92
Basic Settings	59
Brightness key	18, 59

- C -

Carrying the scanner	9, 23
Cleaning	82
- Main unit	82
- Scanning Glasses and Rollers ...	83
Connecting the SCSI cable	24
Connecting the power cord	26
Connecting to a Computer	24
Count Only key	17, 19, 53, 59
Count Only mode	53, 64
Counter display	18
Counting the Number of Originals In a Document	53
Document guide label	20, 32

- D -

DIP switch	16, 25
Daily maintenance	6
Daily cleaning	82
Document detection	64
Document eject support plate ...	20, 30
Document eject tray	15
Document eject tray extension ..	15, 29
Document guide	15
Document guide labels	20, 32
Document tray	15
Document tray extension	15, 27
Double Feed Detection	63

- E -

Endorser	67, 78, 79, 92
Error Codes	78
Extention wire	15, 27

- F -

Feeding Option key	18, 39, 59
Fixed Thickness mode	60, 62
Function Key Settings	60
Function Sheets	55
Function key labels	20
Function keys	17, 60

- I -

Imprinter	60, 62, 64, 78, 79, 87, 92
Installation Location	8

- J -

Job Separation Sheet	56
----------------------------	----

- M -

Manual mode	50
Manual Thickness Adjustment	61
Mode Selection key	18, 59

- N -

New File key	19, 59
--------------------	--------

- O -

Open/close button	15
Operation panel	17, 60
Operation panel buzzer	64
Options	92

- P -

Packaging	14
Paper Feed Adjustment	32
Paper feed adjustment lever	15, 32
Paper jam	70
- in paper exit section	73
- in the paper feed unit	70
Parts Names	15
- Front view	15

- Rear view	16
Power cord	14, 26
Power cord connector	16
Power switch	15

- R -

Removable tray	20, 31
Removing paper jam	70
Restore Memorized Setting	63

- S -

Safety Precautions	6
SCSI connectors	16, 24
SCSI ID	25, 68
SCSI synchronization	64
Scan Mode Tables	88
Scan Procedure	39
Scanner control sheets	56
Semi Auto mode	43
Sensor	47
Setting Scan Conditions	58
Setting in the User Mode	64
Setting the SCSI ID and terminator	25
Simplex/Duplex key	17, 59
Skew compensation	64
Specifications	90
Start key	19
Stop key	19
Stopper	15, 29
System Requirements	22

- T -

Terminator setting	25, 68
Troubleshooting	67
Turning the POWER ON/OFF	33

- U -

Upper Unit	15
User mode	64

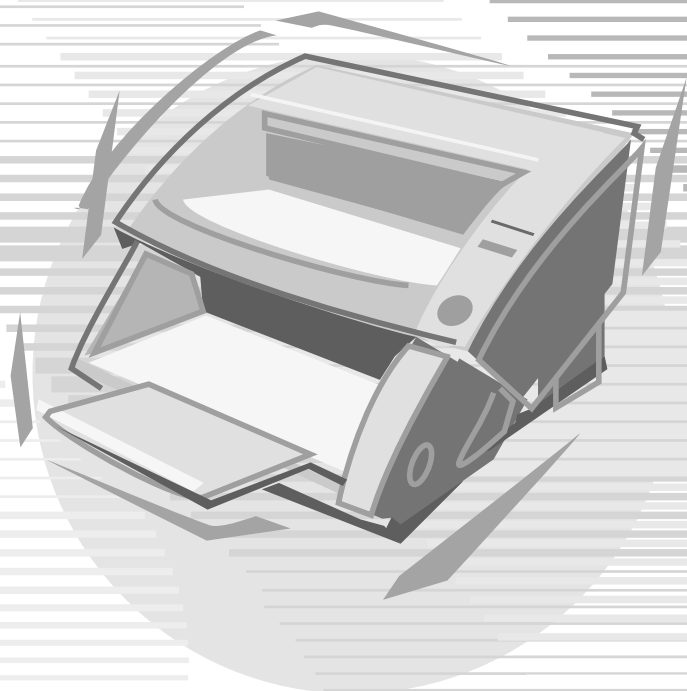
- W -

When the scanned image is not normal	77, 83
When the scanner is not recognized	68

DR-5020/5080C

Mode d'emploi

Lisez attentivement ce mode d'emploi avant d'utiliser cet appareil, et rangez-le en lieu sûr après l'avoir consulté.



NOTICE

- ① Copyright© 1999 par CANON ELECTRONICS INC. Tous droits réservés. Aucune partie de cette publication ne peut être reproduite, transmise, transcrite, stockée dans une banque de données ou traduite dans une langue quelconque ou dans une langue informatique sous quelque forme que ce soit ou par quelque moyen que ce soit, électronique, mécanique, magnétique, optique, chimique, manuel ou autre, sans le consentement de CANON ELECTRONICS INC.
- ② Le contenu de ce mode d'emploi pourra être changé sans préavis.
- ③ Tous les efforts possibles ont été faits pour assurer la précision des informations contenues dans ce manuel. Néanmoins, Canon Electronics Inc. et les succursales citées au dos de la couverture rejettent toute responsabilité pour toute erreur ou les conséquences possibles de cette erreur.
- ④ Nous rejetons toute responsabilité pour les dommages résultant du fonctionnement, quels que soient les termes de l'article ③.

Marques de fabrique et marques déposées

- Microsoft Windows® et Microsoft Windows NT® sont des marques de Microsoft Corporation déposées aux Etats-Unis et dans d'autres pays.
- ISIS® est une marque déposée de Pixel Translation A Division of ActionPoint Inc.
- Les noms de produits mentionnés dans ce manuel servent à titre d'identification seulement et peuvent être des marques de fabrique et/ou des marques déposées de leurs détenteurs respectifs.

INTRODUCTION

Merci pour l'achat du scanner de documents Canon DR-5020/5080C.

En tout, trois manuels sont livrés avec le DR-5020/5080C : le Mode d'emploi du DR-5020/5080C (ce manuel), le Mode d'emploi Scanning Utility 5000 et le Mode d'emploi ISIS/TWAIN.

Ce manuel explique comment raccorder le scanner, charger des documents, résoudre les incidents papier ainsi que d'autres informations importantes. Il indique aussi les précautions à prendre lorsque vous utilisez le scanner. Pour assimiler toutes les fonctions de ce scanner et en tirer le meilleur parti, veuillez lire avec attention ce manuel (Mode d'emploi du DR-5020/5080C) et les Modes d'emploi séparés de l'application Scanning Utility 5000 et du logiciel ISIS/TWAIN. Les logiciels ISIS ou TWAIN ne sont pas nécessaires car l'application Scanning Utility 5000 fournie avec le DR-5020/5080C emploie un logiciel de numérisation particulier.

Après avoir lu ces modes d'emploi, veuillez les ranger en lieu sûr.

Chaque mode d'emploi contient les informations suivantes.

Mode d'emploi du DR-5020/5080C (ce manuel)

Ce manuel explique comment raccorder le scanner, charger des documents, résoudre les incidents papier ainsi que d'autres informations importantes. Veuillez le lire avant d'utiliser le DR-5020/5080C.

Mode d'emploi de Scanning Utility 5000

Ce manuel indique comment utiliser l'application Scanning Utility 5000 livrée avec le scanner.

Mode d'emploi des logiciels ISIS/TWAIN

Ce manuel indique comment fonctionne le scanner lorsqu'il est utilisé avec une application compatible avec les logiciels ISIS ou TWAIN.

■ Attention

Veuillez noter les points suivants lorsque vous effectuez des copies à l'aide du scanner :

- La reproduction de billets ou d'autres types de devises ou de valeurs négociables est un délit pouvant entraîner des poursuites judiciaires.
- La reproduction de titres officiels, de licences, billets de transport, documents privés ou protégés par le copyright et de tout autre document est contraire à la loi et peut entraîner des poursuites judiciaires.
- La copie d'images dans un but non personnel ou familial exige l'autorisation du propriétaire du copyright.

CONVENTIONS

Ce manuel contient les symboles et indications suivantes.
Veuillez lire ce qui suit avec attention pour vous familiariser avec leurs significations.



A lire avec attention. Risque de mort ou de blessure.



A lire avec attention. Risque de dommage matériel ou de perte de données précieuses.



Indique où trouver des informations utiles dans ce manuel. Le nombre entre parenthèses indique la page de référence contenant de plus amples informations sur la phrase ou le paragraphe précédent.



Indique des conseils sur l'emploi du scanner ou les problèmes mineurs à éviter.

■ Cet appareil

Les DR-5020 et DR-5080C sont appelés “ scanner ” dans ce manuel. Si une description particulière est nécessaire pour l'une de ces machines, le nom du scanner, DR-5020 ou 5080C, sera mentionné explicitement.

SOMMAIRE

INTRODUCTION	1
CONVENTIONS	2
Consignes de sécurité	6
Chapitre 1 Présentation du DR-5020/5080C	11
1.1 Caractéristiques du DR-5020/5080C	12
1.2 Emballage : Que contient le carton ?	14
1.3 Noms des organes	15
◆ Face avant	15
◆ Face arrière	16
◆ Panneau de commande du scanner	17
◆ Plateau amovible	20
◆ Plaque support de sortie des documents	20
◆ Etiquettes de touches de fonction	20
Chapitre 2 Informations préliminaires	21
2.1 Configuration requise	22
2.2 Installation et raccordement	23
Transport	23
Raccordement à un ordinateur	24
◆ Branchement du câble SCSI	24
◆ Réglage de l'ID et de la terminaison SCSI	25
Branchement du cordon d'alimentation	26
◆ Branchement du cordon d'alimentation	26
2.3 Préparation pour le chargement et l'éjection du papier	27
Préparation de l'extension du plateau de documents et de l'extension du plateau de sortie des documents	27
◆ Extension du plateau de documents	27
◆ Extension du plateau de sortie des documents	29
◆ Plaque support de sortie des documents	30
◆ Plateau amovible	31
Réglage de la charge du papier	32
Fixation des étiquettes du guide de documents	32
2.4 Mise sous et hors tension	33
Mise sous tension	33
Mise hors tension	34

Chapitre 3 Préparation des documents 35

3.1 A propos des documents	36
3.2 Chargement et numérisation des documents	38
Numérisation	39
◆ Mode Remote	40
◆ Semi-Auto	43
◆ Auto	46
◆ Mode Manuel	50
Comptage du nombre d'originaux d'un document	53
Feuilles de fonction	55
3.3 Réglage des conditions de numérisation	58
Paramètres de base	59
Paramètres des touches de fonction	60
◆ Réglage manuel de l'épaisseur	61
◆ Module de marquage	62
◆ Mode d'épaisseur fixe	62
◆ Détection de double charge	63
◆ Rétablissement des réglages mémorisés	63
Paramètres du mode Utilisateur	64
◆ Utilisation du mode Utilisateur	65

Chapitre 4 En cas de panne 67

4.1 Si le scanner n'est pas reconnu	68
4.2 Résolution des incidents papier	70
Incident papier dans le chargeur de papier	70
Incident papier dans la sortie du papier	73
4.3 Incident dans le chargeur	75
4.4 Si l'image numérisée n'est pas normale	77
4.5 Si un code d'erreur apparaît	78

Chapitre 5 Nettoyage 81

5.1 Nettoyage quotidien	82
Nettoyage de la partie principale	82
Nettoyage des vitres de numérisation et des cylindres	83
Cordon d'alimentation	87
Module de marquage	87

Annexe	88
◆ Tableaux des modes de numérisation des DR-5020/5080C.....	88
Spécifications du DR-5020/5080C	90
Options	92
Index	93

Consignes de sécurité

Entretien quotidien

Lorsque vous travaillez à proximité de l'appareil, respectez les consignes suivantes afin d'éviter tous risques d'incendie et de décharge électrique.

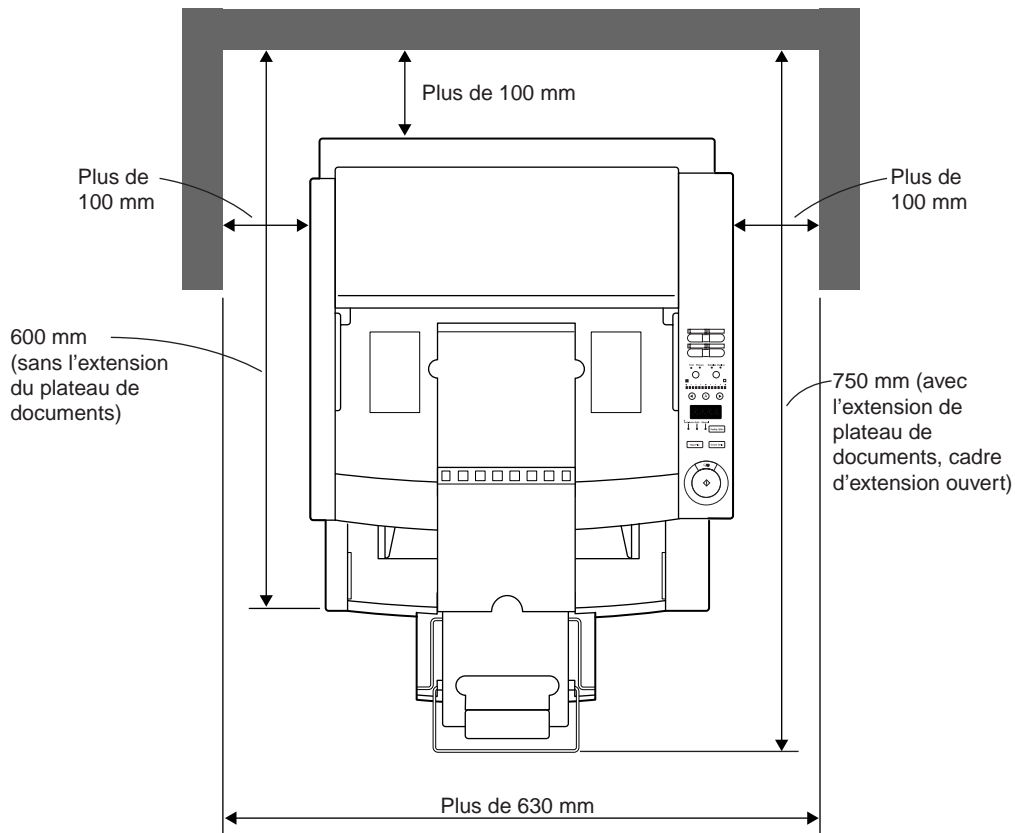


- Ne jamais installer et utiliser l'appareil près de substances inflammables, comme l'alcool, le diluant de peinture, le benzène ou toute autre solution volatile.
- Ne pas endommager le cordon d'alimentation ni le modifier, et ne jamais poser d'objets lourds sur le cordon d'alimentation.
- Ne jamais toucher le cordon d'alimentation ni saisir la fiche avec des mains mouillées.
- Ne jamais brancher l'appareil sur une prise multifiches.
- Ne jamais enrouler, plier ou envelopper le cordon d'alimentation sur lui-même ou sur un autre objet. Brancher la fiche à fond sur la prise.
- N'utiliser que le cordon d'alimentation fourni avec le scanner.
- Ne jamais essayer de démonter ni de modifier l'appareil.
- Ne jamais utiliser d'aérosols inflammables près de l'appareil.
- Avant de nettoyer l'appareil, l'éteindre et débrancher le cordon d'alimentation de la prise secteur.
- Utiliser un chiffon légèrement mouillé d'une solution d'eau ou de détergent neutre et bien essoré pour nettoyer l'appareil. Ne jamais utiliser de solution volatile comme l'alcool, le benzène et le diluant de peinture.
- Si un son étrange est audible, de la fumée ou une chaleur anormale se dégage, des vibrations sont perceptibles ou des odeurs bizarres sortent de l'appareil, éteindre celui-ci immédiatement et débrancher le cordon d'alimentation de la prise secteur. Faire immédiatement appel au service après-vente.
- Manier l'appareil avec précaution. Eviter les chocs et les vibrations dus aux manipulations brusques. Si l'appareil semble être endommagé, l'éteindre immédiatement, débrancher le cordon d'alimentation secteur de la prise secteur et faire appel au service après-vente.
- Avant de changer l'appareil de place, toujours l'éteindre et débrancher le cordon d'alimentation de la prise secteur.



- Ne jamais poser l'appareil sur une surface instable ou exposée à des vibrations pour ne pas l'endommager.
Il pourrait tomber ou être renversé et causer des blessures.
- Afin d'éviter toute surchauffe interne et les risques d'incendie, ne jamais bloquer les ailettes de ventilation à l'arrière du scanner.
- Ne pas poser de récipients contenant des liquides, boissons, etc, des trombones, agrafes, colliers ou autres objets métalliques près de l'appareil. Si par hasard du liquide ou un objet métallique tombait dans l'appareil, l'éteindre immédiatement, débrancher le cordon d'alimentation de la prise secteur et faire appel au service après-vente.
- Ne jamais installer l'appareil dans un endroit humide ou poussiéreux. L'humidité et la poussière peuvent causer un incendie ou une décharge électrique.
- Ne jamais poser d'objets sur l'appareil. Ils peuvent tomber ou se renverser et causer des blessures.
- Toujours saisir la fiche du cordon pour débrancher le cordon d'alimentation. Ne jamais essayer de débrancher le cordon de la prise en tirant sur le cordon. Les fils pourraient être mis à nu ou se rompre et causer un incendie ou une décharge électrique.
- Laisser un espace libre tout autour de la prise secteur pour que le cordon d'alimentation se débranche facilement.
- Ne jamais répandre d'eau ni de solution volatile (alcool, benzène, diluant de peinture) dans l'appareil. Ils peuvent être la cause d'un incendie ou d'une décharge électrique.
- Si l'appareil ne doit pas être utilisé pendant un certain temps, débrancher le cordon d'alimentation de la prise secteur.
- Éviter de porter des vêtements larges, des bijoux longs, des cravates longues ou même des cheveux longs, qui pourraient être pris dans les pièces mobiles du scanner, en particulier dans les cylindres. Si un objet devait se coincer dans l'appareil, débrancher immédiatement la fiche de la prise secteur pour arrêter l'appareil.
- Faire très attention lors du chargement d'un document ou du retrait d'une feuille de papier coincée. Il est possible de se blesser, par exemple de se couper les doigts sur les bords du papier.
- Ne pas ouvrir la partie supérieure pendant la numérisation. L'appareil risque de mal fonctionner ou vous risquez de vous blesser.
- Ne pas toucher directement les broches et les contacts du connecteur du scanner avec les doigts. Un mauvais fonctionnement peut s'ensuivre.

Emplacement idéal



Laissez un espace suffisant tout autour du scanner, comme indiqué sur l'illustration, pour le fonctionnement, l'entretien et la ventilation du scanner. Ne pas installer le scanner aux endroits suivants. Un dysfonctionnement ou une panne peuvent en résulter, ou le fonctionnement du scanner ou de l'ordinateur peuvent en être affectés.

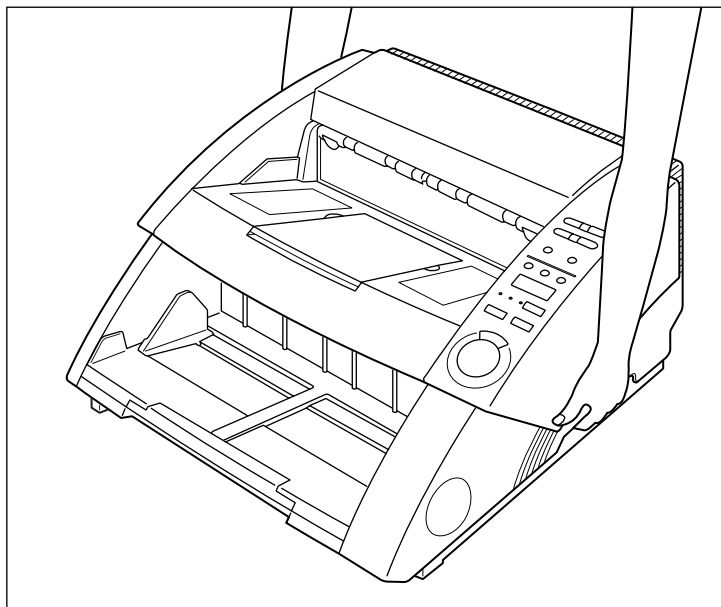
- Endroits exposés à la lumière directe du soleil
S'il est impossible d'installer le scanner à un autre endroit, mettre des rideaux ou persiennes pour protéger le scanner.
 - Endroits exposés à la poussière et aux fumées
La poussière et la fumée de cigarette affectent les composants de l'appareil.
 - Près d'une prise d'eau, d'une source de chaleur, de vapeur d'eau ou à tout autre endroit exposé à des gaz d'ammoniac, du diluant ou des produits chimiques volatils, comme dans un laboratoire.
 - Endroits exposés à des vibrations et chocs violents
 - Endroits exposés à des changements rapides de température ou à l'humidité
La condensation se produisant à l'intérieur de l'appareil peut nuire à la qualité de l'image numérisée. Installez le scanner dans une pièce remplissant les conditions suivantes :
- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------|
| Température de la pièce | 10°C à 32,5°C |
| Humidité relative | 20% à 80% HR |
- Près d'appareils électroniques ou d'appareils lourds générant un champ magnétique puissant, comme une enceinte, un téléviseur ou un appareil radio.

A propos de la source d'alimentation

- Le scanner doit être raccordé à une source de courant secteur de 220-240 V (50/60 Hz).
- Le scanner doit être branché sur une prise d'alimentation indépendante. Ne pas le brancher sur une prise utilisée pour l'alimentation d'un autre appareil. Si un câble rallonge doit être utilisé, sa capacité totale en ampères doit être suffisante.
- Si vous n'êtes pas sûr de la tension de la source d'alimentation, contactez le magasin où vous avez acheté le scanner ou la compagnie d'électricité locale.
- Ne jamais poser d'objet sur le cordon d'alimentation ni marcher dessus.
- Ne jamais enrouler ou lier le cordon d'alimentation autour d'un objet, comme un pied de table.
- Ne pas tirer sur le cordon d'alimentation. Pour le débrancher, saisir la fiche.
- Dégager tous les obstacles autour de la prise d'alimentation.

Transport

Pour déplacer le DR-5020/5080C, le tenir des deux mains comme indiqué sur la figure ci-dessous et le déplacer avec précaution. S'il n'est pas tenu par les deux poignées, il risque de tomber en vous coinçant les doigts ou causant des blessures. Le scanner pèse environ 20 kg.



Avant de changer le scanner de place, toujours l'éteindre par l'interrupteur d'alimentation et le débrancher de la prise murale. Débrancher également le câble SCSI du connecteur.

Si le scanner reste sous tension ou si le câble SCSI reste raccordé une décharge électrique peut se produire.

Chapitre 1

Présentation du DR-5020/5080C

Ce chapitre décrit les caractéristiques du scanner, le contenu du carton d'emballage et les noms et fonctions des organes du scanner.

1.1	Caractéristiques du	
	DR-5020/5080C	12
1.2	Emballage :	
	Que contient le carton ?	14
1.3	Noms des organes	15



Caractéristiques du DR-5020/5080C

Les DR-5020/5080C sont des scanners de documents polyvalents et extrêmement rapides. Ces deux appareils produisent d'excellentes acquisitions d'images en blanc et noir.

Le DR-5080C peut aussi numériser des images couleur et en niveaux de gris. Voici les principales caractéristiques de ces deux scanners.

- **Numérisation ultrarapide**

Les petits documents, comme les cartes de visite ou les chèques jusqu'au format A3, peuvent être numérisés à très grande vitesse. La vitesse maximale de numérisation est de 50 feuilles à la minute pour les documents de format A4 (portrait de format A4 en mode simplex et duplex, résolution 200 dpi).

- **Alimentation papier de grande capacité et fiable**

- 500 feuilles de papier format A4 peuvent être chargées à la fois.
- Une grande variété de documents de divers formats et de diverses épaisseurs peuvent être numérisés. L'alimentation papier est extrêmement fiable. Le document se met automatiquement en place au moment où il est inséré et des documents de divers formats de papier peuvent être insérés en même temps.

- **Fonctionnement simple**

Les documents rentrent et sortent par l'avant du scanner ; le scanner peut donc être installé sur une surface restreinte. Les réglages et les manipulations, en particulier la sélection du mode Text/Picture, Simplex/Duplex, les réglages de luminosité, etc., peuvent s'effectuer par le panneau de commande ou dans l'application.

- **Détection d'obliquité**

Grâce à cette fonction, un document inséré de travers est automatiquement détecté et remis en place.

- **Durée de service extrêmement élevée**

La durée de service de cet appareil atteint 6 millions de numérisations.

- **Faible encombrement**

262 (H) x 427 (L) x 485 (P) mm

- **Sortie simple en couleurs, en noir et blanc et en niveaux de gris (DR-5080C)**

Outre la sortie à 2 bits en noir et blanc, cet appareil supporte aussi divers autres modes :

Nuances de gris (4, 16, 256 nuances) et couleur (3, 6, 12, 24 bits). Une mémoire optionnelle devra éventuellement être ajoutée pour certains modes de numérisation. Selon l'application et le pilote de scanner utilisé, tous les modes ne sont pas non plus supportés. Pour les détails, veuillez lire attentivement les modes d'emploi de l'application et du pilote de scanner utilisés.

- **Suppression de couleurs (DR-5080C)**

Cette fonction désactive la numérisation de certaines couleurs (elle permet d'éliminer certaines couleurs) du document.

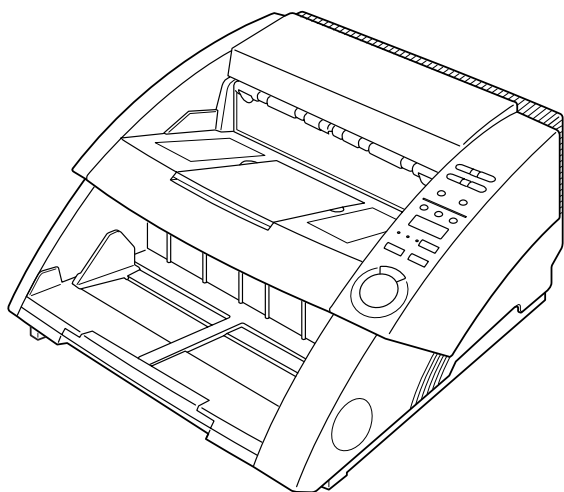
- **Options diverses**

Une grande variété d'options sont disponibles, en particulier le module de marquage pour l'impression de caractères sur les documents numérisés, le décodeur de codes barres pour la lecture des codes barres imprimés sur les documents et le module de signature pour l'impression de nombres et de caractères sur le document après la numérisation.

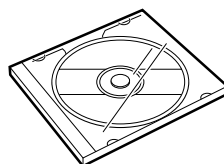
1.2

Emballage : Que contient le carton ?

Vérifiez si tous les éléments suivants se trouvent dans le carton d'emballage. Si quelque chose manque, adressez-vous à votre revendeur.



DR-5020/5080C



Installez le CD-ROM

(Scanning utility 5000 et pilote
ISIS/TWAIN)

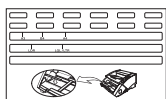


Modes d'emploi

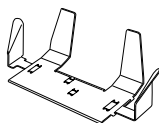
(Mode d'emploi du DR-5020/5080C
Mode d'emploi de Scanning Utility 5000
Mode d'emploi des logiciels ISIS/TWAIN)



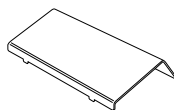
Feuilles de fonction



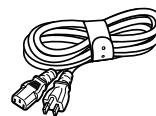
**Etiquettes des
feuilles de fonction**



Plateau amovible



**Plaque support de
sortie des
documents**



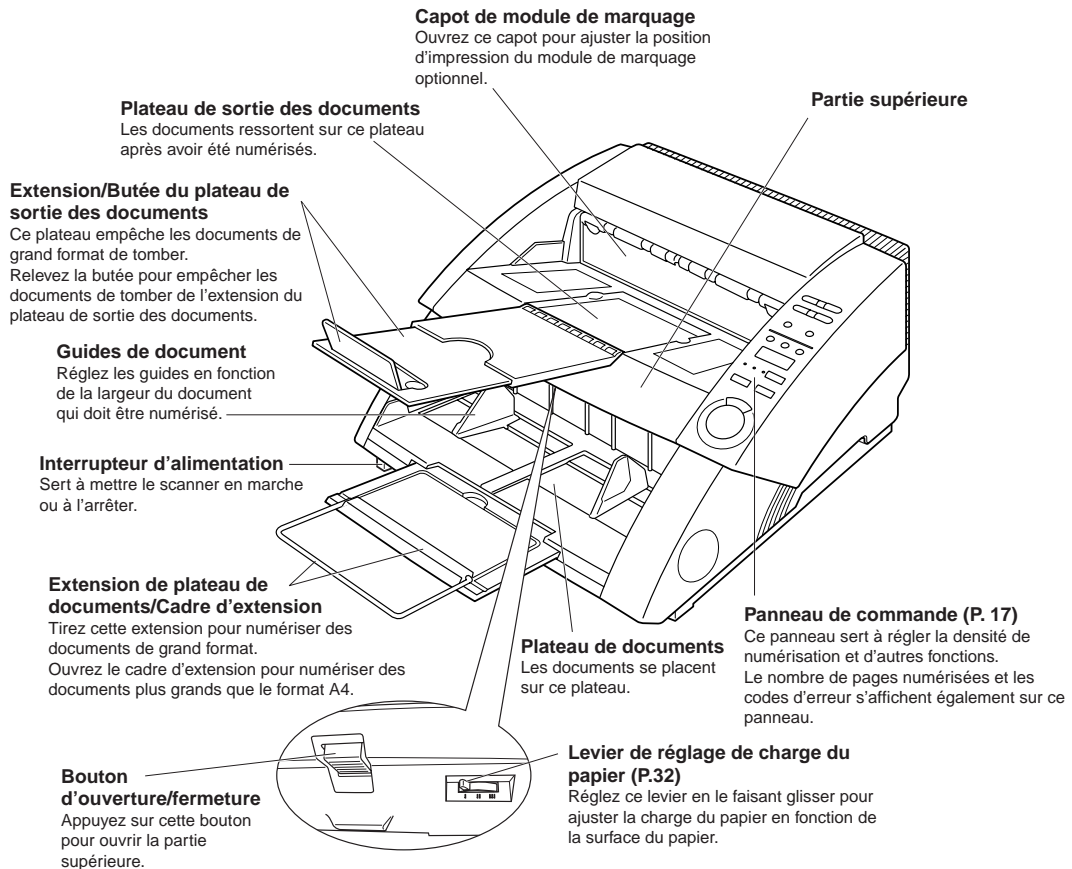
Cordon d'alimentation^{*1}

^{*1} Le cordon d'alimentation varie selon le pays de commercialisation.

1.3 Noms des organes

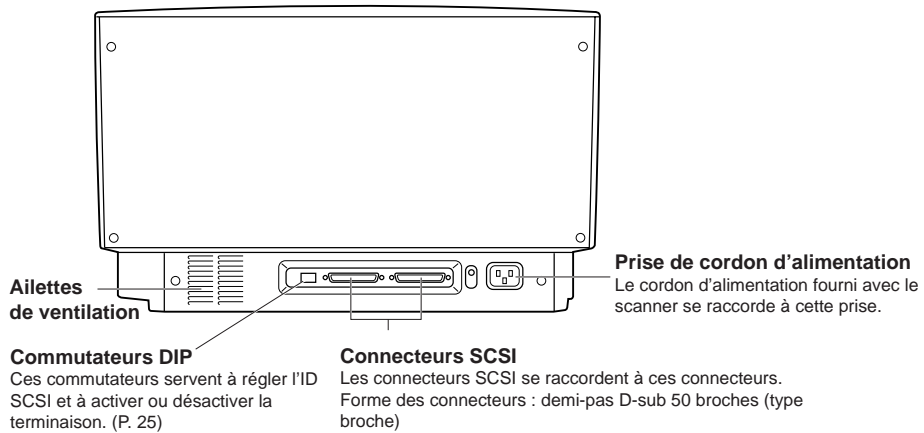
Cette partie décrit les noms et les fonctions de chaque organe. Avant de raccorder le DR-5020/5080C, prenez le temps de vous familiariser avec les principaux organes du scanner.

◆ Face avant



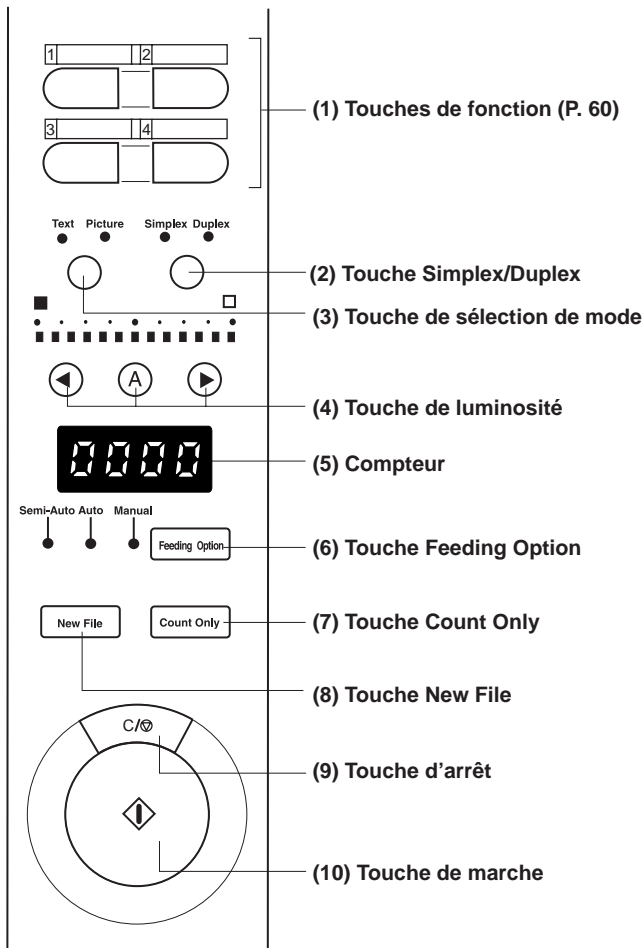
Le capot du module de marquage ne s'ouvre pas si le module n'est pas installé.
N'exercez pas de force inutile lorsque vous ouvrez le capot du module de marquage.

◆ Face arrière



Afin d'éviter toute surchauffe interne et les risques d'incendie, ne jamais bloquer les ailettes de ventilation à l'arrière du scanner.

◆ Panneau de commande du scanner



(1) Touches de fonction (P. 60)

Ces touches servent à enregistrer les fonctions fréquemment utilisées. Vous pourrez ainsi accéder plus rapidement à ces fonctions en appuyant sur une seule touche.

(2) Touche Simplex/Duplex

Ces touches servent à sélectionner la numérisation d'une face ou des deux faces du document.

Simplex : Allumez ce témoin pour la numérisation d'une seule face du documents.

Duplex : Allumez ce témoin pour la numérisation des deux faces du document.

(3) Touche de sélection de mode



Sélectionnez le mode de numérisation des documents. (“Noir et blanc”/ “Diffusion d’erreur noir et blanc”).




Text : Allumez ce témoin pour de la numérisation de texte (comprenant surtout des caractères) en mode noir et blanc.




Picture : Allumez ce témoin pour la numérisation d’images, en particulier de photos, dans le mode de diffusion d’erreur en noir et blanc.



Si une application est réglée sur le mode de niveaux de gris ou le mode couleurs pour l’image sélectionnée, aucun de ces témoins ne s’allumera.

(4) Touche de luminosité


Cette touche sert à régler la luminosité lors de la numérisation du document. Pour le réglage automatique de la luminosité, appuyez sur la touche  pour allumer . (*)

Pour le réglage manuel de la luminosité, appuyez sur la touche  ou  après avoir éteint la touche  et réglez la luminosité en changeant l’indicateur au-dessus de la touche. (La luminosité augmente lorsque l’indicateur va vers la droite et elle diminue lorsqu’elle va vers la gauche. La luminosité peut être réglée sur 13 niveaux.)

Si vous appuyez sur la touche  ou  lorsque la touche  est éclairée pour ajuster l’indicateur, le niveau ne sera pas réglé manuellement mais automatiquement.

Dans le mode Count Only, vous pouvez régler la valeur de départ du compteur avec la touche  ou .

(*) La luminosité se réglera automatiquement seulement si ‘Auto’ a été validé dans les réglages des conditions de numérisation de l’application et si le mode de numérisation ‘Noir et Blanc’ a été activé.

Si un mode de numérisation autre que ‘Noir et Blanc’ a été activé et si la luminosité est réglée sur ‘Auto’, la touche  ne s’allumera pas et la luminosité réglée par défaut (valeur centrale de l’indicateur sera valide). La luminosité ne s’ajuste pas automatiquement dans ce cas.

(5) Compteur

Il indique les codes d’erreur et le nombre de pages du document numérisé.

(6) Touche Feeding Option (P. 39)

Cette touche sert à choisir le mode de chargement des documents.

A chaque pression sur cette touche, un témoin à gauche de la touche s'allume de la façon suivante :

OFF (Remote) → [Semi-Auto] → [Auto] → [Manual] → et retour à OFF (Remote)

Remote : Les trois témoins à gauche de la touche sont tous éteints. Le document est chargé lorsque le scanner reçoit la commande de numérisation de l'ordinateur.

Semi-Auto : Le document est chargé lorsque vous appuyez sur la touche de marche après avoir posé le document.

Auto : Le scanner charge automatiquement le document lorsque vous le posez.

Manual : Vous devez charger manuellement le document feuille par feuille.

(7) Touche Count Only (P. 53)

Cette touche sert simplement à compter le nombre de pages du document.

Lorsque vous appuyez sur cette touche, elle s'allume. Si vous posez le document et appuyez sur la touche de marche à ce moment, le document sera chargé et le nombre de pages compté. (Le document n'est pas numérisé.) Le nombre de pages est indiqué par le compteur.

(8) Touche New File

Cette touche sert à sauvegarder les images numérisées dans des fichiers séparés.

Lorsque vous appuyez sur cette touche, elle s'allume. Si vous numérisez le document suivant à ce moment, l'image numérisée sera sauvegardée dans un dossier séparé du dossier du document précédent.

Si Nouveau fichier auto a été validé dans l'application, cette touche s'allumera automatiquement après la numérisation de chaque document.

(9) Touche d'arrêt

Appuyez sur cette touche pour arrêter la numérisation en cours.

Utilisez aussi cette touche pour annuler le mode actuellement validé et annuler le code d'erreur affiché sur le compteur.

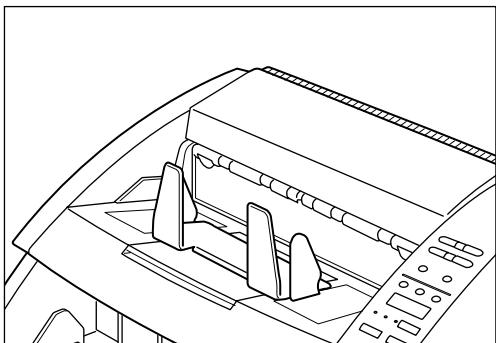
Pour remettre le compteur à '0000', appuyez pendant deux secondes au moins sur cette touche.

(10) Touche de marche

Cette touche active la numérisation lorsque l'option chargeur est réglée sur Semi-Auto.

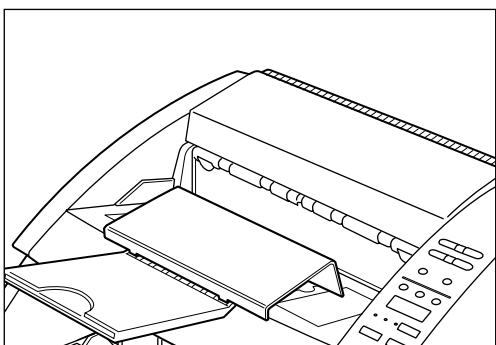
◆ Plateau amovible

Ce plateau peut être installé sur le plateau de sortie des documents pour empêcher les documents courts de tomber du plateau lorsqu'ils sont éjectés du scanner.



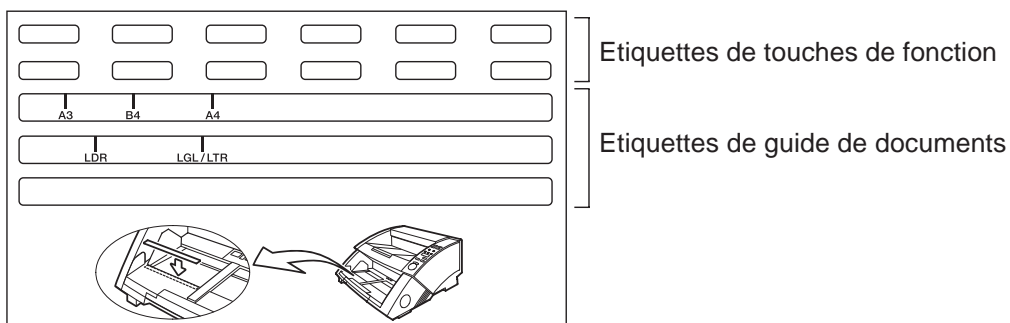
◆ Plaque support de sortie des documents

Cette plaque peut être installée lors de la numérisation de documents fins de grand format (ex. A3). Cette plaque empêche les documents d'être coincés sur le plateau de sortie des documents et d'être écornés.



◆ Etiquettes de touches de fonction

Deux étiquettes sont fournies : une étiquette indiquant les fonctions affectées à aux touches de fonction et une étiquette à coller sur le plateau de documents pour le guide de documents.



Chapitre 2

Informations préliminaires

Ce chapitre décrit tous les préparatifs, du raccordement du scanner à la mise en marche du scanner.

2.1 Configuration requise	22
2.2 Installation et raccordement	23
2.3 Préparation pour le chargement et l'éjection du papier	27
2.4 Mise sous et hors tension	33

2.1

Configuration requise

Pour pouvoir utiliser le DR-5020/5080C vous devez avoir le matériel suivant en plus des accessoires standard :

- Ordinateur
- Carte SCSI
- Câble SCSI
- Application



- Le pilote risque de ne pas fonctionner correctement avec certaines applications.
- Sélectionnez l'ordinateur, l'environnement de fonctionnement et la carte SCSI adaptés à l'application que vous voulez utiliser.

2.2 Installation et raccordement

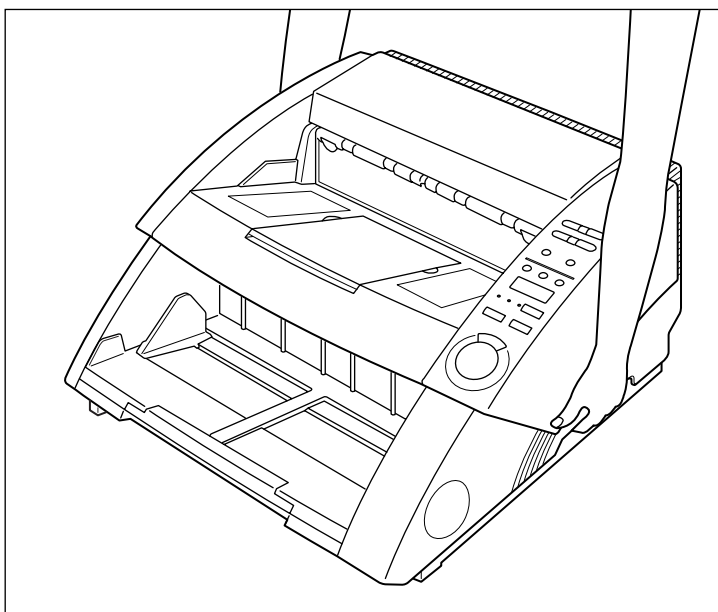
Cette partie décrit l'installation et le raccordement du scanner.



Pour les détails sur l'installation du scanner, voir "Emplacement idéal" dans les Consignes de sécurité (P. 8).

Transport

Pour déplacer le DR-5020/5080C, prenez-le avec les deux mains comme indiqué sur la figure ci-dessous et déplacez-le avec précaution. Si vous ne le tenez pas par les deux poignées, il risque de tomber en vous coinçant les doigts ou causant des blessures. Le scanner pèse environ 20 kg.



Avant de changer le scanner de place, toujours l'éteindre par l'interrupteur d'alimentation et le débrancher de la prise murale. Débrancher également le câble SCSI du connecteur.

Si le scanner reste sous tension ou si le câble SCSI reste raccordé une décharge électrique peut se produire.

Raccordement à un ordinateur

Raccordez le scanner à l'ordinateur.



Avant de raccorder le scanner à l'ordinateur, assurez-vous que ces deux appareils sont éteints.



Les articles suivants sont indispensables pour raccorder le scanner :

- Carte SCSI

Assurez-vous qu'une carte SCSI est installée sur votre ordinateur.

Utilisez une carte SCSI compatible avec le pilote que vous utilisez.

- Câble SCSI

Le connecteur SCSI du scanner est un connecteur 50 broches demi-pas D-sub (type broche).

Vérifiez la forme du connecteur sur la carte SCSI de votre ordinateur et sur l'appareil SCSI raccordé à votre ordinateur, et procurez-vous un câble SCSI compatible avec le connecteur pouvant être relié au scanner.

Procédez de la façon suivante pour relier le scanner à l'ordinateur.

1. Raccordez le scanner à l'ordinateur par le câble SCSI. (P. 24)
2. Réglez l'ID SCSI et la terminaison. (P. 25)

◆ Branchement du câble SCSI

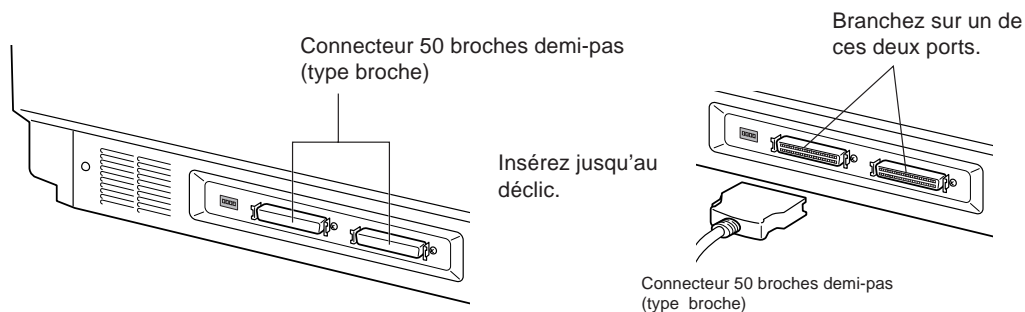


Avant de brancher le câble SCSI, assurez-vous que le scanner et l'ordinateur sont éteints.

Raccordez l'ordinateur au scanner par le câble SCSI.

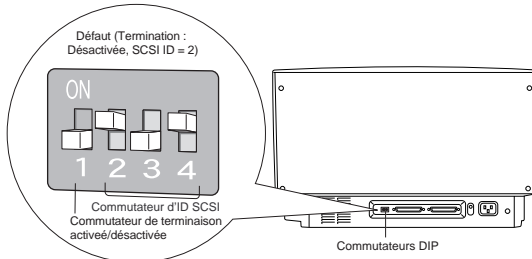
Deux connecteurs SCSI se trouvent à l'arrière du scanner. Insérez le câble SCSI de l'ordinateur dans l'un de ces connecteurs.

Pour raccorder un autre périphérique SCSI à l'ordinateur, insérez l'autre câble SCSI dans le connecteur SCSI libre à l'arrière du scanner et raccordez en chaîne l'autre extrémité du câble SCSI au périphérique SCSI.



◆ Réglage de l'ID et de la terminaison SCSI

Régalez l'ID SCSI et la terminaison à l'aide du commutateur DIP à l'arrière du scanner. Le commutateur DIP est activé en position haute et désactivé en position basse.



SCSI ID	SW2	SW3	SW4
0	ON	ON	ON
1	ON	ON	OFF
2	ON	OFF	ON
3	ON	OFF	OFF
4	OFF	ON	ON
5	OFF	ON	OFF
6	OFF	OFF	ON
7	OFF	OFF	OFF

Régalez l'ID SCSI en vous référant au tableau ci-dessus. Régalez chaque ID SCSI sur les dispositifs SCSI intégrés ou raccordés à l'ordinateur.



CONSEIL

Le réglage par défaut de l'ID SCSI est 2.

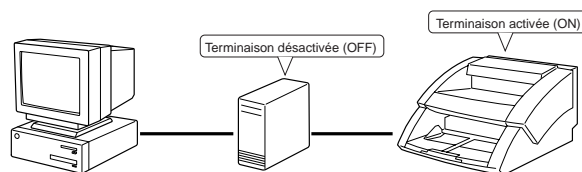
Affectez les numéros d'ID SCSI 0 à 7 à chaque dispositif SCSI. Ne pas sélectionner 7 qui est normalement affecté à la commande SCSI. Si un disque dur SCSI est installé, ne pas utiliser 0 et 1. En principe, 0 et 1 sont affectés aux disques durs.

Régalez la terminaison du dernier dispositif SCSI de la chaîne sur ON.

<Si le scanner est seulement raccordé à l'ordinateur, ou si un autre périphérique SCSI est raccordé en chaîne et le scanner est le dernier dispositif SCSI de la chaîne>

Régalez la terminaison sur ON.

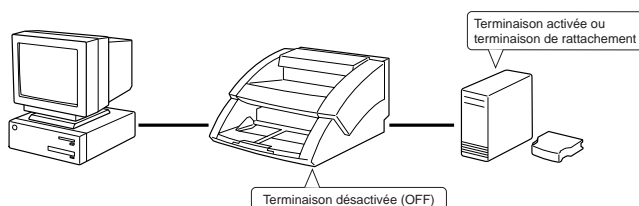
Dans ce cas, veuillez à régler la terminaison de tous les autres dispositifs SCSI sur OFF.



<Si un autre dispositif SCSI est raccordé en fin de chaîne>

Régalez le commutateur de terminaison du scanner sur OFF.

Dans ce cas, veuillez à régler la terminaison du périphérique SCSI raccordé en fin de chaîne sur ON.



Branchement du cordon d'alimentation

Raccordez le cordon d'alimentation fourni avec le scanner à l'exclusion de tout autre.

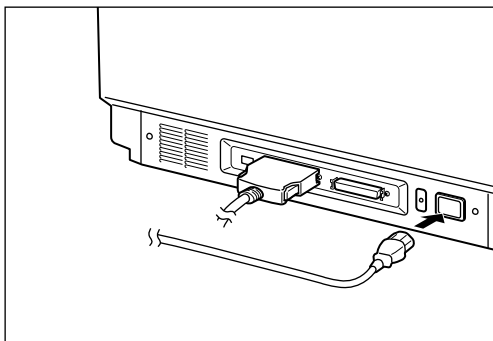
◆ Branchement du cordon d'alimentation



Afin d'éviter les risques d'incendie et d'électrocution, prenez les précautions suivantes lorsque vous raccordez le cordon d'alimentation.

- Ne jamais saisir la fiche avec des mains mouillées.
- Ne jamais brancher l'appareil sur une prise multifiches.
- Ne jamais enrouler ou lier le cordon d'alimentation sur lui-même ou autour d'un autre objet. Brancher la fiche à fond sur la prise secteur.
- Utiliser le cordon d'alimentation et la fiche fournis avec le scanner.
- Avant de brancher le cordon d'alimentation, mettre l'interrupteur d'alimentation sur arrêt (OFF).
- Raccorder le scanner à une source secteur de 220-240 V (50/60Hz).
- Ne pas brancher le scanner sur une prise servant pour d'autres appareils. Si un cordon-rallonge est utilisé, s'assurer de sa capacité totale.

Raccordez le cordon d'alimentation à l'arrière du scanner et insérez la fiche dans la prise secteur.



2.3

Préparation pour le chargement et l'éjection du papier

Sortez la section de charge du papier et la section de sortie, ou le plateau amovible ou la plaque support, pour régler le format du document à numériser. Collez aussi l'étiquette de guide de documents.

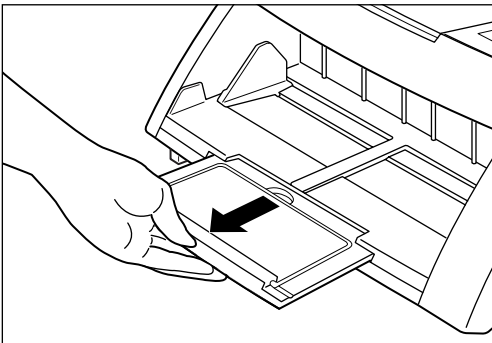
Préparation de l'extension du plateau de documents et de l'extension du plateau de sortie des documents

Utilisez l'extension du plateau de documents et l'extension du plateau de sortie des documents en fonction du format du document à numériser. La plaque support de sortie des documents et le plateau amovible peuvent aussi être utilisés pour faciliter la sortie des documents numérisés.

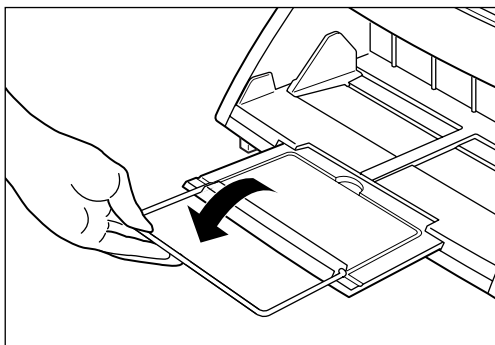
◆ Extension du plateau de documents

Utilisez l'extension de ce plateau pour l'ajuster au format du document qui sera numérisé.

- 1 Tirez l'extension au centre du plateau de documents.



2 Ouvrez avec précaution le cadre.

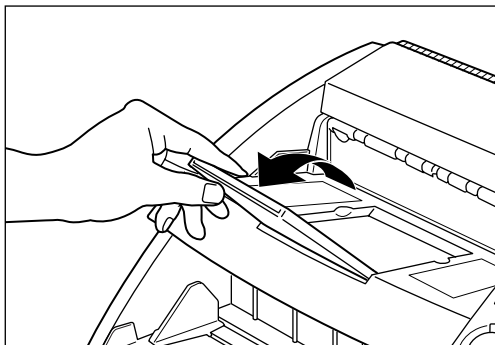


Le cadre pourra être utilisé pour les documents plus grands que le format A4.

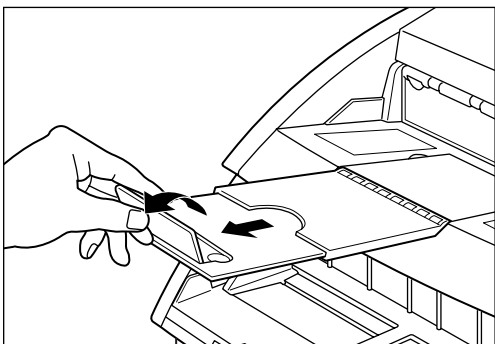
◆ Extension du plateau de sortie des documents

Utilisez l'extension de ce plateau pour l'ajuster au format du document qui sera numérisé. L'extension du plateau de sortie des documents s'ouvre en trois étapes, ce qui permet de l'utiliser pour divers types et formats de documents.

- 1** Relevez l'extension 1 au centre du plateau de sortie des documents.



- 2** Tirez l'extension 2 de l'extension 1 et relevez la butée.

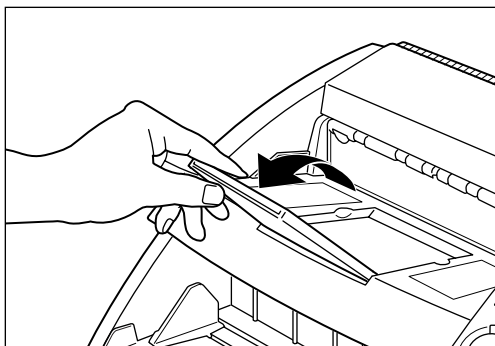


La butée sert à arrêter les documents qui sortent du scanner pour éviter qu'ils ne tombent.

◆ Plaque support de sortie des documents

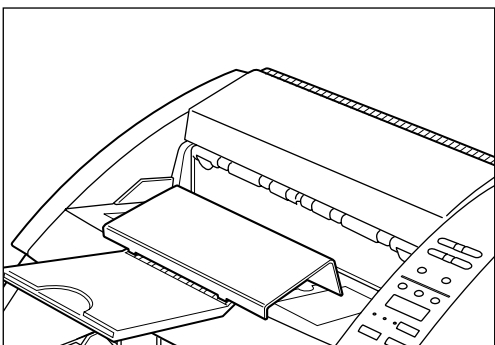
Installez cette plaque lors de la numérisation de grands documents ou de documents à surface glissante. Lorsque ces documents sont éjectés du scanner, ils peuvent se coincer dans la sortie et être froissés ou causer un bourrage de papier. Cette plaque sert à empêcher ce genre de problèmes.

1 Tirez l'extension du plateau de sortie des documents.



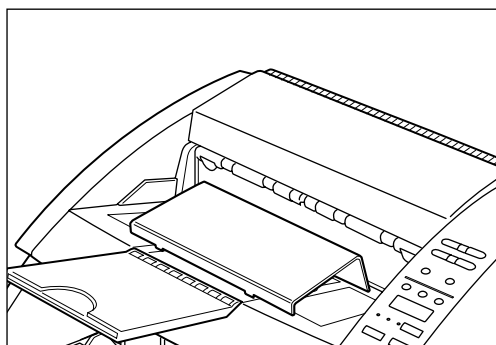
2 Installez la plaque support de sortie des documents.

Pour l'installer, insérez les protubérances de la plaque dans les orifices du plateau de sortie des documents.



MEMO

Si des documents se coincent lorsque l'extension du plateau de sortie des documents est rattachée, tirez l'extension le plus possible pour éviter que les documents se coincent.

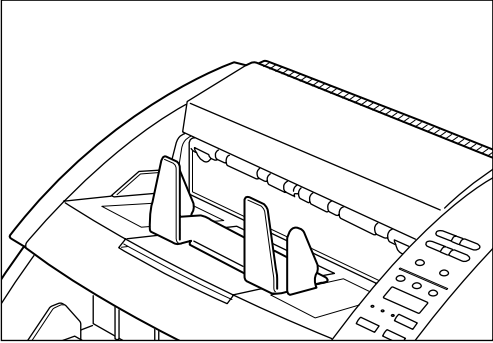


◆ Plateau amovible

Fixez ce plateau lors de la numérisation de documents de petit format.
Le plateau empêchera les documents de tomber lorsqu'ils sortent du scanner.

1 Installez le plateau amovible au centre du plateau de sortie.

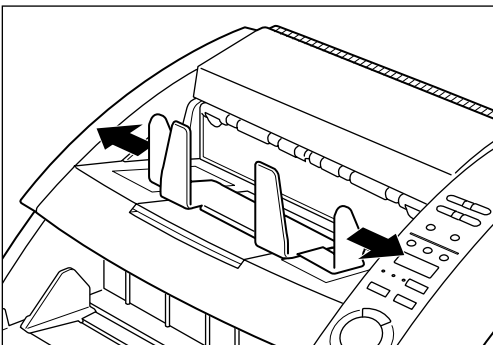
Le plateau amovible est retenu par des aimants. Ajustez la position du plateau en fonction du format du document.



Fermez le plateau de sortie s'il est ouvert.

2 Réglez les guides gauche et droit en fonction de la largeur du document qui sera numérisé.

Laissez un peu de jeu des deux côtés des guides.

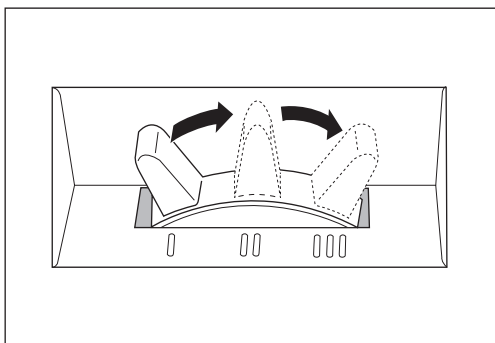


Réglage de la charge du papier

Changez la position du levier de réglage de charge du papier si le papier n'est pas correctement pris à cause de sa surface glissante.

Le levier de réglage de charge du papier peut se régler sur trois positions.

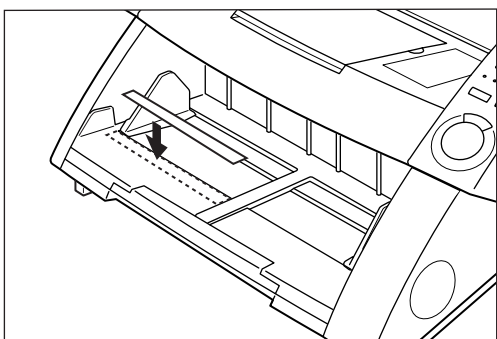
Le réglage normal est la position de gauche (I). Si le papier est légèrement glissant, réglez-le sur la position centrale (II) et sur la position de droite (III) s'il est très glissant.



Fixation des étiquettes du guide de documents

Des étiquettes sont fournies dans le carton d'emballage pour les touches de fonction et le guide de documents.

Les étiquettes de guide de documents servent à effectuer le réglage du guide. Collez-les sur le plateau de documents de la façon indiquée sur l'illustration ci-dessous.



2.4 Mise sous et hors tension

Procédez de la façon suivante pour mettre le scanner sous et hors tension.

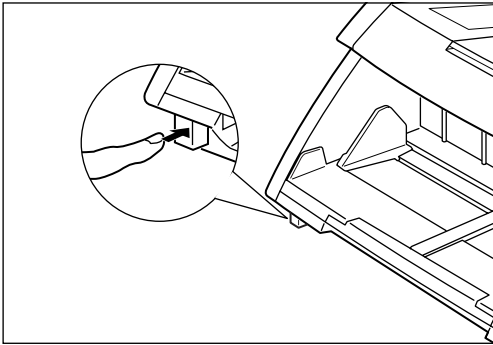
Mise sous tension



CONSEIL

Veillez à allumer tous les périphériques SCSI raccordés avant d'allumer l'ordinateur.

- 1 Pour mettre le scanner sous tension, appuyez sur l'interrupteur d'alimentation.



➔ " 0000 " apparaît sur le compteur du panneau de commande.



MEMO

Les réglages effectués sur le panneau de commande, à l'exception du compteur, reviennent à leurs valeurs initiales à la mise hors tension du scanner.



AVERTISSEMENT

Si vous entendez un son étrange, détectez de la fumée ou une chaleur anormale, sentez des vibrations ou des odeurs anormales venant du scanner, éteignez immédiatement le scanner en appuyant sur l'interrupteur d'alimentation et débranchez le cordon d'alimentation de la prise secteur. Faites immédiatement appel au service après-vente. Un incendie peut sinon se déclarer.

2 Mettez l'ordinateur sous tension.

➔ Le système d'exploitation de l'ordinateur se met en marche.



CONSEIL

- Si vous utilisez Windows 95/98/Me ou Windows 2000, un écran vous demandant d'installer le pilote du scanner apparaîtra la première fois que vous mettrez l'ordinateur sous tension, après la connexion du scanner à l'ordinateur. (Le nom de cet écran dépend de la version Windows utilisée.)

Si "Nouveau Matériel" (Windows 95) apparaît, sélectionnez "Sélectionner sur la liste" et cliquez sur [OK]. Sur l'écran suivant, sélectionnez [Autre matériel] et cliquez sur [OK].

Si "Assistant d'ajout de nouveau matériel" (Windows 95) apparaît, cliquez sur [Suivant] puis sur [Terminé] à l'écran suivant.

Si "Assistant Ajout de nouveau matériel" (Windows 98) apparaît, effectuez la procédure suivante.

1. Cliquez sur [Suivant].
2. Sélectionnez "Rechercher le meilleur pilote pour votre périphérique. (Recommandé)" et cliquez sur [Suivant].
3. Enlevez toutes les coches et cliquez sur [Suivant].
4. Cliquez sur [Suivant].
5. Cliquez sur [Terminer].

Dans le cas de "Nouveau matériel détecté" (Windows Me), sélectionnez "Rechercher automat. un meilleur pilote (recommandé)", puis cliquez sur [Suivant] puis sur [Terminer] sur l'écran suivant.

Si "Assistant Matériel détecté" (Windows 2000) apparaît, effectuez la procédure suivante.

1. Cliquez sur [Suivant] pour avancer à l'écran "Installation de pilotes de périphériques matériels".
 2. Sélectionnez "Rechercher un pilote approprié pour mon périphérique (recommandé)" et cliquez sur [Suivant] pour passer à l'écran "Recherche de fichiers de pilote".
 3. Enlevez toutes les coches dans "Emplacements de recherche optionnels" et cliquez sur [Suivant] pour passer à l'écran "Résultat de la recherche de fichiers pilotes".
 4. Sélectionnez "Désactiver le périphérique." et cliquez sur [Terminer].
- Les logiciels fournis avec le scanner doivent être installés avant de pouvoir utiliser le scanner. Pour les détails, reportez-vous au " Mode d'emploi des logiciels ISIS/TWAIN " ou au " Mode d'emploi de Scanning Utility 5000 ".

Mise hors tension



ATTENTION

Pour des raisons de sécurité, débranchez la fiche d'alimentation de la prise secteur si vous prévoyez de ne pas utiliser le scanner pendant un certain temps.

1 Mettez l'ordinateur hors tension.

2 Pour le mettre hors tension, appuyez sur l'interrupteur d'alimentation.



ATTENTION

Attendez au moins 10 secondes avant de remettre le scanner sous tension.

Chapitre 3

Préparation des documents

Ce chapitre décrit les précautions concernant les documents qui peuvent être numérisés et le chargement du papier ainsi que les opérations dont dépend la numérisation.

3.1 A propos des documents.....	36
3.2 Chargement et numérisation des documents	38
3.3 Réglage des conditions de numérisation	58

3.1

A propos des documents

Le DR-5020/5080C peut accepter une grande variété de formats de documents. Les documents à numériser peuvent avoir la longueur et la largeur suivantes.

Largeur : 55 à 297 mm (Largeur maximale réelle 295 mm.)

Longueur : 70 à 432 mm

Épaisseur : 0,06 à 0,15 mm

(Charge manuelle : 0,05 à 0,2 mm)

Veuillez tenir compte des conseils suivants lorsque vous préparez vos documents.

- Lors de la numérisation de travaux artistiques, assurez-vous que l'encre ou la peinture est bien sèche. Si vous numérisez des documents encore humides, l'intérieur du scanner risque de se salir.
- Si vous numérisez un document écrit au crayon, les lettres peuvent disparaître au moment où le document passe dans le scanner, ou bien le graphite sur la surface du document peut se coller et salir les cylindres du scanner. Avant de numériser ce type de document, faites une copie et numérisez la copie. Après la numérisation d'un document écrit au crayon ou avec des ustensiles à mine tendre, nettoyez les cylindres du scanner. (P. 83)
- Si vous numérisez un document en papier fin dans le mode Duplex, l'encre imprimée sur une face risque d'être visible sur l'autre face. Le cas échéant, ajustez la densité.
- Si vous numérisez un document à surface glissante, la friction peut causer une erreur de chargement. Dans ce cas, changez la position du levier de réglage de charge du papier (P. 32) pour ajuster la prise du papier.
- Pour éviter les incidents papier et ne pas abîmer les documents ou le scanner, ne chargez pas les types de papiers suivants dans le scanner. Pour les numériser, faites d'abord une copie sur un copieur et numérisez la copie.



Papier plissé ou froissé



Papier écorné



Papier déchiré



Papier agrafé ou à trombone



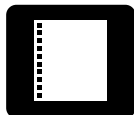
Papier carbone



Papier à revêtement ou papier pour télécopie



Papier pelure ou papier fin



Papier perforé



- Les documents comprenant des pages de différentes épaisseurs et formats peuvent entraîner un problème de chargement.
- Les documents très écornés ou froissés peuvent entraîner un double chargement.
- Les documents contenant du texte ou des images à moins de 5 mm des bords, ou bien les documents avec fond de couleur, peuvent perturber la détection d'obliquité ou la détection automatique de format.

3.2

Chargement et numérisation des documents

Posez le document sur le scanner et numérisez-le. Vous pouvez aussi compter le nombre de pages du document. Cette partie décrit les points suivants :

- Numérisation (selon le mode de chargement)
- Comptage du nombre de pages du document
- Feuilles de contrôle



- Évitez de porter des vêtements larges, des bijoux longs, des cravates longues ou même des cheveux longs, qui pourraient être pris dans les pièces mobiles du scanner, en particulier dans les cylindres. Si un objet devait se coincer dans l'appareil, débranchez immédiatement la fiche de la prise secteur pour arrêter l'appareil.
- Faites très attention, lorsque vous posez un document ou retirez une feuille de papier coincée. Il est possible de se blesser, par exemple de se couper les doigts sur le bord du papier.
- Vérifiez la pile de documents et enlevez les agrafes, trombones, épingles, etc. en métal ou plastic. Ils peuvent endommager le document ou causer un incident papier ou une panne du scanner.

Numérisation

La marche à suivre pour numériser un document varie selon le mode de chargement réglé sur le scanner.

Vous avez le choix entre les quatre modes suivants auxquels vous avez accès par la touche Feeding Option.

- **Mode Remote (défaut)**

Ce mode est le mieux adapté à la numérisation d'un seul document. Dans ce mode, la numérisation commence lorsque vous donnez l'instruction dans l'application après avoir posé le document sur le scanner.

- **Semi-Auto**

Ce mode est le mieux adapté à la numérisation en continu de documents séparés de divers formats, lorsque le guide de documents doit être réglé. Dans ce mode, la numérisation commence lorsque vous donnez l'instruction dans l'application et appuyez sur la touche de marche du scanner après avoir posé le document sur le scanner.

Lorsque la numérisation d'une pile de documents est terminée, posez la pile suivante et appuyez sur la touche de marche pour continuer.

- **Auto**

Ce mode est le mieux adapté à la numérisation en continu d'une pile de documents de même format.

Dans ce mode, la numérisation commence automatiquement lorsque vous posez les documents après avoir donné l'instruction dans l'application.

Lorsque la numérisation d'une pile de documents est terminée, posez la pile suivante. La numérisation continue automatiquement.

- **Manual**

Dans ce mode, vous posez une seule page du document à la fois après avoir donné l'instruction de numérisation sur l'ordinateur.

Utilisez ce mode pour charger les documents qui ne se chargent pas bien automatiquement (qualité de papier causant un double chargement, etc.) lorsque vous posez le document complet.

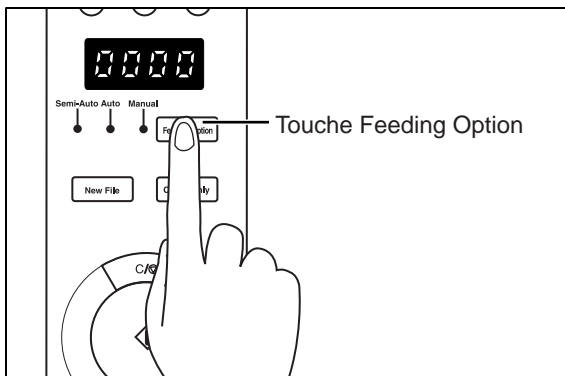
Vous trouverez ci-après la marche à suivre pour numériser des documents dans chaque mode de chargement.

◆ Mode Remote

Ce mode est le mieux adapté à la numérisation d'un document seulement.

1 Assurez-vous que les témoins Semi-Auto, Auto et Manual sont tous éteints.

Si l'un d'eux est allumé, appuyez sur la touche Feeding Option pour l'éteindre.



A chaque pression sur la touche Feeding Option, le témoin allumé change dans l'ordre suivant :
OFF (Remote) → [Semi-Auto] → [Auto] → [Manual] et retour à OFF (Remote)

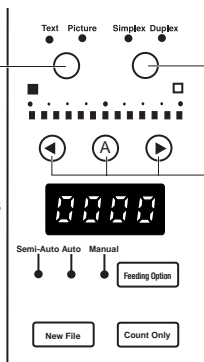
2 Sélectionnez les réglages suivants sur le panneau de commande. Ces réglages ne sont pas nécessaires s'ils ont déjà été effectués dans l'application.

Text/Picture

[Text] : Sélectionnez cette option lors de la numérisation en mode noir et blanc de documents contenant surtout du texte.

[Picture] : Sélectionnez cette option lors de la numérisation en mode de diffusion d'erreurs en noir et blanc de documents contenant des images ou des photos.

Si le mode Niveaux de gris ou le mode Couleurs a été validé dans l'application pour l'image sélectionnée, aucun de ces témoins ne s'allumera.



Simplex/Duplex

[Simplex] : Sélectionnez cette option pour numériser une seule face du document.

[Duplex] : Sélectionnez cette option pour numériser les deux faces du document.

Touches de luminosité

Sert à régler la luminosité pour la numérisation du document.

Pour sélectionner le réglage automatique de la luminosité, appuyez sur la touche (A) pour éclairer (A).

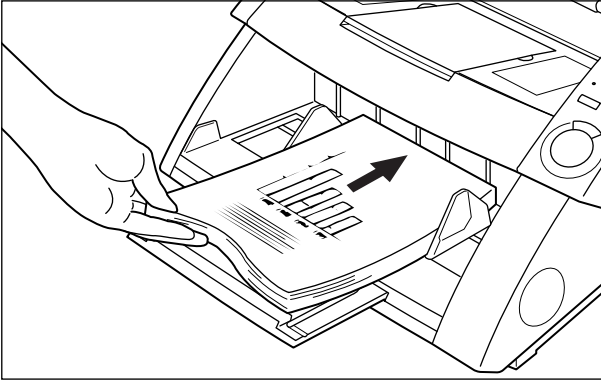
Pour sélectionner le réglage manuel de la luminosité, appuyez sur les touches ◀ ou ▶ pour déplacer l'indicateur au-dessus de la touche et ajuster la luminosité.



Pour les détails sur les autres paramètres, voir " 3.3 Réglage des conditions de numérisation " (P. 58)

3 Taquez le groupe de pages devant être numérisées pour aligner les bords.

4 Posez le document, face vers le haut, en insérant le haut en premier dans le scanner.



MEMO

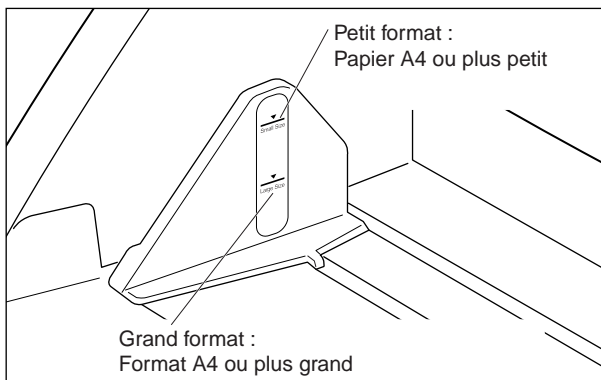
- Lorsque vous posez le document sur le plateau de documents, veillez à bien diriger la face qui doit être numérisée vers le haut.
- Le poids du papier chargé peut augmenter s'il a été stocké dans un environnement humide, par exemple. Dans ce cas, le document chargé peut dépasser le poids maximal bien qu'il contienne un nombre de feuilles inférieur au maximum et il peut empêcher le plateau de documents de s'élever. Réduisez le nombre de feuilles du document posé sur le plateau de documents et numérisez une nouvelle fois le document.



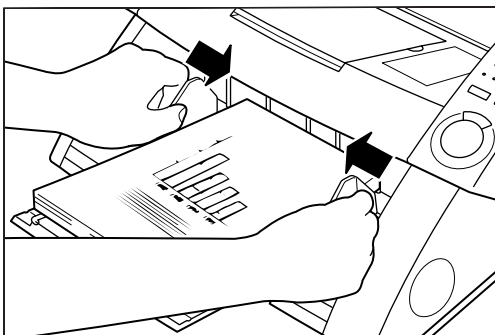
CONSEIL

Pour éviter les incidents papier, n'insérez pas de papier au-delà de la limite (▼) marquée sur le plateau de documents.

La limite de charge est de 500 pages environ de format A4 (80 g/m²) et de 200 pages environ d'un format supérieur à A4.



- 5 Réglez les guides de papier selon la largeur du document que vous voulez numériser.**



- 6 Activez la commande de numérisation dans l'application.**

- 7 Le plateau de documents s'élève et la numérisation commence. Lorsque toutes les pages du document ont été numérisées, le plateau de documents s'abaisse.**



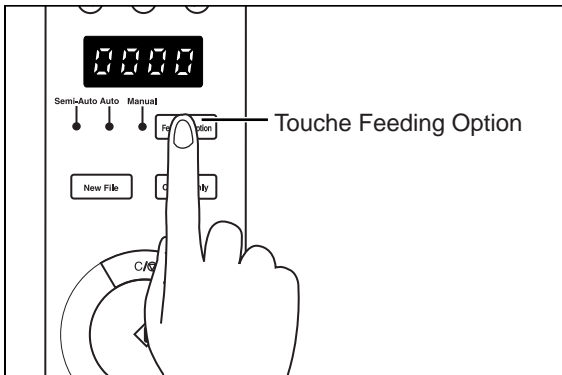
MEMO

Si le papier cesse d'être chargé en cours de numérisation en raison d'une erreur système ou d'un incident papier, assurez-vous que la dernière page du document qui a été chargée a été enregistrée correctement avant de continuer la numérisation.

◆ Semi-Auto

Utilisez le mode Semi-Auto pour numériser en continu une pile de documents de formats différents.

1 Appuyez sur la touche Feeding Option sur le panneau de commande pour éclairer [Semi-Auto].



2 Sélectionnez les réglages suivants sur le panneau de commande. Ces réglages ne sont pas nécessaires s'ils ont déjà été effectués dans l'application.

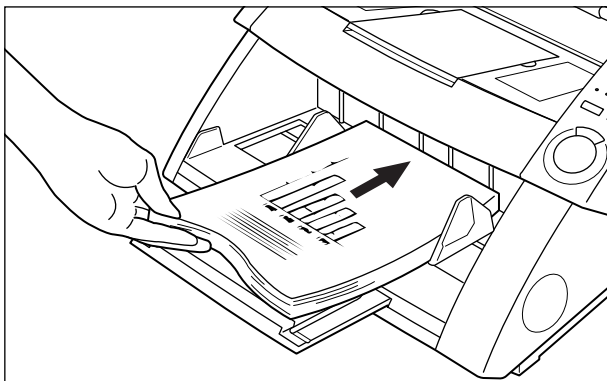
<p>Text/Picture</p> <p>[Text] : Sélectionnez cette option lors de la numérisation en mode noir et blanc de documents contenant surtout du texte.</p> <p>[Picture] : Sélectionnez cette option lors de la numérisation en mode de diffusion d'erreurs en noir et blanc de documents contenant des images ou des photos.</p> <p>Si le mode Niveaux de gris ou le mode Couleurs a été validé dans l'application pour l'image sélectionnée, aucun de ces témoins ne s'allumera.</p>		<p>Simplex/Duplex</p> <p>[Simplex] : Sélectionnez cette option pour numériser une seule face du document.</p> <p>[Duplex] : Sélectionnez cette option pour numériser les deux faces du document.</p> <p>Touches de luminosité</p> <p>Sert à régler la luminosité pour la numérisation du document.</p> <p>Pour sélectionner le réglage automatique de la luminosité, appuyez sur la touche (A) pour éclairer (A).</p> <p>Pour sélectionner le réglage manuel de la luminosité, appuyez sur les touches (◀) ou (▶) pour déplacer l'indicateur au-dessus de la touche et ajuster la luminosité.</p>
--	--	---



Pour les détails sur les autres paramètres, voir "3.3 Réglage des conditions de numérisation" (P. 58)

3 Taquez le groupe de pages devant être numérisées pour aligner les bords.

4 Chargez le document, face vers le haut, en insérant le haut en premier dans le scanner.



MEMO

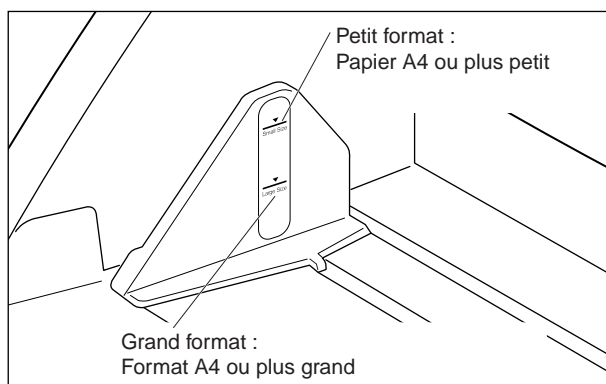
- Lorsque vous posez le document sur le plateau de documents, veillez à bien diriger la face qui doit être numérisée vers le haut.
- Le poids du papier chargé peut augmenter s'il a été stocké dans un environnement humide, par exemple. Dans ce cas, le document chargé peut dépasser le poids maximal bien qu'il contienne un nombre de feuilles inférieur au maximum et il peut empêcher le plateau de documents de s'élever. Réduisez le nombre de feuilles du document posé sur le plateau de documents et numérisez une nouvelle fois le document.



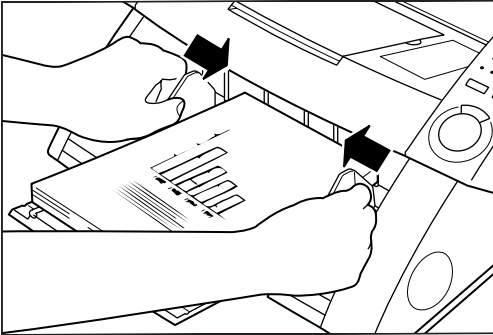
CONSEIL

Pour éviter les incidents papier, n'insérez pas de papier au-delà de la limite (▼) marquée sur le plateau de documents.

La limite de charge est de 500 pages environ de format A4 (80 g/m²) et de 200 pages environ d'un format supérieur à A4.



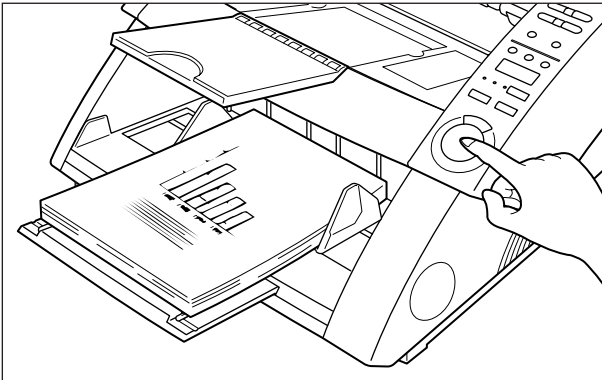
- 5 Réglez les guides de papier selon la largeur du document que vous voulez numériser.**



- 6 Activez la commande de numérisation dans l'application.**

➔ La touche de marche change du rouge au vert.

- 7 Appuyez sur la touche de marche.**



- 8 Le plateau de documents s'élève et la numérisation commence. Lorsque toutes les pages du document ont été numérisées, le plateau de documents s'abaisse.**



MEMO

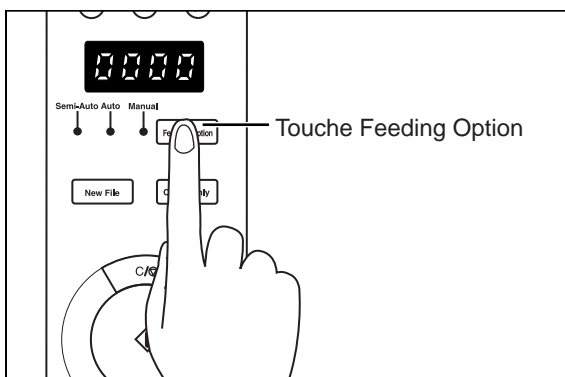
Si le papier cesse d'être chargé en cours de numérisation en raison d'une erreur système ou d'un incident papier, assurez-vous que la dernière page du document qui a été chargée a été enregistrée correctement avant de continuer la numérisation.

- 9 S'il y a d'autres pages du document à numériser, posez le document et appuyez sur la touche de marche. Lorsque vous avez terminé, appuyez sur la touche d'arrêt.**

◆ Auto

Utilisez le mode Auto pour numériser en continu une pile de documents de même taille.

1 Appuyez sur la touche Feeding Option sur le panneau de commande pour allumer [Auto].



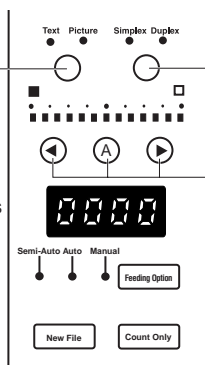
2 Sélectionnez les réglages suivants sur le panneau de commande. Ces réglages ne sont pas nécessaires s'ils ont déjà été effectués dans l'application.

Text/Picture

[Text] : Sélectionnez cette option lors de la numérisation en mode noir et blanc de documents contenant surtout du texte.

[Picture] : Sélectionnez cette option lors de la numérisation en mode de diffusion d'erreurs en noir et blanc de documents contenant des images ou des photos.

Si le mode Niveaux de gris ou le mode Couleurs a été validé dans l'application pour l'image sélectionnée, aucun de ces témoins ne s'allumera.



Simplex/Duplex

[Simplex] : Sélectionnez cette option pour numériser une seule face du document.

[Duplex] : Sélectionnez cette option pour numériser les deux faces du document.

Touches de luminosité

Sert à régler la luminosité pour la numérisation du document.

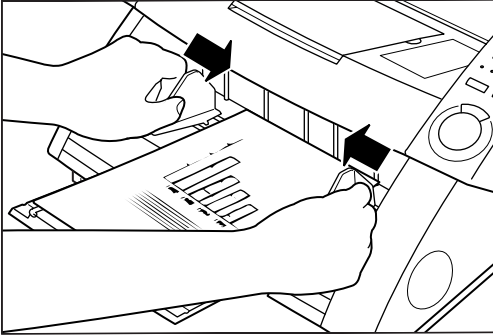
Pour sélectionner le réglage automatique de la luminosité, appuyez sur la touche (A) pour éclairer (A).

Pour sélectionner le réglage manuel de la luminosité, appuyez sur les touches (◀) ou (▶) pour déplacer l'indicateur au-dessus de la touche et ajuster la luminosité.



Pour les détails sur les autres paramètres, voir " 3.3 Réglage des conditions de numérisation " (P. 58)

3 Posez une page du document que vous voulez numériser et réglez les guides de papier selon la largeur du document.



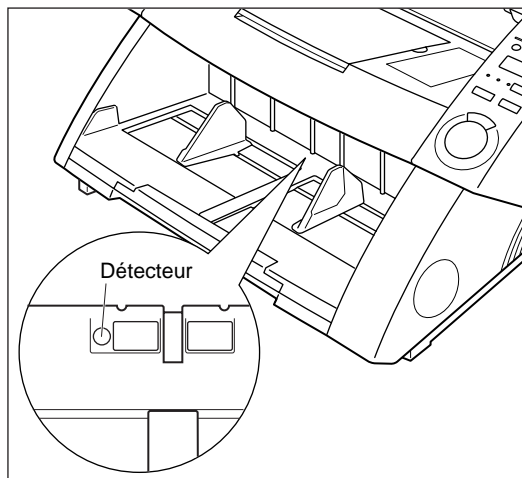
4 Activez la commande de numérisation dans l'application.

➡ La touche de marche change du rouge au vert.



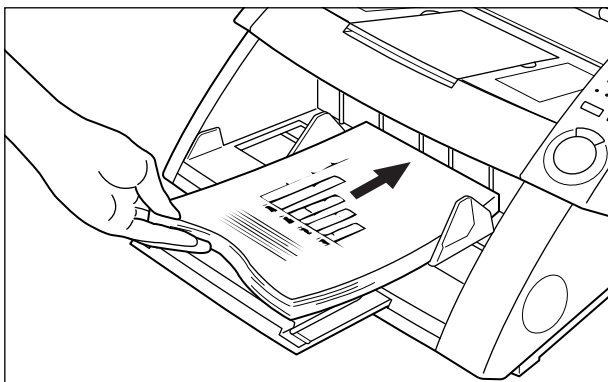
Lorsque le mode de numérisation est réglé sur Auto, le détecteur situé sur le plateau de documents, comme indiqué sur l'illustration ci-dessous, détecte automatiquement le document et la numérisation commence.

Si le détecteur reste couvert par quelque chose après la numérisation, le scanner l'interprétera comme un document et le plateau de documents se mettra à bouger. Veillez à ne pas recouvrir le détecteur par d'autres choses que des documents.



5 Taquez le groupe de pages devant être numérisées pour aligner les bords.

6 Posez le document, face vers le haut, en insérant le haut en premier dans le scanner.



MEMO

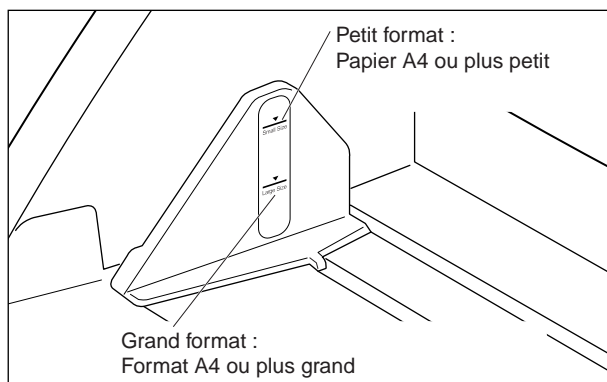
- Lorsque vous posez le document sur le plateau de documents, veillez à bien diriger la face qui doit être numérisée vers le haut.
- Le poids du papier chargé peut augmenter s'il a été stocké dans un environnement humide, par exemple. Dans ce cas, le document chargé peut dépasser le poids maximal bien qu'il contienne un nombre de feuilles inférieur au maximum et il peut empêcher le plateau de documents de s'élever. Réduisez le nombre de feuilles du document posé sur le plateau de documents et numérissez une nouvelle fois le document.



CONSEIL

Pour éviter les incidents papier, n'insérez pas de papier au-delà de la limite (▼) marquée sur le plateau de documents.

La limite de charge est de 500 pages environ de format A4 (80 g/m²) et de 200 pages environ d'un format supérieur à A4.



7 **Le plateau de documents s'élève automatiquement et la numérisation commence. Lorsque la numérisation de toutes les pages du document est terminée, le plateau de documents s'abaisse.**

La numérisation ne commencera pas si vous posez d'abord le document. Dans ce cas, appuyez sur la touche de marche ou retirez et posez une nouvelle fois le document.



MEMO

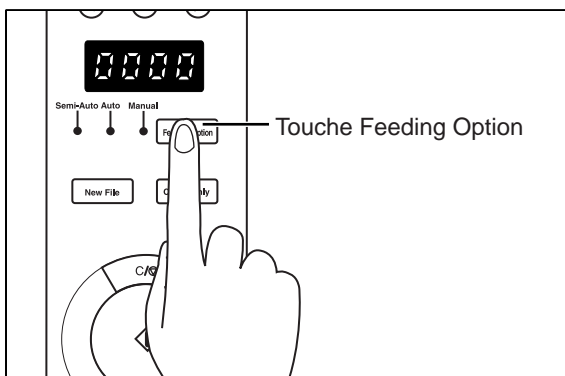
Si le papier cesse d'être chargé en cours de numérisation en raison d'une erreur système ou d'un incident papier, assurez-vous que la dernière page du document qui a été chargée a été enregistrée correctement avant de continuer la numérisation.

8 **Si d'autres pages du document doivent être numérisées, posez le document. La numérisation commencera automatiquement. Pour l'arrêter, appuyez sur la touche d'arrêt.**

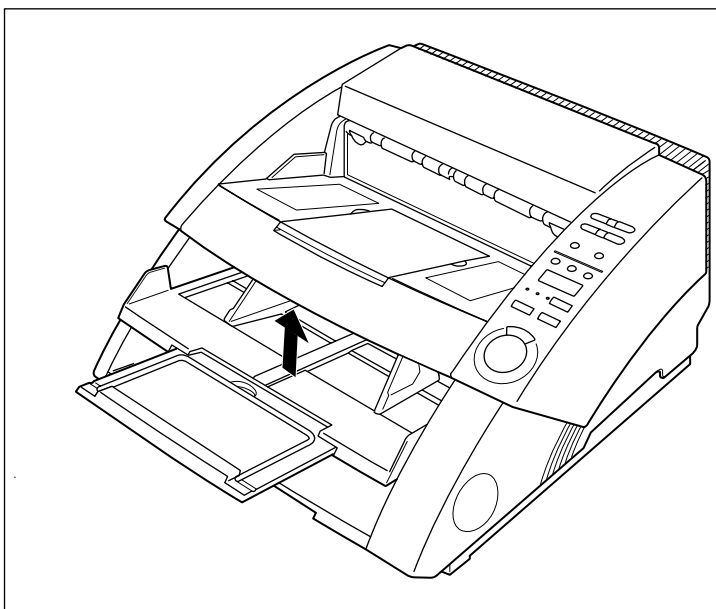
◆ Mode Manual

Utilisez ce mode pour numériser des documents qui ne se chargent pas bien (par exemple, un type de papier qui a tendance à causer une double charge). Dans ce mode, vous posez les pages du document l'une après l'autre.

1 Appuyez sur la touche Feeding Option sur le panneau de commande pour éclairer [Manual].



➔ Le plateau de documents s'élève.



Veillez à en pas vous coincer les doigts dans le plateau de documents.

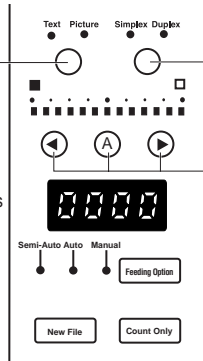
2 Sélectionnez les réglages suivants sur le panneau de commande.

Ces réglages ne sont pas nécessaires s'ils ont déjà été effectués dans l'application.

Text/Picture

[Text] : Sélectionnez cette option lors de la numérisation en mode noir et blanc de documents contenant surtout du texte.
 [Picture] : Sélectionnez cette option lors de la numérisation en mode de diffusion d'erreurs en noir et blanc de documents contenant des images ou des photos.

Si le mode Niveaux de gris ou le mode Couleurs a été validé dans l'application pour l'image sélectionnée, aucun de ces témoins ne s'allumera.



Simplex/Duplex

[Simplex] : Sélectionnez cette option pour numériser une seule face du document.

[Duplex] : Sélectionnez cette option pour numériser les deux faces du document.

Touches de luminosité

Sert à régler la luminosité pour la numérisation du document.

Pour sélectionner le réglage automatique de la luminosité, appuyez sur la touche (A) pour éclairer (A).

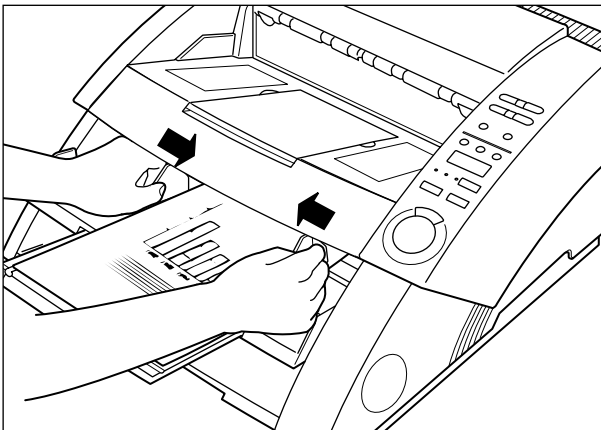
Pour sélectionner le réglage manuel de la luminosité, appuyez sur les touches (◀) ou (▶) pour déplacer l'indicateur au-dessus de la touche et ajuster la luminosité.



MEMO

Pour les détails sur les autres paramètres, voir " 3.3 Réglage des conditions de numérisation " (P. 58)

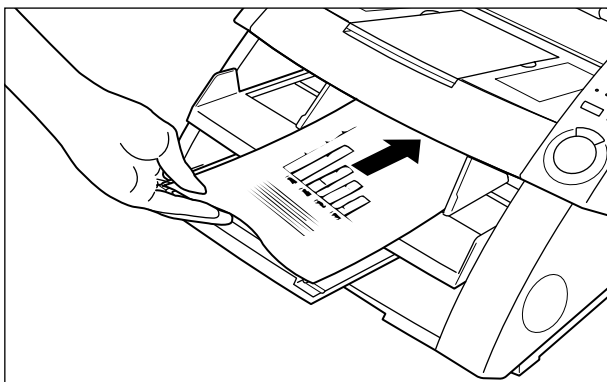
3 Posez une page du document que vous voulez numériser et réglez les guides de papier selon la largeur du document.



4 Activez la commande de numérisation de l'application.

5 Posez une feuille, face vers le haut, en insérant le haut en premier dans le scanner.

➡ Le document est numérisé.



6 Insérez ainsi le document page par page.

7 Pour arrêter la numérisation, appuyez sur la touche d'arrêt.



CONSEIL

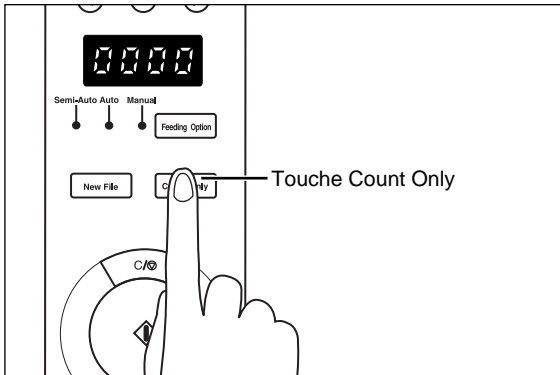
Le plateau de documents reste en position élevée. Pour qu'il revienne à sa position originale, appuyez sur la touche Feeding Option et sélectionnez une option sauf [Manual].

Comptage du nombre d'originaux d'un document

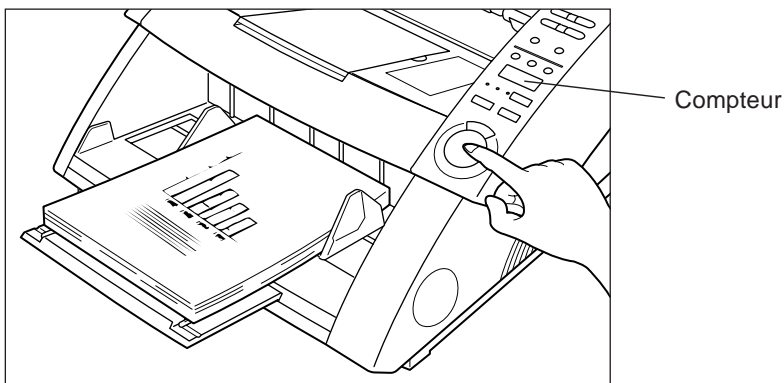
Si vous ne savez pas combien de pages contient le document, le nombre d'originaux peut être compté en réglant le scanner sur le mode Count Only.

1 Appuyez sur la touche Count only sur le panneau de commande du scanner.

➞ Le témoin de la touche Count Only s'allume pour indiquer que ce mode est activé. Le témoin Semi-Auto s'allume aussi.



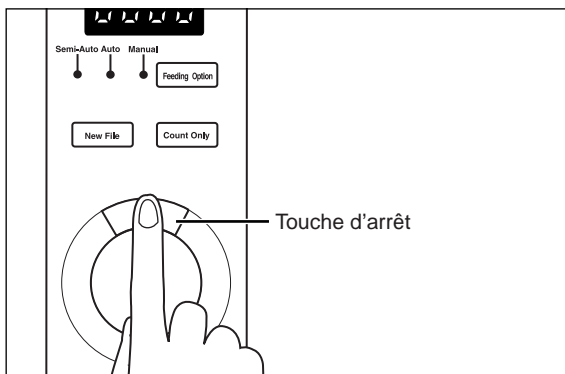
2 Posez le document sur le plateau de documents et appuyez sur la touche de marche.



➞ Le document est chargé et le nombre de pages du document est affiché sur le compteur.

3 Lorsque le nombre apparaît, appuyez sur la touche Count Only pour annuler le mode.

Pour effacer le nombre dans le compteur, appuyez au moins deux secondes sur la touche d'arrêt.



CONSEIL

Vous pouvez utiliser le compteur pour effectuer un comptage automatique lors de la numérisation (le nombre de pages du document est automatiquement vérifié pendant la numérisation). Pour les détails à ce sujet, reportez-vous au manuel séparé du pilote ISIS/TWAIN ou au manuel de Scanning Utility 5000.

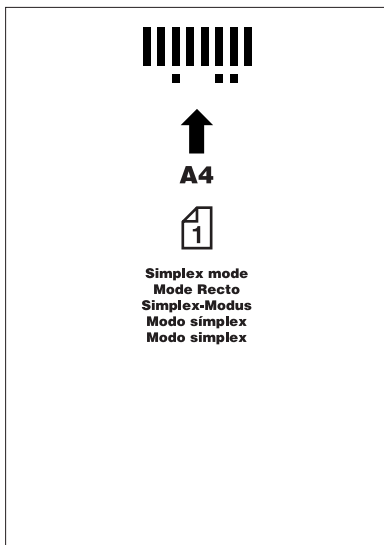
Feuilles de fonction

Le scanner est livré avec plusieurs feuilles de fonction qui peuvent être utilisées pour activer des fonctions diverses. Si vous chargez une feuille de fonction avec des documents, le scanner la détectera et réglera automatiquement le mode de numérisation souhaité.

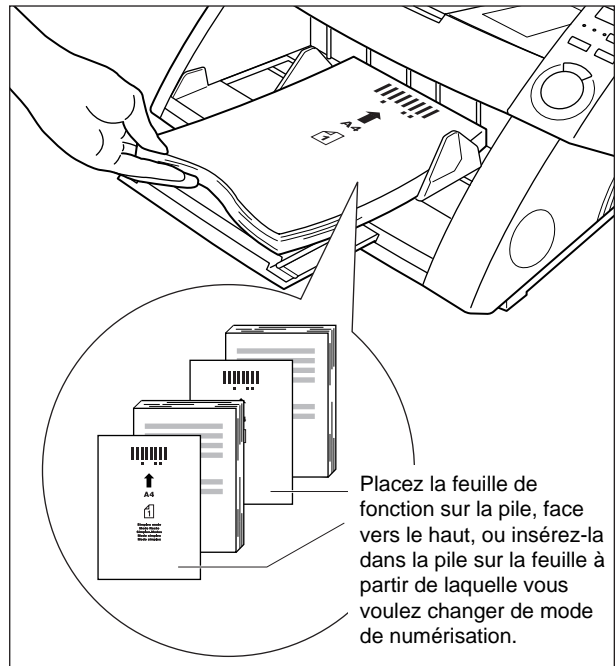


CONSEIL

- Cette fonction n'est disponible que si l'application supporte la numérisation avec les feuilles de fonction. Réglez l'application du scanner au préalable pour valider cette fonction. Pour les détails, reportez-vous au mode d'emploi de l'application utilisée par le scanner.
- Pour les détails sur les feuilles de fonction, reportez-vous aux instructions fournies avec les feuilles de fonction.



Feuille de fonction



Placez la feuille de fonction sur la pile, face vers le haut, ou insérez-la dans la pile sur la feuille à partir de laquelle vous voulez changer de mode de numérisation.

Les cinq types de feuilles de fonction suivantes sont fournies avec le DR-5020/5080C.

- **Feuilles de contrôle du scanner**

Ces feuilles contrôlent le mode dans lequel le document sera numérisé. Les feuilles de contrôle suivantes sont fournies pour chaque mode de numérisation.

Mode Recto-verso

Commande au scanner de numériser et de stocker le contenu de la face avant et arrière de la page.

Insérez cette feuille avant le document qui doit être numérisé et posez-la avec le document dans le scanner.

Mode Recto

Commande au scanner de numériser et de stocker le contenu de la face avant de la page seulement. Insérez la feuille de fonction avant le document à numériser et posez-la avec le document dans le scanner.

Mode Photo

Commande au scanner de valider le mode Photo pour la numérisation et le stockage de photographies. Insérez la feuille de fonction avant le document photographique et posez-la avec le document dans le scanner. Cette feuille n'est valide que lorsque le mode de numérisation est réglé sur Noir et blanc dans l'application. Elle est ignorée si le mode de numérisation est réglé sur Niveaux de gris ou Couleurs.

Mode Texte

Commande au scanner de valider le mode Texte pour la numérisation et le stockage de textes. Insérez cette feuille de fonction avant le document et posez-la avec le document dans le scanner. Cette feuille n'est valide que lorsque le mode de numérisation est réglé sur Noir et blanc dans l'application. Elle est ignorée si le mode de numérisation est réglé sur Niveaux de gris ou Couleurs.

- **Feuille de séparation de travaux**

Divise automatiquement un document en fichiers séparés dans lesquels seront stockés chaque travail. Insérez cette feuille de fonction avant le nouveau document et posez-la avec le document dans le scanner.



CONSEIL

- Faites des copies des feuilles de fonction originales et rangez les originaux dans un lieu sûr et propre.
- Lorsque vous faites des copies des feuilles de fonction, assurez-vous que les copies ont la même taille que les originaux. Elles doivent être nettes et détaillées, ni trop claires ni trop sombres. Si les copies sont trop claires ou sombres, des erreurs de numérisation peuvent se produire.
- La copie d'une feuille de fonction doit être effectuée sur du papier de même épaisseur que le document que vous numérisez. Si vous faites la copie sur une feuille de papier d'une autre épaisseur, une erreur de double charge peut être détectée (P. 63).
- Si vous faites une copie d'une feuille de fonction d'un autre format que A4, le motif doit commencer à 10 mm du haut de la feuille. Il doit aussi être au centre de la largeur de la feuille.
- Maniez les feuilles de fonction avec précaution. Veillez à ne pas les plier, écorner, marquer ou salir. Evitez de les salir sur 51 mm au haut de la feuille. Des feuilles de fonction sales ou maculées peuvent entraîner des erreurs de numérisation.
- Les documents ne pourront peut-être pas être numérisés correctement si la densité est trop élevée ou trop faible lors de la numérisation avec les feuilles de fonction.

3.3

Réglage des conditions de numérisation

Les conditions de numérisation du document se règlent sur le panneau de commande. Les trois paramètres suivants doivent être en principe réglés :

- **Paramètres de base**
Réglage de base lors de la numérisation : mode de chargement, luminosité, simplex/duplex, etc.
- **Réglage par les touches de fonction**
Validation des réglages enregistrés sur une touche de fonction.
- **Réglage du mode utilisateur**
Réglage du mode de fonctionnement du scanner (mode utilisateur) pour certains paramètres, comme la méthode de détection originale.

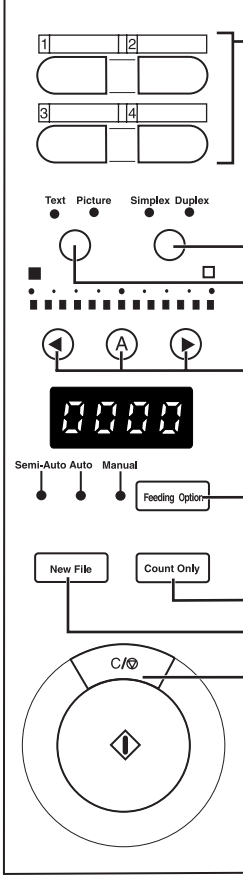
Vous trouverez ci-dessous une description des méthodes de réglage.



Seuls quelques réglages de numérisation s'effectuent sur le panneau de commande. Les réglages plus détaillés s'effectuent dans l'application. Pour les détails, reportez-vous au " Mode d'emploi des logiciels ISIS/TWAIN " ou au " Mode d'emploi de Scanning Utility 5000 ".

Paramètres de base

Les paramètres suivants peuvent être réglés sur le panneau de commande selon le type de document à numériser.



The diagram shows a control panel with the following elements: a top row of four buttons labeled 1, 2, 3, and 4; a row of three indicator lights labeled Text, Picture, and Simplex Duplex; a digital display showing '0000'; a row of three buttons labeled Semi-Auto, Auto, and Manual; a Feeding Option button; a New File button; a Count Only button; and a large circular button with a 'C' and a document icon.

Touches de fonction (P60)

Touche Simplex/Duplex
Sert à sélectionner la numérisation d'une seule face ou des deux faces du document.
Simplex : Sélectionnez cette option pour numériser une seule face du document.
Duplex : Sélectionnez cette option pour numériser les deux faces du document.

Touches de sélection de mode
Sert à sélectionner le mode de numérisation du document ("Noir et blanc" et "Diffusion d'erreur en noir et blanc").
Text : Sélectionnez cette option pour numériser en mode noir et blanc des documents contenant du texte (c'est-à-dire surtout des caractères).
Picture : Sélectionnez cette option pour numériser en mode de diffusion d'erreurs en noir et blanc des documents contenant des images ou des photos.
Si le mode Niveaux de gris ou le mode Couleurs est validé dans l'application pour l'image sélectionnée, aucun de ces témoins ne s'allumera.

Touches de luminosité
Réglez la luminosité lors de la numérisation du document.
Pour le réglage automatique de la luminosité, appuyez sur la touche (A) pour éclairer (A).
Pour le réglage manuel de la luminosité, appuyez sur les touches (◀) ou (▶) pour déplacer l'indicateur au-dessus de la touche et ajuster la luminosité. (Appuyez sur (▶) pour augmenter la luminosité et sur (◀) pour réduire la luminosité. La luminosité peut être réglée sur 13 niveaux.)
Dans le mode Count Only, vous pouvez utiliser les touches (◀) et (▶) pour régler la valeur initiale.

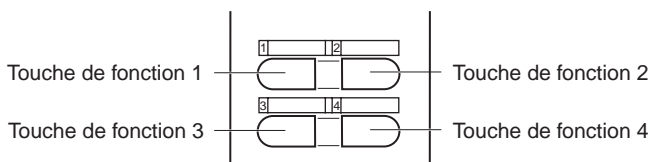
Touche Feeding Option (P. 39)
Cette touche sert à sélectionner le mode de charge du document.
Distant : Les trois témoins à gauche de la touche restent éteints. Le document est chargé lorsque la commande de numérisation est activée depuis l'ordinateur.
Semi-Auto : Après que le document a été posé sur le plateau de documents, il est chargé lorsque vous appuyez sur la touche de marche.
Auto : Le document est chargé automatiquement lorsque vous le posez.
Manual : Le document doit être posé page par page.

Touche Count Only (P. 53)
Sert à compter le nombre de pages dans le document.
Lorsque vous appuyez sur cette touche elle s'allume.
Lorsque vous posez le document et appuyez sur la touche d'arrêt, le document est chargé et le nombre de pages compté. (Le document n'est pas numérisé.) Le nombre de pages est affiché ou compteur.

Touche New File
Appuyez sur cette touche pour sauvegarder des images numérisées dans des fichiers séparés.
Lorsque vous appuyez sur cette touche, elle s'allume. Si vous numériser le document à ce moment, l'image sera sauvegardée dans un nouveau dossier.
Lorsque Nouveau fichier auto est validé dans l'application, cette touche s'allume automatiquement après la numérisation de chaque document.

Touche d'arrêt
Cette touche sert à arrêter la numérisation en cours.
Elle sert aussi à annuler le mode actuellement sélectionné ou à effacer l'indication du compteur. Pour réinitialiser le compteur à "0000", appuyez au moins deux secondes sur cette touche.

Paramètres des touches de fonction



Les quatre touches de fonction se situent en haut du panneau de commande. Ces touches sont simples à utiliser et permettent d'enregistrer certains paramètres.

Paramètres pouvant être affectés aux touches de fonction :

- **Réglage manuel de l'épaisseur**
Réglage manuel de l'épaisseur de papier.
- **Module de marquage**
Sert à sélectionner le module de marquage lorsqu'il est installé.
- **Mode de réglage fixe d'épaisseur**
Sert à régler l'épaisseur de papier pré réglée.
- **Détection de double charge**
Détection automatique de la charge simultanée de deux documents ou plus lors la numérisation.
- **Rétablissement des réglages mémorisés**
Sert à affecter aux touches de fonction les réglages du scanner qui ont été effectués sur un ordinateur. Lorsque ces réglages sont enregistrés, ils peuvent être rétablis sur le scanner par simple pression d'une touche de fonction.

Des fonctions ont été affectées à ces touches dans l'application. Pour les détails sur l'affectation de fonctions aux touches, reportez-vous au " Mode d'emploi des logiciels ISIS/TWAIN" ou au " Mode d'emploi de Scanning Utility 5000 ".



- Les réglages par défaut sont les suivants :
 - Touche de fonction 1 : Réglage manuel de l'épaisseur
 - Touche de fonction 2 : Module de marquage (si installé)
 - Touche de fonction 3 : Mode de réglage fixe d'épaisseur
 - Touche de fonction 4 : Détection de double charge
- Les réglages détaillés des fonctions affectées à chaque touche sont sauvegardés dans le scanner. Notez que les réglages usine seront rétablis si une réparation est effectuée sur le scanner.

◆ Réglage manuel de l'épaisseur

Ce scanner a été réglé initialement pour détecter automatiquement l'épaisseur de papier pendant la numérisation. Toutefois la détection risque de ne pas bien fonctionner si le papier est extrêmement épais ou fin. Le cas échéant, l'épaisseur devra être réglée manuellement pour que le document soit chargé sans problème dans le scanner.

Le réglage manuel de l'épaisseur s'effectue de la façon suivante :
Ce réglage sert à mesurer l'épaisseur d'un document type.

1 Appuyez sur la touche de fonction où le réglage manuel de l'épaisseur a été affecté (la touche de fonction 1 par défaut).

- ➔ La touche de fonction clignote et "Adj" apparaît dans le compteur en clignotant.
Le témoin Semi-Auto s'allume et le centre de la touche de marche clignote en vert.



Pour annuler la fonction de réglage de l'épaisseur de papier, appuyez sur la touche clignotante ou sur la touche d'arrêt.

2 Posez une feuille du document à numériser sur le plateau de documents et appuyez sur la touche de marche.

- ➔ La feuille est numérisée et l'épaisseur du papier est indiquée sur l'afficheur.

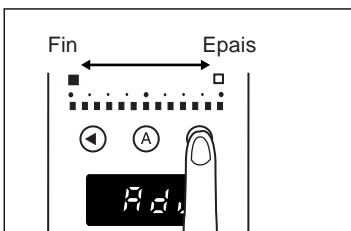


L'indication de l'épaisseur de papier n'est pas extrêmement précise, elle sert juste à régler l'épaisseur de papier en mode épaisseur fixe.

3 Appuyez sur la touche ◀ ou ▶ pour régler l'épaisseur de papier.

A chaque pression sur la touche ◀ et ▶, l'indicateur se déplace vers la gauche ou la droite.

Pour le réglage d'un papier épais, appuyez sur la touche ▶. Pour le réglage d'un papier fin, appuyez sur la touche ◀. L'épaisseur du papier peut se régler sur 13 paliers.



4 Appuyez une nouvelle fois sur la touche clignotante.

➔ L'épaisseur du papier est réglée et le compteur est réinitialisé.



- Pour valider l'épaisseur réglée ci-dessus, vous devez sélectionner le mode d'épaisseur fixe (P. 62).
- L'épaisseur de papier peut aussi être réglée dans l'application. Si l'épaisseur de papier a été réglée sur le panneau de commande du scanner et dans l'application, le dernier réglage effectué aura la priorité.

◆ Module de marquage

Lorsque le module de marquage optionnel est installé sur le scanner, vous pouvez choisir de l'utiliser ou non à l'aide d'une touche de fonction.

Pour utiliser le module de marquage, appuyez sur la touche de fonction où il a été affecté pour allumer le témoin et numérisez le document.

Si vous ne voulez pas utiliser le module de marquage, appuyez sur la touche pour éteindre le témoin et numérisez le document.

◆ Mode d'épaisseur fixe

Le scanner a été réglé initialement pour détecter l'épaisseur de papier avant la numérisation. Il est aussi doté d'un mode d'épaisseur fixe pour fixer le réglage d'épaisseur du papier. Lorsque le scanner est réglé sur le mode d'épaisseur fixe, la fonction de détection automatique de l'épaisseur du papier est invalidée et l'épaisseur réglée dans "Réglage manuel de l'épaisseur" (P.61) est utilisée.

Vous pouvez sélectionner la détection automatique de l'épaisseur de papier ou le mode d'épaisseur fixe à l'aide de la touche de fonction.

Pour régler le mode d'épaisseur fixe, appuyez sur la touche de fonction (la touche de fonction 3 par défaut) où ce mode est affecté pour allumer le témoin et numérisez le document.

Pour revenir au mode de détection automatique de l'épaisseur de papier, appuyez sur la touche où le mode d'épaisseur fixe est affecté pour éteindre le témoin.

◆ Détection de double charge

Le scanner est doté d'une fonction de détection de double charge. Grâce à cette fonction, l'épaisseur et la longueur du papier qui servira de standard sont mémorisées et en cas de double charge (avance simultanée de deux pages ou plus), une erreur apparaît.

Vous pouvez choisir de valider ou d'invalider la détection de double charge par une touche de fonction.

Pour détecter une double charge de papier, appuyez sur la touche de fonction où la détection de double charge est affectée (la touche de fonction 4 par défaut) pour allumer le témoin et numérisez le document.

Pour invalider la détection de double charge, appuyez sur la touche où la détection de double charge est affectée pour éteindre le témoin.

Une erreur de double charge se produit si vous posez des originaux de différentes tailles ou épaisseurs. Pour numériser ce type d'originaux, invalidez la détection de double charge avant la numérisation.



MEMO

- Comme la première feuille du document sert de référence pour la détection de double charge, une double charge risque de ne pas être détectée si la première feuille est chargée avec d'autres. Vérifiez l'image numérisée pour voir si la première feuille du document a été chargée et numérisée correctement.
- La détection de double charge n'est pas possible avec les documents de 130 mm ou moins.
- Une double charge est automatiquement détectée et un message d'erreur s'affiche si la longueur de l'original dépasse de 5 cm le document standard ou si l'original est 1,5 fois plus épais que le document standard.
- Lorsque la détection de double charge est validée par la touche de fonction, la longueur et l'épaisseur servent de référence. Il n'est pas possible de choisir la longueur ou l'épaisseur seulement par les touches de fonction pour la détection de double charge. Ce réglage peut être effectué dans le pilote ou l'application, mais dans ce cas la touche de fonction ne s'allume pas. La touche de fonction ne s'allume que lorsque la détection de double charge s'effectue en fonction de la longueur et de l'épaisseur.
- Les réglages de détection de double charge sont effacés de la mémoire du scanner à la mise hors tension du scanner.

◆ Rétablissement des réglages mémorisés

Vous pouvez affecter à une touche de fonction les réglages de numérisation effectués sur l'ordinateur. Les réglages de certains types d'originaux peuvent ainsi être affectés à chacune de quatre touches de fonction. Lorsque des réglages sont affectés à une touche, cette touche s'allume. Notez, toutefois, que les réglages de mode, résolution et taille de l'original doivent être effectués avant la numérisation car ils ne peuvent pas être affectés aux touches de fonction.

Pour utiliser les réglages de numérisation affectés aux touches de fonction, appuyez sur la touche appropriée avant d'ouvrir la boîte de dialogue Paramètres du scanner dans l'application. La touche s'allume et les réglages de scanner sont rétablis sur le scanner. Lorsque vous changez les réglages de scanner rétablis, la touche s'éteint. La touche s'allume à nouveau lorsque vous rétablissez les réglages originaux.

Paramètres du mode Utilisateur

Le DR-5020/5080C permet de sélectionner le mode de fonctionnement (mode utilisateur) de chacun des paramètres suivants.

(Les réglages U5 à U9 sont disponibles seulement lorsque le périphérique optionnel correspondant (module de marquage, décodeur de codes barres ou module de signature) est rattaché).

Réglage de la tonalité du panneau de commande

- U1-0 Pas de tonalité des touches activées. (défaut)
- U1-1 Tonalité des touches activées.

Réglage de détection de document

- U2-0 Pour détecter la largeur du document avec la largeur du document.
- U2-1 Pour détecter la largeur du document avec la largeur du guide-papier. (défaut)

- U3-0 Documents obliques non détectés. (défaut)
- U3-1 Documents obliques détectés et arrêt de la numérisation.
- U3-2 Documents obliques détectés et arrêt de la numérisation. (sauf dans le mode manuel)

Réglage de synchronisation SCSI

- U4-0 Pas de synchronisation SCSI.
- U4-1 Synchronisation SCSI. (défaut)

Réglage de codes barres

- U5-0 Pas de tonalité pendant la lecture des codes barres.
- U5-1 Tonalité pendant la lecture des codes barres. (défaut)

- U6-0 Sortie des codes START/STOP dans le code barres Codabar en minuscules. (défaut)
- U6-1 Sortie des codes START/STOP dans le code barres Codabar en majuscules.

- U7-0 Pas de vérification du code barres.
- U7-1 Vérification unique du code barres. (défaut)
- U7-2 Double vérification du code barres.
- U7-3 Triple vérification du code barres.

Réglage du mode de comptage

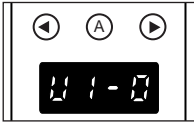
- U8-0 Marquage/Marque non utilisés dans le mode Count Only. (défaut)
- U8-1 Utilisation de Marquage/Marque dans le mode Count Only.

Réglage du mode de signature

- U9-0 Utilisation du module de signature dans le mode chèque. (défaut)
- U9-1 Utilisation du module de signature dans le mode A4.

◆ Utilisation du mode Utilisateur

- 1 Appuyez au moins cinq secondes sur la touche (A).

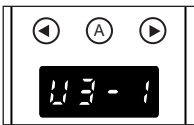


⇒ La touche (A) clignote et le mode Utilisateur apparaît dans le compteur.

- 2 Sélectionnez l'adresse du mode Utilisateur (de U1 à U9) à l'aide de la touche (◀) ou (▶).



- 3 Appuyez sur la touche (A) pour sélectionner le mode (dernier numéro) à utiliser.



- 4 Appuyez sur la touche d'arrêt.

⇒ Le mode sélectionné est validé et l'affichage du compteur réapparaît.

Chapitre 4

En cas de panne

Ce chapitre décrit les causes de problèmes pouvant se présenter pendant l'utilisation du DR-5020/5080C et la façon de les résoudre.

4.1 Si le scanner n'est pas reconnu	68
4.2 Résolution des incidents papier	70
4.3 Incident dans le chargeur	75
4.4 Si l'image numérisée n'est pas normale	77
4.5 Si un code d'erreur apparaît	78



Si le scanner n'est pas reconnu

Vous trouverez ci-dessous les différentes causes empêchant l'ordinateur de reconnaître le scanner. Essayez les solutions suivantes pour résoudre le problème.

Cause **Le scanner n'est pas raccordé correctement.**

Solution Raccordez le scanner correctement à la carte SCSI.

Cause **La carte SCSI n'est pas raccordée correctement.**

Solution Raccordez-la correctement en vous référant à son manuel.

Vérifiez aussi les points suivants selon le système d'exploitation de votre ordinateur.

<Windows 95>

Vérifiez dans [Start] – [Settings] – [Control Panel] – [System] – [Device Manager] pour voir si “ x ” ou “ ! ” est affiché pour le contrôleur SCSI. Si ni l'un ni l'autre n'est affiché, remettez la carte SCSI en place en vous référant à son manuel.

<Windows NT>

Vérifiez dans [Start] – [Settings] – [Control Panel] – [Adapter SCSI] pour voir si la carte SCSI est correctement reconnue. Si ce n'est pas le cas, remettez la carte SCSI en place en vous référant à son manuel.

Cause **L'ID SCSI est utilisé par d'autres dispositifs SCSI.**

Solution Vérifiez l'ID SCSI de tous les dispositifs SCSI raccordés et assurez-vous que le même ID n'est pas utilisé pour deux dispositifs ou plus. Réglez à nouveau les ID SCSI si le même ID est utilisé deux fois.

Cause **La terminaison n'est pas correctement raccordée.**

Solution Raccordez-la au dernier dispositif SCSI en fin de chaîne. Validez la fonction si le dispositif SCSI intègre une fonction de terminaison.

Cause **Le scanner a été éteint avant l'ordinateur.**
Solution Eteignez l'ordinateur et le scanner, puis rallumez d'abord le scanner puis l'ordinateur.

Cause **Le scanner est éteint.**
Solution Eteignez l'ordinateur, allumez le scanner et rallumez ensuite l'ordinateur.

Cause **Le cordon d'alimentation du scanner est débranché du scanner ou de la prise d'alimentation secteur.**
Solution Eteignez l'ordinateur et raccordez correctement le cordon d'alimentation du scanner, puis allumez le scanner et à nouveau l'ordinateur.

Cause **Le scanner ne supporte pas la carte SCSI.**
Solution Remplacez cette carte par une carte SCSI compatible avec le pilote.

4.2

Résolution des incidents papier

Du papier peut se coincer si la numérisation est arrêtée en cours ou si “ (PXX) ” apparaît sur le compteur.

Procédez de la façon suivante pour retirer le papier coincé de l'intérieur du DR-5020/5080C.

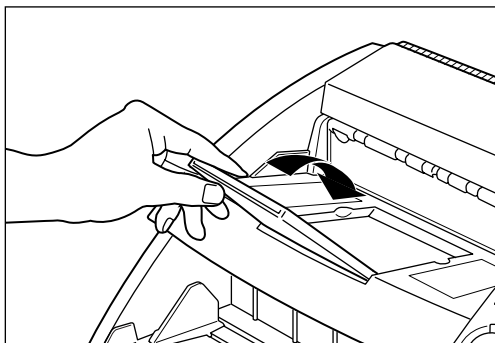


- Soyez très prudent lorsque vous retirez un papier coincé. Vous pourriez vous blesser. Par exemple, vous pouvez vous couper les doigts sur les bords du papier ou le document peut être endommagé.
- Retirez toutes les feuilles de papier coincées. Des morceaux peuvent rester dans l'appareil et causer d'autres bourrages ou incidents.
- Lorsque vous ouvrez ou fermez la partie supérieure du scanner, faites attention de ne pas vous coincer les doigts.

Incident papier dans le chargeur de papier

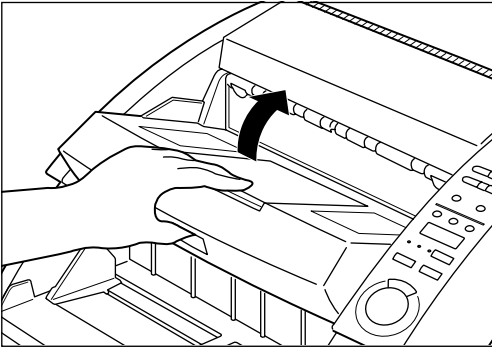
1 Retirez les documents du plateau de documents et du plateau de sortie des documents.

2 Retirez le plateau amovible ou la plaque support de sortie des documents, s'ils ont été installés sur le plateau de sortie des documents. Fermez le guide de plateau de sortie des documents s'il est ouvert.

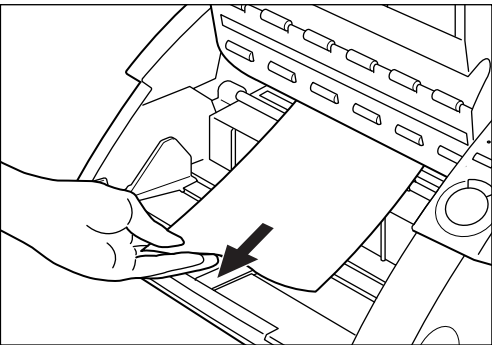


3 Ouvrez la partie supérieure.

Appuyez sur le bouton d'ouverture/fermeture et levez la partie supérieure jusqu'à ce qu'elle se bloque. Laissez-la dans cette position.

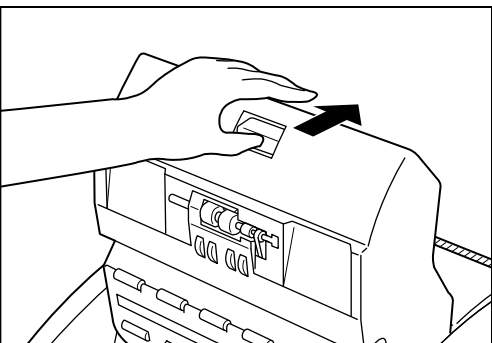


4 Retirez le papier coincé de l'intérieur du scanner.



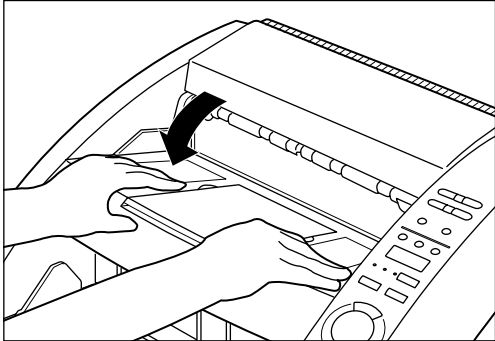
5 Pour fermer la partie supérieure, poussez-la le plus loin possible vers l'arrière et relâchez-la.

Lorsque vous relâchez la partie supérieure, elle s'abaisse lentement. N'essayez pas d'appuyer dessus lorsqu'elle s'abaisse. Vous pourriez endommager le scanner.



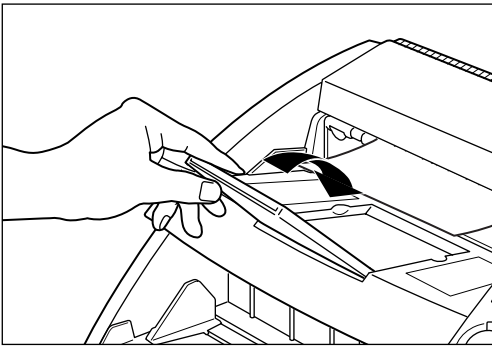
6 Lorsque la partie supérieure du scanner est retombée, appuyez fermement sur les deux côtés pour la fermer.

Si vous appuyez sur un seul côté de la partie supérieure, le côté opposé ne se fermera pas complètement. Un déclic doit être audible.

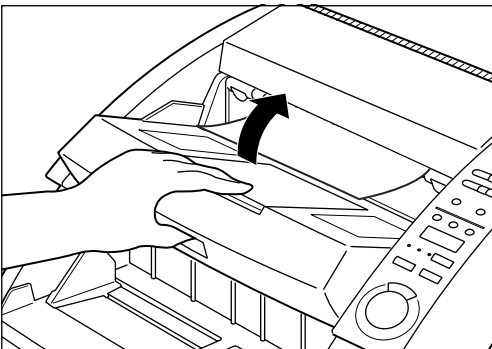


Incident papier dans la sortie du papier

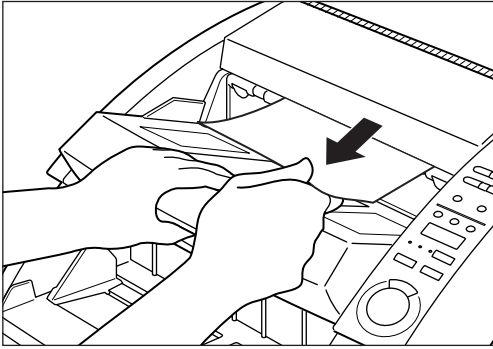
- 1** Retirez le papier coincé du plateau de documents ou du plateau de sortie des documents.
- 2** Retirez le plateau amovible ou la plaque support de sortie des documents s'ils sont installés sur le plateau de documents. Fermez l'extension du plateau de sortie des documents si elle est ouverte.



- 3** Ouvrez la partie supérieure.
Appuyez sur le bouton d'ouverture/fermeture et relevez légèrement la partie supérieure.

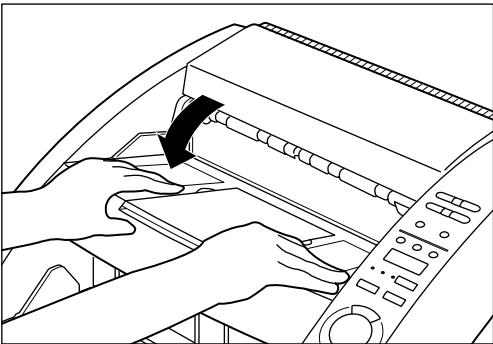


4 Retirez le papier coincé de la sortie.



5 Appuyez fermement sur les deux côtés de la partie supérieure pour la fermer.

Si vous appuyez sur un seul côté de la partie supérieure, le côté opposé ne se fermera pas complètement. Un déclic doit être audible.



4.3

Incident dans le chargeur

Si le document n'a pas été chargé correctement ou si les fonctions de détection n'opèrent pas normalement, recherchez l'origine du problème dans la liste suivante et résolvez le problème.

Problème

Cause et solution

Incident papier.

- Vérifiez si la longueur et l'épaisseur du document ne dépassent pas les limites du scanner et si la qualité du papier du document est appropriée.
Pour les précautions concernant le maniement des documents, reportez-vous à "A propos des documents" (P. 36).
- Erreur de charge de papier due à un papier glissant. (P. 32)
Changez la position du levier de réglage de charge de documents pour régler la charge du papier.
- Cylindres sales ou usés dans le scanner.
Nettoyez les rouleaux s'ils sont sales. (P. 83) S'ils sont usés, ils devront être remplacés. Pour ce faire, contactez le service après-vente Canon.

Problème

Cause et solution

Le plateau de documents ne s'élève pas et reste en place.

Le poids du papier inséré augmente parfois à cause de l'humidité ambiante (stockage dans un lieu très humide). Le cas échéant, le poids du papier est supérieur à la limite maximale bien que le nombre de feuilles soit inférieur au nombre maximal et le plateau ne peut pas s'élever. Réduisez le nombre de feuilles posées sur le plateau de documents et numérisez le document une nouvelle fois.

Problème

Cause et solution

Erreur de double charge bien qu'il n'y ait pas de double charge (détection de double charge erronée).

Si le format et l'épaisseur du papier sur lequel la feuille de fonction est copiée diffèrent de ceux du document à numériser, lorsqu'une feuille de fonction est utilisée, le scanner l'interprète comme double charge et une erreur se produit. Le cas échéant, désactivez la détection de double charge et numérisez une nouvelle fois le document. Ou bien, copiez la feuille de fonction sur du papier de même format et de même épaisseur que le document et utilisez cette copie.

Problème	La double charge ne peut pas être détectée.
Cause et solution	La détection de double charge n'est pas possible sur les documents de 130 mm ou moins même lorsque la détection de double charge soit activée.
Problème	Erreur d'obliquité bien que le document ne soit pas de travers.
Cause et solution	<p>Le scanner interprète de façon erronée que le document est inséré de travers.</p> <p>Cette erreur se produit lorsque les 5 mm au haut de l'original contient du texte ou des images, ou lorsque le fond de l'original est sombre. Le cas échéant, désactivez la détection d'obliquité et numérisez une nouvelle fois le document. Ou bien, faites une copie du document sur un autre papier en laissant suffisamment de marge autour du document (ou éclaircissez le fond) et numérisez une nouvelle fois le document.</p>
Problème	Le document est sale (module de marquage installé).
Cause et remède	De l'encre reste collée dans les orifices de la plaque guide à l'intérieur du module de marquage. Nettoyez ces orifices avec un coton-tige.



Si l'image numérisée n'est pas normale

Si l'image numérisée est anormale (image floue ou bandes apparaissant sur l'image), le problème peut provenir d'une des causes suivantes. Contrôlez la liste suivante et résolvez le problème.

- **Les vitres de numérisation et les cylindres du scanner sont sales.**

Si les vitres de numérisation et les cylindres du scanner sont sales, la saleté apparaîtra sur l'image numérisée.

→ Nettoyez les vitres de numérisation et les cylindres. Pour les détails, reportez-vous au Chapitre 5 "Nettoyage quotidien" (P. 83).

- **Les conditions de numérisation ne sont pas appropriées.**

Lorsque les réglages effectués ne sont pas appropriés, l'image numérisée n'est pas nette ou semble sombre.

→ Vérifiez les réglages de luminosité et d'autres réglages du scanner.

Si l'image numérisée est floue ou le document n'est pas du tout numérisé, la luminosité est probablement trop élevée.

Si l'image numérisée apparaît sombre, la luminosité est probablement trop faible.

Vérifiez aussi les réglages sur le pilote et l'application.

- **Le pilote ou l'application ne fonctionne pas correctement.**

Si le document ne peut pas être numérisé correctement bien que les réglages soient corrects, le pilote ou l'application ne fonctionne probablement pas correctement.

→ Réinstallez le pilote ou l'application.

Pour les détails sur l'installation du pilote, reportez-vous aux Mode d'emploi du pilote ISIS/TWAIN.

Pour les détails sur l'installation de l'application, reportez-vous au Mode d'emploi de l'application utilisée.

- **Autres causes**

L'ordinateur reconnaît correctement le scanner et le pilote et l'application sont correctement installés mais la numérisation est impossible. La cause de ce problème vient probablement de la carte SCSI installée sur l'ordinateur qui n'est pas adaptée. Ce message d'erreur disparaît souvent en désactivant le transfert asynchrone dans le mode Utilisateur du scanner (P.64). Si le problème ne peut pas être résolu de cette façon, contactez le fabricant de l'ordinateur ou de la carte SCSI.

Si les solutions précédentes ne permettent pas de résoudre le problème, contactez un service après-vente Canon.

4.5

Si un code d'erreur apparaît

Lorsque le scanner fonctionne mal ou un incident, mauvaise alimentation ou mauvaise éjection du papier, se produit, un code d'erreur apparaît dans le compteur sur le panneau de commande.

Les différents codes d'erreur qui apparaissent sur le compteur et les solutions aux problèmes sont présentés ci-dessous.

Codes d'erreur d01, d02, d03

Cause Deux pages ou plus ont été numérisées.

Solution Appuyez sur la touche d'arrêt pour remettre le compteur à "0". Comparez le document et l'image numérisée et numérisez une nouvelle fois le document.

Code d'erreur C01

Cause La partie supérieure du scanner est ouverte.

Solution Fermez-la.

Code d'erreur C02

Cause Le couvercle du module de marquage est ouvert (lorsque le module est installé).

Solution Fermez-le.

Code d'erreur C03

Cause La partie supérieure et le capot du module de marquage sont ouverts (lorsque le module est installé).

Solution Fermez-la partie supérieure et le capot du module de marquage.

Codes d'erreur C04

Cause Le couvercle du module de signature ED600 est ouvert (avec le module ED600 installé).

Solution Fermez le couvercle du module de signature ED600.

Code d'erreur C05

Cause La partie supérieure et le capot du module de signature ED600 sont ouverts (avec le module ED600 installé).

Solution Fermez la partie supérieure et le capot du module de signature ED600.

Code d'erreur	C06
Cause	Le capot de l'imprimante et celui du module de signature ED600 sont ouverts (lorsque l'imprimante et l'endosseur sont installés).
Solution	Fermez le capot de l'imprimante et le capot du module de signature ED600.
Code d'erreur	C07
Cause	La partie supérieure, le capot de l'imprimante et le capot du module de signature sont ouverts (lorsque l'imprimante et l'endosseur sont installés).
Solution	Fermez tous les capots.
Codes d'erreur	E20, E21, E22, E23, E24, E25, E29, E30, E40, E41, E80, E85
Cause	Erreur interne de l'appareil.
Solution	L'appareil doit être réparé par un technicien de service. Eteignez le scanner, contactez le magasin où vous l'avez acheté ou un service après-vente Canon et indiquez le code d'erreur.
Code d'erreur	L01
Cause	Trop de données. Mémoire pleine.
Solution	Appuyez sur la touche d'arrêt pour remettre le compteur à "0". Une mémoire optionnelle doit être ajoutée pour utiliser certaines fonctions. Contactez le magasin où vous avez acheté le scanner ou un service après-vente Canon. Pour les détails sur l'extension de mémoire pour l'emploi de certaines fonctions, reportez-vous aux "Tableaux des modes de numérisation des DR-5020/5080C". (P. 88)
Code d'erreur	L02
Cause	Trop de données. La mémoire est pleine.
Solution	Appuyez sur la touche d'arrêt pour remettre le compteur à "0". Cette erreur se présente lorsque vous numérisez les deux côtés d'un document de format A3. Numérisez une face à la fois, ou changez de mode de numérisation.
Code d'erreur	U01
Cause	Le nombre de feuilles du document à numériser est supérieur au nombre de feuilles indiqué lors de la numérisation.
Solution	Deux feuilles ou plus ont été chargées en même temps lorsque le nombre de feuilles a été compté. Appuyez sur la touche d'arrêt pour remettre le compteur à "0". Vérifiez le nombre de feuilles pour voir si toutes les feuilles du document ont été comptées et numérisez une nouvelle fois le document.

Code d'erreur U02
Cause **Le nombre de feuilles numérisées du document est inférieur au nombre de feuilles indiqué lors de la numérisation.**
Solution Deux feuilles ou plus ont été chargées en même temps lors de la numérisation. Appuyez sur la touche d'arrêt pour remettre le compteur à "0". Comparez le nombre d'images numérisées et le nombre de feuilles du document pour voir si toutes les feuilles du document ont été numérisées correctement et numérisez une nouvelle fois le document.

Code d'erreur H01
Cause **La cartouche d'encre du module de marquage n'est pas installée.**
Solution Installez-la correctement.

Code d'erreur H02
Cause **Erreur de connexion du module de signature ED600 (option).**
Solution Raccordez correctement le module de signature ED600.

Code d'erreur P00, P01, P02, P03, P04, P06, P08, P10, P20
Cause **Incident papier**
Solution Retirez le papier. (P. 70)

Code d'erreur P30
Cause **Incident papier dans le module ED600.**
Solution Retirez le papier bloqué de l'intérieur du module de signature ED600 en suivant les instructions du mode d'emploi du module de signature ED600.

Code d'erreur P80
Cause **Erreur d'alimentation papier**
Solution Ouvrez et refermez la partie supérieure.

Code d'erreur J18
Cause **Un document était de biais.**
Solution Retirez le document oblique.
Numérisez ensuite le document après avoir vérifié que l'image sur le document où l'erreur s'est produite a été numérisée correctement.

Chapitre 5

Nettoyage

Ce chapitre décrit le nettoyage quotidien du scanner.

5.1 Nettoyage quotidien	82
--------------------------------------	-----------

5.1 Nettoyage quotidien

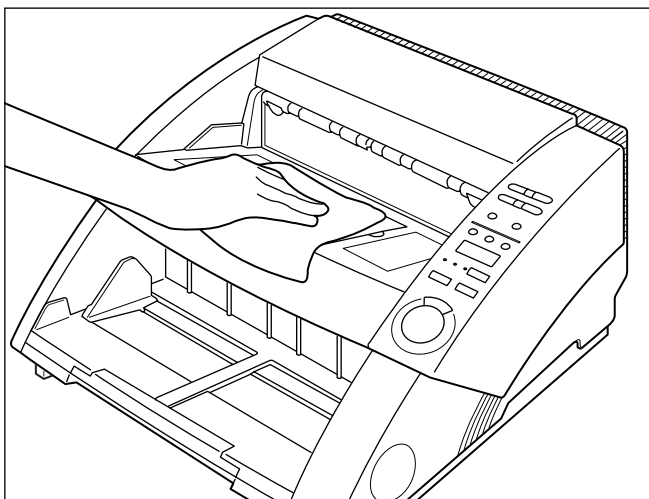
Le DR-5020/5080C doit être nettoyé régulièrement pour garantir des numérisations de haute qualité.



- Avant de nettoyer le scanner, éteignez-le ainsi que l'ordinateur et débranchez le cordon d'alimentation de la prise secteur pour éviter les risques d'électrocution.
- Ne jamais nettoyer le scanner avec des solvants organiques, comme l'alcool, le benzène ou le diluant de peinture. Ces produits peuvent causer un incendie et une électrocution ou endommager l'extérieur ou la couleur de l'appareil.
- Ne jamais vaporiser de détergent neutre ni d'eau directement sur les vitres de numérisation. Le liquide peut pénétrer sous les vitres et contaminer la source de lumière interne et les lentilles.

Nettoyage de la partie principale

Essuyez le scanner avec un chiffon légèrement mouillé d'eau ou de détergent neutre bien essoré. Séchez-le ensuite avec un chiffon propre et sec.



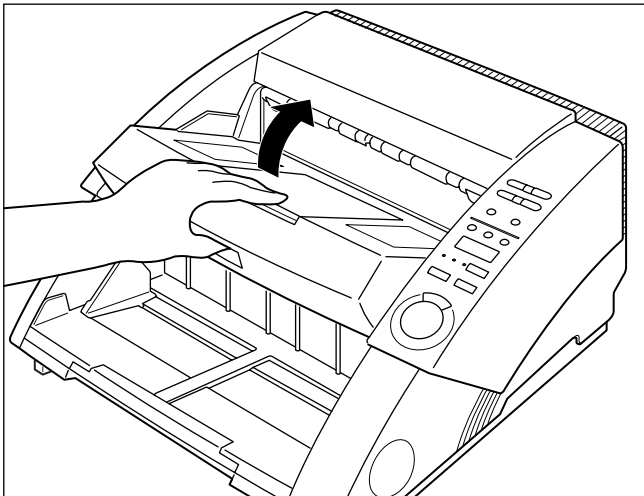
Nettoyage des vitres de numérisation et des cylindres

La cause probable de traînées sur les images numérisées ou de saleté sur les documents numérisés est l'accumulation de saleté sur les vitres de numérisation ou sur les cylindres. Nettoyez régulièrement les vitres et les cylindres.

- 1 Appuyez sur l'interrupteur d'alimentation pour éteindre le scanner et débranchez le cordon d'alimentation de la prise secteur.**
- 2 Retirez le plateau amovible ou la plaque support du plateau de sortie des documents, si vous l'avez installé. Fermez l'extension du plateau de sortie des documents s'il est ouvert.**

- 3 Ouvrez la partie supérieure du scanner.**

Appuyez sur le bouton d'ouverture/fermeture et soulevez le haut de la partie supérieure avec précaution jusqu'à ce qu'il reste en position ouverte.



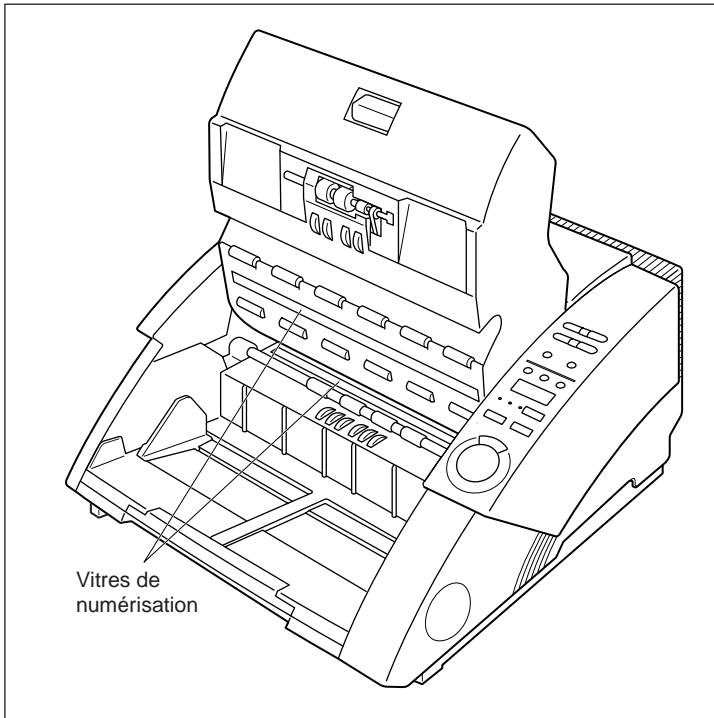
4 Nettoyez les vitres de numérisation avec un chiffon doux et propre.

Veillez à bien essuyer les deux vitres, celle du dessus et celle du dessous.



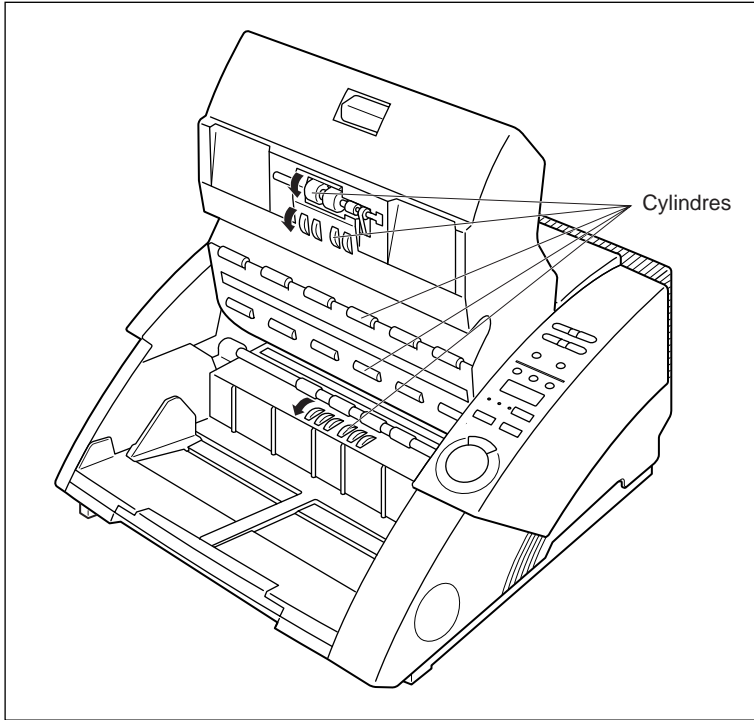
ATTENTION

Ne jamais vaporiser de détergent doux ou d'eau directement sur les vitres d'exposition. Du liquide pourrait pénétrer sous les vitres et contaminer la source de lumière et les lentilles.



5 Essuyez les cylindres avec un chiffon trempé dans de l'eau ou du détergent neutre mais bien essoré.

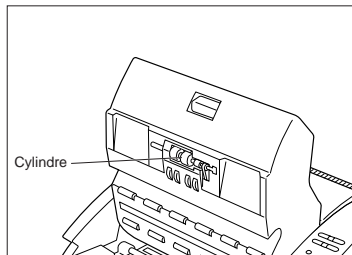
Les cylindres se trouvent aux endroits indiqués sur la figure ci-dessous. Tournez-les dans le sens des flèches tout en les essuyant.



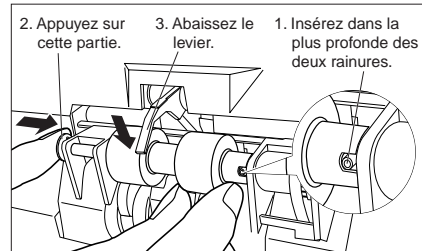
FRANÇAIS



CONSEIL



A



B

- Si un rouleau se détache (Figure A), rattachez-le comme indiqué sur la Figure B.
- Avant de remettre la partie supérieure dans sa position originale, veillez à abaisser le levier sur le chargeur (Figure B). Si le document est numérisé lorsque le levier est en position haute, une erreur de charge se produira.

6 Séchez ensuite les cylindres avec un chiffon sec et doux.

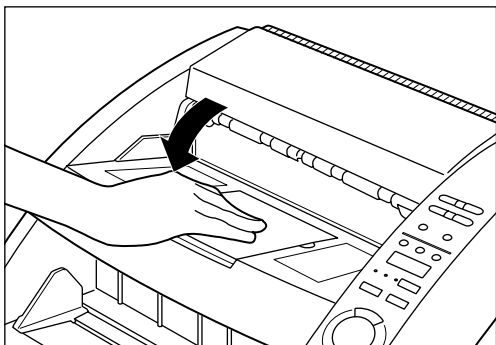
7 Pour fermer la partie supérieure de l'appareil, poussez-la le plus loin possible vers l'intérieur, puis relâchez-la.

Lorsque vous la relâchez, elle s'abaisse lentement. N'essayez pas d'appuyer dessus lorsqu'elle s'abaisse. Le scanner pourrait être endommagé.



8 Lorsque la partie supérieure est entièrement abaissée, appuyez fermement dessus pour la fermer.

Si vous appuyez seulement sur un côté de la partie supérieure, le côté opposé ne sera pas complètement fermé. Un déclic doit être audible.



Si des incidents papier et une double charge (charge de deux pages de documents ou plus) se produit après le nettoyage des cylindres, la cause en est probablement un frottement des cylindres. Dans ce cas, remplacez les cylindres. Contactez le magasin où vous avez acheté le scanner ou un service après-vente Canon pour le remplacement.

Cordon d'alimentation

Si vous laissez le cordon d'alimentation branché sur une prise secteur pendant une longue période, de la poussière risque de s'accumuler sur les bornes de la prise et de causer un incendie ou une décharge électrique. Il est conseillé de nettoyer régulièrement la fiche d'alimentation.

Module de marquage

Les documents numérisés risquent d'être maculés lorsque le module de marquage est utilisé.

Les taches proviennent de l'encre qui reste collée aux orifices de la plaque guide à l'intérieur du module de marquage. Nettoyez ces orifices avec une ouate de coton pour éliminer les taches.

Annexe

◆ Tableaux des modes de numérisation des DR-5020/5080C

Des messages d'erreur peuvent s'afficher lorsque certains modes de numérisation ne sont pas supportés par le scanner en raison des limites de la mémoire. Si un de ces messages apparaît, ajoutez une mémoire optionnelle (DR-5080C seulement) en vous référant au tableau suivant.



MEMO

- La numérisation dans le mode Duplex à une résolution de 400 x 400 ppp n'est pas possible lorsque le document a plus de 216 mm de large.
- Selon l'application et le pilote utilisés, tous les modes ne seront pas supportés. Pour de plus amples détails, lisez attentivement les modes d'emploi de l'application et du pilote utilisés.

64 Mo de mémoire sur le DR-5080C (standard) O : Supporté x : Non supporté

Mode de numérisation		Résolution (H x V)	Duplex					Simplex								
			A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR	A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR		
2 bits	Mode Texte (Noir et blanc)	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	Mode Photo (DE Noir et blanc)	200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Niveaux de gris	4 niveaux	240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	16 niveaux	300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	256 niveaux	300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Couleurs	3 bits	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
	6 bits	200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
	12 bits	240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
	24 bits	300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		240 X 240	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		400 X 400	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	O	O	O	
			300 X 300	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O		
			300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O		
			240 X 240	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O		
			200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O		

128 Mo de mémoire sur le DR-5080C (option) O : Supporté X : Non supporté

Mode de numérisation		Résolution (H x V)	Duplex						Simplex						
			A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR	A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR	
2 bits	Mode Texte (Noir et blanc)	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
	Mode Photo (DE Noir et blanc)	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
240 X 240		O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
Niveaux de gris	4 niveaux	200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	16 niveaux	200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	256 niveaux	200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Couleurs	3 bits	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	6 bits	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	12 bits	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	24 bits	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O

FRANÇAIS

DR-5020

O : Supporté x : Non supporté

Mode de numérisation		Résolution (H x V)	Duplex						Simplex						
			A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR	A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR	
2 bits	Mode Texte (Noir et blanc)	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	Mode Photo (DE Noir et blanc)	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O

Poids	Environ. 20 kg
Alimentation	CA 220-240 V (50/60 Hz), 0,6 A (max)
Consommation	Max. 120 W (max)
Bruit	Inférieur à 70 dB
Environnement de fonctionnement	Température : 10°C à 32,5°C Humidité : 20% à 80% HR (avec module de marquage 30% à 80% HR)

Les spécifications sont sujettes à modifications sans avis préalable.

Options

Nom	Fonction
Extension de mémoire (128 Mo) (seulement DR-5080C)	L'extension de la mémoire standard de 64 Mo permet de régler plus précisément les conditions de numérisation.* <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Pour les détails sur les réglages de numérisation (mode de numérisation, résolution et format du papier) possibles avec l'extension de mémoire, reportez-vous aux Tableaux des modes de numérisation des DR-5020/5080C dans l'Annexe. (P.88)
Module de marquage	Imprime des nombres, caractères alphabétiques et des symboles sur la face avant du document après la numérisation.
Décodeur de codes barres	Lit et reconnaît les codes barres d'un document.
Module de signature Endosseur ED600	Imprime un nombre de 8 chiffres et des caractères particuliers sur la face arrière du document après la numérisation.

Pour les détails sur chaque option, contactez votre revendeur.

Index

- A -

- A propos des documents 36
- Ailettes de ventilation 16

- B -

- Bouton d'ouverture/fermeture 15
- Branchement du câble SCSI 24
- Branchement du cordon
d'alimentation 26

- C -

- Carte d'extension 15, 27
- Code barres (Barcode) 64
- Codes d'erreur 78
- Commutateurs DIP 16, 25
- Comptage du nombre d'origin
aux d'un document 53
- Compteur 18
- Configuration requise 22
- Connecteurs SCSI 16, 24
- Consignes de sécurité 6
- Cordon d'alimentation 14, 26

- D -

- Décodeur de codes barres 92
- Détecteur 47
- Détection d'obliquité 64
- Détection de document 64
- Détection de double charge 63

- E -

- Emballage 14
- Emplacement idéal 8
- En cas de panne 67
- Entretien quotidien 6
- Étiquettes de guide de
documents 20, 32
- Étiquettes de touches de fonction... 20
- Extension de mémoire 92
- Extension du plateau de
documents 15, 27

- F -

- Feuille de séparation de travaux 56
- Feuilles de contrôle du scanner 56
- Feuilles de fonction 55

- G -

- Guides de document 15

- I -

- Incident papier 70
 - à la sortie du papier 73
 - dans le chargeur de papier 70
- Interrupteur d'alimentation 15
- Levier de réglage de charge
du papier 15, 32

- M -

- Mise sous et hors tension 33
- Mode Auto 46
- Mode Comptage 53, 64
- Mode Epaisseur fixe 60, 62
- Mode manuel 50
- Mode Utilisateur 64
- Module de mar
quage 60, 62, 64, 78, 79, 87, 92
- Module de signature 67, 78, 79, 92

- N -

- Nettoyage 82
 - Scanner 82
 - Vitres et cylindres du scanner... 83
- Nettoyage quotidien 82
- Noms des organes 15
 - Face arrière 16
 - Face avant 15
- Numérisation 39

- O -

- Options 92

- P -

Panneau de commande du scanner	17, 60
Paramètres de base	59
Paramètres des touches de fonction	60
Paramètres du mode Utilisateur	64
Partie supérieure	15
Plaque support de sortie des documents	20, 30
Plateau amovible	20, 31
Plateau de documents	15
Plateau de sortie des documents ...	15
Prise de cordon d'alimentation	16

Touche de nouveau fichier	19, 59
Touche de sélection de mode ...	18, 59
Touche Simplex/Duplex	17, 59
Touches de fonction	17, 60
Transport du scanner	9, 23

- R -

Raccordement à un ordinateur	24
Réglage de l'ID SCSI et de la terminaison	25
Réglage de la charge du papier	32
Réglage de terminaison	25, 68
Réglage des conditions de numérisation	58
Réglage manuel de l'épaisseur	61
Résolution des incidents papier	70
Rétablissement de réglages mémorisés	63

- S -

SCSI ID	25, 68
Semi-auto	43
Si l'image numérisée n'est pas normale	77, 83
Si le scanner n'est pas reconnu	68
Sortie des documents	15, 29
Spécifications	90
Synchronisation SCSI	64

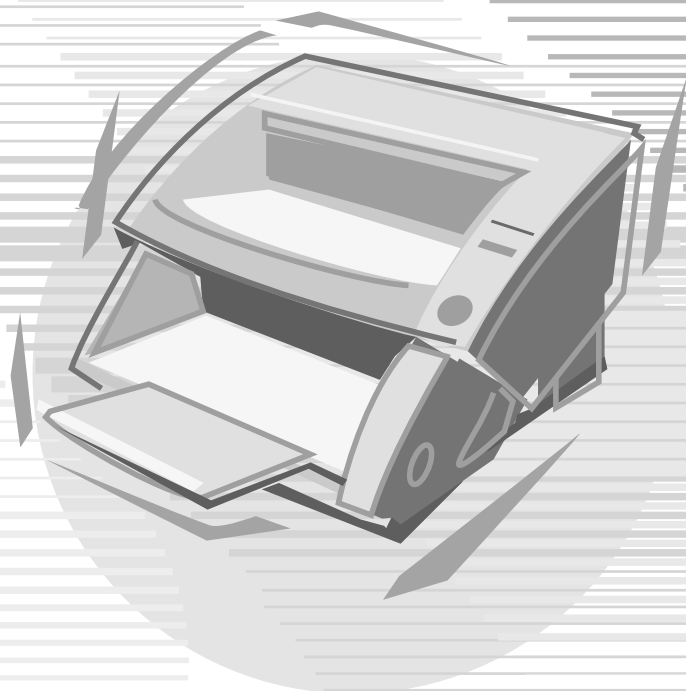
- T -

Tableau des modes de numérisation	88
Touche d'arrêt	19
Touche d'options chargeur ..	19, 39, 59
Touche de comptage	19, 53, 59
Touche de luminosité	18, 59
Touche de marche	19

DR-5020/5080C

Bedienungsanleitung

Bitte diese Bedienungsanleitung vor Inbetriebnahme des Gerätes sorgfältig lesen und die Anleitung griffbereit zum Nachschlagen aufbewahren.



HINWEIS

- ① Copyright© 1999 von CANON ELECTRONICS INC. Alle Rechte vorbehalten. Kein Teil dieser Publikation darf reproduziert, übertragen, abgeschrieben, in einem Datenspeichersystem gespeichert oder in irgendeiner Form in eine Sprache oder Computersprache übersetzt werden, und zwar in keiner Form und in keiner Weise, sei es elektronisch, mechanisch, magnetisch, optisch, chemisch, manuell oder anderweitig, wenn nicht die ausdrückliche Genehmigung von CANON ELECTRONICS INC. dazu vorliegt.
- ② Änderungen im Inhalt dieses Dokuments bleiben ohne vorherige Ankündigung vorbehalten.
- ③ Alle Anstrengungen wurden unternommen, um den Inhalt dieses Dokuments so akkurat wie möglich zu machen. Canon Electronics, Inc. und seine Tochterfirmen können aber keine Verantwortung für möglicherweise vorhandene Irrtümer und dadurch entstehende Folgen übernehmen.
- ④ Wir können keine Verantwortung für etwaige Schäden übernehmen, die aus dem Betrieb des Produktes resultieren, ungeachtet Punkt ③.

Warenzeichen und eingetragene Warenzeichen

- Microsoft, Windows® und Windows NT® eingetragene Warenzeichen der Microsoft Corporation in den USA und anderen Ländern.
- ISIS® ist ein eingetragenes Warenzeichen der Pixel Translation A Division of ActionPoint Inc.
- In dieser Anleitung erwähnte Produktnamen dienen lediglich zur Identifizierung, wobei es sich dabei mitunter um Warenzeichen oder eingetragene Warenzeichen und/oder jeweiligen Firmen handelt.

EINLEITUNG

Herzlichen Glückwunsch zum Kauf des Canon Dokumentenscanners DR-5020/5080C.

Insgesamt sind drei Handbücher mit dem DR-5020/5080C mitgeliefert: DR-5020/5080C-Anleitung (diese Anleitung), Scanning Utility 5000-Bedienungsanleitung und ISIS/TWAIN-Treiber-Anleitung.

Diese Bedienungsanleitung beschreibt die Bedienung des Scanners, z.B. den Anschluß des Scanners, das Einlegen von Dokumenten und das Entfernen gestauten Dokumenten. Außerdem werden Vorsichtsmaßnahmen beim Umgang mit dem Scanner gegeben. Um die Funktionen dieses Scanners voll auszunutzen und das Gerät optimal anzuwenden, lesen Sie diese Bedienungsanleitungen (DR-5020/5080C, Scanning Utility 5000 und ISIS- oder TWAIN-Treiber) bitte gründlich und befolgen die Angaben.

Nachdem Sie die Bedienungsanleitung gelesen haben, legen Sie sie an sicherer Stelle zum Nachschlagen ab.

Im folgenden eine kurze Beschreibung von Zweck und Inhalt dieser Anleitungen.

DR-5020/5080C Bedienungsanleitung (diese Anleitung)

Diese Anleitung beschreibt, wie der Scanner angeschlossen, Dokumente eingelesen werden, gestautes Papier entfernt wird und gibt weitere wichtige Informationen zum Umgang mit dem Scanner. Lesen Sie diese Anleitung vor der Inbetriebnahme des DR-5020/5080C.

Scanning Utility 5000 Bedienungsanleitung

Diese Anleitung beschreibt, wie die mit dem Scanner mitgelieferte "Scanning Utility 5000" installiert und bedient wird.

ISIS/TWAIN-Treiberanleitung

Diese Anleitung beschreibt die Bedienung, wenn der Scanner mit einer ISIS-Treiber oder TWAIN-Treiber-kompatiblen Applikation betrieben wird.

■ VORSICHT

Beachten Sie folgendes bei der Verwendung des Scanners zur Erstellung von Kopien:

- Die Reproduktion von Banknoten, anderen Arten von Währungen oder Wertpapieren ist gesetzwidrig und wird gerichtlich verfolgt.
- Die Reproduktion von offiziellen Zertifikaten, Lizenzen, Fahrscheinen, urheberrechtlich geschützten und privaten Dokumenten o.ä. ist ebenfalls gesetzwidrig und kann gerichtlich verfolgt werden.
- Wenn ein eingescanntes Bild für andere zu rein persönlichen Zwecken verwendet werden soll, ist immer die Genehmigung des Urheberrechtsinhabers erforderlich.

KONVENTIONEN

Im folgenden die Symbole und Konventionen, die in dieser Bedienungsanleitung verwendet werden. Vor dem Lesen der Bedienungsanleitung machen Sie sich bitte mit diesen Symbolen und Konventionen und ihren Bedeutungen vertraut.



Sorgfältig lesen, um Unfälle mit Verletzungen oder Todesfolge zu vermeiden.



Sorgfältig lesen, um Sachschäden oder Verlust wertvoller Daten zu vermeiden.



Kennzeichnet wichtige Informationen in dieser Anleitung. Eine Zahl in Klammern weist auf die Seitennummer hin, wo weitere Informationen zum betreffenden Satz oder Abschnitt gegeben werden.



Tips zu Bedienverfahren und Vermeidung von kleineren Schwierigkeiten.

■ Dieses Gerät

Diese Anleitung bezeichnet die Modelle DR-5020 und DR-5080C gemeinsam als "Scanner". Wenn eine Beschreibung sich speziell auf eines der Modelle bezieht, wird jeweils DR-5020 oder DR-5080C angegeben.

INHALT

EINLEITUNG	1
KONVENTIONEN	2
Vorsichtsmaßnahmen zur Sicherheit	6
Kapitel 1 Über den DR-5020/5080C	11
1.1 Merkmale des DR-5020/5080C	12
1.2 Auspacken: Lieferumfang	14
1.3 Teilennamen	15
◆ Frontansicht	15
◆ Rückansicht	16
◆ Bedienfeld	17
◆ Herausnehmbares Fach	20
◆ Dokumentenauslaufablage	20
◆ Funktionstastenschilder	20
Kapitel 2 Vorbereitung zum Betrieb	21
2.1 Systemanforderungen	22
2.2 Aufstellung und Anschluß	23
Tragen des Geräts	23
Anschluß an einen Computer	24
◆ Anschluß des SCSI-Kabels	24
◆ Einstellen von SCSI-ID und Abschlußschalter	25
Anschluß des Netzkabels	26
◆ Anschluß des Netzkabels	26
2.3 Vorbereitung für Papiereinzug und Ausgabe	27
Vorbereitung der Dokumentenfach-Verlängerung und der Dokumentenauslauffach-Verlängerung	27
◆ Dokumentenfach-Verlängerung	27
◆ Dokumentenauslauffach-Verlängerung	29
◆ Dokumentenauslaufablage	30
◆ Herausnehmbares Fach	31
Papiereinzug-Einstellung	32
Anbringen der Dokumentenführungsschilder	32
2.4 Ein-/Ausschalten der Netzversorgung (EIN/AUS)	33
Einschalten der Netzversorgung (EIN)	33
Ausschalten der Netzversorgung (AUS)	34

Kapitel 3 Vorbereitung der Dokumente 35

3.1 Dokumente	36
3.2 Einlegen und Scannen von Dokumenten	38
Scannverfahren	39
◆ Remote-Modus	40
◆ Semi-Auto-Modus	43
◆ Auto-Modus	46
◆ Manual-Modus	50
Zählen der Anzahl von Originalen in einem Dokument	53
Funktionsblätter	55
3.3 Einstellung der Scannbedingungen	58
Grundeinstellungen	59
Einstellung der Funktionstasten	60
◆ Manuelle Stärkeneinstellung	61
◆ Imprinter EIN/AUS	62
◆ Fester Stärkenmodus EIN/AUS	62
◆ Doppelblatterkennung EIN/AUS	63
◆ Gespeicherte Einstellungen wiederherstellen EIN/AUS	63
Einstellung im Anwendermodus	64
◆ Einstellung des Anwendermodus	65

Kapitel 4 Fehlersuche 67

4.1 Wenn der Scanner nicht erkannt wird	68
4.2 Beseitigung von Papierstaus	70
Papierstau in der Papiereinzugseinheit	70
Papierstau in der Papierauslaufsektion	73
4.3 Störungen beim Papiereinzug	75
4.4 Wenn das gescannte Bild nicht normal ist	77
4.5 Bei Anzeige eines Fehlercodes	78

Kapitel 5 Reinigung 81

5.1 Regelmäßige Reinigung	82
Reinigen des Scanners	82
Reinigung der Scannergläser und Walzen	83
Netzkabel	87
Imprinter	87

Anhang	88
◆ DR-5020/5080C Scanmodus-Tabellen	88
Technische Daten des DR-5020/5080C	90
Optionen	92
Stichwortverzeichnis	93

Vorsichtsmaßnahmen zur Sicherheit

Tägliche Wartung

Bei Arbeiten in der Nähe des Geräts immer diese Vorsichtsmaßnahmen beachten, um Brände oder elektrische Schläge zu vermeiden.



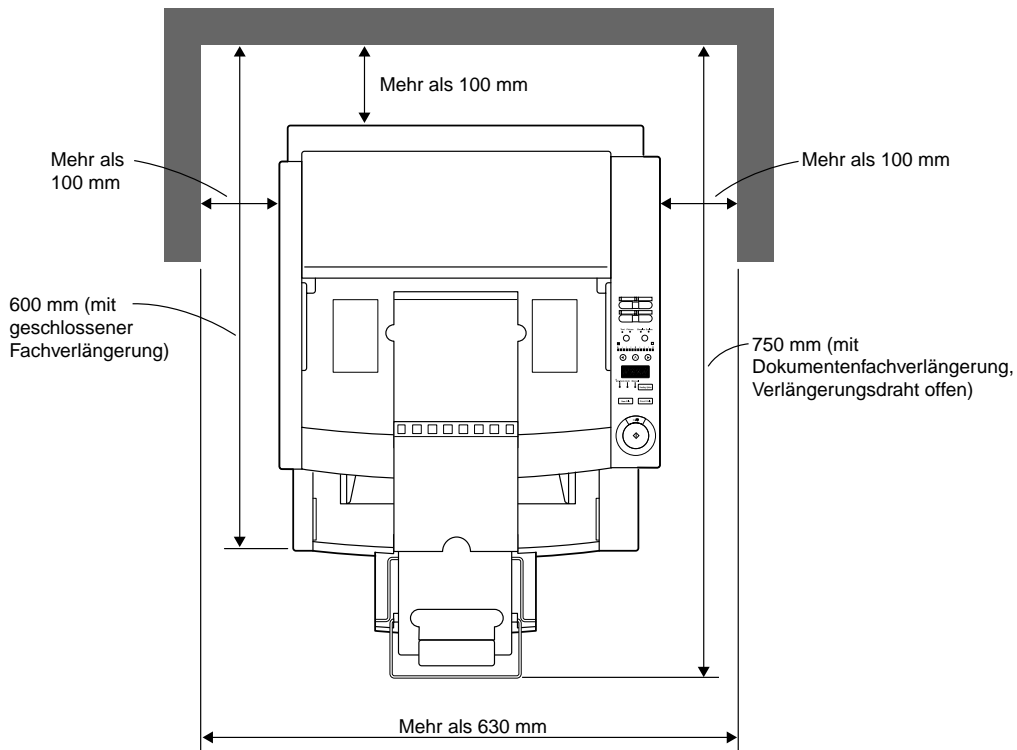
- Das Gerät nicht in der Nähe brennbarer Substanzen wie etwa Alkohol oder Terpentin betreiben.
- Das Netzkabel darf nicht beschädigt oder modifiziert werden; keine schweren Gegenstände darauf stellen oder unnötig daran ziehen oder es biegen.
- Niemals mit nassen Händen den Netzstecker anfassen.
- Das Gerät nicht mit anderen Geräten zusammen an die gleiche Steckdose anschließen.
- Das Netzkabel darf nicht gebündelt, verknotet oder verdreht werden. Den Netzstecker immer fest einstecken.
- Nur das mitgelieferte Netzkabel verwenden.
- Niemals das Gerät zerlegen oder modifizieren.
- Niemals brennbare Aerosolprodukte in der Nähe des Geräts verwenden.
- Vor dem Reinigen das Gerät immer ausschalten und den Netzstecker abziehen.
- Zum Reinigen des Geräts ein weiches, nur in Wasser oder einem sehr milden Reinigungsmittel getränktes Tuch verwenden. Niemals flüchtige organische Substanzen wie Alkohol, Terpentin oder Benzol zur Reinigung verwenden.
- Wenn das Gerät anormale Geräusche, Rauch, Hitze oder Gerüche abgibt oder auch in eingeschaltetem Zustand nicht arbeitet, den Netzstecker abziehen und den Kundendienst benachrichtigen.
- Das Gerät nicht fallenlassen, gegen Gegenstände anstoßen oder starken Erschütterungen aussetzen. Wenn vermutet wird, daß das Gerät versehentlich beschädigt wurde, sofort ausschalten, den Netzstecker abziehen und den Kundendienst benachrichtigen.
- Vor dem Transport des Gerätes dieses immer unbedingt ausschalten und das Netzkabel abziehen.



VORSICHT

- Das Gerät nie auf einer instabilen Unterlage wie etwa auf einer wackeligen Werkbank oder einer schrägen oder vibrierenden Oberfläche aufstellen. Andernfalls könnte es herunterfallen und Unfälle verursachen.
- Blockieren Sie niemals die Lüftungsschlitze an der Rückseite. Wenn sie verdeckt werden, kann Überhitzung auftreten.
- Nicht Behälter mit Flüssigkeiten auf oder neben das Gerät stellen. Falls versehentlich Flüssigkeiten auf das Gerät geschüttet werden, sofort den Stecker aus der Steckdose ziehen und den Kundendienst benachrichtigen.
- Das Gerät niemals an feuchten oder staubigen Orten aufstellen. Dabei besteht die Gefahr von Bränden oder elektrischen Schlägen.
- Keine schweren Gegenstände auf das Gerät stellen. Sie könnten herunterfallen und Unfälle verursachen.
- Beim Abziehen des Netzkabels immer am Netzstecker und nicht am Kabel ziehen. Andernfalls kann das Netzkabel beschädigt werden, und es besteht die Gefahr von Bränden oder elektrischen Schlägen.
- Den Bereich um die Steckdose herum immer für leichten Zugang frei halten.
- Keine Flüssigkeiten wie Wasser oder organische Lösungsmittel (Alkohol, Benzol, Terpentin etc.) in das Gerät schütten. Dabei besteht die Gefahr von Bränden oder elektrischen Schlägen.
- Wenn das Gerät längere Zeit über nicht verwendet wird, den Netzstecker abziehen.
- Bei Arbeiten am Gerät keine locker sitzende Kleidung und keine herunterhängende Schmuckstücke tragen, die sich beim Betrieb im Gerät verfangen könnten. Wenn sich solche Gegenstände im Gerät verfangen, besteht die Gefahr von Unfällen mit Verletzungen. Besonders auch auf Krawatten und lange Haare achten. Falls sich Kleidung, Schmuck, Haare etc. im Gerät verfangen, sofort das Netzkabel abziehen, um das Gerät zu stoppen.
- Beim Einlegen von Dokumenten oder Entfernen von gestautem Papier vorsichtig arbeiten. Bei hastigem Arbeiten besteht die Gefahr von Verletzungen, wie etwa durch Schnitte an Papierkanten.
- Nicht die Oberabdeckung beim Betrieb des Scanners öffnen. Dabei besteht die Gefahr von Fehlfunktionen oder Verletzungen.
- Nicht direkt die Stifte oder Kontakte des Scannersteckers mit den Händen berühren. Dabei besteht die Gefahr von Fehlfunktionen.

Über den Aufstellungsort



Für Betrieb, Wartung und Belüftung muß ausreichend Platz um das Gerät vorhanden sein, wie in der Abbildung oben gezeigt. Die richtige Funktion des Gerätes hängt von der richtigen Aufstellung ab. Stellen Sie sicher, daß der Aufstellungsort die folgenden Bedingungen erfüllt:

- Aufstellungsorte in direktem Sonnenlicht vermeiden. (Bei Bedarf mit Vorhängen abdecken.)
- Staubige Orte vermeiden.
Wenn Staub in das Gerät eindringt, können interne Bauteile negativ beeinflußt und die Leistung beeinträchtigt werden.
- Das Gerät nicht an Orten mit hohen Temperaturen, hoher Luftfeuchtigkeit (wie etwa bei Wasserhähnen, Boilern, Luftbefeuchtern) oder an Orten mit Ammoniak oder anderen ätzenden Gasen oder organischen Dünsten wie etwa Terpentin dämpfen aufstellen.
- Orte mit häufigen Vibrationen und starken Stößen vermeiden.
- Nicht an Orten mit abrupten Temperaturschwankungen aufstellen.
Im Inneren des Geräts könnte sich Kondensation bilden und die richtige Funktion beeinträchtigen. Das Gerät immer nur unter den folgenden Umgebungsbedingungen betreiben:

Raumtemperatur 10°C bis 32,5 C°

Luftfeuchtigkeit 20% bis 80%

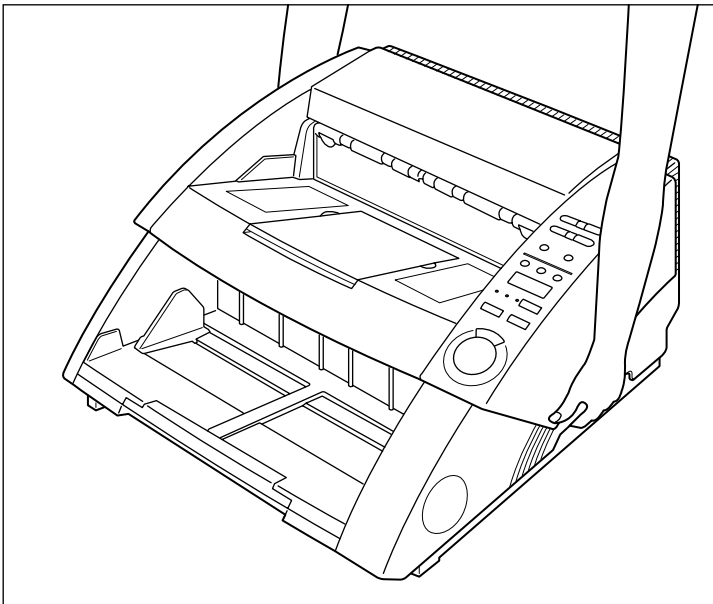
- Das Gerät niemals in der Nähe von Lautsprechern, Fernsehgeräten, Radios oder anderen Geräten aufstellen, die elektromagnetische Felder erzeugen.

Betriebsstromversorgung

- Immer an eine Steckdose mit 220 V Wechselstrom anschließen.
- Sicherstellen, daß der Scanner an eine unabhängige Steckdose angeschlossen ist. Nicht an die gleiche Steckdose mit anderen Geräten anschließen. Bei Verwendung von Verlängerungskabeln immer den Gesamt-Amperewert des Kabels beachten.
- Wenn Fragen bezüglich der Stromversorgung bestehen, bei Ihrem Fachhändler oder bei einem Elektriker nachfragen.
- Keine Gegenstände auf das Netzkabel stellen oder darauf treten.
- Niemals das Netzkabel zusammenwickeln oder um Gegenstände wie etwa Tischbeine wickeln.
- Beim Abziehen des Netzsteckers immer am Stecker und nicht am Kabel ziehen.
- Den Bereich um die Steckdose herum für leichten Zugang frei halten.

Tragen des Geräts

Beim Tragen des DR-5020/5080C das Gerät immer mit beiden Händen greifen, wie in der Abbildung unten gezeigt, und vorsichtig tragen. Wenn das Gerät anders als an den Handgriffen getragen wird, besteht die Gefahr des Fallens, Einklemmens von Fingern und unerwarteten Verletzungen. Der Scanner wiegt ca. 20 kg.



Vor dem Transport das Gerät immer unbedingt ausschalten und das Netzkabel abziehen. Außerdem das SCSI-Kabel von der Buchse abziehen. Wenn der Scanner transportiert wird, während er noch eingeschaltet ist oder das SCSI-Kabel noch angeschlossen ist, besteht die Gefahr von elektrischen Schlägen.

Kapitel 1

Über den DR-5020/5080C

Dieses Kapitel beschreibt die Merkmale des Scanners, den Inhalt des Kartons und die Namen der Bauteile am Scanner.

1.1 Merkmale des DR-5020/5080C	12
1.2 Auspacken: Lieferumfang	14
1.3 Teilennamen	15



Merkmale des DR-5020/ 5080C

Der DR-5020/5080C ist ein vielseitiger Dokumentenscanner mit hoher Scann-Geschwindigkeit. Beide Versionen liefern hervorragende Schwarzweiß-Bilddaten. Der DR-5080C bietet zudem die Möglichkeit des Farbscannens und der Grauskalierung. Nachfolgend eine Zusammenfassung der herausragenden Merkmale Ihres neuen Scanners.

● **Schnelles Scannen**

Kleine Dokumente, wie zum Beispiel Visitenkarten und Dokumente in Scheckgröße bis zum A3-Format, können schnell gescannt werden. Die maximale Scanngeschwindigkeit beträgt 50 Seiten pro Minute bei Scannen von A4-Format-Dokumenten im Simplex- und Duplex-Modus, 200 dpi Auflösung) beim Scannen eines A4-Dokuments im Simplex-Modus.

● **Hohe Kapazität und zuverlässige Belegzuführung**

- Bis zu 500 Blatt im A4-Format können eingelegt werden.
- Das Gerät ermöglicht das Scannen verschiedenartiger Dokumente von unterschiedlicher Größe und Papierstärke. Die Belegzuführung ist äußerst zuverlässig. Schräg eingezogene Dokumente werden beim Zuführen automatisch ausgerichtet, und Dokumente unterschiedlicher Größen können gleichzeitig zugeführt werden.

● **Leichte Bedienung**

Dokumente werden von vorne zugeführt und ausgegeben. Das bedeutet, daß nur wenig Platz zur Aufstellung erforderlich ist. Einrichtung und Bedienung, einschließlich Wahl des Text/Picture-Modus, Wahl von Simplex/Duplex, Helligkeitseinstellung usw. können entweder vom Bedienfeld aus oder über Applikationssoftware vorgenommen werden.

● **Schräglagenkorrektur**

Diese Funktion erkennt automatisch, wenn das Dokument schräg eingezogen wurde und richtet es gerade aus.

● **Hohe Zuverlässigkeit**

Die Betriebslebensdauer des Geräts beträgt bis zu 6 Millionen Scans.

● **Kompakte Bauweise**

262 (H) x 427 (B) x 485 (T) mm

- **Einfacher Farb- oder Schwarzweiß-Grauskala-Ausgang (DR-5080C)**

Neben 2-Bit-Schwarzweiß-Ausgang unterstützt das Gerät verschiedene Ausgangsbetriebsarten: Grauskala (4, 16, 256 Stufen) und Farbe (3, 6, 12, 24 Bit). Optionaler Speicher kann je nach Scanmodus erforderlich sein. Nicht alle Modi werden, je nach Applikation und verwendetem Scanner-Treiber, unterstützt. Einzelheiten siehe Bedienungsanleitung der Applikation und des verwendeten Scanner-Treibers.

- **Farbausblendung (DR-5080C)**

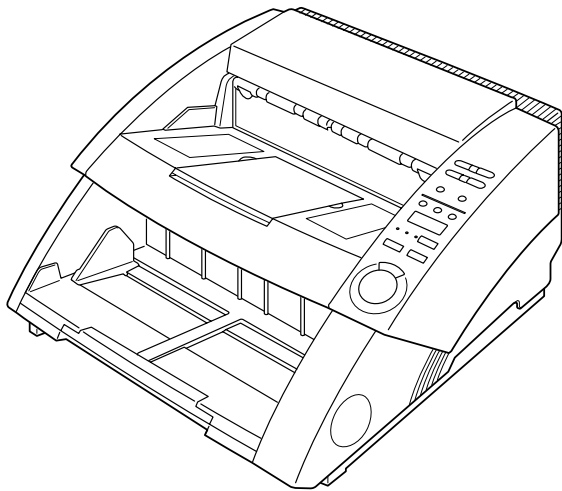
Diese Funktion erlaubt die Ausblendung (also "Farbverlauf") einer spezifischen Farbe im Dokument.

- **Verschiedene Optionen**

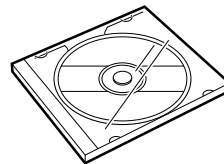
Zu der großen Palette der Optionen gehört der Imprinter zum Aufdrucken von Zeichen auf das gescannte Dokument, der Barcode-Decoder zum Erkennen von Barcodes im Dokument und der Endorser zum Aufdrucken von Zahlen und Zeichen auf das Dokument nach dem Scannen.

1.2 Auspacken: Lieferumfang

Alle aus dem Karton genommenen Teile prüfen und sicherstellen, daß der Lieferumfang komplett vorhanden ist. Falls Teile fehlen, bitte an den Fachhandel wenden, bei dem das Gerät gekauft wurde.



DR-5020/5080C



Setup-CD-ROM

(Scanning Utility 5000 und ISIS/
TWAIN-Treiber)

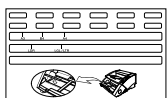


Bedienungsanleitungen

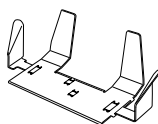
(DR-5020/5080C Bedienungsanleitung
Scanning Utility 5000 Bedienungsanleitung
ISIS/TWAIN-Treiberanleitung)



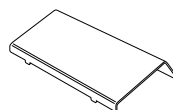
Funktionsblätter



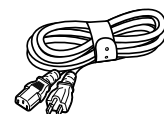
**Funktionstasten-
Schilder**



Abnehmbares Fach



Dokumentenauslaufablage



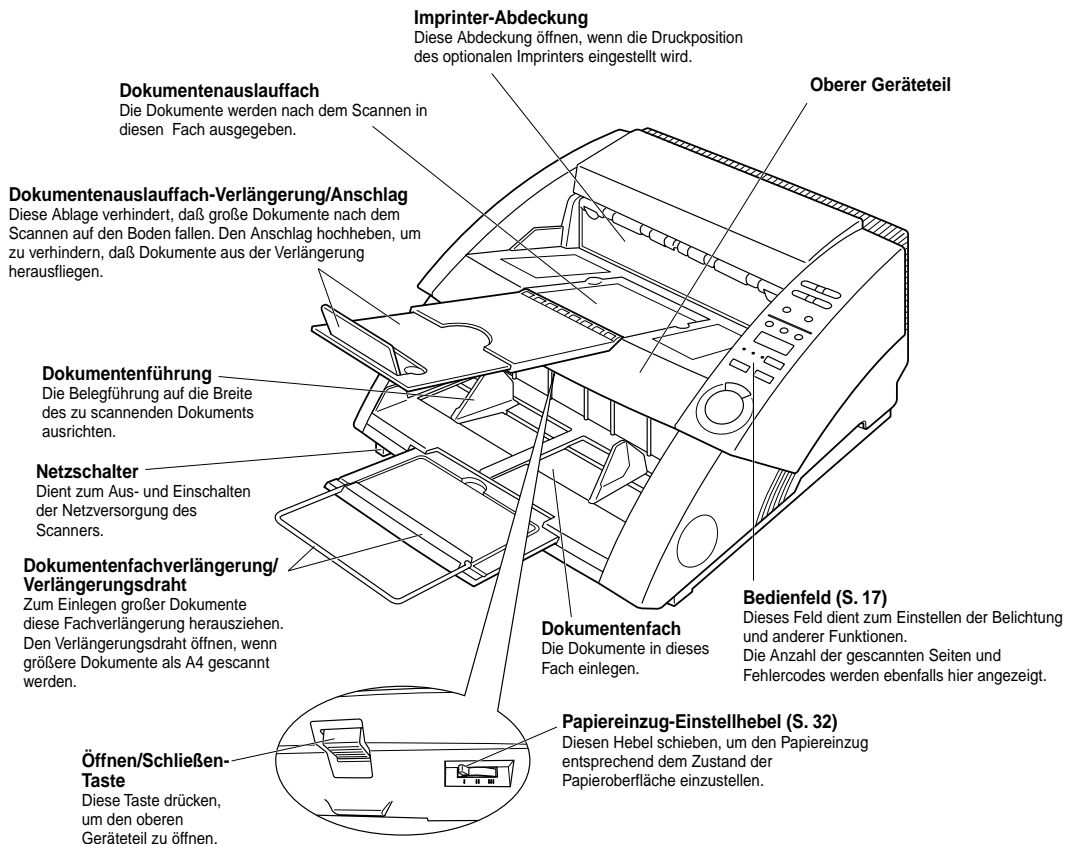
Netzkabel*1

*1 Das Netzkabel sieht je nach Exportland unterschiedlich aus.

1.3 Teilnamen

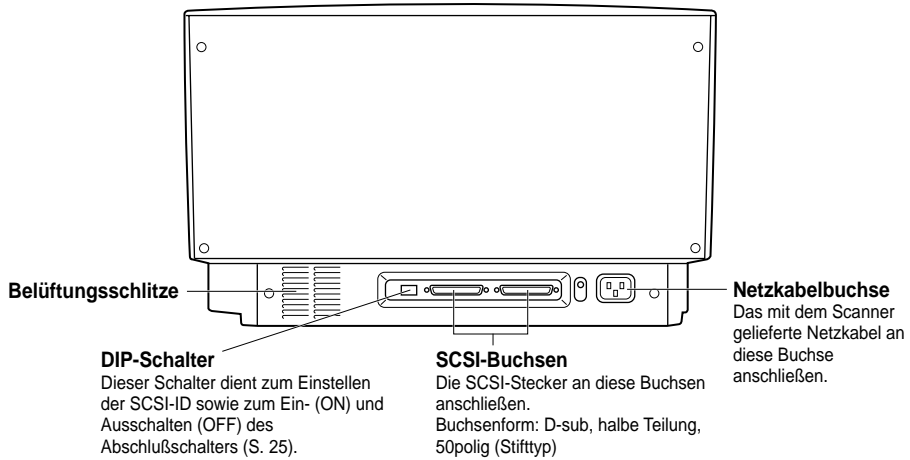
Dieser Abschnitt beschreibt die Namen und Funktionen der einzelnen Teile. Bitte nehmen Sie sich vor dem Anschluß des DR-5020/5080C einige Minuten Zeit, um sich mit den Hauptbauteilen des Geräts vertraut zu machen.

◆ Frontansicht



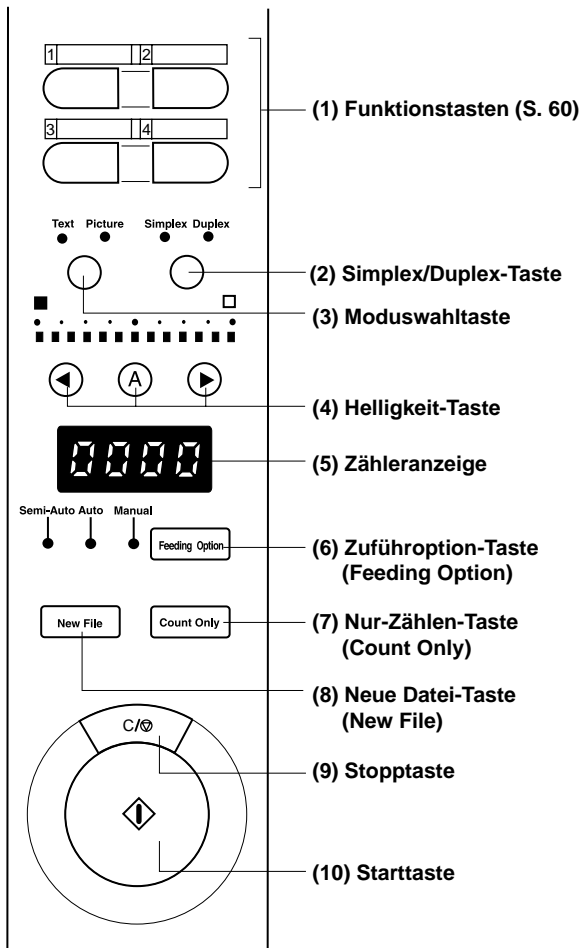
Die Imprinter-Abdeckung öffnet sich nicht, wenn der optionale Imprinter nicht installiert ist. Nicht unnötige Gewalt beim Öffnen der Imprinter-Abdeckung anwenden.

◆ Rückansicht



Niemals die Belüftungsschlitze an der Rückwand des Scanners blockieren, um Brandgefahr durch Erhitzen des Geräts zu vermeiden.

◆ Bedienfeld



(1) Funktionstasten (S. 60)

Diese Tasten dienen zum Abspeichern häufig verwendeter Funktionen für späteren Abruf mit einfachem Tastendruck.

(2) Simplex/Duplex-Taste

Wählt, ob nur eine Seite oder beide Seiten des Dokuments gescannt werden. Beim Scannen im Simplex-Modus leuchtet "Simplex". Beim Scannen im Duplex-Modus leuchtet "Duplex".

(3)Moduswahltaste

Wählt den Dokument-Scannmodus. ("Schwarzweiß/Schwarzweiß-Fehlerdiffusion")

Text: Leuchtet, wenn Textdokumente (also Dokumente, die hauptsächlich aus Text bestehen) mit Schwarzweiß-Modus gescannt werden.

Picture: Leuchtet, wenn Bilddokumente einschließlich Fotografien mit Schwarzweiß-Fehlerdiffusionsmodus gescannt werden.

Wenn Applikationen mit Grauskalierung oder Farbmodus für die Bildwahl eingestellt werden, leuchtet keiner der obigen Modi.

(4)Helligkeit-Taste

Stellt die Helligkeit beim Scannen des Dokuments ein.

Zum automatischen Einstellen der Helligkeit die Taste $\text{\textcircled{A}}$ drücken, so daß $\text{\textcircled{A}}$ aufleuchtet. (*)

Zum manuellen Einstellen der Helligkeit die Taste $\text{\textcircled{D}}$ oder $\text{\textcircled{R}}$ mit ausgerasteter Taste $\text{\textcircled{A}}$ drücken und die Anzeige auf der Taste verändern, um die Helligkeit einzustellen. (Durch Bewegen der Anzeige nach rechts wird die Helligkeit gesteigert, und durch Bewegen nach links wird sie gesenkt. Die Helligkeit kann in 13 Stufen eingestellt werden.)

Wenn Sie die Tasten $\text{\textcircled{D}}$ oder $\text{\textcircled{R}}$ bei leuchtender Taste $\text{\textcircled{A}}$ drücken, um die Anzeige einzustellen, wird die Helligkeit automatisch eingestellt.

Im Modus Nur-Zählen können Sie den Startwert mit den Tasten $\text{\textcircled{D}}$ oder $\text{\textcircled{R}}$ einstellen.

(*) Die Helligkeit kann nur automatisch eingestellt werden, wenn die Helligkeit in der Scannbedingung-Einrichtung in der Applikation auf "Auto" gestellt ist und wenn der Scann-Modus auf "Schwarzweiß" gestellt ist.

Wenn ein anderer Scann-Modus als "Schwarzweiß" eingestellt ist und die Helligkeit auf "Auto" gestellt ist, leuchtet die Taste $\text{\textcircled{A}}$ nicht, und die Standard-Helligkeit (Anzeige-Mittelwert) wird eingestellt. Die Helligkeit wird in diesem Fall nicht automatisch eingestellt.

(5)Zähleranzeige

Zeigt den Fehlercode oder die Anzahl der gescannten Seiten an.

(6)Zuführoption-Taste (S. 39)

Diese Taste dient zum Einstellen des Zuführmodus.

Bei jedem Drücken dieser Option-Taste leuchtet die Lampenanzeige links in der folgenden Reihenfolge auf:

OFF (Remote-Modus) → [Semi-Auto] → [Auto] → [Manual] → und zurück zu OFF (Remote-Modus)

Fern: Die drei Lämpchen links neben dieser Taste sind alle erloschen. Das Dokument wird eingezogen, wenn der Scanner eine Scann-Anweisung vom Computer erhält.

Semi-Auto: Der Scanner führt das Dokument zu, wenn Sie nach dem Einlegen des Dokuments die Start-Taste drücken.

Auto: Der Scanner führt automatisch das Dokument zu, wenn Sie das Dokument einlegen.

Manual: Manuell das Dokument blattweise einlegen.

(7) Nur-Zählen-Taste (S. 53)

Stellt den Scanner auf Nur-Zählen-Modus ein, um nur die Seiten im Dokument zu zählen.

Wenn diese Taste gedrückt wird, leuchtet sie auf. Wenn Sie das Dokument einlegen und die Start-Taste in diesem Zustand drücken, wird das Dokument eingezogen, und der Scanner zählt die Anzahl der Seiten. (Das Dokument wird nicht gescannt.) Die Dokumenten-Seitenzahl wird in der Zähleranzeige angezeigt.

(8) Neue Datei-Taste

Diese Taste drücken, um gescannte Dokumente in separate Dateien zu unterteilen.

Wenn die diese Taste drücken, leuchtet sie auf. Wenn das Dokument in diesem Zustand gescannt wird, wird das gescannte Bild in einem anderen Ordner als dem Ordner für das vorherige Dokument gespeichert.

Wenn in der Applikation Auto New File eingestellt ist, leuchtet diese Taste automatisch auf, wenn jeder Dokumentenstapel fertig gescannt ist.

(9) Stopptaste

Diese Taste zum Unterbrechen des laufenden Scannvorgangs drücken.

Die Taste dient darüber hinaus auch zum Aufheben des aktuellen Modus Löschen einer Fehleranzeige.

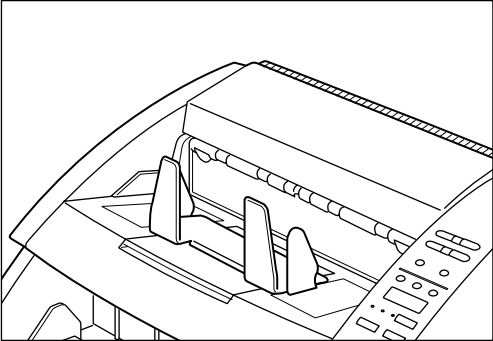
Zum Rückstellen der Zähleranzeige auf "0000" diese Taste mindestens 2 Sekunden lang gedrückt halten.

(10) Starttaste

Diese Taste zum Starten des Scannvorgangs drücken, wenn der Einzugmodus auf Semi-Auto gestellt ist.

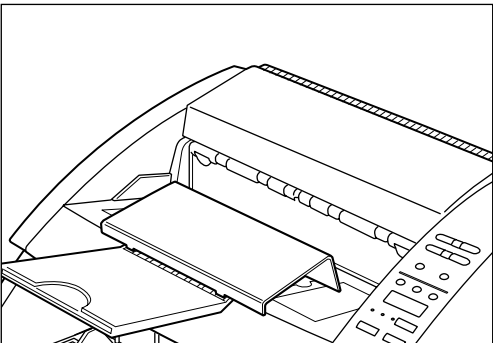
◆ Herausnehmbares Fach

Dieses Fach kann am Dokumentenauslauffach angebracht werden, um zu vermeiden, daß kurze Dokumente beim Auslaufen aus dem Scanner vom Fach herunterfallen.



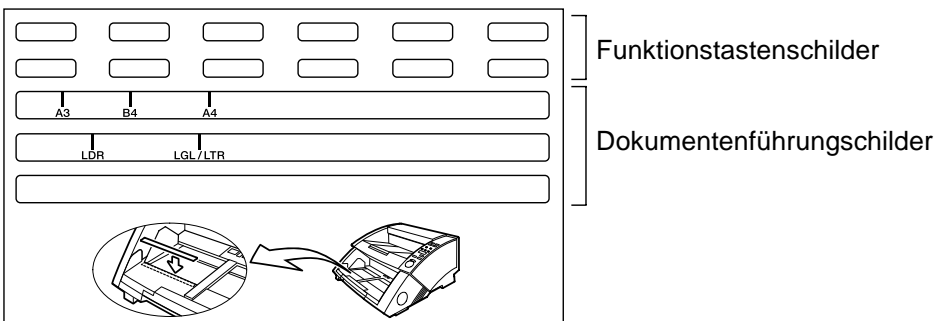
◆ Dokumentenauslaufablage

Diese Ablage beim Scannen von großformatigen Dokumenten (z.B. A3) anbringen. Die Ablage verhindert, daß derartige Dokumente sich im Dokumentenauslauffach verfangen und wellig werden.



◆ Funktionstastenschilder

Zwei Schilder sind vorhanden: Ein Schild, das beschreibt, welche Funktion unter der Funktionstaste registriert ist, und ein Schild zum Anbringen des Dokumentenfachs als Dokumentenführung.



Kapitel 2

Vorbereitung zum Betrieb

Dieses Kapitel beschreibt das Verfahren vom Anschließen des Scanners bis zum Einschalten.

2.1 Systemanforderungen.....	22
2.2 Aufstellung und Anschluß	23
2.3 Vorbereitung für Papiereinzug und Ausgabe	27
2.4 Ein-/Ausschalten der Netzversorgung (EIN/AUS).....	33

2.1

Systemanforderungen

Zur Verwendung des DR-5020/5080C benötigen Sie die folgenden Artikel neben dem Standardzubehör:

- Computer
- SCSI-Karte
- SCSI-Kabel
- Applikationssoftware



ANMERKUNG

- Der Treiber kann je nach verwendeter Applikation nicht richtig arbeiten.
- Wählen Sie Computer, Betriebsumgebung und SCSI-Karte entsprechend verwendeter Applikation.

2.2 Aufstellung und Anschluß

Dieses Kapitel beschreibt die Aufstellung und den Anschluß des Geräts.

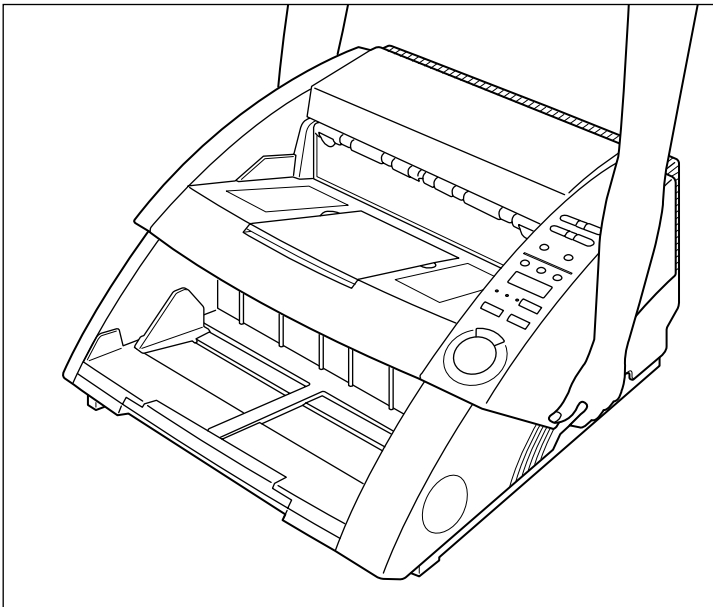


ANMERKUNG

Einzelheiten zur Scanner-Aufstellung siehe "Über den Aufstellungsort" in den Sicherheitsmaßnahmen (S. 8).

Tragen des Geräts

Beim Tragen des DR-5020/5080C das Gerät immer mit beiden Händen greifen, wie in der Abbildung unten gezeigt, und vorsichtig tragen. Wenn das Gerät anders als an den Handgriffen getragen wird, besteht die Gefahr des Fallens, Einklemmens von Fingern und unerwarteten Verletzungen. Der Scanner wiegt ca. 20 kg.



WARNUNG

Vor dem Transport des Gerätes dieses immer unbedingt ausschalten und das Netzkabel abziehen. Außerdem das SCSI-Kabel von der Buchse abziehen. Wenn der Scanner transportiert wird, während er noch eingeschaltet ist oder das SCSI-Kabel noch angeschlossen ist, besteht die Gefahr von elektrischen Schlägen.

Anschluß an einen Computer

Den Scanner an den Computer anschließen.



Vor dem Anschließen des Scanners an den Computer sicherstellen, daß beide Gerät ausgeschaltet sind (AUS).



Beim Anschluß des Scanners sind darüber hinaus auch die folgenden Punkte zu beachten:

● **SCSI-Karte**

Vergewissern Sie sich, daß die SCSI-Karte im Computer eingesetzt ist.

Verwenden Sie eine SCSI-Karte, die mit der verwendeten Applikation kompatibel ist.

● **SCSI-Kabel**

Der SCSI-Stecker des Scanners ist ein 50poliger D-sub-Stecker mit halber Teilung (Stifttyp). Die Steckanschlußform an der SCSI-Karte des Computers und an dem am Computer angeschlossenen SCSI-Gerät prüfen und ein geeignetes SCSI-Kabel vorbereiten, dessen Stecker an die Anschlußbuchse des Scanners paßt.

Den Scanner wie folgt an den Computer anschließen.

1. Den Scanner mit dem SCSI-Kabel an den Computer anschließen (S. 24).
2. Die SCSI-ID und den Abschlußschalter einstellen (S. 25).

◆ Anschluß des SCSI-Kabels

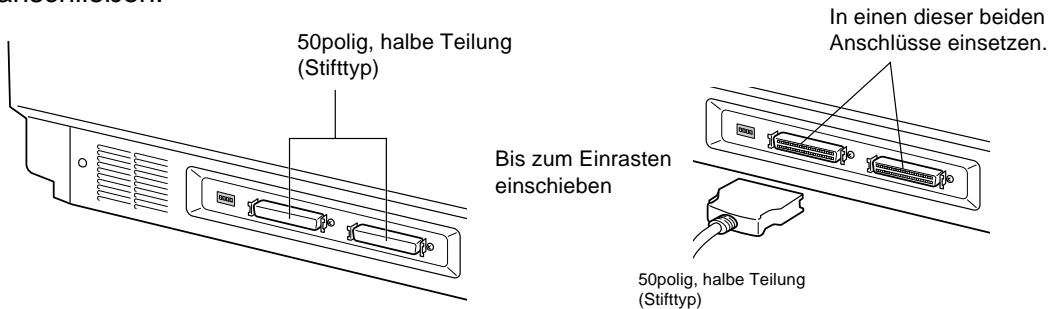


Vor dem Anschließen des SCSI-Kabels sicherstellen, daß Scanner und Computer ausgeschaltet sind.

Den Scanner mit dem SCSI-Kabel an den Computer anschließen.

An der Rückwand des Scanners befinden sich zwei SCSI-Buchsen. Das SCSI-Kabel vom Computer an eine dieser Buchsen anschließen.

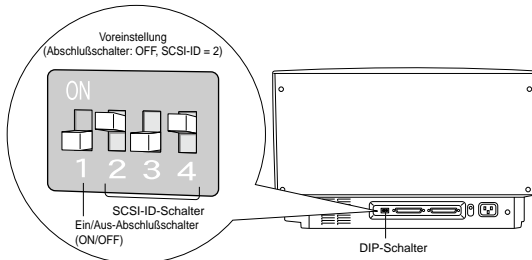
Zum Anschließen eines weiteren SCSI-Geräts an den Computer ein zweites SCSI-Kabel an die freie SCSI-Buchse an der Rückwand des Scanners und das andere Kabelende an die betreffende Vorrichtung in der Anschlußkette anschließen.



◆ Einstellen von SCSI-ID und Abschlußschalter

SCSI-ID und Abschlußschalter mit dem DIP-Schalter an der Rückwand des Scanners einstellen.

Der DIP-Schalter ist in der Oben-Position EIN und in der Unten-Position AUS.



SCSI ID	SW2	SW3	SW4
0	ON	ON	ON
1	ON	ON	OFF
2	ON	OFF	ON
3	ON	OFF	OFF
4	OFF	ON	ON
5	OFF	ON	OFF
6	OFF	OFF	ON
7	OFF	OFF	OFF

Die SCSI-ID entsprechend der nachfolgenden Tabelle einstellen.

Für andere eingebaute SCSI-Vorrichtungen oder für an den Computer angeschlossene SCSI-Vorrichtungen jeweils verschiedene SCSI-IDs einstellen.



TIP

Die SCSI-ID ist werksseitig auf 2 voreingestellt.

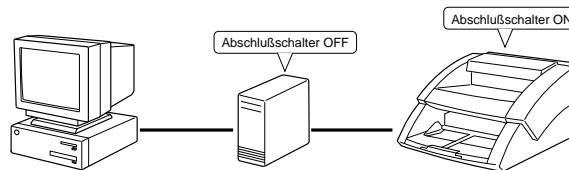
Für jede Vorrichtung eine SCSI-Nummer von 0 bis 7 einstellen. 7 sollte hierbei nicht gewählt werden, da diese Nummer normalerweise für die SCSI-Steuereinheit reserviert ist. Wenn eine SCSI-Festplatte zugewiesen ist, nicht 0 und 1 verwenden. Die Ziffern 0 und 1 werden normalerweise Festplatten zugeordnet.

Den Abschlußschalter der letzten Vorrichtung einer Anschlußkette auf Ein (ON) stellen.

< Wenn nur der Scanner an den Computer angeschlossen ist, oder wenn eine andere SCSI-Vorrichtung in einer Anschlußkette angeschlossen ist und der Scanner die letzte Vorrichtung der Anschlußkette bildet >

Den Abschlußschalter auf Ein (ON) stellen.

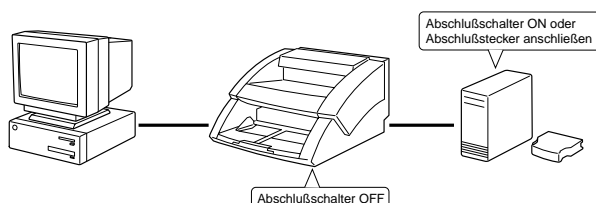
Bei dieser Anschlußkonfiguration darauf achten, daß der Abschlußschalter aller anderen SCSI-Vorrichtungen auf Aus (OFF) gestellt ist.



< Wenn eine andere SCSI-Vorrichtung als letztes Gerät in der Anschlußkette angeschlossen ist >

Den Abschlußschalter auf Aus (OFF) stellen.

Bei dieser Anschlußkonfiguration darauf achten, daß der Abschlußschalter aller anderen SCSI-Vorrichtungen auf Aus (ON) gestellt ist.



Anschluß des Netzkabels

Das Netzkabel anschließen.

Zum Anschließen ausschließlich das mit dem Scanner gelieferte Netzkabel verwenden.

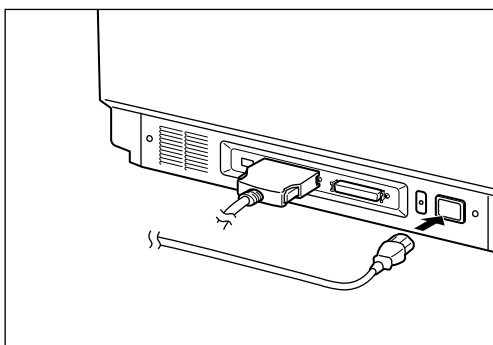
◆ Anschluß des Netzkabels



Beim Anschluß des Netzkabels sind die folgenden Punkte zu beachten. Eine Mißachtung birgt die Gefahr von Bränden und elektrischen Schlägen.

- Niemals mit nassen Händen den Netzstecker anfassen.
- Das Gerät nicht mit anderen Geräten zusammen an die gleiche Steckdose anschließen.
- Das Netzkabel darf nicht gebündelt, verknotet oder verdreht werden. Den Netzstecker immer fest einstecken.
- Nur das mitgelieferte Netzkabel verwenden.
- Vor dem Anschluß des Netzkabels den Scanner ausschalten (OFF).
- Darauf achten, den Scanner an eine Steckdose mit einer Netzspannung von 220 V anzuschließen.
- Den Scanner nicht zusammen mit anderen Geräten an die gleiche Steckdose anschließen. Bei Verwendung eines Verlängerungskabels auf die Gesamtamperezahl des Kabels achten.

Das Netzkabel an der Rückwand des Scanners anschließen und den Netzstecker in eine Wandsteckdose stecken.



2.3

Vorbereitung für Papiereinzug und Ausgabe

Die Papiereinzugsektion oder den Dokumentenauffang oder die Stützplatte herausziehen, um der Größe des zu scannenden Dokuments zu entsprechen. Auch das Schild zur Hilfe zur Einstellung der Dokumentenführung anbringen.

Vorbereitung der Dokumentenfach-Verlängerung und der Dokumentenauslauffach-Verlängerung

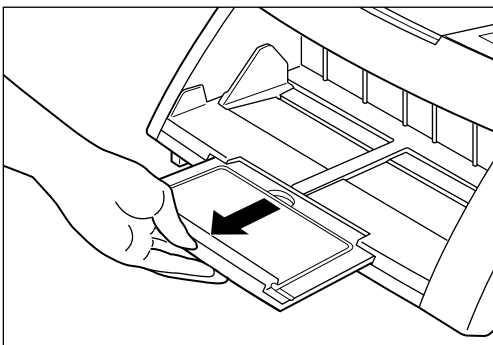
Je nach der Größe des Dokuments die Dokumentenfach-Verlängerung und die Dokumentenauslauffach-Verlängerung verwenden. Für schwer zu scannenden Dokumente können zusätzlich noch die Dokumentenauslaufablage und der Dokumentenauffang verwendet werden.

DEUTSCH

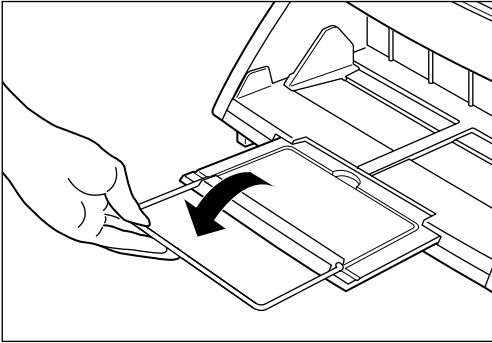
◆ Dokumentenfach-Verlängerung

Die Dokumentenfach-Verlängerung für das zu scannende Dokument herausziehen.

- 1 Die Dokumentenfach-Verlängerung aus der Mitte des Dokumentenfachs herausziehen.



2 Die Drahtverlängerung behutsam ausklappen.



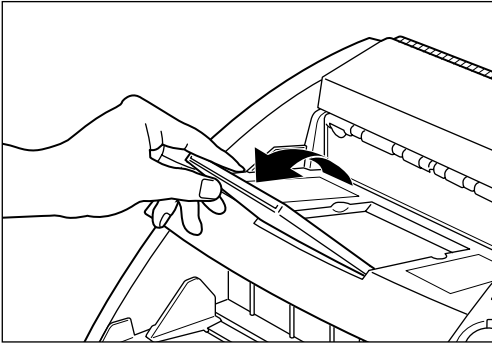
ANMERKUNG

Die Drahtverlängerung wird beim Scannen von Dokumenten verwendet, die größer als A4 sind.

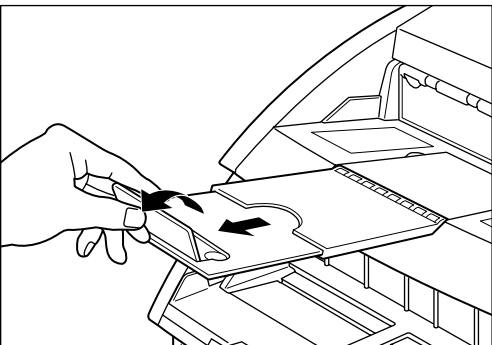
◆ Dokumentenauslauffach-Verlängerung

Die Dokumentenauslauffach-Verlängerung entsprechend der Größe der Dokumente verwenden. Die Dokumentenauslauffach-Verlängerung besteht aus drei Abschnitten die zum Scannen verschiedener Dokumententypen und -größen durch Ausgeklappen und Herausziehen zugänglich sind.

- 1 Die Auslauffachverlängerung 1 von der Mitte des Dokumentenauslauffachs her aufklappen.**



- 2 Die Auslauffachverlängerung 2 aus der Auslauffachverlängerung 1 herausziehen und den Anschlag nach oben klappen.**



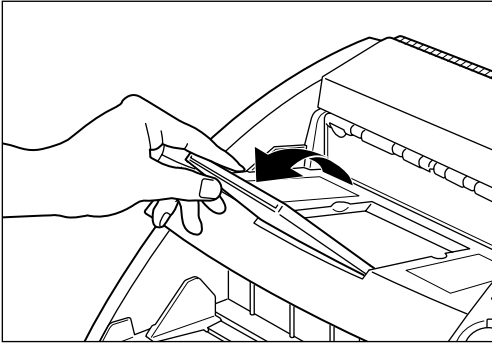
ANMERKUNG

Der Anschlag verhindert, daß aus dem Scanner auslaufende Dokumente über die Dokumentenauslauffach-Verlängerung hinausfliegen.

◆ Dokumentenauslaufablage

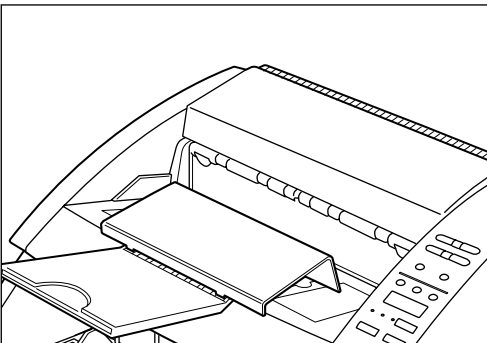
Diese Ablage vor dem Scannen von großformatigen Dokumenten oder von Dokumenten mit sehr glatter Oberfläche anbringen. Derartige Dokumente können sich beim Auslaufen im Dokumentenauslaufbereich des Scanners verfangen und verwellen oder einen Papierstau verursachen, was durch diese Ablage verhindert wird.

1 Die Dokumentenauslauffach-Verlängerung herausziehen.



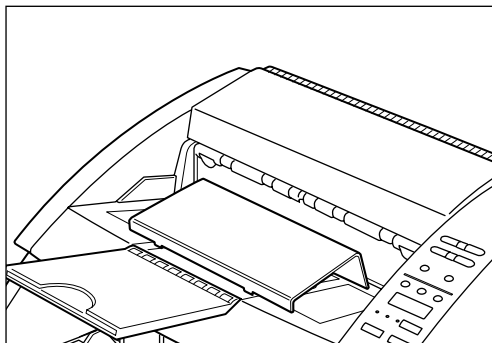
2 Die Dokumentenauslaufablage befestigen.

Die Vorsprünge an der Ablage hierzu in die Löcher in der Dokumentenauslauffach-Verlängerung einpassen.



ANMERKUNG

Wenn Dokumente sich verfangen, auch wenn die Dokumentenauslauffach-Verlängerung angebracht ist, die Verlängerung so weit wie möglich ausziehen, um zu verhindern, daß sich Dokumente verfangen.



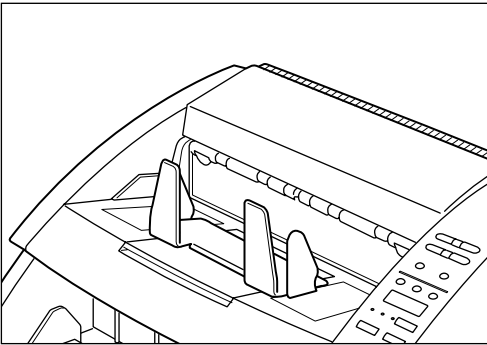
◆ Herausnehmbares Fach

Dieses Fach zum Scannen kleiner Dokumente anbringen.

Das Fach sorgt dafür, daß aus dem Scanner auslaufende Dokumente im Fach liegenbleiben und nicht auf den Boden fallen.

1 Das herausnehmbare Fach in der Mitte des Auslauffachs anbringen.

Das herausnehmbare Fach wird von Magneten festgehalten. Das Fach nach dem Ansetzen auf die jeweilige Dokumentengröße ausrichten.

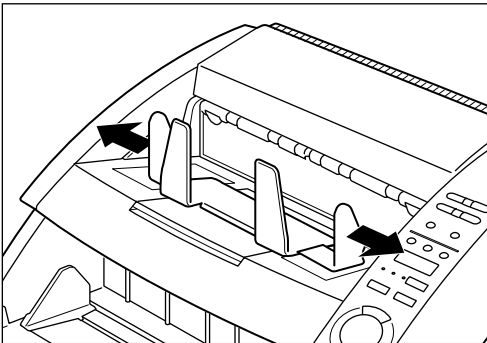


ANMERKUNG

Das Auslauffach schließen, falls es offen ist.

2 Die linke und rechte Papierführung auf die Breite des abzutastenden Dokuments ausrichten.

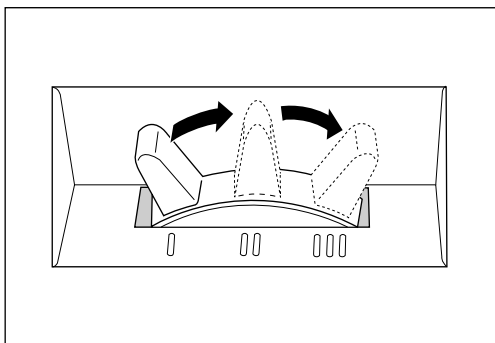
Die Führungen so ausrichten, daß zwischen Führungen und Papier ein kleiner Abstand bleibt.



Papiereinzug-Einstellung

Den Papiereinzug-Einstellhebel betätigen, um den Papiereinzug einzustellen, wenn ein Papiereinzugfehler auftritt, weil Reibung auf glatter Dokumentenoberfläche auftritt.

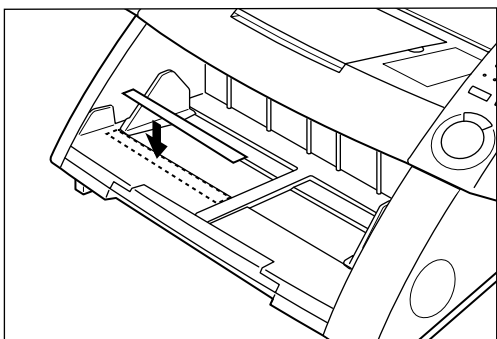
Der Papiereinzug-Einstellhebel kann in drei Positionen eingestellt werden. Die normale Einstellung ist die linke (I) Position. Wenn das Papier leicht glatt ist, auf Mittelposition (II) stellen, und wenn es sehr glatt ist, auf rechte (III) Position.



Anbringen der Dokumentenführungsschilder

Im Lieferumfang des Scanners sind Funktionstastenschilder und Dokumentenführungsschilder enthalten. Diese Schilder helfen bei der Einstellung der Dokumentenführung.

Die Schilder am Dokumentenfach anbringen, wie in der Abbildung unten gezeigt.



2.4

Ein-/Ausschalten der Netzversorgung (EIN/AUS)

Zum Ein- (EIN) und Ausschalten (AUS) der Netzversorgung den nachstehenden Schritten folgen.

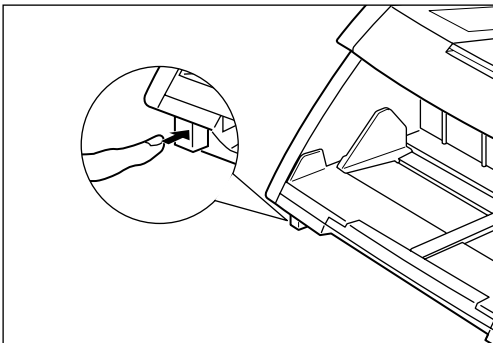
Einschalten der Netzversorgung (EIN)



TIP

Immer alle angeschlossenen SCSI-Vorrichtungen einschalten, bevor der Computer eingeschaltet wird.

1 Den Scanner durch Drücken des Netzschalters einschalten (EIN).



➔ Die Zähleranzeige am Bedienfeld zeigt hiernach "0000".



ANMERKUNG

Andere Einstellungen am Bedienfeld als die Zähleranzeige werden auf Werte vor dem Ausschalten des Scanners zurückgestellt.



WARNUNG

Bei Auftreten fremder Geräusche oder Gerüche, Rauch oder anormaler Wärme im Umkreis des Geräts sofort die Netzversorgung ausschalten (AUS) und das Netzkabel aus der Steckdose ziehen. Wenden Sie sich anschließend umgehend an eine Kundendienststelle. Eine Mißachtung dieser Sicherheitsregel kann zu Bränden führen.

2 Den Computer einschalten (EIN).

➔ Das Betriebssystem des Computers startet.



TIP

- Bei Windows 95/98/Me oder Windows 2000 setzt beim Wiedereinschalten des Computers nach dem Anschließen des Scanners die Plug-and-Play-Funktion ein und zeigt automatisch einen Bildschirm, der zum Installieren des Scannertreibers auffordert. (Der Name dieses Aufforderungsbildschirms ist je nach Windows-Version unterschiedlich.)
Bei "Neue Hardware" (Windows 95) wählen Sie "Aus Liste wählen" und klicken auf [OK]. Im nächsten Bildschirm wählen Sie "Anderes Geräte" und klicken auf [OK]. Bei "Gerätetreiber-Assistent" (Windows 95) klicken Sie auf [Weiter] und dann auf [Fertig] im nächsten Bildschirm.
Bei "Hardware-Assistent" (Windows 98) dem unten beschriebenen Verfahren folgen.
 1. Auf [Weiter] klicken.
 2. "Nach dem besten Treiber für das Gerät suchen (empfohlen)" wählen und auf [Weiter] klicken.
 3. Alle Wahlmarkierungen löschen und auf [Weiter] klicken.
 4. Auf [Weiter] klicken.
 5. Auf [Fertig stellen] klicken.
 Bei "Neue Hardwarekomponente gefunden" (Windows Me) "Automatisch nach dem besten Treiber suchen (Empfohlen)" wählen und dann auf [Weiter] klicken und auf [Fertig stellen] im nächsten Bildschirm klicken.
Bei "Assistent für das Suchen neuer Hardware" (Windows 2000) dem unten beschriebenen Verfahren folgen.
 1. Auf [Weiter] klicken, um zum Bildschirm "Hardwaretreiber installieren" weiterzugehen.
 2. "Nach einem passenden Treiber für das Gerät suchen (empfohlen)" wählen und dann auf [Weiter] klicken, um zum Bildschirm "Suche nach Treiberdateien" zu gehen.
 3. Alle Wahlmarkierungen unter "Andere Quellen für die Suche" löschen, und dann auf [Weiter] klicken, um zum Bildschirm "Treiberdateien - Suchergebnisse" zu gehen.
 4. Den Punkt "Gerät deaktivieren." wählen, und auf [Fertig stellen] klicken.
- Die mit dem Scanner gelieferte Treibersoftware muß für den Betrieb des Scanners installiert werden. Einzelheiten hierzu enthält die getrennte "ISIS/TWAIN-Treiberanleitung" und die "Scanning Utility 5000 Bedienungsanleitung".

Ausschalten der Netzversorgung (AUS)



Wenn der Scanner über längere Zeit nicht verwendet wird, das Netzkabel zur Sicherheit aus der Steckdose ziehen.

1 Den Computer ausschalten (AUS).

2 Den Scanner durch Drücken des Netzschalters ausschalten (AUS).



Vor dem Wiedereinschalten des Scanners mindestens 10 Sekunden warten.

Kapitel 3

Vorbereitung der Dokumente

Dieses Kapitel beschreibt Vorsichtsmaßnahmen für auf diesem Scanner bearbeitete Dokumente ebenso wie Dokumenteneinzug und Scannbetrieb.

3.1 Dokumente	36
3.2 Einlegen und Scannen von Dokumenten	38
3.3 Einstellung der Scannbedingungen	58

3.1 Dokumente

Mit dem DR-5020/5080C können Dokumente verschiedenster Art gescannt werden. Die Breite und Länge der Dokumente muß hierzu im folgenden Bereich liegen:

Breite:	55 bis 297 mm (Die tatsächliche Scanbreite ist 295 mm.)
Länge:	70 bis 432 mm
Stärke:	0,06 bis 0,15 mm (bei manueller Zuführung: 0,05 bis 0,2 mm)

Die obigen Maße gelten als Richtlinien bei der Vorbereitung zu scannender Dokumente.

- Vor dem Scannen von Dokumenten mit aufgeklebten Zeichnungen sicherstellen, daß die Tinte oder der Klebstoff an den betreffenden Abschnitten absolut trocken ist. Noch feuchter Klebstoff auf Dokumenten kann zur Verschmutzung der Innenbauteile des Scanners führen.
- Wenn ein mit Bleistift beschriebenes Dokument gescannt wird, kann die Beschriftung beim Einzug in den Scanner verschwinden, und Graphit von der Oberfläche des Dokuments kann an den Scannerwalzen haften bleiben. Deshalb lieber vor dem Scannen solcher Dokumente diese zuerst kopieren und dann die Kopie scannen. Nach dem Scannen von Dokumenten, die mit Bleistift oder einem anderen weichen Stift beschriftet wurden, immer die Scannerwalzen säubern (S. 83).
- Nach dem Scannen dünner Dokumente im Duplex-Modus ist der Tintendruck der einen Papierseite eventuell auf der anderen Seite des Papiers sichtbar. In diesem Fall ist die Belichtung entsprechend einzustellen.
- Wenn ein sehr glattes Dokument gescannt wird, kann die Reibung zu Einzugfehlern führen. In diesem Fall den Papiereinzug mit dem Papiereinzug-Einstellhebel (S. 32) einstellen.
- Zur Vermeidung von Papierstaus, Beschädigung der Dokumente oder Scanner-Betriebsstörungen sollten die folgenden Papiertypen dem Scanner nicht zugeführt werden. Derartige Dokumente müssen vor dem Scannen zuerst fotokopiert werden. Anschließend kann die Fotokopie gescannt werden.



Faltiges oder zerknittertes Papier



Gewelltes Papier



Zerrissenes Papier



Papier mit Büro- oder Heftklammern



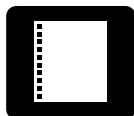
Kohlepapier



Beschichtetes Papier oder Faxpapier



Florpost-Papier oder sonstiges dünnes Papier



Perforiertes Papier



ANMERKUNG

- Dokumente, die Seiten unterschiedlicher Stärke und Größe enthalten, können beim Zuführen Funktionsstörungen verursachen.
- Stark verwelltes Papier kann Doppelzuführungen verursachen.
- Dokumente mit Text oder Bildern innerhalb von 5 mm vom Rand oder Dokumente mit farbigem Hintergrund können fehlerhafte Schrägeinzug-Erkennung oder falsche automatische Größenerkennung verursachen.

3.2

Einlegen und Scannen von Dokumenten

Legen sie das Dokument in den Scanner ein und scannen Sie es. Sie können auch die Anzahl der Seiten im Dokument zählen. Dieser Abschnitt beschreibt die folgenden Punkte:

- Scannverfahren (entsprechend Einzugmodus)
- Zählen von Seiten in Dokumenten
- Steuerblätter



- Weite Kleidung, herunterhängender Schmuck, lange Krawatten und selbst langes Haar, das sich in den beweglichen Teilen des Geräts verfangen kann (besonders in den Walzen) ist zu vermeiden. Falls sich derartige Objekte im Gerät verfangen sollten, sofort den Netzstecker aus der Steckdose ziehen, um die Netzversorgung zum Gerät zu unterbrechen.
- Beim Einlegen von Dokumenten oder Beseitigen eines Papierstaus vorsichtig vorgehen. Es besteht die Gefahr von Verletzungen, wie z.B. durch scharfe Kanten des Papiers, die Schnittverletzungen verursachen können.
- Den Dokumentenstapel überprüfen und sämtliche Büro-/Heftklammern und alle sonstigen Metallteile und Kunststoffbinder entfernen. Eine Mißachtung dieser Sicherheitsregel kann zur Beschädigung des Dokuments sowie zu Papierstaus und Funktionsstörungen des Scanners führen.

Scannverfahren

Das Scannverfahren eines Dokuments ist je nach eingestelltem Einzugmodus unterschiedlich. Sie können mit der Zuführoption-Taste zwischen den folgenden vier Einzugmodi wählen.

● Remote-Modus (Standard)

Dieser Modus ist am besten geeignet, um nur einen Dokumentenstapel zu scannen.

In diesem Modus beginnt der Scanner mit dem Scannvorgang, wenn Sie in der Applikation mit im Scanner eingelegtem Dokument den Befehl zum Scannen geben.

● Semi-Auto

Dieser Modus ist am besten geeignet, um Dokumente unterschiedlicher Größe in getrennten Stapeln zu scannen, während die Vorlagenführung eingestellt wird.

In diesem Modus beginnt der Scanner mit dem Scannvorgang, wenn Sie in der Applikation mit im Scanner eingelegtem Dokument den Befehl zum Scannen geben und die Start-Taste am Scanner drücken.

Wenn der Scanner mit dem Scannen eines Dokumentenstapels fertig ist, den nächsten Stapel einlegen und die Start-Taste drücken, um den Scannvorgang fortzusetzen.

● Auto

Dieser Modus ist am besten geeignet, um Dokumente gleicher Größe in einem Stapeln zu scannen.

In diesem Modus beginnt der Scanner mit dem Scannvorgang automatisch, wenn Sie in der Applikation den Befehl zum Scannen geben und dann das Dokument einlegen.

Wenn der Scanner mit dem Abtasten eines Dokumentenstapels fertig ist, den nächsten Stapel einlegen. Der Scanner setzt den Scannvorgang automatisch fort.

● Manual

In diesem Modus legen Sie das Dokument eine Seite nach der anderen ein, nachdem Sie am Computer den Befehl zum Scannen gegeben haben.

Verwenden Sie diesen Modus, um Dokumente einzuführen, die nicht gut einziehen (z.B. Papierqualität, die leicht zu Doppeleinzug führt), wenn sie als Stapel eingelegt werden.

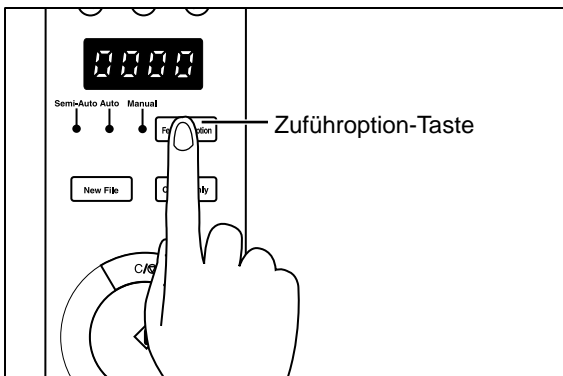
Im folgenden werden die einzelnen Scannverfahren entsprechend Einzugmodus beschrieben.

◆ Remote-Modus

Dieser Modus ist am besten geeignet, um nur einen Dokumentenstapel zu scannen.

1 Sicherstellen, daß die Lämpchen Semi-Auto, Auto und Manual erloschen sind.

Wenn eines dieser Lämpchen leuchtet, die Zuführungsoption-Taste drücken, bis alle Lämpchen erloschen sind.



ANMERKUNG

Bei jedem Drücken der Zuführungsoption-Taste wird leuchtende Lämpchen in der folgenden Reihenfolge umgeschaltet:

OFF (Remote-Modus) → [Semi-Auto] → [Auto] → [Manual] → und zurück zu OFF (Remote-Modus)

2 Die folgenden Einstellungen am Bedienfeld wählen.

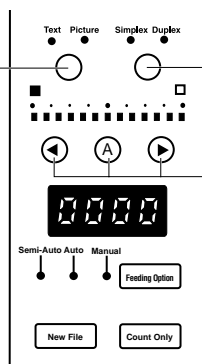
Falls diese Einrichtung bereits im Programm vorgenommen wurde, ist eine Einstellung am Gerät nicht mehr notwendig.

Text/Picture

[Text]: Leuchtet wenn Textdokumente (die hauptsächlich Buchstaben enthalten) mit Schwarzweiß-Modus gescannt werden.

[Picture]: Leuchtet, wenn Bilddokumente einschließlich Fotografien mit Schwarzweiß-Fehlerdiffusionsmodus gescannt werden.

Wenn Applikationen mit Grauskalierung oder Farbmodus für die Bildwahl eingestellt werden, leuchtet keine der obigen.



Simplex/Duplex

[Simplex]: Wählen, wenn nur die Vorderseite des Dokuments gescannt werden soll.

[Duplex]: Wählen, wenn Vorder- und Rückseite des Dokuments gescannt werden sollen.

Helligkeitstasten

Stellen die Helligkeit beim Scannen des Dokuments ein.

Um die Helligkeit automatisch einzustellen, drücken Sie die Taste (A), so daß (A) aufleuchtet.

Um die Helligkeit manuell einzustellen, drücken Sie (◀) oder (▶), um die Anzeige über den Tasten entsprechend der gewünschten Helligkeit zu verstellen.

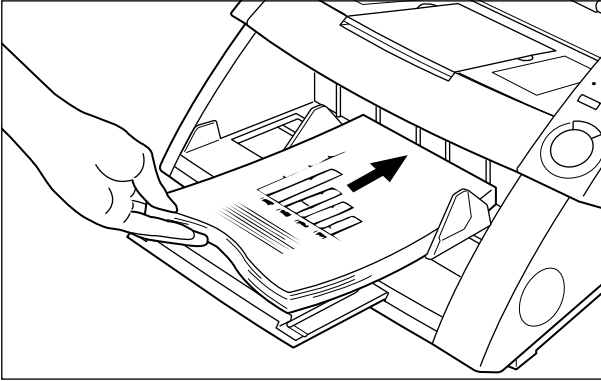


ANMERKUNG

Einzelheiten zu den Einstellparametern enthält der Abschnitt "3.3 Einstellen der Abtastbedingungen" (S. 58).

3 Die linke und rechte Papierführung auf die Breite des zu scannenden Dokuments ausrichten.

4 Einen Stapel Blätter durchfächern bis die Papierkanten gleichmäßig liegen.



ANMERKUNG

- Das Dokument mit der Dokumentenseite (zu scannenden Seite) nach obenweisend auf das Dokumentenfach legen.
- Das Gewicht des aufgelegten Papiers kann je nach Umgebungsbedingungen (z.B. Luftfeuchtigkeit) des Papierlagerorts zunehmen. In diesem Fall kann das Gewicht des aufgelegten Papiers das zulässige Stapelgewicht überschreiten, auch wenn die Anzahl der gestapelten Blätter im zulässigen Bereich ist, und das Hochfahren des Dokumentenfachs kann verhindert werden. In diesem Fall weniger Blätter auflegen, und das Dokument erneut scannen.

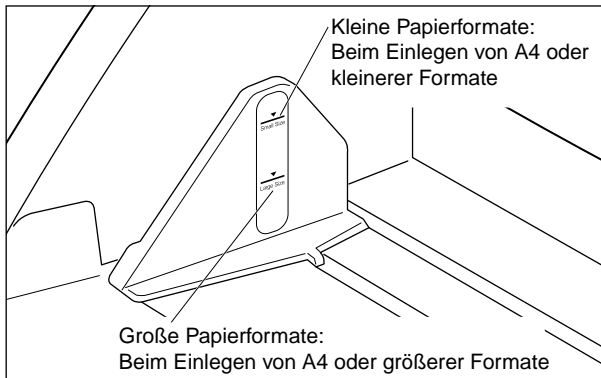


TIP

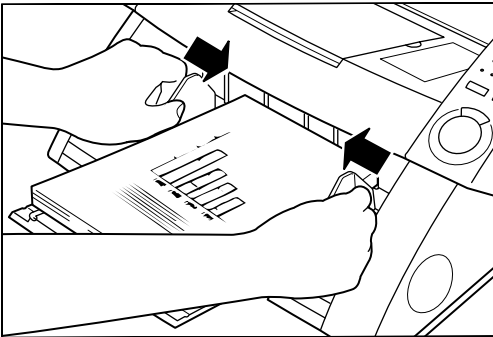
Zur Vermeidung von Papierstaus die Höhenbegrenzungsmarkierung am Dokumentenfach überprüfen.

Der Papierstapel sollte diese Markierung (▼) nicht überschreiten.

Die Höhenbegrenzung entspricht etwa 500 Blatt Normalpapier des Formats A4 (80 g/m²) bzw. etwa 200 Blatt bei größeren Formaten als A4.



- 5** Das Dokument mit der oberen Papierkante zuerst in den Scanner einschieben. Die Abbildungsseite muß hierbei nach oben weisen.



- 6** Im Programm Scannen einstellen.

- 7** Das Dokumentenfach fährt hoch, und der Scannvorgang beginnt. Nach dem Scannen aller Seiten senkt sich das Fach wieder.



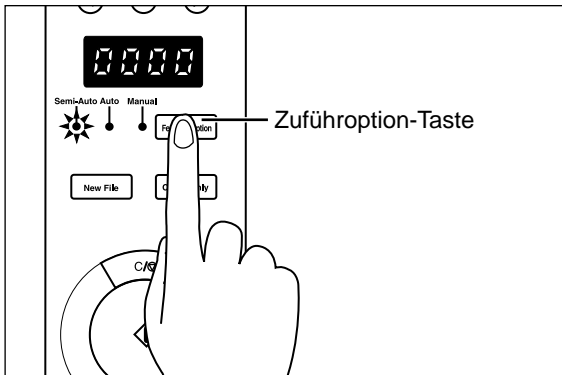
ANMERKUNG

Wenn der Papiereinzug aufgrund eines Systemfehlers oder Papierstaus stoppt, sicherstellen, daß die letzte Seite des eingezogenen Originals richtig aufgezeichnet wurde, bevor der Scannvorgang fortgesetzt wird.

◆ Semi-Auto-Modus

Verwenden Sie den Semi-Auto-Modus, um einen Stapel unterschiedlich großer Dokumente kontinuierlich zu scannen.

1 Die Zuführungsoption-Taste am Bedienfeld drücken bis [Semi-Auto] aufleuchtet.



2 Die folgenden Einstellungen am Bedienfeld wählen.

Falls diese Einrichtung bereits im Programm vorgenommen wurde, ist eine Einstellung am Gerät nicht mehr notwendig.

<p>Text/Picture</p> <p>[Text]: Leuchtet wenn Textdokumente (die hauptsächlich Buchstaben enthalten) mit Schwarzweiß-Modus gescannt werden.</p> <p>[Picture]: Leuchtet, wenn Bilddokumente einschließlich Fotografien mit Schwarzweiß-Fehlerdiffusionsmodus gescannt werden.</p> <p>Wenn Applikationen mit Grauskalierung oder Farbmodus für die Bildwahl eingestellt werden, leuchtet keine der obigen.</p>		<p>Simplex/Duplex</p> <p>[Simplex]: Wählen, wenn nur die Vorderseite des Dokuments gescannt werden soll.</p> <p>[Duplex]: Wählen, wenn Vorder- und Rückseite des Dokuments gescannt werden sollen.</p> <p>Helligkeitstasten</p> <p>Stellen die Helligkeit beim Scannen des Dokuments ein.</p> <p>Um die Helligkeit automatisch einzustellen, drücken Sie die Taste (A), so daß (A) aufleuchtet.</p> <p>Um die Helligkeit manuell einzustellen, drücken Sie (◀) oder (▶), um die Anzeige über den Tasten entsprechend der gewünschten Helligkeit zu verstellen.</p>
--	--	--

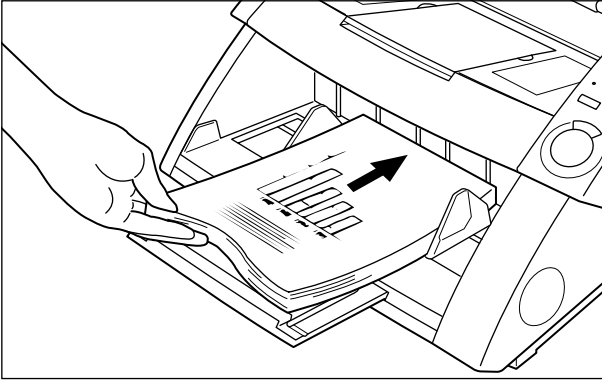


ANMERKUNG

Einzelheiten zu den Einstellparametern enthält der Abschnitt "3.3 Einstellen der Abtastbedingungen" (S. 58).

3 Im Programm Scannen einstellen.

4 Die linke und rechte Papierführung auf die Breite des zu scannenden Dokuments ausrichten.



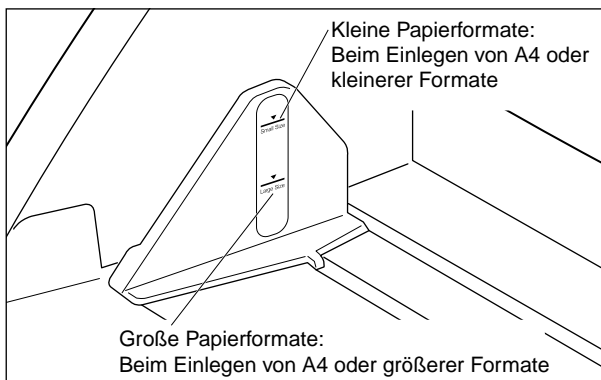
ANMERKUNG

- Das Dokument mit der Dokumentenseite (zu scannenden Seite) nach obenweisend auf das Dokumentenfach legen.
- Das Gewicht des aufgelegten Papiers kann je nach Umgebungsbedingungen (z.B. Luftfeuchtigkeit) des Papierlagerorts zunehmen. In diesem Fall kann das Gewicht des aufgelegten Papiers das zulässige Stapelgewicht überschreiten, auch wenn die Anzahl der gestapelten Blätter im zulässigen Bereich ist, und das Hochfahren des Dokumentenfachs kann verhindert werden. In diesem Fall weniger Blätter auflegen, und das Dokument erneut scannen.

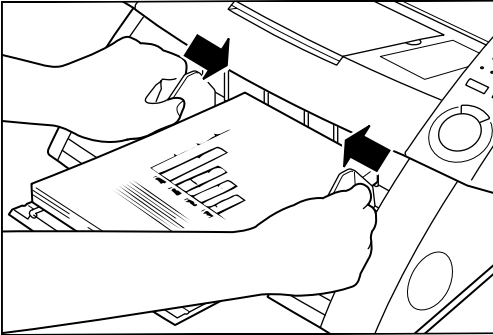


TIP

Zur Vermeidung von Papierstaus die Höhenbegrenzungsmarkierung am Dokumentenfach überprüfen.
Der Papierstapel sollte diese Markierung (▼) nicht überschreiten.
Die Höhenbegrenzung entspricht etwa 500 Blatt Normalpapier des Formats A4 (80 g/m²) bzw. etwa 200 Blatt bei größeren Formaten als A4.



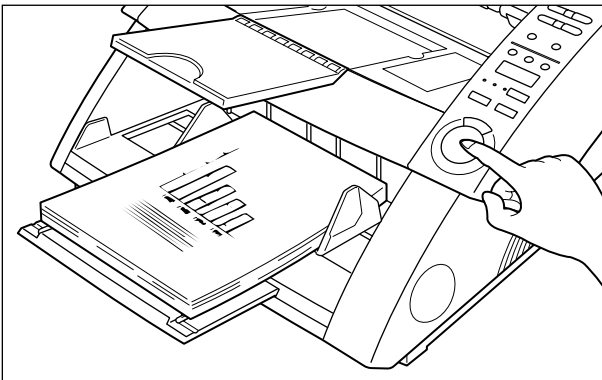
- 5 Die linke und rechte Papierführung auf die Breite des abzutastenden Dokuments ausrichten.**



- 6 Im Programm Scannen einstellen.**

➔ Die Start-Taste wechselt von Rot auf Grün um.

- 7 Die Starttaste drücken.**



- 8 Das Dokumentenfach fährt hoch, und der Scannvorgang beginnt. Nach dem Scannen aller Seiten senkt sich das Fach wieder.**



ANMERKUNG

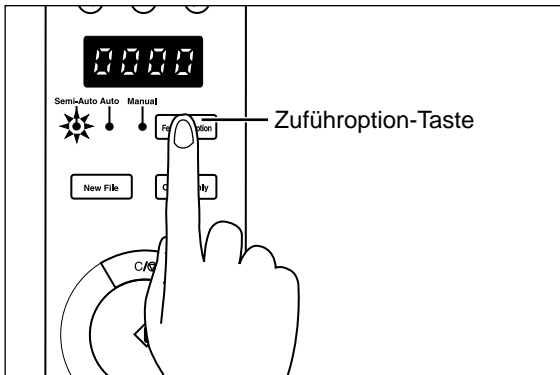
Wenn der Papiereinzug aufgrund eines Systemfehlers oder Papierstaus stoppt, sicherstellen, daß die letzte Seite des eingezogenen Originals richtig aufgezeichnet wurde, bevor der Scannvorgang fortgesetzt wird.

- 9 Wenn weitere Seiten im Dokument gescannt werden sollen, das Dokument einlegen und die Start-Taste drücken. Zum Beenden des Scannens die Stopp-Taste drücken.**

◆ Auto-Modus

Verwenden Sie den Auto-Modus, um einen Stapel gleich großer Dokumente kontinuierlich zu scannen.

1 Die Zuführungsoption-Taste am Bedienfeld drücken bis [Auto] aufleuchtet.



2 Die folgenden Einstellungen am Bedienfeld wählen.

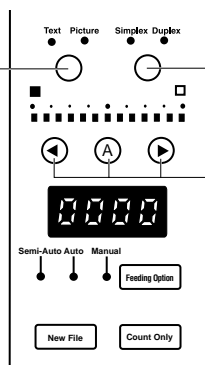
Falls diese Einrichtung bereits im Programm vorgenommen wurde, ist eine Einstellung am Gerät nicht mehr notwendig.

Text/Picture

[Text]: Leuchtet wenn Textdokumente (die hauptsächlich Buchstaben enthalten) mit Schwarzweiß-Modus gescannt werden.

[Picture]: Leuchtet, wenn Bilddokumente einschließlich Fotografien mit Schwarzweiß-Fehlerdiffusionsmodus gescannt werden.

Wenn Applikationen mit Grauskalierung oder Farbmodus für die Bildwahl eingestellt werden, leuchtet keine der obigen.



Simplex/Duplex

[Simplex]: Wählen, wenn nur die Vorderseite des Dokuments gescannt werden soll.

[Duplex]: Wählen, wenn Vorder- und Rückseite des Dokuments gescannt werden sollen.

Helligkeitstasten

Stellen die Helligkeit beim Scannen des Dokuments ein.

Um die Helligkeit automatisch einzustellen, drücken Sie die Taste (A), so daß (A) aufleuchtet.

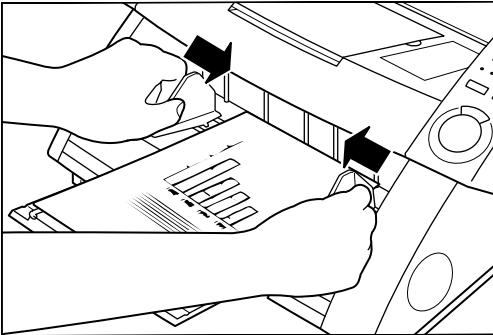
Um die Helligkeit manuell einzustellen, drücken Sie (◀) oder (▶), um die Anzeige über den Tasten entsprechend der gewünschten Helligkeit zu verstellen.



ANMERKUNG

Einzelheiten zu den Einstellparametern enthält der Abschnitt "3.3 Einstellen der Abtastbedingungen" (S. 58).

- 3** Eine Seite des zu scannenden Dokuments einlegen, und die Papierführungen auf die Breite des Dokuments einstellen.



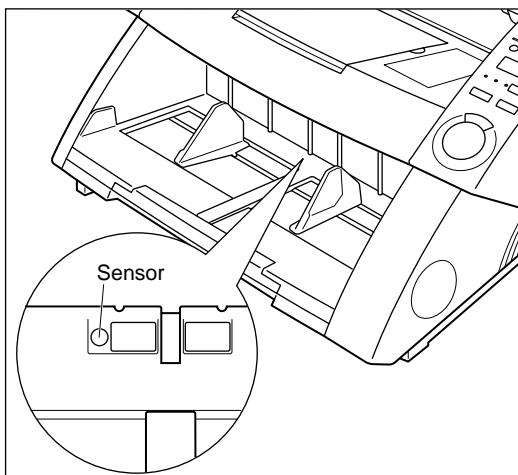
- 4** Den Befehl zum Scannen in der Applikation geben.

➔ Die Start-Taste wechselt von Rot auf Grün um.



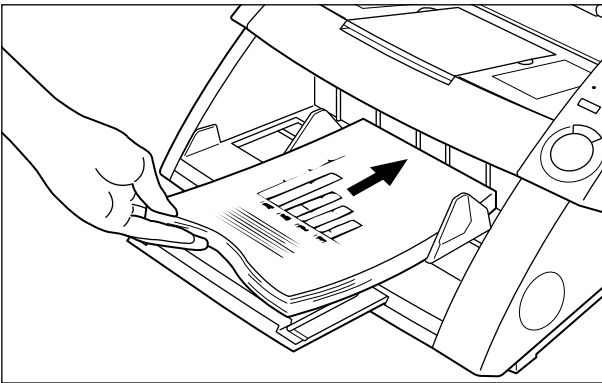
VORSICHT

Wenn der Scann-Modus auf Auto gestellt ist, erkennt der Sensor am Dokumentenfach, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt, automatisch das Dokument, um den Scannvorgang zu starten. Wenn der Sensor am Dokumentenfach abgedeckt ist, nachdem Sie den Scannvorgang in der Applikation eingegeben haben, beurteilt der Scanner fälschlich, daß ein Dokument eingelegt ist, und das Dokument beginnt sich zu bewegen. Stellen Sie sicher, daß nicht der Sensor im Dokumentenfach durch andere Gegenstände als Dokumente verdeckt ist.



- 5** Das Dokument mit der oberen Papierkante zuerst in den Scanner einschieben. Die Abbildungsseite muß hierbei nach oben weisen.

6 Die linke und rechte Papierführung auf die Breite des abzutastenden Dokuments ausrichten.



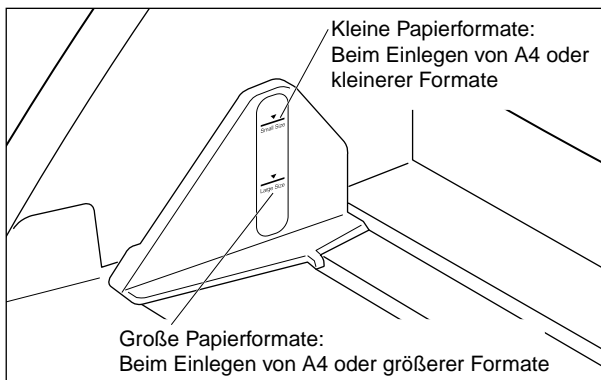
ANMERKUNG

- Das Dokument mit der Dokumentenseite (zu scannenden Seite) nach obenweisend auf das Dokumentenfach legen.
- Das Gewicht des aufgelegten Papiers kann je nach Umgebungsbedingungen (z.B. Luftfeuchtigkeit) des Papierlagerorts zunehmen. In diesem Fall kann das Gewicht des aufgelegten Papiers das zulässige Stapelgewicht überschreiten, auch wenn die Anzahl der gestapelten Blätter im zulässigen Bereich ist, und das Hochfahren des Dokumentenfachs verhindert werden. In diesem Fall weniger Blätter auflegen, und das Dokument erneut scannen.



TIP

Zur Vermeidung von Papierstaus die Höhenbegrenzungsmarkierung am Dokumentenfach überprüfen. Der Papierstapel sollte diese Markierung (▼) nicht überschreiten. Die Höhenbegrenzung entspricht etwa 500 Blatt Normalpapier des Formats A4 (80 g/m²) bzw. etwa 200 Blatt bei größeren Formaten als A4.



7 **Das Dokumentenfach hebt sich automatisch an, und der Scannvorgang beginnt. Wenn alle Seiten im Dokument gescannt sind, wird das Papierfach abgesenkt.**

Der Scannvorgang startet nicht, wenn das Dokument zuerst eingelegt wird. In diesem Fall entweder die Start-Taste drücken, oder das Dokument entfernen und erneut einlegen.



ANMERKUNG

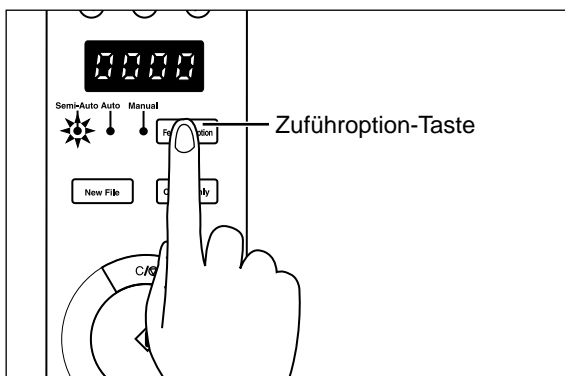
Wenn der Papiereinzug aufgrund eines Systemfehlers oder Papierstaus stoppt, sicherstellen, daß die letzte Seite des eingezogenen Originals richtig aufgezeichnet wurde, bevor der Scannvorgang fortgesetzt wird.

8 **Wenn sich mehr Seiten zum Scannen im Dokument befinden, das Dokument einlegen, und der Scannvorgang beginnt automatisch. Zum Beenden des Scannens die Stopp-Taste drücken.**

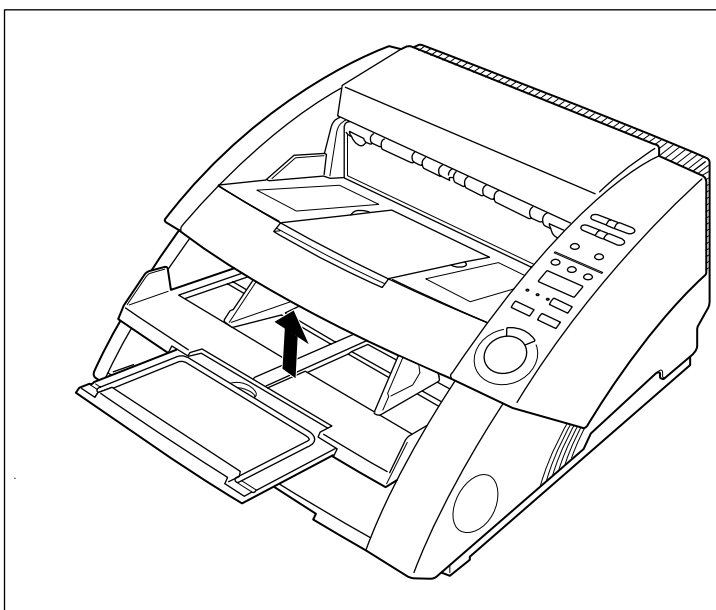
◆ Manual-Modus

Verwenden Sie diesen Modus, um Dokumente zuzuführen, die nicht gut einziehen (z.B. Papierqualität, die leicht zu Doppeleinzug führt). In diesem Modus werden die Blätter des Dokuments einzeln eingelegt.

- 1 Die Zuführungsoption-Taste am Bedienfeld drücken, so daß [Manual] aufleuchtet.



➔ Das Dokumentenfach fährt hoch.



VORSICHT

Darauf achten, nicht die Finger im Dokumentenfach einzuklemmen.

2 Die folgenden Einstellungen am Bedienfeld wählen.

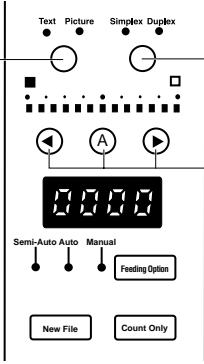
Falls diese Einrichtung bereits im Programm vorgenommen wurde, ist eine Einstellung am Gerät nicht mehr notwendig.

Text/Picture

[Text]: Leuchtet wenn Textdokumente (die hauptsächlich Buchstaben enthalten) mit Schwarzweiß-Modus gescannt werden.

[Picture]: Leuchtet, wenn Bilddokumente einschließlich Fotografien mit Schwarzweiß-Fehlerdiffusionsmodus gescannt werden.

Wenn Applikationen mit Grauskalierung oder Farbmodus für die Bildwahl eingestellt werden, leuchtet keine der obigen.



Simplex/Duplex

[Simplex]: Wählen, wenn nur die Vorderseite des Dokuments gescannt werden soll.

[Duplex]: Wählen, wenn Vorder- und Rückseite des Dokuments gescannt werden sollen.

Helligkeitstasten

Stellen die Helligkeit beim Scannen des Dokuments ein.

Um die Helligkeit automatisch einzustellen, drücken Sie die Taste (A), so daß (A) aufleuchtet.

Um die Helligkeit manuell einzustellen, drücken Sie ◀ oder ▶, um die Anzeige über den Tasten entsprechend der gewünschten Helligkeit zu verstellen.

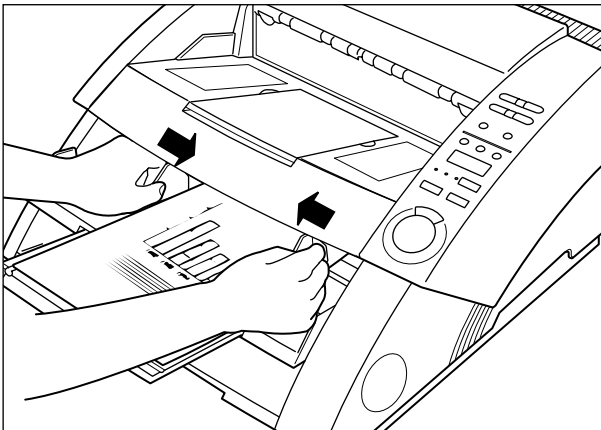


ANMERKUNG

Einzelheiten zu den Einstellparametern enthält der Abschnitt "3.3 Einstellen der Abtastbedingungen" (S. 58).

DEUTSCH

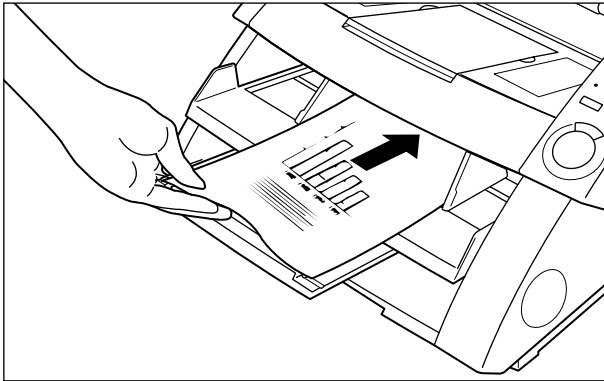
3 Eine Seite des zu scannenden Dokuments einlegen, und die Papierführungen entsprechend der Breite des Dokuments einstellen.



4 Im Programm auf Scannen einstellen.

5 Ein Blatt mit der Abbildungsseite nach obenweisend und der oberen Papierkante zuerst in den Scanner einlegen.

➡ Das Dokument wird gescannt.



6 Die Dokumente nacheinander als einzelne Seiten einlegen.

7 Zum Beenden des Scannens die Stopp-Taste drücken.



TIP

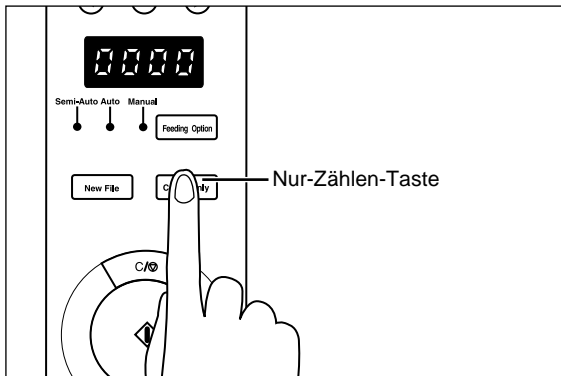
Das Dokumentenfach verbleibt hiernach in der angehobenen Stellung. Zum Herabsenken des Dokumentenfachs in die ursprüngliche Stellung die Zuführungsoption-Taste drücken und danach eine beliebige Taste mit Ausnahme von [Manual] betätigen.

Zählen der Anzahl von Originalen in einem Dokument

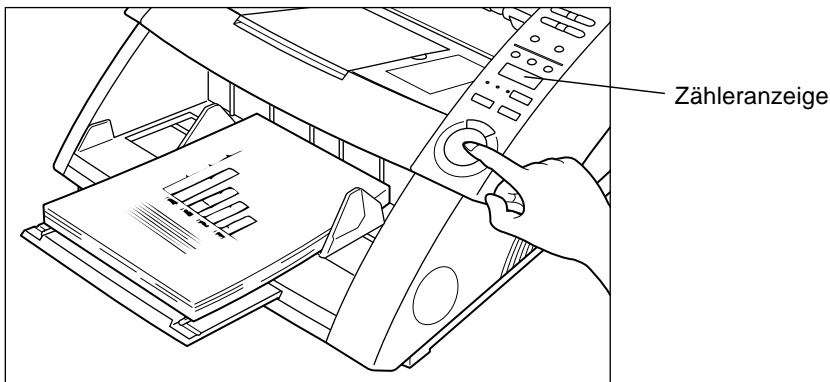
Die Anzahl von Originalen in einem Dokument kann gezählt werden, wenn z.B. die Anzahl nicht bekannt ist, indem der Scanner auf Nur-Zählen-Modus gestellt wird.

1 Die Nur-Zählen-Taste am Bedienfeld des Scanners drücken.

➔ Das Nur-Zählen-Lämpchen leuchtet auf, um anzuzeigen, daß Nur-Zählen-Betrieb eingestellt ist. Das Semi-Auto-Lämpchen leuchtet ebenfalls.



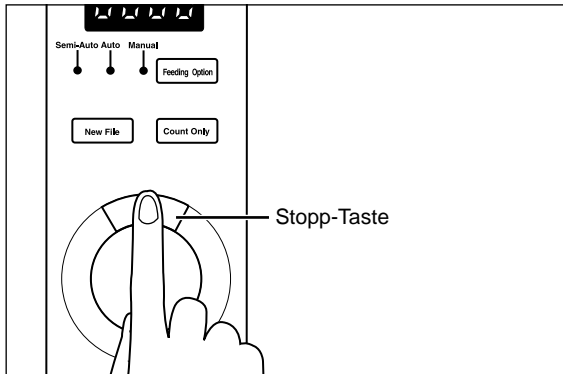
2 Das Dokument auf das Dokumentenfach legen, und die Start-Taste drücken.



➔ Das Dokument wird eingezogen, und die Anzahl der Seiten im Dokument erscheint im Zähler-Display.

3 Wenn der Zählvorgang endet, die Nur-Zählen-Taste drücken, um den Nur-Zählen-Modus aufzuheben.

Zum Löschen der Zählung im Zähler-Display die Stopp-Taste mindestens zwei Sekunden lang drücken.



TIP

Sie können die obige Zählung verwenden, um einen Bestätigungs-Scan auszuführen (automatische Bestätigung der Anzahl der Seiten in einem Dokument beim Scannen). Einzelheiten zum Bestätigungs-Scan siehe getrennte ISIS/TWAIN-Treiberanleitung und die Scanning Utility 5000 Bedienungsanleitung.

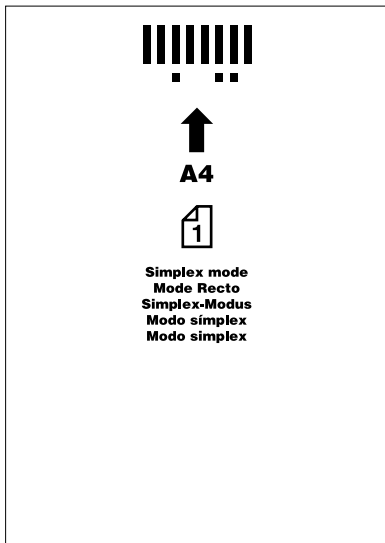
Funktionsblätter

Im Lieferumfang des Scanners befinden sich mehrere Funktionsblätter, mit denen verschiedene Funktionen aktiviert werden können. Durch Zuführen eines Funktionsblatts zusammen mit einem Dokument erkennt der Scanner das Funktionsblatt und stellt automatisch den betreffenden Scanmodus ein.

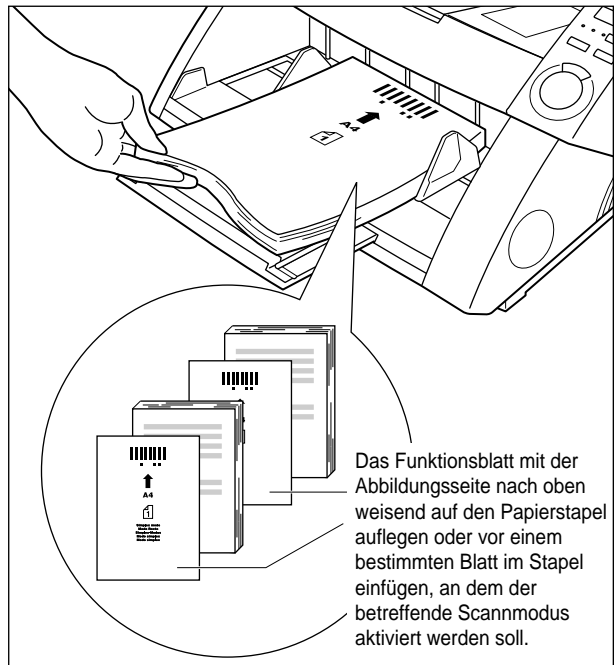


TIP

- Diese Funktion ist nur aktiv, wenn das Programm die Verwendung von Funktionsblättern unterstützt. Die Scanner-Applikation vorher so einstellen, daß diese Funktion verwendet werden kann. Einzelheiten siehe Bedienungsanleitung der Scanner-Applikation.
- Einzelheiten zu den Funktionsblättern siehe mit den Funktionsblättern mitgelieferte Anweisungen.



Funktionsblatt



Der DR-5020/5080C wird zusammen mit den folgenden fünf Funktionsblättern geliefert.

- **Scanner-Steuerungsblätter**

Diese Blätter steuern den Modus, in dem das Dokument gescannt wird. Die folgenden Steuerblätter für jeden Scannmodus werden mitgeliefert.

Für Duplex-Modus

Durch Zuführen dieses Funktionsblatts scannt der Scanner die Vorderseite und Rückseite des Blatts ab und speichert deren Inhalt. Dieses Funktionsblatt vor dem Dokument einfügen und zusammen mit dem Dokument in den Scanner einlegen.

Für Simplex-Modus

Durch Zuführen dieses Funktionsblatts scannt der Scanner nur die Vorderseite des Blatts ab und speichert deren Inhalt. Dieses Funktionsblatt vor dem Dokument einfügen und zusammen mit dem Dokument in den Scanner einlegen.

Für Foto-Modus

Zum Scannen und Speichern von Fotos schaltet der Scanner durch Zuführen dieses Funktionsblatts auf Fotomodus um. Dieses Funktionsblatt vor einem Fotodokument einfügen und zusammen mit dem Dokument in den Scanner einlegen. Dieses Blatt wird nur erkannt, wenn der Scannmodus in der Applikation auf Schwarzweiß gestellt ist. Das Blatt wird ignoriert, wenn es bei auf Grauskalierung oder Farbe gestelltem Scannmodus eingesetzt wird.

Für Text-Modus

Zum Abtasten und Speichern von Text schaltet der Scanner durch Zuführen dieses Funktionsblatts auf Textmodus um. Dieses Funktionsblatt vor einem Fotodokument einfügen und zusammen mit dem Dokument in den Scanner einlegen. Dieses Blatt ist nur gültig, wenn der Scannmodus in der Applikation auf Schwarzweiß gestellt ist. Das Blatt wird ignoriert, wenn es bei auf Grauskala oder Farbe gestelltem Scannmodus eingesetzt wird.

- **Jobtrennblatt**

Unterteilt ein Dokument zur Erstellung eines neuen Dokuments nach dem Speichern. Dieses Funktionsblatt zwischen Dokumenten einfügen und zusammen mit dem Dokument in den Scanner einlegen.



TIP

- Kopien der Original-Funktionsblätter anfertigen und die Originale an einem sicheren und sauberen Platz aufbewahren.
- Beim Kopieren der Funktionsblätter darauf achten, daß die Kopien die gleiche Größe wie die Originale haben und klar und deutlich kopiert werden — weder zu hell noch zu dunkel. Zu helle oder zu dunkle Kopien können zu Scannfehlern führen.
- Beim Kopieren eines Funktionsblatts das Funktionsblatt auf Papier der gleichen Stärke wie das zu scannende Dokument kopieren. Wenn ein Funktionsblatt auf Papier anderer Stärke erstellt wird, kann es zu Doppelblatteinzug kommen (S. 63), wodurch ein Doppeleinzugfehler ausgelöst wird.
- Beim Kopieren eines Funktionsblatts mit einem anderen Seitenformat als A4 die Kopierfunktion so einstellen, daß sich das Muster 10 mm von der oberen Papierkante befindet. Weiterhin sicherstellen, daß das Muster entsprechend der Breite des Blatts in dessen Mitte kopiert wird.
- Die Funktionsblätter vorsichtig handhaben und darauf achten, die Blätter nicht zu knicken, falten, markieren oder in irgendeiner Weise zu beflecken. Insbesondere sind Schmutz und Flecken innerhalb von 51 mm von der oberen Papierkante zu vermeiden. Markierte oder schmutzige Funktionsblätter können Fehlfunktionen verursachen.
- Wenn die Abbildungsdichte während des Scannens mit einem Funktionsblatt zu hoch oder zu niedrig eingestellt ist, werden Dokumente eventuell nicht korrekt abgetastet.

3.3

Einstellung der Scannbedingungen

Dieses Kapitel beschreibt das Einstellen der Scannbedingungen, die am Bedienfeld eingestellt werden können. Grundsätzlich können die folgenden drei Punkte eingestellt werden:

- **Grundeinstellungen**
Stellt die grundlegenden Bedingungen ein: Einzugmodus, Helligkeit, Simplex/Duplex, usw.
- **Einstellung mit Funktionstasten**
Abrufen über Funktionstaste mit registrierter Einstellung zur Verwendung dieser Einstellungen.
- **Anwendermodus-Einstellung**
Stellt den Scanner-Betriebsmodus (Anwendermodus) für Punkte wie Originalerkennung ein.

Im folgenden eine Beschreibung der drei Einstellmethoden

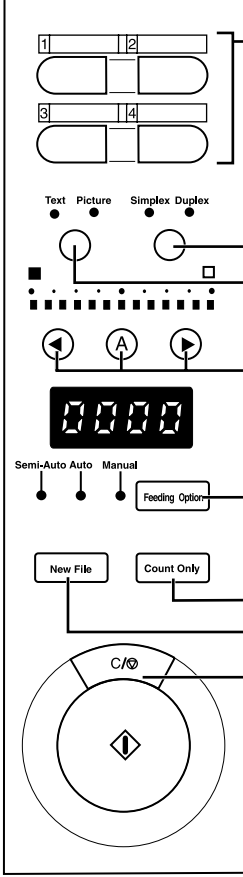


ANMERKUNG

Nur einige der verfügbaren Scannbedingungen werden am Bedienfeld eingestellt. Einzelheiten siehe getrennte "ISIS/TWAIN-Treiberanleitung" oder "Scanning Utility 5000 Bedienungsanleitung".

Grundeinstellungen

Die folgenden Funktionen können je nach dem Typ des zu scannenden Dokuments am Bedienfeld eingestellt werden.



The diagram shows the control panel of a scanner with various buttons and indicators. The buttons are arranged in a grid-like fashion. At the top, there are four buttons labeled 1, 2, 3, and 4. Below them are two rows of buttons labeled 'Text Picture Simplex Duplex'. In the middle, there is a digital display showing '0000' and three buttons labeled 'Semi-Auto Auto Manual'. Below the display are two buttons labeled 'New File' and 'Count Only'. At the bottom, there is a large circular button labeled 'C/⊗' and a smaller button labeled 'A'. Lines connect these buttons to text boxes on the right side of the page, which describe their functions.

Funktionstasten (S. 60)

Simplex/Duplex-Taste
Wählt, ob nur die Vorderseite oder Vorder-und Rückseite des Dokuments gescannt werden. Beim Scannen im Simplex-Modus leuchtet "Simplex". Beim Scannen im Duplex-Modus leuchtet "Duplex".

Moduswahltasten
Wählt den Dokument-Scannmodus ("Schwarzweiß/Schwarzweiß-Fehlerdiffusion")
Text: Leuchtet, wenn Textdokumente (also Dokumente, die hauptsächlich aus Text bestehen) mit Schwarzweiß-Modus gescannt werden.
Picture: Leuchtet, wenn Bilddokumente einschließlich Fotografien mit Schwarzweiß-Fehlerdiffusionsmodus gescannt werden.
Wenn Applikationen mit Grauskalierung oder Farbmodus für die Bildwahl eingestellt werden, leuchtet keine der obigen.

Helligkeit-Tasten
Stellt die Helligkeit beim Scannen des Dokuments ein.
Zum automatischen Einstellen der Helligkeit die Taste **A** drücken, so daß **A** aufleuchtet. Zum manuellen Einstellen der Helligkeit die Taste **⏪** oder **⏩** mit ausgerasterter Taste **A** drücken und die Anzeige auf der Taste verändern, um die Helligkeit einzustellen. (Durch Bewegen der Anzeige nach rechts wird die Helligkeit gesteigert, und durch Bewegen nach links wird sie gesenkt. Die Helligkeit kann in 13 Stufen eingestellt werden.)
Wenn Sie die Tasten **⏪** oder **⏩** bei leuchtender Taste **A** drücken, um die Anzeige einzustellen, wird die Helligkeit automatisch eingestellt.
Im Modus Nur-Zählen können Sie den Startwert mit den Tasten **⏪** oder **⏩** einstellen.

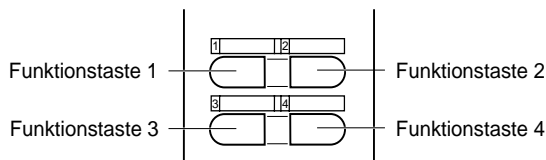
Zuführoption-Taste (S. 39)
Diese Taste dient zum Einstellen des Zuführmodus.
Fern: Die drei Lämpchen links neben dieser Taste sind alle erloschen. Das Dokument wird eingezogen, wenn der Scanner eine Scannanweisung vom Computer erhält.
Semi-Auto: Der Scanner führt das Dokument zu, wenn Sie nach Einlegen des Dokuments die Start-Taste drücken.
Auto: Der Scanner führt automatisch das Dokument zu, wenn Sie das Dokument einlegen.
Manual: Manuell das Dokument blattweise Zeit einlegen.

Nur-Zählen-Taste (S. 53)
Stellt den Scanner auf Nur-Zählen-Modus, um nur die Seiten im Dokument zu zählen.
Wenn diese Taste gedrückt wird, leuchtet sie auf. Wenn Sie das Dokument einlegen und die Start-Taste in diesem Zustand drücken, wird das Dokument eingezogen, und der Scanner zählt die Anzahl der Seiten. (Das Dokument wird nicht gescannt. Die Dokumenten-Seitenzahl wird in der Zähleranzeige gezeigt).

New File-Taste
Diese Taste drücken, um gescannte Dokumente in separate Dateien zu unterteilen.
Wenn sie diese Taste drücken, leuchtet sie auf. Wenn das Dokument in diesem Zustand gescannt wird, wird das gescannte Bild in einem anderen Ordner als dem Ordner für das vorherige Dokument gespeichert.
Wenn in der Applikation Auto New File eingestellt ist, leuchtet diese Taste automatisch auf, wenn jeder Dokumentenstapel fertig gescannt ist.

Stopptaste
Diese Taste zum Unterbrechen des laufenden Scannvorgangs drücken.
Die Taste dient darüber hinaus auch zum Aufheben des aktuellen Modus Löschen einer Fehleranzeige.
Zum Rückstellen der Zähleranzeige auf "0000" diese Taste mindestens 2 Sekunden lang gedrückt halten.

Einstellung der Funktionstasten



Oben am Bedienfeld sind vier Funktionstasten vorhanden. Diese Tasten können leicht durch einfachen Tastendruck am Bedienfeld durch Registrieren der jeweiligen Funktionen verwendet werden.

Folgende Einstellungen können unter den Funktionstasten registriert werden:

- **Manuelle Stärkeneinstellung**
Manuell die Papierstärke einstellen.
- **Imprinter EIN/AUS**
Wählt die Verwendung des Imprinters, wenn der optionale Imprinter installiert ist.
- **Fester Stärkenmodus EIN/AUS**
Stellt die Papierstärke auf einen festen Wert ein.
- **Doppelblatterkennung EIN/AUS**
Erkennt automatisch Doppeleinzug von zwei oder mehr Dokumenten beim Scannen.
- **Gespeicherte Einstellungen wieder herstellen EIN/AUS**
Registriert die Scannereinstellungen, die am PC eingestellt sind, unter den Funktionstasten. Wenn die Einstellungen registriert sind, können sie durch einfaches Drücken einer Funktionstaste am Scanner aktiviert werden.

Die den Funktionstasten zuzuordnenden Funktionen werden im Programm registriert. Einzelheiten zur Registrierung von Funktionen für die Funktionstasten enthält die "ISIS/TWAIN-Treiberanleitung" und die "Scanning Utility 5000 Bedienungsanleitung".



ANMERKUNG

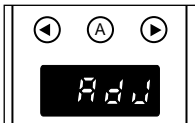
- Die Tasten sind wie folgt voreingestellt:
Funktionstaste 1: Manuelle Stärkeneinstellung
Funktionstaste 2: Imprinter EIN/AUS (wenn diese Option installiert ist)
Funktionstaste 3: Fester Stärkenmodus EIN/AUS
Funktionstaste 4: Doppelblatterkennung EIN/AUS
- Die Details der unter den Funktionstasten registrierten Funktionen werden im Scanner gespeichert. Bitte beachten, daß diese Details bei einer eventuellen Reparatur des Scanners auf die werkseitig voreingestellten Parameter rückgestellt werden.

◆ Manuelle Stärkeneinstellung

Dieser Scanner ist werkseitig auf automatische Erkennung der Papierstärke beim Scannen eingestellt. Diese Funktion kann allerdings nicht richtig arbeiten, wenn extrem dickes oder dünnes Papier gescannt wird. In diesem Fall muß der Anwender manuell die Papierstärke so einstellen, daß die Dokumente glatt in den Scanner eingezogen werden. Das Verfahren zum manuellen Einstellen der Papierstärke ist wie folgt:

1 Die Funktionstaste drücken, unter der die manuelle Stärkeneinstellung registriert wird (Vorgabe ist die Funktionstaste 1).

➔ Die Funktionstaste blinkt, und "Adj" blinkt im Zähler-Display. Das Semi-Auto-Lämpchen leuchtet, und die Mitte der Start-Taste blinkt grün.



ANMERKUNG

Zum Aufheben der Papierstärken-Funktion die blinkende Taste oder die Stopptaste drücken.

2 Ein Blatt vom zu scannenden Dokument auf das Dokumentenfach legen, und die Start-Taste drücken.

➔ Damit wird das Dokument gescannt, und die Papierstärke erscheint in der Anzeige.



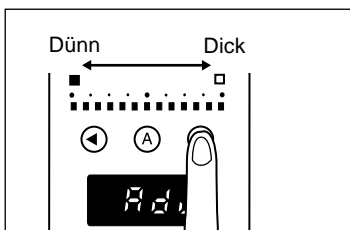
ANMERKUNG

Die in der Anzeige gezeigte Papierstärke ist nicht die präzise Papierstärke sondern dient als Richtwert beim Einstellen der Papierstärke.

3 Die Tasten ◀ oder ▶ drücken, um die Papierstärke einzustellen.

Durch Drücken der Tasten ◀ oder ▶ wird die Anzeige nach links bzw. rechts bewegt.

Zum Einstellen einer dickeren Papiereinstellung drücken Sie die Taste ▶. Zum Einstellen einer dünneren Papierstärke drücken Sie die Taste ◀. Die Papierstärke kann in 13 Stufen eingestellt werden.



4 Die blinkende Taste erneut drücken.

➡ Dies stellt die Papierstärke ein, und stellt das Zähler-Display zurück.



ANMERKUNG

- Zum Aktivieren des im obigen Verfahren eingestellten Werts muß der Modus Feste Papierstärke (S. 62) eingestellt sein.
- Die Papierstärke kann auch in der Applikation eingestellt werden. Wenn die Papierstärke sowohl im Scanner-Bedienfeld als auch in der Applikation eingestellt ist, hat die letzte Einstellung Priorität.

◆ Imprinter EIN/AUS

Wenn der optionale Imprinter am Scanner installiert ist, kann gewählt werden, ob der Imprinter mit einer Funktionstaste verwendet wird oder nicht. Zur Aktivierung des Imprinters die Funktionstaste drücken, unter der Imprinter registriert ist, und das Dokument mit leuchtender Taste scannen. Zur Deaktivierung des Imprinters das Dokument mit erloschenem Tastenlämpchen scannen.

◆ Fester Stärkenmodus EIN/AUS

Dieser Scanner ist werksseitig auf automatische Erkennung der Papierstärke vor dem Scannen eingestellt. Er hat aber auch den Feststärken-Modus zum Festlegen der Papierstärkeneinstellung. Wenn der Scanner auf Feststärken-Modus gestellt ist, ist die automatische Papierstärkenerkennung deaktiviert, und die Papierstärke ist auf drücken bei "Manuelle Dickeneinstellung" (S. 61) eingegebenen Wert festgelegt.

Sie können wählen, ob die Papierstärke automatisch erkannt wird oder ob der Feststärken-Modus mit einer Funktionstaste aktiviert wird.

Zum Einstellen des Feststärken-Modus die Funktionstaste (Vorgabe ist Funktionstaste 3), unter der der Feststärken-Modus registriert ist, drücken, und das Dokument bei leuchtender Taste abtasten.

Zum Zurückstellen auf automatische Papierstärkenerkennung die Taste, unter der der Feststärken-Modus registriert ist, drücken, um das Lämpchen auszuschalten.

◆ Doppelblatterkennung EIN/AUS

Dieser Scanner hat eine "Doppelblatterkennung"-Funktion. Diese Funktion speichert die Stärke und Länge des als Standarddokument zu verwendenden Papiers und erkennt automatisch einen Doppeleinzug (simultanen Einzug von zwei oder mehr Seiten), und zeigt eine Fehlermeldung, wenn ein Doppeleinzug erkannt wird.

Sie können wählen, ob die Doppelblatterkennungsfunktion mit einer Funktionstaste ein- oder ausgeschaltet werden soll.

Zum Erkennen von Doppeleinzug drücken Sie die Funktionstaste (Vorgabe ist Funktionstaste 4), unter der Doppelblatterkennung registriert ist, und scannen Sie das Dokument bei leuchtendem Lämpchen ab. Zum Deaktivieren der Doppelblatterkennung die Taste drücken, unter der die Doppelblatterkennung registriert ist, um das Lämpchen erlöschen zu lassen.

Ein Doppeleinzug-Fehler tritt auf, wenn ein Stapel mit unterschiedlich großen oder starken Dokumenten eingelegt wird. Immer sicherstellen, daß vor dem scannen solcher Dokumente die Doppelblatterkennung ausgeschaltet ist.



ANMERKUNG

- Da das erste Dokument als Standard zum Erkennen von Doppeleinzug dient, kann Doppeleinzug nicht erkannt werden, wenn bereits das erste Blatt doppelt eingezogen wird. Das gescannte Bild prüfen, um sicherzustellen, daß das erste Dokumentenblatt richtig eingezogen und gescannt wurde.
- Doppelblatterkennung ist nicht bei Dokumenten mit einer Breite von 130 mm oder weniger möglich.
- Ein Doppeleinzug wird automatisch erkannt und eine Fehlermeldung gezeigt, wenn ein Original mit 5 cm mehr Länge als das Standarddokument oder ein Original mit dem 1,5 fachen oder mehr an Stärke eines Standarddokuments erkannt wird.
- Wenn die Doppelblatterkennung mit einer Funktionstaste auf Ein gestellt wird, wird Doppeleinzug sowohl mit Dokumentenlänge als auch Stärke erkannt. Erkennung von Doppeleinzug durch Dokumentenlänge oder Dokumentenstärke kann nicht zu Funktionstasten zugewiesen werden. Obwohl diese Einstellung im Treiber oder der Applikation möglich ist, leuchten die Funktionstasten in diesem Fall nicht auf. Die Funktionstasten leuchten auf, wenn Doppelblatterkennung durch Dokumentenlänge und Stärke eingestellt sind.
- Die Doppelblatterkennung-Einstellungen werden beim Ausschalten des Geräts aus dem Scanner-Speicher gelöscht.

◆ Gespeicherte Einstellungen wiederherstellen EIN/AUS

Scan-Bedingungen, die im Computer eingestellt sind, können unter den Funktionstasten am Scanner registriert werden.

Unter jeder der vier Funktionstasten können verschiedene Einstellungen registriert werden, so daß Sie Einstellungen speichern können, die zu bestimmten Originalen passen. Wenn die Scannereinstellungen unter einer Funktionstaste registriert sind, leuchtet diese Funktionstaste auf.

Beachten Sie aber daß Modus, Scan-Auflösung und Originalgröße nicht registriert werden; diese Einstellungen müssen vor dem Start des Scannens geschehen.

Zur Verwendung registrierter Scan-Bedingungen drücken Sie die Funktionstaste, unter der die Scan-Bedingungen registriert sind, bevor Sie das Dialogfeld Scanner-Einstellungen in der Applikation öffnen. Die registrierte Funktionstaste leuchtet auf, und die Scannereinstellungen werden im Scanner wiederhergestellt. Wenn Sie die wiederhergestellten Scanner-Einstellungen ändern, erlischt die Funktionstaste. Die Funktionstaste leuchtet erneut auf, wenn Sie die geänderten Einstellungen auf Vorgabewerte zurücksetzen.

Einstellung im Anwendermodus

Der DR-5020/5080C erlaubt es, den Betriebsmodus (Anwendermodus) zu wählen, der für die unten aufgeführten Punkte verwendet wird.
(Die Einstellungen U5 bis U9 stehen nur zur Verfügung, wenn das entsprechende optionale Gerät (Imprinter, Barcode-Decoder oder Entwerter) angebracht ist.)

Bedienfeld-Warntoneinstellung

- U1-0 Warnton während der Tastenbetätigung inaktiv.
- U1-1 Warnton während der Tastenbetätigung aktiv (Voreinstellung).

Dokumenten-Erkennungseinstellung

- U2-0: Erkennt Dokumentenbreite mit Dokumentenbreite.
- U2-1: Erkennt Dokumentenbreite mit Papierführungsbreite (Vorgabe).

- U3-0 Schräglagenerkennung inaktiv (Voreinstellung).
- U3-1 Schräglagenerkennung und Scan-Beendung.
- U3-2 Schräglagenerkennung und Scan-Beendung (ausschließlich Manuellmodus).

SCSI-Synchronisationseinstellung

- U4-0 SCSI-Synchronisation nicht übertragen.
- U4-1 SCSI-Synchronisation übertragen (Voreinstellung).

Barcode-Einstellung

- U5-0 Warnton während der Barcode-Erkennung inaktiv.
- U5-1 Warnton während der Barcode-Erkennung (Voreinstellung).

- U6-0 START/STOP-Ausgangscodes im Codabar-Barcode in Kleinbuchstaben (Voreinstellung).
- U6-1 START/STOP-Ausgangscodes im Codabar-Barcode in Großbuchstaben.

- U7-0 Barcode nicht bestätigen.
- U7-1 Barcode einmal bestätigen (Voreinstellung).
- U7-2 Barcode zweimal bestätigen.
- U7-3 Barcode dreimal bestätigen.

Nur-Zählen-Modus-Einstellung

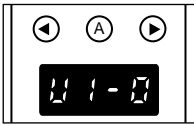
- U8-0 Den Imprinter nicht im Nur-Zählen-Modus verwenden (Voreinstellung)
- U8-1 Den Imprinter im Nur-Zählen-Modus verwenden.

Imprinter-Stempelmodus-Einstellung

- U9-0 Den Imprinter im Prüfmodus verwenden (Voreinstellung).
- U9-1 Den Imprinter im A4-Modus verwenden.

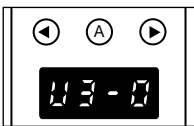
◆ Einstellung des Anwendermodus

- 1 Die Taste (A) mindestens fünf Sekunden lang gedrückt halten.

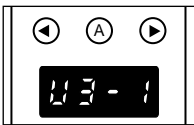


⇒ Die Taste (A) blinkt und im Zähler-Display erscheint der Anwender-Modus.

- 2 Die Anwendermodus-Adresse (zwischen U1 und U9) mit den Tasten (◀) oder (▶) wählen.



- 3 Die Taste (A) drücken, um den zu verwendenden Modus (letzte Nummer) zu wählen.



- 4 Die Stoptaste drücken.

⇒ Dadurch wird der gewählte Modus eingestellt, und das Zähler-Display schaltet auf Zähler-Anzeige zurück.

Kapitel 4

Fehlersuche

Dieses Kapitel beschreibt die Ursachen von Störungen, die am DR-5020/5080C auftreten können, und geeignete Abhilfemaßnahmen.

4.1 Wenn der Scanner nicht erkannt wird	68
4.2 Beseitigung von Papierstaus	70
4.3 Störungen beim Papiereinzug	75
4.4 Wenn das gescannte Bild nicht normal ist	77
4.5 Bei Anzeige eines Fehlercodes	78



Wenn der Scanner nicht erkannt wird

Im folgenden werden verschiedene Ursachen beschrieben, die dazu führen, daß der Computer den Scanner nicht erkennt. Folgen Sie zur Beseitigung derartiger Störungen den hier beschriebenen Abhilfemaßnahmen.

Ursache	Der Scanner ist nicht korrekt angeschlossen.
Abhilfe	Den Scanner korrekt an die SCSI-Karte anschließen.

Ursache	Die SCSI-Karte ist nicht korrekt angeschlossen.
Abhilfe	Die SCSI-Karte bei Vergleich mit der SCSI-Kartenanleitung korrekt anschließen. Je nach dem verwendeten Betriebssystem darüber hinaus noch die folgenden Punkte überprüfen. <Windows 95> Unter [Start] - [Einstellungen] - [Systemsteuerung] - [System] - [Geräte-Manager] prüfen, ob "x" oder "!" für den SCSI-Controller angezeigt ist. Falls eine dieser Anzeigen vorhanden ist, die SCSI-Karte entsprechend der SCSI-Kartenanleitung zurückstellen. <Windows NT> Unter [Start] - [Einstellungen] - [Systemsteuerung] - [SCSI-Adapter] prüfen, ob die SCSI-Karte korrekt erkannt wird. Falls nicht, die SCSI-Karte entsprechend der SCSI-Kartenanleitung zurückstellen.

Ursache	Die gleiche SCSI-ID wird auch für andere SCSI-Vorrichtungen verwendet.
Abhilfe	Die SCSI-ID aller angeschlossenen SCSI-Vorrichtungen überprüfen und sicherstellen, daß nicht für mehrere Vorrichtungen die gleiche SCSI-ID eingestellt ist. Falls die gleiche SCSI-ID mehrmals vorhanden ist, die SCSI-IDs zurückstellen.

Ursache	Der Abschlußstecker ist nicht korrekt angeschlossen.
Abhilfe	Den Abschlußstecker an die letzte SCSI-Vorrichtung am Ende der Anschlußkette anschließen. Die Abschlußfunktion aktivieren, falls die SCSI-Vorrichtung über eine eingebaute Abschlußfunktion verfügt.

Ursache **Der Scanner wurde nach dem Computer eingeschaltet.**

Abhilfe Den Computer und den Scanner ausschalten, und dann zuerst den Scanner und erst danach den Computer einschalten.

Ursache **Der Scanner ist ausgeschaltet.**

Abhilfe Den Computer ausschalten, und dann zuerst den Scanner und erst danach den Computer erneut einschalten.

Ursache **Das Netzkabel des Scanners wurde vom Scanner oder der Steckdose abgezogen.**

Abhilfe Den Computer ausschalten und das Netzkabel des Scanners korrigieren. Danach den Scanner und anschließend den Computer einschalten.

Ursache **Der Scanner unterstützt diese SCSI-Karte nicht.**

Abhilfe Durch eine mit der Treiber-Applikation kompatible SCSI-Karte ersetzen.

4.2

Beseitigung von Papierstaus

Wenn der laufende Scannvorgang plötzlich unterbrochen wird oder die Anzeige "PXX" im Zähler-Display erscheint, hat sich das Papier wahrscheinlich im Scanner gestaut.

Folgen Sie zur Beseitigung eines Papierstaus im DR-5020/5080C den nachstehenden Schritten.

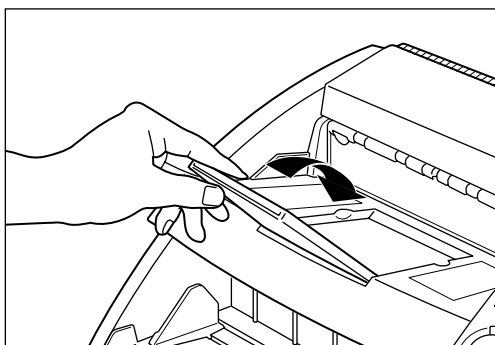


- Beim Beseitigen eines Papierstaus äußerst vorsichtig vorgehen, um unerwartete Verletzungen zu vermeiden. Sie können sich zum Beispiel die Finger an den Papierkanten schneiden, oder das Dokument kann beschädigt werden.
- Sämtliche gestauten Blätter entfernen. Nicht entfernte Papierfetzen werden wieder in den Scanner eingezogen und führen zu Fehlfunktionen oder einem erneuten Papierstau.
- Beim Öffnen des oberen Geräteteils darauf achten, nicht die Finger einzuklemmen.

Papierstau in der Papiereinzugseinheit

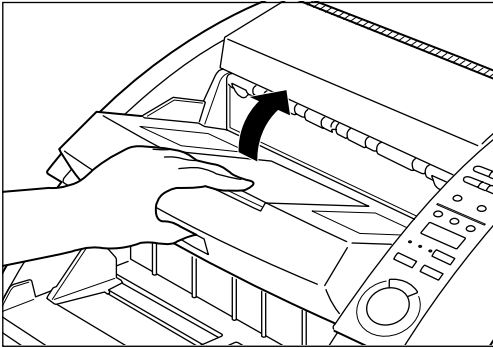
1 Die Dokumente auf dem Dokumentenfach und dem Auslauffach entfernen.

2 Das herausnehmbare Fach oder die Dokumentenauslaufablage entfernen, falls diese am Dokumentenauslauffach angebracht ist. Die Dokumentenauslauffach-Verlängerung einklappen, falls diese ausgeklappt ist.

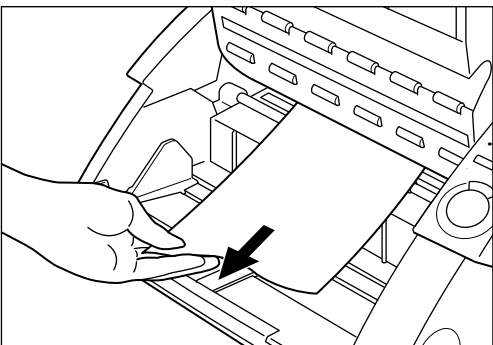


3 Die obere Feedereinheit öffnen.

Die Öffnen/Schließen-Taste drücken und die obere Feedereinheit bis zum Anschlag hochklappen, bis sie in dieser Stellung einrastet.

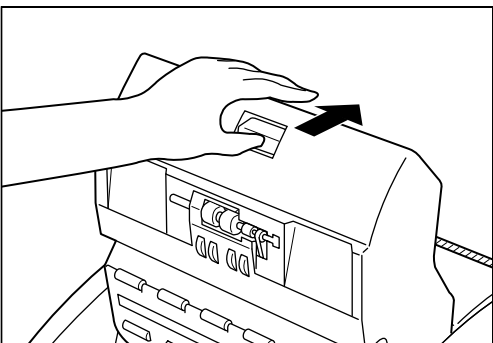


4 Das gestaute Papier aus dem Scanner entfernen.



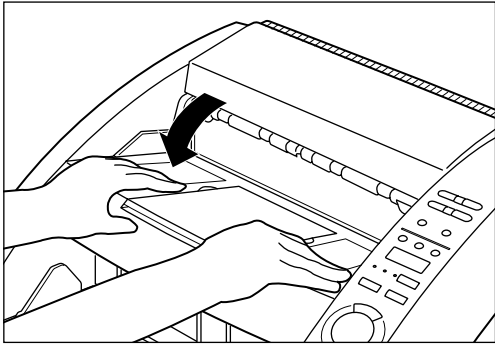
5 Die obere Feedereinheit zum Schließen so weit wie möglich nach hinten klappen und freigeben.

Die obere Feedereinheit senkt sich nach dem Freigeben langsam herab und darf in diesem Stadium nicht gewaltsam heruntergedrückt werden. Eine Mißachtung kann zur Beschädigung des Scanners führen.



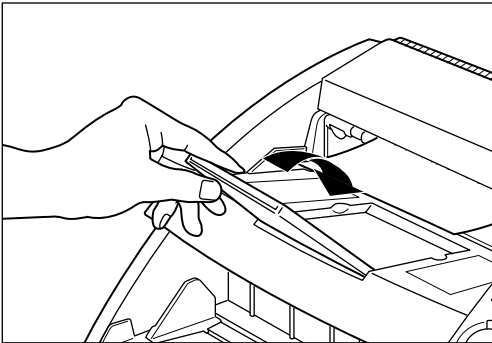
6 Wenn die obere Feedereinheit so weit abgesenkt wie möglich ist, an beiden Seiten fest zum Schließen andrücken.

Wenn die Feedereinheit nur an einer Seite angedrückt wird, wird die andere Seite nicht richtig geschlossen. Sicherstellen, daß sie hörbar einrastet.

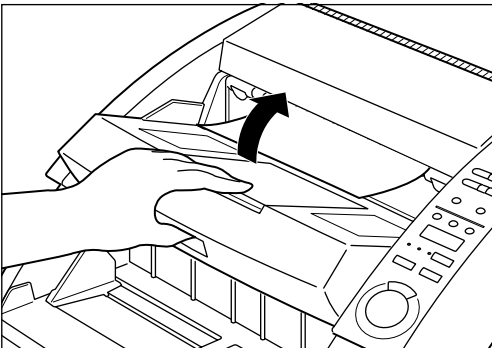


Papierstau in der Papierauslaufsektion

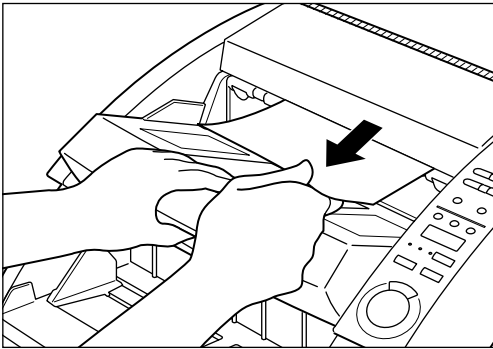
- 1** Das gestaute Papier vom Dokumentenfach oder Dokumenten-Auslauffach entfernen.
- 2** Das entfernbare Fach oder die Dokumentenauslauf-Stützplatte entfernen, wenn diese am Dokumentenfach angebracht sind. Die Dokumenten-Auslauffach-Verlängerung schließen, falls offen.



- 3** Die obere Feedereinheit öffnen.
Die Öffnen/Schließen-Taste drücken, und die obere Feedereinheit leicht anheben.

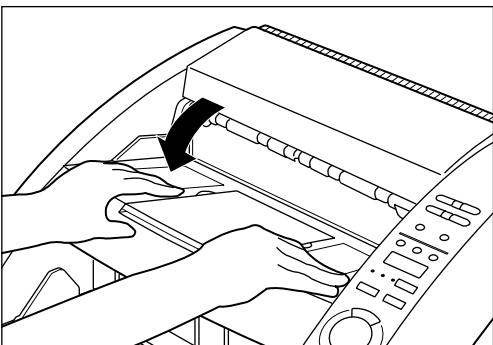


4 Gestautes Papier aus der Auslaufsektion entfernen.



5 Die obere Feedereinheit fest zum Schließen an beiden Seiten andrücken.

Wenn die Feedereinheit nur an einer Seite angedrückt wird, wird die andere Seite nicht richtig geschlossen. Sicherstellen, daß sie hörbar einrastet.



4.3

Störungen beim Papiereinzug

Wenn das Dokument nicht richtig eingezogen wird oder die Erkennungsfunktionen nicht sauber arbeiten, das Problem mit den folgenden Methoden beseitigen.

Zustand	Papierstau ist aufgetreten.
Ursache und Abhilfe	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Das Dokument prüfen, um zu sehen, ob Größe und Stärke des Dokuments innerhalb des vom Scanner unterstützten Bereichs liegen, und ob die Qualität des Dokumentenpapiers geeignet ist. Vorsichtsmaßnahmen zum Umgang mit Dokumenten siehe "Über Dokumente". (S. 36)• Das Verrutschen von Dokumenten kann Papiereinzugfehler verursachen. (S. 32) Den Papiereinzug-Einstellhebel zur Einstellung des Papiereinzugs verstellen.• Verschmutzte oder verschlissene Walzen im Inneren des Scanners verursachen Papierstau. Säubern, wenn die Walzen schmutzig sind. (S. 83) Verschlissene Walzen müssen ausgetauscht werden. Wenden Sie sich an den Canon-Kundendienst.

Zustand	Das Dokumentenfach fährt nicht hoch und rastet in der richtigen Stellung ein.
Ursache und Abhilfe	Das Gewicht des aufgelegten Papiers kann je nach Umgebungsbedingungen (z.B. Luftfeuchtigkeit) des Papierlagerorts zunehmen. In diesem Fall kann das Gewicht des aufgelegten Papiers das zulässige Stapelgewicht überschreiten, auch wenn die Anzahl der gestapelten Blätter im zulässigen Bereich ist, und das Hochfahren des Dokumentenfachs kann verhindert werden. In diesem Fall weniger Blätter auflegen, und das Dokument erneut scannen.

Zustand	Doppeleinzugfehler treten auf, obwohl kein Doppeleinzug vorliegt. (Falsche Erkennung von Doppeleinzug)
Ursache und Abhilfe	Wenn sich die Größe und Stärke des Papiers, auf dem das Funktionsblatt kopiert ist, von der des zu scannenden Dokuments unterscheidet, beurteilt der Scanner dies fehlerhaft als Doppeleinzug, und dieser Fehler tritt auf. In diesem Fall die Doppelblatterkennung ausschalten und das Dokument erneut scannen. Oder das Funktionsblatt auf Papier der gleichen Größe und Stärke wie das Dokument kopieren und diese Kopie verwenden.

Zustand	Doppeleinzug kann nicht erkannt werden.
Ursache und Abhilfe	Doppelblatterkennung ist nicht bei Dokumenten mit einer Breite von 130 mm oder weniger möglich, auch wenn die Doppelblatterkennung eingeschaltet ist.
Zustand	Schräglagenkorrektur-Fehler tritt auf, obwohl Papier nicht schräg eingezogen wird.
Ursache und Abhilfe	Der Scanner beurteilt fälschlich, daß ein Schrägeinzug auftritt. Dieser Fehler tritt auf, wenn der Bereich 5 mm von der Oberkante des Originals Text oder Bilder enthält oder das Original einen dunklen Hintergrund hat. Wenn dieser Fehler auftritt, die Schräglagenkorrektur ausschalten und das Dokument erneut scannen. Oder eine Kopie des Dokuments auf einem anderen Papier erstellen, einen breiteren Rand um das Dokument erzeugen (oder den Hintergrund aufhellen) und das Dokument erneut scannen.
Zustand	Wenn das Dokument schmutzig wird. (mit installiertem Imprinter)
Ursache und Abhilfe	Dies liegt daran, daß Tinte an den Löchern an der Führungsplatte im Imprinter festsetzt. Diese Löcher mit einem Wattestäbchen reinigen.



4.4 Wenn das gescannte Bild nicht normal ist

Wenn ein Problem im gescannten Bild vorliegt (Bild ist nicht scharf, oder Streifen erscheinen im Bild), kann eine der folgenden Situationen die Ursache sein. Prüfen Sie wie folgt und nehmen Sie die entsprechende Gegenmaßnahme vor.

- **Das Scannerglas und die Walzen am Scanner sind schmutzig.**

Wenn Scannerglas und Walzen am Scanner schmutzig sind, erscheint diese Verschmutzung auf dem gescannten Bild.

→ Scannergläser und Walzen reinigen. Einzelheiten siehe Kapitel 5 "Tägliche Reinigung" (S. 83)

- **Ungeeignete Scannbedingungen.**

Wenn die Scannbedingungen ungeeignet sind, kann das gescannte Bild unscharf sein oder dunkel erscheinen.

→ Die Helligkeit und andere Scanner-Einstellungen prüfen.

Wenn das gescannte Bild verschwommen ist oder das Dokument nicht gescannt wird, ist zu große Helligkeit eine mögliche Ursache.

Wenn das gescannte Bild dunkel erscheint, ist zu geringe Helligkeit eine mögliche Ursache.

Auch die Einstellungen von Treiber und Applikation prüfen.

- **Treiber oder Applikation laufen nicht richtig.**

Wenn das Dokument nicht richtig gescannt werden kann, obwohl die Scannbedingungen eingestellt sind, ist eine mögliche Ursache, daß Treiber oder Applikation nicht richtig funktionieren.

→ Den Treiber oder die Applikation neu installieren.

Einzelheiten zur Installation des Treibers siehe getrennte ISIS/TWAIN-Treiberanleitung.

Einzelheiten zur Installation der Applikation siehe Dokumentation der verwendeten Applikation.

- **Andere Ursachen.**

Der Computer kann den Scanner nicht richtig erkennen, oder Scannen ist mit dem installierten Treiber und der Applikation nicht möglich. In diesem Fall ist eine mögliche Ursache, daß die SCSI-Karte nicht zu dem Computer paßt, in dem sie installiert ist. Die Fehlermeldung wird deshalb manchmal nicht länger ausgegeben, wenn die asynchrone Übertragung im Anwendermodus des Scanners ausgeschaltet wird (S. 64). Wenn das nicht hilft, wenden Sie sich an den Hersteller von Computer oder SCSI-Karte.

Wenn sich durch die obigen Maßnahmen das Problem nicht beheben läßt, wenden Sie sich an den Canon-Kundendienst.



Bei Anzeige eines Fehlercodes

Bei einer Fehlfunktion des Scanners, oder wenn Störungen wie zum Beispiel Papiereinzug- oder Papierauslauffehler auftreten, zeigt das Zähler-Display am Bedienfeld einen Fehlercode an. Die folgende Aufstellung beschreibt die einzelnen Fehlercodes, die im Zähler-Display am Bedienfeld erscheinen, und geeignete Abhilfemaßnahmen.

Fehlercode d01, d02, d03

Ursache **Zwei oder mehr Seiten eines Dokuments wurden zugleich gescannt.**

Abhilfe Die Stoptaste drücken, um den Zähler auf "0" zu rückzustellen. Das Dokument mit dem gescannten Bild überprüfen und neu scannen.

Fehlercode C01

Ursache **Die obere Feedereinheit ist offen.**

Abhilfe Die oberen Feedereinheit schließen.

Fehlercode C02

Ursache **Der Imprinterdeckel ist offen (bei installiertem Imprinter).**

Abhilfe Den Imprinterdeckel schließen.

Fehlercode C03

Ursache **Die obere Feedereinheit und der Imprinterdeckel sind offen (bei installiertem Imprinter).**

Abhilfe Die obere Feedereinheit und den Imprinterdeckel schließen.

Fehlercode C04

Ursache **Die Abdeckung für die Entwertereinheit ED600 ist offen (bei installiertem Entwerter ED600).**

Abhilfe Die Abdeckung des Entwerter ED600 schließen.

Fehlercode C05

Ursache **Der obere Geräteteil und die Endorserabdeckung sind offen (bei installiertem Entwerter ED600).**

Abhilfe Den oberen Geräteteil und die Endorserabdeckung schließen.

Fehlercode	C06
Ursache	Die Aufdruckerabdeckung und die Endorserabdeckung sind offen (bei angebrachtem Aufdrucker und Entwerter ED600).
Abhilfe	Die die Aufdruckerabdeckung und Endorserabdeckung schließen.
Fehlercode	C07
Ursache	Der obere Geräteteil, die Aufdruckerabdeckung und die Endorserabdeckung sind offen (bei angebrachtem Aufdrucker und Entwerter ED600).
Abhilfe	Alle Abdeckungen schließen.
Fehlercode	E20, E21, E22, E23, E24, E25, E29, E30, E40, E41, E80, E85
Ursache	Interner Gerätefehler
Abhilfe	Das Gerät muß von einem Kundendiensttechniker repariert werden. Schalten Sie das Gerät aus, wenden Sie sich an den Fachhandel, bei dem Sie den Scanner gekauft haben, oder an die Canon-Kundendienstabteilung und teilen Sie den Fehlercode mit.
Fehlercode	L01
Ursache	Zuviele Daten. Die Speicherkapazität reicht nicht aus.
Abhilfe	Die Stopptaste drücken, um den Zähler auf "0" zu rückzustellen. Optionaler Speicher muß zur Verwendung einer Zusatzfunktion hinzugefügt werden. Wenden Sie sich hierzu bitte an den Fachhandel, bei dem Sie den Scanner gekauft haben, oder an die Canon-Kundendienstabteilung. Einzelheiten zu Zusatzspeicher-Anforderungen siehe "DR-5020/5080C Scannmodus-Tabellen". (S. 88)
Fehlercode	L02
Ursache	Zuviele Daten. Die Speicherkapazität reicht nicht aus.
Abhilfe	Die Stopptaste drücken, um den Zähler auf "0" zu rückzustellen. Dieser Fehler tritt beim Scannen beider Seiten eines A3-Blatts auf. Entweder die Seiten des Blatts nacheinander scannen oder einen anderen scannmodus einstellen.

Fehlercode U01
Ursache **Die Anzahl der Scans überschreitet die Anzahl der Seiten im Nur-Zählen-Modus.**
Abhilfe Bei der Seitenzählung wurden möglicherweise zwei oder mehr Blätter gleichzeitig eingezogen. Die Stopp-Taste drücken, um den Zähler auf "0" zurückzustellen. Die Anzahl der Seiten nachzählen, um zu prüfen, ob alle Dokumentenseiten gescannt wurden, und das Dokument erneut scannen.

Fehlercode U02
Ursache **Die Anzahl der Scans ist geringer als die Anzahl der Seiten im Nur-Zählen-Modus.**
Abhilfe Beim Scannen des Dokuments wurden möglicherweise zwei oder mehr Blätter gleichzeitig eingezogen. Die Stopp-Taste drücken, um den Zähler auf "0" zurückzustellen. Die Anzahl der Seiten nachzählen, um zu prüfen, ob alle Dokumentenseiten gescannt wurden.

Fehlercode H01
Ursache **Die Tintenpatrone des optionalen Imprinters ist nicht eingesetzt.**
Abhilfe Die Imprinter-Tintenpatrone korrekt einsetzen.

Fehlercode H02
Ursache **Anschlußfehler für Entwerter ED600 (Option)**
Abhilfe Den Entwerter ED600 richtig anschließen.

Fehlercode P00, P01, P02, P03, P04, P06, P08, P10, P20
Ursache **Scanner-Papierstau**
Abhilfe Das gestaute Papier entfernen. (S. 70)

Fehlercode P30
Ursache **Entwerter-ED600-Papierstau**
Abhilfe Das gestaute Papier aus dem Inneren des Entwerter ED600 entfernen, entsprechend den Anweisungen in der Bedienungsanleitung des Entwerter ED600.

Fehlercode P80
Ursache **Papiereinzug-Fehler**
Abhilfe Die Papiereinheit öffnen und schließen.

Fehlercode J18
Ursache **Ein Dokument wurde schräg eingezogen.**
Abhilfe Bitte entfernen Sie das schräg eingezogene Dokument. Dann scannen Sie es noch einmal, nachdem sichergestellt ist, daß das Bild auf dem Dokument, bei dem der Fehler aufgetreten ist, richtig gescannt wurde.

Kapitel 5

Reinigung

Dieses Kapitel beschreibt die regelmäßige
Reinigung des Scanners.

5.1 Regelmäßige Reinigung..... 82

5.1

Regelmäßige Reinigung

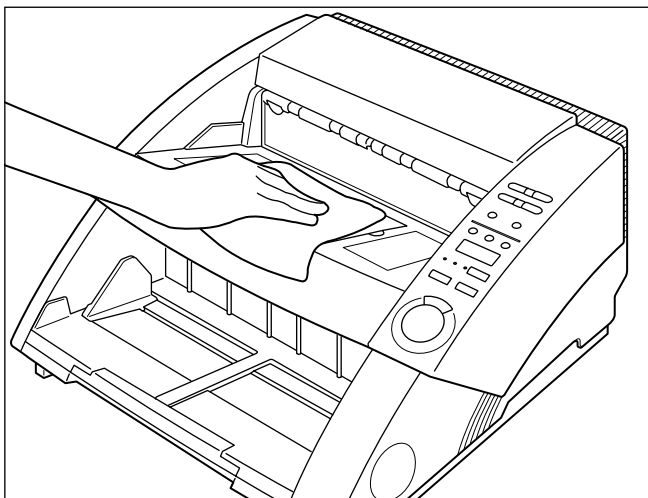
Zur Gewährleistung gleichbleibend hoher Scannqualität sollte der DR-5020/5080C regelmäßig, wie nachfolgend beschrieben, gereinigt werden.



- Den Scanner und Computer vor dem Säubern ausschalten und das Netzkabel aus der Steckdose ziehen. Eine Mißachtung kann zu elektrischen Schlägen führen.
- Zum Säubern des Scanners niemals organische Lösungen wie zum Beispiel Alkohol, Benzol oder Farbverdünner verwenden. Neben der Gefahr von Bränden und elektrischen Schlägen kann sich hierdurch auch das Gehäuse verformen oder verfärben.
- Mildes Reinigungsmittel oder Wasser niemals direkt auf die Scannergläser sprühen. Die Flüssigkeit könnte hierbei unter das Glas dringen und die Lichtquelle und Optik des Geräts verschmutzen.

Reinigen des Scanners

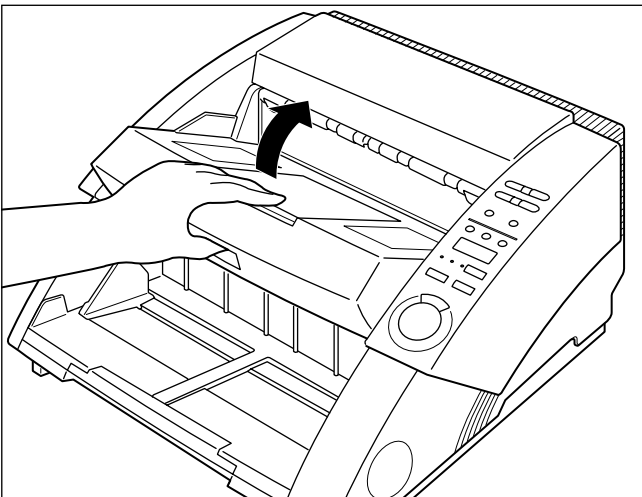
Den Scanner mit einem gut ausgewrungenem und leicht mit mildem Reinigungsmittel oder Wasser angefeuchteten Tuch abwischen. Anschließend mit einem sauberen, trockenen Tuch nachwischen.



Reinigung der Scannergläser und Walzen

Schmutz auf Scannergläsern und Walzen ist die häufigste Ursache von Streifen auf gescannten Dokumenten. Scannergläser und Walzen sollten deshalb regelmäßig gereinigt werden.

- 1 Den Scanner durch Drücken des Netzschalters ausschalten (AUS) und das Netzkabel aus der Steckdose ziehen.**
- 2 Den Dokumentenaufhang Fach oder die Dokumentenauslaufablage am Dokumentenauslauffach falls vorhanden, entfernen. Die Dokumentenauslauffach-Verlängerung einklappen, falls diese ausgeklappt ist.**
- 3 Die obere Feedereinheit öffnen.**
Die Öffnen/Schließen-Taste drücken und die obere Feedereinheit vorsichtig bis zum Anschlag hochklappen, bis sie in dieser Stellung einrastet.

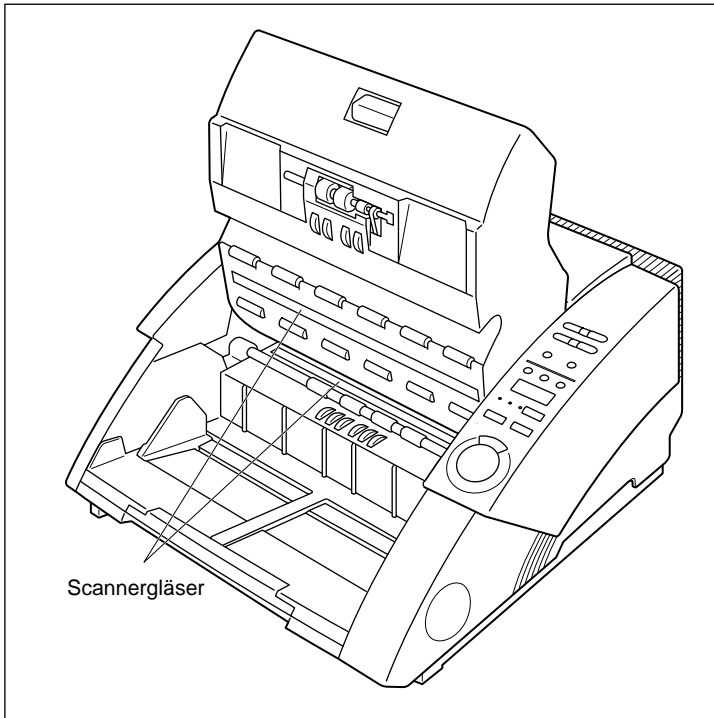


4 Die Scannergläser mit einem weichen, trockenen Tuch abwischen.

Darauf achten, beide Gläser, das heißt, sowohl das obere als auch das untere Glas, zu säubern.

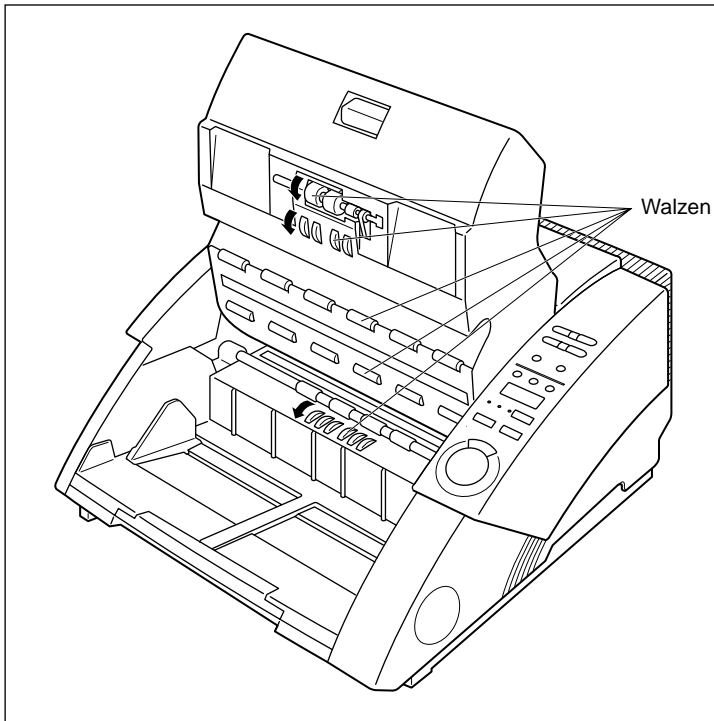


Mildes Reinigungsmittel oder Wasser niemals direkt auf die Scannergläser sprühen. Die Flüssigkeit könnte hierbei unter das Glas dringen und die Lichtquelle und Optik des Geräts verschmutzen.

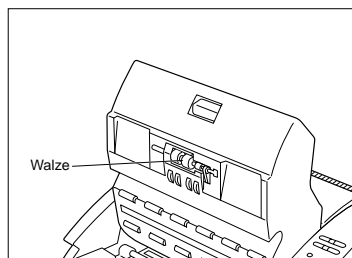


5 Die Walzen mit einem feuchten, gut ausgewrungenem und leicht mit mildem Reinigungsmittel oder Wasser angefeuchteten Tuch abwischen.

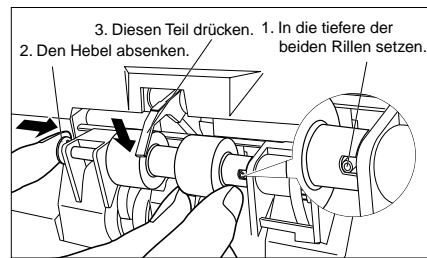
Die Walzen befinden sich an den in der folgenden Abbildung gezeigten Stellen. Die Walzen beim Abwischen in die durch Pfeile angezeigte Richtung drehen.



TIP



A



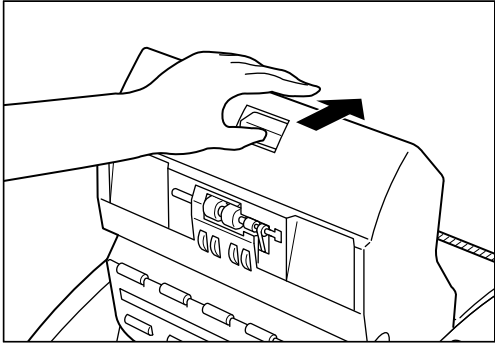
B

- Wenn eine Walze locker wird (Abb. A) erneut anbringen, wie in der Abbildung B gezeigt.
- Vor dem Rückstellen des oberen Geräteteils in Ausgangsposition immer den Hebel am unteren Geräteteil absenken (Abb. B). Wenn das Dokument mit dem Hebel in Oben-Stellung gescannt wird, tritt ein Papiereinzugfehler auf.

6 Anschließend mit einem sauberen, trockenen Tuch trockenwischen.

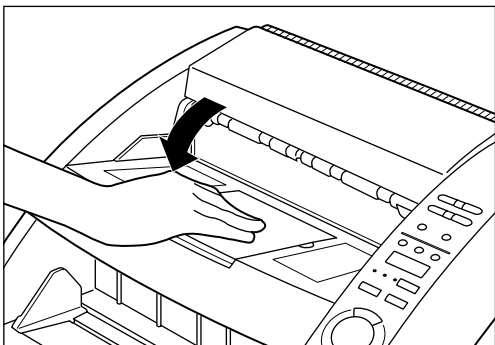
7 Die obere Feedereinheit zum Schließen so weit wie möglich nach hinten klappen und freigeben.

Die obere Feedereinheit senkt sich nach dem Freigeben langsam herab und darf in diesem Stadium nicht gewaltsam heruntergedrückt werden. Eine Mißachtung kann zur Beschädigung des Scanners führen.



8 Wenn sich die obere Feedereinheit bis in die tiefste Stellung herabgesenkt hat, fest beide Seiten zum Schließen andrücken.

Wenn die Feedereinheit nur an einer Seite andrückt, wird die andere Seite nicht richtig geschlossen. Sicherstellen, daß sie hörbar einrastet.



Falls Papierstaus oder Doppeleinzüge (gleichzeitiger Einzug von zwei oder mehr Blättern eines Dokuments) trotz regelmäßiger Reinigung der Walzen auftreten, ist Walzenreibung die wahrscheinliche Ursache. In diesem Fall müssen die Walzen ausgetauscht werden. Wenden Sie sich hierzu bitte an den Fachhandel, bei dem Sie den Scanner gekauft haben, oder an die Canon-Kundendienstabteilung.

Netzkabel

Wenn das Netzkabel längere Zeit an die Steckdose angeschlossen bleibt, sammelt sich Staub an der Stecker-Anschlußfläche, der Brände und elektrische Schläge verursachen kann. Es empfiehlt sich deshalb, den Netzstecker regelmäßig zu säubern.

Imprinter

Bei Verwendung des Imprinters kann Schmutz an gescannten Dokumenten haften. Dies liegt daran, daß Tinte an den Löchern an der Führungsplatte im Imprinter festsetzt. Diese Löcher mit einem Wattestäbchen reinigen.

Anhang

◆ DR-5020/5080C Scanmodus-Tabellen

Fehlermeldungen werden manchmal gezeigt, weil bestimmte Scanmodi vom Scanner aufgrund von Speicherbeschränkungen nicht unterstützt werden. In diesen Fall zusätzlichen Speicher (nur DR-5080C) entsprechend der untenstehenden Tabelle hinzufügen.



ANMERKUNG

- Scannen ist nicht möglich, wenn die Dokumentenbreite 216 mm im Duplex-Modus bei einer Auflösung von 400 x 400 dpi überschreitet.
- Nicht alle Modi sind unterstützt, je nach Applikation und verwendetem Scanner-Treiber. Einzelheiten siehe Bedienungsanleitung für Applikation und Scanner-Treiber.

64 MB Speicher für DR-5080C (Standard) O: Unterstützt X: Nicht unterstützt

Scanmodus		Auflösung (H x V)	Duplex						Simplex							
			A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR	A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR		
2-Bit	Textmodus (Schwarzweiß)	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	Fotomodus (Schwarzweiß ED)	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Grauskalierung	4-Bit	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	16-Bit	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	256-Bit	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Farbe	3-Bit	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	6-Bit	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	12-Bit	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	24-Bit	400 X 400	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	O	O	O
		300 X 300	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
240 X 240		X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
200 X 200		O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	

128 MB Speicher für DR-5080C (Option) O: Unterstützt X: Nicht unterstützt

Scannmodus		Auflösung (H x V)	Duplex					Simplex								
			A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR	A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR		
2-Bit	Textmodus (Schwarzweiß)	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
	Fotomodus (Schwarzweiß ED)	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
	Grauskalierung	4-Bit	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
			300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
300 X 150			O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
240 X 240			O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
200 X 200			O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
16-Bit		400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
256-Bit		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
Farbe		3-Bit	200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
			400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	300 X 300		O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
	300 X 150		O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
	240 X 240		O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
	6-Bit	200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
	12-Bit	200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
	24-Bit	200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	

DEUTSCH

DR-5020 O: Unterstützt X: Nicht unterstützt

Scannmodus		Auflösung (H x V)	Duplex					Simplex							
			A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR	A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR	
2-Bit	Textmodus (Schwarzweiß)	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	Fotomodus (Schwarzweiß ED)	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O

Technische Daten des DR-5020/5080C

	DR-5020	DR-5080C
Typ	Tischscanner	
Dokumentengröße	Breite: 55 bis 295 mm* Länge: 70 bis 432 mm Stärke: 0,06 bis 0,15 mm (automatische Zuführung) 0,06 bis 0,2 mm (manuelle Zuführung) *Die maximale Dokumenteneinzugbreite ist 297 mm.	
Automatischer Einzug	Maximale Stapelhöhe: 45 mm (bis zu A4) 20 mm (-A3)	
Dokumenteneinzug	Semi-Auto/automatisch/manuell	
Scannmethode	Kontaktbildsensor (CMOS)	
Lichtquelle	Grüner einzeiliger LED-Sensor	3-Farb (RGB) einzeiliger LED-Sensor
Scannmodus	Oberseite/Duplex/Simplex 2-Bit Text/Foto-Modus	Oberseite/Duplex/Simplex 2-Bit Text/Foto-Modus Grauskalierung 4/16/256-Bit Farbe 3/6/12/24-Bit
Scannauflösung (primäre Scannrichtung x sekundäre Scannrichtung)	200 x 100 dpi - Simplex/Duplex - Text/Foto-Modus 300 x 150 dpi - Simplex/Duplex - Text/Foto-Modus 200 x 200 dpi - Simplex/Duplex - Text/Foto-Modus 240 x 240 dpi - Simplex/Duplex - Text/Foto-Modus 300 x 300 dpi - Simplex/Duplex - Text/Foto-Modus 400 x 400 dpi - Simplex/Duplex - Text/Foto-Modus Skalierbar von 200 bis 300 dpi in 10-dpi-Stufen	
Scanngeschwindigkeit (max)	<A4, Hochformat, binär ohne AE> 79 S/Min. (200 x 100 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) 59 S/Min. (300 x 150 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) 50 S/Min. (200 x 200 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) 32 S/Min. (300 x 300 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) 18 S/Min. (400 x 400 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) <A3, binär ohne AE> 58 S/Min. (200 x 100 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) 42 S/Min. (300 x 150 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) 33 S/Min. (200 x 200 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) 22 S/Min. (300 x 300 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) 13 S/Min. (400 x 400 dpi - Simplex/Duplex)	
Automatische Feederkapazität	A4 oder kleiner: Max. 500 Blatt (80 g/m ²) Größer als A4: Max. 200 Blatt (80 g/m ²)	
Andere Funktionen	Automatische Papierformaterkennung, Belichtungsautomatik, automatische Papierstärkeneinstellung, Dokumenten-Blattzählfunktion, Papierstärke und Doppelblatterkennung, Schräglagenkorrektur, Farbausblendung, Erkennung von Scanner-Steuerblättern usw.	
Abmessungen	262 x 427 x 485 mm (BxHxT)	

Gewicht	Ca. 20 kg
Stromquelle	220-240 V AC (50/60 Hz) 0,6 A (max)
Leistungsaufnahme	Max. 120 W
Betriebsgeräusch	Weniger als 70 dB
Betriebsumgebung	Temperatur: 10°C bis 32,5°C Relative Luftfeuchtigkeit: 20% bis 80% (bei verwendetem Imprinter 30% bis 80%)

Änderungen bei technischen Daten und Design bleiben ohne Vorankündigung vorbehalten.

Optionen

Name	Funktion
Zusatzspeicher (128 MB) (nur für DR-5080C)	Ersetzen des Standardspeichers von 64 MB erlaubt präzisere Scannbedingungen. * * Einzelheiten zu den Scannbedingungen (Kombinationen von Scan-Modus, Auflösung und Papierformat), die durch Zusatzspeicher ermöglicht werden, siehe Anhang DR-5020/5080C Scannmodus-Tabellen (S. 88)
Imprinter	Druckt Zeichen wie Zahlen, Buchstaben und Symbole nach dem Scannen auf die Vorderseite des Dokuments auf.
Barcode-Decoder	Zum Lesen und Erkennen von Barcodes auf dem Dokument.
Entwerter	Stempelt eine 8 stellige Zahl (z.B. Datum) und einen anwenderspezifischen Text (via Textklischee) nach dem Scannen auf die Rückseite des Dokuments auf.

Einzelheiten über jede Option erfahren Sie bei Ihrem Fachhändler.

Stichwortverzeichnis

- A -

Abschlußstecker-einstellung	25, 68
Anschlag	15, 29
Anschluß an einen Computer	24
Anschluß des Netzkabels	26
Anschluß des SCSI-Kabels	24
Anwendermodus	64
Aufstellungsort	8
Auspacken	14
Auto-Modus	46

- B -

Barcode	64
Barcode-Decoder	92
Bedienfeld	17, 60
Belüftungsschlitze	16
Beseitigung von Papierstaus	70

- D -

DIP-Schalter	16, 25
Dokumente	36
Dokumentenerkennung	64
Dokumentenauslaufablage	20, 30
Dokumentenauslauffach	15
Dokumentenauslauffach- Verlängerung	15, 29
Dokumentenfach	15
Dokumentenfach- verlängerung	15, 27
Dokumentenführungsschilder	20, 32
Dokumentenführung	15
Doppelblatterkennung	63

- E -

Ein-/Ausschalten der Netzversorgung (EIN/AUS)	33
Einstellen von SCSI-ID und Abschlußschalter	25
Einstellung der Funktionstasten	60
Einstellung der Scannbedingungen ...	58
Einstellung im Anwendermodus	64
Entwerter	67, 78, 79, 92

- F -

Fehlercode	78
Fehlersuche	67
Fester Stärkenmodus	60, 62
Funktionsblätter	55
Funktionstasten	17, 60
Funktionstastenschilder	20

- G -

Gespeicherte Einstellungen wiederherstellen	63
Grundeinstellungen	59

- H -

Helligkeitstaste	18, 59
Herausnehmbares Fach	20, 31

- I -

Imprinter	60, 62, 64, 78, 79, 87, 92
-----------------	----------------------------

- J -

Jobtrennblatt	56
---------------------	----

- M -

Manuelle Stärkeneinstellung	61
Manueller Modus	50
Moduswahltaste	18, 59

- N -

Netzkabel	14, 26
Netzkabelbuchse	16
Netzschalter	15
Neue Datei-Taste	19, 59
Nur-Zählen-Modus	53, 64
Nur-Zählen-Taste	17, 19, 53, 59

- O -

Obere Feedereinheit	15
Öffnen/schließen-Taste	15
Optionen	92

- P -

Papiereinzugseinstellung	32
Papierreinzugseinstellhebel	15, 32
Papierstau	70
- in der Papierauslaufsektion	73
- in der Papiereinzugseinheit	70

- R -

Regelmäßige Reinigung	82
Regelmäßige Wartung	6
Reinigung	82
- Scanner	82
- Scannergläser und Walzen	83

- S -

Scanner-Steuerungsblätter	56
Scannmodus-Tabellen	88
Scannverfahren	39
Schräglagenkorrektur	64
SCSI ID	25, 68
SCSI-Buchsen	16, 24
SCSI-Synchronisation	64
Semi-Auto-Modus	43
Sensor	47
Simplex/Duplex-Taste	17, 59
Starttaste	19
Stoptaste	19
Systemanforderungen	22

- T -

Technische Daten	90
Teilennamen	15
- Frontansicht	15
- Rückansicht	16
Tragen des Scanners	9, 23

- V -

Verlängerungsdraht	15, 27
Vorsichtsmaßnahmen zur Sicherheit ...	6

- W -

Wenn das gescannte Bild nicht normal ist	77, 83
Wenn der Scanner nicht erkannt wird	68

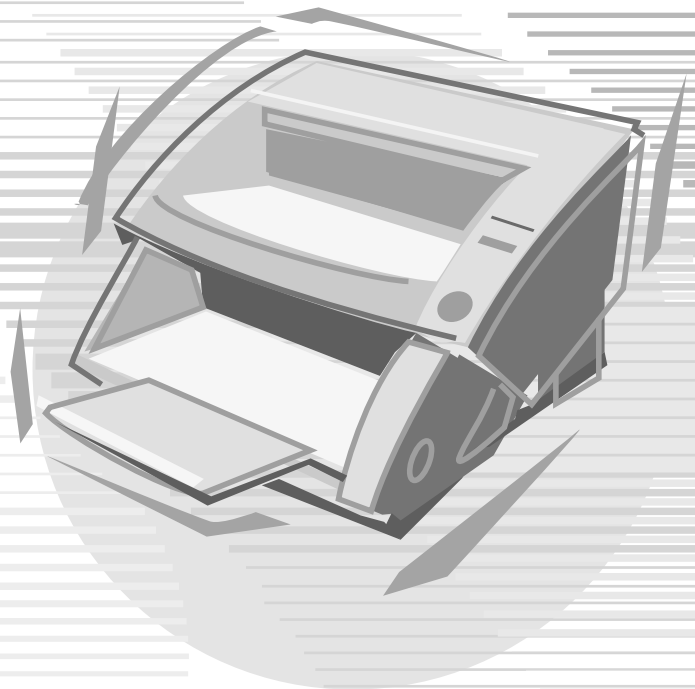
- Z -

Zählen der Anzahl von Originalen in einem Dokument	53
Zähleranzeige	18
Zuführoption-Taste	18, 39, 59
Zusatzspeicher	92

DR-5020/5080C

Instrucciones

Antes de utilizar esta unidad, cerciórese de leer detenidamente este manual, y después guárdelo en un lugar seguro.



AVISO

- ① Copyright© 1999 por CANON ELECTRONICS INC. Reservados todos los derechos. Ninguna de esta parte de esta publicación deberá reproducir, transmitir, transmitir, ni almacenarse en un sistema de recuperación, ni traducirse a ningún idioma ni lenguaje de PC de ninguna forma y con ningún medio, electrónico, mecánico, magnético, óptico, químico, manual, ni ningún otro, sin el previo permiso de CANON ELECTRONICS INC.
- ② El contenido de este manual está sujeto a cambios sin previo aviso.
- ③ Se han hecho todos los esfuerzos posibles para asegurar la precisión de la información presentada en este manual. Sin embargo, Canon Electronics Inc. Y las subsidiarias de la contraportada no se harán responsables por ningún error ni sus consecuencias.
- ④ No nos haremos responsables por ningún daño resultante de cualquier operación, a pesar del punto ③.

Marcas comerciales y registradas

- Microsoft Windows® y Microsoft Windows NT® son marcas registradas de Microsoft Corporation en EE.UU. y en otros países.
- ISIS® es una marca registrada de Pixel Translation A Division of ActionPoint Inc.
- Los nombres de los productos mencionados aquí son para fines de identificación solamente y pueden ser marcas comerciales y/o registradas de sus respectivas compañías.

INTRODUCCIÓN

Muchas gracias por la adquisición del escáner de documentos Canon DR-5020/5080C.

En total, con el DR-5020/5080C se suministran tres manuales: Instrucciones del DR-5020/5080C (este manual), Instrucciones de la Scanning Utility 5000, e Instrucciones del Controlador ISIS/TWAIN.

Este manual describe el manejo de escáner, por ejemplo, el modo de conectar el escáner, cargar papel y retirar el papel atascado. También describe precauciones a seguir durante el manejo del escáner. Para entender completamente la funciones de este escáner y asegurarse de poder utilizar de forma efectiva sus funciones, asegúrese de leer este manual (Instrucciones del DR-5020/5080C), y las Instrucciones de la Scanning Utility 5000 e Instrucciones del controlador ISIS/TWAIN por separado. Como la aplicación de escáner empaquetada con el DR-5020/5080C utiliza un controlador de escáner exclusivo, no necesita el uso de controladores de escáner, tales como el controlador ISIS o TWAIN.

Cuando haya leído este manual, asegúrese de guardarlo en un lugar seguro.

A continuación se describe el contenido de cada uno de estos manuales.

Instrucciones para el DR-5020/5080C (este manual)

Este manual describe el modo de conectar el escáner, cargar documentos, retirar el papel atascado y otra información sobre el manejo del escáner. Lea esta manual antes de utilizar el DR-5020/5080C.

Instrucciones para la Scanning Utility 5000

Este manual describe el modo de utilizar la aplicación de escáner “Scanning Utility 5000” provista con el escáner.

Instrucciones para el Controlador ISIS/TWAIN

Este manual describe operaciones para cuando el escáner es utilizado con una utilidad compatible con el controlador ISIS o controlador TWAIN.

■ Precaución

Tenga en cuenta lo siguiente cuando utilice el escáner para hacer copias:

- Es ilegal reproducir dinero, billetes, valores negociables y demás documentos prohibidos y puede estar sujeta a penalización judicial.
- También es ilegal reproducir certificados legales, billetes de viaje, documentos con derecho de autor y privados y otros ítems, y puede estar sujeta penalización judicial.
- Cuando vaya a utilizar una imagen copiada con cualquier otro fin que no sea para uso estrictamente personal o dentro de los confines de su propio hogar deberá obtener el permiso del propietario de los derechos de autor.

CONVENCIONALISMOS

Este manual utiliza los siguientes símbolos e indicaciones. Antes de empezar a leer este manual, lea lo siguiente y familiarícese con sus significados.



Lea atentamente para evitar la muerte o heridas graves.



Lea atentamente para evitar daños al equipo o la pérdida de valiosos datos.



Los memorándums indican el lugar donde podrá encontrar información útil en este manual. Un número entre paréntesis indica un número de página que contiene más información sobre la frase o párrafo previo.



Observaciones sobre operaciones y cómo evitar pequeñas dificultades.

■ Esta unidad

En este manual se hace referencia al DR-5020 y al DR-5080C conjuntamente como el «escáner». Si se requiere una información individual para cada tipo de máquina, este manual hace referencia al escáner específicamente mediante DR-5020 y DR-5080C.

ÍNDICE

INTRODUCCIÓN	1
CONVENCIONALISMOS	2
Precauciones de seguridad	6
Capítulo 1 Acerca del DR-5020/5080C	11
1.1 Características del DR-5020/5080C	12
1.2 Embalaje: ¿Qué hay en la caja de cartón?	14
1.3 Nombres de las partes	15
◆ Vista frontal	15
◆ Vista posterior	16
◆ Panel de operación	17
◆ Bandeja de quita y pon	20
◆ Placa de apoyo para documentos de salida	20
◆ Etiquetas para las teclas de función	20
Capítulo 2 Preparativos antes de utilizar el equipo	21
2.1 Requisitos del sistema	22
2.2 Instalación y conexión	23
Transporte	23
Conexión a un ordenador	24
◆ Conexión del cable SCSI	24
◆ Ajuste del identificador SCSI y terminador	25
Conexión del cable de alimentación	26
◆ Conexión del cable de alimentación	26
2.3 Preparación para alimentación y salida del papel	27
Preparación de la extensión de la bandeja de documentos y la extensión de la bandeja de salida de documentos	27
◆ Extensión de la bandeja de documentos	27
◆ Extensión de la bandeja de salida de documentos	29
◆ Placa de apoyo para documentos de salida	30
◆ Bandeja de quita y pon	31
Ajuste de la alimentación de papel	32
Fijación de las etiquetas para la guía de documentos	32
2.4 Conexión/desconexión de la alimentación	33
Conexión de la alimentación	33
Desconexión de la alimentación	34

Capítulo 3 Preparación de documentos 35

3.1	Acerca de los documentos	36
3.2	Carga y exploración de documentos	38
	Procedimiento de exploración	39
	◆ Modo Remote	40
	◆ Modo Semi-Auto	43
	◆ Modo Auto	46
	◆ Modo Manual	50
	Para contar el número de originales de un documento	53
	Hojas de función	55
3.3	Fijación de las condiciones de exploración	58
	Configuración básica	59
	Configuración de las teclas de función	60
	◆ Ajuste manual del grosor	61
	◆ Activación/desactivación del impresor	62
	◆ Activación/desactivación del modo del grosor fijado	62
	◆ Activación/desactivación de detección de doble alimentación	63
	◆ Activación/desactivación de la restauración de ajustes memorizados	63
	Configuración del modo Usuario	64
	◆ Cómo ajustar el modo Usuario	65

Capítulo 4 Solución de problemas 67

4.1	Cuando el escáner no sea reconocido	68
4.2	Para retirar el papel atascado	70
	Atasco de papel en la unidad de alimentación de papel	70
	Atasco de papel en la sección de salida del papel	73
4.3	Problemas en la alimentación de papel	75
4.4	Cuando la imagen explorada no sea normal	77
4.5	Cuando se visualice un código de error	78

Capítulo 5 Limpieza diaria 81

5.1	Limpieza diaria	82
	Limpieza de la unidad principal	82
	Limpieza de los vidrios y rodillos de exploración	83
	Cable de alimentación	87
	Impresor	87

Apéndice	88
◆ Tablas de modo de exploración del DR-5020/5080C	88
Especificaciones del DR-5020/5080C	90
Opciones	92
Índice alfabético	93

Precauciones de seguridad

Mantenimiento diario

Cuando esté trabajando alrededor del equipo, siga las precauciones siguientes para evitar el riesgo de ocasionar un incendio o descarga eléctrica:



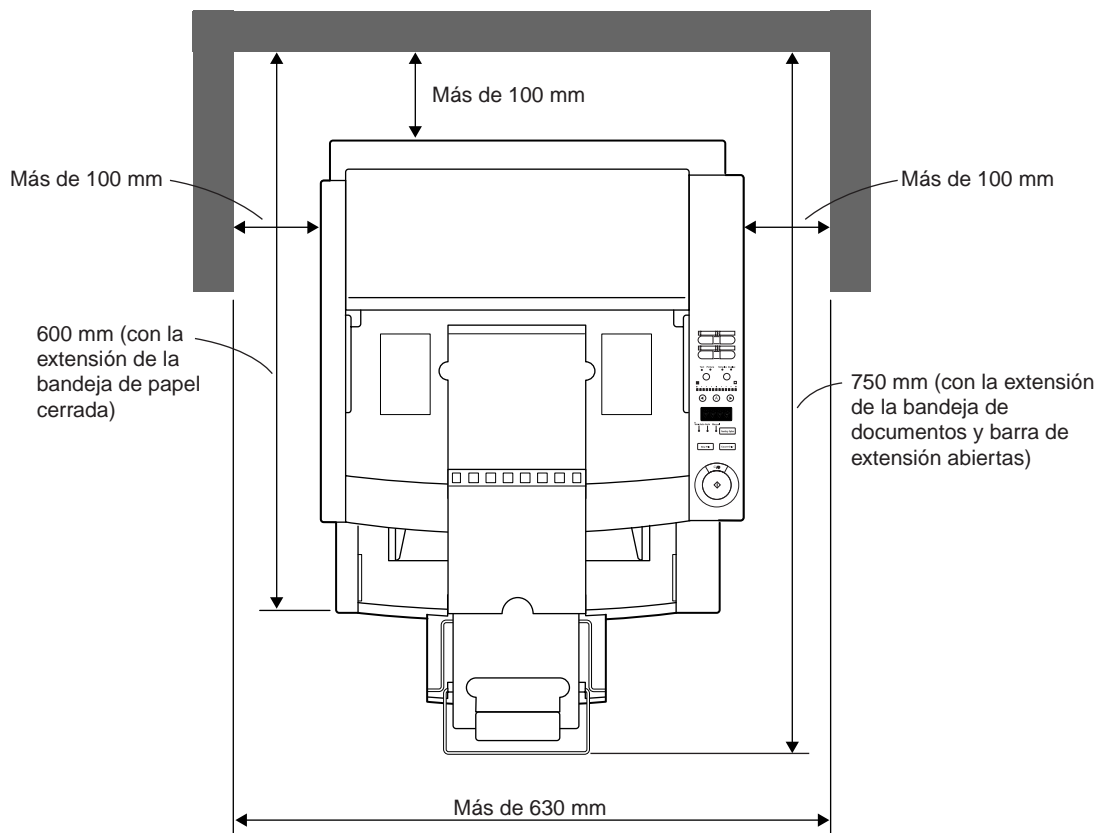
- No instale y utilice nunca el equipo cerca de sustancias inflamables tales como alcohol, diluyente de pintura, ni ningún otro tipo de sustancias volátiles.
- No dañe ni modifique nunca el cable de alimentación, ni tampoco ponga objetos pesados encima del mismo.
- Asegúrese siempre de que sus manos están secas cuando maneje el cable o la clavija de alimentación. No coja nunca la clavija de alimentación teniendo las manos mojadas.
- No enchufe nunca el equipo en una alargadera de múltiples enchufes.
- No recoja, enrolle ni ate nunca el cable de alimentación alrededor de sí mismo ni de otro objeto. Conecte el cable de alimentación firmemente a la toma de corriente.
- Utilice solamente el cable y clavija de alimentación suministrados con el escáner.
- No intente nunca desmontar ni modificar el equipo.
- No utilice nunca aerosoles inflamables cerca del equipo.
- Antes de limpiar el equipo, apáguelo y desconecte el cable de alimentación de la toma de corriente.
- Para limpiar el exterior del equipo, utilice un paño humedecido ligeramente con agua o detergente suave bien escurrido. No utilice nunca una solución volátil tal como alcohol, bencina o diluyente de pintura.
- Si oye un sonido extraño, detecta humo o calor anormal, siente vibración, o percibe un olor extraño alrededor del equipo, apáguelo inmediatamente y desconecte el cable de alimentación de la toma de corriente. Llame a personal de servicio inmediatamente.
- Maneje el equipo con cuidado. Evite los golpes y vibraciones al equipo a causa de un manejo imprudente. Si cree que el equipo se ha dañado accidentalmente, apáguelo inmediatamente, desconecte el cable de alimentación de la toma de corriente, y llame al personal de servicio.
- Siempre que vaya a mover el equipo, primero apáguelo y desconecte el cable de alimentación de la toma de corriente.



PRECAUCIÓN

- Para evitar dañar el equipo, no lo coloque nunca sobre una superficie inestable o con vibraciones.
El equipo podría volcarse o caerse, y ocasionarle heridas.
- Para evitar un recalentamiento y ocasionar un incendio, no bloquee nunca las aberturas de ventilación de la parte posterior del escáner.
- Mantenga todos los líquidos, ya sean refrescos o de cualquier otro tipo, y sujetapapeles, collares u otros objetos metálicos alejados del aparato. Si derrama accidentalmente líquido o deja caer un objeto metálico al interior del equipo, apáguelo, desconecte el cable de alimentación de la toma de corriente y llame inmediatamente al personal de servicio.
- No instale nunca la unidad en lugares húmedos ni polvorientos. De hacerlo, podrá ocasionar un incendio o descarga eléctrica.
- No ponga nunca objetos pesados encima del equipo. Tales objetos podrán volcarse o caerse y ocasionarle heridas.
- Cuando desenchufe el cable de alimentación, cójalo por la cabeza de la clavija. No intente nunca desenchufarlo tirando del propio cable. De hacerlo, podrá exponer o romper los hilos conductores, dañar el cable y ocasionar un incendio o descarga eléctrica.
- Mantenga el área alrededor del cable de alimentación libre de obstáculos de forma que pueda desconectarlo fácilmente en cualquier momento.
- No derrame nunca agua ni ningún tipo de solución volátil (alcohol, bencina, diluyente de pintura) al interior del equipo. De hacerlo, podrá ocasionar un incendio o descarga eléctrica.
- Cuando no vaya a utilizar el equipo durante un largo periodo de tiempo, desconecte el cable de alimentación de la toma de corriente.
- Evite utilizar ropas sueltas, joyas colgantes, corbatas largas, o incluso cabellos largos que puedan quedar enganchados en las partes móviles, especialmente en los rodillos que alimentan el equipo. Si tales objetos se enganchasen, desconecte inmediatamente el cable de alimentación de la toma de corriente para parar el equipo.
- Tenga mucho cuidado cuando se encuentre cargando un documento o retirando papel atascado. Podrá herirse inesperadamente. Por ejemplo, podrá cortarse los dedos con los bordes del papel.
- No abra la unidad superior mientras esté funcionando el escáner. De hacerlo podrá ocasionar un malfuncionamiento o sufrir heridas.
- No toque las patillas ni los contactos del conector del escáner con las manos. De hacerlo podrá ocasionar un malfuncionamiento.

Acerca del lugar de instalación



Para la operación, mantenimiento y ventilación, asegúrese de que haya espacio suficiente alrededor del escáner como se muestra en la ilustración de arriba. No coloque el equipo en los lugares siguientes. De hacerlo, podrá ocasionar un malfuncionamiento o problemas que afectarán adversamente al equipo o a su ordenador personal.

- Lugares expuestos a la luz solar directa
Si la instalación en tales lugares es inevitable, provea una cortina u objeto similar para dar sombra al equipo.
- Lugares expuestos al polvo o humos
El polvo y el humo del tabaco afectarán adversamente a los componentes del interior del equipo.
- Cerca de agua corriente, fuentes de calor, vapor de agua, o en áreas tales como un laboratorio expuesto a gas de amoníaco, diluyente de pintura, u otros productos químicos volátiles.
- Lugares expuestos a vibración y golpes fuertes
- Lugares expuestos a cambios rápidos de temperatura o humedad
La condensación en el interior del equipo podrá afectar a la calidad de la imagen impresa. Coloque el escáner en una habitación que satisfaga ampliamente las gamas siguientes:

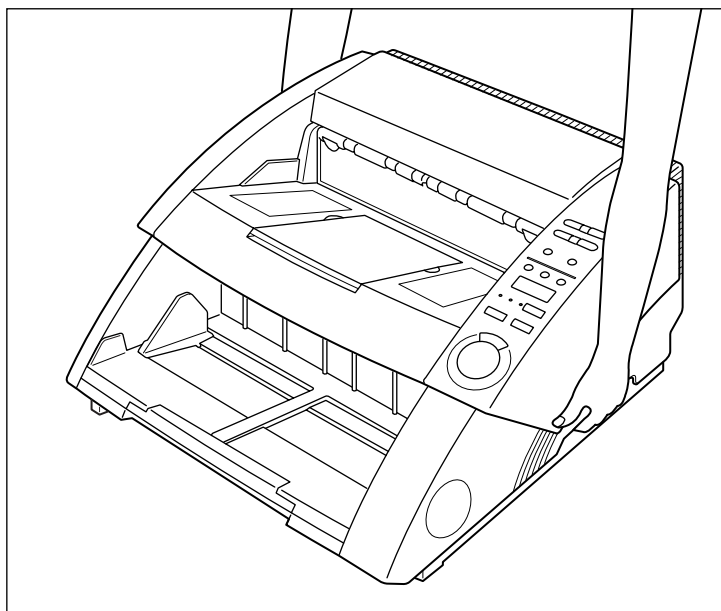
Temperatura ambiente	10°C a 32,5°C
Humedad relativa	20% a 80%
- Cerca de equipos electrónicos o equipo pesado que genere un campo magnético intenso tal como un altavoz, televisor o radio.

Acerca de la fuente de alimentación

- Asegúrese de conectar el equipo a una toma de corriente de 220-240 V CA (50/60 Hz)/120 V CA (60 Hz).
- Asegúrese de enchufar el escáner a una toma de corriente independiente. No enchufe el escáner en una toma compartida con otro equipo. Si utiliza un cable de extensión, preste atención al amperaje total del cable.
- Si no está seguro de cualquier cosa relacionada con el suministro de alimentación, póngase en contacto con el establecimiento donde compró el equipo o con la compañía eléctrica local.
- No coloque nunca objetos encima del cable de alimentación ni lo pise.
- No recoja nunca el cable de alimentación ni lo enrolle alrededor de un objeto tal como la pata de una mesa.
- No tire del cable de alimentación. Cuando lo desenchufe, cójalo por la cabeza de la clavija de alimentación.
- Mantenga el área alrededor de la toma de corriente libre de obstáculos.

Transporte

Cuando mueva el DR-5020/5080C, cójalo firmemente con ambas manos como se muestra en la figura de abajo y llévelo con cuidado. Si lo mueve sin cogerlo por sus asideros, podrá caérsele, pillarse los dedos y sufrir heridas inesperadas. Su peso es de aproximadamente 20 kg.



AVISO

Antes de mover el escáner, apáguelo siempre y desconecte el cable de alimentación de la toma de corriente. Además, desconecte el cable SCSI del conector. Si mueve el escáner estando todavía encendido o con el cable SCSI todavía conectado podrá ocasionar una descarga eléctrica.

Capítulo 1

Acerca del DR-5020/5080C

Este capítulo describe las características del escáner, lo que hay en la caja de cartón, y los nombres y funciones de las partes del escáner.

1.1 Características del DR-5020/5080C..	12
1.2 Embalaje:	
¿Qué hay en la caja de cartón?	14
1.3 Nombres de las partes	15



Características del DR-5020/5080C

Los DR-5020/5080C son escáner versátiles para documentos de imágenes con un gran rendimiento a altas velocidades de exploración. Ambas unidades ofrecen una excelente calidad de imagen en blanco y negro.

El DR-5080C también incluye funciones para exploración en color y en la escala de grises.

He aquí un resumen de las extraordinarias características de ambos escáner.

● Exploración a gran velocidad

Se puede explorar a gran velocidad desde documentos pequeños tales como tarjetas de visita y del tamaño de un cheque hasta documentos de tamaño A3. La velocidad máxima de exploración es de 50 hojas por minuto (tamaño retrato A4 en el modo simplex y dúplex, 200 ppp de resolución) cuando se exploran documentos de tamaño A4 en el modo simplex.

● Alimentación de papel fiable y de gran capacidad

- Se pueden cargar de una vez documentos de hasta 500 hojas de tamaño A4.
- Se pueden explorar documentos de una amplia gama de tamaños y grosores. La alimentación de papel es de gran fiabilidad. La desviación del documento se alinea según éste pasa a través del escáner. El escáner maneja de forma precisa documentos de diferentes tamaños y grosores.

● Fácil de utilizar

Los documentos se cargan y salen por la parte delantera de la unidad. Esto significa que el espacio necesario para la instalación es reducido. Los ajustes y operaciones, incluida la selección de modo Text/Picture, selección Simplex/Duplex, ajuste del brillo, etc. pueden realizarse en el panel de control o bien en la aplicación.

● Detección de desviación

Esta función detecta automáticamente si el documento se carga en ángulo, y endereza los documentos desviados.

● Gran duración

El equipo ofrece una vida de servicio de hasta 6 millones de exploraciones.

● Tamaño compacto

262 x 427 x 485 mm (Al x An x Prf)

- **Imágenes en color sencillo o blanco y negro de la escala de grises (DR-5080C)**

Además de imágenes en blanco y negro de 2 bits, esta unidad soporta varios modos de imagen: escala de grises (4, 16, 256 niveles) y color (3, 6, 12, 24 bits). Dependiendo del modo de exploración, haya que añadir memoria opcional. Además, dependiendo de la aplicación y del controlador de escáner utilizados, podrán no soportarse todos los modos. Para más detalles, lea atentamente el manual de instrucciones de la aplicación y del controlador de escáner utilizados.

- **Omisión de color (DR-5080C)**

Esta función activa la exploración con omisión (es decir, “suprime”) un color específico en el documento.

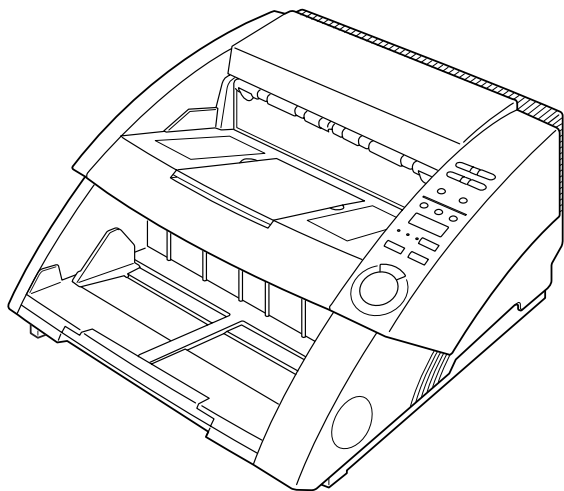
- **Varias opciones**

La amplia gama de opciones incluye el impresor para imprimir caracteres en el documento que se está explorando, codificador de código de barras para leer códigos de barras en los documentos, y el sello para imprimir números y caracteres en el documento después de la exploración.

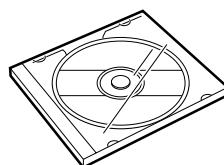
1.2

Embalaje: ¿Qué hay en la caja de cartón?

Asegúrese de que no falte nada. Confirme cada elemento que saque de la caja. Si faltase algo, póngase en contacto con el establecimiento donde haya adquirido el equipo.



DR-5020/5080C



CD-ROM de instalación

(Scanning Utility 5000 y
Controlador ISIS/TWAIN)

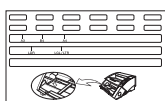


Instrucciones

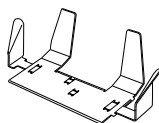
(Instrucciones para el DR-5020/5080C
Instrucciones para la Scanning Utility 5000
Instrucciones para el controlador ISIS/TWAIN)



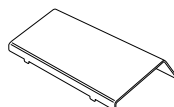
Hojas de función



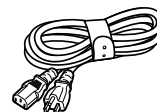
**Etiquetas para las
teclas de función**



**Bandeja de quita
y pon**



**Placa de apoyo
para documentos
de salida**



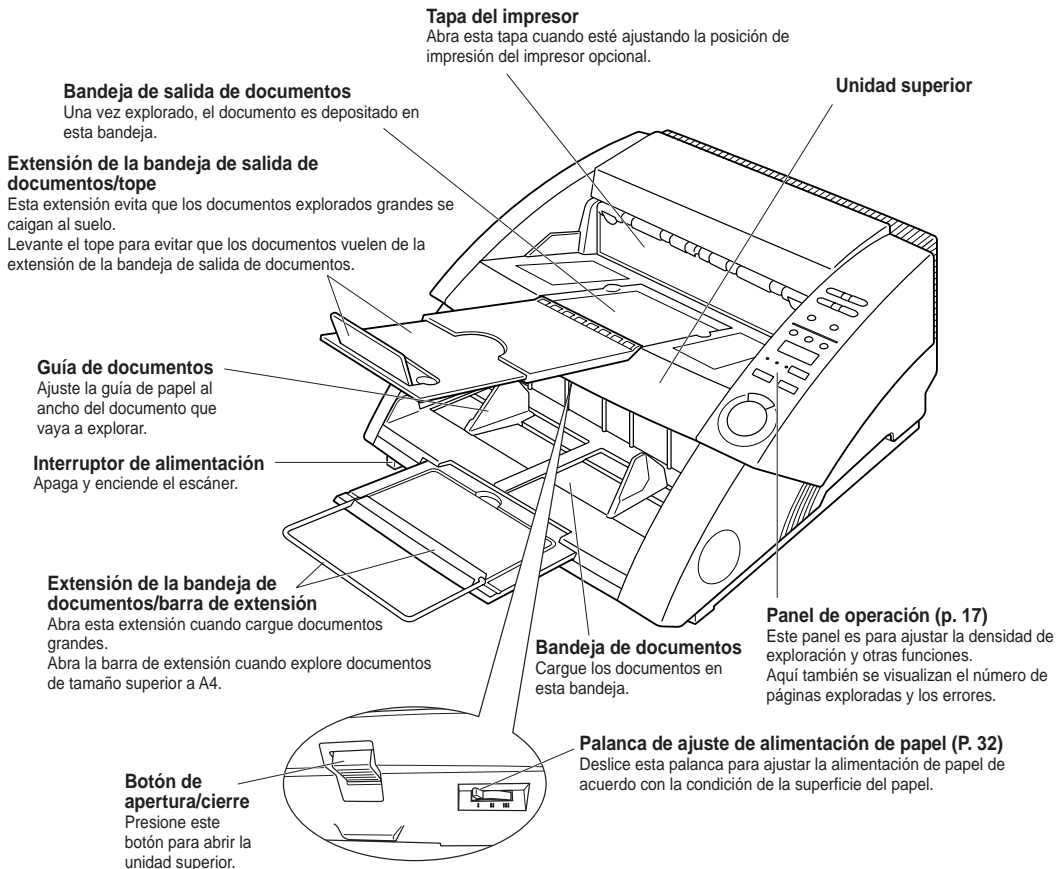
**Cable de
alimentación*1**

*1 El cable de alimentación variará en función del país donde se adquiera el equipo.

1.3 Nombres de las partes

Esta sección describe los nombres y funciones de cada parte. Antes de conectar el DR-5020/5080C, tómese unos minutos para familiarizarse con las partes principales.

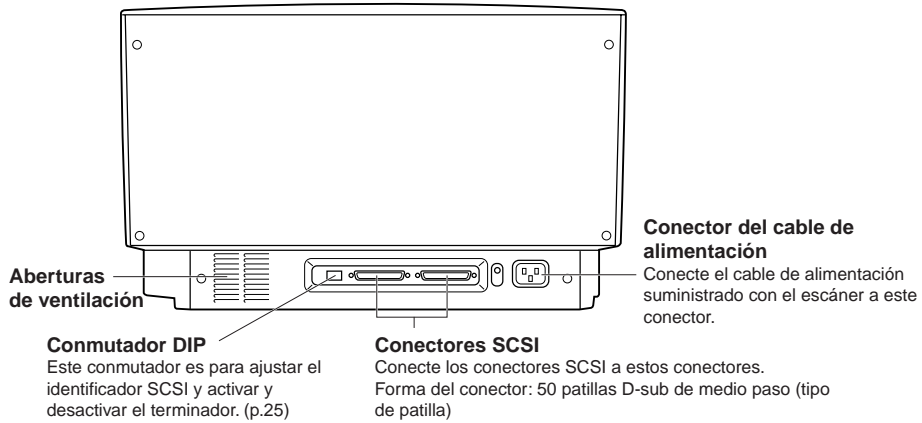
◆ Vista frontal



PRECAUCIÓN

La tapa del impresor no se abre si no está instalado el impresor opcional. No ejerza fuerza innecesaria para abrir la tapa del impresor.

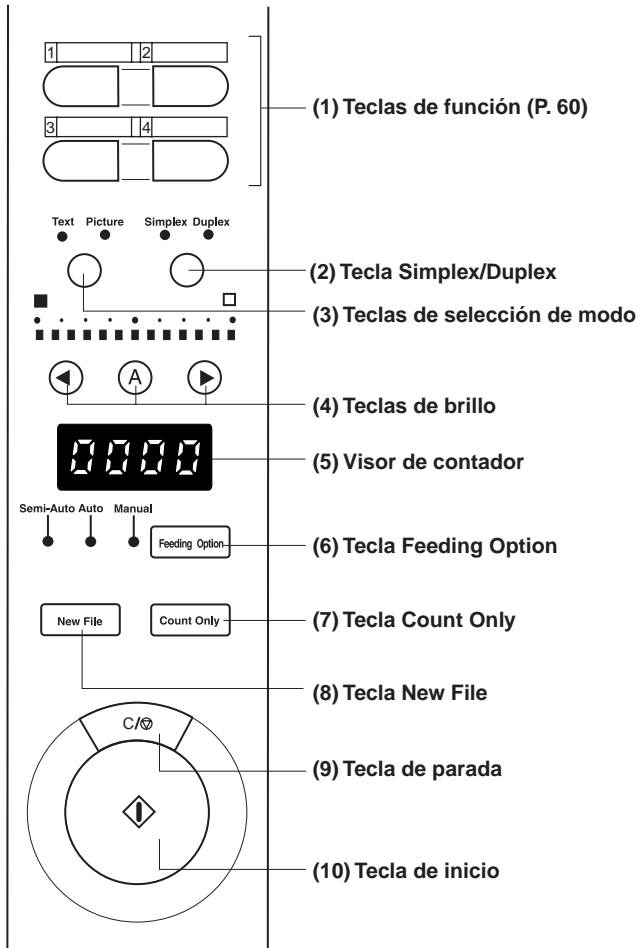
◆ Vista posterior



PRECAUCIÓN

Para evitar un recalentamiento y ocasionar un incendio, no bloquee nunca las aberturas de ventilación de la parte posterior del escáner.

◆ Panel de operación



(1) Teclas de función (P. 60)

A estas teclas se les puede asignar las funciones usadas con frecuencia, para posteriormente poder usar tales funciones presionando una sola tecla.

(2) Tecla Simplex/Duplex

Seleccione si quiere explorar sólo una cara del documento o bien ambas caras.

Simplex: Enciéndala para explorar sólo una cara del documento.

Duplex: Enciéndala para explorar ambas caras del documento.

(3) Teclas de selección de modo

Seleccione el modo de exploración del documento. (“Black and White/Black and White error diffusion”)

Text: Se enciende cuando se exploran documentos de texto (incluyendo caracteres en su mayoría) en el modo blanco y negro.

Picture: Se enciende cuando se exploran documentos de imágenes, incluidas fotografías, en el modo de difusión de error blanco y negro.

Si la selección de imagen en cualquiera que sea la aplicación está ajustada en el modo de escala de grises o modo de color, no se encenderá ninguna de las indicaciones de arriba.

(4) Teclas de brillo

Ajuste el brillo cuando explore el documento.

Para ajustar automáticamente el brillo, presione la tecla $\text{\textcircled{A}}$ para que se encienda $\text{\textcircled{A}}.$ (*)

Para ajustar manualmente el brillo, presione la tecla $\text{\textcircled{L}}$ o $\text{\textcircled{R}}$ estando apagada la tecla $\text{\textcircled{A}}$, y mueva la indicación por encima de la tecla para ajustar el brillo. (Al mover el indicador hacia la derecha se aumenta el brillo, y al moverlo hacia la izquierda lo reduce. El brillo se puede ajustar en 13 pasos).

Si presiona la tecla $\text{\textcircled{L}}$ o $\text{\textcircled{R}}$ estando encendida la tecla $\text{\textcircled{A}}$ para ajustar el indicador, se ajustará el nivel de ajuste automático.

En el modo Count Only, puede ajustar el valor de inicio de cuenta con la tecla $\text{\textcircled{L}}$ o $\text{\textcircled{R}}$.

(*) El brillo sólo podrá ajustarse automáticamente cuando éste esté ajustado en “Auto” y el modo de exploración en “Black and White” en la configuración de la condición de exploración de la aplicación.

Si el modo de exploración es distinto a “Black and White” y pone el brillo en “Auto”, la tecla $\text{\textcircled{A}}$ no se encenderá, y se establecerá el brillo por defecto (valor del centro del indicador). El brillo no se ajustará automáticamente en este caso.

(5) Visor de contador

Visualiza un código de error o el número de páginas del documento explorado.

(6) Tecla Feeding Option (p. 39)

Selecciona el modo de alimentación de documentos.

Cada vez que presione la tecla Feeding Option la indicación de la lámpara a su izquierda cambiará cíclicamente como sigue:

OFF (Modo Remote) → [Semi-Auto] → [Auto] → [Manual] → y otra vez a OFF (Modo Remote)

Remote: Las tres lámparas a la izquierda de esta tecla están apagadas. El documento pasa cuando el escáner recibe una orden de inicio de exploración del ordenador.

Semi-Auto: El escáner pasa el documento cuando usted presione la tecla de inicio después de cargar el documento.

Auto: El escáner pasa automáticamente el documento cuando usted lo carga.

Manual: Cargue manualmente las hojas del documento una a una.

(7) Tecla Count Only (p. 53)

Ponga el escáner en el modo Count Only para únicamente contar las hojas del documento.

Cuando presione esta tecla, ésta se encenderá. Si carga el documento y presiona la tecla de inicio en este estado, el documento pasará y el escáner contará el número de hojas. (El documento no será explorado.) El número de hojas se mostrará en el visor de contador.

(8) Tecla New File

Presione esta tecla para almacenar imágenes exploradas en archivos separados.

Cuando presione esta tecla, ésta se encenderá. Cuando explore el siguiente documento en este estado, la imagen explorada se guardará en una carpeta distinta a la usada para guardar el documento anterior.

Cuando esté ajustado Auto New File en la aplicación, esta tecla se encenderá automáticamente cada vez que termine la exploración de un manejo de documentos.

(9) Tecla de parada

Presione esta tecla para cancelar la exploración antes de que finalice.

Utilice también esta tecla para cancelar el modo ajustado actualmente y para cancelar un error mostrado en el visor de contador.

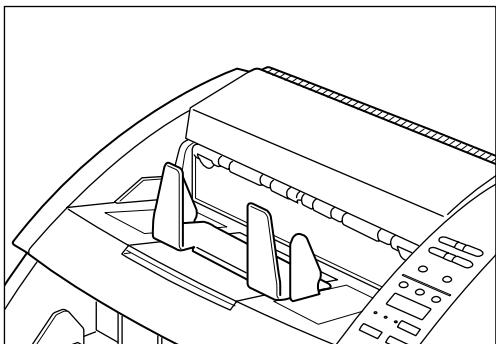
Para reponer el visor de contador a "0000", mantenga presionada esta tecla durante dos segundos por lo menos.

(10) Tecla de inicio

Presione esta tecla para comenzar a explorar cuando el modo de alimentación esté puesto en Semi-Auto.

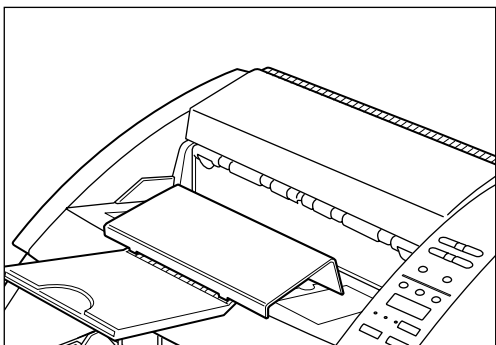
◆ Bandeja de quita y pon

Esta bandeja puede instalarse en la bandeja de salida de documentos para evitar que los documentos poco largos vuelen fuera de la bandeja al salir del escáner.



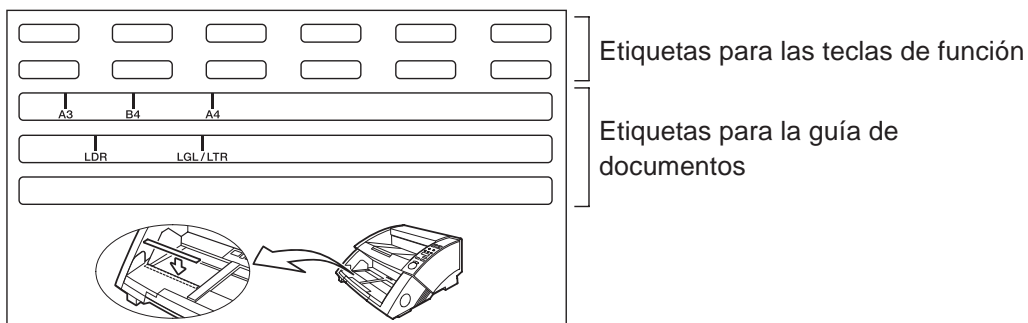
◆ Placa de apoyo para documentos de salida

Instale esta placa cuando explore documentos finos de gran tamaño (p.ej.: A3). Esta placa evita que tales documentos se enganchen en la bandeja de salida de documentos y se doblen.



◆ Etiquetas para las teclas de función

Se han suministrado dos etiquetas: una para describir la función registrada en la tecla de función y otra para fijar en la bandeja de documentos para usar como guía de documentos.



Capítulo 2

Preparativos antes de utilizar el equipo

Este capítulo describe el procedimiento desde la conexión del escáner hasta apagarlo.

2.1 Requisitos del sistema.....	22
2.2 Instalación y conexión	23
2.3 Preparación para alimentación y salida del papel	27
2.4 Conexión/desconexión de la alimentación	33

2.1

Requisitos del sistema

Para utilizar el DR-5020/5080C, necesitará los elementos siguientes además de los accesorios estándar.

- Ordenador
- Tarjeta SCSI
- Cable SCSI
- Aplicación



- Dependiendo de la aplicación que utilice, el controlador podrá no funcionar debidamente.
- Seleccione un ordenador, ambiente de operación y tarjeta SCSI apropiados para la aplicación que utilice.

2.2 Instalación y conexión

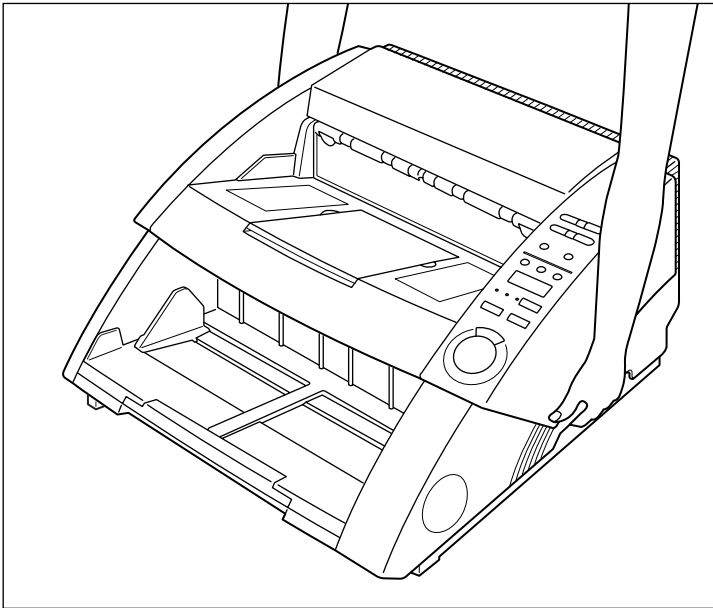
Esta sección describe la instalación y conexión del escáner.



Para detalles sobre el lugar de instalación del escáner, consulte “Acerca del lugar de instalación” en las Precauciones de seguridad (P.8).

Transporte

Cuando transporte el DR-5020/5080C, cójalo firmemente con ambas manos como se muestra en la figura de abajo y llévelo con cuidado. Si lo mueve sin cogerlo por sus asideros, podrá caérsele, pillarse los dedos y sufrir heridas inesperadas. Su peso es de aproximadamente 20 kg.



Antes de mover el escáner, apáguelo siempre y desconecte el cable de alimentación de la toma de corriente. Además, desconecte el cable SCSI del conector. Si mueve el escáner estando todavía encendido o con el cable SCSI todavía conectado podrá ocasionar una descarga eléctrica.

Conexión a un ordenador

Conecte el escáner a un ordenador.



PRECAUCIÓN

Antes de conectar el escáner al ordenador, asegúrese de apagar el escáner y el ordenador.



OBSERVACIÓN

Para conectar el escáner necesitará también los elementos siguientes:

● Tarjeta SCSI

Compruebe que la tarjeta SCSI está instalada en su ordenador personal.

Utilice una tarjeta SCSI que sea compatible con la aplicación del controlador que esté usando.

● Cable SCSI

El conector SCSI del escáner es un conector D-sub de 50 patillas de medio paso (tipo de patilla).

Compruebe la forma del conector en la tarjeta SCSI de su ordenador y en el dispositivo SCSI conectado a su ordenador, y prepare un cable SCSI que sea compatible con el conector al que vaya a conectarlo al escáner.

Para conectar el escáner al ordenador siga el procedimiento siguiente.

1. Conecte el escáner al ordenador con el cable SCSI. (P. 24)
2. Ajuste el identificador SCSI y terminador. (P. 25)

◆ Conexión del cable SCSI



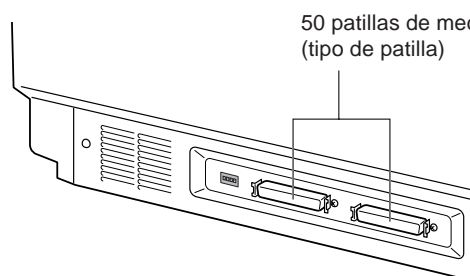
PRECAUCIÓN

Antes de conectar el cable SCSI, asegúrese de que el escáner y el ordenador están apagados.

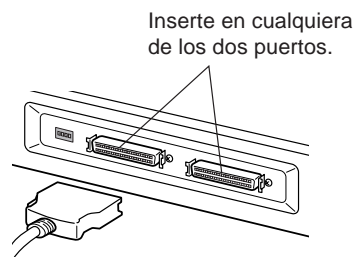
Conecte el ordenador al escáner con el cable SCSI.

En la parte posterior del escáner hay dos conectores SCSI. Inserte el cable SCSI procedente del ordenador en uno de estos conectores.

Para conectar el otro dispositivo SCSI al ordenador, inserte otro cable SCSI en el conector SCSI vacante de la parte posterior del escáner, y conecte el otro extremo del cable SCSI al dispositivo SCSI en serie.



Inserte hasta que encaje con un chasquido.

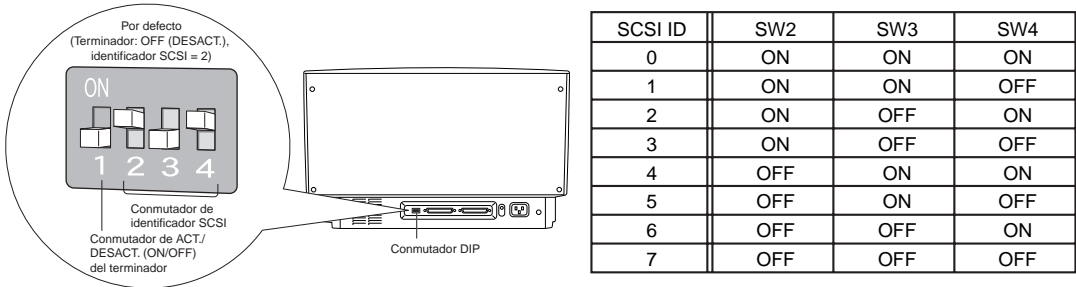


50 patillas de medio paso (tipo de patilla)

◆ Ajuste del identificador SCSI y terminador

Ajuste el identificador SCSI y el terminador usando el conmutador DIP de la parte posterior del escáner.

El conmutador DIP estará activado en la posición superior y desactivado en la posición inferior.



Ajuste el identificador SCSI refiriéndose a la tabla de arriba.

Ajuste los identificadores SCSI únicos según cualesquiera otros dispositivos SCSI incorporados o dispositivos SCSI conectados al ordenador.



OBSERVACIÓN

Por defecto, el identificador SCSI está ajustado en 2.

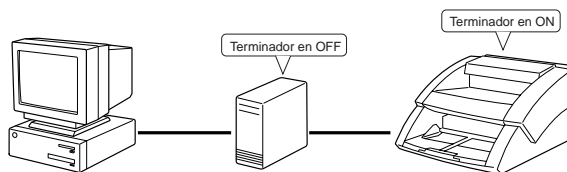
Asigne números identificadores SCSI comprendidos entre 0 a 7 para cada dispositivo SCSI. No seleccione 7 porque generalmente este número está asignado al controlador SCSI. Si tiene montado un disco duro SCSI, no utilice 0 y 1. Normalmente, 0 y 1 se asignan a discos duros.

Ajuste el terminador del último dispositivo SCSI conectado en serie en ON.

<Cuando a su ordenador sólo tenga conectado el escáner, o cuando haya otro dispositivo SCSI conectado en serie pero el escáner sea el último dispositivo SCSI de la conexión en serie>

Ajuste el conmutador del terminador en ON.

En tal conexión, asegúrese de ajustar el terminador de todos los demás dispositivos SCSI en OFF.



<Cuando el escáner no sea el últimos dispositivo SCSI de la conexión en serie>

Ajuste en OFF el conmutador de terminador del escáner.

En tal conexión, ajuste en ON el terminador del último dispositivo SCSI conectado.



Conexión del cable de alimentación

Conecte el cable de alimentación.

Asegúrese de utilizar solamente el cable de alimentación suministrado con el escáner.

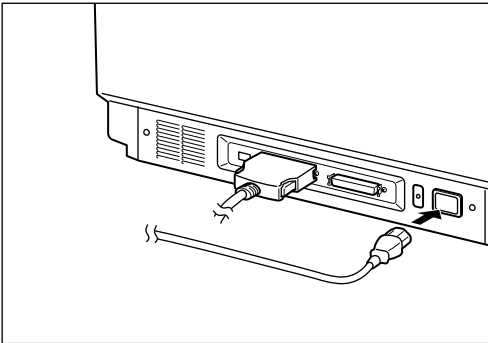
◆ Conexión del cable de alimentación



Cuando conecte el cable de alimentación, siga estas precauciones. En caso contrario, podrá ocasionar un incendio o descarga eléctrica.

- No coja nunca la clavija de alimentación teniendo las manos mojadas.
- No enchufe nunca el equipo en una alargadera de múltiples enchufes.
- No recoja, enrolle ni ate nunca el cable de alimentación alrededor de sí mismo ni de otro objeto. Conecte el cable de alimentación firmemente a la toma de corriente.
- Utilice solamente el cable y clavija de alimentación suministrados con el escáner.
- Antes de conectar el cable de alimentación, asegúrese de desactivar el interruptor de alimentación.
- Asegúrese de conectar el equipo a una toma de corriente de 220-240 V CA (50/60 Hz)/120 V CA (60 Hz).
- No enchufe el escáner a una toma compartida con otro equipo. Si utiliza un cable de extensión, preste atención al amperaje total del cable.

Conecte el cable de alimentación a la parte posterior del escáner, e inserte la clavija de alimentación en la toma de corriente.



2.3

Preparación para alimentación y salida del papel

Saque la sección de alimentación y la sección de salida de papel o la bandeja de quita y pon o placa de apoyo para acomodar el tamaño del papel a explorar. Además, adhiera la etiqueta para facilitar el ajuste de la guía de documentos.

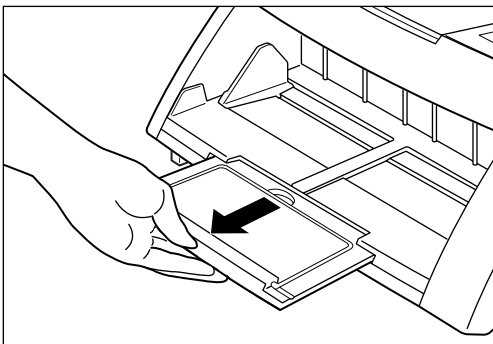
Preparación de la extensión de la bandeja de documentos y la extensión de la bandeja de salida de documentos

Utilice la extensión de la bandeja de documentos y la extensión de la bandeja de salida de documentos para acomodar el tamaño del documento a explorar. Para acomodar documentos difíciles de explorar también se pueden utilizar la placa de apoyo para documentos de salida y la bandeja de quita y pon.

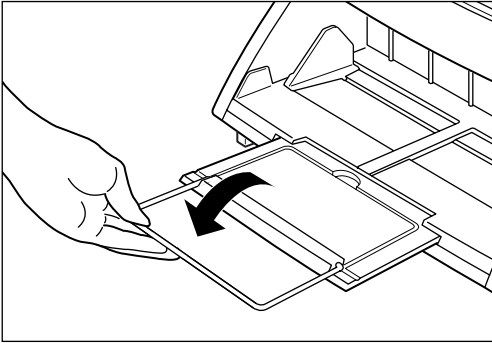
◆ Extensión de la bandeja de documentos

Saque la extensión de la bandeja de documentos para acomodar el tamaño del documento a explorar.

- 1 Saque la extensión de la bandeja de documentos del centro de la bandeja de documentos.



2 Abra con cuidado la extensión.

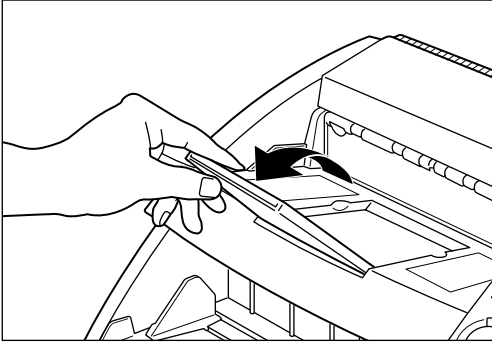


La extensión se utiliza para explorar documentos más grandes que el tamaño A4.

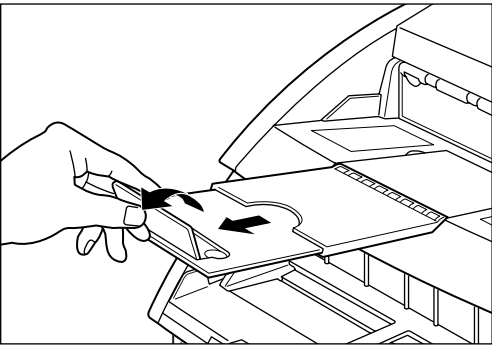
◆ Extensión de la bandeja de salida de documentos

Utilice la extensión de la bandeja de salida de documentos para acomodar el tamaño de los documentos a explorar. La bandeja de salida de documentos se abre en tres etapas para acomodar diferentes tipos y tamaños de documentos.

- 1 Coja la extensión 1 de la bandeja de salida de documentos del centro de la bandeja de salida de documentos.**



- 2 Saque la extensión 2 de la bandeja de salida de la extensión 1 de la bandeja de salida, y luego levante el tope.**

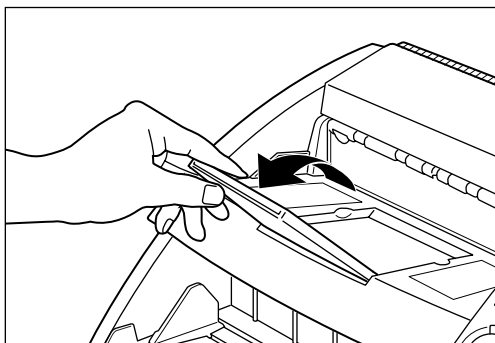


El tope se utiliza para evitar que los documentos que salen del escáner vuelen de la extensión de la bandeja de salida de documentos.

◆ Placa de apoyo para documentos de salida

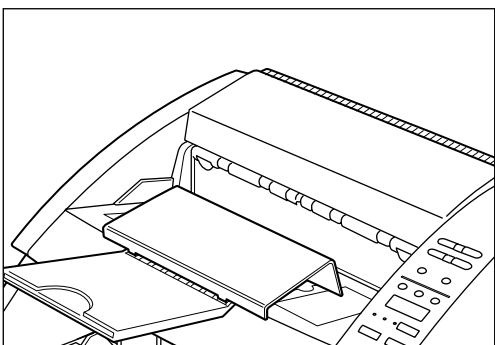
Instale esta placa para explorar documentos de gran tamaño o documentos con superficie resbaladiza. Al salir del escáner documentos de este tipo, podrán engancharse en la sección de salida de documentos y doblarse, u ocasionar atasco de papel. Esta placa lo evitará.

1 Saque la extensión de la bandeja de salida de documentos.

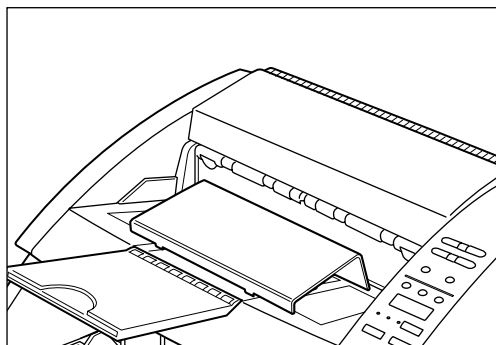


2 Instale la placa de apoyo para documentos de salida.

Instale de manera que los salientes de la placa de apoyo para documentos de salida encajen en los orificios de la extensión de la bandeja de documentos de salida.



Si el documento se engancha incluso estando colocada la extensión de la bandeja de salida, saque a tope la extensión para evitar que el documento se enganche.

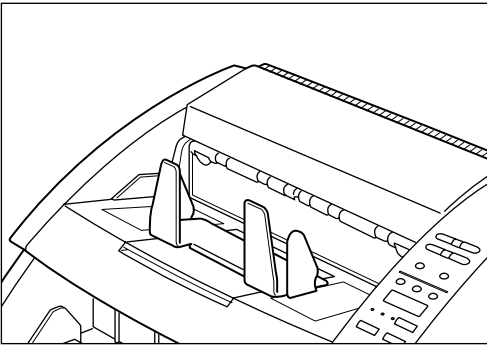


◆ Bandeja de quita y pon

Coloque esta bandeja cuando explore documentos de pequeño tamaño. Esta bandeja evita que los documentos vuelen de la bandeja cuando salen del escáner.

1 Instale la bandeja de quita y pon en el centro de la bandeja de salida.

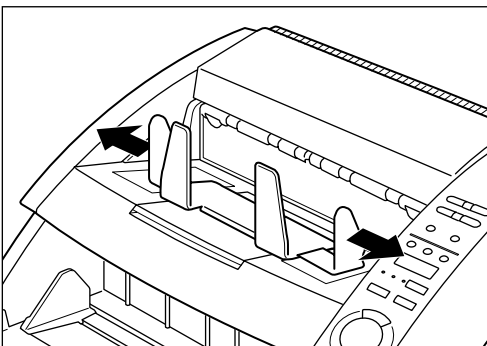
La bandeja de quita y pon se sujeta por medio de imanes. Alinee la posición de la bandeja para acomodar la longitud del documento.



Cierre la bandeja de salida si está abierta.

2 Ajuste las guías de papel derecha e izquierda según la anchura del documento a explorar.

Deje un poco de espacio extra en ambas guías.

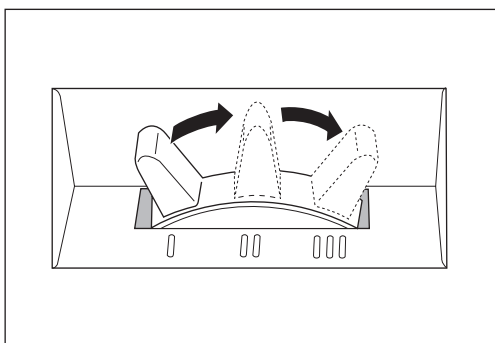


Ajuste de la alimentación de papel

Deslice la palanca de ajuste de alimentación de papel para ajustar la alimentación de papel cuando ocurra un error de alimentación de papel causado por la fricción debida a la superficie escurridiza de un documento.

La palanca de ajuste de alimentación de papel puede ajustarse en tres posiciones.

La posición normal es la de la izquierda (I). Si el papel es ligeramente escurridizo, ajústela en la posición del centro (II) y en la posición de la derecha (III) si es más escurridiza.

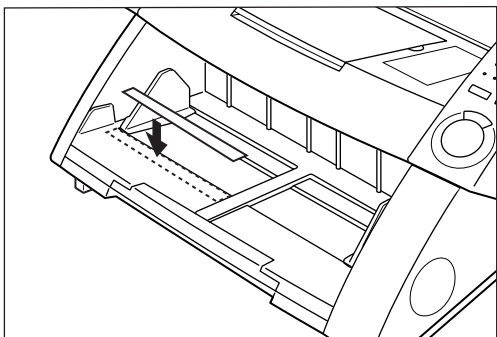


Fijación de las etiquetas para la guía de documentos

La caja de cartón del escáner contiene etiquetas para las teclas de función y para la guía de documentos.

Estas etiquetas facilitan el ajuste de la guía de documentos.

Adhiéralas en la bandeja de documentos como se muestra en la figura de abajo.



2.4 Conexión/desconexión de la alimentación

Siga el procedimiento de abajo para encender y apagar el escáner.

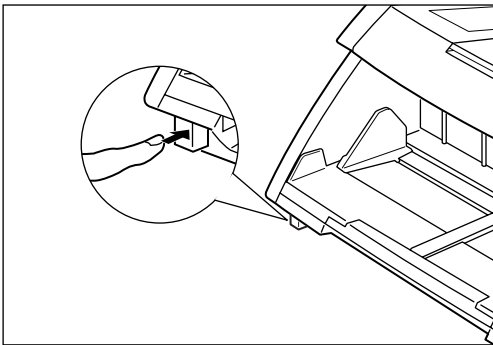
Conexión de la alimentación



OBSERVACIÓN

Asegúrese de encender todos los dispositivos SCSI antes de encender el ordenador.

1 Para encender el escáner, presione el interruptor de alimentación.



➔ Se visualizará "0000" en el visor de contador del panel de operación.



MEMORÁNDUM

Todos los ajustes del panel de operación a excepción del visor de contador volverán a sus configuraciones de antes de apagar el escáner.



AVISO

Si oye un sonido extraño, detecta humo o calor anormal, siente vibración, o percibe un olor extraño alrededor del equipo, apáguelo inmediatamente y desconecte el cable de alimentación de la toma de corriente. Llame a personal de servicio inmediatamente. De no hacerlo, podrá ocasionar un incendio.

2 Encienda el ordenador.

➔ Se iniciará el sistema operativo de su ordenador.



OBSERVACIÓN

- Si está utilizando Windows 95/98/Me o Windows 2000, la primera vez que encienda el PC después de haber conectado el escáner a su PC, la función Plug and Play visualizará automáticamente un aviso en pantalla pidiéndole que instale el controlador del escáner. (El nombre de este aviso en pantalla variará en función de las diferentes versiones de Windows.) En el caso de "Nuevo hardware" (Windows 95), seleccione "Seleccionar de la lista" y haga clic en [OK]. En la siguiente pantalla, seleccione "Otro dispositivo" y haga clic en [OK]. En el caso de "Asistente para controlador de dispositivo" (Windows 95), haga clic en [Siguiente] y luego haga clic en [Completado] en la siguiente pantalla. En el caso de "Asistente para agregar nuevo hardware" (Windows 98), siga el procedimiento descrito abajo.
 1. Haga clic en [Siguiente].
 2. Seleccione "Buscar el mejor controlador para su dispositivo. (Se recomienda)" y luego haga clic en [Siguiente].
 3. Quite las marcas de todas las casillas y luego haga clic en [Siguiente].
 4. Haga clic en [Siguiente].
 5. Haga clic en [Finalizar].En el caso de "Se ha encontrado hardware nuevo" (Windows Me), seleccione "Buscar automáticamente el controlador (recomendado)", luego haga clic en [Siguiente] y luego haga clic en [Finalizar] en la siguiente pantalla. En el caso de "Asistente para hardware nuevo encontrado" (Windows 2000), siga el procedimiento descrito abajo.
 1. Haga clic en [Siguiente] para avanzar a la pantalla "Instalar controladores de dispositivos de hardware".
 2. Seleccione "Buscar un controlador apropiado para mi dispositivo (recomendado)", y luego haga clic en [Siguiente] para proseguir en la pantalla "Buscar archivos de controlador".
 3. Quite las marcas de todas las casillas de "Ubicaciones de búsqueda opcionales", y luego haga clic en [Siguiente] para proseguir en la pantalla "Resultados de la búsqueda de archivos de controlador".
 4. Seleccione "Deshabilitar el dispositivo", y luego haga clic en [Finalizar].
- Para poder utilizar el escáner, deberá estar instalada la aplicación del controlador suministrada con el escáner. Para más detalles, consulte las "Instrucciones para el controlador ISIS/TWAIN" o las "Instrucciones para la Scanning Utility 5000" por separado.

Desconexión de la alimentación



PRECAUCIÓN

Por su propia seguridad, si no va a utilizar el escáner durante largo tiempo, desconecte la clavija de alimentación de la toma de corriente.

1 Apague el ordenador.

2 Para apagar el escáner, presione el interruptor de alimentación.



PRECAUCIÓN

Espere 10 segundos por lo menos antes de volver a encender el escáner.

Capítulo 3

Preparación de documentos

Este capítulo describe las precauciones relacionadas con los documentos que puede manejar este escáner y las operaciones para la alimentación y exploración de documentos.

3.1 Acerca de los documentos	36
3.2 Carga y exploración de documentos	38
3.3 Fijación de las condiciones de exploración	58

3.1

Acerca de los documentos

El DR-5020/5080C puede aceptar una amplia variedad de tamaños de documentos. A continuación se muestran las gamas de anchos y largos de un documento.

Ancho	: 55 a 297 mm (El ancho máximo de exploración real es de 295 mm.)
Largo	: 70 a 432 mm
Grosor	: 0,06 a 0,15 mm (en alimentación manual: 0,06 a 0,2 mm)

Cuando vaya a preparar un documento para explorar, siga estas pautas.

- Antes de explorar un documento que contenga trabajo artístico pegado, asegúrese de que la tinta o el pegamento de las páginas esté completamente seco. Si explora documentos con tinta o pegamento aún húmedo, el interior del escáner podrá mancharse.
- Si explora un documento escrito a lápiz, las letras podrán desaparecer al pasar el papel a través del escáner o el grafito de la superficie del documento podrá transferirse a los rodillos de exploración y mancharlos. Antes de explorar este tipo de documentos, haga copia de los mismos y explore la copia. Después de explorar un documento escrito con lápiz u otros materiales de escritura blandos, asegúrese de limpiar los rodillos de exploración. (P. 83)
- Si explora papel fino en el modo Duplex, la tinta impresa en una cara podrá ser legible en la otra. Si ocurriera esto, ajuste la densidad de exploración.
- Si explora un documento de superficie escurridiza, la fricción podrá ocasionar un error de alimentación. Si de diera el caso, deslice la palanca de ajuste de alimentación de papel (P. 32) para ajustar la alimentación de papel.
- Para evitar atascos de papel, daños a los documentos y funcionamiento defectuoso del escáner, no alimente los siguientes tipos de papel en el escáner. Si quiere explorar estos tipos de papel, haga primero una copia de ellos en una copiadora y explore la copia.



Papel arrugado o con manchas de aceite



Papel con soporte de carbón



Papel alabeado



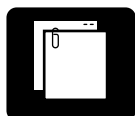
Papel estucado o papel de fax



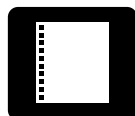
Papel rasgado



Papel cebolla o papel fino



Papel con sujetapapeles o grapas



Papel con agujeros de encuadernación



- Los documentos compuestos de hojas de diferentes grosores y tamaños podrán ocasionar un malfuncionamiento durante la alimentación.
- Los documentos muy alabeados, arrugados o papel doblado podrán ocasionar doble alimentación.
- Los documentos que contengan texto o imágenes dentro de los 5 mm de sus bordes o los documentos con color de fondo podrán ocasionar una detección de desviación o detección automática de tamaño errónea.

3.2

Carga y exploración de documentos

Cargue el documento en el escáner y explórelo. También podrá contar el número de hoja que tiene el documento. Esta sección describe los elementos siguientes:

- Procedimiento de exploración (de acuerdo con el modo de alimentación)
- Cuenta del número de hojas que tiene el documento
- Hojas de control



PRECAUCIÓN

- Evite utilizar ropas sueltas, joyas colgantes, corbatas largas, o incluso cabellos largos que puedan quedar enganchados en las partes móviles, especialmente en los rodillos que alimentan el equipo. Si tales objetos se enganchasen, desconecte inmediatamente el cable de alimentación de la toma de corriente para parar el equipo.
- Tenga mucho cuidado cuando se encuentre cargando un documento o retirando papel atascado. Podrá herirse inesperadamente. Por ejemplo, podrá cortarse los dedos con los bordes del papel.
- Compruebe el manajo de papel y retire todos los sujetapapeles, grapas, alfileres o cualquier otro tipo de sujetador de metal o plástico. De no hacerlo, podrá dañar el documento, u ocasionar atascos de papel o un malfuncionamiento del escáner.

Procedimiento de exploración

El procedimiento para la exploración de un documento varía de acuerdo con el modo de alimentación ajustado en el escáner.

Podrá elegir de entre los cuatro modos de alimentación siguientes usando la tecla Feeding Option.

● **Modo Remote (por defecto)**

Este modo es el más apropiado para explorar un documento compuesto de un solo manojos de hojas.

En este modo, el escáner empieza a explorar cuando usted da la orden en la aplicación con el documento cargado en el escáner.

● **Semi-Auto**

Este modo es el más apropiado para explorar continuamente documentos de diferentes tamaños en manojos separados a la vez que ajusta la guía de documentos.

En este modo, el escáner empieza a explorar cuando usted da la orden en la aplicación y presiona la tecla de inicio en el escáner con el documento cargado en el escáner.

Cuando el escáner termine de explorar el manojos de un documento, cargue el siguiente manojos y presione la tecla de inicio para continuar explorando.

● **Auto**

Este modo es el más apropiado para explorar continuamente un manojos de documentos del mismo tamaño.

En este modo, el escáner empieza a explorar automáticamente cuando carga el documento después de haber dado la orden en la aplicación.

Cuando el escáner termina de explorar el manojos de un documento, cargue el siguiente manojos. El escáner continuará explorando automáticamente.

● **Manual**

En este modo, usted carga las hojas del documento una a una después de haber dado la orden de inicio de exploración en el ordenador.

Utilice este modo para cargar documentos que no entren bien (por ejemplo, papel de una calidad propensa a ocasionar doble alimentación) cuando los cargue en manojos.

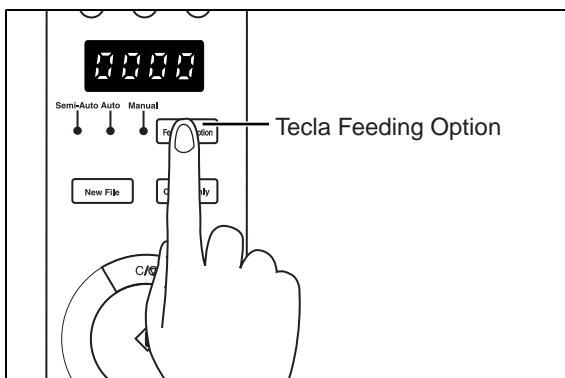
A continuación se describe cada uno de los modos de exploración de acuerdo con el modo de alimentación.

◆ Modo Remote

Este modo es el más apropiado para explorar un documento compuesto de un solo manajo de hojas.

1 Asegúrese de que las lámparas de los modos Semi-Auto, Auto y Manual estén apagadas.

Si alguna de estas lámparas está encendida, presione la tecla Feeding Option hasta se apague.



Cada vez que presione la tecla Feeding Option la indicación de la lámpara a su izquierda cambiará cíclicamente como sigue:

OFF (Modo Remote) → [Semi-Auto] → [Auto] → [Manual] → y otra vez a OFF (Modo Remote)

2 Seleccione los ajustes siguientes en el panel de operación.

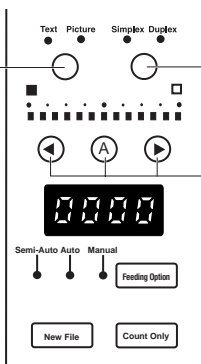
Este preparativo no será necesario si ya ha sido hecho en la aplicación.

Text/Picture

[Text]: Se enciende cuando se exploran documentos de texto (incluyendo caracteres en su mayoría) en el modo blanco y negro.

[Picture]: Se enciende cuando se exploran documentos de imágenes, incluidas fotografías, en el modo de difusión de error blanco y negro.

Si la selección de imagen en cualquiera que sea la aplicación está ajustada en el modo de escala de grises o modo de color, no se encenderá ninguna de las indicaciones de arriba.



Simplex/Duplex

[Simplex]: Selecciónelo cuando explore sólo una cara del documento.

[Duplex]: Selecciónelo cuando explore ambas caras del documento.

Teclas de brillo

Ajuste el brillo cuando explore el documento.

Para ajustar automáticamente el brillo, presione la tecla (A) para que se encienda (A).

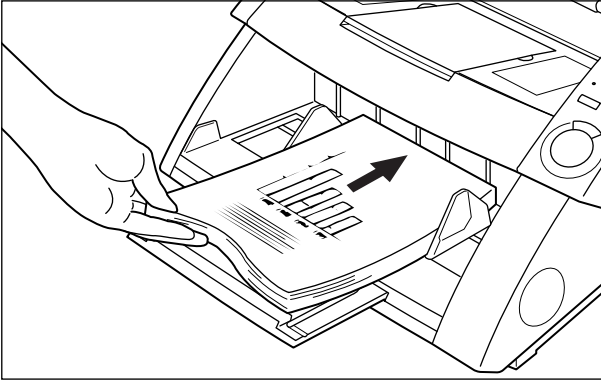
Para ajustar manualmente el brillo, presione la tecla (◀) o (▶) para mover la indicación por encima de la tecla con el fin de ajustar el brillo.



Para detalles sobre el ajuste de otros parámetros, consulte "3.3 Fijación de las condiciones de exploración". (P. 58)

3 Airee un manajo de hojas a explorar hasta que los bordes queden igualados.

4 Cargue los documentos con la cara impresa hacia arriba y el borde superior de los mismos hacia el interior del escáner.



MEMORÁNDUM

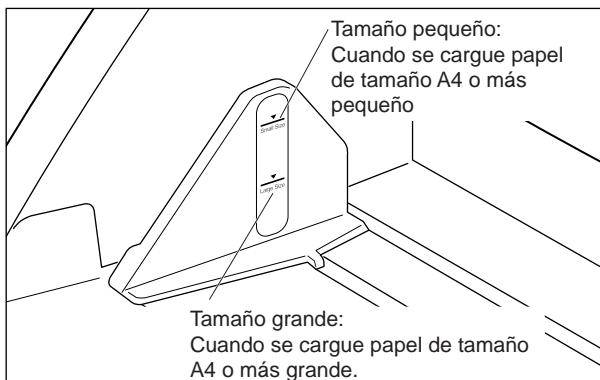
- Cuando cargue los documentos en la bandeja de documentos, cárguelos con la cara impresa a explorar hacia arriba.
- El peso del papel cargado aumenta algunas veces debido al ambiente (por ejemplo, lugares muy húmedos) en el que se guardan los documentos. Si se da el caso, el peso del papel excederá el peso apilado máximo permitido aunque el número de hojas del manajo sea inferior al máximo, y algunas veces impedirá a la bandeja de documentos elevarse. Reduzca el número de hojas del documento cargado en la bandeja de documentos y explore el documento otra vez.



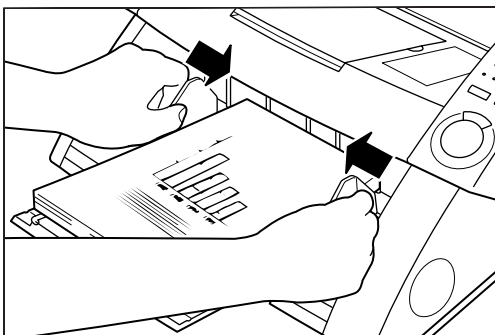
OBSERVACIÓN

Para evitar atascos de papel, compruebe la marca de límite de carga que hay en la bandeja de documentos. El manajo de hojas no deberá exceder esta marca (▼).

El límite de carga es de unas 500 hojas de papel estándar tamaño A4 (80 g/m²) y de unas 200 hojas de papel más grande que el tamaño A4.



5 Ajuste las guías del papel según el ancho del documento que vaya a explorar.



6 Dé la orden de exploración en la aplicación.

7 La bandeja de documentos se elevará, y se iniciará la exploración. Cuando finalice la exploración de todas las hojas del documento, la bandeja de papel se bajará.

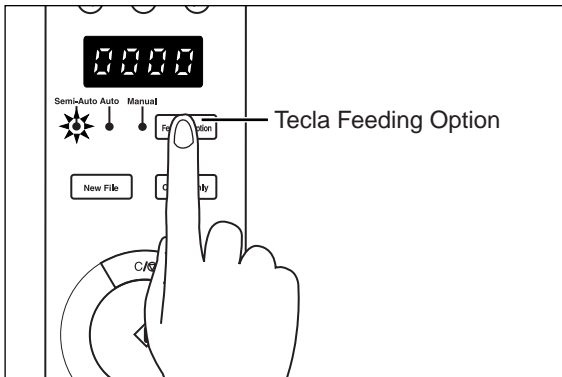


Si la carga de papel se para durante la exploración debido a un error del sistema o a un atasco de papel, asegúrese de que la última hoja del original que estaba entrando en el escáner haya sido registrada debidamente, antes de continuar explorando.

◆ Modo Semi-Auto

Utilice el modo semiautomático para explorar continuamente un manajo de documentos de diferentes tamaños.

- 1 **Presione la tecla Feeding Option en el panel de operación para que se encienda [Semi-Auto].**



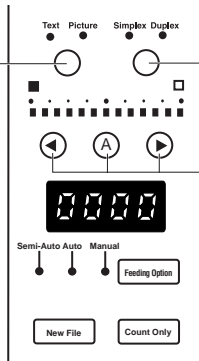
- 2 **Seleccione los ajustes siguientes en el panel de operación.**
Este preparativo no será necesario si ya ha sido hecho en la aplicación.

Text/Picture

[Text]: Se enciende cuando se exploran documentos de texto (incluyendo caracteres en su mayoría) en el modo blanco y negro.

[Picture]: Se enciende cuando se exploran documentos de imágenes, incluidas fotografías, en el modo de difusión de error blanco y negro.

Si la selección de imagen en cualquiera que sea la aplicación está ajustada en el modo de escala de grises o modo de color, no se encenderá ninguna de las indicaciones de arriba.



Simplex/Duplex

[Simplex]: Selecciónelo cuando explore sólo una cara del documento.

[Duplex]: Selecciónelo cuando explore ambas caras del documento.

Teclas de brillo

Ajuste el brillo cuando explore el documento.

Para ajustar automáticamente el brillo, presione la tecla (A) para que se encienda (A).

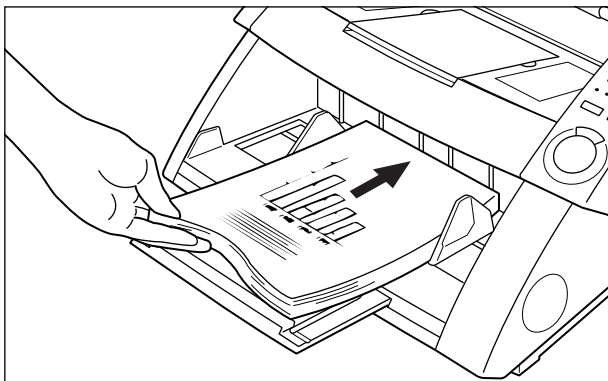
Para ajustar manualmente el brillo, presione la tecla (◀) o (▶) para mover la indicación por encima de la tecla con el fin de ajustar el brillo.



Para detalles sobre el ajuste de otros parámetros, consulte "3.3 Fijación de las condiciones de exploración". (P. 58)

3 Airee un manojo de hojas a explorar hasta que los bordes queden igualados.

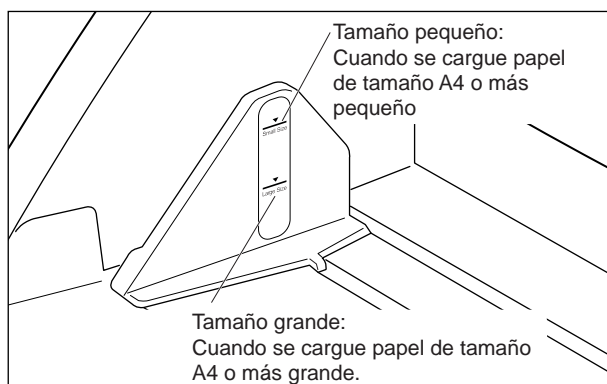
4 Cargue los documentos con el borde superior de los mismos hacia el interior del escáner.



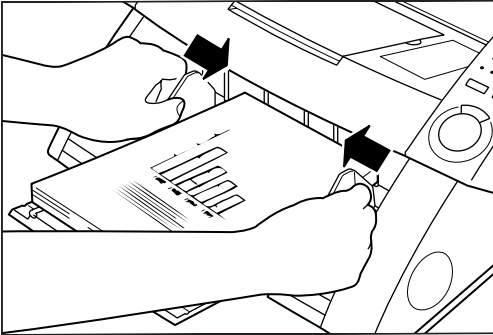
- Cuando cargue los documentos en la bandeja de documentos, cárguelos con la cara impresa a explorar hacia arriba.
- El peso del papel cargado aumenta algunas veces debido al ambiente (por ejemplo, lugares muy húmedos) en el que se guardan los documentos. Si se da el caso, el peso del papel excederá el peso apilado máximo permitido aunque el número de hojas del manojo sea inferior al máximo, y algunas veces impedirá a la bandeja de documentos elevarse. Reduzca el número de hojas del documento cargado en la bandeja de documentos y explore el documento otra vez.



Para evitar atascos de papel, compruebe la marca de límite de carga que hay en la bandeja de documentos. El manojo de hojas no deberá exceder esta marca (▼). El límite de carga es de unas 500 hojas de papel estándar tamaño A4 (80 g/m²) y de unas 200 hojas de papel más grande que el tamaño A4.



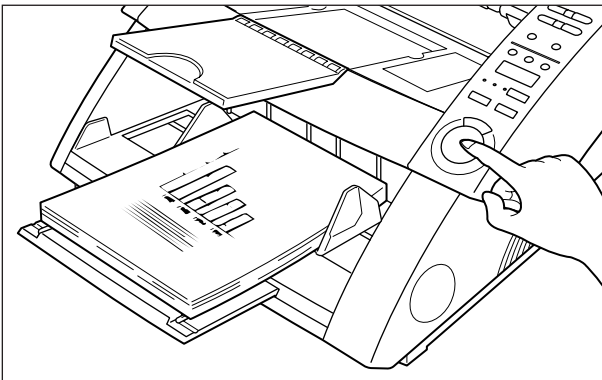
- 5** Ajuste las guías del papel según el ancho del documento que vaya a explorar.



- 6** Dé la orden de exploración en la aplicación.

⇒ La tecla de inicio cambiará de color rojo a verde.

- 7** Presione la tecla de inicio.



- 8** La bandeja de documentos se elevará, y se iniciará la exploración. Cuando finalice la exploración de todas las hojas del documento, la bandeja de papel se bajará.



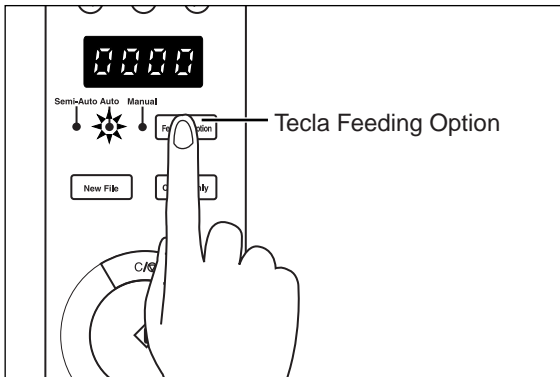
Si la carga de papel se para durante la exploración debido a un error del sistema o a un atasco de papel, asegúrese de que la última hoja del original que estaba entrando en el escáner haya sido registrada debidamente, antes de continuar explorando.

- 9** Si hay más hojas del documento a explorar, cargue las hojas y presione la tecla de inicio. Para terminar de explorar presione la tecla de parada.

◆ Modo Auto

Utilice el modo Auto para explorar continuamente un manajo de documentos del mismo tamaño.

1 Presione la tecla Feeding Option en le panel de operación para que se encienda [Auto].



2 Seleccione los ajustes siguientes en el panel de operación.

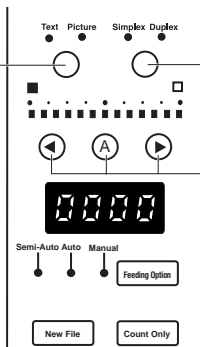
Este preparativo no será necesario si ya ha sido hecho en la aplicación.

Text/Picture

[Text]: Se enciende cuando se exploran documentos de texto (incluyendo caracteres en su mayoría) en el modo blanco y negro.

[Picture]: Se enciende cuando se exploran documentos de imágenes, incluidas fotografías, en el modo de difusión de error blanco y negro.

Si la selección de imagen en cualquiera que sea la aplicación está ajustada en el modo de escala de grises o modo de color, no se encenderá ninguna de las indicaciones de arriba.



Simplex/Duplex

[Simplex]: Selecciónelo cuando explore sólo una cara del documento.

[Duplex]: Selecciónelo cuando explore ambas caras del documento.

Teclas de brillo

Ajuste el brillo cuando explore el documento.

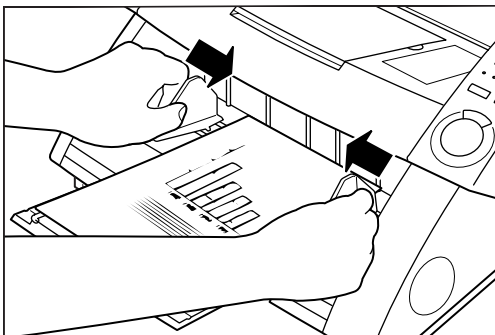
Para ajustar automáticamente el brillo, presione la tecla (A) para que se encienda (A).

Para ajustar manualmente el brillo, presione la tecla (◀) o (▶) para mover la indicación por encima de la tecla con el fin de ajustar el brillo.



Para detalles sobre el ajuste de otros parámetros, consulte "3.3 Fijación de las condiciones de exploración". (P. 58)

3 Cargue una hoja del documento que vaya a explorar, y ajuste las guías del papel según el ancho del documento.



4 Dé la orden de exploración en la aplicación.

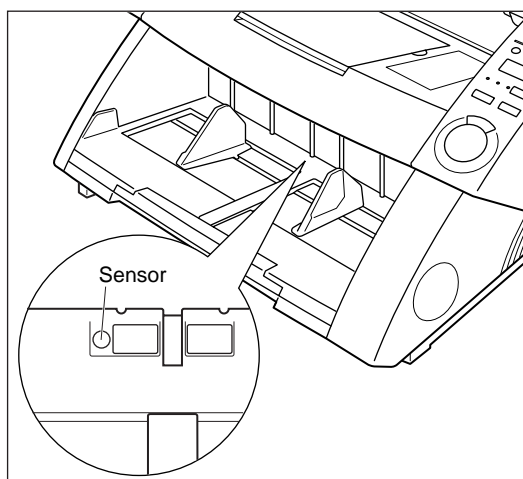
➔ La tecla de inicio cambiará de color rojo a verde.



PRECAUCIÓN

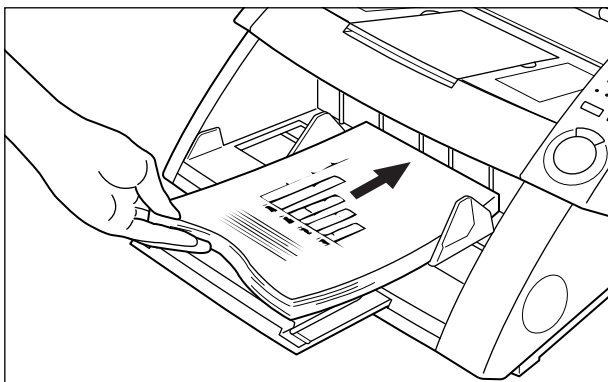
Cuando el modo de exploración esté ajustado en Auto, el sensor ubicado en la bandeja de documentos, mostrado en la figura de abajo, detectará automáticamente el documento para empezar a explorar.

Cuando haya algo cubriendo el sensor en la bandeja de documentos después de haber dado la orden de exploración en la aplicación, el escáner discernirá erróneamente que ha sido cargado un documento, y la bandeja de documentos empezará a moverse. Asegúrese de que ningún objeto, a excepción del documento, cubra el sensor de la bandeja de documentos.



5 Airee un manejo de hojas a explorar hasta que los bordes queden igualados.

6 Cargue los documentos con la cara impresa hacia arriba y el borde superior de los mismos hacia el interior del escáner.



MEMORÁNDUM

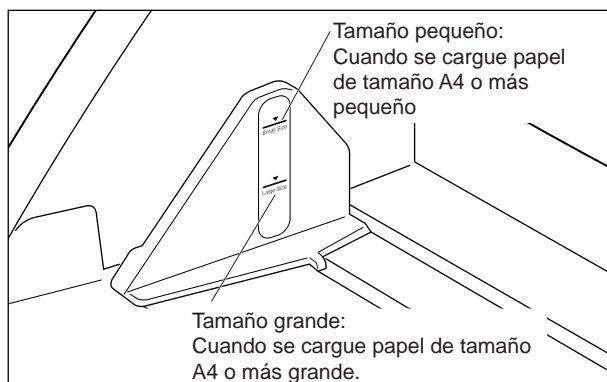
- Cuando cargue los documentos en la bandeja de documentos, cárguelos con la cara impresa a explorar hacia arriba.
- El peso del papel cargado aumenta algunas veces debido al ambiente (por ejemplo, lugares muy húmedos) en el que se guardan los documentos. Si se da el caso, el peso del papel excederá el peso apilado máximo permitido aunque el número de hojas del manajo sea inferior al máximo, y algunas veces impedirá a la bandeja de documentos elevarse. Reduzca el número de hojas del documento cargado en la bandeja de documentos y explore el documento otra vez.



OBSERVACIÓN

Para evitar atascos de papel, compruebe la marca de límite de carga que hay en la bandeja de documentos. El manajo de hojas no deberá exceder esta marca (▼).

El límite de carga es de unas 500 hojas de papel estándar tamaño A4 (80 g/m²) y de unas 200 hojas de papel más grande que el tamaño A4.



7 La bandeja de documentos de elevará, y se iniciará la exploración. Cuando finalice la exploración de todas las hojas del documento, la bandeja de papel se bajará.

La exploración no empezará cuando se cargue primero el documento. En este caso, presione la tecla de inicio, o bien quite y el documento y cárguelo otra vez.



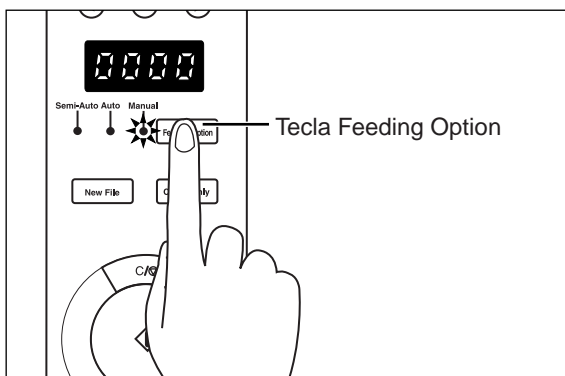
Si la carga de papel se para durante la exploración debido a un error del sistema o a un atasco de papel, asegúrese de que la última hoja del original que estaba entrando en el escáner haya sido registrada debidamente, antes de continuar explorando.

8 Si hay más hojas del documento a explorar, cargue las hojas y presione la tecla de inicio. Para terminar de explorar presione la tecla de parada.

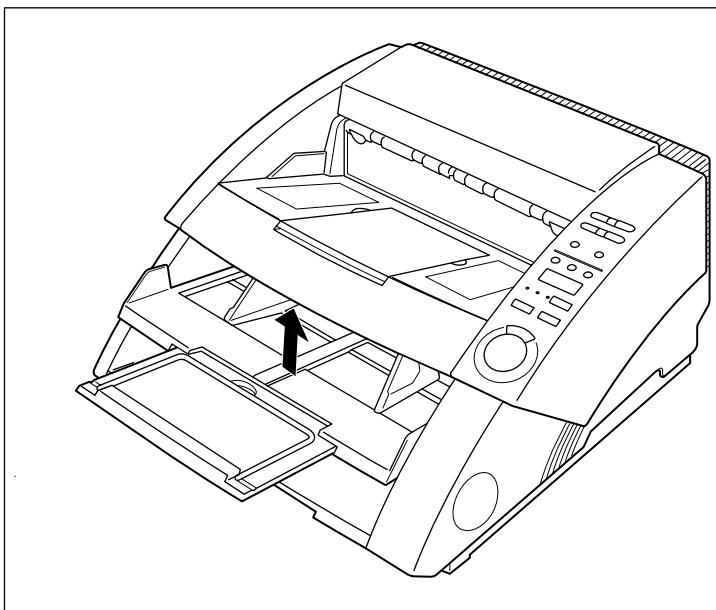
◆ Modo Manual

Utilice este modo para cargar documentos que no entren bien (por ejemplo, papel de una calidad propensa a ocasionar doble alimentación). En este modo, tendrá que cargar una a una las hojas del documento.

1 Presione la tecla Feeding Option en le panel de operación para que se encienda [Manual].



➔ La bandeja de documentos se elevará.



Tenga cuidado de no pillarse los dedos en la bandeja de documentos.

2 Seleccione los ajustes siguientes en el panel de operación.

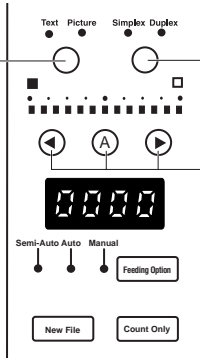
Este preparativo no será necesario si ya ha sido hecho en la aplicación.

Text/Picture

[Text]: Se enciende cuando se exploran documentos de texto (incluyendo caracteres en su mayoría) en el modo blanco y negro.

[Picture]: Se enciende cuando se exploran documentos de imágenes, incluidas fotografías, en el modo de difusión de error blanco y negro.

Si la selección de imagen en cualquiera que sea la aplicación está ajustada en el modo de escala de grises o modo de color, no se encenderá ninguna de las indicaciones de arriba.



Simplex/Duplex

[Simplex]: Selecciónelo cuando explore sólo una cara del documento.

[Duplex]: Selecciónelo cuando explore ambas caras del documento.

Teclas de brillo

Ajuste el brillo cuando explore el documento.

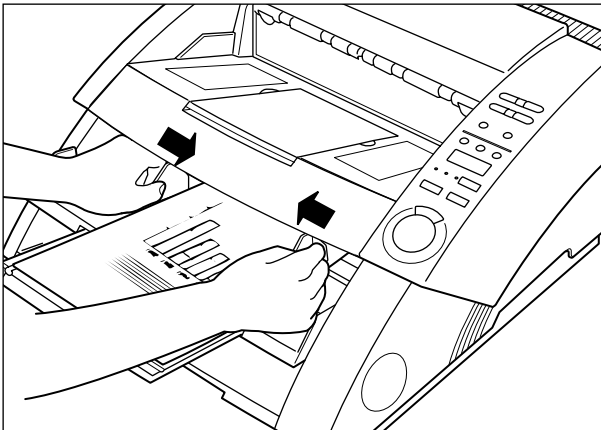
Para ajustar automáticamente el brillo, presione la tecla (A) para que se encienda (A).

Para ajustar manualmente el brillo, presione la tecla (◀) o (▶) para mover la indicación por encima de la tecla con el fin de ajustar el brillo.



Para detalles sobre el ajuste de otros parámetros, consulte "3.3 Fijación de las condiciones de exploración". (P. 58)

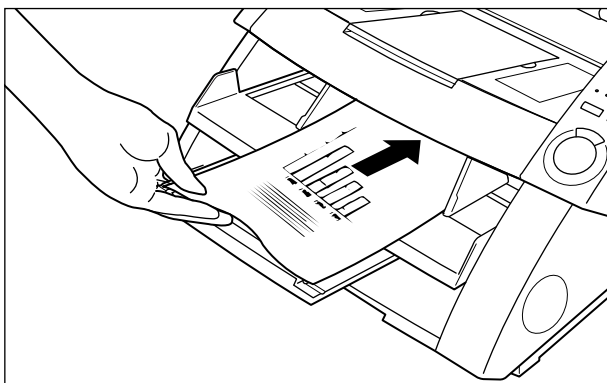
3 Cargue una hoja del documento que vaya a explorar, y ajuste las guías del papel según el ancho del documento.



4 Dé la orden de exploración en la aplicación.

5 Cargue una hoja con la cara impresa hacia arriba y el borde superior hacia el interior del escáner.

⇒ El documento se explorará.



6 Inserte el documento de una en una hoja.

7 Para finalizar la exploración, presione la tecla de parada.



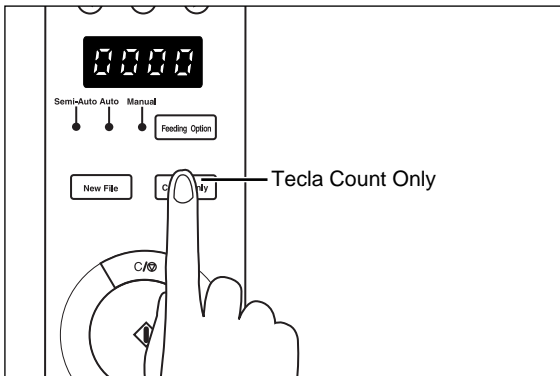
La bandeja de documentos permanecerá en posición elevada. Para devolverla a la posición original, presione la tecla Feeding Option y seleccione cualquier tecla que no sea [Manual].

Para contar el número de originales de un documento

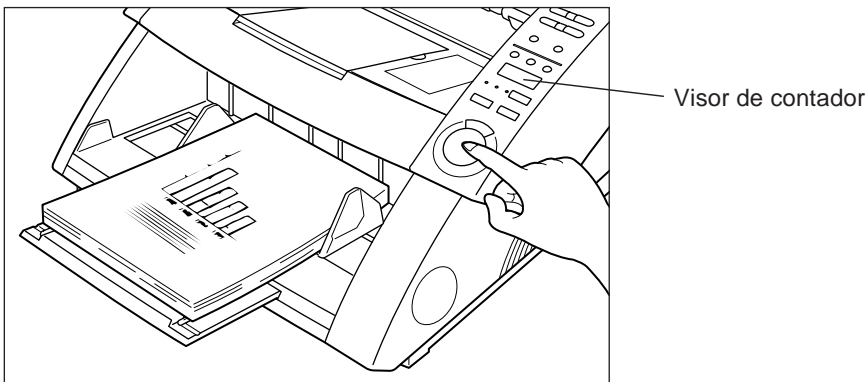
Se puede contar el número de originales de un documento, por ejemplo, cuando se desconozca cuántas hoja contiene, ajustando el escáner en el modo Count Only.

1 Presione la tecla Count Only en el panel de operación del escáner.

⇒ La lámpara Count Only se encenderá para indicar el modo Count Only. También se encenderá la lámpara Semi-Auto.



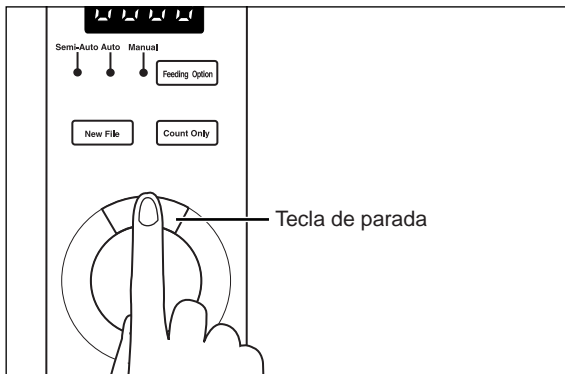
2 Cargue el documento en la bandeja de documentos y presione la tecla de inicio.



⇒ El documento se cargará y aparecerá el número de hojas del documento en el visor de contador.

3 Cuando finalice la cuenta, presione la tecla Count Only para cancelar el modo Count Only.

Para cancelar la visualización en el visor de contador, mantenga presionada la tecla de parada durante dos segundos por lo menos.



OBSERVACIÓN

Podrá utilizar el método de cuenta de arriba para realizar una exploración de verificación (verificar automáticamente el número de hojas del documento durante la exploración). Para más detalles sobre la exploración de verificación, consulte las "Instrucciones para el controlador ISIS/TWAIN" o las "Instrucciones para la Scanning Utility 5000" por separado.

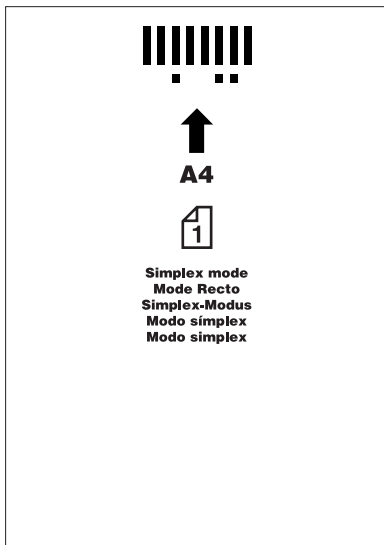
Hojas de función

Con el escáner se entregan varias Hojas de función que se pueden utilizar para activar varias funciones. Si alimenta una Hoja de función junto con un documento, el escáner detectará la Hoja de función y ajustará automáticamente el modo de exploración.

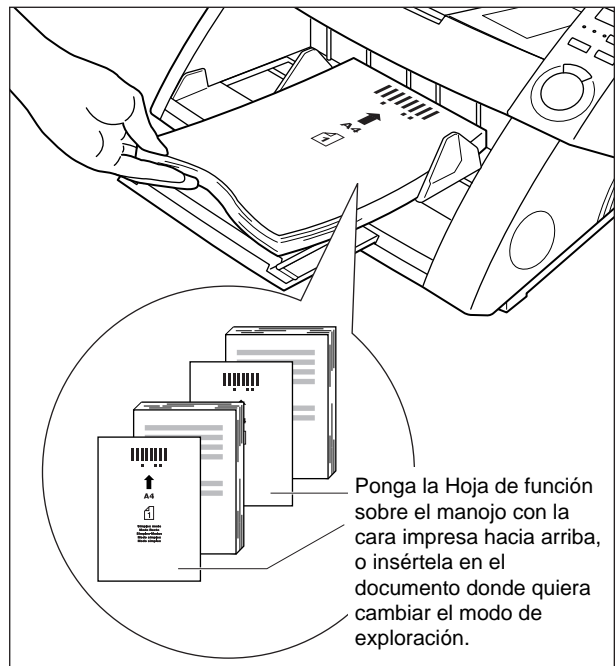


OBSERVACIÓN

- Esta función es sólo válida cuando la aplicación del escáner soporta la exploración usando las Hojas de función. Ajuste la aplicación del escáner de antemano para poder utilizar esta función en la aplicación. Para más detalles, consulte las Instrucciones de aplicación del escáner.
- Para detalles sobre las Hojas de función, consulte la instrucciones de las hojas de función empaquetadas con las Hojas de función.



Hoja de función



Ponga la Hoja de función sobre el manajo con la cara impresa hacia arriba, o insértela en el documento donde quiera cambiar el modo de exploración.

Con el DR-5020/5080C se entregan los siguientes cinco tipos de Hojas de función.

- **Hojas de control del escáner**

Estas hojas controlan el modo en el que se explora el documento. Para cada uno de los modos de control se han provisto las siguientes Hojas de control.

Para el modo dúplex

Ordena al escáner que explore y almacene el contenido de las caras frontal y posterior de la hoja. Inserte esta Hoja de función antes del documento a explorar, y cárguela junto con el documento en el escáner.

Para el modo símplex

Ordena al escáner que explore y almacene sólo la cara frontal de la hoja. Inserte esta Hoja de función antes del documento a explorar, y cárguela junto con el documento en el escáner.

Para el modo foto

Ordena al escáner que active el modo Foto para explorar y almacenar fotografías. Inserte esta Hoja de función antes del documento de fotografía, y cárguela junto con el documento en el escáner. Esta hoja es para usar sólo cuando “Scan Mode” de la aplicación está ajustado en “Black and White”. Si se carga con “Scan Mode” ajustado en “Grayscale” o “Color”, será ignorada.

Para el modo texto

Ordena al escáner que active el modo Texto para explorar y almacenar texto. Inserte esta Hoja de función antes del documento a explorar, y cárguela junto con el documento en el escáner. Esta hoja es para usar sólo cuando “Scan Mode” de la aplicación está ajustado en “Black and White”. Si se carga con “Scan Mode” ajustado en “Grayscale” o “Color”, será ignorada.

- **Hojas de separación de tareas**

Divide automáticamente un documento en archivos separados y los almacena como diferentes documentos. Inserte esta Hoja de función en donde quiera dividir el documento, y cárguela junto con el documento en el escáner.



OBSERVACIÓN

- Haga copias de las Hojas de función originales y guarde los originales en un lugar seguro y limpio.
- Si copia las Hojas de función, asegúrese de que las copias sean del mismo tamaño que el de los originales y nítidas y claras, no muy claras ni muy oscuras. Las copias demasiado claras u oscuras podrán ocasionar errores de exploración.
- Cuando copie una Hoja de función, cópiela en papel del mismo grosor que el documento que esté explorando. Si el papel de la copia es de un grosor diferente, podrá detectarse doble alimentación (P. 63), con resultado de un error de doble alimentación.
- Si hace una copia de una Hoja de función en un tamaño diferente a A4, ajuste de forma que el patrón quede a 10 mm del borde superior de la hoja. Además, asegúrese de que el patrón sea copiado en el centro a lo largo del ancho de la hoja.
- Maneje las Hojas de función con cuidado. Asegúrese de no doblarlas, enrollarlas, marcarlas, ni mancharlas de ninguna forma. En particular, evite que se ensucien los primeros 51 mm de borde superior de la hoja. Las hojas de función marcadas o sucias podrán ocasionar errores de exploración.
- Si durante la exploración con las Hojas de función la densidad está ajustada muy alta o muy baja, los documentos podrán no explorarse correctamente.

3.3

Fijación de las condiciones de exploración

Las condiciones que se aplican cuando se explora un documento se configuran en el panel de operación. Básicamente, se configuran los tres elementos siguientes:

- **Configuración básica**

Para configurar las condiciones de exploración más básicas: modo de alimentación, brillo, simplex/duplex, etc.

- **Configuración con las teclas de función**

Para invocar una configuración ya registrada en una tecla de función y usar esa configuración.

- **Configuración modo Usuario**

Para ajustar el modo de operación del escáner (modo Usuario) para elementos tales como el método de detección del original.

A continuación se describe cada uno de estos métodos de configuración.



En el panel de operación sólo se configuran algunas de las condiciones de exploración disponibles. En la aplicación se configuran otros ajustes más detallados. Para más detalles, consulte las “Instrucciones para el controlador ISIS/TWAIN” o las “Instrucciones para la Scanning Utility 5000” por separado.

Configuración básica

El panel de operación se pueden configurar los elementos siguientes de acuerdo con el tipo de documento a explorar.



The diagram shows a control panel with the following elements: a numeric keypad (1-4), mode selection buttons (Text, Picture, Simplex Duplex), a brightness display (0000) with a central 'A' button and left/right arrow buttons, a Feeding Option selector (Semi-Auto, Auto, Manual), a New File button, a Count Only button, and a large circular Stop button (C/⊗).

Teclas de función (P. 60)

Tecla Simplex/Duplex
 Selecciona la exploración del documento por una sola cara o bien por ambas caras.
 Simplex: Enciéndala para explorar sólo una cara del documento.
 Duplex: Enciéndala para explorar ambas caras del documento.

Teclas de selección de modo
 Seleccionan el modo de exploración del documento. ("Black and White/Black and White error diffusion")
 Text: Se enciende cuando se exploran documentos de texto (incluyendo caracteres en su mayoría) en el modo blanco y negro.
 Picture: Se enciende cuando se exploran documentos de imágenes, incluidas fotografías, en el modo de difusión de error blanco y negro.
 Si la selección de imagen en cualquiera que sea la aplicación está ajustada en el modo de escala de grises o modo de color, no se encenderá ninguna de las indicaciones de

Tecla de brillo
 Ajusta el brillo cuando se explora el documento.
 Para ajustar automáticamente el brillo, presione la tecla (A) para que ésta se encienda.
 Para ajustar manualmente el brillo, presione la tecla (◀) o (▶) para mover la indicación por encima de la tecla con el fin de ajustar el brillo. (Al presionar la tecla (▶) se aumenta el brillo, mientras que al presionar la tecla (◀) se reduce. El brillo de puede ajustar en 13 pasos).
 En el modo Count Only, puede ajustar el valor inicio de cuenta con la tecla (◀) o (▶).

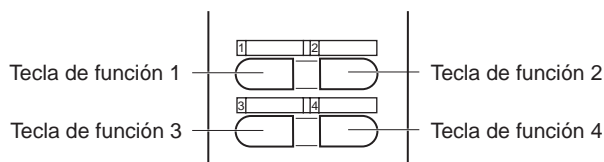
Tecla Feeding Option (P. 39)
 Selecciona el modo de alimentación de documentos.
 Remote: Las tres lámparas a la izquierda de esta tecla están apagadas. El documento pasa cuando el escáner recibe una instrucción de inicio de exploración del ordenador.
 Semi-Auto: El escáner pasa el documento cuando usted presione la tecla de inicio después de cargar el documento.
 Auto: El escáner pasa automáticamente el documento cuando usted lo carga.
 Manual: Cargue manualmente las hojas del documento una a una.

Tecla Count Only (P. 53)
 Ponga el escáner en el modo Count Only para únicamente contar las hojas del documento.
 Cuando presione esta tecla, ésta se encenderá. Si carga el documento y presiona la tecla de inicio en este estado, el documento pasará y el escáner contará el número de hojas. (El documento no será explorado.) El numero de hojas se mostrará en el visor de

Tecla New File
 Presione esta tecla para almacenar imágenes exploradas en archivos separados.
 Cuando presione esta tecla, ésta se encenderá. Cuando explore el siguiente documento en este estado, la imagen explorada se guardará en una carpeta distinta a la usada para guardar el documento anterior.
 Cuando esté ajustado Auto New File en la aplicación, esta tecla se encenderá automáticamente al terminar de explorarse cada manojos de documentos.

Tecla de parada
 Presione esta tecla para cancelar la exploración antes de que finalice.
 Utilice también esta tecla para cancelar el modo ajustado actualmente y para cancelar un error mostrado en el visor de contador.
 Para reponer el visor de contador a "0000", mantenga presionada esta tecla durante dos segundos por lo menos.

Configuración de las teclas de función



En la parte superior el panel de operación hay cuatro teclas de función. Si asigna los elementos siguientes en las teclas de operación, podrá utilizarlas fácilmente mediante un solo toque en el panel de control.

A las teclas de función se les puede asignar las funciones siguientes:

- **Ajuste manual del grosor**
Ajusta manualmente el grosor del papel.
- **Activación/desactivación del impresor**
Selecciona el uso del impresor cuando esté instalado el impresor opcional.
- **Activación/desactivación del modo de grosor fijado**
Fija el grosor de papel a un grosor establecido.
- **Activación/desactivación de detección de doble alimentación**
Detecta automáticamente la alimentación simultánea de dos o más documentos durante la exploración.
- **Activación/desactivación de la reposición de ajustes memorizados**
Asigna a las teclas de función las configuraciones del escáner que haya ajustado en el ordenador personal. Una vez asignadas las configuraciones, éstas pueden utilizarse en el escáner simplemente presionando una tecla de función.

Estas funciones se asignan a las teclas de función en la aplicación. Para más detalles sobre cómo asignar configuraciones a las teclas de función, consulte las “Instrucciones para el controlador ISIS/TWAIN” o las “Instrucciones para la Scanning Utility 5000” por separado.



- La configuración por defecto es la siguiente:
Tecla de función 1: Ajuste manual del grosor
Tecla de función 2: Activación/desactivación del impresor
(cuando esté instalada esta opción)
Tecla de función 3: Activación/desactivación del ajuste del grosor fijado
Tecla de función 4: Activación/desactivación de detección de doble alimentación
- Los detalles de las funciones asignadas a cada tecla de función se almacenan en el escáner. Tenga en cuenta que si se repara el escáner estos detalles revertirán a los de por defecto.

◆ Ajuste manual del grosor

Este escáner ha sido configurado inicialmente para detectar automáticamente el grosor del papel durante la exploración. Sin embargo, esta función podrá no funcionar debidamente cuando se explore papel muy grueso o muy fino. Si se da el caso, el usuario deberá ajustar manualmente el grosor de papel de forma que el documento pase sin problemas a través del escáner. A continuación se describe el procedimiento para ajustar manualmente el grosor del papel.

1 Presione la tecla de función que tenga asignado el ajuste manual del grosor (por defecto es la tecla de función 1).

⇒ La tecla presionada parpadeará, y en el visor de contador aparecerá “Adj” parpadeando.

La lámpara Semi-Auto se encenderá, y el centro de la tecla de inicio parpadeará en verde.



Para cancelar la función de ajuste de grosor del papel, presione la tecla que está parpadeando o la tecla de parada.

2 Cargue una hoja del documento a explorar en la bandeja de documentos, y presione la tecla de inicio.

⇒ Con esto se explorará el documento, y el grosor del papel se mostrará en el indicador.

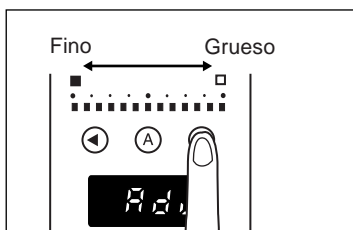


El grosor de papel mostrado en el indicador no es exacto, pero sirve de ayuda a la hora de ajustar el grosor del papel.

3 Presione la tecla ◀ o ▶ para ajustar el grosor del papel.

Al presionar la tecla ◀ o ▶ el indicador se moverá hacia la izquierda o derecha respectivamente.

Para fijar un ajuste de papel más grueso, presione la tecla ▶. Para fijar un ajuste de papel más fino, presione la tecla ◀. EL grosor del papel puede ajustarse en 13 pasos.



4 Presione otra vez la tecla que parpadea.

➔ Con esto se fijará el grosor del papel y se repondrá el visor de contador.



- Para habilitar el valor ajustado con el procedimiento de arriba, deberá establecer el modo de grosor fijado (P. 62)
- El grosor del papel también se puede ajustar en la aplicación. Cuando el grosor del papel haya sido ajustado en el panel de operación del escáner y en la aplicación, tendrá prioridad el último que haya sido ajustado.

◆ Activación/desactivación del impresor

Si ha instalado el impresor opcional en el escáner, podrá seleccionar si quiere o no utilizarlo con una tecla de función.

Para habilitar el uso del impresor, presione la tecla de función a la que haya asignado el impresor, y explore el documento estando encendida la lámpara de la tecla.

Para deshabilitar el uso del impresor, explore el documento estando apagada la lámpara de la tecla.

◆ Activación/desactivación del modo del grosor fijado

Este escáner ha sido ajustado inicialmente para detectar automáticamente el grosor del papel antes de la exploración. Sin embargo, también tiene el modo Grosor fijo para fijar el ajuste de grosor del papel. Cuando ponga el escáner en el modo Grosor fijo, se deshabilitará la función de detección automática de grosor del papel, y el grosor del papel se fijará al valor ajustado en “Ajuste manual del grosor” (P. 61).

Puede seleccionar si quiere detectar automáticamente el grosor del papel o bien habilitar el modo Grosor fijo con una tecla de función.

Para poner el modo Grosor fijo, presione la tecla de función (por defecto es la tecla 3) a la que haya asignado el modo Grosor fijo, explore el documento con la lámpara de la tecla encendida.

Para volver al modo de detección automática de grosor del papel, presione la tecla a la que haya asignado el modo Grosor fijo para apagar la lámpara.

◆ Activación/desactivación de detección de doble alimentación

Este escáner tiene una función de “detección de doble alimentación”. Esta función memoriza el grosor y la longitud del papel a usar como documento estándar, y detecta automáticamente la doble alimentación (alimentación simultánea o dos o más hojas), y muestra un error cuando detecta doble alimentación.

La activación o desactivación de la función de doble alimentación puede seleccionarla con una tecla de función.

Para detectar la doble alimentación, presione la tecla a la que se le haya asignado la detección de doble alimentación (por defecto es la tecla de función 4), y explore el documento con la lámpara de la tecla encendida.

Para deshabilitar la detección de doble alimentación, presione la tecla a la que haya asignado la detección de doble alimentación para apagar la lámpara.



MEMORÁNDUM

- Dado que para detectar la doble alimentación se usa como estándar la primera hoja del documento, si ocurre doble alimentación en la primera hoja del documento podrá no detectarse. Compruebe la imagen explorada para ver si la primera hoja del documento ha sido alimentada y explorada correctamente.
- La detección de doble alimentación no es posible en documentos que tienen una anchura de 130 mm o menos.
- Cuando el escáner detecta un original 5 mm más largo o 1,5 veces más grueso que el documento estándar, lo toma automáticamente como doble alimentación y muestra un mensaje de error.
- Cuando se active la función de doble alimentación con una tecla de función, la doble alimentación se detectará mediante la longitud y grosor del documento. La detección de doble alimentación mediante sólo la longitud o el grosor del documento no se puede asignar a teclas de función.
Aunque esto puede ajustarse en el controlador o en la aplicación, la tecla de función no se enciende en este caso. La tecla de función se enciende cuando la detección de doble alimentación está ajustada para ambos, la longitud y el grosor del documento.
- La detección de doble alimentación se borra de la memoria del escáner cuando se apaga el escáner.

◆ Activación/desactivación de la restauración de ajustes memorizados

Puede asignar a las teclas de función del escáner las configuraciones del escáner que se ajustan en el ordenador.

Se pueden asignar configuraciones acordes con el original que esté explorando a cada una de las cuatro teclas de función. Una vez asignada una configuración de escáner a una tecla de función, esa tecla de función se encenderá. Tenga en cuenta, sin embargo, que los ajustes de modo, resolución de exploración y tamaño del original deberán ser ajustados antes de comenzar la exploración porque estos ajustes no se pueden asignar a las teclas de función.

Para utilizar la configuración de escáner asignada, presione la tecla de función a la que haya asignado la configuración deseada antes de abrir el cuadro de diálogo de configuraciones del escáner en la aplicación.

La tecla de función asignada se encenderá, y se restablecerá la configuración de escáner en el escáner. Cuando cambie la configuración de escáner restablecida, la tecla de función se apagará. La tecla de función se volverá a encender cuando restablezca la configuración cambiada a la original.

Configuración del modo Usuario

El DR-5020/5080C le permite seleccionar el modo de operación (modo Usuario) a usar para cada uno de los elementos de abajo.

(Las configuraciones U5 a U9 sólo están disponibles cuando haya sido instalado el dispositivo opcional correspondiente (impresor, decodificador de código de barras o sello)).

Configuración del zumbador del panel de operación

- U1-0 No emitir sonido durante la operación.
- U1-1 Emitir sonido durante la operación. (por defecto)

Configuración de detección de documento

- U2-0: Detecta la anchura del documento mediante la anchura del documento.
- U2-1: Detecta la anchura del documento mediante la anchura de la guía de documentos. (por defecto)

- U3-0 No detectar desviación de documento. (por defecto)
- U3-1 Detectar desviación de documento y parar la exploración.
- U3-2 Detectar desviación de documento y parar la exploración. (excluyendo el modo manual)

Configuración de sincronización SCSI

- U4-0 No transferir sincronización SCSI.
- U4-1 Transferir sincronización SCSI. (por defecto)

Configuración de código de barras

- U5-0 No emitir sonido durante la lectura de código de barras.
- U5-1 Emitir sonido durante la lectura de código de barras. (por defecto)

- U6-0 Emitir códigos de inicio/parada en código de barras en minúsculas. (por defecto)
- U6-1 Emitir códigos de inicio/parada en código de barras en mayúsculas.

- U7-0 No verificar código de barras.
- U7-1 Verificar código de barras. (por defecto)
- U7-2 Verificar código de barras dos veces.
- U7-3 Verificar código de barras tres veces.

Configuración del modo Count Only

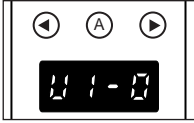
- U8-0 No utilizar el impresor/sello en el modo Count Only. (por defecto)
- U8-1 Utilizar el impresor/sello en el modo Count Only.

Ajuste del modo del sello

- U9-0 Utilizar el sello en el modo de comprobación. (por defecto)
- U9-1 Utilizar el sello en el modo A4.

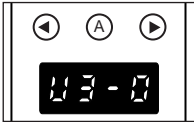
◆ Cómo ajustar el modo Usuario

- 1 Mantenga presionada la tecla **(A)** durante cinco segundos por lo menos.



⇒ La tecla **(A)** parpadeará y el modo Usuario aparecerá en el visor de contador.

- 2 Seleccione la dirección del modo Usuario (una de U1 a U9) con la tecla **(◀)** o **(▶)**.



- 3 Presione la tecla **(A)** para seleccionar el modo (último número) a usar.



- 4 Presione la tecla de parada.

⇒ Con esto se fija el modo seleccionado, y se devuelve el visor de contador a la visualización de contador.

Capítulo 4

Solución de problemas

Este capítulo describe la causas de los problemas que podrán surgir en el DR-5020/5080C y el modo de remediarlos.

4.1 Cuando el escáner no sea reconocido	68
4.2 Para retirar el papel atascado	70
4.3 Problemas en la alimentación de papel	75
4.4 Cuando la imagen explorada no sea normal	77
4.5 Cuando se visualice un código de error	78

4.1

Cuando el escáner no sea reconocido

A continuación se describen las causas posibles por las que su ordenador podrá no reconocer el escáner. Remedie el problema siguiendo el remedio de la causa correspondiente.

Causa El escáner no está conectado correctamente.

Remedio Conecte el escáner a la tarjeta SCSI correctamente.

Causa La tarjeta SCSI no está conectada correctamente.

Remedio Conecte la tarjeta SCSI correctamente refiriéndose al manual de la tarjeta SCSI.

Además, compruebe lo siguiente de acuerdo con el sistema operativo con el que funcione su ordenador.

<Windows95>

Compruebe en [Inicio] – [Configuración] – [Panel de control] – [Sistema] – [Administrador de dispositivos] para ver si “x” o “!” está visualizado para el controlador SCSI. Si está visualizado cualquiera de ellos, reinicie la tarjeta SCSI refiriéndose al manual de la tarjeta SCSI.

<WindowsNT>

Compruebe en [Inicio] – [Configuración] – [Panel de control] – [Adaptador SCSI] para ver si la tarjeta SCSI ha sido reconocida correctamente.. En caso negativo, reinicie la tarjeta SCSI refiriéndose al manual de la tarjeta SCSI.

Causa Se está utilizando el mismo identificador SCSI para otros dispositivos SCSI

Remedio Compruebe el identificador SCSI de todos los dispositivos SCSI, y asegúrese de que no esté ajustado el mismo identificador SCSI para dos o más dispositivos. Reponga los identificadores SCSI si están ajustados los mismos identificador SCSI.

Causa El terminador no está conectado correctamente.

Remedio Conecte el terminador al último dispositivo SCSI al final de conexión en serie. Si el dispositivo SCSI tiene una función de terminador incorporada, habilite la función del terminador.

Causa **Ha encendido el escáner antes que el ordenador.**

Remedio Apague el ordenador y el escáner, y ahora encienda el escáner y luego el ordenador otra vez.

Causa **El escáner está apagado.**

Remedio Apague el ordenador, encienda el escáner y luego encienda el ordenador otra vez.

Causa **El cable de alimentación del escáner se ha desconectado del escáner o de la toma de corriente de CA.**

Remedio Apague el ordenador, y conecte correctamente el cable de alimentación del escáner. Luego, encienda el escáner y luego encienda el ordenador otra vez.

Causa **El escáner no soporta la tarjeta SCSI.**

Remedio Reemplace la tarjeta SCSI con una compatible con la aplicación del controlador.

4.2

Para retirar el papel atascado

Si la exploración se para a medio recorrido o en el visor de contador aparecer "PXX", podrá deberse a un atasco de papel.

Para retirar el papel atascado dentro del DR-5020/5080C, siga el procedimiento de abajo.

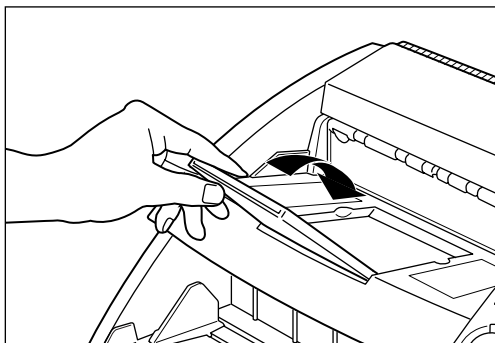


PRECAUCIÓN

- Tenga cuidado cuando retire el papel atascado. Podrá herirse inesperadamente. Por ejemplo, podrá cortarse los dedos con los bordes del papel o dañar el documento.
- Retire todas las hojas de papel atacadas. Los restos de papel dejados en el interior del escáner podrán ser arrastrados de nuevo, y ocasionar otro atasco de papel o malfuncionamiento.
- Al abrir o cerrar la unidad superior, tenga cuidado de no pellizcarse los dedos.

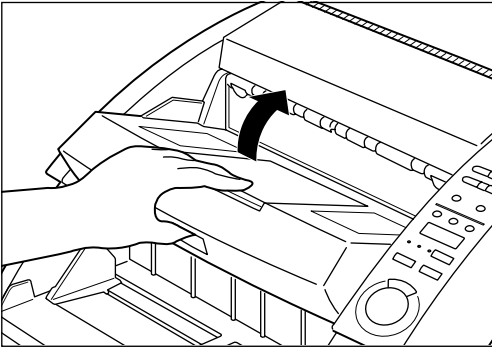
Atasco de papel en la unidad de alimentación de papel

- 1** Retire los documentos que haya en la bandeja de documentos y extraiga la bandeja.
- 2** Retire la bandeja de quita y pon o la placa de apoyo para documentos de salida si está instalada en la bandeja de salida de documentos. Cierre la guía de la bandeja de salida de documentos si está abierta.

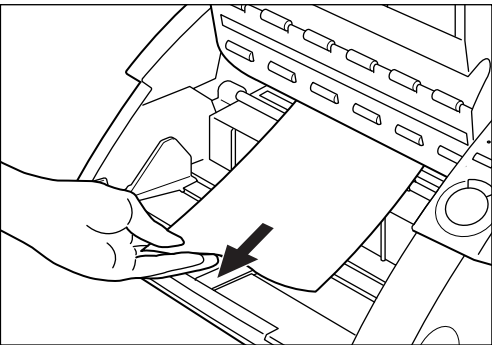


3 Abra la unidad superior.

Presione el botón de apertura/cierre, y suba la unidad superior hasta que se pare y se mantenga en esa posición.

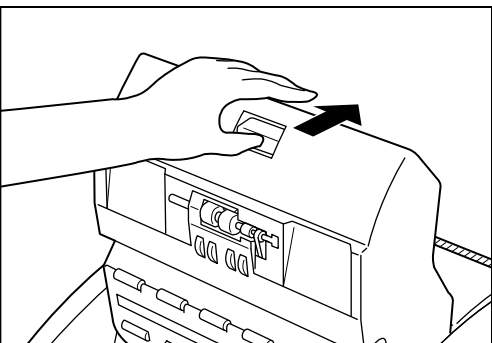


4 Retire el papel atascado del interior del escáner.



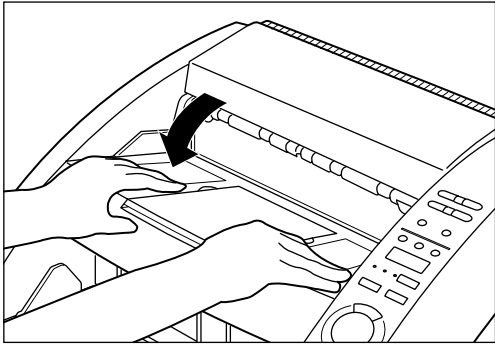
5 Para cerrar la unidad superior, empújela hacia dentro a tope, y luego suéltela.

Cuando suelte la unidad superior, ésta comenzará a bajarse lentamente. No aplique fuerza innecesaria al empujar la unidad superior hacia abajo. De hacerlo podrá dañar el escáner.



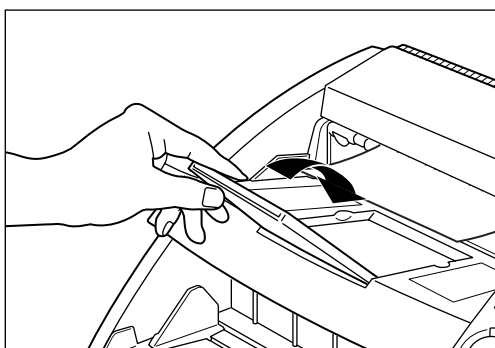
6 Cuando la unidad superior se haya bajado a tope, presiónela firmemente en ambos lados para cerrarla.

Si sólo presiona un lado de la unidad superior, el lado opuesto no se cerrará completamente. Asegúrese de que encaja en posición produciendo un chasquido.

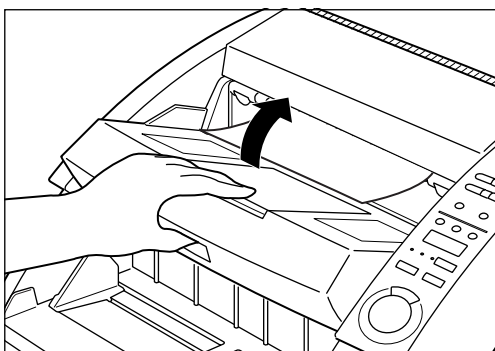


Atasco de papel en la sección de salida del papel

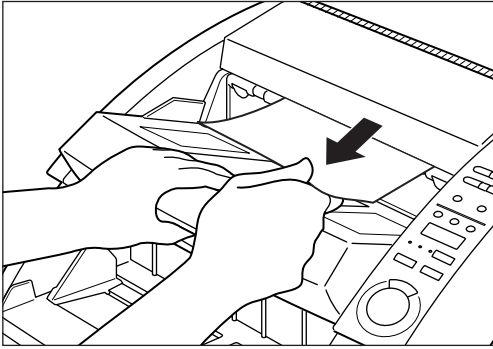
- 1** Retire el papel atascado de la bandeja de alimentación o de la bandeja de salida de documentos.
- 2** Retire la bandeja de quita y pon o la placa de apoyo para documentos de salida si están instaladas en la bandeja de documentos. Cierre la extensión de la bandeja de documentos de salida si está abierta.



- 3** Abra la unidad superior.
Presione el botón de apertura/cierre, y suba ligeramente la unidad superior.

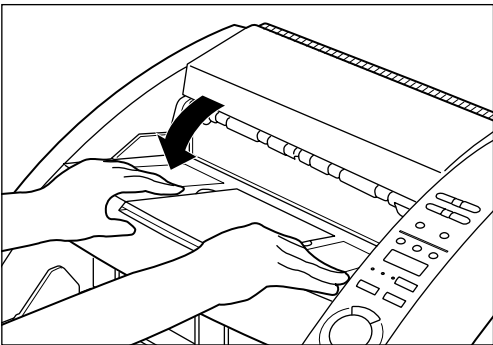


4 Retire cualquier papel atascado en la sección de salida.



5 Presione firmemente la unidad superior en ambos lados para cerrarla.

Si sólo presiona un lado de la unidad superior, el lado opuesto no se cerrará completamente. Asegúrese de que encaja en posición produciendo un chasquido.



4.3

Problemas en la alimentación de papel

Si el documento no pasa debidamente o la función de detección no funciona sin complicaciones, remedie el problema tomando las medidas indicadas abajo.

Condición	Se ha atascado el papel.
Causa y remedio	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Compruebe el documento para ver si su tamaño y grosor se encuentran dentro de los límites soportados por el escáner, y para ver si la calidad del papel del documento es apropiada. Para las precauciones sobre el manejo de documentos, consulte “Acerca de los documentos” (P. 36).• El error de alimentación del papel puede deberse a que el documento es escurridizo (P. 32). Deslice la palanca de ajuste de alimentación de papel para ajustar la alimentación del papel.• Los rodillos sucios o desgastados pueden ocasionar atascos de papel. Limpie los rodillos si están sucios (P. 83) Los rodillos desgastados deberán reemplazarse. Póngase en contacto con el departamento de servicio Canon.

Condición	La bandeja de documentos no se eleva ni queda en posición con un chasquido.
Causa y remedio	El peso del papel cargado algunas veces aumenta debido al ambiente (por ejemplo, lugares muy húmedos) en el que se guardan los documentos. Si se da el caso, el peso del papel excederá el peso apilado máximo permitido aunque el número de hojas del manojó sea inferior al máximo, y algunas veces impedirá a la bandeja de documentos elevarse. Reduzca el número de hojas del documento cargado en la bandeja de documentos y explore el documento otra vez.

Condición	Aunque los documentos entran bien, ocurre error de alimentación de papel. (error en la detección doble alimentación)
Causa y remedio	Si el tamaño y grosor del papel en el que ha copiado la Hoja de función difieren de los del documento a explorar cuando se usa la Hoja de función, el escáner lo tomará erróneamente como doble alimentación, y ocurrirá este error. Si se da el caso, desactive la detección de doble alimentación, y explore el documento otra vez. O, copie la Hoja de función en papel del mismo tamaño y grosor que el documento, y use esa copia.

Condición	No se detecta la doble alimentación.
Causa y remedio	La detección de doble alimentación no es posible en documentos que tienen una anchura de 130 mm o menos aunque esté activada la detección de doble alimentación.
Condición	Aunque el papel no está entrando en ángulo, ocurre error de desviación.
Causa y remedio	El escáner determina erróneamente que está ocurriendo desviación de papel. Este error ocurre cuando el área 5 mm desde el borde superior del original contiene texto o imagen o el original tiene fondo negro. Si ocurre este error, desactive la detección de desviación y explore el documento otra vez. O, copie el documento en un papel diferente, disponga un margen más amplio alrededor del documento (o aclare el fondo), y explore el documento otra vez.
Condición	Cuando el documento se ensucie (con el impresor instalado).
Causa y remedio	Esto se debe a que la tinta se pega en los orificios de la placa guía en el interior del impresor. Limpie esos orificios con un palillo de cabeza de algodón.



Cuando la imagen explorada no sea normal

Si hay algún problema en la hoja explorada (la imagen no es nítida o aparecen bandas en la imagen), podrá deberse a una de las causas siguientes. Compruebe lo siguiente y tome la medida apropiada.

- **El vidrio de exploración y los rodillos del escáner están sucios.**
Si los vidrios de exploración y los rodillos están sucios, la suciedad aparecerá en la imagen explorada.
→ Limpie los vidrios de exploración y los rodillos. Para detalles, consulte el Capítulo 5 “Limpieza diaria” (P. 83)
- **Las condiciones de exploración no son apropiadas.**
Cuando el ajuste de las condiciones de exploración no sean apropiadas, la imagen explorada no será nítida o estará oscurecida.
→ Compruebe el brillo y otros ajustes del escáner.
Si la imagen explorada está borrosa o el documento no se explora en absoluto, una de las causas probables será que el brillo está ajustado muy alto.
Si la imagen explorada está oscurecida, una de las causas probables será que el brillo está muy bajo.
Además, compruebe los ajustes en el controlador y en la aplicación.
- **El controlador o la aplicación no funciona correctamente.**
Si el documento no se puede explorar correctamente aunque se ajusten las condiciones de exploración, una de las causas probables será que el controlador o la aplicación no está funcionando correctamente.
→ Reinstale el controlador o la aplicación.
Para detalles sobre cómo instalar el controlador, consulte las Instrucciones para el controlador ISIS/TWAIN por separado.
Para detalles sobre cómo instalar la aplicación, consulte el manual de instrucciones de la aplicación que esté usando.
- **Otras causas**
El ordenador podrá estar reconociendo correctamente el escáner, y la exploración podrá no ser posible con el controlador y la aplicación correctamente instalados. Si se da el caso, una de las causas probables será que la tarjeta SCSI no es apta para el ordenador en la que está instalada. Este mensaje de error algunas veces dejará de aparecer desactivando la transferencia asincronizada en el modo Usuario del escáner (P. 64). Si esto no resuelve el problema, póngase en contacto con el fabricante del ordenador o de la tarjeta SCSI.

Si los remedios de arriba no resuelven el problema, póngase en contacto con el departamento de servicio Canon.

4.5

Cuando se visualice un código de error

Cuando ocurra un malfuncionamiento en el escáner o un problema en la alimentación o salida de papel, aparecerá un código de error en el visor de contador del panel de operación. A continuación se describen los códigos de error que aparecen en el visor de contador y cómo remediar el error.

Códigos de error	d01, d02, d03
Causa	Se han explorado dos o más documentos a la vez.
Remedio	Presione la tecla de parada para reponer el contador a "0". Compruebe el documento con la imagen explorada, y explore el documento otra vez.
Códigos de error	C01
Causa	La unidad superior está abierta.
Remedio	Cierre la unidad superior.
Códigos de error	C02
Causa	La tapa del impresor está abierta. (Con el impresor instalado)
Remedio	Cierre la tapa del impresor.
Códigos de error	C03
Causa	La unidad superior y la tapa del impresor están abiertas. (Con el impresor instalado)
Remedio	Cierre la tapa de la unidad superior y del impresor.
Códigos de error	C04
Causa	La tapa del sello ED600 está abierta (con el sello ED600 instalado)
Remedio	Cierre la tapa del sello ED600.
Códigos de error	C05
Causa	La unidad superior y la tapa del sello ED600 están abiertas (con el sello ED600 instalado).
Remedio	Cierre la unidad superior y la tapa del sello ED600.

Códigos de error	C06
Causa	La tapa del impresor y la tapa del sello ED600 están abiertas (con el impresor y el sello ED600 instalados).
Remedio	Cierre la tapa del impresor y la tapa del sello ED600.
Códigos de error	C07
Causa	La unidad superior, la tapa del impresor y la tapa del sello ED600 están abiertas (con el impresor y el sello ED600 instalados).
Remedio	Cierre todas las tapas.
Códigos de error	E20, E21, E22, E23, E24, E25, E29, E30, E40, E41, E80, E85
Causa	Error en el interior del equipo.
Remedio	El equipo tiene que ser reparado por un ingeniero de servicio. Desconecte la alimentación, póngase en contacto con el establecimiento donde compró el equipo o con un departamento de servicio Canon, y dé cuenta del código de error.
Códigos de error	L01
Causa	Exceso de datos. La RAM se ha quedado sin espacio.
Remedio	Presione la tecla de parada para reponer el contador a "0". Para usar una función extra deberá añadir memoria opcional. Póngase en contacto con el establecimiento donde compró el equipo o con un departamento de servicio Canon. Para detalles sobre los requisitos de memoria opcional cuando se usen funciones extra, consulte "Tablas de modos de exploración del DR-5020/5080C". (P. 88)
Códigos de error	L02
Causa	Exceso de datos. La RAM se ha quedado sin espacio.
Remedio	Presione la tecla de parada para reponer el contador a "0". Este error ocurre si explora ambas caras de un documento de tamaño A3. Explore las caras del documento una a una o bien cambie el modo de exploración.

Códigos de error	U01
Causa	El número de hojas del documento a explorar excede el número de hojas contadas en la exploración de verificación.
Remedio	Podrán haberse alimentado dos o más hojas a la vez al contar el número de hojas. Presione la tecla de parada para reponer el contador a "0". Compruebe el número de hojas para ver si se han contado todas las hojas del documento, y explore el documento otra vez.
Códigos de error	U02
Causa	El número de hojas del documento explorado es inferior al número de hojas contadas en la exploración de verificación.
Remedio	Podrán haberse alimentado dos o más hojas a la vez al explorar el documento. Presione la tecla de parada para reponer el contador a "0". Compruebe el número de imágenes exploradas con el número de hojas del documento para ver si se han explorado correctamente todas las hojas del documento, y explore el documento otra vez.
Códigos de error	H01
Causa	El cartucho del impresor opcional no está instalado.
Remedio	Instale el cartucho del impresor correctamente.
Códigos de error	H02
Causa	Error de conexión del sello ED600 (opcional).
Remedio	Conecte el sello ED600 correctamente.
Códigos de error	P00, P01, P02, P03, P04, P06, P08, P010, P20
Causa	Atasco de papel en el escáner.
Remedio	Retire el papel atascado. (P. 70)
Códigos de error	P30
Causa	Atasco de papel en el sello ED600.
Remedio	Retire el papel atascado en el interior del sello ED600 de acuerdo con las instrucciones del manual de instrucciones del sello ED600.
Código de error	P80
Causa	Error de alimentación de papel.
Remedio	Abra y cierre la unidad superior.
Código de error	J18
Causa	Documento torcido.
Remedio	Retire el documento desviado. A continuación, explore el documento otra vez después de comprobar que la imagen de la hoja que se desvió ha sido explorada debidamente.

Capítulo 5

Limpieza diaria

Este capítulo describe la limpieza diaria del escáner.

5.1 Limpieza diaria	82
----------------------------------	-----------

5.1 Limpieza diaria

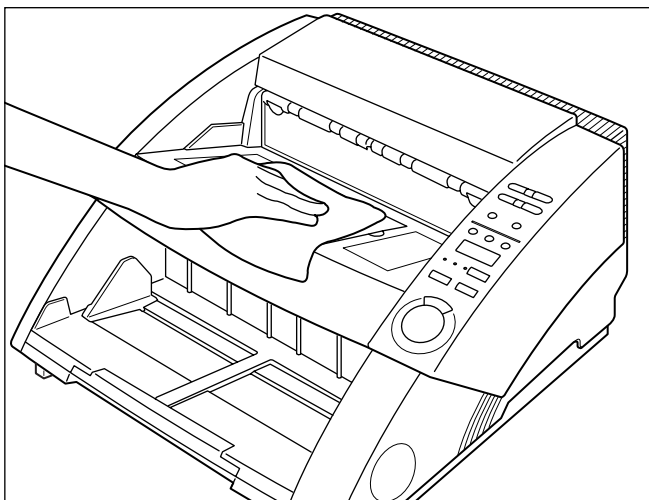
Para asegurar una exploración de imágenes de gran calidad, limpie regularmente su DR-5020/5080C como se describe abajo.



- Antes de limpiar el escáner, apague el escáner y el ordenador y desconecte el cable de alimentación de la toma de corriente. De no hacerlo así, podrá ocasionar una descarga eléctrica.
- No limpie nunca el escáner con ningún tipo disolvente orgánico tal como alcohol, bencina y diluyente de pintura. De hacerlo, podrá ocasionar un incendio o descarga eléctrica, o una deformación del exterior o decoloración.
- No rocíe nunca detergente suave ni agua directamente en los vidrios del escáner, El rocío podrá penetrar al interior del vidrio y contaminar la fuente de luz interna de los objetivos.

Limpieza de la unidad principal

Limpie el escáner con un paño humedecido ligeramente con agua o detergente suave bien escurrido. Luego límpielo con un paño limpio y seco.

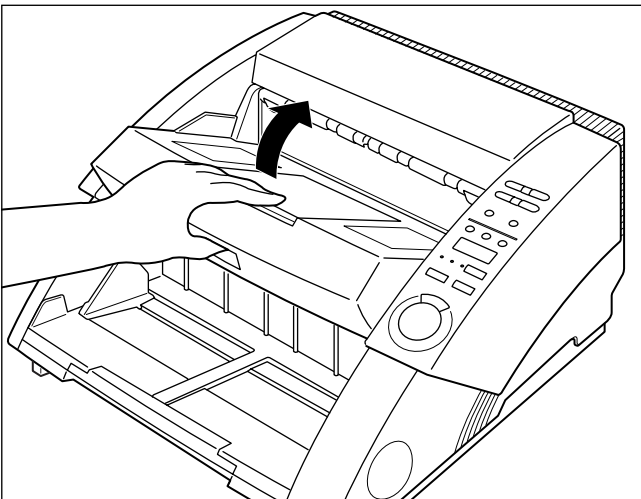


Limpieza de los vidrios y rodillos de exploración

Una causa probable de la aparición de franjas en las imágenes exploradas o de suciedad en los documentos explorados es suciedad en los vidrios y rodillos de exploración. Limpie los vidrios y rodillos de exploración regularmente.

- 1 Presione el interruptor de alimentación para apagar el escáner, y desenchufe el cable de alimentación de la toma de corriente.**
- 2 Retire la bandeja de quita y pon o la placa de apoyo para documentos de salida de la bandeja de documentos de salida si está instalada. Cierre la extensión de la bandeja de documentos de salida si está abierta.**
- 3 Abra la unidad superior.**

Presione el botón de apertura/cierre y suba con cuidado la parte superior de la unidad superior hasta que encaje en posición abierta produciendo un chasquido.



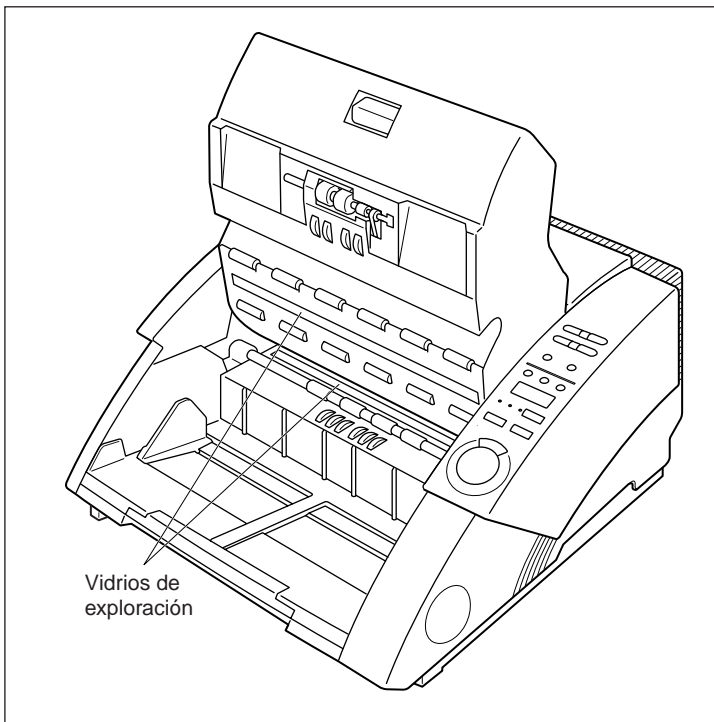
4 Utilice un paño suave, seco y limpio para limpiar los vidrios de exploración.

Asegúrese de limpiar ambos vidrios de exploración, el de abajo y el de arriba.



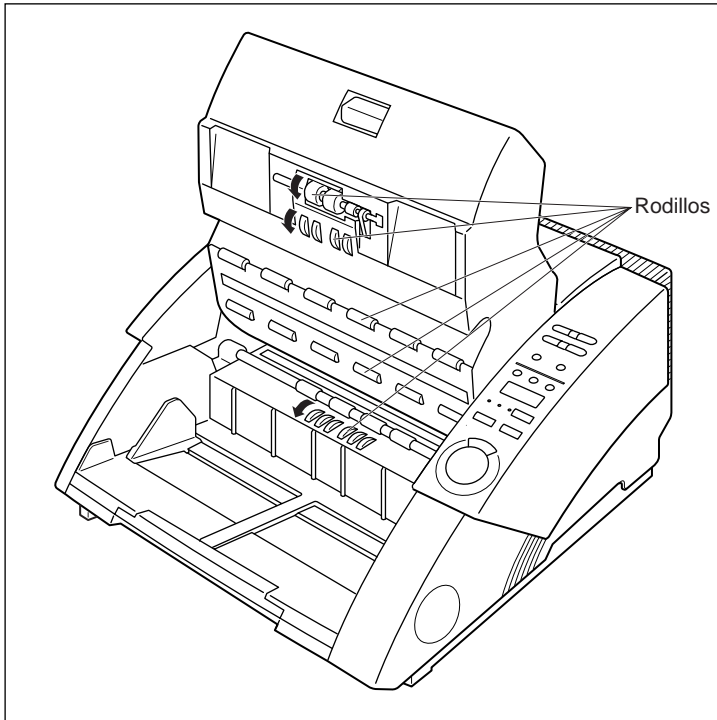
PRECAUCIÓN

No rocíe nunca detergente suave ni agua directamente en los vidrios del escáner, El rocío podrá penetrar al interior del vidrio y contaminar la fuente de luz interna de los objetivos.

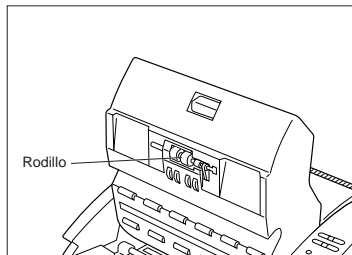


5 Limpie los rodillos con un paño humedecido con agua o detergente suave bien escurrido.

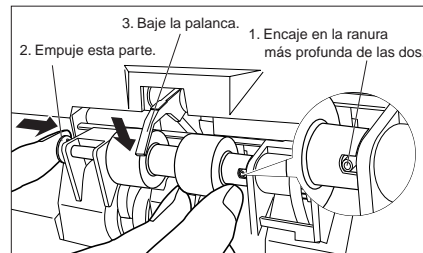
Los rodillos están ubicados en las posiciones indicadas en la figura de abajo. Gire estos rodillos en el sentido de las flechas a medida que los vaya limpiando.



OBSERVACIÓN



A



B

- Si se desenchaja el rodillo (Fig. A), vuelva a colocarlo como se muestra en la Fig. B.
- Antes de volver a poner la unidad superior en su posición original, asegúrese de bajar la palanca en la unidad de alimentación (Fig. B). Si explora el documento con la palanca en la posición superior, ocurrirá un error de alimentación.

6 Utilice un paño suave, seco y limpio para limpiar cualquier resto de agua en los rodillos.

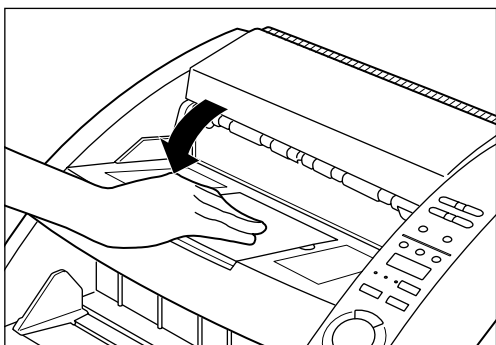
7 Para cerrar la unidad superior, empújela hacia dentro a tope, y luego suéltela.

Cuando suelte la unidad superior, ésta comenzará a bajarse lentamente. No aplique fuerza innecesaria al empujar la unidad superior hacia abajo. De hacerlo podrá dañar el escáner.



8 Cuando la unidad superior se haya bajado a tope, presiónela firmemente en ambos lados para cerrarla.

Si sólo presiona un lado de la unidad superior, el lado opuesto no se cerrará completamente. Asegúrese de que encaja en posición produciendo un chasquido.



Si ocurre atasco de papel o doble alimentación (alimentación de dos o más hojas) con frecuencia a pesar de haber limpiado los rodillos, una causa probable será fricción en los rodillos. Si este fuera el caso, reemplace los rodillos. Póngase en contacto con el establecimiento donde compró el equipo o con un departamento de servicio Canon.

Cable de alimentación

Si deja conectada la clavija de alimentación durante un largo periodo de tiempo, podrá acumularse polvo en la sección de conexión de la toma de corriente, y ocasionar un incendio o descarga eléctrica. Se recomienda limpiar periódicamente la clavija de alimentación.

Impresor

Cuando se utilice el impresor podrá adherirse suciedad en los documentos explorados.

Esto se debe a que la tinta se pega en los orificios de la placa guía en el interior del impresor. Limpie esos orificios con un palillo de cabeza de algodón.

Apéndice

◆ Tablas de modo de exploración del DR-5020/5080C

Algunas veces se mostrarán mensajes de error porque el escáner no soporta algunos modos de exploración debido a restricciones de la memoria. Si se da el caso, añada memoria opcional (sólo para el DR-5080C) consultando la tabla de abajo.



MEMORÁNDUM

- Cuando el ancho del documento exceda 216 mm en el modo dúplex a una resolución de 400 x 400 ppp, no será posible escanear.
- Dependiendo de la aplicación y controlador de escáner utilizado, el escáner podrá no soportar todos los modos.

64 MB de memoria en el DR-5080C (estándar) O: Soportado X: No soportado

Modo de exploración	Resolución (H x V)	Dúplex						Simplex							
		A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR	A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR		
2 bits	Modo texto (blanco y negro)	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	Modo foto (Blanco y negro ED)	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Escala de grises	4 niveles	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	16 niveles	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	256 niveles	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	Color	3 bits	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
300 X 300			O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
300 X 150			O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
240 X 240			O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
200 X 200			O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
6 bits		400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
12 bits		400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
24 bits		400 X 400	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	O	O
		300 X 300	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O

128 MB de memoria en el DR-5080C (opción) O: Soportado X: No soportado

Modo de exploración		Resolución (H x V)	Dúplex						Simplex							
			A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR	A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR		
2 bits	Modo texto (blanco y negro)	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	Modo foto (Blanco y negro ED)	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Escala de grises	4 niveles	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	16 niveles	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	256 niveles	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Color	3 bits	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	6 bits	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	12 bits	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	24 bits	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O

ESPAÑOL

DR-5020

O: Soportado X: No soportado

Modo de exploración		Resolución (H x V)	Dúplex						Simplex							
			A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR	A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR		
2 bits	Modo texto (blanco y negro)	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	Modo foto (Blanco y negro ED)	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O

Especificaciones del DR-5020/5080C

	DR-5020	DR-5080C
Tipo	Escáner de sobremesa	
Tamaño de documento	Ancho: 55 a 295 mm* Largo: 70 a 432 mm Grosor: 0,06 a 0,15 mm (alimentación automática) 0,06 a 0,2 mm (alimentación manual) *El ancho máximo de alimentación de documento es de 297 mm.	
Capacidad de alimentación automática	Altura de apilado máxima: 45 mm (hasta A4) 20 mm (hasta A3)	
Alimentación de documentos	Semiautomática/automática/manual	
Método de exploración	Sensor por contacto (CMOS)	
Fuente luminosa	Fila de LED en línea sencilla verde	Fila de LED en línea sencilla (RGB) 3 colores
Modo de exploración	Lado superior/Dúplex/Síplex Modo texto/foto de 2 bits	Lado superior/Dúplex/Síplex Modo Texto/foto de 2 bits Escala de grises de 4/16/256 niveles Color de 3/6/12/24 bits
Resolución de exploración (resolución de exploración primaria x dirección de exploración secundaria)	200 x 100 ppp – Síplex/Dúplex – Modo texto/Modo foto 300 x 150 ppp – Síplex/Dúplex – Modo texto/Modo foto 200 x 200 ppp – Síplex/Dúplex – Modo texto/Modo foto 240 x 240 ppp – Síplex/Dúplex – Modo texto/Modo foto 300 x 300 ppp – Síplex/Dúplex – Modo texto/Modo foto 400 x 400 ppp – Síplex/Dúplex – Modo texto/Modo foto Escalable desde 200 a 300 ppp en pasos de 10 ppp	
Velocidad de exploración (máx.)	<A4, retrato, binario sin AE> 79 hojas/min. (200 x 100 ppp – Síplex/Dúplex) 59 hojas/min. (300 x 150 ppp – Síplex/Dúplex) 50 hojas/min. (200 x 200 ppp – Síplex/Dúplex) 32 hojas/min. (300 x 300 ppp – Síplex/Dúplex) 18 hojas/min. (400 x 400 ppp – Síplex/Dúplex) <A3, binario sin AE> 58 hojas/min. (200 x 100 ppp – Síplex/Dúplex) 42 hojas/min. (300 x 150 ppp – Síplex/Dúplex) 33 hojas/min. (200 x 200 ppp – Síplex/Dúplex) 22 hojas/min. (300 x 300 ppp – Síplex/Dúplex) 13 hojas/min. (400 x 400 ppp – Síplex/Dúplex)	
Capacidad de alimentación automática	A4 (Carta) o más pequeño: Máx. 500 hojas (80 g/m ²) Más grande que A4 (Carta): Máx. 200 hojas (80 g/m ²)	
Otras funciones	Detección automática del tamaño de papel, EA, Ajuste automático del grosor de papel, función de cuenta de las hojas del documento, Detección de grosor del papel y doble alimentación, Compensación de desviación, Omisión de color, Selección de modos con las Hojas de control del escáner, etc.	
Dimensiones	262 x 427 x 485 mm (Al x An x Prf)	

Peso	20 kg. aproximadamente
Alimentación	220-240 V CA (50/60 Hz), 0,6 A (máx.) 120 V CA (60 Hz), 1 A (máx.)
Consumo	120 vatios (máx.)
Ruido	Menos de 70 dB
Ambiente de operación	Temperatura: 10°C a 32,5°C Humedad: 20% a 80% (humedad relativa) (30% a 80% de humedad relativa usando el impresor)

Las especificaciones están sujetas a cambios sin previo aviso.

Opciones

Nombre	Función
Memoria añadida (128 MB) (sólo para DR-5080C)	<p>El reemplazar los 64 MB estándar con memoria añadida permite procesar en unas condiciones de exploración más detalladas.*</p> <p>* Para detalles sobre las condiciones de exploración (combinación del modo de exploración, resolución y tamaño de papel) posibles añadiendo memoria opcional en el escáner, consulte " Tablas de modos de exploración del DR-5020/5080C " en el Apéndice (P. 88).</p>
Impresor	Imprime caracteres tales como números, letras del alfabeto y símbolos en el lado frontal del documento después de que éste se ha explorado.
Decodificador de código de barras	Lee y reconoce códigos de barras en el documento.
Sello	Estampa un número de 8 dígitos y cualquier carácter especificado en el lado posterior del documento después de que éste se ha explorado.

Para más detalles sobre cada opción, póngase en contacto con su agente de ventas.

Índice alfabético

- A -

Aberturas de ventilación	16
Acerca de los documentos	36
Ajuste de la alimentación de papel	32
Ajuste del identificador SCSI y terminador	25
Ajuste del terminador	25, 68
Ajuste manual del grosor	61
Atasco de papel	70
- en la sección de salida del papel	73
- en la unidad de alimentación de papel	70

- B -

Bandeja de documentos	15
Bandeja de quita y pon	20, 31
Bandeja de salida de documentos ..	15
Barra de extensión	15, 27
Botón de apertura/cierre	15

- C -

Cable de alimentación	14, 26
Código de barras	64
Códigos de error	78
Compensación de desviación	64
Conector del cable de alimentación	16
Conectores SCSI	16, 24
Conexión a un ordenador	24
Conexión del cable de alimentación	26
Conexión del cable SCSI	24
Conexión/desconexión de la alimentación	33
Configuración básica	59
Configuración de las teclas de función	60
Configuración del modo Usuario	64
Conmutador DIP	16, 25
Cuando el escáner no sea reconocido	68

Cuando la imagen explorada no sea normal	77, 83
---	--------

- D -

Decodificador de código de barras	92
Detección de doble alimentación	63
Detección de documento	64

- E -

Embalaje	14
Especificaciones	90
Etiquetas para la guía de documentos	20, 32
Etiquetas para las teclas de función	20
Extensión de la bandeja de documentos	15, 27
Extensión de la bandeja de salida de documentos	15, 29

- F -

Fijación de las condiciones de exploración	58
---	----

- G -

Guía de documentos	15
--------------------------	----

- H -

Hojas de control del escáner	56
Hojas de función	55
Hojas de separación de tareas	56

- I -

Impresor	60, 62, 64, 78, 79, 87, 92
Interrupción de alimentación	15

- L -

Limpieza	82
- Unidad principal	82
- Vidrios y rodillos de exploración	83
Limpieza diaria	82
Lugar de instalación	8

- M -

Mantenimiento diario	6
Memoria añadida	92
Modo automático	46
Modo count only	53, 64
Modo del grosor fijado	60, 62
Modo manual	50
Modo semiautomático	43
Modo Usuario	64

- N -

Nombres de las partes	15
- Vista frontal	15
- Vista posterior	16

- O -

Opciones	92
----------------	----

- P -

Palanca de ajuste de alimentación de papel	15, 32
Panel de operación	17, 60
Para contar el número de originales de un documento	53
Para retirar el papel atascado	70
Placa de apoyo para documentos de salida	20, 30
Precauciones de seguridad	6
Procedimiento de exploración	39
Requisitos del sistema	22

- R -

Restauración de ajustes memorizados	63
--	----

- S -

SCSI ID	25, 68
Sello	67, 78, 79, 92
Sensor	47
Sincronización SCSI	64
Solución de problemas	67

- T -

Tablas de modo de exploración	88
Tecla count only	17, 19, 53, 59
Tecla de inicio	19
Tecla de parada	19

Tecla feeding option	18, 39, 59
Tecla New File	19, 59
Tecla Simplex/Duplex	17, 59
Teclas de brillo	18, 59
Teclas de función	17, 60
Teclas de selección de modo	18, 59
Tope	15, 29
Transporte del escáner	9, 23

- U -

Unidad superior	15
-----------------------	----

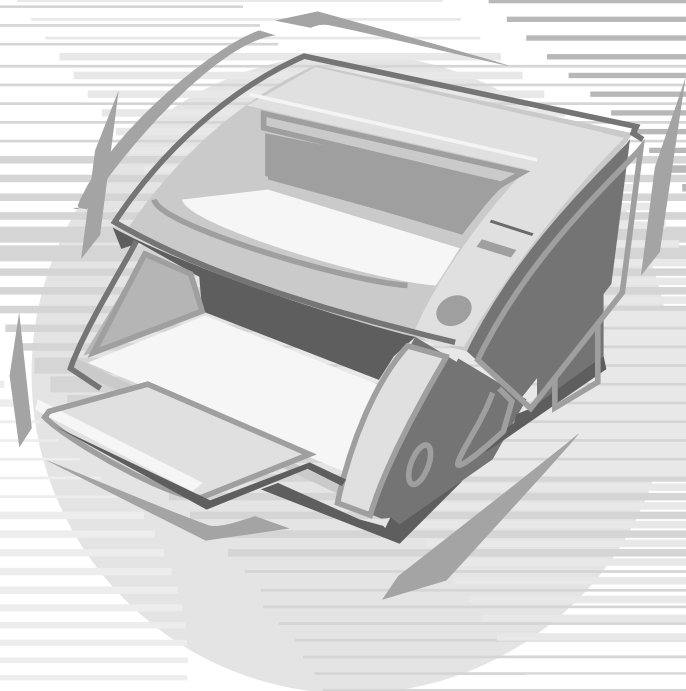
- V -

Visor de contador	18
-------------------------	----

DR-5020/5080C

Intruzioni

Assicurarsi di leggere attentamente queste Istruzioni prima di usare l'unità e conservare questo manuale in un luogo sicuro dopo l'uso.



AVVISO

- ① Copyright© 1999 di CANON ELECTRONICS INC. Tutti i diritti riservati. Nessuna parte di questa pubblicazione può essere riprodotta, trasmessa, trascritta, memorizzata in sistemi di recupero o tradotta in qualsiasi lingua o linguaggio informatico in qualsiasi forma e con qualsiasi mezzo, elettronico, meccanico, magnetico, ottico, chimico, manuale o altrimenti, senza previo permesso di CANON ELECTRONICS INC.
- ② Il contenuto di questo manuale è soggetto a modifiche senza preavviso.
- ③ Si è fatto il possibile per assicurare l'accuratezza delle informazioni contenute in questo manuale. Tuttavia, Canon Electronics Inc. e le consociate indicate sul retro copertina non si assumono alcuna responsabilità per alcun errore o le sue conseguenze.
- ④ Non ci assumiamo alcuna responsabilità per danni derivanti dalle operazioni nonostante la voce ③.

Marchi e marchi registrati

- Microsoft Windows® e Microsoft Windows NT® sono marchi registrati di Microsoft Corporation negli Stati Uniti e in altri paesi.
- ISIS® è un marchio registrato di Pixel Translation A Division of ActionPoint Inc.
- In questo manuale si fa riferimento a nomi di prodotto esclusivamente a scopo d'identificazione e teniamo a precisare che potrebbero essere marchi e/o marchi.

INTRODUZIONE

Grazie per avere acquistato Document Scanner DR-5020/5080C Canon. In tutto vengono forniti tre manuali con i modelli DR-5020 e DR-5080C: le “Istruzioni per DR-5020/5080C” (questo manuale), le “Istruzioni per Scanning Utility 5000” e le “Istruzioni per il driver SIS/TWAIN”.

Questo manuale descrive come maneggiare lo scanner, per esempio, come collegare lo scanner, come caricare la carta e come rimuovere la carta inceppata. Inoltre, descrive le precauzioni da osservare per maneggiare lo scanner. Per poter comprendere ed effettivamente utilizzare appieno tutte le funzioni dello scanner, si raccomanda di leggere questo manuale (Istruzioni per DR-5020/5080C) e gli altri manuali “Istruzioni per Scanning Utility 5000” e “Istruzioni per il driver SIS/TWAIN”, forniti a parte. I driver di scanner quali l'ISIS o il TWAIN non sono necessari in quanto il pacchetto applicativo dello scanner con il DR-5020/5080C utilizza un driver di scanner esclusivo.

Dopo avere letto il manuale, non mancare di conservarlo in un posto sicuro.

Di seguito descriviamo i contenuti di ciascuno di questi manuali.

Istruzioni per il DR-5020/5080C (questo manuale)

Questo manuale descrive come collegare lo scanner, caricare i documenti, rimuovere la carta inceppata e le altre informazioni su come maneggiare lo scanner. Leggere questo manuale prima di cominciare ad usare il DR-5020/5080C.

Istruzioni per Scanning Utility 5000

Questo manuale descrive come adoperare l'applicazione Scanning Utility 5000 fornita con questo scanner.

Istruzioni per il driver ISIS/TWAIN

Questo manuale descrive le operazioni quando lo scanner viene utilizzato con applicazioni compatibili quali un driver ISIS o un driver TWAIN.

■ Attenzione

Quando lo scanner viene utilizzato per eseguire copie, tenere conto di quanto segue:

- La riproduzione di banconote, altre forme di valute o titoli negoziabili è reato e viene perseguita in termini di legge.
- La riproduzione di certificati ufficiali, licenze, biglietti di viaggio, documenti protetti da copyright o privati e simili, anche costituisce reato e viene perseguita in termini di legge.
- Quando la copia di un'immagine viene utilizzata per altri scopi che non sia quello personale o l'uso entro i confini della propria abitazione, richiedere il permesso del proprietario del copyright.

CONVENZIONI

In questo manuale vengono utilizzati i seguenti simboli e indicazioni. Prima di cominciare a leggere il manuale, leggere quanto segue e apprenderne il significato.



Leggere attentamente per evitare rischi di morte o gravi lesioni personali.



Leggere attentamente per evitare danni all'apparecchio o perdite di dati indispensabili.



I riferimenti indicano dove reperire informazioni utili in questo manuale. Il numero racchiuso tra parentesi indica il numero della pagina che contiene ulteriori informazioni circa la frase o il paragrafo precedente.



Fornisce consigli per l'esecuzione delle operazioni e su come risolvere piccoli problemi.

■ Questa unità

In questo manuale DR-5020 e DR-5080C vengono definiti collettivamente come lo "scanner". Quando occorre una descrizione specifica per il singolo tipo di macchina, nel manuale viene specificato lo scanner DR-5020 o DR-5080C.

INDICE

INTRODUZIONE	1
CONVENZIONI	2
Precauzioni per la sicurezza	6
Capitolo 1 Il DR-5020/5080C	11
1.1 Caratteristiche del DR-5020/5080C	12
1.2 Imballo: Cosa c'è nella scatola?	14
1.3 Nome delle parti	15
◆ Vista anteriore	15
◆ Vista posteriore	16
◆ Pannello operativo	17
◆ Vassoio asportabile	20
◆ Piastra guida di emissione	20
◆ Etichette dei tasti delle funzioni	20
Capitolo 2 Preparativi prima dell'uso	21
2.1 Requisiti di sistema	22
2.2 Installazione e collegamento	23
Trasporto	23
Collegamento al computer	24
◆ Collegamento del cavo SCSI	24
◆ Impostazione dell'ID SCSI e del terminatore	25
Collegamento del cavo di alimentazione	26
◆ Collegamento del cavo di alimentazione	26
2.3 Preparazione per Alimentazione carta ed Espulsione	27
Preparazione della prolunga del vassoio degli originali e della prolunga del vassoio di emissione	27
◆ Prolunga del vassoio degli originali	27
◆ Prolunga del vassoio di emissione	29
◆ Piastra guida di emissione	30
◆ Vassoio asportabile	31
Regolazione di alimentazione carta	32
Per attaccare le etichette di guida degli originali	32
2.4 Accensione e spegnimento dello scanner	33
Accensione dello scanner	33
Spegnimento dello scanner	34

Capitolo 3 Preparazione dei documenti 35

3.1	Riguardo i documenti	36
3.2	Alimentazione documenti e loro digitalizzazione	38
	Procedura di scansione	39
	◆ Modalità Remote	40
	◆ Modalità Semi-Auto	43
	◆ Modalità Auto	46
	◆ Modalità Manual	50
	Conteggio del numero di pagine originali in un documento	53
	Fogli di funzione	55
3.3	Impostazione delle condizioni di scansione	58
	Impostazioni fondamentali	59
	Impostazioni dei tasti di funzione	60
	◆ Regolazione dello spessore manuale	61
	◆ Stampante ON/OFF	62
	◆ Modalità Spessore fisso ON/OFF	62
	◆ Individuazione alimentazione doppia ON/OFF	63
	◆ Ripristino impostazione memorizzata ON/OFF	63
	Impostazioni nella modalità utente	64
	◆ Come Impostare la modalità Utente	65

Capitolo 4 Guida e rimedi in caso di problemi di funzionamento 67

4.1	Quando lo scanner non viene rilevato	68
4.2	Rimozione degli inceppamenti della carta	70
	Inceppamento della carta nell'unità di alimentazione carta	70
	Inceppamento della carta nella sezione di uscita della carta	73
4.3	Problemi nell'alimentazione della carta	75
4.4	Quando l'immagine digitalizzata non è normale	77
4.5	Quando viene visualizzato un codice d'errore	78

Capitolo 5 Pulizia 81

5.1	Pulizia giornaliera	82
	Pulizia dell'unità principale	82
	Pulizia delle lastre di esposizione e dei rulli di scansione	83
	Cavo di alimentazione	87
	Stampante	87

Appendice	88
◆ Tabella delle modalità di scansione dei modelli DR-5020 e DR-5080C	88
Dati caratteristici del DR-5020/5080C	90
Moduli opzionali	92
INDICE ANALITICO	93

Precauzioni per la sicurezza

Manutenzione giornaliera

Quando si usa l'unità, per evitare rischi di incendi e di scosse elettriche, osservare le seguenti precauzioni:



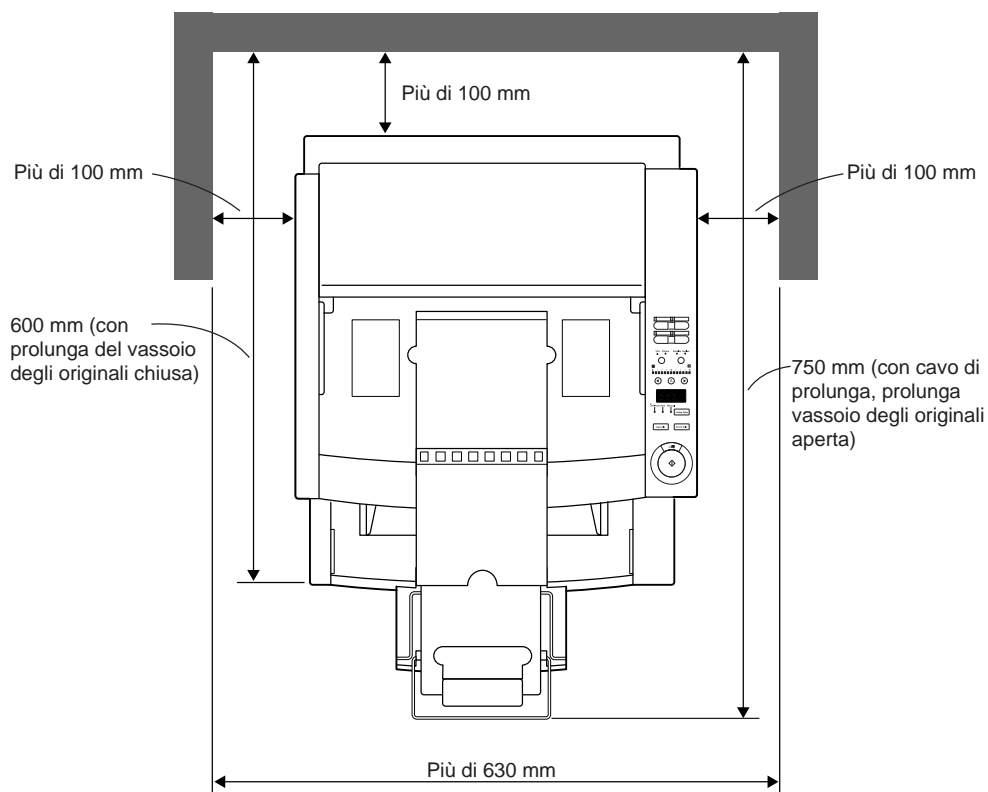
- Non installare e usare l'unità in prossimità di sostanze infiammabili quali alcool, solventi per vernici, benzene o altri tipi di sostanze volatili.
- Non danneggiare o modificare il cavo di alimentazione e mai appoggiare oggetti pesanti sul cavo di alimentazione.
- Prima di maneggiare il cavo di alimentazione o la spina, assicurarsi sempre di avere le mani asciutte. Mai afferrare la spina con le mani bagnate.
- Non inserire la spina dell'unità in una basetta per spine multiple.
- Non arrotolare, avvolgere o legare il cavo di alimentazione su se stesso o intorno ad altri oggetti. Inserire la spina fino in fondo nella presa di corrente.
- Utilizzare soltanto il cavo di alimentazione e la spina forniti in dotazione con lo scanner.
- Non tentare di smontare o modificare l'unità.
- Non utilizzare prodotti gassosi infiammabili in prossimità dell'unità.
- Prima di pulire l'unità, disattivare l'interruttore di alimentazione e disinserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa di corrente.
- Per pulire la superficie esterna dell'unità, utilizzare un panno leggermente imbevuto di acqua o detergente neutro, ben strizzato. Mai utilizzare soluzioni volatili quali alcool, benzene e diluenti per vernici.
- Se l'unità emette suoni insoliti, fumo, vibrazioni, odori strani o si surriscalda in modo anomalo, disattivare immediatamente l'interruttore di alimentazione e disinserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa di corrente. Rivolgersi subito a un centro di assistenza tecnica.
- Maneggiare l'unità con cura. Evitare di sottoporre l'unità a scosse e vibrazioni dovute a disattenzioni. Se si sospetta che l'unità sia stata danneggiata accidentalmente, disattivare immediatamente l'interruttore di alimentazione, disinserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa di corrente e rivolgersi a un centro di assistenza tecnica.
- Prima di spostare l'unità, disattivare sempre l'interruttore di alimentazione e disinserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa di corrente.



ATTENZIONE

- Per evitare di danneggiare l'unità, non appoggiare l'unità su una superficie instabile od oscillante. L'unità potrebbe rovesciarsi o cadere e causare lesioni personali.
- Per evitare surriscaldamenti e rischi di incendi, non ostruire le aperture di ventilazione sul retro dello scanner.
- Non avvicinare liquidi, bevande o fluidi di alcun tipo, fermagli, punti metallici, collane o altri oggetti metallici all'unità. Se accidentalmente viene versato un liquido o cade un oggetto metallico nell'unità, disattivare l'interruttore di alimentazione, disinserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa di corrente e rivolgersi immediatamente a un centro di assistenza tecnica.
- Non installare l'unità in posti umidi o molto polverosi. Farlo potrebbe essere causa di incendio o scossa elettrica.
- Non appoggiare oggetti pesanti sull'unità. Gli oggetti potrebbero rovesciarsi o cadere e causare lesioni personali.
- Per scollegare il cavo di alimentazione, afferrare la parte anteriore della spina. Non tentare di disinserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa di corrente tirando il cavo. Facendolo si potrebbero scoprire o rompere i fili elettrici, danneggiare il cavo di alimentazione e si correrebbe il rischio di incendi o scosse elettriche.
- Tenere l'area intorno alla presa di corrente libera da ostruzioni, in modo che la spina del cavo di alimentazione possa essere disinserita in qualsiasi momento.
- Non versare acqua o soluzioni volatili di alcun tipo (alcool, benzene, diluenti per vernici) nell'unità. Facendolo si correrebbe il rischio di incendi o scosse elettriche.
- Quando l'unità non viene utilizzata per un lungo periodo di tempo, disinserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa di corrente.
- Evitare di indossare abiti larghi, gioielli ciondolanti, lunghe cravatte o anche tenere capelli lunghi che potrebbero impigliarsi nelle parti in movimento, in particolare nei rulli di alimentazione dell'unità. Se tali oggetti dovessero impigliarsi, disinserire immediatamente la spina di alimentazione dalla presa di corrente e arrestare l'unità.
- Fare molta attenzione durante il caricamento dei documenti o la rimozione della carta inceppata. Si potrebbero subire lesioni inaspettate. Per esempio, i bordi della carta potrebbero ferire le dita.
- Non aprire la parte superiore dell'unità mentre lo scanner sta funzionando. Potrebbe essere causa di malfunzionamento o infortunio.
- Non toccare direttamente con le mani i poli e i contatti del connettore dello scanner. Potrebbe essere causa di malfunzionamento.

La posizione di installazione



Assicurarsi che lo spazio intorno allo scanner sia sufficiente per il funzionamento, la manutenzione e la ventilazione, come illustrato nella figura sopra.

Non installare l'unità nelle posizioni seguenti. Facendolo, la macchina potrebbe non funzionare correttamente o danneggiarsi e verrebbero pregiudicate le prestazioni sia dell'unità che del personal computer.

- Posizioni soggette alla luce diretta del sole
Se l'installazione in tali posizioni è inevitabile, riparare l'unità con una tenda o un oggetto simile.
- Posizioni soggette a polvere e a fumo
La polvere e il fumo di sigarette causano il deterioramento dei componenti interni dell'unità.
- In prossimità di acqua corrente, fonti di calore, vapore acqueo o in ambienti quali laboratori, esposta a gas di ammoniaca, solventi per vernici o altre sostanze chimiche volatili.
- Posizioni soggette a vibrazioni e forti scosse
- Posizioni soggette a repentine variazioni di temperatura o umidità
La condensa accumulandosi nell'unità potrebbe pregiudicare la qualità delle immagini di stampa. Installare lo scanner in un ambiente le cui condizioni rientrino nei seguenti intervalli:

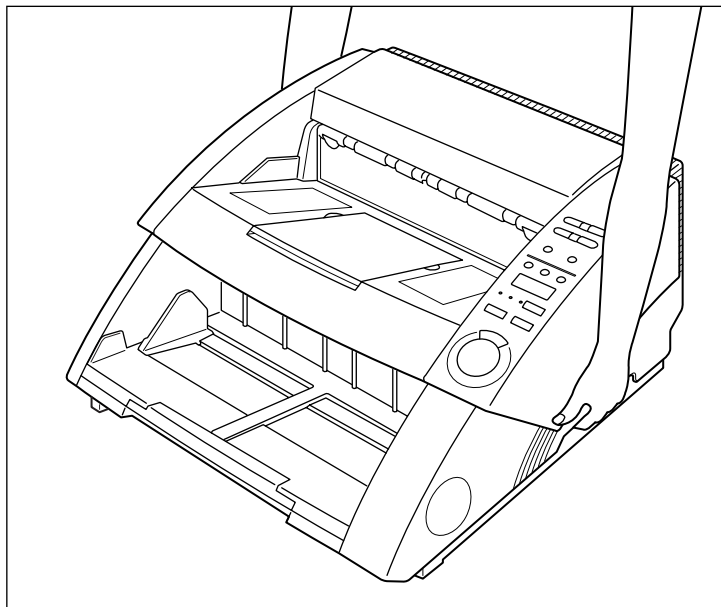
Temperatura ambiente	da 10°C a 32,5°C
Umidità relativa	da 20% a 80% UR
- In prossimità di apparecchiature elettroniche o di apparecchi che generano campi magnetici intensi quali diffusori, televisori e radio.

L'alimentazione

- Non mancare di alimentare l'unità con una tensione di 220-240 Vca (50/60 Hz)/ 120 Vca (60 Hz).
- Assicurarsi che lo scanner sia collegato a una presa di corrente indipendente. Non collegare lo scanner a una presa di corrente condivisa con un altro apparecchio. Se viene utilizzata una prolunga, fare attenzione all'ampérage totale del cavo.
- In caso di dubbi circa l'alimentazione, rivolgersi al rivenditore autorizzato o alla società che fornisce l'energia elettrica locale.
- Non appoggiare oggetti sul cavo di alimentazione o calpestarlo.
- Non arrotolare il cavo di alimentazione o avvolgere il cavo intorno a un oggetto come la gamba di un tavolo.
- Non tirare con forza il cavo di alimentazione. Per scollegare il cavo di alimentazione, afferrare la parte anteriore della spina.
- Tenere l'area intorno alla presa di corrente libera da ostruzioni.

Trasporto

- Per trasportare il DR-5020/5080C, sorreggerlo con entrambe le mani come illustrato sotto e trasportarlo con cura. A trasportarlo senza afferrarlo nelle apposite impugnature si rischia di farlo cadere, ferirsi alle dita o altri infortuni. Lo scanner pesa circa 20 kg.



AVVERTENZA

Prima di spostare l'unità, disattivare l'interruttore di alimentazione e disinserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa di corrente, sempre. Inoltre, scollegare il connettore SCSI dal connettore. Spostare lo scanner quando è acceso, oppure con il connettore SCSI collegato può essere causa di scossa elettrica.

Capitolo 1

II DR-5020/5080C

Questo capitolo descrive le caratteristiche dello scanner, il contenuto dell'imballaggio e i nomi e le funzioni delle parti dello scanner.

1.1	Caratteristiche del DR-5020/5080C ..	12
1.2	Imballo: Cosa c'è nella scatola?	14
1.3	Nome delle parti	15



Caratteristiche del DR-5020/5080C

DR-5020 e 5080C sono scanner versatili di immagini di documenti con funzioni di scansione ad alta velocità. Entrambe le unità assicurano dati immagini in bianco e nero di qualità eccellente.

Il DR-5080C offre anche funzioni per scansione a colori e in toni di grigio.

Di seguito vengono elencate le eccezionali caratteristiche del nuovo scanner.

- **Alta velocità di scansione**

È possibile la scansione ad alta velocità di documenti piccoli quali biglietti da visita e assegni, fino a documenti di formato A3. Quando vengono digitalizzati documenti di formato A4 in modalità una facciata, la velocità di scansione massima è di 50 fogli al minuto (formato A4, verticale, a modalità Simplex e Duplex, risoluzione 200 dpi).

- **Grande capacità e alimentazione della carta sicura**

- Si possono caricare in una volta fino a 500 fogli di formato A4.
- Si possono digitalizzare una varietà di documenti appartenenti a un'ampia gamma di formati e spessori di carta. L'alimentazione della carta è altamente affidabile. I documenti storti vengono raddrizzati automaticamente quando passano nello scanner. Lo scanner può trattare accuratamente documenti di formato e spessore diversi.

- **Operazioni facili da eseguire**

I documenti vengono alimentati ed emessi dal davanti dell'unità. Ciò significa che lo spazio d'installazione richiesto è minimo. La regolazione iniziale e le operazioni di funzionamento possono essere eseguite sia dal pannello di controllo che dall'applicazione, incluse la selezione di modalità Text/Picture, la selezione Simplex/Duplex, la regolazione chiaro scuro, ecc.

- **Rilevamento documento storto**

Questa funzione rileva automaticamente quando il documento viene alimentato storto e lo raddrizza.

- **Estremamente durevole**

L'unità può eseguire fino a 6 milioni di scansioni.

- **Dimensioni compatte**

262 (A) x 427 (L) x 485 (P) mm

- **Scansione semplice a colori o in toni di grigio bianco e nero (DR-5080C)**

Oltre alla scansione a 2 bit in bianco e nero, questa unità supporta varie modalità di scansione: toni di grigio (livelli 4, 16, 256) e a colori (3, 6, 12, 24 bit). A seconda della modalità di scansione può essere necessario aggiungere della memoria opzionale. Inoltre, non tutte le modalità vengono supportate, a seconda dell'applicazione e del driver di scanner utilizzati.
- **Eliminazione colore (DR-5080C)**

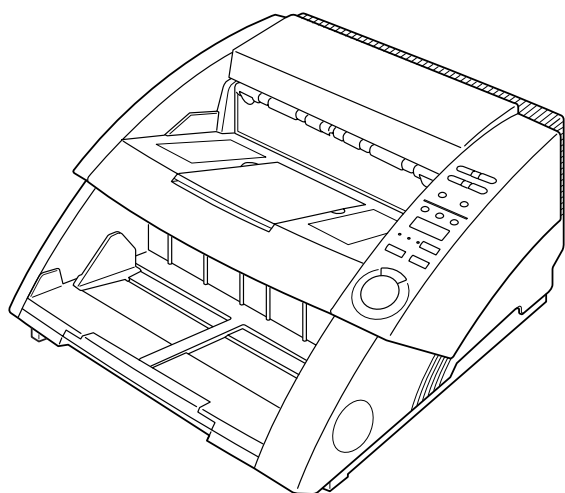
Questa funzione disattiva la scansione di eliminazione (cioè "scomparsa") di uno specifico colore nel documento.
- **Opzioni varie**

L'ampia gamma di opzioni include l'impressione di caratteri di stampa sul documento in corso di scansione, il decodificatore di codici a barre per la lettura di codici a barre nei documenti, e l'apposizione di numeri e caratteri stampati sui documenti dopo la scansione.

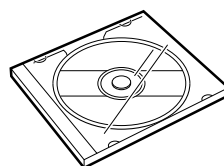
1.2

Imballo: Cosa c'è nella scatola?

Controllare che ci sia tutto. Verificare ogni elemento rimosso dalla scatola. Se mancano dei pezzi, rivolgersi al rivenditore autorizzato.



DR-5020/5080C



CD-ROM di installazione

(Scanning Utility 5000 e
driver ISIS/TWAIN)

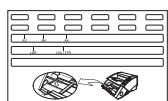


Istruzioni

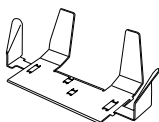
(Istruzioni per DR-5020/5080C
Istruzioni per Scanning Utility 5000
Istruzioni per il driver ISIS/TWAIN)



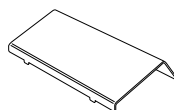
Fogli di funzione



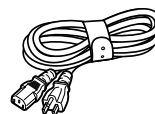
**Etichette dei tasti di
funzione**



Vassoio asportabile



**Piastra guida di
emissione**



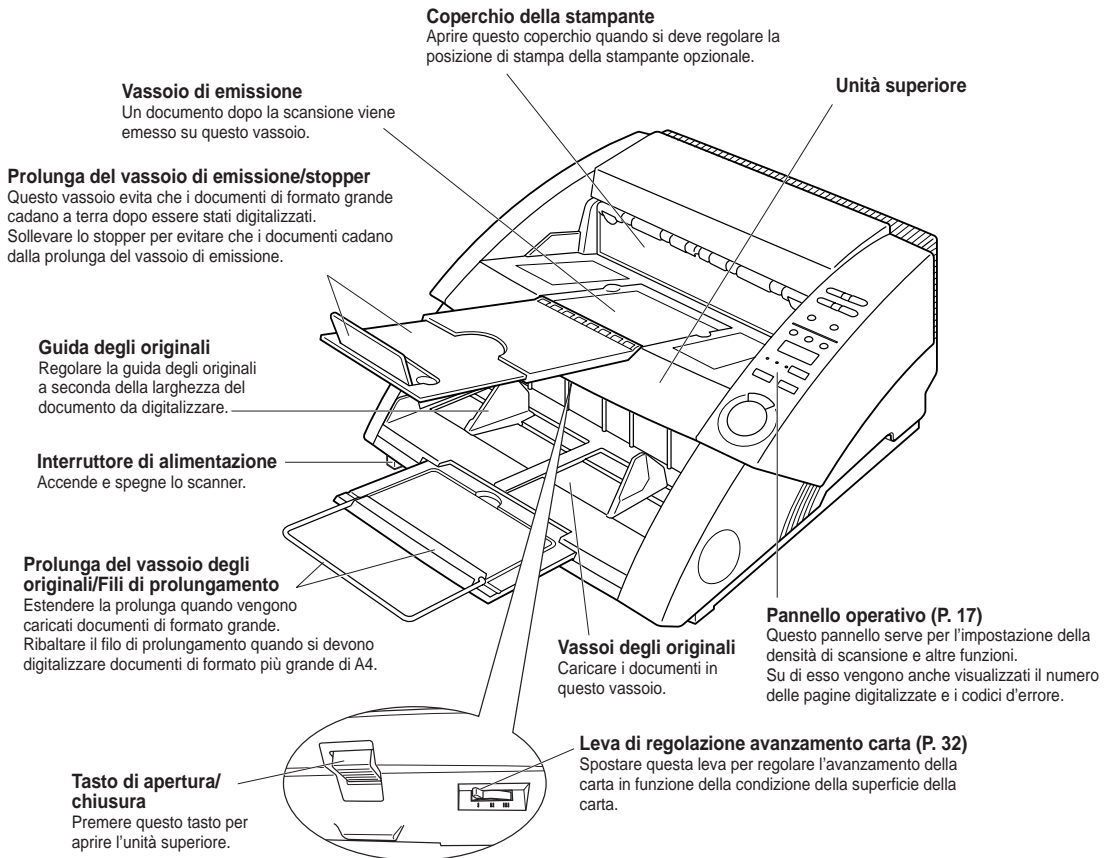
**Cavo di
alimentazione *1**

*1 Il cavo di alimentazione varia a seconda del paese di acquisto.

1.3 Nome delle parti

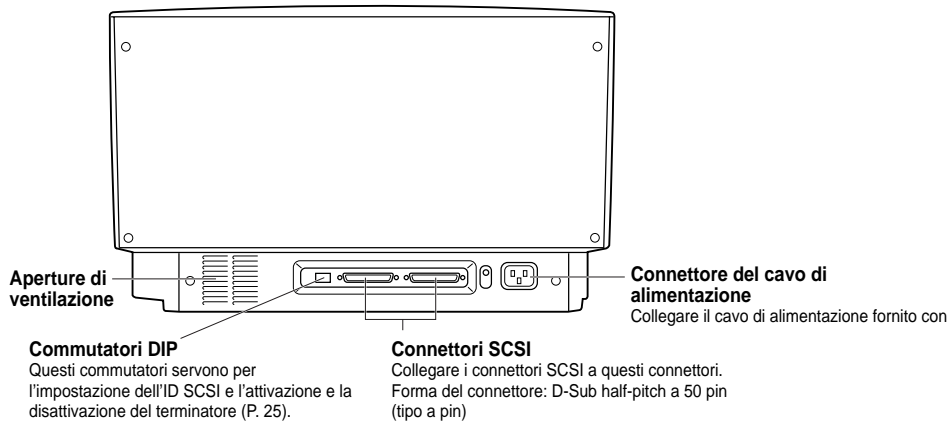
Questo paragrafo descrive i nomi e le funzioni di tutti i componenti. Prima di collegare il DR-5020/5080C, dedicare alcuni minuti alla conoscenza dei componenti principali.

◆ Vista anteriore



Il coperchio della stampante non si apre quando la stampante opzionale non è installata. Non tentare di forzare l'apertura del coperchio della stampante.

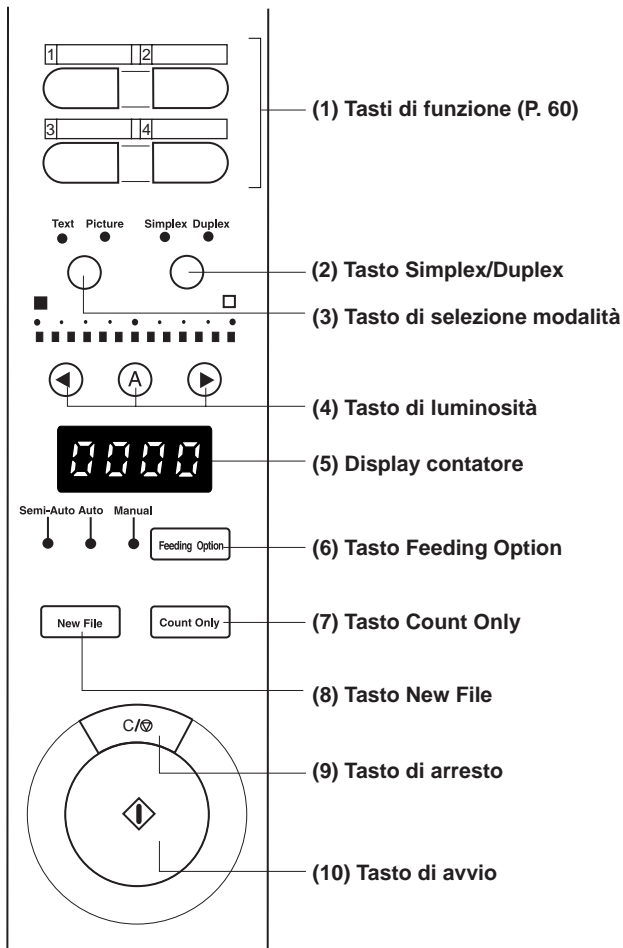
◆ Vista posteriore



ATTENZIONE

Per evitare surriscaldamenti e rischi di incendi, non ostruire le aperture di ventilazione sul retro dello scanner.

◆ Pannello operativo



(1) Tasti di funzione (P. 60)

Le funzioni usate frequentemente possono essere registrate sotto questi tasti in modo da poterle richiamare successivamente con una semplice operazione a un tocco.

(2) Tasto Simplex/Duplex

Serve a selezionare se digitalizzare solo una facciata o tutt'e due le facciate di un documento.

Simplex: Per digitalizzare solo una facciata del documento.

Duplex: Per digitalizzare tutt'e due le facciate del documento.

(3)Tasto di selezione modalità

Serve a selezionare la modalità di scansione documenti. (“Bianco e nero/ Diffusione errore bianco e nero”)

Text: Serve per la scansione di documenti di testo (compresi molti caratteri) con modalità bianco e nero.

Picture: Serve per la scansione di documenti immagine comprese fotografie con modalità diffusione errore bianco e nero.

Se delle applicazioni vengono impostate con modalità di toni di grigio o modalità colore per la selezione di immagini, nessuna delle modalità sopra si accende.

(4)Tasto di luminosità

Serve ad impostare la luminosità quando il documento viene digitalizzato.

Per regolare automaticamente la luminosità, premere il tasto $\text{\textcircled{A}}$ per illuminare $\text{\textcircled{A}}$. (*)

Per impostare manualmente la luminosità, premere i tasti $\text{\textcircled{L}}$ o $\text{\textcircled{R}}$ con il tasto $\text{\textcircled{A}}$ spento e spostare l'indicazione sull'indicatore di tasto per regolare la luminosità. (Se si sposta l'indicatore verso destra si aumenta la luminosità, e se lo si sposta verso sinistra si diminuisce la luminosità. La luminosità può essere regolata a scelta tra 13 livelli.)

Se si premono i tasti $\text{\textcircled{L}}$ o $\text{\textcircled{R}}$ con il tasto $\text{\textcircled{A}}$ acceso per regolare l'indicatore, il livello di regolazione automatica viene regolato.

In modalità Count Only, è possibile impostare il valore di inizio conteggio con i tasti $\text{\textcircled{L}}$ o $\text{\textcircled{R}}$.

(*) La luminosità può essere regolata automaticamente solo quando la luminosità viene impostata su “Auto” al momento delle regolazioni iniziali delle condizioni di scansione, sull'applicazione, e la modalità di scansione viene impostata su “Bianco e nero”.

Se la modalità di scansione non è impostata su “Bianco e nero” e la luminosità è impostata su “Auto”, il tasto $\text{\textcircled{A}}$ non si illumina e viene impostata la luminosità predefinita di base (indicatore valore centrale). In questo caso, la luminosità non viene regolata automaticamente.

(5)Display contatore

Visualizza un codice d errore o il numero di pagine nel documento digitalizzato.

(6)Tasto Feeding Option (P. 39)

Serve per selezionare la modalità di alimentazione documento.

Ogni volta che si preme il tasto Feeding Option cambia ciclicamente l'indicazione della lampada alla sua sinistra, come segue:

OFF (Modalità Remote) → [Semi-Auto] → [Auto] → [Manual] → e quindi di nuovo OFF (Modalità Remote).

Remote: Le tre lampade alla sinistra di questo tasto sono tutte spente. Il documento viene alimentato quando lo scanner riceve un'istruzione di inizio scansione dal computer.

Semi-Auto: Lo scanner alimenta il documento quando si preme il tasto Start dopo aver caricato il documento.

Auto: Lo scanner alimenta automaticamente il documento quando questo viene caricato.

Manual: Il documento viene caricato manualmente, un foglio alla volta.

(7)Tasto Count Only (P. 53)

Serve ad impostare lo scanner per la modalità Count Only in modo da ottenere il numero di pagine di cui è composto il documento.

Questo tasto si illumina quando viene premuto. Se si carica il documento e si preme il tasto Start in questa condizione, il documento viene alimentato e lo scanner provvede a contare il numero di pagine. (Il documento non viene digitalizzato.) Il numero di pagine di cui è composto il documento viene visualizzato sul display contatore.

(8)Tasto New File

Premere questo tasto per salvare le immagini digitalizzate in file separati.

Questo tasto si illumina quando viene premuto. Se si digitalizza il documento successivo in questa condizione, l'immagine digitalizzata viene memorizzata in una cartella distinta dalla cartella del documento precedente.

Quando Auto New File viene impostato nell'applicazione, questo tasto si accende automaticamente quando ognuno dei documenti impilati è stato digitalizzato.

(9)Tasto di arresto

Premere questo tasto per arrestare la scansione durante l'esecuzione.

Utilizzarlo anche per cancellare il modo correntemente impostato e per cancellare un errore visualizzato sul display contatore.

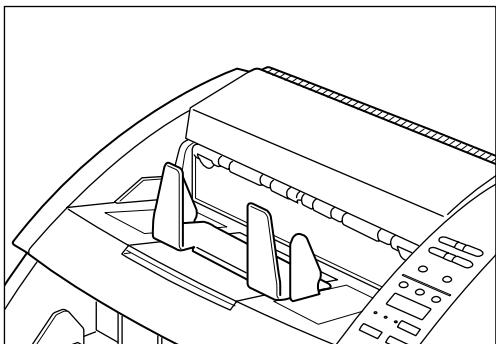
Per azzerare il display contatore a "0000", mantenerlo premuto per almeno due secondi.

(10)Tasto di avvio

Premere questo tasto per avviare la scansione quando la modalità di alimentazione è impostata su Semi-Auto.

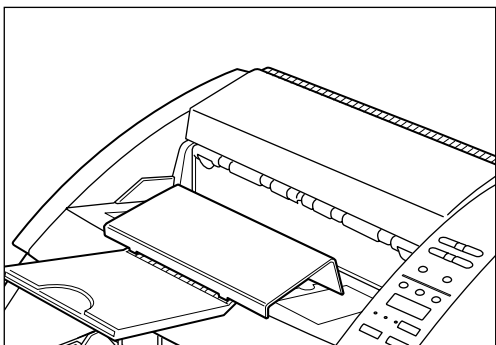
◆ Vassoio asportabile

Questo vassoio può essere installato sul vassoio di emissione per evitare che i documenti corti scivolino fuori dal vassoio quando vengono emessi dallo scanner.



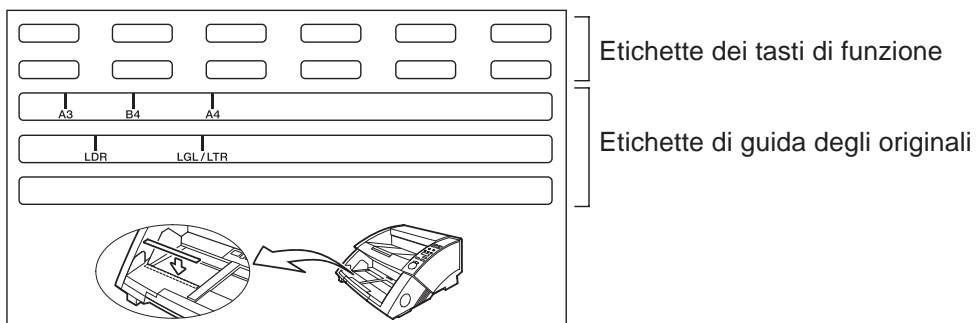
◆ Piastra guida di emissione

Installare questa piastra per la scansione di documenti sottili di formato grande (es. A3). Questa piastra evita che i documenti si impiglino o si arrotolino sul vassoio di emissione.



◆ Etichette dei tasti delle funzioni

Vengono fornite due etichette: una per descrivere quale funzione è registrata sotto il tasto funzione e una da attaccare sul vassoio degli originali come guida degli originali.



Capitolo 2

Preparativi prima dell'uso

Questo capitolo descrive le procedure dal collegamento dello scanner fino all'accensione dell'unità.

2.1	Requisiti di sistema	22
2.2	Installazione e collegamento	23
2.3	Preparazione per Alimentazione carta ed Espulsione.....	27
2.4	Accensione e spegnimento dello scanner	33

2.1

Requisiti di sistema

Per usare DR-5020/5080C, occorrono le cose seguenti in aggiunta agli accessori standard.

- Computer
- Scheda SCSI
- Cavo SCSI
- Applicazione



RIFERIMENTO

- Il driver potrebbe non funzionare correttamente a seconda dell'applicazione che si sta utilizzando.
- Scegliere un computer, un sistema operativo e una scheda SCSI adatta all'applicazione che si sta utilizzando.

2.2 Installazione e collegamento

Questo paragrafo descrive l'installazione e il collegamento dello scanner.

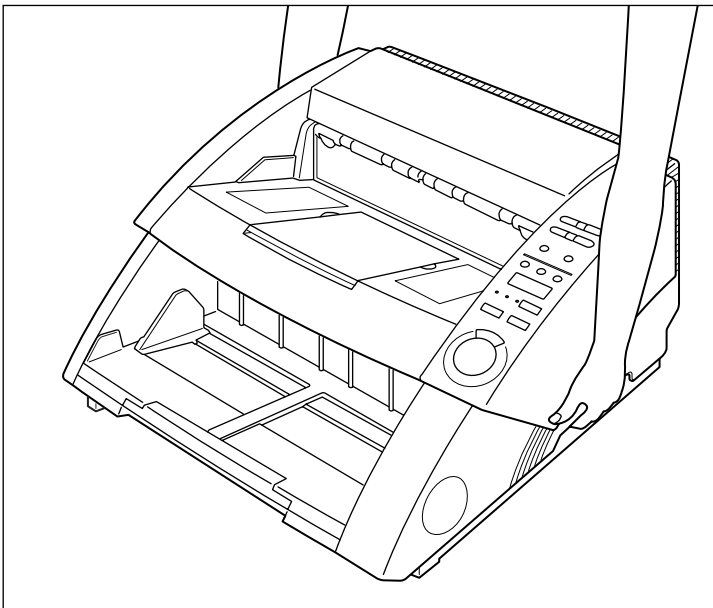


RIFERIMENTO

Per i dettagli riguardo il posto di installazione dello scanner, leggere "La posizione di installazione" in Precauzioni per la sicurezza (P. 8).

Trasporto

Per trasportare il DR-5020/5080C, sorreggerlo con entrambe le mani come illustrato sotto e trasportarlo con cura. A trasportarlo senza afferrarlo nelle apposite impugnature si rischia di farlo cadere, ferirsi alle dita o altri infortuni. Lo scanner pesa circa 20 kg.



AVVERTENZA

Prima di spostare l'unità, disattivare l'interruttore di alimentazione e disinserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa di corrente, sempre. Inoltre, scollegare il connettore SCSI dal connettore. Spostare lo scanner quando è acceso, oppure con il connettore SCSI collegato può essere causa di scossa elettrica.

Collegamento al computer

Collegare lo scanner al computer.



ATTENZIONE

Prima di collegare lo scanner al computer, non mancare di spegnere sia lo scanner che il computer.



SUGGERIMENTO

Gli elementi seguenti occorrono anche per collegare lo scanner:

● Scheda SCSI

Controllare che nel personal computer sia stata installata una scheda SCSI. Utilizzare una scheda SCSI compatibile con l'applicazione driver che si sta utilizzando.

● Cavo SCSI

Il connettore SCSI dello scanner è un connettore D-Sub half-pitch a 50 pin (tipo a pin).

Controllare la forma del connettore sulla scheda SCSI del computer e sulla periferica SCSI collegata al computer e preparare un cavo SCSI compatibile con il connettore che può essere collegato allo scanner.

Per collegare lo scanner al computer attenersi alla procedura seguente.

1. Collegare lo scanner al computer tramite il cavo SCSI. (P. 24)
2. Impostare l'ID SCSI e il terminatore. (P. 25)

◆ Collegamento del cavo SCSI



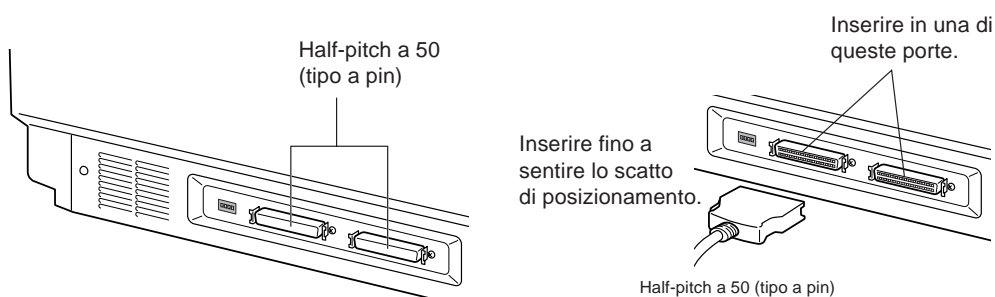
ATTENZIONE

Prima di collegare il cavo SCSI, assicurarsi che lo scanner e il computer siano spenti.

Collegare il computer allo scanner utilizzando il cavo SCSI.

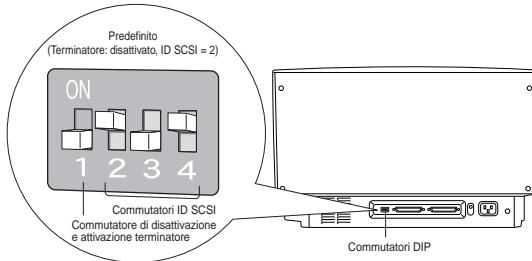
Lo scanner, sul retro è dotato di due connettori. Inserire il cavo SCSI dal computer in uno di questi connettori.

Per collegare un'altra periferica SCSI al computer, inserire l'altro cavo SCSI nel connettore SCSI libero sul retro dello scanner e collegare l'altra estremità del cavo SCSI nella periferica SCSI formando una catena a margherita.



◆ Impostazione dell'ID SCSI e del terminatore

Impostare l'ID SCSI e il terminatore utilizzando il commutatore DIP sul retro dello scanner. Il commutatore DIP è in posizione di attivazione quando si trova in alto, e in posizione di disattivazione quando si trova in basso.



SCSI ID	SW2	SW3	SW4
0	ON	ON	ON
1	ON	ON	OFF
2	ON	OFF	ON
3	ON	OFF	OFF
4	OFF	ON	ON
5	OFF	ON	OFF
6	OFF	OFF	ON
7	OFF	OFF	OFF

Impostare l'ID SCSI facendo riferimento alla tabella sopra.

Impostare un unico ID SCSI per tutte le periferiche SCSI interne o le periferiche SCSI collegate al computer.



SUGGERIMENTO

L'impostazione predefinita dell'ID SCSI è 2.

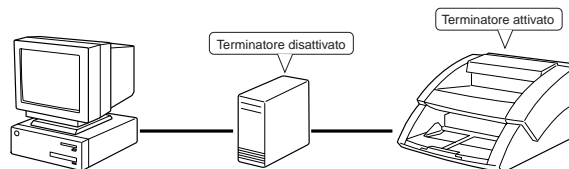
Assegnare i numeri di ID SCSI nell'intervallo da 0 a 7 per ogni periferica SCSI. Non impostare 7 perché generalmente viene assegnato al controller SCSI. Se è stato installato un hard disk SCSI, non usare 0 e 1. Generalmente 0 e 1 vengono assegnati agli hard disk.

Attivare il terminatore dell'ultima periferica SCSI di una catena a margherita.

<Quando al computer viene collegato soltanto lo scanner o quando viene collegata un'altra periferica SCSI in una catena a margherita e lo scanner è l'ultima periferica SCSI alla fine della catena a margherita>

Spostare il commutatore del terminatore su ON.

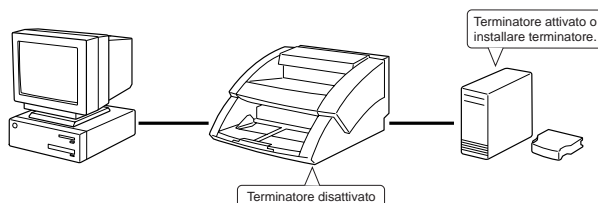
Con questo tipo di collegamento, non mancare di disattivare i terminatori di tutte le altre periferiche SCSI.



<Quando viene collegata un'altra periferica SCSI come ultima periferica della catena a margherita>

Spostare il commutatore del terminatore dello scanner su OFF.

Con questo tipo di collegamento, attivare il terminatore della periferica SCSI collegata come periferica finale.



Collegamento del cavo di alimentazione

Collegare il cavo di alimentazione.

Non mancare di utilizzare soltanto il cavo di alimentazione fornito con lo scanner.

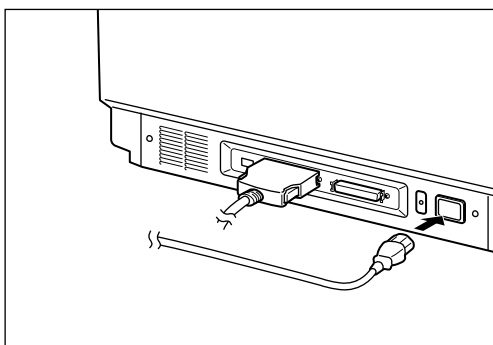
◆ Collegamento del cavo di alimentazione



Per collegare il cavo di alimentazione, osservare le seguenti precauzioni. Non facendolo si correrebbe il rischio di incendi o scosse elettriche.

- Non afferrare la spina con le mani bagnate.
- Non inserire la spina dell'unità in una basetta per spine multiple.
- Non arrotolare o avvolgere il cavo di alimentazione su se stesso o intorno ad altri oggetti. Inserire la spina fino in fondo nella presa di corrente.
- Utilizzare soltanto il cavo di alimentazione e la spina forniti in dotazione con lo scanner.
- Prima di collegare il cavo di alimentazione, non mancare di disattivare l'interruttore di alimentazione.
- Non mancare di alimentare l'unità con una tensione di 220-240 Vca (50/60 Hz)/120 Vca (60 Hz).
- Non inserire la spina dello scanner in una presa di corrente condivisa con un altro apparecchio. Se viene utilizzata una prolunga, fare attenzione all'ampereaggio totale del cavo.

Collegare il cavo di alimentazione sul retro dello scanner e inserire la spina di alimentazione nella presa di corrente.



2.3

Preparazione per Alimentazione carta ed Espulsione

Estrarre la sezione di alimentazione carta e la sezione di espulsione o il vassoio staccabile o la piastra di sostegno per accomodare il formato dell'originale da digitalizzare.

Inoltre, attaccare l'etichetta per aiutare la regolazione della guida degli originali.

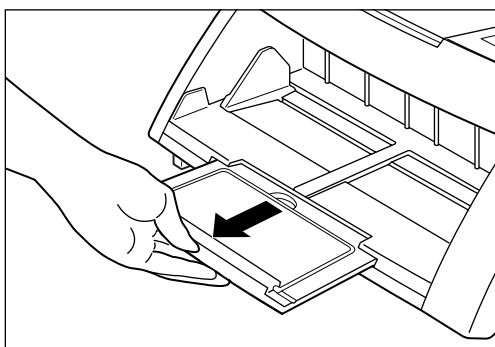
Preparazione della prolunga del vassoio degli originali e della prolunga del vassoio di emissione

Usare la prolunga del vassoio degli originali e la prolunga del vassoio di emissione per adattare al formato del documento da digitalizzare. Per l'accomodamento di documenti difficili da digitalizzare, si possono utilizzare anche la piastra guida di emissione e il vassoio asportabile.

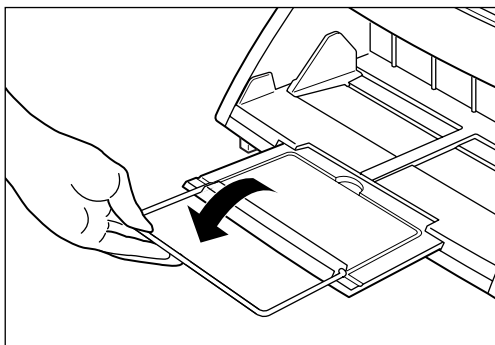
◆ Prolunga del vassoio degli originali

Estrarre la prolunga del vassoio degli originali per adattarla al formato del documento da digitalizzare.

- 1 Estrarre la prolunga del vassoio degli originali al centro del vassoio degli originali.**



2 Aprire delicatamente il prolungamento metallico.

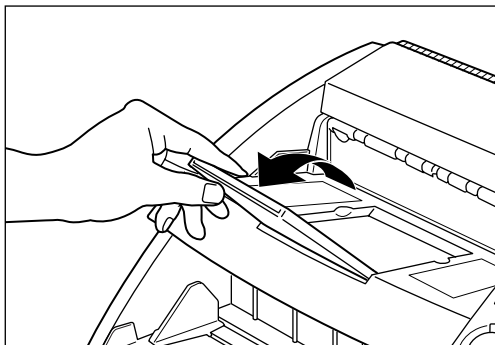


Il prolungamento metallico serve per la scansione di documenti di formato maggiore di A4.

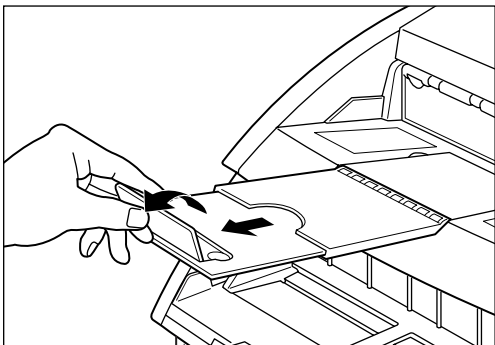
◆ Prolunga del vassoio di emissione

Usare la prolunga del vassoio di emissione per adattarla al formato del documento da digitalizzare. La prolunga del vassoio di emissione si apre in tre fasi per l'adattamento di vari tipi e formati di documento.

- 1 Sollevare la prolunga del vassoio di emissione 1 al centro del vassoio di emissione.**



- 2 Estrarre la prolunga del vassoio di emissione 2 dalla prolunga del vassoio di emissione 1 e poi alzare il bordo di arresto.**



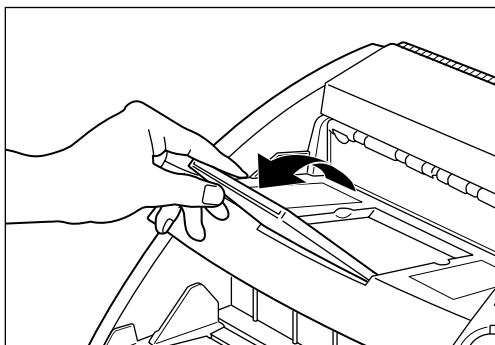
RIFERIMENTO

Il bordo di arresto serve per evitare che i documenti emessi dallo scanner scivolino fuori dal vassoio di emissione.

◆ Piastra guida di emissione

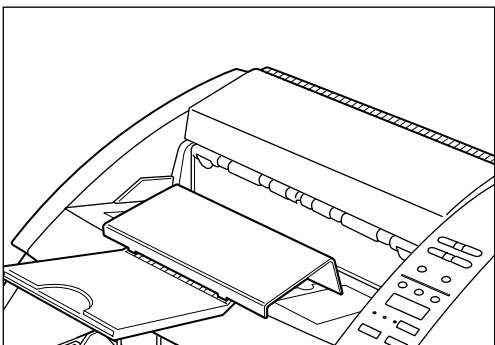
Installare la piastra per la scansione di documenti di formato grande o documenti con superficie lucida. Quando questi documenti vengono emessi dallo scanner, potrebbero rimanere impigliati nella sezione di emissione e arrotolarsi o causare un inceppamento della carta. La piastra serve per evitare che questo si verifichi.

1 Estrarre la prolunga del vassoio di emissione.



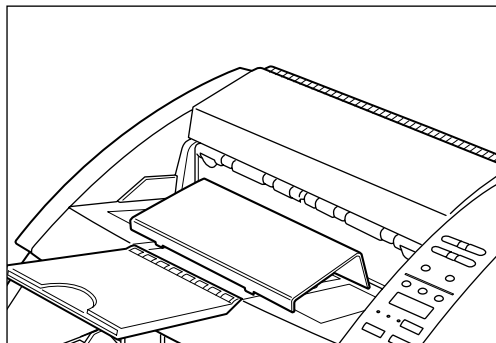
2 Installare la piastra guida di emissione.

Installarla inserendo le sporgenze della piastra guida nei fori della prolunga del vassoio di emissione.



RIFERIMENTO

Se gli originali si impigliano sebbene la piastra guida di emissione sia stata installata, estenderla al massimo per evitare che questo accada.

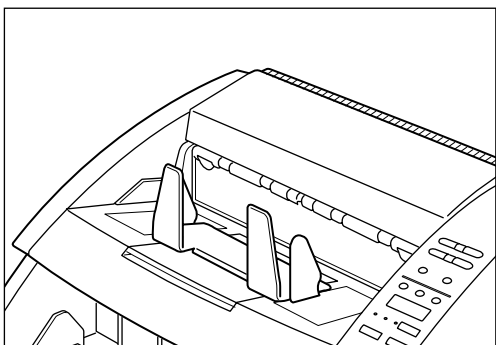


◆ Vassoio asportabile

Installare questo vassoio per la scansione di documenti di formato ridotto. Il vassoio evita che i documenti scivolino fuori dal vassoio quando vengono emessi dallo scanner.

1 Installare il vassoio asportabile al centro del vassoio di emissione.

Il vassoio asportabile viene tenuto in posizione dalle calamite. Regolare la posizione del vassoio adattandolo alla lunghezza del documento.

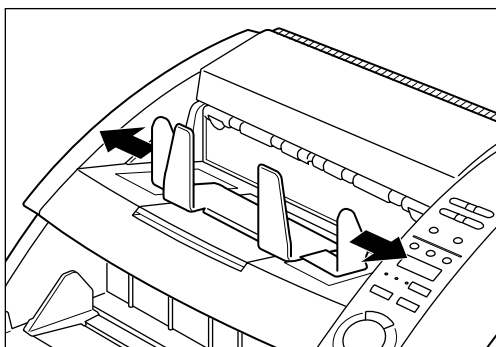


RIFERIMENTO

Chiudere il vassoio di emissione, se è aperto.

2 Regolare le guide della carta sinistra e destra a seconda della larghezza del documento da digitalizzare.

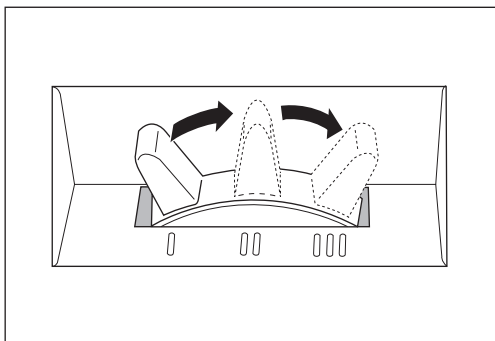
Lasciare un po' di spazio tra le guide e il documento.



Regolazione di alimentazione carta

Spostare la leva di regolazione dell'alimentazione della carta per regolare l'alimentazione della carta quando si verifica un errore di alimentazione carta dovuto a frizione da originale a con superficie scivolosa.

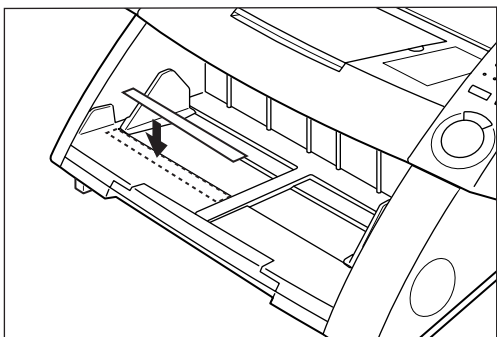
La leva di regolazione dell'alimentazione della carta può essere regolata su tre posizioni. L'impostazione normale è a sinistra (I). Se la superficie della carta è leggermente scivolosa, regolarla al centro (II), e se la superficie della carta è molto scivolosa, regolarla a destra (III).



Per attaccare le etichette di guida degli originali

La confezione dello scanner contiene le etichette dei tasti di funzione e le etichette di guida degli originali. Queste etichette aiutano nella regolazione della guida degli originali.

Attaccarle sul vassoio degli originali come mostrato in figura sotto.



2.4

Accensione e spegnimento dello scanner

Per accendere e spegnere lo scanner attenersi alla procedura seguente.

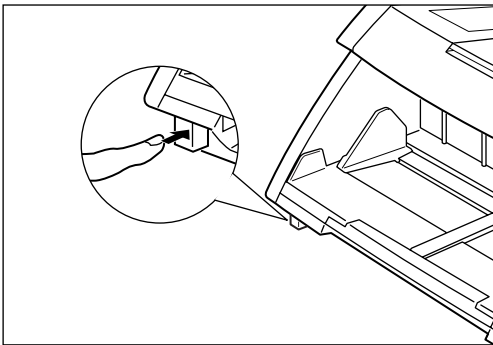
Accensione dello scanner



SUGGERIMENTO

Prima di accendere il computer, ricordarsi di accendere tutte le periferiche SCSI collegate.

1 Per accendere lo scanner, premere l'interruttore di alimentazione.



➔ Appare "0000" sul display contatore del pannello operativo.



RIFERIMENTO

Le impostazioni sul pannello operativo diverse dal display del contatore vengono ricondotte alle impostazioni dello scanner prima che fosse spento.



AVVERTENZA

Se l'unità emette suoni insoliti, fumo, vibrazioni od odori strani, si surriscalda in modo anomalo, disattivare immediatamente l'interruttore di alimentazione e disinserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa di corrente. Rivolgersi subito a un centro di assistenza tecnica. Non facendolo si corre il rischio di incendi.

2 Accendere il computer.

➔ Si avvia il sistema operativo del computer.



SUGGERIMENTO

- In Windows 95/98/Me o in Windows 2000, quando il computer viene acceso per la prima volta dopo aver collegato lo scanner al PC, la funzione Plug and Play di Windows visualizzerà automaticamente una schermata che richiede l'installazione del driver dello scanner. (Il nome di questa schermata varia a seconda delle diverse versioni di Windows.)

Nel caso della schermata "Nuovo hardware" (Windows 95), scegliere l'opzione "Selezionare dall'elenco di driver" e poi fare clic su [OK]. Nella schermata successiva, selezionare Altre periferiche e poi fare clic su [OK].

Nel caso della schermata "Installazione guidata driver di periferica" (Windows 95), fare clic su Avanti e poi su Fine nella schermata successiva.

Nel caso della schermata "Installazione guidata Nuovo hardware" (Windows 98) attenersi alla procedura descritta di seguito.

1. Fare clic su [Avanti].
2. Selezionare l'opzione "Cerca il miglior driver per la periferica (scelta consigliata)" e poi fare clic su [Avanti].
3. Cancellare tutti i segni di spunta e poi fare clic su [Avanti].
4. Fare clic su [Avanti].
5. Fare clic su [Fine].

Nel caso della schermata "Nuovo componente hardware individuato" (Windows Me), selezionare l'opzione "Cercare un driver migliore (scelta consigliata)", quindi fare clic su Avanti e poi su Fine nella schermata successiva.

Nel caso della schermata "Installazione guidata nuovo hardware" (Windows 2000), attenersi alla procedura riportata di seguito.

1. Fare clic su [Avanti] per passare alla schermata "Installa driver periferica hardware".
 2. Selezionare l'opzione "Cerca un driver adatto alla periferica (scelta consigliata) e poi fare clic su [Avanti] per passare alla schermata "Individua file del driver".
 3. Cancellare tutti i segni di spunta nella sezione "Percorsi opzionali di ricerca" e poi fare clic su [Avanti] per passare alla schermata "Risultati ricerca file del driver".
 4. Selezionare l'opzione "Disattiva la periferica" e poi fare clic su [Fine].
- Per utilizzare lo scanner occorre installare il driver fornito con lo scanner. Per i dettagli, far riferimento alle "Istruzioni per il driver ISIS/TWAIN" e alle "Istruzioni per Scanning Utility 5000".

Spegnimento dello scanner



ATTENZIONE

Se lo scanner non viene utilizzato per un lungo periodo di tempo, per sicurezza, disinserire la spina di alimentazione dalla presa di corrente

1 Spegnerne il computer.

2 Per spegnere lo scanner, premere l'interruttore di alimentazione.



ATTENZIONE

Prima di accendere di nuovo lo scanner, attendere almeno 10 secondi.

Capitolo 3

Preparazione dei documenti

Questo capitolo descrive le precauzioni riguardanti gli originali che possono essere trattati con questo scanner e le operazioni di digitalizzazione e alimentazione degli originali.

3.1	Riguardo i documenti	36
3.2	Alimentazione documenti e loro digitalizzazione	38
3.3	Impostazione delle condizioni di scansione	58

3.1

Riguardo i documenti

Il DR-5020/5080C può alimentare un'ampia varietà di formati di originali. Sotto vengono elencate i limiti di lunghezza e larghezza dei documenti.

Larghezza: Da 55 a 297 mm

(La larghezza massima effettiva di scansione è di 295 mm.)

Lunghezza: Da 70 a 432 mm

Spessore: Da 0,06 a 0,15 mm

(con alimentazione manuale: da 0,05 a 0,2 mm)

Quando un documento viene preparato per la scansione attenersi a queste istruzioni.

- Prima di digitalizzare documenti con elementi incollati, assicurarsi che l'inchiostro o la colla sulle pagine siano completamente asciutti. Se i documenti vengono digitalizzati con l'inchiostro o la colla non asciutti, si potrebbero sporcare i componenti interni dello scanner.
- Se si va a digitalizzare un originale scritto con la matita, le lettere potrebbero scomparire mentre l'originale viene alimentato nello scanner, oppure la grafite potrebbe macchiare i rulli di scansione. Prima di digitalizzare questo tipo di documenti, fare prima una copia di essi. Dopo avere digitalizzato un originale scritto a matita o con altri materiali per scrittura leggera, non mancare di pulire i rulli di scansione. (P. 83)
- Quando viene digitalizzato un originale su carta sottile in modalità Duplex, l'inchiostro stampato su un lato potrebbe apparire sull'altro lato. Se accade, regolare la densità di scansione.
- Se si va a digitalizzare un documento con la superficie scivolosa, la frizione potrebbe essere causa di errore di alimentazione. Se questo accade, spostare il selettore di regolazione dell'alimentazione carta (P. 32) per regolarne l'alimentazione.
- Per evitare inceppamenti della carta, danni ai documenti e malfunzionamenti dello scanner, non inserire i seguenti tipi di carta nello scanner. Se si desidera digitalizzare questi tipi di carta, eseguire prima una copia con una copiatrice e poi digitalizzare la copia.



Carta increspata o spiegazzata



Carta con allegata carta copiativa



Carta arrotolata



Carta impregnata d'olio o carta per fax



Carta strappata



Carta traslucida o altra carta sottile



Carta con fermagli o punti metallici



Carta con fori di rilegatura



RIFERIMENTO

- I documenti composti da pagine di spessore e formato diverso potrebbero causare malfunzionamenti durante l'avanzamento.
- I documenti molto arricciati, spiegazzati o unti potrebbero essere causa di doppia alimentazione.
- I documenti contenenti testo o immagini a 5 mm dai bordi, o documenti con sfondo colorato, potrebbero essere causa di errore di rilevamento documento storto o rilevamento automatico del formato.

3.2

Alimentazione documenti e loro digitalizzazione

Caricare i documenti nello scanner e digitalizzarli. È anche possibile contare le pagine del documento. Questa sezione descrive le operazioni seguenti.

- Procedura di digitalizzazione (in funzione delle modalità di alimentazione)
- Conteggio delle pagine dei documenti
- Fogli di controllo



- Evitare di indossare abiti larghi, ciondoli, lunghe cravatte o capelli non raccolti che potrebbero impigliarsi nelle parti in movimento, in particolare nei rulli di alimentazione dell'unità. Se tali oggetti dovessero impigliarsi, disinserire immediatamente la spina di alimentazione dalla presa di corrente e arrestare l'unità.
- Fare molta attenzione durante il caricamento dei documenti o la rimozione della carta inceppata in quanto si potrebbero subire lesioni inaspettate. Per esempio, i bordi della carta potrebbero tagliare la pelle delle dita.
- Controllare la pila di fogli e rimuovere tutti i fermagli, i punti metallici, gli spilli e ogni altro tipo di elemento di fissaggio metallico o di plastica. Non facendolo, si potrebbe danneggiare il documento e si determinerebbero inceppamenti della carta o malfunzionamenti dello scanner.

Procedura di scansione

La procedura per digitalizzare un documento varia a seconda della modalità di alimentazione prescelta

Per selezionare la modalità di alimentazione desiderata, utilizzare il tasto Feeding Option.

● Modalità Remote (di base)

Questa modalità è la più idonea per digitalizzare una sola pila di originali. In questa modalità, lo scanner si avvia dopo che l'utente ha impostato la scansione nella applicazione e dopo aver caricato il documento nello scanner.

● Semi-Auto

Questa modalità è la più idonea per digitalizzare senza interruzioni originali di formati diversi in gruppi separati e contemporaneamente regolare la guida degli originali.

In questa modalità, lo scanner comincia la scansione dopo che l'utente ha impostato la scansione nella applicazione, ha premuto il tasto di avvio sullo scanner e dopo aver caricato il documento nello scanner.

Quando lo scanner ha completato la scansione di una pila di originali, caricare la pila successiva e premere il tasto di avvio per continuare la scansione.

● Auto

Questa modalità è la più idonea per digitalizzare continuamente una pila di originali dello stesso formato.

In questa modalità, lo scanner comincia automaticamente la scansione dopo che l'utente ha caricato il documento nello scanner e dopo aver impostato la scansione nella applicazione.

Quando lo scanner ha completato la scansione di una pila di originali, caricare la pila successiva. Lo scanner continua automaticamente l'operazione di scansione.

● Manuale

In questa modalità l'utente carica il documento una pagina alla volta, dopo aver impostato l'inizio dell'operazione di scansione dal computer.

Utilizzare questa modalità per alimentare documenti che presentano difficoltà di alimentazione se impilati nello scanner (es. la qualità della carta è tale da presentare rischi di alimentazione doppia).

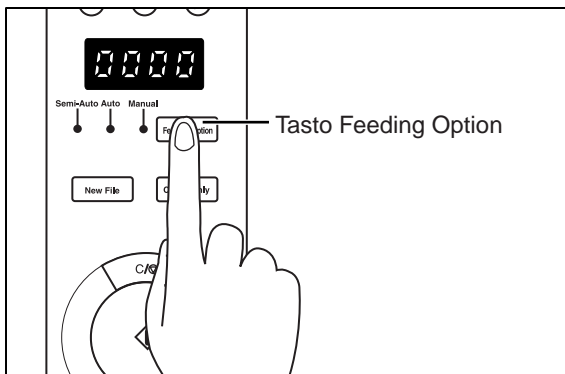
Di seguito vengono descritte le singole procedure in funzione della modalità di alimentazione.

◆ Modalità Remote

Questa modalità è la più idonea per digitalizzare una sola pila di originali.

1 Accertarsi che tutti gli indicatori Semi-Auto, Auto e Manual siano spenti.

Se uno degli indicatori è acceso, premere il tasto Feeding Option fino a che tutti gli indicatori siano spenti.



RIFERIMENTO

Ad ogni pressione del tasto Feeding Option l'indicatore cambia ciclicamente come segue:

OFF (Modalità Remote) → [Semi-Auto] → [Auto] → [Manual] → e quindi di nuovo OFF (Modalità Remote)

2 Selezionare le seguenti impostazioni sul pannello operativo.

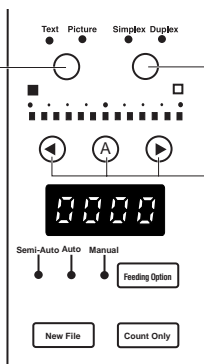
L'impostazione non è necessaria se è già stata eseguita nell'applicazione.

Text/Picture

[Text]: Serve per digitalizzare documenti di testo (comprensivi della maggior parte dei caratteri) in modalità bianco e nero.

[Picture]: Serve per digitalizzare documenti di immagini comprese fotografie con modalità diffusione errore bianco e nero.

Se le applicazioni vengono impostate con modalità toni di grigio o modalità colori per la selezione delle immagini, nessuno di questi sopra s'illumina.



Simplex/Duplex

[Simplex]: Serve per digitalizzare soltanto una facciata del documento.

[Duplex]: Serve per digitalizzare entrambe le facciate del documento.

Tasti di impostazione della luminosità

Impostare la luminosità quando l'originale viene digitalizzato. Per regolare automaticamente la luminosità, premere il tasto (A) per illuminare (A). Per regolare manualmente la luminosità, premere i tasti (◀) o (▶) per spostare l'indicatore sopra il tasto e regolare la luminosità.

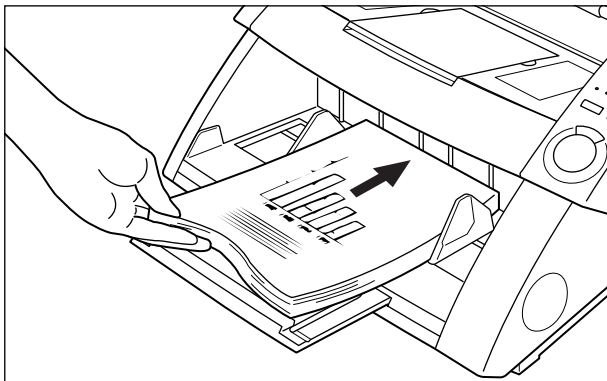


RIFERIMENTO

Per i dettagli sugli altri parametri di impostazione, vedere "3.3 Impostazione delle condizioni di scansione". (P. 58)

3 Smazzare un gruppo di pagine da digitalizzare per allinearne i bordi.

4 Caricare il documento a faccia in su, inserendo nello scanner prima il bordo superiore del documento.



RIFERIMENTO

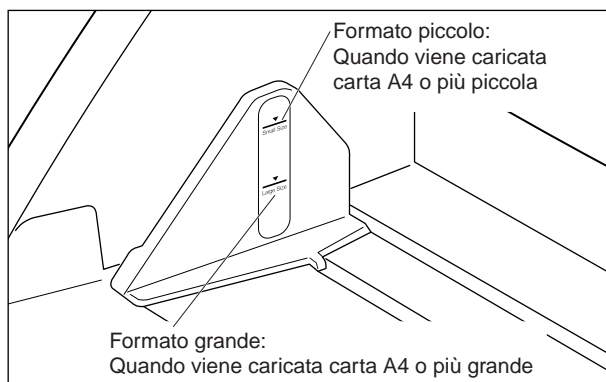
- Quando si carica il documento nel vassoio degli originali, caricarlo con la facciata superiore rivolta verso l'alto.
- Il peso della carta caricata qualche volta aumenta per cause legate all'ambiente in cui la carta viene immagazzinata (es. posti molto umidi). In questo caso, il peso della carta supera il peso massimo consentito per la pila di carta e questo anche se il numero di fogli della pila è inferiore al numero massimo, e a volte impedisce il sollevamento del vassoio degli originali. Ridurre il numero di fogli originali caricati sul vassoio e ripetere l'operazione di scansione.



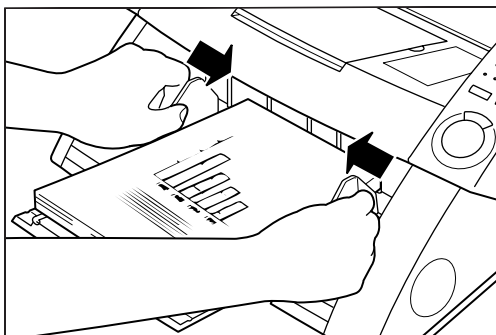
SUGGERIMENTO

Per evitare inceppamenti della carta, controllare il segno di limite di carico sul vassoio degli originali. La pila non deve superare questo segno (▼).

Il limite di carico è di circa 500 pagine di carta formato A4 standard (80 g/m²) e di circa 200 pagine per la carta di formato maggiore di A4.



5 Regolare le guide della carta a seconda della larghezza del documento da digitalizzare.



6 Selezionare la scansione nell'applicazione.

7 Il vassoio degli originali si solleva e inizia la scansione. Quando si conclude la scansione di tutte le pagine del documento, il vassoio della carta si abbassa.



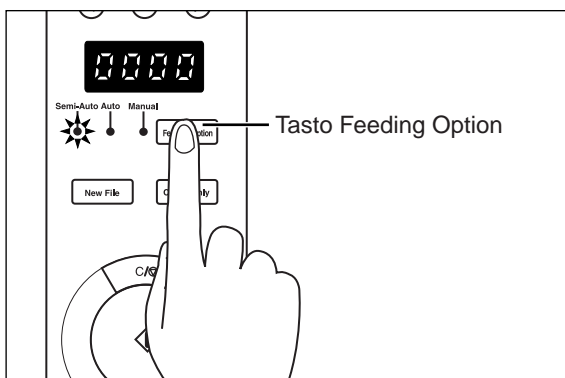
RIFERIMENTO

Se l'alimentazione della carta si arresta durante l'operazione di scansione a causa di un errore di sistema o un inceppamento della carta, prima di riprendere l'operazione di scansione controllare che l'ultima pagina dell'originale alimentata sia stata memorizzata correttamente.

◆ Modalità Semi-Auto

Questa modalità è la più idonea per digitalizzare senza interruzioni una pila di originali di formati diversi.

1 Premere il tasto Feeding Option sul pannello operativo per accendere [Semi-Auto].



2 Selezionare le seguenti impostazioni sul pannello operativo.

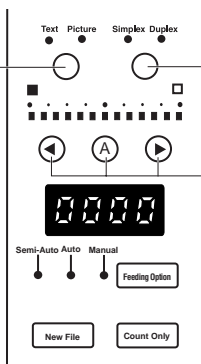
L'impostazione non è necessaria se è già stata eseguita nell'applicazione.

Text/Picture

[Text]: Serve per digitalizzare documenti di testo (comprensivi della maggior parte dei caratteri) in modalità bianco e nero.

[Picture]: Serve per digitalizzare documenti di immagini comprese fotografie con modalità diffusione errore bianco e nero.

Se le applicazioni vengono impostate con modalità toni di grigio o modalità colori per la selezione delle immagini, nessuno di questi sopra s'illumina.



Simplex/Duplex

[Simplex]: Serve per digitalizzare soltanto una facciata del documento.

[Duplex]: Serve per digitalizzare entrambe le facciate del documento.

Tasti di impostazione della luminosità

Impostare la luminosità quando l'originale viene digitalizzato.

Per regolare automaticamente la luminosità, premere il tasto (A) per illuminare (A).

Per regolare manualmente la luminosità, premere i tasti (◀) o (▶) per spostare l'indicatore sopra il tasto e regolare la luminosità.

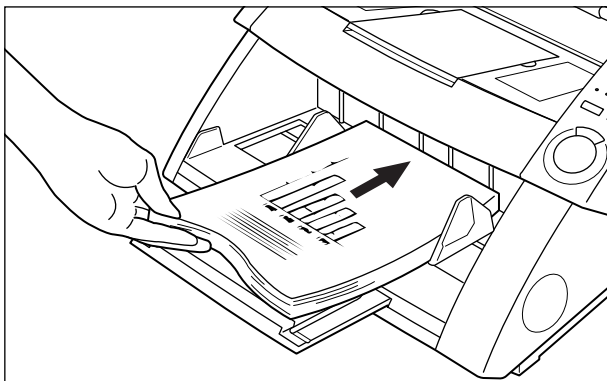


RIFERIMENTO

Per i dettagli sugli altri parametri di impostazione, vedere "3.3 Impostazione delle condizioni di scansione". (P. 58)

3 Smazzare un gruppo di pagine da digitalizzare per allinearne i bordi.

4 Caricare il documento a faccia in su, inserendo nello scanner prima il bordo superiore del documento.



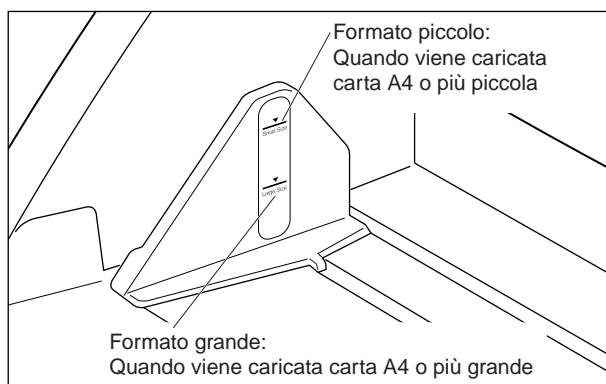
RIFERIMENTO

- Quando si carica il documento nel vassoio degli originali, caricarlo con la facciata superiore rivolta verso l'alto.
- Il peso della carta caricata qualche volta aumenta per cause legate all'ambiente in cui la carta viene immagazzinata (es. posti molto umidi). In questo caso, il peso della carta supera il peso massimo consentito per la pila di carta e questo anche se il numero di fogli della pila è inferiore al numero massimo, e a volte impedisce il sollevamento del vassoio degli originali. Ridurre il numero di fogli originali caricati sul vassoio e ripetere l'operazione di scansione.

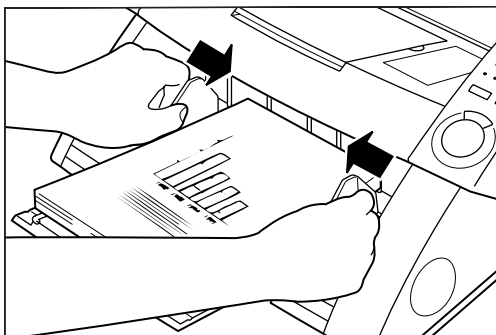


SUGGERIMENTO

Per evitare inceppamenti della carta, controllare il segno di limite di carico sul vassoio degli originali. La pila non deve superare questo segno (▼).
Il limite di carico è di circa 500 pagine di carta formato A4 standard (80 g/m²) e di circa 200 pagine per la carta di formato maggiore di A4.



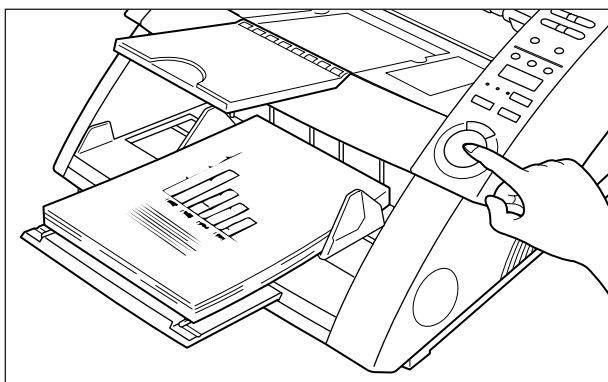
5 Adattare le guide della carta alla larghezza del documento che si va a digitalizzare.



6 Selezionare la scansione nell'applicazione.

⇒ Il colore del tasto di avvio cambia da rosso a verde.

7 Premere il tasto di avvio.



8 Il vassoio degli originali si solleva e inizia la scansione. Quando si conclude la scansione di tutte le pagine del documento, il vassoio della carta si abbassa.



RIFERIMENTO

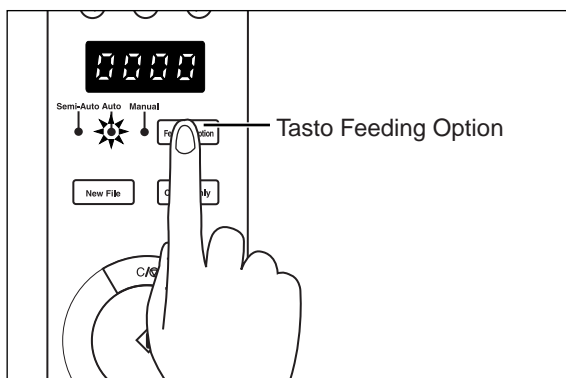
Se l'alimentazione della carta si arresta durante l'operazione di scansione a causa di un errore di sistema o un inceppamento della carta, prima di riprendere l'operazione di scansione controllare che l'ultima pagina dell'originale alimentata sia stata memorizzata correttamente.

9 Se il documento da digitalizzare contiene più pagine, caricare il documento e premere il tasto di avvio. Per terminare l'operazione di scansione, premere il tasto di arresto.

◆ Modalità Auto

Usare la modalità Auto per digitalizzare senza interruzioni una pila di documenti dello stesso formato.

1 Premere il tasto Feeding Option sul pannello operativo per accendere [Auto].



2 Selezionare la seguenti impostazioni sul pannello operativo.

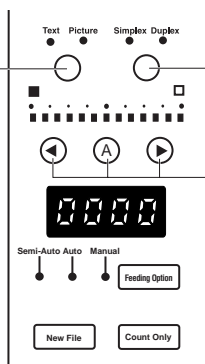
L'impostazione non è necessaria se è già stata eseguita nell'applicazione.

Text/Picture

[Text]: Serve per digitalizzare documenti di testo (comprensivi della maggior parte dei caratteri) in modalità bianco e nero.

[Picture]: Serve per digitalizzare documenti di immagini comprese fotografie con modalità diffusione errore bianco e nero.

Se le applicazioni vengono impostate con modalità toni di grigio o modalità colori per la selezione delle immagini, nessuno di questi sopra s'illumina.



Simplex/Duplex

[Simplex]: Serve per digitalizzare soltanto una facciata del documento.

[Duplex]: Serve per digitalizzare entrambe le facciate del documento.

Tasti di impostazione della luminosità

Impostare la luminosità quando l'originale viene digitalizzato.

Per regolare automaticamente la luminosità.

premere il tasto (A) per illuminare (A).

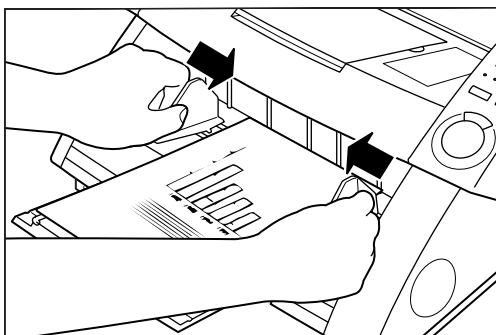
Per regolare manualmente la luminosità, premere i tasti (◀) o (▶) per spostare l'indicatore sopra il tasto e regolare la luminosità.



RIFERIMENTO

Per i dettagli sugli altri parametri di impostazione, vedere "3.3 Impostazione delle condizioni di scansione". (P. 58)

3 Caricare una pagina del documento che si deve digitalizzare e adattare le guide della carta alla larghezza del documento.

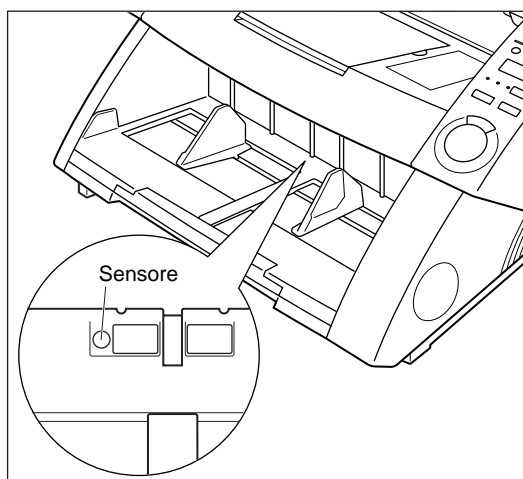


4 Impostare la digitalizzazione nell'applicazione.

➡ Il colore del tasto di avvio cambia da rosso a verde.

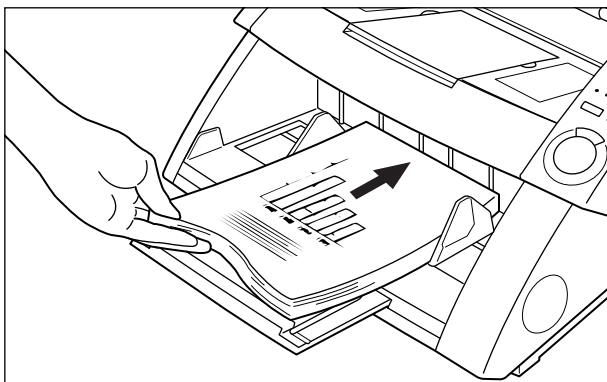


Quando la modalità di scansione viene impostata su Auto, il sensore che si trova sul vassoio degli originali mostrato nella figura sotto, automaticamente localizza il documento per incominciare la scansione. Se qualcosa dovesse andare ad ostruire il sensore sul vassoio degli originali dopo che si è impostato la scansione nell'applicazione, lo scanner interpreta erroneamente che è stato caricato un originale e il vassoio degli originali comincia a muoversi. Fare attenzione a che all'interno del documento da digitalizzare nessun altro oggetto vada ad ostruire il sensore sul vassoio degli originali.



5 Smazzare un gruppo di pagine da digitalizzare per allinearne i bordi.

6 Caricare il documento a faccia in su, inserendo nello scanner prima il bordo superiore del documento.



RIFERIMENTO

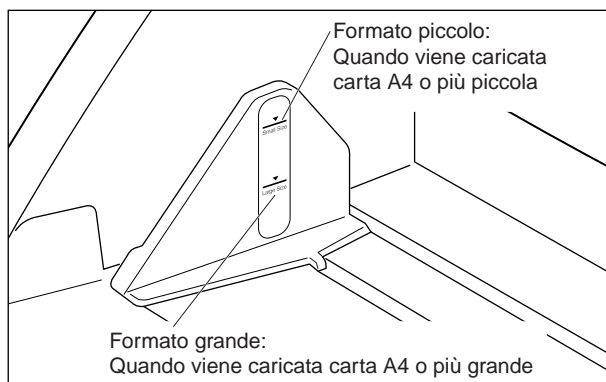
- Quando si carica il documento nel vassoio degli originali, caricarlo con la facciata superiore rivolta verso l'alto.
- Il peso della carta caricata qualche volta aumenta per cause legate all'ambiente in cui la carta viene immagazzinata (es. posti molto umidi). In questo caso, il peso della carta supera il peso massimo consentito per la pila di carta e questo anche se il numero di fogli della pila è inferiore al numero massimo, e a volte impedisce il sollevamento del vassoio degli originali. Ridurre il numero di fogli originali caricati sul vassoio e ripetere l'operazione di scansione.



SUGGERIMENTO

Per evitare inceppamenti della carta, controllare il segno di limite di carico sul vassoio degli originali. La pila non deve superare questo segno (▼).

Il limite di carico è di circa 500 pagine di carta formato A4 standard (80 g/m²) e di circa 200 pagine per la carta di formato maggiore di A4.



7 **Il vassoio degli originali si solleva automaticamente e l'operazione di scansione ha inizio. Quando si conclude la scansione di tutte le pagine del documento, il vassoio degli originali si abbassa.**

La scansione non inizia se il documento viene caricato per primo. In questo caso occorre premere il tasto Start oppure rimuovere e ricaricare il documento.



RIFERIMENTO

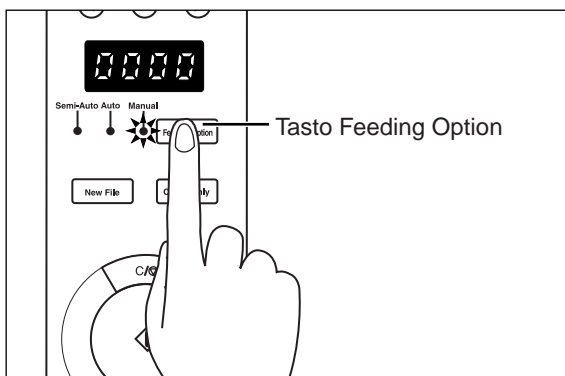
Se l'alimentazione della carta si arresta durante l'operazione di scansione a causa di un errore di sistema o un inceppamento della carta, prima di riprendere l'operazione di scansione controllare che l'ultima pagina dell'originale alimentata sia stata memorizzata correttamente.

8 **Se il documento da digitalizzare contiene più pagine, caricare il documento e la scansione ha inizio. Per concludere l'operazione di scansione, premere il tasto di arresto.**

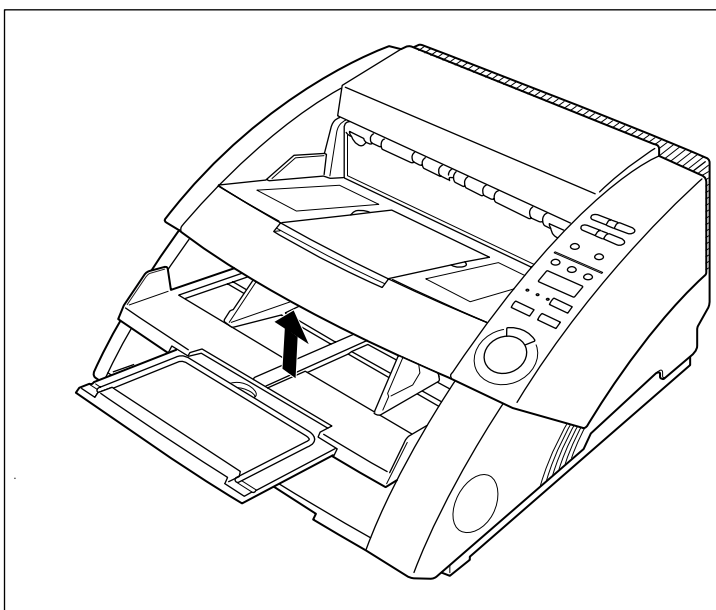
◆ Modalità Manual

Utilizzare questa modalità per alimentare documenti che presentano difficoltà per l'introduzione a pile nello scanner (es. la qualità della carta è tale da presentare rischi di alimentazione doppia).

1 Premere il tasto Feeding Option sul pannello operativo per accendere [Manual].



➡ Il vassoio degli originali si solleva.



Fare attenzione a non rimanere con le dita intrappolate nel vassoio degli originali.

2 Selezionare le seguenti impostazioni sul pannello operativo.

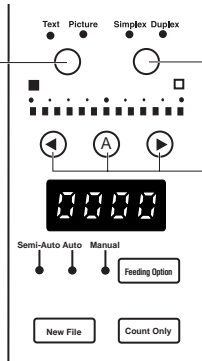
L'impostazione non è necessaria se è già stata eseguita nell'applicazione.

Text/Picture

[Text]: Serve per digitalizzare documenti di testo (comprensivi della maggior parte dei caratteri) in modalità bianco e nero.

[Picture]: Serve per digitalizzare documenti di immagini comprese fotografie con modalità diffusione errore bianco e nero.

Se le applicazioni vengono impostate con modalità toni di grigio o modalità colori per la selezione delle immagini, nessuno di questi sopra s'illumina.



Simplex/Duplex

[Simplex]: Serve per digitalizzare soltanto una facciata del documento.

[Duplex]: Serve per digitalizzare entrambe le facciate del documento.

Tasti di impostazione della luminosità

Impostare la luminosità quando l'originale viene digitalizzato.

Per regolare automaticamente la luminosità,

premere il tasto (A) per illuminare (A).

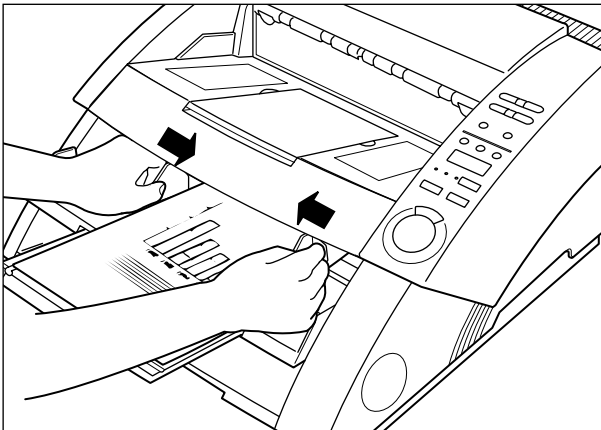
Per regolare manualmente la luminosità, premere i tasti (◀) o (▶) per spostare l'indicatore sopra il tasto e regolare la luminosità.



RIFERIMENTO

Per i dettagli sugli altri parametri di impostazione, vedere "3.3 Impostazione delle condizioni di scansione". (P. 58)

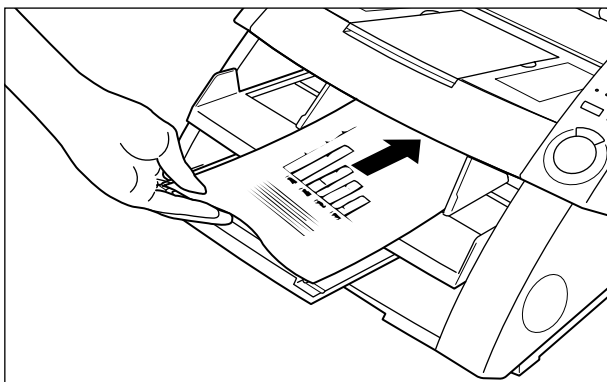
3 Caricare una pagina del documento se si vuole digitalizzare e adattare le guide degli originali alla larghezza del documento.



4 Selezionare la scansione nell'applicazione.

5 Caricare un foglio a faccia in su inserendo la parte superiore nello scanner.

➡ Il documento viene digitalizzato.



6 Inserire il documento una pagina per volta.

7 Per completare la scansione, premere il tasto di arresto.



SUGGERIMENTO

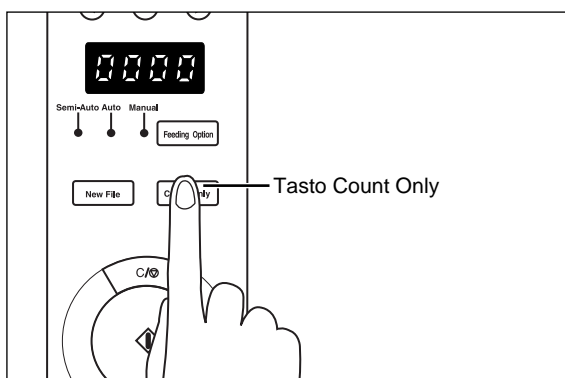
Il vassoio degli originali rimane sollevato. Per riportare il vassoio degli originali nella posizione originaria, premere il tasto Feeding Option e poi selezionare un tasto diverso da [Manual].

Conteggio del numero di pagine originali in un documento

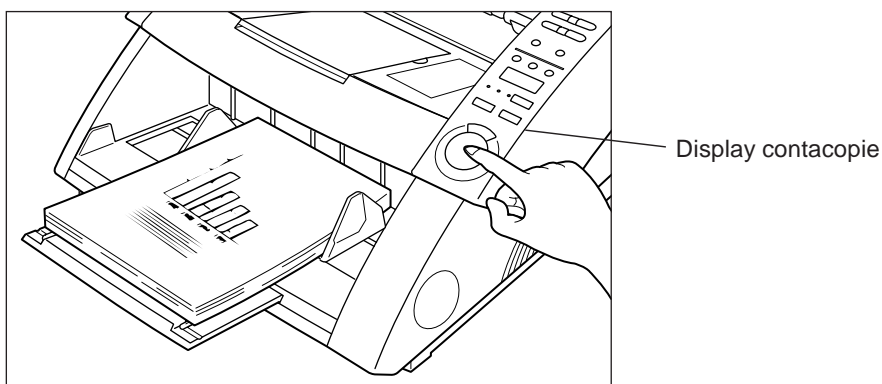
Il numero di pagine originali in un documento può essere conteggiato impostando lo scanner in modalità Count Only quando, per esempio, non se ne conosca il numero.

1 Premere il tasto Count Only sul pannello operativo dello scanner.

⇒ La spia del tasto Count Only si illumina per indicare la modalità Count Only. Inoltre si illumina anche la spia Semi-Auto.



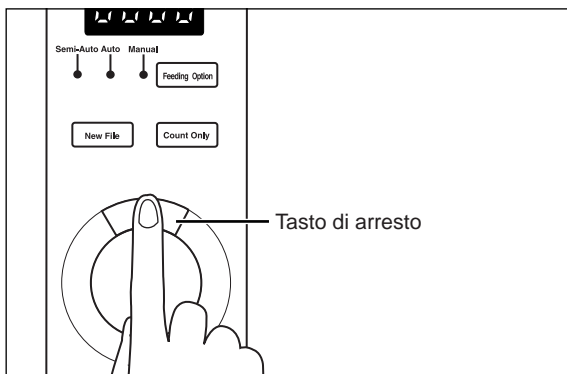
2 Caricare il documento sul vassoio degli originali e premere il tasto Inizio.



⇒ Il documento viene caricato e il numero di pagine del documento appare sul display contacopie.

3 A conteggio finito, premere il tasto Count Only per disattivare la modalità Count Only.

Per cancellare il conteggio sul display contacopie, tenere premuto per almeno due secondi il tasto di arresto.



SUGGERIMENTO

Il conteggio sopra citato può essere usato per eseguire una scansione di verifica (nel corso della scansione si verifica automaticamente il numero di pagine del documento). Per maggiori dettagli, fare riferimento alle istruzioni del Driver ISIS/TWAIN oppure alle istruzioni per Scanning Utility 5000 per la scansione forniti a parte.

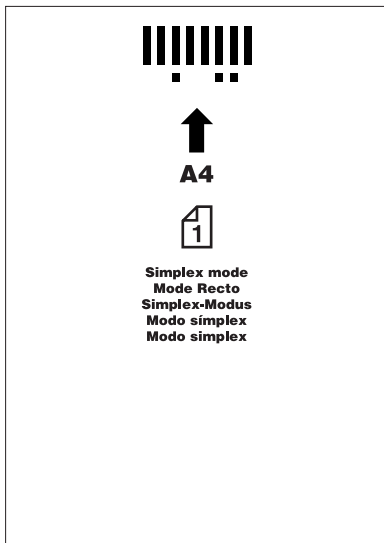
Fogli di funzione

Lo scanner viene fornito di diversi tipi di fogli di funzione che possono essere usati per attivare funzioni di tipo diverso. Se si introduce un foglio di funzione assieme ai documenti, lo scanner individua il foglio di funzione e imposta automaticamente la modalità di scansione desiderata.

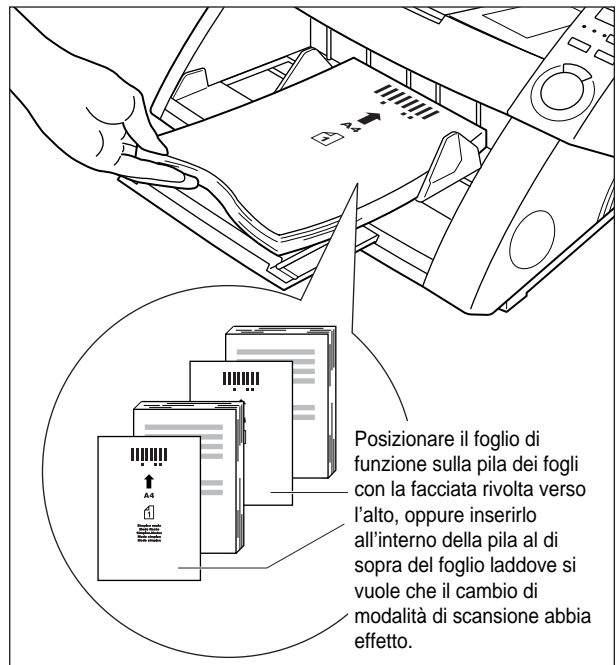


SUGGERIMENTO

- Questa funzione è valida soltanto quando l'applicazione in uso per la scansione consente la scansione con l'uso dei fogli di funzione. Impostare in anticipo l'applicazione in uso per la scansione così che l'applicazione possa fare uso di questa funzione. Per maggiori dettagli, fare riferimento alle istruzioni dell'applicazione dello scanner.
- Per maggiori dettagli sui fogli di funzione, fare riferimento alle istruzioni dei fogli di funzione allegate alla confezione dei fogli di funzione.



Foglio di funzione



Posizionare il foglio di funzione sulla pila dei fogli con la facciata rivolta verso l'alto, oppure inserirlo all'interno della pila al di sopra del foglio laddove si vuole che il cambio di modalità di scansione abbia effetto.

I cinque tipi di fogli di funzione che seguono sono acclusi al modello DR-5020/5080C.

- **Fogli di controllo scanner**

Questi fogli controllano la modalità con la quale il documento viene digitalizzato. Vengono forniti i seguenti fogli di controllo.

Per la modalità duplex (fronte-retro)

Comunica allo scanner di digitalizzare e di memorizzare il contenuto della parte frontale e del retro della pagina. Inserire questo foglio di funzione prima che il documento venga digitalizzato, e caricare nello scanner questo foglio insieme al documento.

Per la modalità simplex (una facciata)

Comunica allo scanner di digitalizzare e di memorizzare il contenuto della parte frontale della pagina. Inserire questo foglio di funzione prima che il documento venga digitalizzato, e caricare nello scanner questo foglio insieme al documento.

Per la modalità foto

Comunica allo scanner di attivare la modalità foto per digitalizzare e memorizzare fotografie. Inserire questo foglio di funzione prima del documento fotografico, e caricarlo nello scanner assieme al documento. Questo foglio è valido soltanto quando nell'applicazione la modalità scanner è regolata in bianco e nero. Questo foglio viene ignorato se caricato con la modalità scanner regolata su scala di grigio o colore.

Per la modalità testo

Comunica allo scanner di attivare la modalità testo per digitalizzare e memorizzare testo. Inserire questo foglio di funzione prima del documento di testo, e caricarlo nello scanner assieme al documento. Questo foglio è valido soltanto quando nell'applicazione la Modalità Scanner è regolata in bianco e nero. Questo foglio viene ignorato se caricato con la modalità scanner regolata su Scala di Grigio o Colore.

- **Foglio di separazione lavori**

Divide automaticamente un documento in file separati per memorizzare l'immagine digitalizzata per ciascun lavoro. Inserire questo foglio di funzione prima del documento successivo, e caricarlo nello scanner assieme al documento.



SUGGERIMENTO

- Creare delle copie dei fogli di funzione originali e conservare gli originali in un luogo pulito e sicuro.
- Se si eseguono delle copie dei fogli di funzione, assicurarsi che le copie siano delle stesse dimensioni, intensità e chiarezza come gli originali, né troppo luminose né troppo scure. Copie troppo luminose o troppo scure possono provocare errori di scansione.
- Quando si esegue la copia di un foglio di funzione, copiare il foglio di funzione su una carta dello stesso spessore del documento di cui si sta eseguendo la scansione. Se si esegue la copia di un foglio di funzione su una carta di spessore differente, viene rivelata un'alimentazione doppia (P. 63), con l'effetto di un errore di alimentazione doppia.
- Quando si esegue la copia di un foglio di funzione su un foglio di dimensione diversa da A4, regolare in modo che il campione sia di 10 mm dal bordo superiore del foglio. Assicurarsi inoltre che il campione venga copiato lungo il centro della larghezza del foglio.
- Maneggiare con cura i fogli funzione. Assicurarsi di non flettere, piegare, segnare o macchiare i fogli in alcun modo. In particolare evitare che si sporchino nella fascia di 51 mm. dal bordo superiore. Segnare o macchiare i fogli di funzione può provocare errori di scansione.
- Se durante la scansione la densità viene impostata su valori troppo alti o troppo bassi la scansione dei documenti può non essere corretta.

3.3

Impostazione delle condizioni di scansione

Le condizioni applicate nella scansione di un documento vengono impostate sul pannello operativo. Sostanzialmente, vengono impostate le seguenti tre voci:

- **Impostazioni di base**

Impostare le condizioni di base per la scansione: modalità alimentazione carta, luminosità, una Simplex/Duplex, ecc.

- **Impostazione con i tasti funzione**

Per usare queste impostazioni richiamare le impostazioni già registrate per un tasto funzione.

- **Impostazioni modalità utente**

Impostare la modalità di funzionamento scanner (modalità utente) per voci come ad esempio il metodo di individuazione dell'originale.

Quanto segue descrive ciascuno di questi metodi di impostazione.

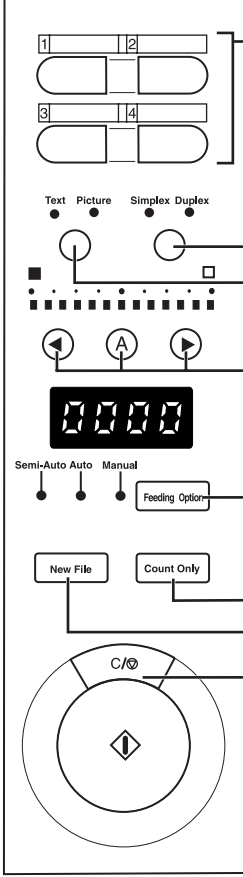


RIFERIMENTO

Soltanto alcune delle condizioni di scansione disponibili vengono impostate sul pannello operativo. Impostazioni più dettagliate vengono impostate dall'interno dell'applicazione. Per maggiori dettagli, fare riferimento alle "Istruzioni per il driver ISIS/TWAIN" oppure alle "Istruzioni per Scanning Utility 5000" fornite a parte.

Impostazioni fondamentali

Le voci seguenti possono essere impostate sul pannello operativo a seconda del tipo di documento da digitalizzare.



The diagram shows the control panel of a scanner with the following components and callouts:

- Callout 1:** Points to the top row of four function buttons.
- Callout 2:** Points to the second button in the top row.
- Callout 3:** Points to the third button in the top row.
- Callout 4:** Points to the fourth button in the top row.
- Text Picture Simplex Duplex:** Labels for the four function buttons.
- Feeding Option:** A control with three positions: Semi-Auto, Auto, and Manual.
- New File / Count Only:** Two buttons below the Feeding Option control.
- C/⊗:** A circular button with a diamond symbol in the center.
- Display:** A four-digit LED display showing "0000".
- Navigation:** A set of three buttons (left arrow, center 'A', right arrow) and a vertical slider below the display.

Tasti di funzione (P. 60)

Tasto Simplex/Duplex
 Serve a selezionare se digitalizzare solo una facciata o tutt'e due le facciate di un documento.
 Simplex: Per digitalizzare solo una facciata del documento.
 Duplex: Per digitalizzare tutt'e due le facciate del documento.

Tasto di selezione modalità
 Serve a selezionare la modalità di scansione documenti. ("Bianco e nero/Diffusione errore bianco e nero")
 Text: Serve per la scansione di documenti di testo (compresi molti caratteri) con modalità bianco e nero.
 Picture: Serve per la scansione di documenti immagine comprese fotografie con modalità diffusione errore bianco e nero.
 Se delle applicazioni vengono impostate con modalità di toni di grigio o modalità colore per la selezione di immagini, nessuna delle modalità sopra si accende.

Tasto di luminosità
 Serve ad impostare la luminosità quando il documento viene digitalizzato.
 Per regolare automaticamente la luminosità, premere il tasto **A** per illuminare **A**.
 Per impostare manualmente la luminosità, premere i tasti **◀** o **▶** con il tasto **A** spento e spostare l'indicazione sull'indicatore di tasto per regolare la luminosità. (Se si sposta l'indicatore verso destra si aumenta la luminosità, e se lo si sposta verso sinistra si diminuisce la luminosità. La luminosità può essere regolata a scelta tra 13 livelli.)
 Se si premono i tasti **◀** o **▶** con il tasto **A** acceso per regolare l'indicatore, il livello di regolazione automatica viene regolato.
 In modalità Count Only, è possibile impostare il valore di inizio conteggio con i tasti **◀** o **▶**.

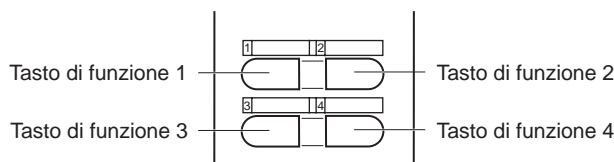
Tasto Feeding Option (P. 39)
 Serve per selezionare la modalità di alimentazione documento.
 Remote: Le tre lampade alla sinistra di questo tasto sono tutte spente. Il documento viene alimentato quando lo scanner riceve un'istruzione di inizio scansione dal computer.
 Semi-Auto: Lo scanner alimenta il documento quando si preme il tasto Start dopo aver caricato il documento.
 Auto: Lo scanner alimenta automaticamente il documento quando questo viene caricato.

Tasto Count Only (P. 53)
 Serve ad impostare lo scanner per la modalità Count Only in modo da ottenere il numero di pagine di cui è composto il documento.
 Questo tasto si illumina quando viene premuto. Se si carica il documento e si preme il tasto Start in questa condizione, il documento viene alimentato e lo scanner provvede a contare il numero di pagine. (Il documento non viene digitalizzato.) Il numero di pagine di cui è composto il documento viene visualizzato sul display contatore.

Tasto New File
 Premere questo tasto per salvare le immagini digitalizzate in file separati.
 Questo tasto si illumina quando viene premuto. Se si digitalizza il documento successivo in questa condizione, l'immagine digitalizzata viene memorizzata in una cartella distinta dalla cartella del documento precedente.
 Quando Auto New File viene impostato nell'applicazione, questo tasto si accende automaticamente quando ognuno dei documenti impilati è stato digitalizzato.

Tasto di arresto
 Premere questo tasto per arrestare la scansione durante l'esecuzione.
 Utilizzarlo anche per cancellare il modo correntemente impostato e per cancellare un errore visualizzato sul display contatore.
 Per azzerare il display contatore a "0000", mantenerlo premuto per almeno due secondi.

Impostazioni dei tasti di funzione



Quattro tasti funzione si trovano nella parte alta del pannello operativo. Questi tasti vengono usati molto facilmente con un funzionamento a selezione rapida sul pannello operativo registrando le seguenti voci.

Ai tasti funzione possono essere assegnate le impostazioni seguenti:

- **Regolazione dello spessore manuale**
Regola manualmente lo spessore della carta.
- **Stampante ON/OFF**
Se è installata una stampante opzionale seleziona l'uso della stampante.
- **Modalità Spessore fisso ON/OFF**
Imposta lo spessore della carta su uno spessore fisso.
- **Individuazione alimentazione doppia ON/OFF**
Individua automaticamente alimentazioni simultanee di due o più documenti durante la scansione.
- **Ripristino impostazione memorizzata ON/OFF**
Memorizzare le impostazioni dello scanner che sono assegnate nel personal computer ai tasti di funzione. Una volta che le impostazioni sono state memorizzate, basta premere un tasto di funzione per ripristinarle nello scanner.

Le funzioni ai tasti funzione vengono assegnate nell'applicazione. Per maggiori dettagli su come assegnare le impostazioni ai tasti funzione, fare riferimento alle "Istruzioni per il Driver ISIS/TWAIN" oppure alle "Istruzioni per Scanning Utility 5000".



RIFERIMENTO

- Le impostazioni di base sono le seguenti:
Tasto di funzione 1: Regolazione dello spessore manuale
Tasto di funzione 2: Stampante ON/OFF
Tasto di funzione 3: Modalità Spessore fisso ON/OFF
Tasto di funzione 4: Individuazione alimentazione doppia ON/OFF
- I dettagli delle funzioni assegnate a ciascun tasto funzione vengono memorizzati nello scanner. Si noti che se lo scanner è sottoposto a riparazioni questi dettagli ritornano alle loro impostazioni di base.

◆ Regolazione dello spessore manuale

Questo scanner viene inizialmente impostato per individuare lo spessore della carta durante la scansione. Questa funzione può, tuttavia, non funzionare in modo corretto se si eseguono scansioni con carta troppo spessa o troppo sottile. Se accade ciò, l'utente deve regolare manualmente lo spessore della carta in modo che l'alimentazione dei documenti attraverso lo scanner sia scorrevole.

La procedura per la regolazione manuale dello spessore della carta è la seguente:

1 Premere il tasto funzione al quale è stata assegnata la regolazione dello spessore manuale (di base è il tasto funzione 1).

➔ Il tasto funzione lampeggia, e sul display contacopie appare la scritta lampeggiante "Adj". La spia Semi-Auto lampeggia, e la parte centrale del tasto Inizio lampeggia in verde.



RIFERIMENTO

Per annullare la funzione regolazione dello spessore della carta, premere il tasto lampeggiante oppure il tasto di arresto.

2 Caricare sul vassoio degli originali un foglio da un documento da digitalizzare e premere il tasto Inizio.

➔ Questo esegue la scansione del documento e lo spessore della carta viene visualizzato sull'indicatore.



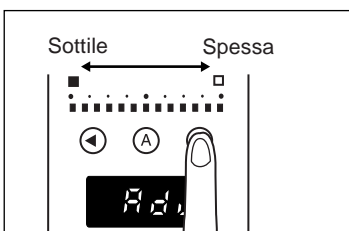
RIFERIMENTO

Lo spessore della carta visualizzato sull'indicatore non indica il preciso spessore della carta ma serve da aiuto nella regolazione dello spessore della carta.

3 Per regolare lo spessore della carta premere il tasto ◀ oppure il tasto ▶.

Premendo il tasto ◀ oppure il tasto ▶ il display indicatore si sposta rispettivamente verso sinistra e verso destra.

Per impostare una carta più spessa, premere il tasto ▶. Per impostare una carta più sottile, premere il tasto ◀. Lo spessore della carta ha 13 livelli di regolazione.



4 Premere di nuovo il tasto lampeggiante.

⇒ Questo imposta lo spessore della carta, e azzerà il display contacopie.



- Per consentire l'impostazione del valore nella procedura sopra esposta, bisogna impostare la modalità Spessore fisso (P. 62).
- Lo spessore della carta può essere inoltre regolato nell'applicazione. Quando si regola lo spessore della carta sia sul pannello operativo dello scanner che nell'applicazione, la priorità viene data all'ultima impostazione fatta.

◆ Stampante ON/OFF

Quando la stampante opzionale viene installata sullo scanner, è possibile selezionare se usare la stampante o meno tramite un tasto funzione o no. Per consentire l'uso della stampante, premere il tasto funzione al quale è stato assegnato la stampante e digitalizzare il documento con la spia del tasto accesa. Per disabilitare l'uso della stampante, digitalizzare il documento con la spia del tasto spenta.

◆ Modalità Spessore fisso ON/OFF

Questo scanner viene inizialmente impostato per individuare lo spessore della carta durante la scansione. Inoltre, comunque, possiede la modalità Spessore fisso per fissare l'impostazione dello spessore della carta. Quando lo scanner viene impostato sulla modalità Spessore fisso, la funzione di individuazione automatica dello spessore della carta viene disabilitata, e lo spessore della carta viene fissato sul valore impostato nella "Regolazione dello spessore manuale". (p. 61).

Con un tasto funzione è possibile selezionare l'individuazione automatica dello spessore della carta o la modalità Spessore fisso. Per impostare la modalità Spessore fisso, premere il tasto funzione (di base è il tasto funzione 3) al quale è stata assegnata la modalità Spessore fisso, ed eseguire la scansione del documento con la spia del tasto accesa. Per tornare all'individuazione automatica dello spessore della carta, premere il tasto funzione al quale è stata assegnata la modalità Spessore fisso per spegnere la spia.

◆ Individuazione alimentazione doppia ON/OFF

Questo scanner possiede una funzione "individuazione alimentazione doppia". Questa funzione memorizza lo spessore e la lunghezza della carta da usare con il documento modello e individua automaticamente una doppia alimentazione (alimentazioni simultanee di due o più pagine), e visualizza un errore quando viene individuata una doppia alimentazione.

Con un tasto funzione è possibile selezionare se attivare (ON) o disattivare (OFF) la funzione Individuazione alimentazione doppia.

Per individuare un'alimentazione doppia, premere il tasto funzione (di base è il tasto funzione 4) al quale è stato assegnata l'individuazione alimentazione doppia, ed eseguire la scansione del documento con la spia del tasto accesa. Per disabilitare l'individuazione alimentazione doppia, premere il tasto funzione al quale è stato assegnata l'individuazione alimentazione doppia per spegnere la spia.

Quando viene caricata una pila di fogli di dimensioni differenti oppure originali spessi si verifica un errore di alimentazione doppia. Ricordarsi di disabilitare l'individuazione alimentazione doppia prima di digitalizzare degli originali.



RIFERIMENTO

- Siccome il primo foglio del documento viene usato come modello per l'individuazione di alimentazione doppia, l'alimentazione doppia non viene individuata se il primo foglio del documento è un'alimentazione doppia. Controllare l'immagine digitalizzata per vedere se il primo foglio del documento è stato alimentato e digitalizzato correttamente.
- L'individuazione di alimentazione doppia non è possibile per documenti con una larghezza di 130 mm. o inferiore.
- Quando viene individuato un originale più lungo di 5 cm. oppure un originale 1,5 volte più spesso rispetto al modello viene automaticamente valutato come un'alimentazione doppia e viene visualizzato un messaggio di errore.
- Quando la funzione alimentazione doppia viene regolata su ON con un tasto funzione, viene individuato un'alimentazione doppia sia per la lunghezza che per lo spessore del documento. L'individuazione di un'alimentazione doppia per la lunghezza o per lo spessore del documento non può essere assegnata ai tasti funzione. Si consideri che questo può essere impostato nel driver o nell'applicazione, il tasto funzione in questo caso non si illumina. Il tasto funzione si illumina quando l'individuazione di un'alimentazione doppia viene impostata sia per la lunghezza che per lo spessore del documento.
- Quando l'alimentazione viene disattivata le impostazioni dell'individuazione di un'alimentazione doppia vengono cancellate dalla memoria dello scanner.

◆ Ripristino impostazione memorizzata ON/OFF

È possibile registrare le impostazioni dello scanner effettuate sul personal computer nei tasti funzione dello scanner.

È possibile registrare impostazioni corrispondente all'originale che si sottopone a scansione in ognuno dei Quattro tasti funzione. Quando le impostazioni dello scanner sono state registrate in un tasto funzione, il tasto funzione si illumina. Si noti, tuttavia, che prima di eseguire la scansione è necessario impostare la modalità, la risoluzione di scansione e il formato dell'originale, perché queste impostazioni non possono essere registrate nei tasti funzione.

Per utilizzare le impostazioni dello scanner registrate, prima di aprire la finestra di dialogo Impostazioni Scanner dell'applicazione, premere il tasto funzione nel quale è stata registrata l'impostazione dello scanner desiderata.

Il tasto funzione registrato si accende e sullo scanner vengono ripristinate le impostazioni relative. Quando si cambiano le impostazioni ripristinate dello scanner, il tasto funzione si spegne. Il tasto funzione si accende di nuovo quando si ripristinano le impostazioni cambiate ai valori originali.

Impostazioni nella modalità utente

Il modello DR-5020/5080C consente di scegliere tra le modalità di funzionamento (modalità utente) usate per ciascuna delle voci qui in basso.

(Le impostazioni da U5 a U9 sono disponibili soltanto quando il dispositivo opzionale corrispondente (stampante, decodificatore di codice a barre o girante) è collegato.)

Impostazioni del segnale acustico del pannello operativo

- U1-0 Con il tasto in funzione il segnale acustico non suona.
- U1-1 Con il tasto in funzione il segnale acustico suona. (impostazione di base)

Impostazioni di individuazione del documento

- U2-0: Rileva la larghezza del documento dalla larghezza del documento.
- U2-1: Rileva la larghezza del documento dalla larghezza della guida per la carta. (impostazione predefinita)

- U3-0 Non individua il disallineamento del documento. (impostazione di base)
- U3-1 Individua il disallineamento e l'esecuzione della scansione del documento.
- U3-2 Individua il disallineamento e l'esecuzione della scansione del documento. (modalità manuale esclusa)

Impostazioni di sincronizzazione SCSI

- U4-0 Non trasferisce di sincronizzazione SCSI.
- U4-1 Trasferisce la sincronizzazione SCSI. (impostazione di base)

Impostazione codice a barre

- U5-0 Durante la lettura del codice a barre il segnale acustico non suona.
- U5-1 Durante la lettura del codice a barre il segnale acustico suona. (impostazione di base)

- U6-0 Uscita codici AVVIO/ARRESTO nel codice a barre Codabar nella cassa inferiore. (impostazione di base)
- U6-1 Uscita codici AVVIO/ARRESTO nel codice a barre Codabar nella cassa superiore.

- U7-0 Non verifica il codice a barre.
- U7-1 Verifica il codice a barre una volta. (impostazione di base)
- U7-2 Verifica il codice a barre due volte.
- U7-3 Verifica il codice a barre tre volte.

Impostazioni della modalità Count Only

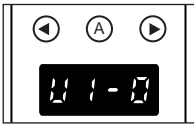
- U8-0 Non usare l'unità stampante/vidimatore in modalità Count Only. (impostazione predefinita)
- U8-1 Usare l'unità stampante/vidimatore in modalità Count Only.

Impostazione della modalità di timbro vidimatore

- U9-0 Usare il vidimatore in modalità di controllo. (impostazione predefinita)
- U9-1 Usare il vidimatore in modalità A4.

◆ Come Impostare la modalità Utente

- 1 Tenere premuto il tasto **(A)** per almeno cinque secondi.

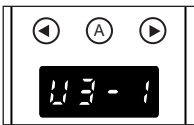


⇒ **(A)** lampeggia, e sul display contacopie viene visualizzata la modalità utente.

- 2 Selezionare la destinazione della modalità utente (una da U1 a U9) usando i tasto **(◀)** oppure **(▶)**.



- 3 Premere il tasto **(A)** per selezionare la modalità da usare (ultimo numero).



- 4 Premere il tasto di arresto.

⇒ Questo imposta la modalità selezionata, e riporta il display contacopie in display contacopie.

Capitolo 4

Guida e rimedi in caso di problemi di funzionamento

Questo capitolo descrive le cause dei problemi che potrebbero verificarsi nell'uso del DR-5020/5080C e i metodi per risolverli.

4.1	Quando lo scanner non viene rilevato	68
4.2	Rimozione degli inceppamenti della carta	70
4.3	Problemi nell'alimentazione della carta	75
4.4	Quando l'immagine digitalizzata non è normale	77
4.5	Quando viene visualizzato un codice d'errore	78

4.1

Quando lo scanner non viene rilevato

Di seguito vengono descritte le cause possibili qualora il computer non riconosca lo scanner. Rimediare al problema con il rimedio indicato per la causa corrispondente.

Causa Lo scanner non è stato collegato correttamente al computer.

Rimedio Collegare correttamente lo scanner alla scheda SCSI del computer.

Causa La scheda SCSI non è stata collegata correttamente.

Rimedio Collegare correttamente la scheda SCSI facendo riferimento al manuale della scheda SCSI. Quindi, controllare quanto segue in base al sistema operativo installato nel proprio computer.

<Windows95>

Controllare in [Avvio] - [Impostazioni] - [Pannello di controllo] - [Sistema] - [Gestione periferiche] per vedere se affianco al controller SCSI appare “x” o “!”. Se appare l’uno o l’altro simbolo, reinstallare la scheda SCSI facendo riferimento al manuale della scheda SCSI.

<WindowsNT>

Controllare in [Avvio] - [Impostazioni] - [Pannello di controllo] - [Scheda SCSI] per vedere se la scheda SCSI viene rilevata correttamente. Se non viene rilevata, reinstallare la scheda SCSI facendo riferimento al manuale della scheda SCSI.

Causa Lo stesso ID SCSI è stato utilizzato per altre periferiche SCSI.

Rimedio Controllare l’ID SCSI di tutte le periferiche SCSI collegate e assicurarsi che lo stesso ID SCSI non sia stato impostato per due o più periferiche. Se è stato assegnato lo stesso ID SCSI, impostare di nuovo gli ID SCSI.

Causa Il terminatore non è stato collegato correttamente.

Rimedio Collegare il terminatore all’ultima periferica SCSI alla fine della catena a margherita. Se la periferica SCSI è dotata di funzione terminatore incorporata, attivare la funzione terminatore.

Causa	Lo scanner è stato acceso dopo il computer.
Rimedio	Spegnere il computer e lo scanner, accendere di nuovo lo scanner e poi il computer.

Causa	Lo scanner è spento.
Rimedio	Spegnere il computer, accendere lo scanner e quindi accendere di nuovo il computer.

Causa	Il cavo di alimentazione dello scanner è staccato dallo scanner o dalla presa di alimentazione a.c.
Rimedio	Spegnere il computer, e collegare in modo corretto il cavo di alimentazione dello scanner. Quindi, accendere lo scanner e poi accendere di nuovo il computer.

Causa	Lo scanner non supporta questa scheda SCSI.
Rimedio	Utilizzare una scheda SCSI compatibile.

4.2

Rimozione degli inceppamenti della carta

Se la scansione si arresta durante l'esecuzione o sul display contatore appare "PXX", la carta potrebbe essersi inceppata.

Per rimuovere la carta inceppata nel DR-5020/5080C, attenersi alla procedura seguente.



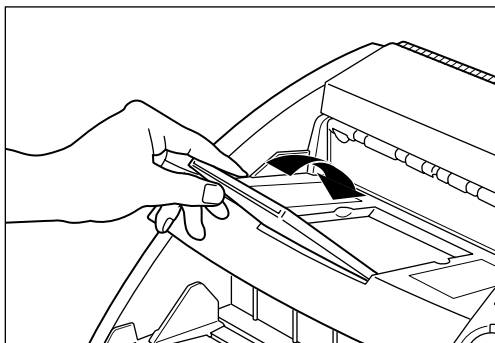
ATTENZIONE

- Fare molta attenzione durante la rimozione della carta inceppata. Si potrebbero subire lesioni inaspettate. Per esempio, i bordi della carta potrebbero ferire le dita o il documento potrebbe danneggiarsi.
- Rimuovere tutti i fogli di carta inceppati. I pezzi di carta lasciati nell'unità potrebbero impigliarsi di nuovo nell'unità, causando un altro inceppamento della carta o malfunzionamenti.
- Durante l'apertura e la chiusura dell'unità superiore, fare attenzione a non ferirsi le dita.

Inceppamento della carta nell'unità di alimentazione carta

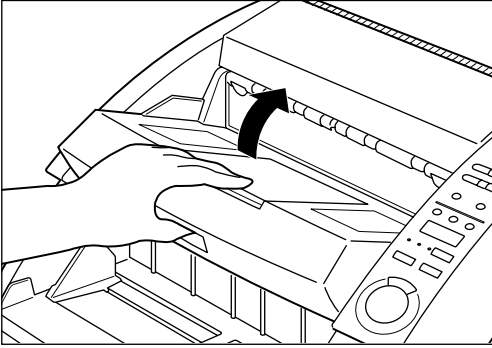
1 Rimuovere i documenti dal vassoio degli originali e dal vassoio di emissione.

2 Rimuovere il vassoio asportabile o la piastra guida di emissione se è stata installata sul vassoio di emissione. Chiudere la guida del vassoio di emissione se è aperta.

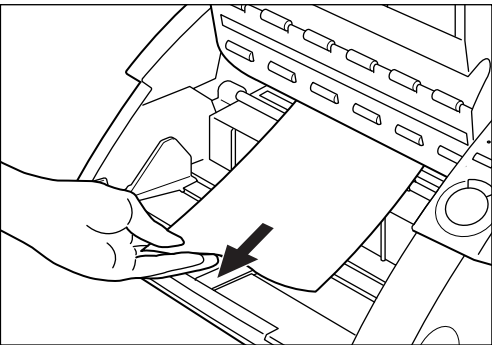


3 Aprire l'unità superiore.

Premere il tasto di apertura/chiusura e sollevare la parte superiore dell'unità fino a che si ferma e rimane in quella posizione.

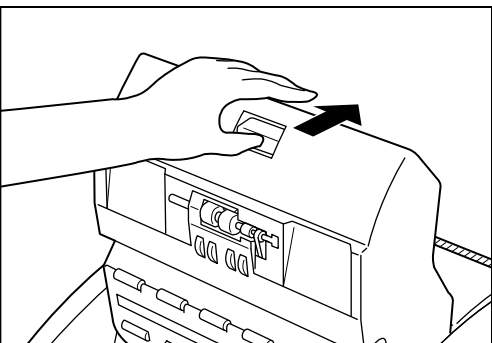


4 Rimuovere la carta inceppata nello scanner.



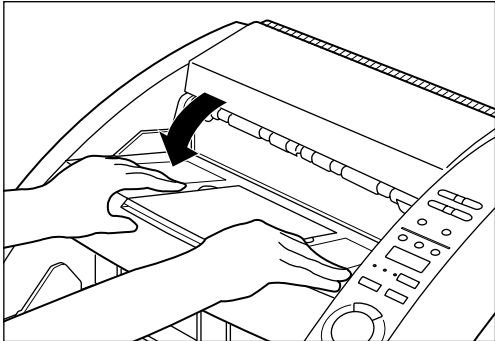
5 Per chiudere l'unità superiore, spingerla indietro il più possibile e poi lasciare l'unità superiore.

Quando l'unità superiore viene lasciata, comincia ad abbassarsi lentamente. Non è necessario spingerla verso il basso. Facendolo si potrebbe danneggiare lo scanner.



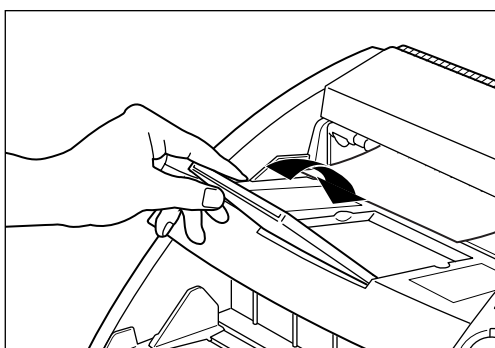
6 Quando l'unità superiore è abbassata fino a dove le è possibile, spingere fermamente verso il basso su ambedue i lati per chiuderla.

Se si spinge l'unità superiore verso il basso da un solo lato, il lato opposto non si chiude completamente. Fare attenzione ad ascoltare lo scatto che emette quando va in posizione.



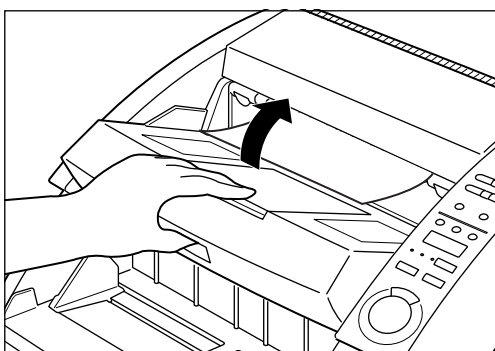
Inceppamento della carta nella sezione di uscita della carta

- 1** Rimuovere la carta inceppata dal vassoio degli originali oppure dal vassoio di uscita originali.
- 2** Rimuovere il vassoio estraibile oppure la piastra guida di emissione se sono installate sul vassoio degli originali. Chiudere la prolunga del vassoio di uscita originali se è aperta.

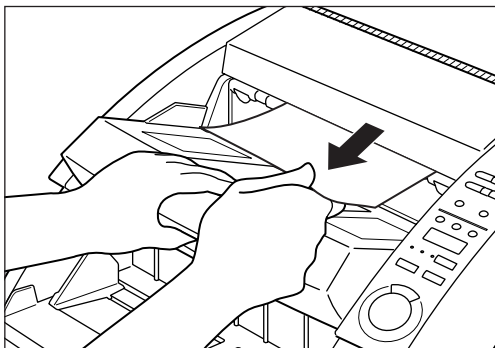


- 3** Aprire l'unità superiore.

Premere il tasto apertura/chiusura, e spingere leggermente verso l'alto l'unità superiore.

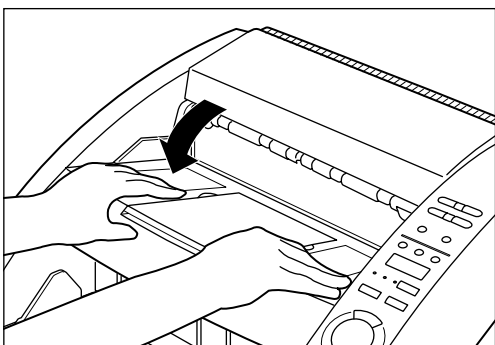


4 Rimuovere eventuale carta inceppata dalla sezione di uscita.



5 Spingere fermamente l'unità superiore verso il basso su ambedue i lati per chiuderla.

Se si spinge l'unità superiore verso il basso da un solo lato, il lato opposto non si chiude completamente. Fare attenzione ad ascoltare lo scatto che emette quando va in posizione.



4.3

Problemi nell'alimentazione della carta

Se il documento non viene alimentato in modo corretto oppure se le funzioni di individuazione non funzionano bene, rimediare al problema seguendo i seguenti rimedi:

Condizione	Si è verificato un inceppamento della carta.
Causa e rimedio	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Controllare il documento per verificare che la dimensione e lo spessore del documento siano compresi tra i valori supportati dallo scanner e verificare se la qualità di carta del documento sia idonea. Per le precauzioni sulla manipolazione di documenti, vedere "Riguardo i Documenti" (P. 36).• Lo scorrimento del documento può causare il verificarsi di un errore di alimentazione della carta (P. 32). Fare scorrere la leva di regolazione di alimentazione della carta per regolare l'alimentazione della carta.• Sporco o rulli usurati all'interno dello scanner possono provocare l'inceppamento della carta. Pulire i rulli se presentano tracce di sporco. (P. 83) I rulli usurati devono essere sostituiti. Contattare un servizio assistenza clienti Canon.
Condizione	Il vassoio degli originali non si solleva e non va in posizione con uno scatto.
Causa e rimedio	A volte il peso della carta caricata aumenta a causa dell'ambiente (ad esempio luoghi con molta umidità) in cui il documento viene conservato. Se ciò si verifica il peso della carta supera il limite massimo di peso accatastato consentito anche se il numero dei fogli accatastati è al di sotto del limite massimo, impedendo talvolta al vassoio degli originali di sollevarsi. Ridurre il numero di fogli del documento caricati sul vassoio degli originali ed eseguire di nuovo la scansione del documento.
Condizione	Si verifica un errore di doppia alimentazione anche se non si è verificata una alimentazione doppia dei documenti. (individuazione errata di doppia alimentazione)
Causa e rimedio	Se la dimensione dello spessore della carta su cui il foglio di funzione viene copiato differisce da quella del documento da digitalizzare quando viene usato il foglio di funzione, lo scanner valuta erroneamente questo come una alimentazione doppia, e si verifica questo errore. Se si verifica ciò, disattivare la individuazione dell'alimentazione doppia, e digitalizzare di nuovo il documento. Oppure, copiare il foglio di funzione su carta della stessa dimensione e spessore del documento, e usare quella copia.

Condizione **La doppia alimentazione non può essere individuata.**

Causa e rimedio L'individuazione dell'alimentazione doppia non è possibile su documenti di larghezza di 130 mm o inferiori anche se l'individuazione di alimentazione doppia è attivata.

Condizione **Si verifica un errore di disallineamento anche se la carta non è stata caricata in modo obliquo.**

Causa e rimedio Lo scanner valuta in modo errato il verificarsi di un disallineamento. Questo errore si verifica quando un'area di 5 mm. dal bordo dell'originale contiene testo o un'immagine oppure se l'originale ha un fondo scuro. Se si verifica questo errore, disattivare l'individuazione dei disallineamenti ed eseguire di nuovo la scansione del documento. Oppure, eseguire una copia del documento su carta differente, procurare un margine più ampio intorno al documento (oppure schiarire lo sfondo), ed eseguire di nuovo la scansione del documento.

Condizione **Quando il documento si sporca (con la stampante installata).**

Causa e rimedio Questo accade perché l'inchiostro aderisce ai fori che si trovano nella piastra guida all'interno della stampante. Pulire i fori con un batuffolo di cotone.



Quando l'immagine digitalizzata non è normale

Se c'è un problema con l'immagine digitalizzata (l'immagine non è nitida oppure se appaiono delle linee nell'immagine), una tra le seguenti può esserne la causa. Controllare quanto segue e adottare l'appropriato rimedio.

- **Gli specchi di scansione e i rulli dello scanner sono sporchi.**

Se gli specchi e i rulli di scansione dello scanner sono sporchi, e lo sporco appare sull'immagine digitalizzata.

→ Pulire gli specchi e i rulli. Per maggiori dettagli, vedere il Capitolo 5 "Pulizia giornaliera" (P. 83).

- **Le condizioni di scansione sono inadatte.**

Quando la messa a punto delle condizioni di scansione è inadatta, l'immagine digitalizzata non risulta nitida o appare scurita.

→ Controllare la luminosità e altre impostazioni dello scanner.

Se l'immagine digitalizzata risulta nebbiosa oppure se il documento non è stato digitalizzato nella sua interezza, una delle probabili cause è che la luminosità è regolata troppo alta.

Se l'immagine digitalizzata risulta scurita una delle probabili cause è che il contrasto è regolato troppo alto.

Controllare inoltre le impostazioni nel driver e nell'applicazione.

- **Il driver oppure l'applicazione non funzionano in modo corretto.**

Se il documento non può essere digitalizzato in modo corretto anche se le condizioni di scansione sono regolate, una delle probabili cause è che il funzionamento del driver oppure l'applicazione non è corretto.

→ Installare di nuovo il driver oppure l'applicazione.

Per maggiori dettagli su come installare il driver, vedere le istruzioni del Driver ISIS/TWAIN fornite a parte.

Per maggiori dettagli su come installare l'applicazione, vedere il manuale d'istruzioni per l'applicazione in uso.

- **Altre Cause**

Il computer può riconoscere lo scanner correttamente, e la scansione può non essere possibile con il driver e l'applicazione correttamente installati. Se accade ciò, una causa possibile può essere che la scheda SCSI installata non è adatta al computer. Questo messaggio di errore a volte non appare più disattivando il trasferimento asincrono nella modalità utente dello scanner (P. 64). Se ciò non elimina il problema, contattare il costruttore del computer oppure della scheda SCSI.

Se i rimedi sopra citati non eliminano il problema, contattare un servizio assistenza clienti Canon.

4.5

Quando viene visualizzato un codice d'errore

Quando lo scanner non funziona o quando si verifica un problema come un inceppamento o un errore di emissione della carta, sul display contatore del pannello operativo appare un codice d'errore. Di seguito vengono descritti i codici d'errore che appaiono sul display contatore e come rimediare all'errore.

Codici d'errore d01, d02, d03

Causa **Vengono digitalizzate due o più pagine del documento.**

Rimedio Premere il tasto di arresto per portare il contacopie a "0".
Confrontare il documento con l'immagine digitalizzata e digitalizzare di nuovo il documento.

Codice d'errore C01

Causa **L'unità superiore è aperta.**

Rimedio Chiudere l'unità superiore.

Codice d'errore C02

Causa **Il coperchio della stampante è aperto. (Quando la stampante è installata)**

Rimedio Chiudere il coperchio della stampante.

Codice d'errore C03

Causa **L'unità superiore e il coperchio della stampante sono aperti. (Quando la stampante è installata.)**

Rimedio Chiudere l'unità superiore e il coperchio della stampante.

Codice d'errore C04

Causa **Il coperchio del vidimatore ED600 è aperto. (con vidimatore ED600 installato)**

Rimedio Chiudere il coperchio del vidimatore ED600.

Codice d'errore C05

Causa **L'unità superiore e il coperchio del vidimatore ED600 sono aperti (con vidimatore ED600 installato).**

Rimedio Chiudere l'unità superiore e il coperchio del vidimatore ED600.

Codice d'errore	C06
Causa	Il coperchio della stampante e il coperchio del vidimatore ED600 sono aperti (con stampante e vidimatore ED600 installati).
Rimedio	Chiudere il coperchio della stampante e il coperchio del vidimatore ED600.

Codice d'errore	C07
Causa	L'unità superiore, il coperchio della stampante e il coperchio del vidimatore ED600 sono aperti (con stampante e vidimatore ED600 installati).
Rimedio	Chiudere tutti i coperchi.

Codici d'errore	E20, E21, E22, E23, E24, E25, E29, E30, E40, E41, E80, E85
Causa	Errore interno all'unità
Rimedio	L'unità deve essere riparata da un tecnico del servizio di assistenza tecnica. Spegnerne l'alimentazione, contattare il negozio dove è stata acquistata oppure un servizio assistenza clienti Canon, e informarli del codice di errore.

Codice d'errore	L01
Causa	Troppi dati. Memoria esaurita.
Rimedio	Premere il tasto di arresto e portare il contatore a "0". Memoria opzionale può essere aggiunta per utilizzare una funzione addizionale. Contattare il negozio dove è stata acquistata l'unità oppure un servizio assistenza clienti Canon. Per maggiori dettagli sui requisiti per una memoria addizionale quando vengono impostate funzioni addizionali, vedere le "Tavole Modalità Scansione DR-5020/5080C". (P. 88)

Codice d'errore	L02
Causa	Troppi dati. Memoria esaurita.
Rimedio	Premere il tasto di arresto per riportare il contatore a "0". Questo errore si verifica quando vengono digitalizzati entrambi i lati di un documento formato A3. Digitalizzare un lato del documento per volta o cambiare la modalità di scansione.

Codice d'errore	U01
Causa	Il numero dei fogli del documento da digitalizzare supera il numero dei fogli impostato nella scansione di verifica.
Rimedio	Due o più fogli possono essere stati alimentati quando è stato conteggiato il numero dei fogli. Premere il tasto di arresto e portare il contacopie a "0". Controllare il numero dei fogli per verificare se tutti i fogli del documento sono stati conteggiati, e digitalizzare di nuovo il documento.

Codice d'errore	U02
Causa	Il numero dei fogli del documento da digitalizzare è inferiore al numero dei fogli impostato nella scansione di verifica.
Rimedio	Due o più fogli possono essere stati alimentati quando è stato conteggiato il numero dei fogli. Premere il tasto di arresto e portare il contacopie a "0". Confrontare il numero delle immagini digitalizzate con il numero dei fogli del documento per verificare se tutti i fogli del documento sono stati correttamente digitalizzati, e digitalizzare di nuovo il documento.

Codice d'errore	H01
Causa	La cartuccia d'inchiostro della stampante opzionale non è installata.
Rimedio	Installare correttamente la cartuccia della stampante.

Codice di errore	H02
Causa	Errore di collegamento del vidimatore ED600 (opzionale)
Rimedio	Collegare correttamente il vidimatore ED600.

Codice di errore	P00, P01, P02, P03, P04, P06, P08, P10, P20
Causa	Inceppamento carta nello scanner
Rimedio	Rimuovere la carta inceppata. (P. 70)

Codice di errore	P30
Causa	Inceppamento carta nel vidimatore ED600
Rimedio	Rimuovere la carta inceppata dall'interno del vidimatore ED600 secondo le istruzioni fornite per il vidimatore ED600.

Codice di errore	P80
Causa	Errore di alimentazione della carta
Rimedio	Aprire e chiudere l'unità superiore.

Codice di errore	J18
Causa	Un documento è stato alimentato in modo inclinato.
Rimedio	Rimuovere il documento disallineato. Eseguire quindi nuovamente la scansione del documento, dopo avere verificato che la scansione dell'immagine del documento che ha provocato l'errore sia stata eseguita correttamente.

Capitolo 5

Pulizia

Questo capitolo descrive le operazioni per la pulizia giornaliera dello scanner.

5.1 Pulizia giornaliera	82
--------------------------------------	-----------

5.1 Pulizia giornaliera

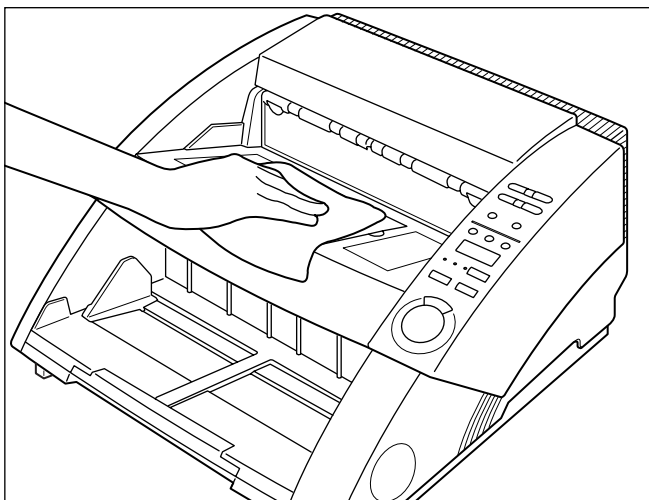
Per mantenere alta la qualità delle immagini digitalizzate, pulire regolarmente il DR-5020/5080C come descritto di seguito.



- Prima di pulire lo scanner, spegnerlo, spegnere anche il computer, e disinserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa della rete elettrica. A non farlo si corre il rischio di scossa elettrica.
- Non pulire lo scanner con alcun tipo di solvente organico quale alcool, benzene e diluenti per vernice. Facendolo si corre il rischio di incendi e scosse elettriche o la superficie esterna si potrebbe deformare o scolorire.
- Non spruzzare il detergente neutro o l'acqua direttamente sulle lastre di esposizione. Il liquido potrebbe penetrare sotto le lastre e sporcare la sorgente luminosa e le lenti interne.

Pulizia dell'unità principale

Strofinare lo scanner con un panno ben strizzato, leggermente imbevuto di acqua o detergente neutro. Poi asciugarlo con un panno asciutto e pulito.



Pulizia delle lastre di esposizione e dei rulli di scansione

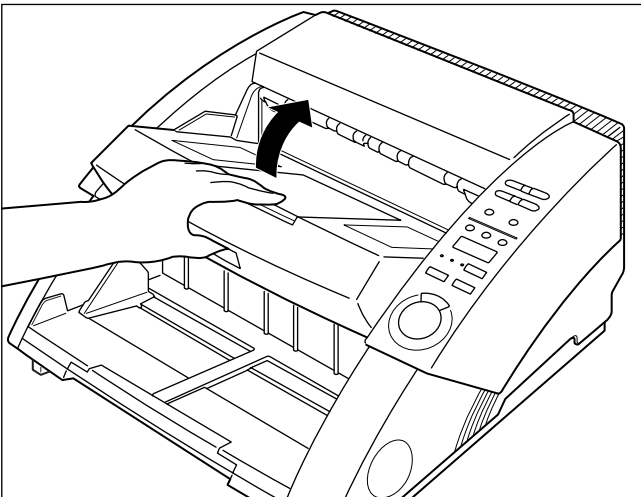
Una probabile causa delle striature che appaiono sulle immagini digitalizzate o delle macchie che appaiono sui documenti digitalizzati è lo sporco che si accumula sulle lastre di esposizione e sui rulli di scansione. Pulire le lastre di esposizione e i rulli di scansione regolarmente.

1 Premere l'interruttore di alimentazione per spegnere lo scanner e disinserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa di corrente.

2 Rimuovere il vassoio asportabile o la piastra guida di emissione dal vassoio di emissione, se installata. Chiudere la prolunga del vassoio di emissione, se è aperta.

3 Aprire l'unità superiore.

Premere il tasto di apertura/chiusura e sollevare gentilmente la parte superiore dell'unità fino a che si blocca in posizione aperta.



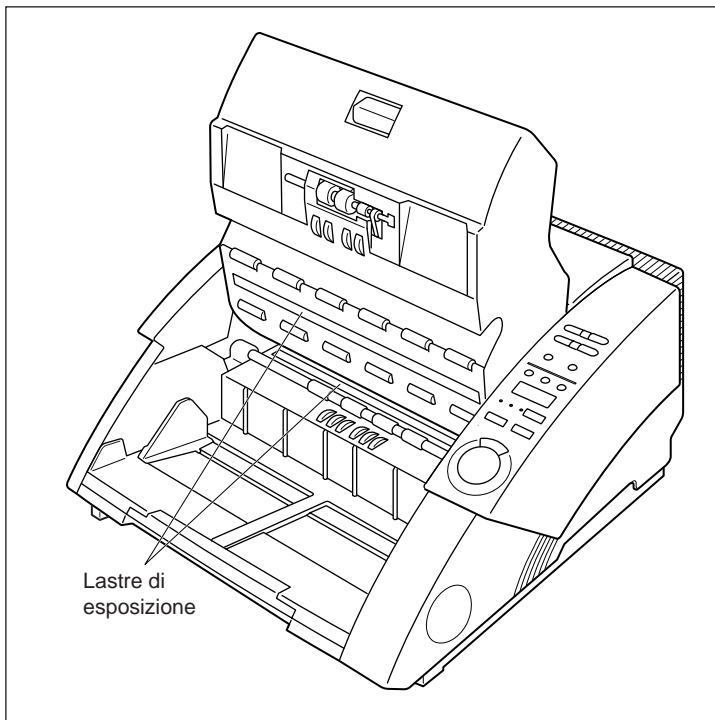
4 Usare un panno pulito e morbido per strofinare le lastre di scansione.

Non mancare di pulire entrambe le lastre di esposizione, sia quella inferiore che quella superiore.



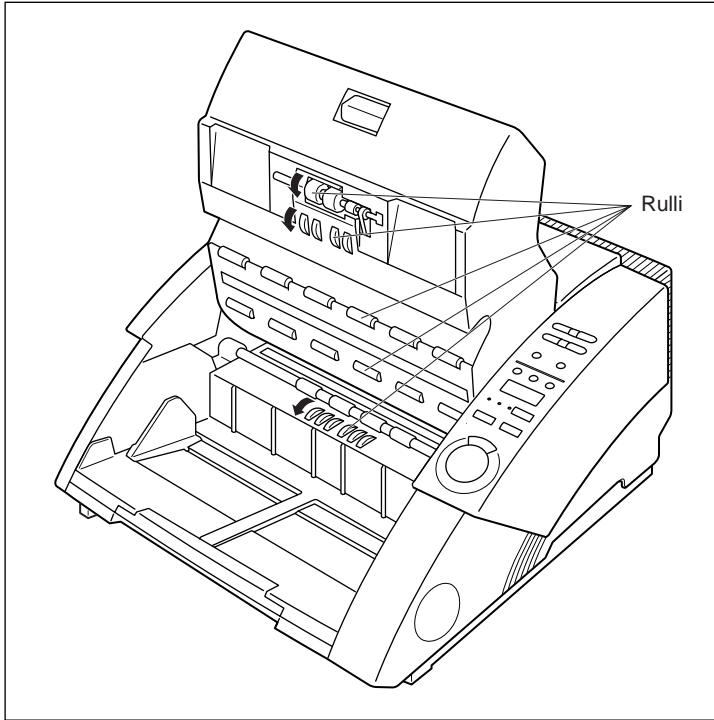
ATTENZIONE

Non spruzzare il detergente neutro o l'acqua direttamente sulle lastre di esposizione. Il liquido potrebbe penetrare sotto le lastre e sporcare la sorgente luminosa e le lenti interne.

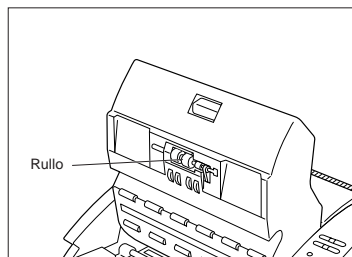


5 Strofinare i rulli con un panno umido ben strizzato imbevuto di acqua o detergente neutro.

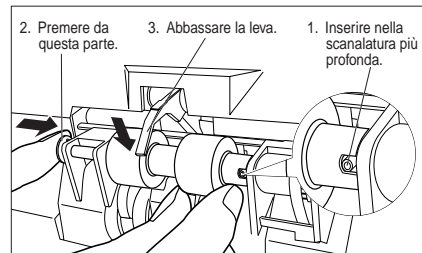
I rulli si trovano nelle posizioni indicate nella figura sotto. Per pulirli, ruotare i rulli nella direzione delle frecce.



SUGGERIMENTO



A



B

- Se uno dei rulli si allenta (Figura A), reinstallarlo come mostrato in figura B.
- Prima di riportare la parte superiore dell'unità nella sua posizione originale, ricordarsi di abbassare la leva sull'unità di alimentazione (Figura B). Se il documento viene digitalizzato con la leva in posizione alta si verifica un errore di alimentazione carta.

6 Con un panno pulito, asciutto e morbido asciugare tutta l'acqua rimasta sui rulli.

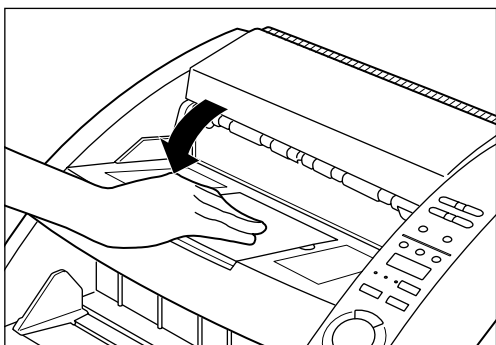
7 Per chiudere l'unità superiore, spingerla indietro il più possibile e poi lasciare l'unità superiore.

Quando l'unità superiore viene lasciata, comincia ad abbassarsi lentamente. Non è necessario spingerla verso il basso. Facendolo si potrebbe danneggiare lo scanner.



8 Quando la parte superiore dell'unità si è abbassata al massimo, chiuderla spingendo fermamente sui due lati.

Se si fa pressione solo su un lato dell'unità superiore, l'altro lato non si chiude del tutto. Accertarsi della chiusura avendo cura di sentire lo scatto di aggancio.



Se dopo la pulizia dei rulli, si verificano ancora frequenti inceppamenti della carta o doppia alimentazione (alimentazione di due o più pagine del documento), la causa probabile è l'attrito dei rulli. In questo caso, sostituire i rulli. Rivolgersi al rivenditore autorizzato o a un centro assistenza Canon.

Cavo di alimentazione

Lasciando la spina di alimentazione inserita nella presa di corrente per un lungo periodo di tempo, la polvere si potrebbe accumulare sulla sezione di collegamento della presa di corrente e causare incendi o scosse elettriche. Si raccomanda di pulire periodicamente la spina di alimentazione.

Stampante

Quando si usa la stampante dello sporco potrebbe aderire ai documenti digitalizzati.

Questo accade perché l'inchiostro aderisce ai fori che si trovano nella piastra guida all'interno della stampante. Pulire i fori con un batuffolo di cotone.

Appendice

◆ Tabella delle modalità di scansione dei modelli DR-5020 e DR-5080C

A volte vengono visualizzati messaggi di errore dovuti a modalità di scansione non supportate a causa dei limiti di memoria. Se questo accade, aggiungere una memoria opzionale (solo in DR-5080C), con riferimento alla tabella sotto.



RIFERIMENTO

- La scansione non è possibile quando la larghezza del documento supera i 216 mm in modalità duplex a una risoluzione di 400 x 400 dpi.
- Non tutte le modalità sono supportate, a seconda dell'applicazione e del driver di scanner utilizzati. Per maggiori dettagli, leggere attentamente i manuali di istruzioni di applicazione e driver di scanner utilizzati.

64 MB di memoria su DR-5080C (standard) O: Supportato X: Non supportato

Modalità di scansione		Risoluzione (H x V)	Duplex (Fronte-retro)						Simplex (Una facciata)					
			A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR	A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR
2 bit	Modalità di testo (Bianco e nero)	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	Modalità foto (Bianco e nero ED)	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Toni di grigio	4 livelli	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	16 livelli	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	256 livelli	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Colore	3 bit	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	6 bit	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	12 bit	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	24 bit	200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		400 X 400	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	O	X	X	O	O
		300 X 300	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	

128 MB di memoria in DR-5080C (opzionale) O: Supportato X: Non supportata

Modalità di scansione		Risoluzione (H x V)	Duplex (Fronte-retro)						Simplex (Una facciata)					
			A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR	A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR
2 bit	Modalità di testo (Bianco e nero)	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	Modalità foto (Bianco e nero ED)	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Toni di grigio	4 livelli	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	16 livelli	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	256 livelli	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Colore	3 bit	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	6 bit	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	12 bit	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	24 bit	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O

ITALIANO

DR-5020 O: Supportato X: Non supportata

Modalità di scansione		Risoluzione (H x V)	Duplex (Fronte-retro)						Simplex (Una facciata)					
			A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR	A3	A4	B4	LDR	LGL	LTR
2 bit	Modalità di testo (Bianco e nero)	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	Modalità foto (Bianco e nero ED)	400 X 400	X	O	X	X	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 300	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		300 X 150	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		240 X 240	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
		200 X 200	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O

Dati caratteristici del DR-5020/5080C

	DR-5020	DR-5080C
Tipo	Scanner da tavolo	
Formato documento	Larghezza: da 55 a 295 mm* Lunghezza: da 70 a 432 mm Spessore: da 0,06 a 0,15 mm (alimentazione automatica) da 0,06 a 0,2 mm (alimentazione manuale) * La larghezza massima di alimentazione di un originale è di 297 mm.	
Capacità di alimentazione documento	Max altezza pila: 45 mm (fino a A4) 20 mm (~ A3)	
Alimentazione documenti	Semi-Auto/automatica/manuale	
Metodo di scansione	Sensore contatto immagine (CMOS)	
Modalità di scansione a sorgente luminosa	Disposizione LED su linea singola verde	Disposizione LED su linea singola 3 colori (RGB)
Scanning mode	Modalità testo/foto 2 bit, Bordo superiore/Duplex/Simplex	Modalità testo/foto 2 bit, Bordo superiore/Duplex/Simplex Livelli 4/16/256 di scala dei grigi Colore 3/6/12/24 bit
Modalità di scansione a sorgente luminosa (direzione di scansione primaria x direzione di scansione secondaria)	200 x 100 dpi - Simplex/Duplex - Modalità testo/foto 200 x 100 dpi - Simplex/Duplex - Modalità testo/foto 300 x 150 dpi - Simplex/Duplex - Modalità testo/foto 200 x 200 dpi - Simplex/Duplex - Modalità testo/foto 240 x 240 dpi - Simplex/Duplex - Modalità testo/foto 300 x 300 dpi - Simplex/Duplex - Modalità testo/foto 400 x 400 dpi - Simplex/Duplex - Modalità testo/foto Variabile da 200 a 300 dpi, con incrementi di 10 dpi	
Velocità di scansione (max.)	<A4, verticale, binary senza EA> 79 ppm (200 x 100 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) 59 ppm (300 x 150 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) 50 ppm (200 x 200 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) 32 ppm (300 x 300 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) 18 ppm (400 x 400 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) <A3, binary senza EA> 58 ppm (200 x 100 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) 42 ppm (300 x 150 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) 33 ppm (200 x 200 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) 22 ppm (300 x 300 dpi - Simplex/Duplex) 13 ppm (400 x 400 dpi - Simplex/Duplex)	
Capacità di alimentazione automatica	A4 (LTR) o più piccolo: max. 500 fogli (80 g/m ²) Più grande di A4 (LTR): max. 200 fogli (80 g/m ²)	
Altre funzioni	Rilevamento automatico formato carta, EA, regolazione automatica spessore carta, funzione di conteggio fogli documento, rilevamento spessore carta e doppia alimentazione, compensazione disallineamento, perdita di colore, selezione delle modalità con fogli di controllo, ecc.	
Dimensioni	262 (A) x 427 (L) x 485 (P) mm	

Peso	Circa 20 kg
Alimentazione	220-240 V CA (50/60 Hz), 0,6 A (massimo) 120 V CA (60 Hz), 1 A (massimo)
Potenza assorbita	Massimo 120 W
Rumore	Meno di 70 dB
Ambiente operativo	Temperatura: da 10°C a 32,5°C Umidità: da 20% a 80% UR (con la stampante in uso con umidità relativa dal 30% al 80%)

I dati caratteristici sono soggetti a variazioni senza preavviso.

Moduli opzionali

Nome	Funzione
Memoria aggiuntiva (128 MB) (solo per DR-5080C)	Sostituire la memoria di 64 MB con la memoria aggiuntiva permette di operare in condizioni di scansione molto più accurata.* * Per i dettagli circa le condizioni di scansione (combinazioni di modalità di scansione, risoluzione e formato carta) che divengono possibili con la memoria aggiuntiva, far riferimento alla parte Appendice, Tabella delle modalità di scansione dei modelli DR-5020 e DR-5080C (P. 88).
Stampante	Stampa caratteri quali numeri, lettere dell'alfabeto e simboli sulla facciata anteriore del documento dopo che è stato digitalizzato.
Decodificatore codici a barre	Legge e riconosce i codici a barre in un documento.
Endorser	Stampa un numero di 8 cifre e qualsiasi altro carattere specificato sulla facciata posteriore del documento dopo che è stato digitalizzato.

Per i dettagli su ciascun modulo opzionale, rivolgersi al rappresentante del servizio vendita.

INDICE ANALITICO

- A -

Accensione e spegnimento dello scanner	33
Aperture di ventilazione	16

- C -

Cavo di alimentazione	14, 26
Codice a barre	64
Codici d'errore	78
Collegamento al computer	24
Collegamento del cavo di alimentazione	26
Collegamento del cavo SCSI	24
Come trasportare lo scanner	9, 23
Commutatori DIP	16, 25
Compensazione per alimentazione obliqua	64
Connettore del cavo di alimentazione	16
Connettori SCSI	16, 24
Conteggio del numero di pagine originali in un documento	53

- D -

Dati caratteristici	90
Decodificatore codici a barre	92
Display contatore	18

- E -

Endorser	67, 78, 79, 92
Etichette dei tasti di funzione	20
Etichette di guida degli originali	20, 32

- F -

Fili de prolungamento	15, 27
Fogli di controllo scanner	56
Fogli di funzione	55
Foglio di separazione lavori	56

- G -

Guida degli originali	15
Guida e rimedi in caso di problemi di funzionamento	67

- I -

Imballo	14
Impostazione del terminatore ...	25, 68
Impostazione dell'ID SCSI e del terminatore	25
Impostazione delle condizioni di scansione	58
Impostazioni dei tasti di funzione	60
Impostazioni fondamentali	59
Impostazioni nella modalità utente .	64
Inceppamento della carta	70
- in sezione di unità di alimentazione carta	73
- in unità di alimentazione carta	70
Interruttore di alimentazione	15

- L -

Leva di regolazione avanzamento carta	15, 32
---	--------

- M -

Manutenzione giornaliera	6
Memoria aggiuntiva	92
Modalità auto	46
Modalità di conteggio	53, 64
Modalità di utente	64
Modalità manuale	50
Modalità Semi-Auto	43
Modalità spessore fisso	60, 62
Moduli opzionali	92

- N -

Nome delle parti	15
- Vista anteriore	15
- Vista posteriore	16

- P -

Pannello operativo	17, 60
Piastra guida di emissione	20, 30
Posizione di installazione	8
Precauzioni per la sicurezza	6
Procedura di scansione	39

Prolunga del vassoio degli originali	15, 27
Prolunga del vassoio di emissione	15, 29
Pulizia	82
- Rulli e lenti per digitalizzazione ..	83
- Unità principale	82
Pulizia giornaliera	82

- Q -

Quando l'immagine digitalizzata non è normale	77, 83
Quando lo scanner non viene rilevato	68

- R -

Regolazione dello spessore manuale	61
Regolazione di alimentazione carta	32
Requisiti di sistema	22
Riguardo i document	36
Rilevamento del documento	64
Rilevamento doppia alimentazione	63
Rimozione degli inceppamenti della carta	70
Rispristino impostazione memorizzata	63

- S -

SCSI ID	25, 68
Sensore	47
Sincronizzazione SCSI	64
Stampante ...	60, 62, 64, 78, 79, 87, 92
Stopper	15, 29

- T -

Tabelle di modalità di scansione	88
Tasti di funzione	17, 60
Tasto count only	17, 19, 53, 59
Tasto di apertura/chiusura	15
Tasto di arresto	19
Tasto di avvio	19
Tasto di luminosità	18, 59
Tasto di selezione modalità	18, 59
Tasto feeding option	18, 39, 59

Tasto new file	19, 59
Tasto Simplex/Duplex	17, 59

- U -

Unità superiore	15
-----------------------	----

- V -

Vassli degli originali	15
Vassoio asportabile	20, 31
Vassoio di emissione	15

Canon

CANON ELECTRONICS INC.

1248, SHIMOKAGEMORI, CHICHIBU-SHI, SAITAMA 369-1892, JAPAN

CANON U.S.A. INC.

ONE CANON PLAZA, LAKE SUCCESS, N.Y.11042, U.S.A.

CANON CANADA INC.

6390 DIXIE ROAD, MISSISSAUGA, ONTARIO L5T 1P7, CANADA

CANON EUROPA N.V.

BOVENKERKERWEG 59-61, 1185XB AMSTELVEEN, THE NETHERLANDS

CANON LATIN AMERICA, INC.

6505, BLUE LAGOON DRIVE, SUITE 325 MIAMI, FLORIDA 33126 U.S.A.

CANON AUSTRALIA PTY. LTD.

1 THOMAS HOLT DRIVE, NORTH RYDE, SYDNEY. N.S.W, 2113. AUSTRALIA

CANON SINGAPORE PTE. LTD.

79 ANSON ROAD #09-01/06, SINGAPORE 079906

CANON HONG KONG COMPANY LTD.

10/F., LIPPO SUN PLAZA, 28 CANTON ROAD, TSIMSHATSUI, KOWLOON, HONG KONG.



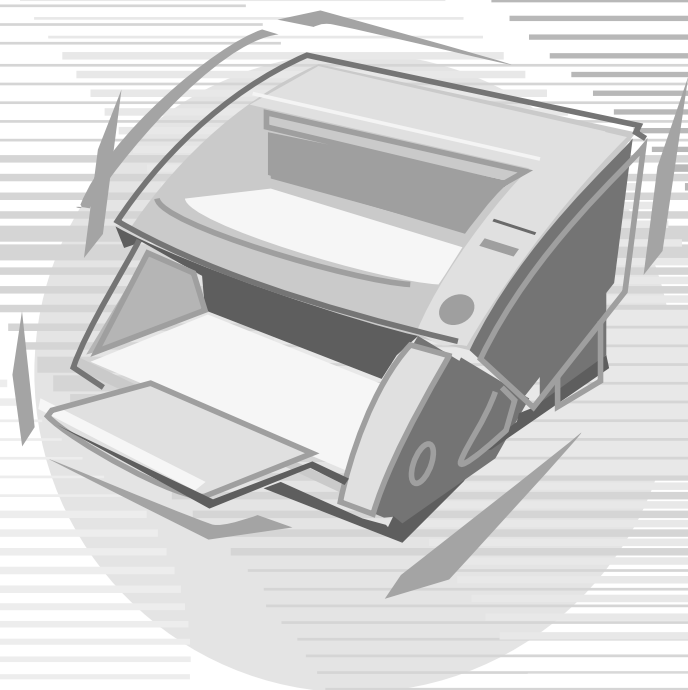
Canon

DOCUMENT SCANNER

DR-5020/5080C

ISIS/TWAIN Driver

Instructions
Mode d'emploi
Bedienungsanleitung
Instrucciones
Intruzioni



ENGLISH

FRANÇAIS

DEUTSCH

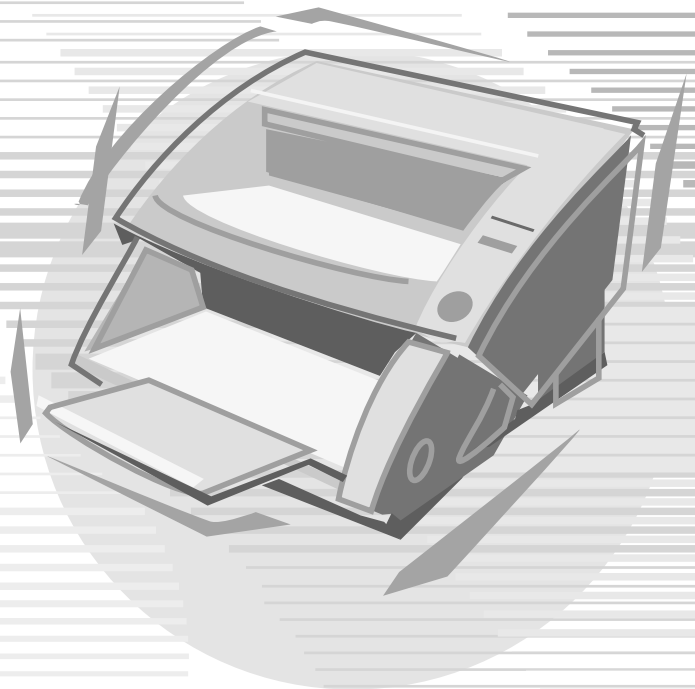
ESPAÑOL

ITALIANO

ISIS/TWAIN Driver

Instructions

Be sure to thoroughly read this Instructions before using this unit, and store this manual in a safe place after use.



NOTICE

- ① Copyright© 1999 by CANON ELECTRONICS INC. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language or computer language in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, manual, or otherwise, without the prior permission of CANON ELECTRONICS INC.
- ② The contents of this manual are subject to change without notice.
- ③ Every effort has been made to ensure the accuracy of information presented in this manual. However, Canon Electronics Inc. and the subsidiaries on the back cover assume no responsibility for any errors or their consequences.
- ④ We do not assume any responsibility for damage resulting from operations regardless of item ③.

Trademarks and Registered Trademarks

- Microsoft Windows® and Microsoft Windows NT® are registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and in other countries.
- ISIS® is a registered trademark of Pixel Translation A Division of ActionPoint Inc.
- Adaptec is a registered trademark of ADAPTEC Inc.
- IBM and PC/AT are registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation.
- Pentium® is a registered trademark of Intel Corporation U.S.A.
- Product names mentioned herein are for identification purposes only and may be trademarks and/or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

INTRODUCTION

Thank you for purchasing the Canon Document Scanner DR-5020/5080C. In all, three manuals are provided with the DR-5020/5080C: ISIS/TWAIN Driver Instructions (this manual), DR-5020/5080C Instructions and Scanning Utility 5000 Instructions.

This manual describes how to operate the ISIS/TWAIN driver for using the DR-5020/5080C on Windows applications. Be sure to read this manual and the separate DR-5020/5080C Instructions before use to ensure that the functions of the DR-5020/5080C are effectively utilized. Scanner drivers such as an ISIS or TWAIN driver are not required as the scanner application packaged with the DR-5020/5080C uses an exclusive scanner driver.

Also, after you have read this manual, be sure to store this manual in a safe place.

The following describes the contents of each of these manuals.

ISIS/TWAIN Driver Instructions (this manual)

This manual describes operations when the scanner is used with an ISIS driver or TWAIN driver compatible application.

DR-5020/5080C Instructions

This manual describes how to connect the scanner, load documents, remove jammed paper and other information on how to handle the scanner. Read this manual before you start to operate the DR-5020/5080C.

Scanning Utility 5000 Instructions

This manual describes how to operate the scanner application provided with the scanner.

■ Caution

Take note of the following when using the scanner to make copies:

- Reproducing money, other forms of currency or negotiable securities is an offense and may be subject to criminal prosecution.
- Reproducing official certificates, licenses, travel tickets, copyright protected and private documents and other items is also against the law and may be subject to criminal prosecutions.
- Obtain the copyright holder's permission when a copied image will be used for anything other than your own personal use or use within the confines of your own household.

CONVENTIONS

This manual uses the following symbols and indications. Before you start reading this manual, read the following and familiarize yourself with their meanings.



Read carefully to avoid death or serious injury.



Read carefully to avoid damage to the equipment or loss of valuable data.



Memos indicate where you will find useful information in this manual. A number enclosed in parentheses refers to a page number that contains more information about the previous sentence or paragraph.



Tips about operations and how to avoid minor difficulties.

■ This Unit

This manual refers to the DR-5020 and DR-5080C collectively as the “scanner.” If a description is required for each individual machine type, this manual refers to the scanner specifically by DR-5020 and DR-5080C.

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION	1
CONVENTIONS	2
Chapter 1 Read This First	5
1.1 System Requirements	6
When Using the ISIS/TWAIN Driver	6
1.2 How to Read This Manual	8
ISIS-Compatible Application	8
TWAIN-Compatible Application	8
Chapter 2 Installing the ISIS/TWAIN Driver	9
2.1 Before You Begin	10
2.2 Installing the Driver	11
Chapter 3 Using the ISIS Driver	15
3.1 Selecting the ISIS Driver	16
3.2 Setting the Scan Conditions	17
Basic Settings	18
Setting the Scan Area	22
Setting Details	25
Setting the Function Keys	30
Imprinter/Addon Settings	32
Setting the Gamma Curve	37
Bar Code Decoder Settings	40
Chapter 4 Using the TWAIN Driver	45
4.1 Selecting the TWAIN Driver	46
4.2 Starting Up the TWAIN Driver	47
4.3 Setting Scan Conditions	48
Basic Settings	49
Advanced Features	56
Index	61

Chapter 1

Read This First

This chapter describes things you should know before you install the DR-5020/5080C ISIS and TWAIN drivers on your computer.

1.1 System Requirements	6
When Using the ISIS/TWAIN Driver	6
1.2 How to Read This Manual	8
ISIS-Compatible Application	8
TWAIN-Compatible Application	8



System Requirements

You must have the following hardware and OS for DR-5020/5080C ISIS/TWAIN driver to work correctly:

- An IBM PC/AT or compatible computer with a Pentium 133 MHz CPU or higher and at least 64 MB of memory
 - OS: Microsoft Windows® 95/98/Me or Microsoft Windows NT® 4.0 Workstation/Windows 2000 Professional
 - At least 100 MB of hard disk space (at least 5 MB after installation)
- An SVGA compatible display
- A Microsoft Windows compatible keyboard, mouse and printer, CD-ROM drive (4x speed or faster)
- A SCSI card whose operation has been confirmed
Operation of the following SCSI cards has been confirmed:
Adaptec AHA-1540 series and AHA-2940 series
- SCSI-2 compatible SCSI cable

When Using the ISIS/TWAIN Driver

- Be sure to install both the ISIS driver and TWAIN driver in the same ISIS/TWAIN driver installation operation. These drivers cannot be installed separately.
- The ISIS/TWAIN driver does not necessarily support all ISIS-compatible applications and TWAIN-compatible applications.
- The dialog boxes and menus in the ISIS/TWAIN-compatible applications in this manual are only examples. Note that how they appear on your screen may vary according to the application you are using. Some applications may not support all of the functions described in this manual. For details, contact your software supplier.
- The application does not support the functions of the DR-5020/5080C, so it may not operate properly.
- This ISIS/TWAIN driver uses [wnasp32.dll] for controlling the scanner. The scanner will not operate if [wnasp32.dll] has not been correctly installed. If [wnasp32.dll] is not installed, contact the manufacturer of the SCSI card you are using, or contact a Canon service representative.
- If you are installing the driver on a Windows machine running Windows 95, and you use [wnasp32.dll] that was initially installed in Windows 95, the ISIS/TWAIN driver may not function properly. In this case, execute [Aspiinst.exe] in the [Pixtran] folder on the Setup CD to upgrade [wnasp32.dll] to the latest version. We have already confirmed the following bug when selecting the scanner on a Windows machine running Windows 95:
 - A forced end occurs when the version of [wnasp32.dll] in the System Folder is "1,0,0,0".

- This ISIS/TWAIN driver supports six languages (Japanese, English, German, French, Spanish and Italian). The driver's language is automatically selected to match the Regional Settings in Windows.

If the driver's language differs from the language of the application you are using, the driver's dialog boxes may not be displayed correctly. If this happens, match the driver's language to the application.

To change the driver's language, change the Regional Settings in the control panel.

You can also change the driver's language without changing the Regional Settings. To do this, add the following two lines to the "Setscan.ini" file in the Windows folder. This will set the driver's language.

[Options]

iLanguage=xxxx (xxxx stands for language)

xxxx (language definitions)

1031=German

1033=English

1034=Spanish

1036=French

1040=Italian

1041=Japanese

If the language you specify is not switched to even if you change the Regional Settings in the control panel and change the language in the Setscan.ini file, a probable cause is that the application you are using restricts switching of the language. In this case, you cannot switch the language.

1.2

How to Read This Manual

Read the respective chapters in this manual after first checking which driver, ISIS or TWAIN, is supported by the application you are using.

ISIS-Compatible Application

Chapter 2 Installing the ISIS/TWAIN Driver (P.9)

This section describes how to install the ISIS/TWAIN driver on your computer.

Chapter 3 Using the ISIS Driver (P.15)

This chapter describes how to select the ISIS driver from within the application and describes the scan setup in detail.

TWAIN-Compatible Application

Chapter 2 Installing the ISIS/TWAIN Driver (P.9)

This section describes how to install the ISIS/TWAIN driver on your computer.

Chapter 4 Using the TWAIN Driver (P.45)

This chapter describes how to select the TWAIN driver from within the application and describes the scan setup in detail.



For details on how to connect to the scanner, refer to the DR-5020/5080C Instructions.

Chapter 2

Installing the ISIS/TWAIN Driver

This section describes the procedure to install the DR-5020/5080C ISIS/TWAIN driver on your computer.

2.1 Before You Begin	10
2.2 Installing the Driver	11

2.1

Before You Begin

Check the following items before you begin to install the ISIS/TWAIN driver.

- **Make sure that the OS running on your computer on which ISIS/TWAIN driver is to be installed is Microsoft Windows® 95/98/Me or Microsoft WindowsNT® 4.0 Workstation/Windows 2000 Professional.**

- **Connect the computer.**

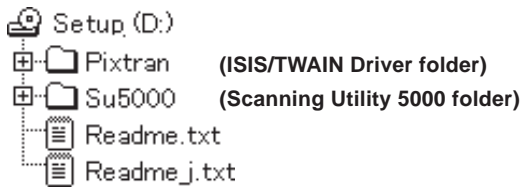
For details on how to connect to the scanner, refer to the separate DR-5020/5080C Instructions.

- **Setup CD-ROM**

The setup CD-ROM comprises the following layers.

Before you install ISIS/TWAIN driver, be sure to read "Readme.txt".

After you have installed ISIS/TWAIN driver, store the setup CD-ROM in a safe place.



2.2 Installing the Driver

Install the ISIS/TWAIN driver.

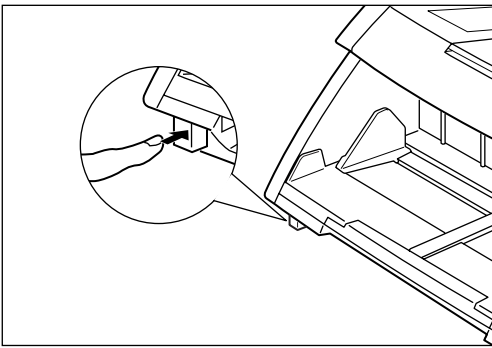


MEMO

The procedure described below installs both the ISIS driver and the TWAIN driver. These drivers cannot be installed individually.

ENGLISH

1 Turn the scanner ON.



2 Turn the computer ON.

⇒ Windows starts up.

3 Before you begin the installation, make backup copies of the following files when another ISIS compatible driver is already in use.

\\WINDOWS\\SYSTEM\\PIX*.DLL
\\WINDOWS\\PIXTRAN*.*



MEMO

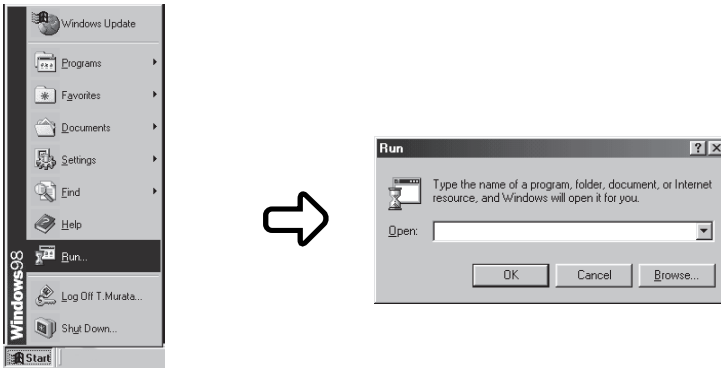
- When the ISIS/TWAIN driver is installed, the above files may be modified. Be sure to make backup copies before the installation.
- The names of the \\Windows and \\Windows\\system folders vary according to the version of Windows you are running. In the following explanations, substitute the names of the \\Windows and \\Windows\\system folders with the names of the folders in the version of Windows you are using.

4 Insert the setup disc into the CD-ROM drive.

5 Click [Start] and select Run.

The screen that appears varies according to the version of Windows you are running.

[Windows98]



6 At Open, type “d:\pixtran\setup.exe” and click [OK].

In these instructions, the CD-ROM drive is specified as D.

⇒ The driver installation start screen is displayed.



7 Click [Next] to execute the installation.

⇒ The installation completed screen is displayed.



8 Click [Finish] to complete the installation.

Chapter 3

Using the ISIS Driver

This chapter describes operations when the ISIS driver is run on an ISIS-compatible application.

3.1	Selecting the ISIS Driver	16
3.2	Setting the Scan Conditions.....	17
	Basic Settings	18
	Setting the Scan Area	22
	Setting Details.....	25
	Setting the Function Keys	30
	Imprinter/Addon Settings	32
	Setting the Gamma Curve	37
	Bar Code Decoder Settings	40

3.1 Selecting the ISIS Driver

Select the ISIS driver that you are going to use. Carry out this operation only once after you have installed the ISIS driver. Also, this operation need not be repeated unless you connect a scanner other than the DR-5020/5080C.



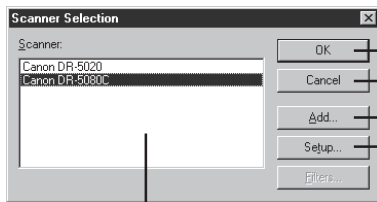
MEMO

The dialog boxes and menus in this chapter are only examples. Note that how they appear on your screen may vary with the application you are using. Some applications may not support all of the functions described in this manual. For details, refer to the manual for the application you are using.

1 Start your ISIS-compatible application.

2 Display the Scanner Selection screen.

The Scanner Selection screen that appears varies according to the application you are using.



- Selects the scanner.
- Closes the dialog box without selecting the scanner.
- Click this button to add other scanners.
- Used to make the scanner settings.

Available scanners are displayed here.

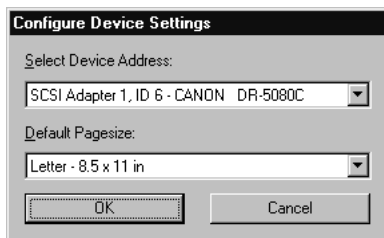


MEMO

If you do not see Canon DR-5020 or Canon DR-5080C in the screen, install the driver.

3 Click Canon DR-5020 or Canon DR-5080C in the list, and click [OK].

➡ The Configure Device Settings screen is displayed.



4 Set the [Default Pagesize] and click [OK].

➡ The page size that you set here is set as the default.

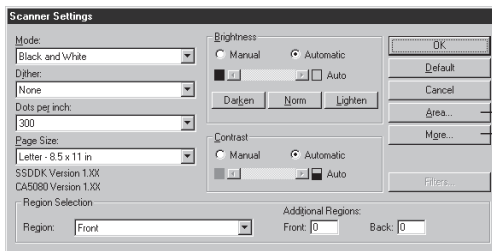
3.2 Setting the Scan Conditions

The Scanner Settings dialog box is organized in the menu hierarchy shown below. Display these dialog boxes as necessary according to the function you want to use and make the necessary settings. For details on the setting items in each of these dialog boxes, refer to the reference page number.

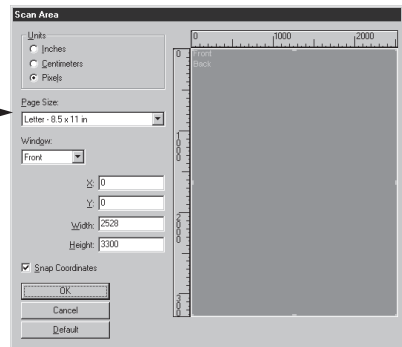
1 Start your ISIS-compatible application.

2 Display the Scanner Settings screen.

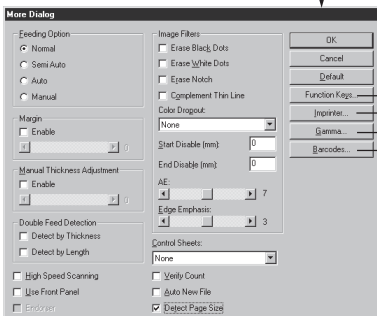
The Scanner Settings screen that appears varies with the application you are using.



Scanner Settings dialog box (p. 18)



Scan Area dialog box (p. 22)



More Dialog dialog box (p. 25)

Function Keys dialog box (→ P. 30)

Imprinter/Addon Dialog dialog box (→ P. 32)

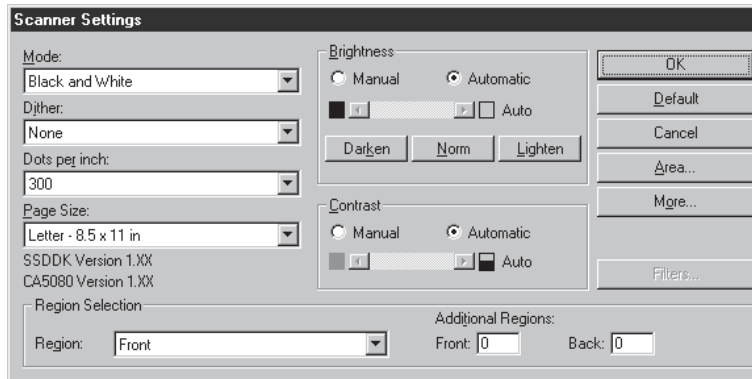
Gamma Download dialog box (→ P. 37)

Barcode Dialog dialog box (→ P. 40)

Basic Settings

Set the basic scan conditions.

This setting is carried out in the “Scanner Settings” dialog box.



<Scan Settings>



The modes that can actually be used for scanning are restricted, and scanning is sometimes not possible depending on the combination of settings. For details, see the separate DR-5020/5080C Instructions “DR-5020/5080C Scan Mode Tables” (P.88).

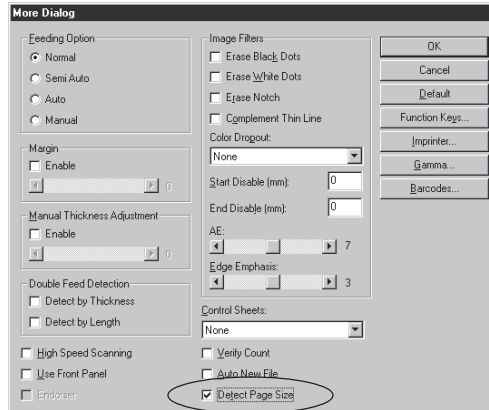
Item	Description
Mode	<p>Sets how the image is to be scanned. Only Black & White is available for the DR-5020.</p> <p>[Black and White] Scans the image completely in black and white with no shades of gray.</p> <p>[16, 256-level Gray] Select this mode when scanning photos and half-tone documents in gray scale. The larger the level value, the more the size of the file increases.</p> <p>[3, 12, 24-bit Color] Select this item when scanning color originals such as photographs.</p> <p>[3, 6, 12-Bit Color -> 4, 8-Bit Palette] The 4-Bit palette is used to convert 3-bit color data to 16 colors for output, and the 8-Bit palette is used to convert 6- and 12-bit color data to 256 colors for output.</p>

Dither	<p>Turns dithering ON or OFF.</p> <p>[None] No dithering. Use for scanning text or for line artwork where there are no colors or shades of gray.</p> <p>[Error Diffusion] Applies error diffusion to simulate the gray area of half-tones. Select this setting when scanning documents containing half-tones such as photos.</p>
Dots per inch	<p>Allows you to set the resolution, the number of dots per inch (dpi). You have 13 choices: 100, 200, 210, 220, 230, 240, 250, 260, 270, 280, 290, 300 and 400.</p>
Page Size	<p>Allows you to select one of the following document sizes to be scanned:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Letter - 8.5 x 11 in Letter (Rotated) - 11 x 8.5 in Legal - 8.5 x 14 in Double Letter - 11 x 17 in A3 - 297 x 420 mm A4 - 210 x 297 mm A4 (Rotated) - 297 x 210 mm A5 - 148 x 210 mm A5 (Rotated) - 210 x 148 mm A6 - 105 x 148 mm A6 (Rotated) - 148 x 105 mm B4 (ISO) - 250 x 353 mm B4 (JIS) - 257 x 364 mm B5 (ISO) - 176 x 250 mm B5 (ISO) (Rotated) - 176 x 250 mm B5 (JIS) - 182 x 257 mm B5 (JIS) (Rotated) - 182 x 257 mm B6 (ISO) - 125 x 176 mm B6 (ISO) (Rotated) - 176 x 125 mm B6 (JIS) - 128 x 182 mm B6 (JIS) (Rotated) - 182 x 128 mm Scanner's maximum (295 x 432 mm) <p>If a document larger than the specified size is scanned, the surrounding edges of the document will be clipped. Alternately, if a document smaller than the specified size is scanned, a black margin will be formed on the surrounding edges of the document.</p>



The data will not be saved correctly if you select [16-level Gray] as the mode, select [Detect Page Size] in the “More Dialog” dialog box (P.25) and make a scan, and set the file format for saving the data on the application to [JBIG].



The “Page Size” settings made here will be invalid if you have selected “Detect Page Size” in the “More Dialog” dialog box (P.25).



<Brightness>

Item	Description
Manual	Manually set the brightness at which scanning is carried out. Brightness can be set within the range 1 to 255 and adjusted by clicking the ◀ and ▶ buttons.
Automatic	The brightness is automatically set only when [Mode] is set to [Black and White] and [Dither] is set to [None]. When [Mode] is set to any other setting, and brightness is set to [Automatic], the brightness setting returns to its default.
Darken button	Sets the brightness value to 64 to reproduce the overall image darker.
Norm button	Sets the brightness value to 128 to reproduce the overall image at the standard brightness.
Lighten button	Sets the brightness value to 192 to reproduce the overall image lighter.

<Contrast>

Item	Description
Manual	Manually set the contrast. The contrast can be set within the range 1 to 13. Click the  and  keys to adjust the contrast. Setting a large value increases the contrast, and setting a small value decreases the contrast.
Automatic	Sets the default contrast.



MEMO

- The contrast setting is disabled when Mode is set to “Black and White”.
- On DR-5020, the Contrast checkbox is gray when Mode is set to “Black and White”.

<Region Selection>

Item	Description
Region	Selects the side of the document to set the brightness for. Select Front or Back.
Additional Regions	Not supported on this scanner.

<Buttons>

Item	Description
OK	Enables the settings and closes the dialog box.
Default	Returns all settings to their default settings.
Cancel	Cancels any settings you have changed and closes the dialog box.
Area	Opens the Scan Area dialog box (P.22) so that you can set the size of the area to be scanned on the front page and back page.
More	Opens the More Dialog dialog box (P.25) so that you can set the special details such as filter, speed, page size detection and Control Sheet detection.
Filters	Not supported on this scanner.

Setting the Scan Area

Set the scan area if you want to scan just a specific part of the document. The scan area is set in the “Scan Area” dialog box.

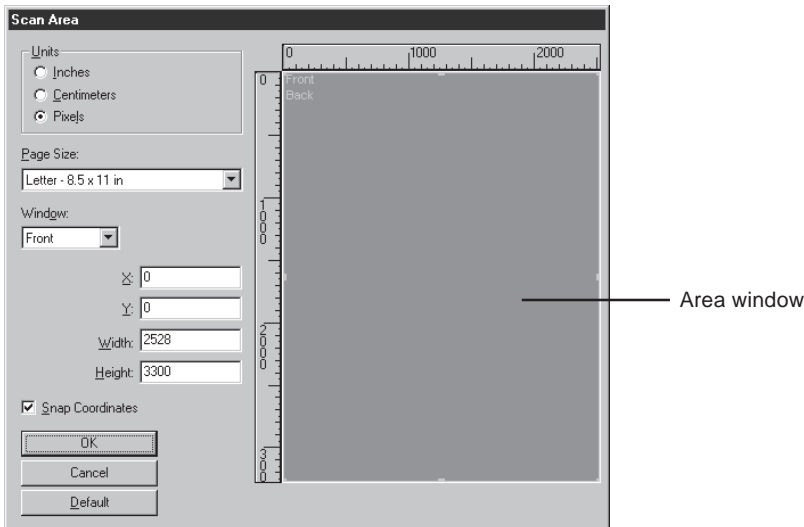
You can set the scan area on both the front or back side of the document that you are going to scan. Note, however, that the size of the scan area on the front and back sides and the coordinate positions in the Y (vertical) direction must be set to the same setting. These items can be set only for coordinate positions in the X (horizontal) direction.

There are two ways of specifying the scan area: by entering coordinates or other numerical values, or by directly specifying the area inside the area window.



MEMO

The scan area settings made here will be invalid if you have selected “Detect Page Size” in the “More Dialog” dialog box (P.25).



Item	Description
Unit	Sets the unit used for indicating the size of the scan area. Choose from Inches, Centimeters and Pixels.

Page Size	Selects the size of the document you are going to scan. The available page size settings are the same document sizes as those at [Page Size] in the [Scanner Settings] dialog box. When you open the [Scan Area] dialog box, the document sizes set at [Page Size] in the [Scanner Settings] dialog box are displayed. Any changes made to settings here are also reflected in [Page Size] in the [Scanner Settings] dialog box.
Window	Specifies the side of the document on which the scan area is to be specified. Front: Specifies both sides of the document. (The scan area settings are the same for both sides of the document.) Back: Specifies the back side of the document. (The X coordinate settings can be changed on the front and back sides.)
Position of axis	X: Enter the X coordinate of the top left corner of the scan area. Y: Enter the Y coordinate of the top left corner of the scan area. Width: Enter the width of the scan area. Height: Enter the length of the scan area. "X" can be set independently for the front and back sides. The "Y", "width" and "height" settings are the same for the front and back sides.
Snap Coordinates	Automatically adjusts the Position of axis in the scan area to a convenient value. When the unit is set to Inches, this value is a multiple of 1/8"; when set to Centimeters, this value is a multiple of 0.1 cm; and when set to Pixels, this value is a multiple of 32 pixels.

(Area window)

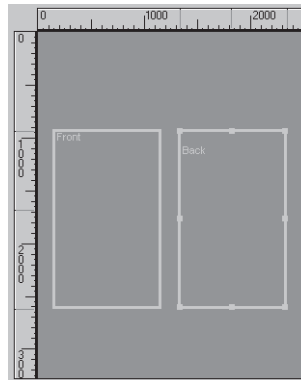
The scan area for the paper size is displayed in the area window. The size of the area window varies according to the paper size setting.

You can adjust the size of the scan area by dragging the ■ handles on the area frame. You can also drag the entire scan area to move the scan area.

Specify the side of the document on which the scan area is to be changed at [Front] (both sides) or [Back] (back side) at "Window".

When [Front] is specified, and the scan area is adjusted, the coordinate position is set to the same position on both the front and back sides.

When [Back] is specified, and the area on the back side is adjusted, only the X coordinate can be adjusted independently.



When you adjust the front side at [Front] after adjusting the area on the back side at [Back], the currently enabled [Back] setting is disabled.

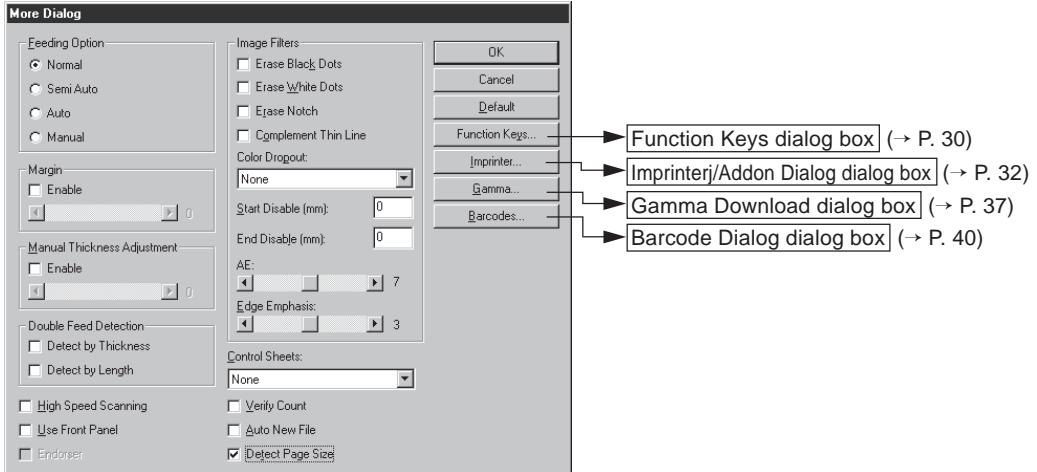
<Buttons>

Item	Description
OK	Enables the settings and closes the dialog box.
Cancel	Cancels any settings you have changed and closes the dialog box.
Default	Returns all settings to their defaults.





Setting Details

Set the scan conditions in detail.

The More Dialog dialog box provides you with the following items for setting the scan conditions in more detail.







Item	Description
Feeding Option	<p>Selects the feed method.</p> <p>Normal: The document is fed (scanned) when you load the document and scanning is instructed in the application.</p> <p>Semi Auto: The document is fed (scanned) when scanning is instructed in the application and when you load the document and press the Start key.</p> <p>Auto: The document is fed (scanned) automatically when you load the document.</p> <p>Manual: The document is fed manually one page at a time after scanning is instructed in the application. Use this when scanning particularly thick or thin pages.</p> <p>The Feeding Options display on the scanner's operation panel is switched regardless of pressing the [OK] button for settings made here.</p>

Margin	<p>Adjusts the margins (top, bottom, left and right) of the scanning area.</p> <p>To adjust the margins, click Enable and use the  and  buttons.</p> <p>Specify within the range -10 (reduces scanning area by 10 mm) to +10 (enlarges scanning area by 10 mm).</p> <p>For example, if you want to slightly enlarge the scan area so that document edges are not clipped, adjust in the + direction. Or, if you want to slightly reduce the scan area so that a black frame is not formed around the scanned image, adjust in the - direction.</p>
Manual Thickness Adjustment	<p>Manually sets the paper thickness when the paper thickness is not adjusted automatically.</p> <p>Click Enable and use the  and  buttons to adjust the thickness.</p> <p>Specify the thickness within the range 1 (thinnest) to 13 (thickest). Use this setting to manually adjust the paper thickness when scanning specially coated originals and documents whose paper thickness cannot be adjusted automatically, or when double feed occurs frequently in the automatic paper thickness adjustment mode.</p>
Double Feed Detection	<p>Select the method used to detect double feed. "Double feed" is detected when two or more sheets of the document are fed together or when part of one sheet overlaps another sheet when the sheets in the document are scanned continuously.</p> <p>[Detect by Thickness] Detects double feed by the thickness of the paper. When a document thicker than the first sheet of the document(*) is fed, the scanner judges this to be a double feed and displays an error.</p> <p>[Detect by Length] Detects double feed by the length of the paper. When a document longer than the first sheet of the document(*) is fed, the scanner judges this to be a double feed and displays an error.</p> <p>* Double feed detection is carried out taking the thickness and length of the first sheet of the document as the standard sheet. When the first sheet of the document is fed, the scanner memorizes the thickness and length of the document.</p>

High Speed Scanning	<p>This setting is available when the resolution is set to 200 or 300 dpi.</p> <p>When 200 dpi is set, images are scanned at 200 x 100 dpi (Horizontal x Vertical) and output as a 200 x 200 dpi image.</p> <p>When 300 dpi is set, images are scanned at 300 x 150 dpi (Horizontal x Vertical) and output as a 300 x 300 dpi image.</p> <p>Though scanning is carried out more quickly in either case, note that the quality of the image scanned at high speed diminishes slightly.</p>
Use Front Panel	Enables the settings made on the scanner's operation panel.
Endorser	Enables the optional endorser.
Control Sheets	<p>Selects how the scanner detects scanner Control Sheets.</p> <p>[None] Scanner Control Sheets are not detected.</p> <p>[Scan, Continue Scanning] The scanner Control Sheet is detected and scanned, and then scanning continues.</p> <p>[Skip, Continue Scanning] The scanner Control Sheet is detected and skipped (not scanned), and then scanning continues.</p> <p>[Scan, Stop Scanning] The scanner Control Sheet is detected and scanned, then scanning stops.</p> <p>[Skip, Stop Scanning] The scanner Control Sheet is detected and skipped (not scanned), then scanning stops.</p>
Verify Count	Verify the number of pages counted before the scan against the actual number of scanned pages. If the numbers differ, an error is displayed.
Auto New File	This setting generates a page break signal each time that a continuous scan ends. This allows you to set file delimiters in the corresponding application you are using.
Detect Page Size	<p>This setting detects the size of each document as it is scanned, and scans the document at that size.</p> <p>When this is selected, Page Size in the Scanner Settings dialog box is disabled.</p>

<Image Filter Settings>

Set the image processing filters.

Item	Description
Erase Black Dots	Automatically erases isolated black dots (single dots) on white backgrounds.
Erase White Dots	Automatically erases isolated white dots (single dots) on black backgrounds.
Erase Notch	Automatically erases parts (notches) protruding from contours.
Complement Thin Line	Automatically joins faint or broken lines that occur when scanning documents containing thin lines.
Color Dropout	Click here to enable the dropout function. This function is enabled only on the DR-5080C. [None] Color dropout is not carried out. [Red] Disables scanning of red parts of the document. [Green] Disables scanning of green parts of the document. [Blue] Disables scanning of blue parts of the document.
Start Disable	If the document contains an area where dropout is to be disabled, specify the starting point of this area as the distance (mm) from the top edge of the paper.
End Disable	Specify the end point of the area where dropout is to be disabled as the distance (mm) from the top edge of the paper.
AE	Sets the level of the AE (Automatic Exposure) function. (This function sets the brightness and contrast according to the shading in the area in which the image is selected.) This setting can be set in 13 steps using the  and  buttons. Default is 7.
Edge Emphasis	Sets the level for emphasizing the contours of lettering, and softening the roughness of images such as photos. This setting can be set in five steps using the  and  buttons. Default is 3.



MEMO

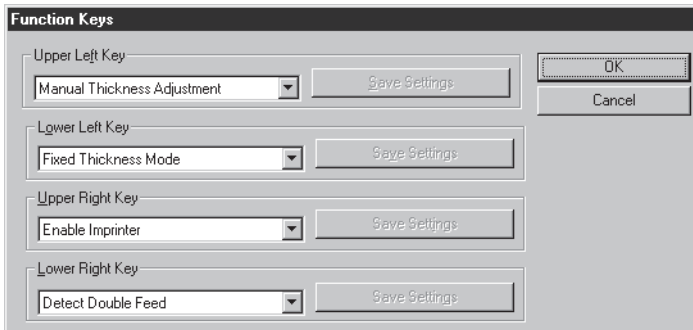
- [Erase Black Dots], [Erase White Dots], [Erase Notch] and [Complement Thin Line] are enabled when [Mode] is set to [Black and White] and [Dither] is set to [Error Diffusion].
- [Color Dropout] is enabled when [Mode] is set to any setting other than [Color].
- [AE] is enabled when [Mode] is set to [Black and White].
- [Edge Emphasis] is enabled in all modes.

<Buttons>

Item	Description
OK	Enables the settings and closes the dialog box.
Cancel	Cancels any settings you have changed and closes the dialog box.
Default	Returns all settings to their defaults.
Function Keys...	Opens the Function Keys dialog box (P.30). In this dialog box, you can register specific functions to the function keys on the scanner.
Imprinter...	Opens the Imprinter/Addon Dialog dialog box (P.32) for setting the imprinter function or the addon function. The imprinter function prints specific characters on the scanned document when the optional imprinter unit is installed. The addon function prints specified characters on scanned images.
Gamma...	Opens the Gamma Download dialog box (P.37). Loads and saves to file gamma data for expressing colors and tones.
Barcodes...	Opens the Barcode Dialog dialog box (P.40). Sets the conditions for reading bar codes when the optional bar code decoder is installed.

Setting the Function Keys

You can register specific functions to the function keys on the scanner. The following items are set in the Function Keys dialog box.



Item	Description
Selection	<p>Select the functions to register to each of the function keys from the pull-down menu.</p> <p>You can select from the following five functions for the function keys. For details on these functions, refer to the separate DR-5020/5080C Instructions “Function Key Settings.” (P.60)</p> <p>[Manual Thickness Adjustment] Adjusts the paper thickness manually.</p> <p>[Detect Double Feed] Automatically detects double feed. “Double feed” is detected when two or more sheets of the document are fed together or when part of one sheet overlaps another sheet.</p> <p>[Fixed Thickness Mode] Sets the paper thickness to a fixed value.</p> <p>[Enable Imprinter] Selects whether or not to use the imprinter when the optional imprinter is installed.</p> <p>[Restore Settings] Registers scanner settings set in the software to the function keys.</p>
Save Settings	If you click this when [Restore Settings] is selected, the current scanner settings are registered to function keys.

<Buttons>

Item	Description
OK	Enables the settings and closes the dialog box.
Cancel	Cancels any settings you have changed and closes the dialog box.

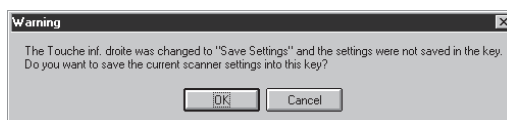


MEMO

- The following message appears if you select [Restore Settings] and click [OK] without clicking [Save Settings].

Clicking [OK] saves all settings and closes the dialog box.

Clicking [Cancel] returns the display to the Function Keys dialog box. Check the function key settings in this dialog box.



- Note that in some applications the scanner settings are sometimes not properly restored by the function keys even if they are registered to function keys. For example, if you try to change scanner settings by the function keys when scanning is interrupted, for example, by the scanner running out of paper, scanned images are sometimes not saved properly after scanning is resumed. After you have started scanning, do not use the function keys to restore scanner settings until scanning has ended.

Imprinter/Addon Settings

Set the optional imprinter and addon functions. The imprinter function prints characters on the document, and the addon function adds on specified characters to scanned images.

These options are set in the Imprinter/Addon Dialog dialog box.

To use the imprinter function, you need the optional imprinter.

To use only the addon function, you do not need the imprinter.



<Enable>

Item	Description
Imprinter	Prints characters and counters you have specified on the scanned image.
Addon	Adds characters and counters you have specified on the scanned image.


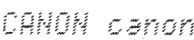
Text	<p>Enter the details to be printed (added on). You can enter up to 32 of the following characters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Numbers (0 to 9) • Alphabet characters (upper-case, lower-case) • Space (blank) • The following symbols: ! " # \$ % & ' () * + - . / : ; < = > ? @ [\] ^ _ { } ~ ` , <p>The above characters are printed (added on) as entered. In addition to these characters, counters, time, date and arrows can be specified as special characters.</p> <p><Counter> To print (add on) a counter, enter in the following format:</p> <p><C> :Prints (adds on) a 9-digit counter. <C#> (# is a number) :Prints (adds on) a counter having number of digits #. <CC> :Prints (adds on) two 9-digit counters. The two counters are delimited by a "." (period). <C#C#> (# is a number) :Prints (adds on) two counters both having number of digits #. The two counters are delimited by a "." (period).</p> <p>The timing that the counter is incremented or decremented is set at "First Counter/Second Counter" described later. (When only one counter is set, set the timing in "First Counter". When two counters are set, set the first counter in [Second Counter] and the subsequent counter in [First Counter].)</p> <table> <thead> <tr> <th>[Input]</th> <th>[Print/Addon Result]</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><C></td> <td>000000000</td> </tr> <tr> <td><C6></td> <td>000000</td> </tr> <tr> <td><CC></td> <td><u>000000000.000000000</u> Second Counter First Counter</td> </tr> <tr> <td><C5C4></td> <td>00000.0000</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><Time> To print (add on) the date that the document was scanned, enter "<TIME>". The time in the 24-hour clock is printed (added on) as eight digits as follows. (Example: 16:28:30)</p> <table> <thead> <tr> <th>[Input]</th> <th>[Print/Addon Result]</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><TIME></td> <td>16:28:30</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	[Input]	[Print/Addon Result]	<C>	000000000	<C6>	000000	<CC>	<u>000000000.000000000</u> Second Counter First Counter	<C5C4>	00000.0000	[Input]	[Print/Addon Result]	<TIME>	16:28:30
[Input]	[Print/Addon Result]														
<C>	000000000														
<C6>	000000														
<CC>	<u>000000000.000000000</u> Second Counter First Counter														
<C5C4>	00000.0000														
[Input]	[Print/Addon Result]														
<TIME>	16:28:30														

	<p><Date> To print (add on) the date that the document was scanned, enter one of “<MDY>”, “<DMY>” or “<YMD>” as a combination of Y (year), M (month) and D (day). The date in the Western calendar is printed (added on) as ten digits as follows. The year, month and date are delimited by a slash “/”. (Example: 2001/3/4 (March 4, 2001))</p> <table> <tr> <td>[Input]</td> <td>[Print/Addon Result]</td> </tr> <tr> <td><YMD></td> <td>2001/03/04</td> </tr> </table> <p><Arrow> To print (add on) an arrow, enter as follows:</p> <table> <tr> <td>[Input]</td> <td>[Print/Addon Result]</td> </tr> <tr> <td><U></td> <td>↑</td> </tr> <tr> <td><D></td> <td>↓</td> </tr> <tr> <td><L></td> <td>←</td> </tr> <tr> <td><R></td> <td>→</td> </tr> </table> <p>(*) To be more precise, up to 32 characters can be printed (added on). When a counter, date or time is entered, the number of characters that are actually printed (added on) exceeds 32 even if the number of entered characters is within 32 characters. If this happens, an error message is displayed. In the example below, the print/addon result is 32 characters even though 25 characters have been entered.</p> <table> <tr> <td>[Input]</td> <td>[Print/Addon Result]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CANON<YMD><TIME><C6></td> <td>CANON 2001/03/04 16:28:30 000001</td> </tr> </table>	[Input]	[Print/Addon Result]	<YMD>	2001/03/04	[Input]	[Print/Addon Result]	<U>	↑	<D>	↓	<L>	←	<R>	→	[Input]	[Print/Addon Result]	CANON<YMD><TIME><C6>	CANON 2001/03/04 16:28:30 000001
[Input]	[Print/Addon Result]																		
<YMD>	2001/03/04																		
[Input]	[Print/Addon Result]																		
<U>	↑																		
<D>	↓																		
<L>	←																		
<R>	→																		
[Input]	[Print/Addon Result]																		
CANON<YMD><TIME><C6>	CANON 2001/03/04 16:28:30 000001																		
Horizontal Offset	Specify the position where the characters are to be appended as a distance in mm from the left edge of the paper feed inlet in the document feed direction.																		
Vertical Offset	Specify the position to print/add on characters as a distance in mm from the top edge of the document.																		

<Addon Type Settings>

Item	Description
Black on White	Prints (adds on) black characters on a white background. DR-5020/5080C
White on Black	Prints (adds on) white characters on a black background. 
Black on Image	Prints (adds on) black characters on the scanned image. 

<Other Settings>

Item	Description
Orientation	Selects rotation of fonts to be printed (adds on). Select one of the following: [Portrait] (default) Fonts are not rotated [Landscape] 90 degrees rotation clockwise [180 Degrees] 180 degrees rotation [270 Degrees] 270 degrees rotation clockwise
Pages	Selects the page on which specified characters are to be printed or added. [Every Page] On all pages [Page After Separator] On the page after the file separator
Right to Left	Prints (adds on) characters from the right to the left.
Small Font	Prints (adds on) characters using a small (8 x 7 dots) font. (Usual size is 12 x 12 dots.) Usual size  Small font 

<First and Second Counter Settings>

Item	Description
Start Value	Sets the counter start value. Default is 0.
Increment	Sets the counter increment. Default is 0 (no change).
Increment Trigger	<p>Selects the timing for incrementing the counter from the following:</p> <p>[New File] When a new file is reached</p> <p>[Separator] When a file separator is inserted</p> <p>[New File or Separator] When a new file is reached or a file separator is inserted</p> <p>[Page] When one page of the document is fed</p> <p>[Never] None</p>
Reset Value	Sets the first value after the counter is reset. Default is 0.
Reset Trigger	<p>Selects the timing for resetting the counter from the following:</p> <p>[New File] When a new file is reached</p> <p>[Separator] When a separator is inserted</p> <p>[New File or Separator] When a new file is reached or when a file separator is inserted</p> <p>[Page] When one page of the document is fed</p> <p>[Never] None</p>

<Buttons>

Item	Description
OK	Enables the settings and closes the dialog box.
Cancel	Cancels any settings you have changed and closes the dialog box.
Default	Returns all settings to their defaults.
Help	Displays the [Text] definition.

Setting the Gamma Curve

Set the gamma curve.



MEMO

The “gamma curve setting” uses gamma curve data prepared by the user to adjust the output values (output to the computer) with respect to the input values for 256 levels of brightness in the scanned image.

Individual gamma curves are set for gray (black and white), red, green and blue.

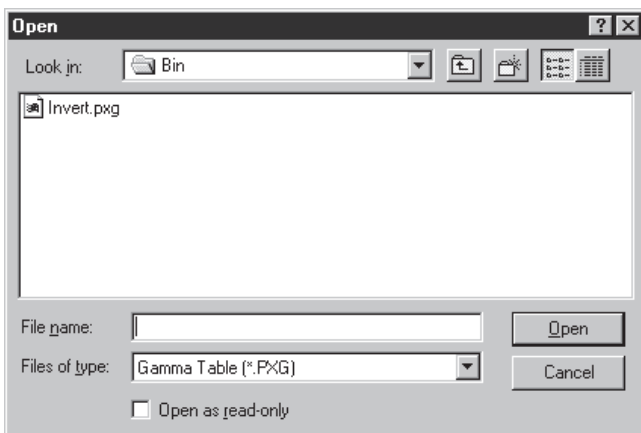
The gamma curve set here will not be enabled unless you check [Use Download] in the Gamma Download dialog.

ENGLISH

- 1 Prepare gamma curve data matched to the gamma curve. (See “Preparing Gamma Curve Data” on P.38.)
- 2 Select the color for which the gamma curve is to be set.



- 3 Click [Download...], and select the prepared gamma curve data.



4 Click [Open]. This sets the gamma curve and returns the display to the More Dialog dialog box.

5 To set the gamma curve for other colors, repeat steps 1 to 4.

◆ Preparing Gamma Curve Data

Gamma curve data is stored in a text file (*.pxg) comprising 258 lines. This file describes the output values for each of the 256 levels of input values.

Be sure to enter a comment in the 1st line of this file, and “256” in the 2nd line of this file. The 3rd line onwards are for entering each output value for each input value. Set “0”, “1”, “2” and so forth from the 3rd line onwards, and “255” for the input value on the 258th line.

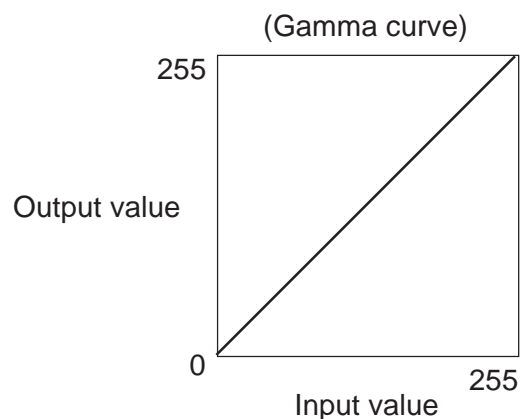
Small values entered for the gamma data curve result in the image being reproduced dark, and large values result in the image being reproduced light.

◆ Example

Normally, rightward-inclining gamma curves are prepared. However, a leftward-inclining gamma curve can be prepared by inverting all output values. As a result, the output image also will be inverted.

Gamma curve data

1st line: gamma curve
 2nd line: 256
 3rd line: 0
 4th line: 1
 5th line: 2
 |
 253th line: 250
 254th line: 251
 255th line: 252
 256th line: 253
 257th line: 254
 258th line: 255



Gamma curve data (inverted)

1st line: Inverted linear gamma curve

2nd line: 256

3rd line: 255

4th line: 254

5th line: 253

|

253th line: 5

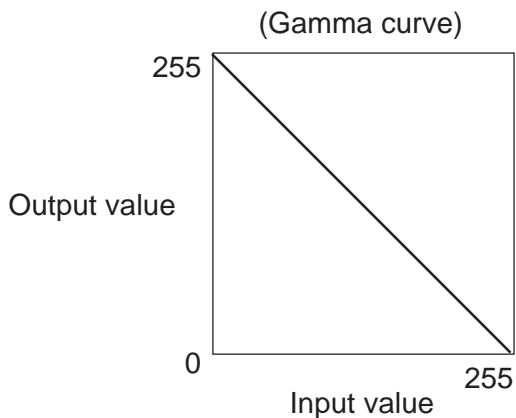
254th line: 4

255th line: 3

256th line: 2

257th line: 1

258th line: 0



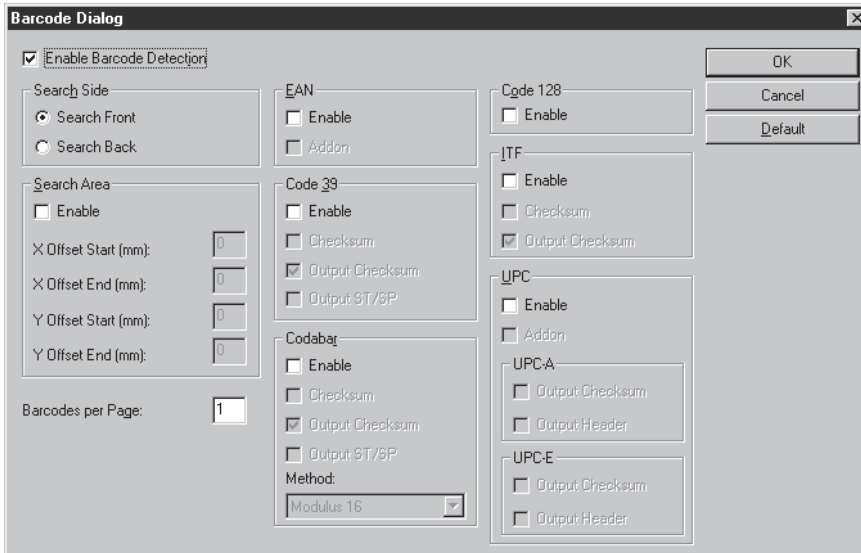
MEMO

Information on the gamma curve data is held internally by the scanner, and is not cleared even if the scanner power is turned OFF. The gamma curve information is not changed until other gamma curve data is downloaded.

Bar Code Decoder Settings

Set the bar code decoder conditions. These settings are available only when the optional bar code decoder is installed. The software must also support the bar code decoder.

The following items are set in the Barcode Dialog dialog box.



MEMO

- When two or more bar code types are aligned horizontally, a recognition error may occur. Select only one type of bar code in the bar code area setting.
- Bar codes with addon codes cannot be detected at the same time as bar codes without addon codes. When scanning originals containing both bar codes with addon codes and bar codes without addon codes, be sure to set the area to detect in the bar code area setting before you start scanning.
- When 400 dpi and duplex scanning is set, only bar codes within the A4 width can be detected.
- When scanning originals containing two or more bar codes and you want to detect only a specific type of bar code, set the area to detect in the bar code area setting. When this area is set in the scan area setting, bar codes outside of the scan area are also detected.
- When the bar code type is unknown, mark all bar code check boxes before scanning the original so that all bar code types are automatically detected and the checksum is not scanned.

<Settings>

Item	Description
Enable Barcode Detection	Click here to enable reading of bar codes. Checking this item allows you to set the following items.
Search Side	Selects the side of the document on which bar codes are to be read. [Search Front] Reads bar codes on the front page. [Search Back] Reads bar codes on the back page.
Search Area	Check [Enable] and set the detection area when you are scanning only a specific area inside a document. If [Enable] is left unchecked, the entire surface of the document is scanned. Specify the scan area using X and Y offset coordinates. The detection reference in the X (horizontal) direction is the left edge of the paper feed inlet for the front side with respect to the paper feed direction, and the right edge of the paper feed inlet on the back side. For the detection reference in the Y (vertical) direction, enter the length from the top edge of the paper. [X Offset Start] Enter the position at which scanning is to start in the horizontal direction. [X Offset End] Enter the position at which scanning is to end in the horizontal direction. [Y Offset Start] Enter the position at which scanning is to start in the vertical direction. [Y Offset End] Enter the position at which scanning is to end in the vertical direction.
Barcodes per Page	Sets the number of bar codes (1 to 4) to be read per page.

<EAN bar code settings>

Item	Description
Enable	Click here to read EAN bar codes.
Addon	Scans addon codes.

<Code 39 bar code settings>

Description	Description
Enable	Click here to read Code 39 bar codes.
Checksum	Scans the checksum.
Output Checksum	You can choose whether or not to output the checksum when [Checksum] is checked. To output the checksum, check this item.
Output ST/SP	Outputs START/STOP codes.

<Codabar bar code settings>

Item	Description
Enable	Click here to read Codabar bar codes.
Checksum	Scans the checksum.
Output Checksum	You can choose whether or not to output the checksum when [Checksum] is checked. To output the checksum, check this item.
Output ST/SP	Outputs the START/STOP codes.
Method	Specify the checksum calculation method. Specify either Modulus16 or 7DR.

<Code 128 bar code settings>

Item	Description
Enable	Click here to read Code 128 bar codes.

<ITF bar code settings>

Item	Description
Enable	Check this when scanning ITF codes (including industrial 2 of 5).
Checksum	Scans the checksum.
Output Checksum	You can choose whether or not to output the checksum when [Checksum] is checked. To output the checksum, check this item.

<UPC bar code settings>

Item	Description
Enable	Click here to read UPC bar codes.
Addon	Detects addon codes.
UPC-A	Output Checksum: Scans the checksum. Output Header: Outputs the header code.
UPC-E	Output Checksum: Scans the checksum. Output Header: Outputs the header code.

<Buttons>

Item	Description
OK	Enables the settings and closes the dialog box.
Cancel	Cancel any settings you have changed and closes the dialog box.
Default	Returns all settings to their defaults.

Chapter 4

Using the TWAIN Driver

This chapter describes operations when the TWAIN driver is run on a TWAIN-compatible application.

4.1	Selecting the TWAIN Driver	46
4.2	Starting Up the TWAIN Driver	47
4.3	Setting Scan Conditions	48
	Basic Settings	49
	Advanced Features	56

4.1 Selecting the TWAIN Driver

Select the TWAIN driver that you are going to use.

Carry out this operation only once after you have installed the TWAIN driver. Also, this operation need not be repeated unless you connect a scanner other than the DR-5020/5080C.



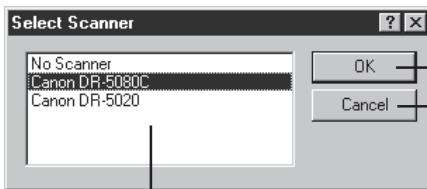
MEMO

The dialog boxes and menus in this chapter are only examples. Note that how they appear on your screen may vary with the application you are using. Some applications may not support all of the functions described in this manual. For details, refer to the manual for the application you are using.

1 Start your TWAIN-compatible application.

2 Open the Scanner Selection screen.

The Scanner Selection screen that appears varies according to the application you are using.



Selects the scanner.

Closes the dialog box without selecting the scanner.

Available scanners are displayed here.

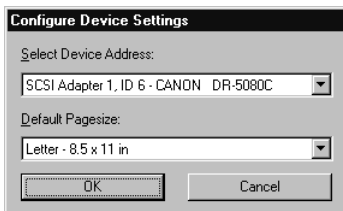


MEMO

If you do not see "Canon DR-5020 and Canon DR-5080C" in the screen, install the driver.

3 Click Canon DR-5020 or Canon DR-5080C in the list, and click [OK].

➡ After you have installed the TWAIN driver, the Set Device screen is displayed only when the TWAIN driver is started up for the first time.



4 Set [Default Pagesize] and click [OK].

➡ The page size you set here is set as the default page size.

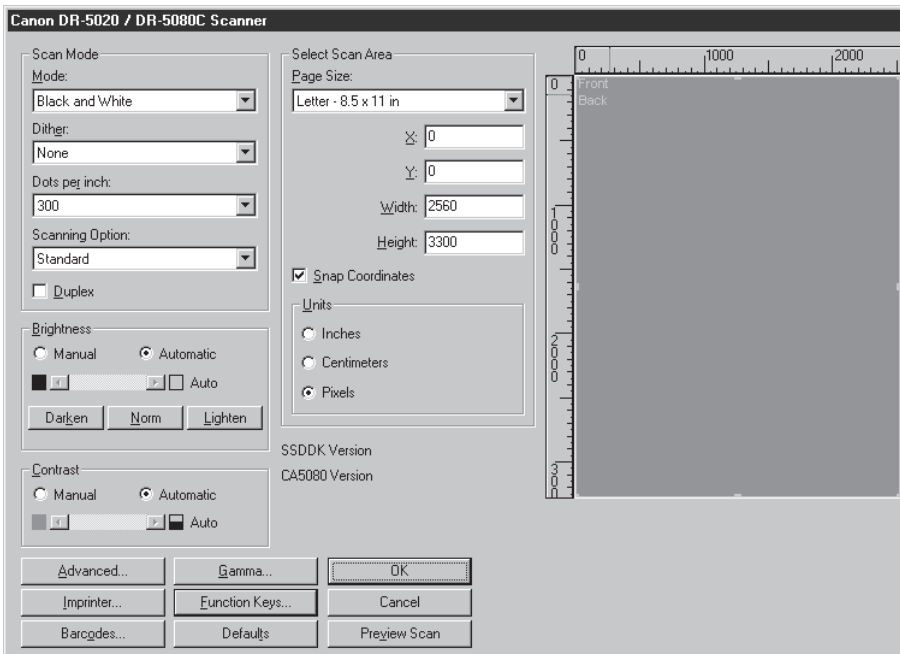
4.2 Starting Up the TWAIN Driver

Start the TWAIN driver from the TWAIN-compatible application.

- 1 Start your TWAIN-compatible application.
- 2 Start the TWAIN driver from the “Enter from TWAIN device” scan start menu.

The “Enter from TWAIN device” scan start menu varies according to the application you are using. For details, refer to the manual for the application.

⇒ The Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C Scanner dialog box is displayed.



4.3

Setting Scan Conditions

The Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C Scanner dialog box is organized in the menu hierarchy shown below. Display these dialog boxes as necessary according to the function you want to use and make the necessary settings. For details on the setting items in each of these dialog boxes, refer to the reference page number.

Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C Scanner dialog box

The screenshot shows the main scanner dialog box with the following sections:

- Scan Mode:** Mode (Black and White), Dither (None), Dots per inch (300), Scanning Option (Standard), Duplex checkbox.
- Brightness:** Manual/Automatic radio buttons, a slider, and buttons for Darken, Norm, and Lighten.
- Contrast:** Manual/Automatic radio buttons, a slider, and buttons for Darken, Norm, and Lighten.
- Select Scan Area:** Page Size (Letter - 8.5 x 11 in), X and Y coordinates (0), Width (2560), Height (3300), Snap Coordinates checkbox, and Units (Inches, Centimeters, Pixels).
- Buttons:** Advanced..., Gamma..., OK, Imprinter..., Function Keys..., Cancel, Barcodes..., Defaults, Preview Scan.

Callouts from the buttons point to the following dialog boxes:

- Advanced... → Advanced Features dialog box (→ P. 56)
- Gamma... → Gamma Download dialog box (→ P. 37)
- Barcodes... → Barcode Dialog dialog box (→ P. 40)
- Imprinter... → Imprinter Dialog dialog box (→ P. 32)
- Function Keys... → Function Keys dialog box (→ P. 30)

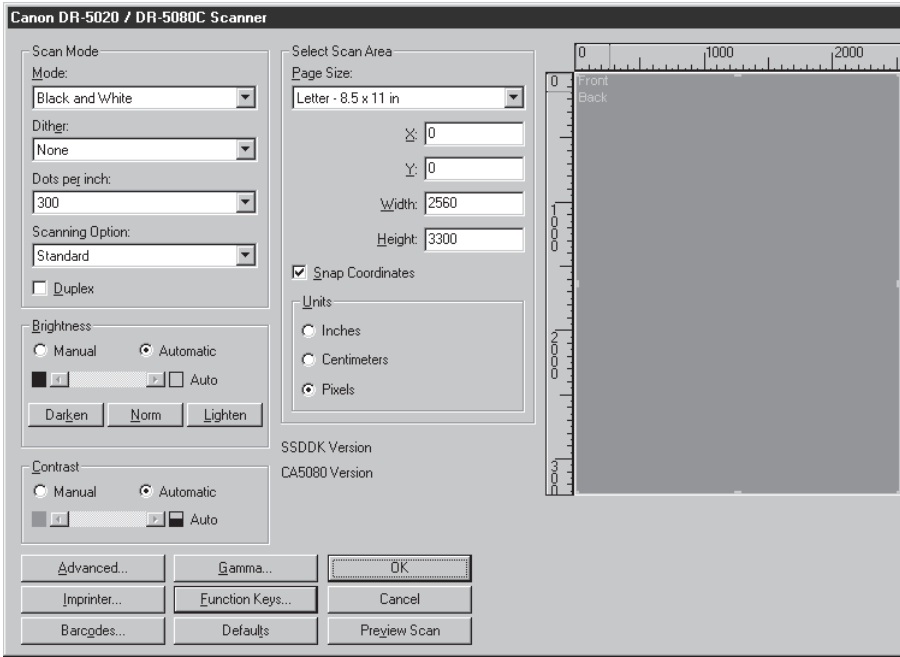


For details on function keys, gamma download, barcodes and imprinter/addon, see Chapter 3 "How to use the ISIS Driver."

Basic Settings

Set the basic scan conditions.

This setting is carried out in the Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C Scanner dialog box.



<Setting the Scan Mode>





MEMO



The modes that can actually be used for scanning are restricted, and scanning is sometimes not possible depending on the combination of settings. For details, see the separate DR-5020/5080C Instructions “DR-5020/5080C Scan Mode Tables” (P.88).

Item	Description
Mode	<p>Sets how the image is to be scanned. Only Black & White is available for the DR-5020.</p> <p>[Black and White] Scans the image completely in black and white with no shades of gray.</p> <p>[16, 256-level Gray] Select this mode when scanning photos and half-tone documents in gray scale. The larger the level value, the more the size of the file increases.</p> <p>[24-bit Color] Select this item when scanning color originals such as photographs.</p> <p>[3, 6, 12-Bit Color -> 4, 8-Bit Palette] The 4-Bit palette is used to convert 3-bit color data to 16 colors for output, and the 8-Bit palette is used to convert 6- and 12-bit color data to 256 colors for output.</p>
Dither	<p>Turns dithering ON or OFF.</p> <p>[None] No dithering. Use for scanning text or for line artwork where there are no colors or shades of gray.</p> <p>[Error Diffusion] Applies error diffusion to simulate the gray area of half-tones. Select this setting when scanning documents containing half-tones such as photos.</p>
Dots per inch	<p>Selects the resolution at which the document is scanned. Select one of the following resolutions: 100, 200, 210, 220, 230, 240, 250, 260, 270, 280, 290, 300 and 400 DPI (Dots Per Inch).</p>
Scanning option	<p>Select the scan mode.</p> <p>[Standard] In this mode, the original is scanned, and the next original is scanned after all of the scanned image data is sent to the personal computer.</p> <p>[Scan Ahead] In this mode, the original is scanned, and the next original is scanned before the scanned image data is sent to the personal computer.</p> <p>[Scan Single Page] In this mode, only one original sheet is scanned.</p>
Duplex	<p>Check to scan both sides of the page.</p>

<Brightness>

Item	Description
Manual	Manually set the brightness at which scanning is carried out. Brightness can be set within the range 1 to 255 and adjusted by clicking the  and  buttons.
Automatic	The brightness is automatically set only when [Mode] is set to [Black and White] and [Dither] is set to [None]. When [Mode] is set to any other setting, and brightness is set to [Automatic], the brightness setting returns to its default.
Darken button	Sets the brightness value to 64 to reproduce the overall image darker.
Norm button	Sets the brightness value to 128 to reproduce the overall image at the standard brightness.
Lighten button	Sets the brightness value to 192 to reproduce the overall image lighter.

<Contrast>

Item	Description
Manual	Manually set the contrast. The contrast can be set within the range 1 to 13. Click the  and  keys to adjust the contrast. Setting a large value increases the contrast, and setting a small value decreases the contrast.
Automatic	Sets the default contrast.



MEMO

- The contrast setting is disabled when Mode is set to “Black and White”.
- On DR-5020, the Contrast checkbox is gray when Mode is set to “Black and White”.

<Setting the Scan Area>

This setting allows you to select and scan a specific area inside the document in addition to scanning the document at the size set at [Paper Size].

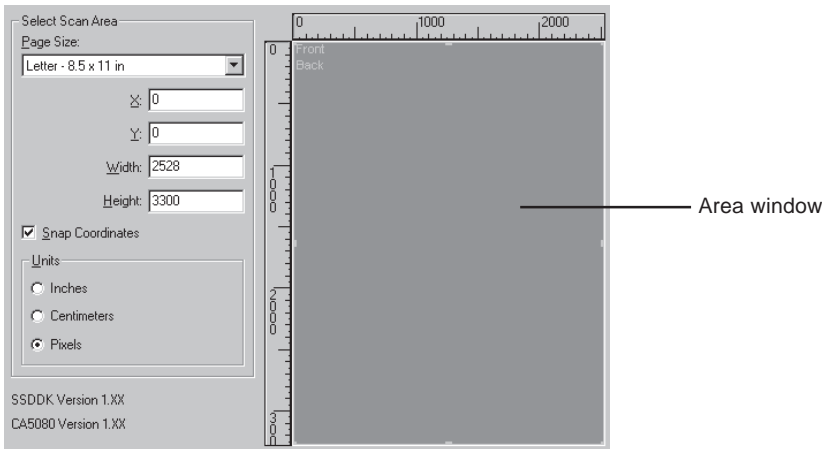
You can specify the scan area on the front and back side of the document to be scanned. Note, however, that the size and position of the area on the front and rear sides are set the same.

There are two ways of specifying the scan area: by entering coordinates or other numerical values, or by directly specifying the area inside the area window.

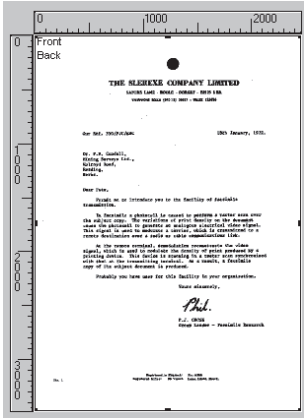
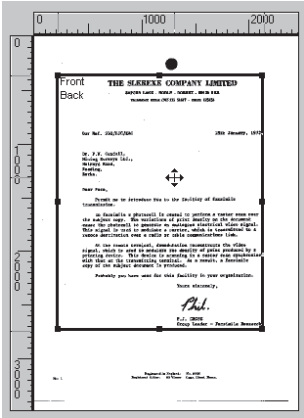


MEMO

The “Page Size” settings and scan area settings made here will be invalid if you have selected “Detect Page Size” in the “Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C Advanced Features” dialog box (P.58).



Item	Description
Page Size	<p>Allows you to select one of the document sizes to be scanned:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Letter - 8.5 x 11 in Letter (Rotated) - 11 x 8.5 in Legal - 8.5 x 14 in Double Letter - 11 x 17 in A3 - 297 x 420 mm A4 - 210 x 297 mm A4 (Rotated) - 297 x 210 mm A5 - 148 x 210 mm A5 (Rotated) - 210 x 148 mm A6 - 105 x 148 mm A6 (Rotated) - 148 x 105 mm B4 (ISO) - 250 x 353 mm B4 (JIS) - 257 x 364 mm B5 (ISO) - 176 x 250 mm B5 (ISO) (Rotated) - 176 x 250 mm B5 (JIS) - 182 x 257 mm B5 (JIS) (Rotated) - 182 x 257 mm B6 (ISO) - 125 x 176 mm B6 (ISO) (Rotated) - 176 x 125 mm B6 (JIS) - 128 x 182 mm B6 (JIS) (Rotated) - 182 x 128 mm Scanner's maximum (295 x 432 mm) <p>If a document larger than the specified size is scanned, the surrounding edges of the document will be clipped. Alternately, if a document smaller than the specified size is scanned, a black margin will be formed on the surrounding edges of the document.</p> <p>If you have selected Detect Page Size in the Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C Advanced Features dialog box, this setting is ignored.</p>
Position of axis	<p>X: Enter the X coordinate of the top left of the scan area. Y: Enter the Y coordinate of the top left of the scan area. Width: Enter the width of the scan area. Height: Enter the height of the scan area. The same coordinate positions must be set on the front and back sides.</p>

<p>Snap Coordinates</p>	<p>Automatically adjusts the Position of axis in the scan area to a convenient value. When the unit is set to Inches, this value is a multiple of 1/8"; when set to Centimeters, this value is a multiple of 0.1 cm; and when set to Pixels, this value is a multiple of 32 pixels.</p>
<p>Unit</p>	<p>Sets the unit used for indicating the size of the scan area. Choose from Inches, Centimeters and Pixels.</p>
<p>(Area window)</p>	<p>The scan area for the paper size is displayed in the area window. The size of the area window varies according to paper size setting. Adjust the size of the area matched to the preview image displayed in the area window by performing a preview scan (P.55) on the document. You can adjust the size of the scan area by dragging the ■ handles on the area frame. You can also drag the entire scan area to move the scan area. The specified scan area is applied to both the front and back sides of the document.</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;">   </div>

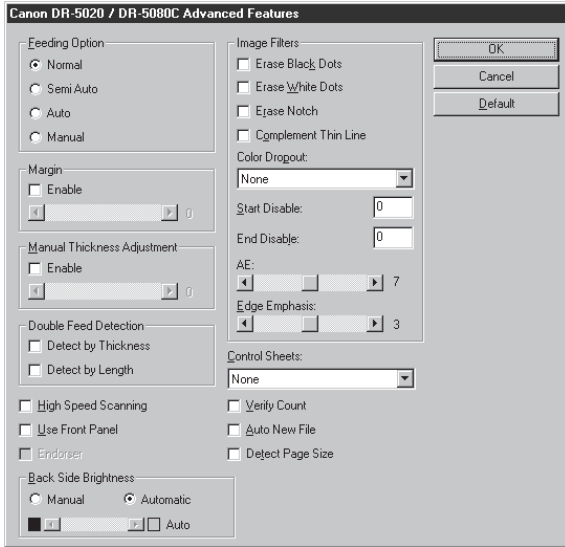
<Buttons>

Item	Description
Advanced...	Opens the Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C Advanced Features dialog box (P.56) so that you can set details such as filter, scanning speed, page size detection, and Control Sheet detection.
Imprinter...	Opens the Imprinter/Addon Dialog dialog box (P. 32). Sets the imprinter function or the addon function. The imprinter function prints specific characters on the scanned document when the optional imprinter unit is installed. The addon function adds scanned images with specified characters.
Barcodes ...	Opens the Barcode Dialog dialog box (P. 40). Sets the conditions for reading bar codes when the optional bar code decoder is installed.
Gamma...	Opens the Gamma Download dialog box (P. 37). Loads and saves to file gamma data for expressing colors and tones.
Function Keys...	Opens the Function Keys dialog box (P. 30) so that you can register functions to the function keys on the scanner.
Defaults	Returns all settings to their defaults.
OK	Starts scanning under the current settings.
Cancel	Discards the current settings, and cancels scanning.
Preview Scan	Scans one page of the document, and displays a preview image in the area window. <div> </div>





Advanced Features

Set detailed scan conditions.

The following items are set in the Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C Advanced Features dialog box.



Item	Description
Feeding Option	<p>Selects the feed method.</p> <p>Normal: The document is fed (scanned) when you load the document and scanning is instructed in the application.</p> <p>Semi Auto: The document is fed (scanned) when scanning is instructed in the application and when you load the document and press the Start key.</p> <p>Auto: The document is fed (scanned) automatically when you load the document.</p> <p>Manual: The document is fed manually one page at a time after scanning is instructed in the application. Use this when scanning particularly thick or thin pages.</p> <p>The Feeding Options display on the scanner's operation panel is switched regardless of pressing the [OK] button for settings made here.</p>

Margin	<p>Adjusts the margins (top, bottom, left and right) of the scanning area.</p> <p>To adjust the margins, click Enable and use the  and  buttons.</p> <p>Specify within the range -10 (reduces scanning area by 10 mm) to +10 (enlarges scanning area by 10 mm).</p> <p>For example, if you want to slightly enlarge the scan area so that document edges are not clipped, adjust in the + direction. Or, if you want to slightly reduce the scan area so that a black frame is not formed around the scanned image, adjust in the - direction.</p>
Manual Thickness Adjustment	<p>Manually sets the paper thickness when the paper thickness is not adjusted automatically.</p> <p>Click Enable and use the  and  buttons to adjust the thickness.</p> <p>Specify the thickness within the range 1 (thinnest) to 13 (thickest). Use this setting to manually adjust the paper thickness when scanning specially coated originals and documents whose paper thickness cannot be adjusted automatically, or when double feed occurs frequently in the automatic paper thickness adjustment mode.</p>
Double Feed Detection	<p>Select the method used to detect double feed. "Double feed" is detected when two or more sheets of the document are fed together or when part of one sheet overlaps another sheet when the sheets in the document are scanned continuously.</p> <p>[Detect by Thickness] Detects double feed by the thickness of the paper. When a document thicker than the first sheet of the document(*) is fed, the scanner judges this to be a double feed and displays an error.</p> <p>[Detect by Length] Detects double feed by the length of the paper. When a document longer than the first sheet of the document(*) is fed, the scanner judges this to be a double feed and displays an error.</p> <p>* Double feed detection is carried out taking the thickness and length of the first sheet of the document as the standard sheet. When the first sheet of the document is fed, the scanner memorizes the thickness and length of the document.</p>

High Speed Scanning	<p>This setting is available when the resolution is set to 200 or 300 dpi.</p> <p>When 200 dpi is set, images are scanned at 200 x 100 dpi (Horizontal x Vertical) and output as a 200 x 200 dpi image.</p> <p>When 300 dpi is set, images are scanned at 300 x 150 dpi (Horizontal x Vertical) and output as a 300 x 300 dpi image.</p> <p>Though scanning is carried out more quickly in either case, note that the quality of the image scanned at high speed diminishes slightly.</p>
Use Front Panel	Enables the settings made on the scanner's operation panel.
Endorser	Enables the optional endorser.
Control Sheets	<p>Selects how the scanner detects scanner Control Sheets.</p> <p>[None] Scanner Control Sheets are not detected.</p> <p>[Scan, Continue Scanning] The scanner Control Sheet is detected and scanned, and then scanning continues.</p> <p>[Skip, Continue Scanning] The scanner Control Sheet is detected and skipped (not scanned), and then scanning continues.</p> <p>[Scan, Stop Scanning] The scanner Control Sheet is detected and scanned, then scanning stops.</p> <p>[Skip, Stop Scanning] The scanner Control Sheet is detected and skipped (not scanned), then scanning stops.</p>
Verify Count	Verify the number of pages counted before the scan against the actual number of scanned pages. If the numbers differ, an error is displayed.
Auto New File	This setting generates a page break signal each time that a continuous scan ends. This allows you to set file delimiters in the corresponding application you are using.
Detect Page Size	<p>This setting detects the size of each document as it is scanned, and scans the document at that size.</p> <p>When this is selected, Page Size in the DR-5020/DR-5080C Scanner dialog box is disabled.</p>

<Setting the Back Side Brightness>

Item	Description
Manual	Manually set the brightness at which the document is to be scanned. The brightness can be set within the range 1 to 255. Click the ◀ and ▶ keys to adjust the brightness.
Automatic	The brightness is automatically set only when [Mode] is set to [Black and White] and [Dither] is set to [None]. The default brightness is set when [Mode] is set to any setting other than [Black and White] and brightness is set to [Auto].

<Image Filter Settings>

Set the image processing filters

Item	Description
Erase Black Dots	Automatically erases isolated black dots (single dots) on white backgrounds.
Erase White Dots	Automatically erases isolated white dots (single dots) on black backgrounds.
Erase Notch	Automatically erases parts (notches) protruding outside contours.
Complement Thin Line	Automatically joins faint or broken lines that occur when scanning documents containing thin lines.
Color Dropout	Click here to enable the dropout function. This function is enabled only on the DR-5080C. [None] Color dropout is not carried out. [Red] Disables scanning of red parts of the document. [Green] Disables scanning of green parts of the document. [Blue] Disables scanning of blue parts of the document.
Start Disable	If the document contains an area where dropout is to be disabled, specify the starting point of this area as a distance (mm) from the top edge of the paper.
End Disable	Specify the end point of the area where dropout is to be disabled as the distance (mm) from the top edge of the paper.
AE	Sets the level of the AE (Automatic Exposure) function. (This function sets the brightness and contrast according to the shading in the area in which the image is selected.) This setting can be set in 13 steps using the ◀ and ▶ buttons. Default is 7.

Edge Emphasis	Sets the level for emphasizing the contours of lettering, and softening the roughness of images such as photos. This setting can be set in five steps using the ◀ and ▶ buttons. Default is 3.
----------------------	--



MEMO

- [Erase Black Dots], [Erase White Dots], [Erase Notch] and [Complement Thin Line] are enabled when [Mode] is set to [Black and White] and [Dither] is set to [Error Diffusion].
- [Color Dropout] is enabled when [Mode] is set to any setting other than [Color].
- [AE] is enabled when [Mode] is set to [Black and White].
- [Edge Emphasis] is enabled in all modes.

<Buttons>

Item	Description
OK	Enables the settings and closes the dialog box.
Cancel	Cancels any settings you have changed and closes the dialog box.
Default	Returns all settings to their default settings.

Index

- A -

AE 28, 59
Addon 32
Addon Type 35
Advanced Features dialog 56
Area window 24, 54
Auto 25, 56
Auto New File 27, 58

- B -

Barcode Dialog 40
Barcode decoder Settings 40
Barcodes per Page 41
Black on Image 35
Black on White 35
Brightness 20, 51

- C -

Codabar 42
Code 128 42
Code 39 42
Color Dropout 28, 59
Complement Thin Line 28, 59
Contrast 21, 51
Control Sheets 27, 58
Counter 33, 36

- D -

Detect Page Size 27, 58
Dither 19, 50
Dots per inch 19, 50
Double Feed Detection 26, 30, 57
Duplex 50

- E -

EAN 41
Edge Emphasis 28, 60
Enable Barcode Delection 41
Enable Imprinter 30
Endorser 27, 58
Erase Black Dots 28, 59
Erase Notch 28, 59
Erase White Dots 28, 59

- F -

Feeding Option 25, 56
Fixed Thickness Mode 30
Function Keys dialog box 30

- G -

Gamma Curve data 38
Gamma Download dialog 37

- H -

High Speed Scanning 27, 58
Horizontal Offset 34

- I -

ITF 42
Imprinter 32
Imprinter/Addon Dialog 32
Increment 36
Increment Trigger 36
Installing the Driver 11

- M -

Manual 25, 56
Manual Thickness Adjustment 26, 30, 57
Margin 26, 57
Mode 18, 50
More dialog 25

- N -

Normal 25, 56

- O -

Orientation 35

- P -

Page Size 19, 23, 53
Pages 35
Position of axis 23, 53

- R -

Region Selection 21
Reset Trigger 36
Reset Value 36
Restore Settings 30
Right to Left 35

- S -

Save Settings 30
Scan Area 22, 52
Scanner Settings dialog 18
Scanner dialog box 48, 49
Scanning Option 50
Search Area (Barcode) 41
Search Side (Barcode) 41
Selecting the ISIS Driver 16
Selecting the TWAIN Driver 46
Semi Auto 25, 56
Setting the Back Side Brightness ... 59
Setting the Gamma Curve 37
Setting the Scan Conditions 17
Setup CD-ROM 10
Small Font 35
Snap Coordinates 23, 54
Start Value 36
Starting Up the TWAIN Driver 47
System requirements 6

- T -

Text (Imprinter/Addon) 33

- U -

UPC 43
Unit 22, 54
Use Front Panel 27, 58

- V -

Verify Count 27, 58
Vertical Offset 34

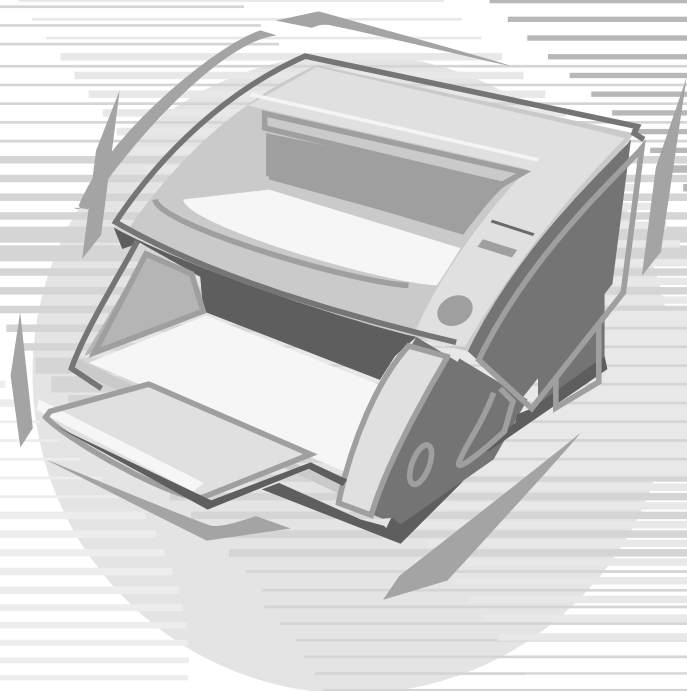
- W -

White on Black 35
Window 23

ISIS/TWAIN Driver

Mode d'emploi

Lisez attentivement ce mode d'emploi avant d'utiliser cet appareil, et rangez-le en lieu sûr après l'avoir consulté.



NOTICE

- ① Copyright© 1999 par CANON ELECTRONICS INC. Tous droits réservés. Aucune partie de cette publication ne peut être reproduite, transmise, transcrite, stockée dans une banque de données ou traduite dans une langue quelconque ou dans une langue informatique sous quelque forme que ce soit ou par quelque moyen que ce soit, électronique, mécanique, magnétique, optique, chimique, manuel ou autre, sans le consentement de CANON ELECTRONICS INC.
- ② Le contenu de ce mode d'emploi pourra être changé sans préavis.
- ③ Tous les efforts possibles ont été faits pour assurer la précision des informations contenues dans ce manuel. Néanmoins, Canon Electronics Inc. et les succursales citées au dos de la couverture rejettent toute responsabilité pour toute erreur ou les conséquences possibles de cette erreur.
- ④ Nous rejetons toute responsabilité pour les dommages résultant du fonctionnement, quels que soient les termes de l'article ③.

Marques de fabrique et marques déposées

- Microsoft Windows® et Microsoft Windows NT® sont des marques de Microsoft Corporation déposées aux Etats-Unis et dans d'autres pays.
- ISIS® est une marque déposée de Pixel Translation A Division of ActionPoint Inc.
- Adaptec est une marque déposée ADAPTEC Inc.
- IBM et PC/AT sont des marques déposées de International Business Machines Corporation.
- Pentium® est une marque déposée de Intel Corporation U.S.A.
- Les noms de produits mentionnés dans ce manuel servent à titre d'identification seulement et peuvent être des marques de fabrique et/ou des marques déposées de leurs détenteurs respectifs.

INTRODUCTION

Merci pour l'achat du scanner de documents Canon DR-5020/5080C. En tout trois manuels sont fournis avec le DR-5020/5080C : le Mode d'emploi du logiciel ISIS/TWAIN (ce manuel), le Mode d'emploi du DR-5020/5080C et le Mode d'emploi de l'application Scanning Utility 5000.

Ce manuel décrit le fonctionnement du logiciel ISIS/TWAIN pour l'utilisation du DR-5020/5080C avec des applications Windows. Veuillez le lire avec attention ainsi que le Mode d'emploi séparé du DR-5020/5080C pour tirer le meilleur parti des fonctions du DR-5020/5080C. Des logiciels de scanner, tels que le logiciel ISIS ou TWAIN ne sont pas nécessaires car l'application de scanner fournie avec le DR-5020/5080C emploie un logiciel exclusif.

Après avoir lu ce manuel, veuillez le ranger en lieu sûr pour toute référence ultérieure.

Vous trouverez ici un aperçu du contenu de chacun de ces manuels.

Mode d'emploi des logiciel ISIS/TWAIN (ce manuel)

Ce manuel indique comment fonctionne le scanner lorsqu'il est utilisé avec une application compatible avec le logiciel ISIS ou TWAIN.

Mode d'emploi du DR-5020/5080C

Ce manuel indique comment raccorder le scanner, charger des documents, résoudre les incidents papier ainsi que d'autres informations importantes. Veuillez le lire avant de mettre le DR-5020/5080C en marche.

Mode d'emploi de Scanning Utility 5000

Ce manuel indique comment utiliser l'application livrée avec le scanner.

■ Attention

Veuillez noter les points suivants lorsque vous effectuez des copies à l'aide du scanner :

- La reproduction de billets ou d'autres types de devises ou de valeurs négociables est un délit pouvant entraîner des poursuites judiciaires.
- La reproduction de titres officiels, licences, billets de transport, documents privés ou protégés par le copyright et de tout autre document est contraire à la loi et peut entraîner des poursuites judiciaires.
- La copie d'images dans un but non personnel ou familial exige l'autorisation du propriétaire du copyright.

CONVENTIONS

Ce manuel contient les symboles et indications suivantes.
Veuillez lire leur description avec attention pour vous familiariser avec leurs significations.



A lire avec attention. Risque de mort ou de blessure.



A lire avec attention. Risque de dommage matériel ou de perte de données précieuses.



Indique où trouver des informations utiles dans ce manuel. Le nombre entre parenthèses indique la page de référence où vous pourrez trouver de plus amples informations sur la phrase ou le paragraphe précédent.



Indique des conseils sur l'emploi ou des problèmes mineurs à éviter.

■ Cet appareil

Les DR-5020 et 5080C sont appelés collectivement le “ scanner ” dans ce manuel. Si une description particulière est nécessaire pour l'une de ces machines, le nom du scanner, DR-5020 ou 5080C, sera mentionné explicitement.

SOMMAIRE

INTRODUCTION	1
CONVENTIONS	2
Chapitre 1 Informations préliminaires	5
1.1 Configuration requise	6
Lors de l'utilisation du logiciel ISIS/TWAIN	6
1.2 Comment lire ce manuel	8
Application compatible avec le logiciel ISIS	8
Application compatible avec le logiciel TWAIN	8
Chapitre 2 Installation du logiciel ISIS/TWAIN	9
2.1 Préparatifs	10
2.2 Installation du logiciel	11
Chapitre 3 Utilisation du logiciel ISIS	15
3.1 Sélection du logiciel ISIS	16
3.2 Réglage des conditions de numérisation	17
Paramètres de base	18
Réglage de la zone numérisée	22
Réglage des détails	25
Réglage des touches de fonction	30
Paramètres de marquage/marque	32
Réglage de la courbe gamma	37
Paramètres du décodeur de codes barre	40
Chapitre 4 Utilisation du logiciel TWAIN	45
4.1 Sélection du logiciel TWAIN	46
4.2 Démarrage du logiciel TWAIN	47
4.3 Réglage des conditions de numérisation	48
Paramètres de base	49
Fonctions avancées	56
Index	61

Chapitre 1

Informations préliminaires

Ce chapitre indique tout ce qu'il faut savoir pour installer les logiciels ISIS et TWAIN du DR-5020/5080C sur l'ordinateur.

1.1 Configuration requise	6
Lors de l'utilisation du logiciel ISIS/TWAIN ...	6
1.2 Comment lire ce manuel	8
Application compatible avec le logiciel ISIS	8
Application compatible avec le logiciel TWAIN	8

1.1

Configuration requise

Pour que le logiciel ISIS/TWAIN du DR-5020/5080C fonctionne correctement, le matériel et les applications suivantes sont nécessaires.

- Ordinateur IBM PC/AT ou compatible, avec CPU Pentium 133 MHz ou supérieur et au moins 64 Mo de mémoire
 - Système d'exploitation : Microsoft Windows® 95/98/Me ou Windows NT® 4.0 Workstation/Windows 2000 Professional
 - Au moins 100 Mo d'espace sur le disque dur (au moins 5 Mo après l'installation)
- Affichage compatible SVGA
- Clavier, souris et imprimante compatibles Microsoft Windows, Lecteur de CD-ROM (Vitesse 4x ou plus)
- Carte SCSI compatible
La compatibilité des cartes suivantes a été confirmée :
Adaptec Séries AHA-1540 et AHA-2940
- Câble SCSI-2 compatible SCSI

Lors de l'utilisation du logiciel ISIS/TWAIN

- Installez les logiciels ISIS et TWAIN en même temps. Ces deux logiciels ne peuvent pas être installés séparément.
- Le logiciel ISIS/TWAIN ne supporte pas nécessairement toutes les applications compatibles ISIS et toutes les applications compatibles TWAIN.
- Les boîtes de dialogue et les menus utilisés dans les applications compatibles ISIS/TWAIN dans ce manuel servent à titre d'exemples. Selon l'application utilisée, elles pourront apparaître différemment sur votre écran. Certaines applications ne supporteront pas toutes les fonctions décrites dans ce manuel. Pour les détails, contactez votre fournisseur de logiciel.
- L'application ne supporte pas les fonctions du DR-5020/5080C et elle ne fonctionnera peut-être pas correctement.
- Le pilote ISIS/TWAIN utilise [wnasp32.dll] pour contrôler le scanner. Le scanner ne fonctionne pas correctement si [wnasp32.dll] n'a pas bien été installé. Si [wnasp32.dll] n'est pas installé, contacter le fabricant de la carte SCSI utilisée ou un revendeur Canon.

- Si le pilote est installé sur un ordinateur Windows fonctionnant sous Windows 95 et le fichier [wnasp32.dll] installé d'origine dans Windows 95 est utilisé, le pilote ISIS/TWAIN ne fonctionnera pas correctement. Dans ce cas, exécutez [Aspiinst.exe] dans le dossier [Pixtran] du CD d'installation pour une mise à jour à la dernière version de [wnasp32.dll].

Le problème suivant a été constaté lorsque le scanner est sélectionné sur un ordinateur Windows fonctionnant sous Windows 95 :

- Un arrêt forcé se produit lorsque la version de [wnasp32.dll] dans le dossier Système est "1, 0, 0, 0".

- Le logiciel ISIS/TWAIN supporte six langues (japonais, anglais, allemand, français, espagnol et italien). La langue est automatiquement sélectionnée en fonction des réglages régionaux effectués dans Windows.

Si la langue du logiciel diffère de la langue de l'application que vous utilisez, les boîtes de dialogue du logiciel ne s'afficheront pas correctement. Le cas échéant, utilisez pour le logiciel la langue de l'application.

Pour changer la langue du logiciel, changez les réglages régionaux dans le panneau de configuration.

Vous pouvez aussi changer la langue du logiciel sans changer les réglages régionaux. Pour ce faire, ajoutez les deux lignes suivantes dans le fichier " Setscan.ini " dans le dossier Windows. La langue du logiciel sera validée.

[Options]

iLanguage= xxxx (xxxx désigne la langue)

xxxx (désignations des langues)

1031 = Allemand

1033 = Anglais

1034 = Espagnol

1036 = Français

1040 = Italien

1041 = Japonais

Si la langue désignée ne change pas malgré le changement des réglages régionaux sur le panneau de configuration et le changement de langue dans le fichier Setscan.ini, c'est probablement que l'application que vous utilisez limite la commutation de la langue. Dans ce cas, il n'est pas possible de changer de langue.

1.2

Comment lire ce manuel

Veillez lire le chapitre approprié de ce manuel après avoir vérifié quel logiciel, ISIS ou TWAIN, était supporté par l'application que vous utilisez.

Application compatible avec le logiciel ISIS

Chapitre 2 Installation du logiciel ISIS/TWAIN (P. 9)

Cette section indique comment installer le logiciel ISIS/TWAIN sur le disque dur de votre ordinateur.

Chapitre 3 Utilisation du logiciel ISIS (P. 15)

Ce chapitre indique comment sélectionner le logiciel ISIS depuis l'application ainsi que les réglages détaillés à effectuer pour numériser un document.

Application compatible avec le logiciel TWAIN

Chapitre 2 Installation du logiciel ISIS/TWAIN (P. 9)

Cette section indique comment installer le logiciel ISIS/TWAIN sur le disque dur de votre ordinateur.

Chapitre 4 Utilisation du logiciel TWAIN (P. 45)

Ce chapitre indique comment sélectionner le logiciel TWAIN depuis l'application ainsi que les réglages détaillés à effectuer pour numériser un document.



MEMO

Pour les détails sur la connexion du scanner, voir le Mode d'emploi du DR-5020/5080C.

Chapitre 2

Installation du logiciel ISIS/TWAIN

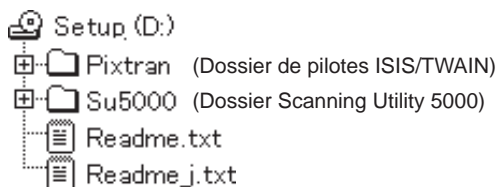
Cette section indique comment installer le logiciel ISIS/TWAIN du DR-5020/5080C sur l'ordinateur.

2.1 Préparatifs	10
2.2 Installation du logiciel	11

2.1 Préparatifs

Veillez vérifier les points suivants avant d'installer le pilote ISIS/TWAIN.

- **Assurez-vous que le système d'exploitation de votre ordinateur où le logiciel ISIS/TWAIN sera installé est le système Microsoft Windows® 95/98/ Me ou Microsoft WindowsNT® 4.0 Workstation/Windows 2000 Professional.**
- **Raccordez le scanner à l'ordinateur.**
Pour les détails sur la connexion du scanner, voir le Mode d'emploi du DR-5020/5080C.
- **Installez le CD-ROM**
L'installation du CD-ROM s'effectue de la façon suivante.
Avant d'installer le pilote ISIS/TWAIN, ne manquez pas de lire "Readme.txt".
Une fois l'installation du pilote ISIS/TWAIN terminée, rangez le CD-ROM en lieu sûr.



2.2 Installation du logiciel

Installez le logiciel ISIS-TWAIN.

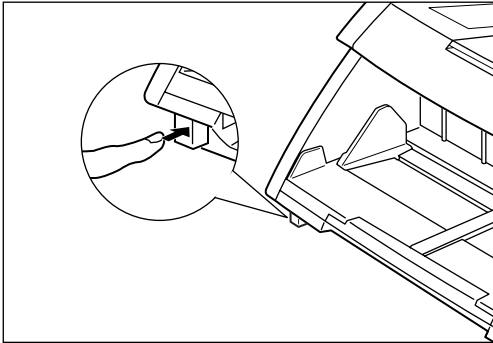


MEMO

La procédure décrite ci-dessous permet d'installer simultanément le logiciel ISIS et le logiciel TWAIN.

Ces logiciels ne peuvent pas être installés séparément.

1 Allumez le scanner.



2 Allumez l'ordinateur.

⇒ Windows démarre.

3 Avant de commencer l'installation, faites des copies de sauvegarde des fichiers suivants si un autre logiciel compatible ISIS est déjà utilisé.

\\WINDOWS\\SYSTEM\\PIX*.DLL
\\WINDOWS\\PIXTRAN*.*



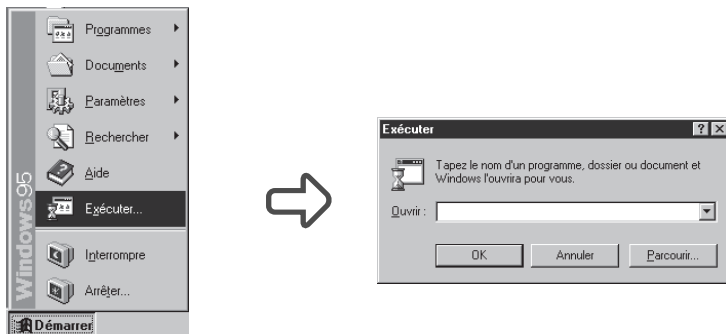
MEMO

- Lorsque le logiciel ISIS/TWAIN est installé, les fichiers ci-dessus peuvent être modifiés. Veillez à en faire des copies avant l'installation.
- Les noms des dossiers système \\Windows et \\Windows\\system diffèrent selon la version Windows utilisée. Dans les explications suivantes, substituez les noms de dossiers système \\Windows et \\Windows\\system aux noms de dossiers de votre version Windows.

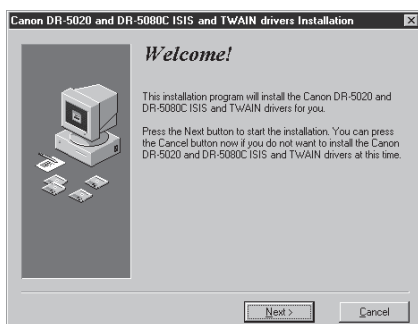
4 Insérez la disquette d'installation dans le lecteur CD-ROM.

- 5 Cliquez sur le bouton [Démarrer] et sélectionnez [Exécuter].**
L'écran qui apparaît varie selon la version de Windows que vous utilisez.

[Windows95]



- 6 Sous Ouvrir, tapez “ D:\pixtran\setup.exe ” et cliquez sur [OK].**
Dans ce mode d'emploi, le lecteur de CD-ROM est désigné par D.
⇒ L'écran d'installation du logiciel apparaît.



7 Cliquez sur [Next] pour exécuter l'installation.

⇒ L'écran de fin d'installation apparaît.



8 Cliquez sur [Finish] pour terminer l'installation.

Chapitre 3

Utilisation du logiciel ISIS

Ce chapitre décrit le fonctionnement du scanner lorsque le logiciel ISIS est utilisé avec une application compatible ISIS.

3.1 Sélection du logiciel ISIS	16
3.2 Réglage des conditions de numérisation	17
Paramètres de base	18
Réglage de la zone numérisée	22
Réglage des détails	25
Réglage des touches de fonction	30
Paramètres de marquage/marque	32
Réglage de la courbe gamma	37
Paramètres du décodeur de codes barre	40

3.1 Sélection du logiciel ISIS

Sélectionnez le logiciel ISIS que vous voulez utiliser.

Effectuez cette opération une seule fois après avoir installé le logiciel ISIS. Cette opération n'aura pas besoin d'être répétée à moins que vous ne raccordiez un autre scanner que le DR-5020/5080C.



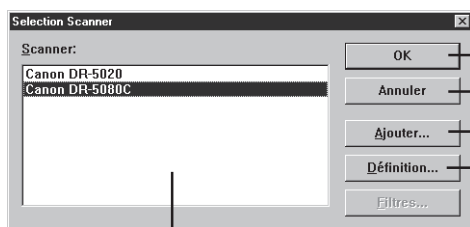
MEMO

Les boîtes de dialogue et les menus qui apparaissent dans ce manuel ne servent qu'à titre d'exemples. Selon l'application employée, leur contenu pourra varier. Certaines applications ne supporteront pas toutes les fonctions décrites dans ce manuel. Pour les détails, voir le manuel de l'application que vous utilisez.

1 Démarrez l'application compatible ISIS.

2 Affichez l'écran de sélection du scanner.

L'écran de sélection du scanner dépend de l'application employée.



— Sélection du scanner

— Fermeture de la boîte de dialogue sans sélection du scanner

— Cliquez sur ce bouton pour ajouter d'autres scanners.

— Sert à effectuer les réglages de scanner.

— Les scanners disponibles sont affichés ici.

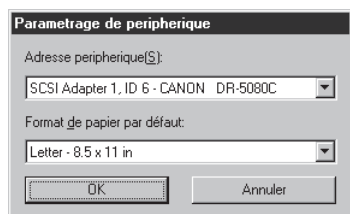


MEMO

Si le Canon DR-5020 ou Canon DR-5080C ne figure pas dans la liste, installez le logiciel.

3 Cliquez sur **Canon DR-5020** ou **Canon DR-5080C** dans la liste, puis cliquez sur **[OK]**.

➔ L'écran de réglage des paramètres du périphérique sélectionné s'affiche.



4 Sélectionnez le **[Format de papier par défaut]** et cliquez sur **[OK]**.

➔ Le format de papier sélectionné ici est le réglage par défaut.

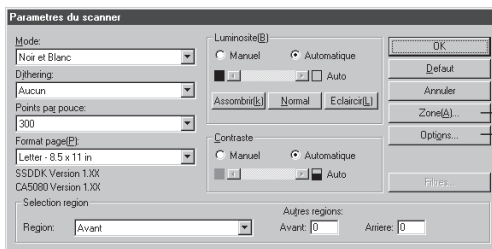
3.2 Réglage des conditions de numérisation

Les menus de la boîte de dialogue Paramètres du scanner sont organisés de la façon suivante. Affichez les boîtes de dialogue dont vous avez besoin pour la fonction que vous voulez utiliser et réglez les paramètres nécessaires. Pour les détails sur les paramètres qui apparaissent dans chaque boîte de dialogue, reportez-vous à la page de référence.

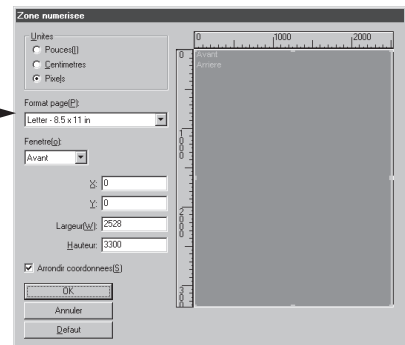
1 Ouvrez l'application compatible ISIS.

2 Affichez l'écran Paramètres du scanner.

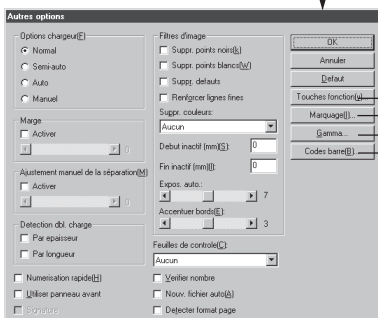
L'écran Paramètres du scanner qui apparaît varie selon l'application utilisée.



Boîte de dialogue Paramètres du scanner
(p. 18)



Boîte de dialogue Zone numérisée
(p. 22)



Boîte de dialogue Autres options
(p. 25)

Boîte de dialogue Touches fonction (→ P. 30)

Boîte de dialogue Marquage/Marque (→ P. 32)

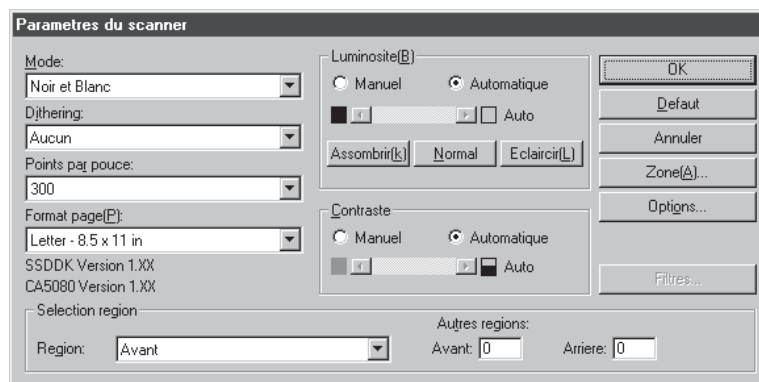
Boîte de dialogue Gamma (→ P. 37)

Boîte de dialogue Codes barre (→ P. 40)

Paramètres de base

Ces paramètres définissent les conditions de base dans lesquelles s'effectue la numérisation.

Ce réglage s'effectue dans la boîte de dialogue Paramètres du scanner.



<Paramètres de numérisation>



MEMO

Les modes de numérisation pouvant être utilisés sont parfois restreints et la numérisation n'est pas toujours possible lorsque certains réglages sont effectués. Pour les détails, voir les "Tableaux des modes de numérisation du DR-5020/5080C dans le Mode d'emploi du DR-5020/5080C. (P. 88)

Paramètre	Description
Mode	<p>Définit la manière dont l'image doit être numérisée. La numérisation est uniquement en noir et blanc et diffusion d'erreur sur le DR-5020.</p> <p>[Noir et Blanc] L'image est entièrement numérisée en noir et blanc sans nuances de gris.</p> <p>[16/256-Niveau de gris] Sélectionnez ce mode pour la numérisation de photographies et de documents en demi-tons avec niveaux de gris. Le fichier sera d'autant plus important que le nombre de niveaux de gris est élevé.(DR-5080C)</p> <p>[Couleur 3, 12, 24-Bit] Sélectionnez ce paramètre pour numériser des documents en couleurs, tels que des photographies.</p> <p>[Couleur-3, 6, 12 bits -> 4, 8-bits Palette] La palette de 4 bits permet de convertir les données de couleurs 3 bits en 16 couleurs et la palette de 8 bits permet de convertir les données de couleurs 6 et 12 bits en 256 couleurs.</p>

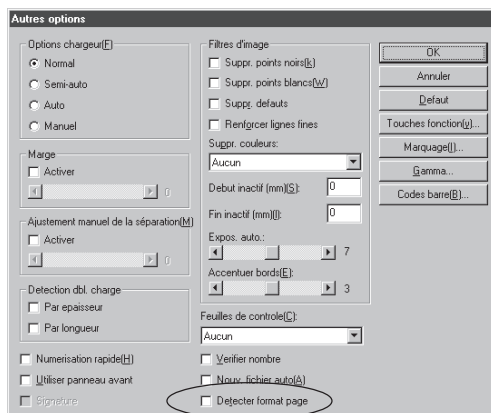
Dithering	<p>Valide ou invalide le dithering.</p> <p>[Aucun] Pas de dithering. Ce paramètre sert à numériser du texte ou des dessins sans couleurs ni niveaux de gris.</p> <p>[Diffusion erreurs] Applique la diffusion d'erreurs pour simuler la zone de gris des demi-tons. Sélectionnez ce paramètre pour numériser des documents en demi-tons, tels que les photographies.</p>
Points par pouce	<p>Sert à définir la résolution, le nombre de points par pouce (ppp). Vous avez le choix entre 13 résolutions: 100, 200, 210, 220, 230, 240, 250, 260, 270, 280, 290, 300 et 400.</p>
Format page	<p>Sert à sélectionner un des formats de document à numériser suivants :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Letter - 8,5 x 14 in Letter [Paysage] – 11 x 8.5 in Legal – 8.5 x 14 in Double Letter – 11 x 17 in A3 – 297 x 420 mm A4 – 210 x 297 mm A4 [Paysage] – 297 x 210 mm A5 – 148 x 210 mm A5 [Paysage] – 210 x 148 mm A6 – 105 x 148 mm A6 [Paysage] 148 x 105 mm B4 (ISO) – 250 x 353 mm B4 (JIS) – 257 x 364 mm B5 (ISO) – 176 x 250 mm B5 (ISO) [Paysage] – 176x 250 mm B5 (JIS) – 182 x 257 mm B5 (JIS) [Paysage] – 182 x 257 mm B6 (ISO) – 125 x 176 mm B6 (ISO) [Paysage] – 176 x 125 mm B6 (JIS) – 128 x 182 mm B6 (JIS) [Paysage] – 182 x 128 mm Maximum scanner (295 x 432 mm) <p>Si le document numérisé est plus grand que le format défini, ses bords seront tronqués. Par contre, si le document numérisé est plus petit que la zone définie, une marge noire apparaîtra tout autour du document.</p>



MEMO

Les données ne seront pas sauvegardées correctement si vous sélectionnez [16 Niveaux de gris] comme mode. Sélectionnez [Détecter format page] dans la boîte de dialogue [Options] (P.25) et numérisez une page, puis désignez le format de fichier pour sauvegarder les données dans l'application en [JBIG].



Les réglages "Format Page" effectués ici seront invalides si vous avez sélectionné "Détecter format page" dans la boîte de dialogue "Autres options" (P. 25).



<Luminosité>

Paramètre	Description
Manuel	Permet de définir manuellement la luminosité à laquelle l'image sera numérisée. La luminosité peut se régler de 1 à 255 par un clic sur les boutons ◀ et ▶.
Automatique	La luminosité se règle automatiquement seulement si [Mode] a été réglé sur [Noir et Blanc] et [Dithering] sur [Aucun]. Lorsque [Mode] est réglé sur un autre paramètre et la luminosité est réglée sur [Automatique], le réglage par défaut de la luminosité est rétabli.
Bouton Assombrir	Règle la luminosité de l'ensemble de l'image sur la valeur 64 pour assombrir l'image.
Bouton Normal	Règle la luminosité de l'ensemble de l'image sur la valeur 128, la luminosité standard.
Bouton Eclaircir	Règle la luminosité de l'ensemble de l'image sur 192 pour éclaircir l'image.

<Contraste>

Paramètre	Description
Manuel	Réglage manuel du contraste. Le contraste peut se régler de 1 à 13. Pour ajuster le contraste, cliquez sur les boutons  et  . Le contraste augmente lorsque la valeur augmente et il diminue lorsque la valeur diminue.
Automatique	Réglage du contraste par défaut.



MEMO

- Le réglage de contraste est désactivé lorsque le mode set “Blanc et Noir” est sélectionné.
- Sur le DR-5020, la case Contraste est grise lorsque le mode “Blanc et Noir” est sélectionné.

<Sélection région>

Paramètre	Description
Région	Sélectionne le côté du document pour laquelle la luminosité sera réglée. Sélectionnez Avant ou Arrière.
Autres régions	Inutilisable sur ce scanner.

<Boutons>

Paramètre	Description
OK	Valide les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.
Défaut	Rétablit les réglages par défaut de tous les paramètres.
Annuler	Annule tous les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.
Zone	Ouvre la boîte de dialogue Zone numérisée (P. 22) où le format de la zone à numériser sur la page avant et arrière peut être défini.
Options	Ouvre la boîte de dialogue Autres options (P. 25) où le filtre, la vitesse, la détection du format de la page, la détection des feuilles de contrôle ainsi que d'autres détails peuvent être définis.
Filtres	Inutilisable sur ce scanner.

Réglage de la zone numérisée

La zone numérisée doit être définie si une partie précise de l'image seulement doit être numérisée. Cette zone se règle dans la boîte de dialogue " Zone numérisée ".

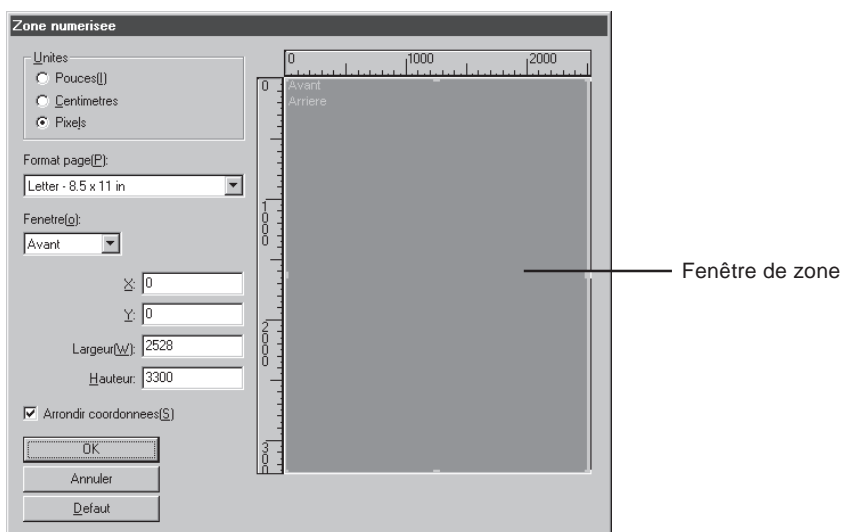
Vous pouvez définir la zone numérisée pour la face avant ou la face arrière du document. Notez, toutefois, que la taille de la zone numérisée pour les faces avant et arrière et les positions des coordonnées sur l'axe Y (vertical) doivent être identiques. Ces paramètres ne peuvent être définis que pour les positions des coordonnées sur l'axe X (horizontal).

La zone peut être définie de deux façons : en indiquant les coordonnées ou d'autres valeurs numériques ou en spécifiant la zone directement sur la fenêtre.



MEMO

Si vous avez sélectionné "Détection format page" (P. 25) dans la boîte de dialogue " Autres options ", les réglages de zone numérisée seront ignorés.



Paramètre	Description
Unité	Définit l'unité employée pour l'indication du format de la zone numérisée. Vous avez le choix entre les pouces, les centimètres et les pixels.

Format page	Permet de sélectionner le format du document qui doit être numérisé. Les formats de page disponibles sont les mêmes que ceux de [Format page] dans la boîte de dialogue [Paramètres du scanner]. Lorsque vous ouvrez la boîte de dialogue [Zone numérisée], les formats de page validés dans [Format page] de la boîte de dialogue [Paramètres du scanner] sont affichés. Tous les changements effectués sur ces paramètres à ce moment se répercuteront sur les réglages de [Format page] effectués dans la boîte de dialogue [Paramètres du scanner].
Fenêtre	Permet de définir la face du document pour laquelle la zone à numériser doit être spécifiée. Avant : Définit les deux faces du document. (Les réglages de la zone numérisée sont les mêmes pour les deux faces du document.) Arrière : Définit la face arrière du document. (Les réglages des coordonnées X peuvent être changés pour la face avant et la face arrière).
Position de l'axe	X : Indiquez la coordonnée X du coin supérieur gauche de la zone numérisée. Y : Indiquez la coordonnée Y du coin supérieur gauche de la zone numérisée. Largeur : Indiquez la largeur de la zone numérisée. Hauteur : Indiquez la hauteur de la zone numérisée. " X " peut être défini séparément pour les faces avant et arrière. Les réglages de " Y ", de " Largeur " et de " Hauteur " sont identiques pour les faces avant et arrière.
Arrondir coordonnées	Permet d'ajuster automatiquement la position de l'axe dans la zone numérisée à une valeur arrondie. Si les pouces ont été définis comme unité, la valeur sera un multiple de 1/8" ; si les centimètres ont été définis, la valeur sera un multiple de 0,1 cm, et si les pixels ont été définis, la valeur sera un multiple de 32 pixels.

(Fenêtre de zone)

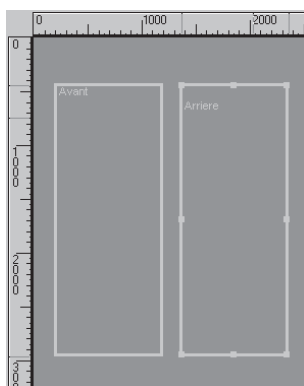
La zone numérisée pour le format de page sélectionné apparaît dans la fenêtre de zone. La taille de la fenêtre de zone varie en fonction du réglage du format de page.

Vous pouvez aussi spécifier la taille de la zone numérisée en tirant sur les manettes ■ de la zone encadrée. Vous pouvez aussi déplacer toute la zone numérisée sur la fenêtre.

Désignez la face du document pour laquelle la zone numérisée doit être changée, les deux faces avec [Avant] ou la face arrière avec [Arrière] dans “ Fenêtre ”.

Lorsque vous désignez [Avant] et que la zone numérisée est définie, la position des coordonnées est la même pour les deux faces.

Lorsque vous désignez [Arrière] et que la zone est ajustée pour la face arrière, seules la coordonnée X peuvent être définie séparément.



Lorsque vous réglez la face avant avec [Avant] après avoir réglé la zone sur la face arrière avec [Arrière], le réglage [Arrière] actuellement validé est invalidé.

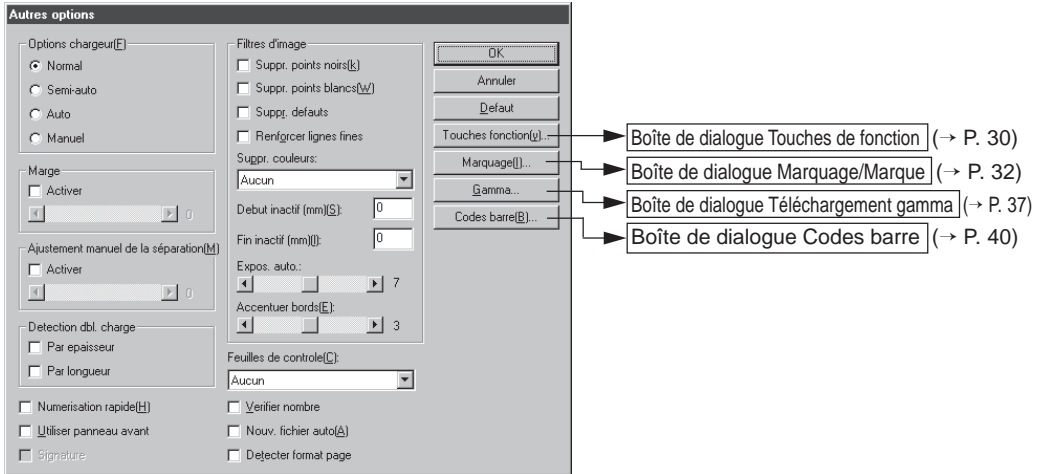
<Boutons>

Paramètre	Description
OK	Valide les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.
Annuler	Annule tous les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.
Défaut	Rétablit les réglages par défaut de tous les paramètres.





Réglage des détails

Vous pouvez définir de manière plus précise les conditions dans lesquelles s'effectue la numérisation.

La boîte de dialogue Autres options propose les paramètres suivants pour le réglage plus détaillé des conditions de numérisation.







Paramètre	Description
Options chargeur	<p>Sélectionne la méthode de chargement.</p> <p>Normal : Le document est chargé (numérisé) lorsque vous la posez et la commande de numérisation a été validée dans l'application.</p> <p>Semi-auto : Le document est chargé (numérisé) lorsque la commande de numérisation est validée dans l'application et lorsque vous posez le document puis appuyez sur la touche de marche.</p> <p>Auto : Le document est chargé (numérisé) automatiquement lorsque vous la posez.</p> <p>Manual : Le document est chargé manuellement page par page après que la commande de numérisation ait été validée dans l'application. Utilisez cette option pour numériser des pages particulièrement épaisses ou fines.</p> <p>L'option chargeur sur le panneau de commande du scanner change automatiquement même si vous n'appuyez pas sur le bouton [OK] pour valider les réglages effectués ici.</p>

<p>Marge</p>	<p>Ajuste les marges (supérieure, inférieure, gauche et droite) de la zone numérisée. Pour ajuster les marges, cliquez sur Activer et utilisez les boutons  et .</p> <p>Définissez les marges entre -10 (réduction de la zone numérisée de 10 mm) et +10 (agrandissement de la zone numérisée de 10 mm).</p> <p>Par exemple, si vous voulez agrandir légèrement la zone numérisée pour que les bords du document ne soient pas tronqués, ajustez dans le sens de +. Sinon, si vous voulez réduire légèrement la zone numérisée pour ne pas avoir de cadre noir autour de l'image numérisée, ajustez dans le sens de -.</p>
<p>Ajustment manuel de l'épaisseur</p>	<p>Permet de définir manuellement l'épaisseur de papier quand elle ne l'est pas automatiquement. Cliquez sur Activer et utilisez les boutons  et  pour définir l'épaisseur.</p> <p>L'épaisseur se définit dans la plage de 1 (le plus fin) à 13 (le plus épais). Utilisez ce paramètre pour ajuster manuellement l'épaisseur de papier lors de la numérisation d'originaux à revêtement spécial et de documents dont l'épaisseur ne peut pas être ajustée automatiquement, ou bien lorsque plusieurs feuilles sont fréquemment chargées dans le mode d'ajustage automatique de l'épaisseur de papier.</p>
<p>Détection dbl. charge</p>	<p>Sélectionnez la méthode de détection de double charge. Une " double charge " est détectée lorsqu'au moins deux feuilles du document sont chargées en même temps ou lorsqu'une partie d'une feuille se superpose à une autre feuille, lors de la numérisation continue des feuilles d'un document.</p> <p>[Par épaisseur] Sert à détecter la double charge de papier en fonction de l'épaisseur du papier. Si la première feuille d'un document(*) est moins épaisse que les feuilles suivantes, le scanner interprétera la 2^e feuille comme une double charge et indiquera une erreur.</p> <p>[Par longueur] Sert à détecter une double charge en fonction de la longueur du papier. Si la première feuille d'un document(*) est moins longue que les feuilles suivantes, le scanner interprétera la 2^e feuille comme une double charge et indiquera une erreur.</p> <p>* La détection de double charge prend l'épaisseur et la longueur de la première feuille du document comme référence. Lorsque la première page du document est chargée, le scanner mémorise son épaisseur et sa longueur.</p>

Numérisation rapide	<p>Ce paramètre est disponible lorsque la résolution est réglée sur 200 ou 300 ppp.</p> <p>Lorsque 200 ppp est défini, les images sont numérisées à 200 x 100 ppp (Horizontal x Vertical) et l'image obtenue est à 200 x 200 ppp.</p> <p>Lorsque 300 ppp est défini, les images sont numérisées à 300 x 150 ppp (Horizontal x Vertical) et l'image obtenue est à 300 x 300 ppp.</p> <p>Bien que la numérisation soit plus rapide dans ces deux cas, la qualité de l'image numérisée sera légèrement inférieure.</p>
Utiliser panneau avant	<p>Permet de valider les réglages effectués sur le panneau de commande du scanner.</p>
Signature	<p>Valide le fonctionnement du module optionnel ED600 qui permet d'imprimer un cachet (texte, date et signature) au verso des documents.</p>
Feuilles de contrôle	<p>Sélectionne la manière dont les feuilles de contrôle du scanner sont détectées.</p> <p>[Aucun] Aucune feuille de contrôle du scanner n'est détectée.</p> <p>[Scanner, continuer] La feuille de contrôle du scanner est détectée et numérisée, puis la numérisation continue.</p> <p>[Sauter, continuer] La feuille de contrôle du scanner est détectée et sautée (non numérisée), puis la numérisation continue.</p> <p>[Scanner, arrêter] La feuille de contrôle du scanner est détectée et numérisée, puis la numérisation s'arrête.</p> <p>[Sauter, arrêter] La feuille de contrôle du scanner est détectée et sautée (non numérisée), puis la numérisation s'arrête.</p>
Vérifier nombre	<p>Comparez le nombre de pages comptées avant la numérisation et le nombre de pages numérisées. Si le nombre est différent, une erreur s'affiche.</p>
Nouv. fichier auto	<p>Ce réglage génère soit un nouveau fichier (ex. TIFF multipages) soit un nouveau répertoire (pour fichiers BMP, JPEG, etc.) à chaque arrêt de la numérisation en continu.</p> <p>Il permet ainsi de définir des limites de fichier dans l'application employée.</p>
Détecter format page	<p>Ce réglage sert à détecter le format de chaque document lors de la numérisation et à le numériser au même format.</p> <p>Lorsque ce réglage est sélectionné, Format page dans la boîte de dialogue Paramètres du scanner est invalidé.</p>

<Paramètres des filtres d'image>

Ces paramètres servent à définir les filtres de traitement de l'image.

Paramètre	Description
Suppr. points noirs	Supprime automatiquement les points blancs isolés (points uniques) sur les fonds noirs.
Suppr. points blancs	Supprime automatiquement les points noirs isolés (points uniques) sur les fonds blancs.
Suppr. défauts	Supprime automatiquement les parties (protubérances) sortant des contours.
Renforcer lignes fines	Rejoint automatiquement les lignes fines interrompues ou à peine visibles lors de la numérisation de documents contenant des lignes fines.
Suppr. couleurs	<p>Cliquez ici pour valider la suppression de couleurs. Cette fonction n'est valide que sur le DR-5080C, s'il n'est pas paramétré en couleur.</p> <p>[Aucun] Toutes les couleurs sont numérisées.</p> <p>[Rouge] Les parties rouges du document ne sont pas numérisées.</p> <p>[Vert] Les parties vertes du document ne sont pas numérisées.</p> <p>[Bleu] Les parties bleues du document ne sont pas numérisées.</p>
Début inactif	Si le document contient une zone où la suppression de couleur doit être désactivée, désignez le début de cette zone en indiquant la distance (mm) depuis le haut du papier.
Fin inactif	Désignez la fin de la zone où la suppression de couleur doit être désactivée en indiquant une distance (mm) depuis le haut du papier.
Expos. auto.	<p>Définit le niveau d'exposition automatique. (Cette fonction sert à ajuster la luminosité et le contraste en fonction de la teinte de la zone où l'image est sélectionnée.)</p> <p>Ce paramètre se règle sur 13 paliers à l'aide des boutons  et . Le réglage par défaut est 7.</p>
Accentuer bords	<p>Définit le niveau d'accentuation des caractères et d'adoucissement du grain des images, telles que les photographies.</p> <p>Ce paramètre se règle sur cinq paliers à l'aide des boutons  et . Le réglage par défaut est 3.</p>



MEMO

- Les paramètres [Suppression points noirs], [Suppression points blancs], [Suppression défauts] et [Renforcer lignes fines] sont validés lorsque [Mode] est réglé sur [Noir et Blanc] et [Dithering] est réglé sur [Diffusion erreurs].
- Le paramètre [Suppression couleurs] est validé lorsque [Mode] est réglé sur autre chose que [Couleur].
- [Exposition automatique] est validé lorsque [Mode] est réglé sur [Noir et blanc].
- [Accentuer bords] est validé dans tous les modes.

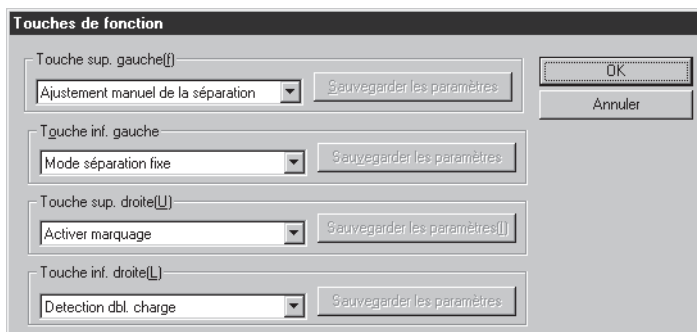
<Boutons>

Paramètres	Description
OK	Valide les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.
Annuler	Annule tous les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.
Défaut	Rétablit les réglages par défaut de tous les paramètres.
Touches fonction	Ouvre la boîte de dialogue Touches de fonction (P. 30). Dans cette boîte de dialogue, vous pouvez attribuer des fonctions particulières aux touches de fonction du scanner.
Marquage	Ouvre la boîte de dialogue Marquage/Marque (P. 32) pour la validation de la fonction de marquage ou de marque. Avec la fonction Marquage, des caractères particuliers sont imprimés sur le document numérisé, si le module de marquage optionnel est installé. Avec la fonction Marque, des caractères particuliers sont ajoutés aux images numérisées.
Gamma	Ouvre la boîte de dialogue Téléchargement gamma (P. 37). Importe et sauvegarde les données gamma de fichiers pour appliquer des couleurs et des tons.
Codes barre	Ouvre la boîte de dialogue Codes barre (P. 40). Définit les conditions de lecture des codes barre lorsque le décodeur de codes barre optionnel est installé.

Réglage des touches de fonction

Des fonctions particulières peuvent être affectées aux touches de fonction du scanner.

Les paramètres suivants se définissent dans la boîte de dialogue Touches de fonction.



Paramètre	Description
Sélection	<p>Sélectionne les fonctions à attribuer à chacune des touches de fonction depuis le menu déroulant.</p> <p>Les cinq fonctions suivantes peuvent être affectées aux touches de fonction. Pour les détails sur ces fonctions, voir “ Paramètres des touches de fonction ” (P. 60) dans le Mode d’emploi séparé du DR-5020/5080C.</p> <p>[Ajustement manuel de l’épaisseur] Permet de définir manuellement l’épaisseur de papier.</p> <p>[Détection dbl. charge] Détection automatique de double charge. Une “ double charge ” est détectée lorsqu’au moins deux pages sont chargées en même temps ou lorsque qu’une partie d’une page se superpose à une autre page.</p> <p>[Mode d’épaisseur fixe] Règle l’épaisseur de papier sur une valeur fixe.</p> <p>[Activer Marquage] Active ou désactive la fonction de marquage lorsque le module de marquage optionnel est installé.</p> <p>[Restaurer les paramètres] Affecte le rétablissement des réglages de scanner effectués dans le logiciel à une touche de fonction.</p>
Sauvegarder les paramètres	<p>Si vous cliquez sur cette option lorsque [Restaurer les paramètres] est sélectionné, les paramètres actuels du scanner seront affectés à une touche de fonction.</p>

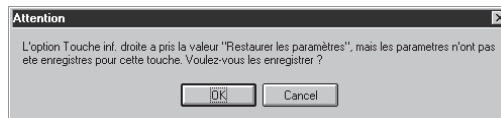
<Boutons>

Paramètre	Description
OK	Valide les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.
Annuler	Annule tous les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.



MEMO

- Le message suivant apparaît si vous sélectionnez [Restaurer les paramètres] et cliquez sur [OK] sans cliquer sur [Sauvegarder les paramètres]. Il suffit alors de cliquer sur [OK] pour sauvegarder tous les réglages de paramètres et fermer la boîte de dialogue.
Pour revenir à la boîte de dialogue Touches de fonction, cliquez sur [Cancel].
Contrôlez les réglages des touches de fonction dans cette boîte de dialogue.



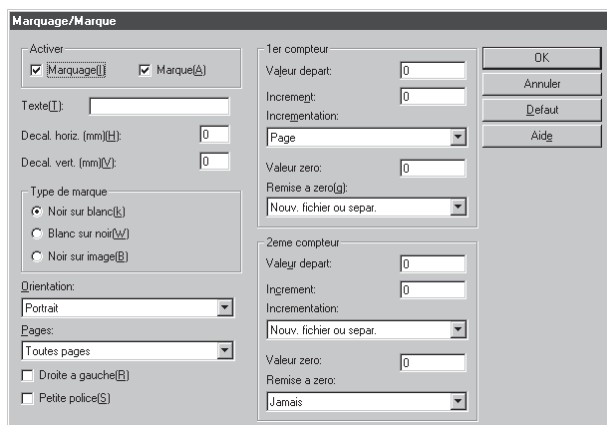
- Dans certaines applications, les réglages du scanner ne sont pas toujours rétablis correctement par les touches de fonction même s'ils sont enregistrés sur ces touches. Par exemple, si vous essayez de changer les réglages du scanner par les touches de fonction alors que la numérisation a été interrompue par une absence de papier, etc. les images numérisées ne sont pas toujours sauvegardées correctement après la numérisation. Pendant la numérisation, n'utilisez pas les touches de fonction pour changer de réglage. Attendez que la numérisation soit terminée.

Paramètres de marquage/marque

Validez les fonctions de marquage (option) et de marque pour imprimer des caractères sur le document et ajouter des caractères particuliers aux images numérisées.

Les options se définissent dans la boîte de dialogue Marquage/Marque. Pour utiliser la fonction de marquage, le module de marquage optionnel doit être installé.

Pour utiliser la fonction de marque, vous n'avez pas besoin du module de marquage.



<Activer>

Paramètre	Description
Marquage	Imprime les caractères et les compteurs spécifiés sur l'image numérisée.
Marque	Ajoute les caractères et les compteurs spécifiés à l'image numérisée.

Texte	<p>Saisissez le texte à imprimer (ajouter). Vous pouvez saisir jusqu'à 32 caractères parmi les caractères suivants :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Numériques (0 à 9) • Alphabétiques (majuscules et minuscules) • Espace (blanc) • Symboles, au choix : <p>! " # \$ % & ' () * + - . / : ; < = > ? @ [\] ^ _ { } ~ ` ,</p> <p>Les caractéristiques ci-dessus sont imprimés (ajoutés) tels qu'ils sont saisis. Outre ces caractères, les compteurs, l'heure, la date et les flèches peuvent être spécifiés comme caractères spéciaux.</p> <p><Compteur> Pour imprimer (ajouter) un compteur, utilisez le format suivant :</p> <p><C> : Imprime (ajoute) un compteur de 9 chiffres.</p> <p><C#>, (# est un nombre) : Imprime (ajoute) un compteur ayant le nombre de chiffres #.</p> <p><CC> : Imprime (ajoute) deux compteurs de 9 chiffres. Les deux compteurs sont délimités par un " ." (point).</p> <p><C#C#> (# est un nombre) : Imprime (ajoute) deux compteurs ayant tous les deux le nombre de chiffres #. Les deux compteurs sont délimités par un " ." (point).</p> <p>Le moment où le compteur est incrémenté ou décrétementé est fixé dans " 1^{er}/2^{ème} compteur " comme indiqué plus loin. (Lorsqu'un seul compteur est désigné, réglez le moment dans " 1^{er} compteur ". Lorsque deux compteurs sont désignés, réglez le premier compteur dans [2^{ème} compteur] et le compteur suivant dans [1^{er} compteur].</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">[Saisie]</th> <th style="text-align: left;">[Caractères imprimés/ajoutés]</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><C ></td> <td>000000000</td> </tr> <tr> <td><C6></td> <td>000000</td> </tr> <tr> <td><CC></td> <td><u>000000000.000000000</u></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="text-align: center;">2^{ème} compteur 1^{er} compteur</td> </tr> <tr> <td><C5C4></td> <td>00000.0000</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><Heure> Pour imprimer (ajouter) la date où le document a été numérisé, entrez l'heure. L'heure de l'horloge (codée sur 24 heures) est imprimée (ajoutée) sous forme de huit chiffres. (Exemple : 16:28:30)</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">[Saisie]</th> <th style="text-align: left;">[Caractères imprimés/ajoutés]</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><TIME></td> <td>16:28:30</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	[Saisie]	[Caractères imprimés/ajoutés]	<C >	000000000	<C6>	000000	<CC>	<u>000000000.000000000</u>		2 ^{ème} compteur 1 ^{er} compteur	<C5C4>	00000.0000	[Saisie]	[Caractères imprimés/ajoutés]	<TIME>	16:28:30
[Saisie]	[Caractères imprimés/ajoutés]																
<C >	000000000																
<C6>	000000																
<CC>	<u>000000000.000000000</u>																
	2 ^{ème} compteur 1 ^{er} compteur																
<C5C4>	00000.0000																
[Saisie]	[Caractères imprimés/ajoutés]																
<TIME>	16:28:30																

	<p><Date> Pour imprimer (ajouter) la date où le document a été numérisé, entrez une des combinaisons suivantes : “ MDY ”, “ DMY ” ou “ YMD ” de Y “ année ”, M “ mois ” et D “ jour ”. La date dans le calendrier est imprimée (ajoutée) sous la forme de dix chiffres. L’année, le mois et le jour sont délimités par une barre oblique “ / ”. (Exemple : 2001/3/4 (4 mars 2001))</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>[Saisie]</td> <td>[Caractères imprimés/ajoutés]</td> </tr> <tr> <td><YMD></td> <td>2001/03/04</td> </tr> </table> <p><Flèche> Pour imprimer (ajouter) une flèche, procédez comme suit :</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>[Saisie]</td> <td>[Caractères affichés/ajoutés]</td> </tr> <tr> <td><U></td> <td>↑</td> </tr> <tr> <td><D></td> <td>↓</td> </tr> <tr> <td><L></td> <td>←</td> </tr> <tr> <td><R></td> <td>→</td> </tr> </table> <p>(*) Pour plus de précision, 32 caractères au maximum peuvent être imprimés (ajoutés). Lorsqu’un compteur, une date ou une heure est enregistré, le nombre de caractères imprimés (ajoutés) dépassent 32 même si le nombre de caractères saisis est inférieur à 32 caractères. Dans ce cas, un message d’erreur apparaît. Dans l’exemple ci-dessous, 32 caractères sont imprimés/ajoutés bien que 25 caractères seulement aient été saisis.</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>[Saisie]</td> <td>[Caractères imprimés/ajoutés]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CANON<YMD><TIME><C6></td> <td>CANON 2001/03/04 16:28:30 000001</td> </tr> </table>	[Saisie]	[Caractères imprimés/ajoutés]	<YMD>	2001/03/04	[Saisie]	[Caractères affichés/ajoutés]	<U>	↑	<D>	↓	<L>	←	<R>	→	[Saisie]	[Caractères imprimés/ajoutés]	CANON<YMD><TIME><C6>	CANON 2001/03/04 16:28:30 000001
[Saisie]	[Caractères imprimés/ajoutés]																		
<YMD>	2001/03/04																		
[Saisie]	[Caractères affichés/ajoutés]																		
<U>	↑																		
<D>	↓																		
<L>	←																		
<R>	→																		
[Saisie]	[Caractères imprimés/ajoutés]																		
CANON<YMD><TIME><C6>	CANON 2001/03/04 16:28:30 000001																		
<p>Décal. horiz.</p>	<p>Indiquez la position où les caractères seront ajoutés par une distance en mm, depuis le côté gauche de l’entrée du papier, dans le sens du chargement du document.</p>																		
<p>Décal. vert.</p>	<p>Indiquez la position des caractères à imprimer/ajouter par une distance en mm depuis le haut du document.</p>																		

<Paramètres du type de marque>

Paramètre	Description
Noir sur blanc	Imprime (ajoute) des caractères noirs sur un fond blanc. DR-5020/5080C
Blanc sur noir	Imprime (ajoute) des caractères blancs sur un fond noir. DR-5020/5080C
Noir sur image	Imprime (ajoute) des caractères noirs sur l'image numérisée. DR-5020/5080C

<Autres paramètres>

Paramètre	Description
Orientation	Sélectionne la rotation des caractères à imprimer (ajouter). Sélectionnez une des options suivantes : [Portrait] (réglage par défaut) Sans rotation [Paysage] Rotation de 90 degrés dans le sens horaire [180 degrés] Rotation de 180 degrés [270 degrés] Rotation de 270 degrés dans le sens horaire
Pages	Sélectionne la page sur laquelle les caractères particuliers seront imprimés ou ajoutés. [Toutes pages] Toutes les pages [Page après séparateur] La page après le séparateur de fichier
Gauche à droite	Imprime (ajoute) des caractères de gauche à droite.
Petite police	Imprime (ajoute) les caractères d'une petite police (8 x 7 points). (La taille habituelle est de 12 x 12 points.) Taille habituelle CANON canon Petite police CANON canon

<Paramètres des 1^{er} et 2^{ème} compteurs>

Paramètre	Description
Valeur départ	Définit la valeur de départ du compteur. Le réglage par défaut de ce paramètre est 0.
Incrément	Définit l'incrément du compteur. Le réglage par défaut est 0 (sans changement).
Incrémentation	Sélectionne le moment de l'incrément du compteur parmi les options suivantes : [Nouv. fichier] Lorsqu'un nouveau fichier est atteint. [Séparateur] Lorsqu'un séparateur est inséré. [Nouv. fichier ou séparateur] Lorsqu'un nouveau fichier est atteint ou un séparateur est inséré. [Page] Lorsqu'une page du document est chargée. [Jamais] Pas d'incrément du compteur.
Valeur zero	Définit la première valeur après la remise à zéro du compteur. Le réglage par défaut est 0.
Remise à zero	Sélectionne le moment de remise à zéro du compteur parmi les options suivantes : [Nouv. fichier] Lorsqu'un nouveau fichier est atteint. [Séparateur] Lorsqu'un séparateur est inséré. [Nouv. fichier ou séparateur] Lorsqu'un nouveau fichier est atteint ou un séparateur est inséré. [Page] Lorsqu'une page du document est chargée. [Jamais] Pas de remise à zéro.

<Boutons>

Paramètre	Description
OK	Valide les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.
Annuler	Annule tous les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.
Défaut	Rétablit les réglages par défaut de tous les paramètres.
Aide	Affiche la définition de [Texte].

Réglage de la courbe gamma

Cette option sert à définir la courbe gamma.



MEMO

Le réglage de la courbe gamma emploie les données de courbe gamma pré-réglées par l'utilisateur pour le réglage des valeurs de sortie (provenant de l'ordinateur) en fonction des valeurs entrées pour les 256 niveaux de luminosité de l'image numérisée.

Les courbes gamma sont réglées individuellement pour le gris (noir et blanc), le rouge, le vert et le bleu.

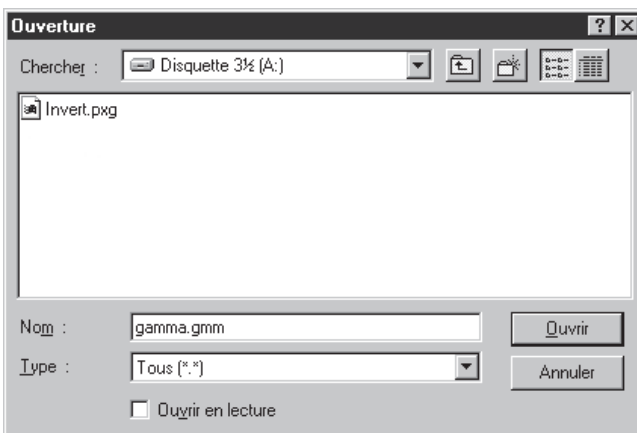
La courbe gamma réglée ici n'est pas validée tant que [Télécharger] n'est pas coché dans la boîte de dialogue Téléchargement gamma.

1 Préparez les données de courbe gamma correspondant à la courbe gamma souhaitée. (Voir " Préparation des données de la courbe gamma " à la page 38.)

2 Sélectionnez la couleur pour laquelle la courbe gamma doit être réglée.



3 Cliquez sur [Télécharger...] et sélectionnez les données de courbe gamma préparées.



4 Cliquez sur [Ouvrir]. La courbe gamma est validée et la boîte de dialogue Autres options réapparaît.

5 Pour régler la courbe gamma pour d'autres couleurs, répétez les étapes 1 à 4.

◆ Préparation des données de la courbe gamma

Les données de la courbe gamma sont stockées dans un fichier de texte (*.pxg) de 258 lignes. Ce fichier décrit les valeurs de sortie pour chacun des 256 niveaux des valeurs entrées.

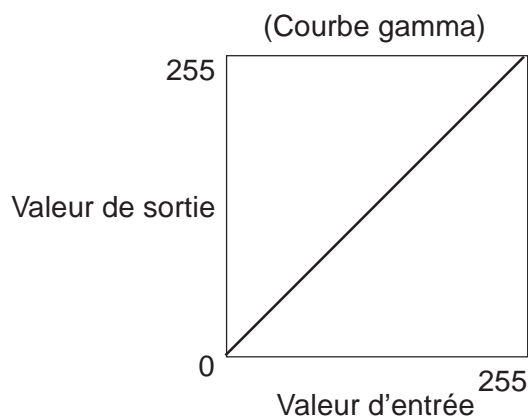
Veillez à écrire un commentaire sur la première ligne de ce fichier et " 256 " sur la seconde ligne de ce fichier. A partir de la troisième ligne, les lignes sont réservées à l'entrée de la valeur de sortie pour chaque valeur entrée. Réglez " 0 ", " 1 ", " 2 ", etc. à partir de la troisième ligne et " 255 " pour la valeur entrée sur la 258^e ligne. La saisie de petites valeurs pour la courbe de données gamma correspond à une reproduction sombre de l'image et la saisie de grandes valeurs correspond à une reproduction claire de l'image.

◆ Exemple

Normalement, les courbes gamma préparées sont inclinées vers la droite. Toutefois, une courbe gamma inclinée vers la gauche peut être préparée en inversant toutes les valeurs de sortie. Dans ce cas, l'image de sortie sera aussi inversée.

Données de courbe gamma

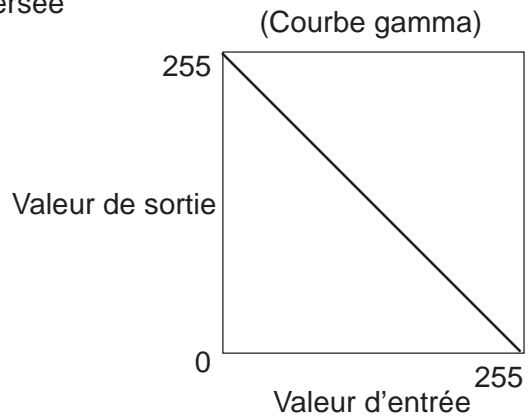
1^{ère} ligne : courbe gamma
 2^e ligne : 256
 3^e ligne : 0
 4^e ligne : 1
 5^e ligne : 2
 |
 253^e ligne : 250
 254^e ligne : 251
 255^e ligne : 252
 256^e ligne : 253
 257^e ligne : 254
 258^e ligne : 255



Données de courbe gamma (inversée)

1^{ère} ligne : courbe gamma linéaire inversée2^e ligne : 2563^e ligne : 2554^e ligne : 2545^e ligne : 253

|

253^e ligne : 5254^e ligne : 4255^e ligne : 3256^e ligne : 2257^e ligne : 1258^e ligne : 0

MEMO

Les informations sur les données de courbe gamma sont conservées dans le scanner et ne sont pas supprimées même à la mise hors tension du scanner. Les informations de courbe gamma ne changent pas tant que d'autres données de courbe gamma ne sont pas téléchargées.

Paramètres du décodeur de codes barre

Ces paramètres définissent les conditions de fonctionnement du décodeur de codes barre. Ces paramètres ne sont disponibles que lorsque le décodeur de codes barre est installé. Le logiciel doit aussi supporter le décodeur de codes barre.

Les paramètres suivants se définissent dans la boîte de dialogue Codes barre.



- Si un ou deux types de codes barre sont alignés horizontalement, une erreur de reconnaissance peut se produire. Sélectionnez un seul type de code barre dans le réglage de zone de code barre.
- Les codes barre avec codes marque ne peuvent pas être détectés en même temps que les codes barre sans codes marque. Lors de la numérisation d'originaux contenant des codes barre avec codes marque et des codes barre sans codes marque, n'oubliez pas de désigner la zone à détecter dans le réglage de zone de code barre avant la numérisation.
- Lors de la numérisation à 400 ppp et en duplex, seuls les codes barre qui se trouvent dans la largeur A4 sont détectés.
- Pendant la numérisation d'originaux contenant deux codes barre ou plus, définissez la zone qui doit être détectée dans le réglage de zone des code barre si vous voulez détecter un type particulier de code barre seulement.
Lorsque la zone est définie, les codes barre hors de la zone numérisée sont aussi détectés.
- Si vous ne connaissez pas le type du code barre, cochez tous les types de codes barre avant la numérisation de l'original pour que tous les codes soient automatiquement détectés. La somme de contrôle ne sera pas numérisée.

<Paramètres>

Paramètre	Description
Activer détection codes barre	Cliquez ici pour activer la lecture de codes barre. Cochez ce paramètre pour pouvoir régler les paramètres suivants.
Côté recherche	Sélectionne la face du document sur laquelle les codes barre doivent être lus. [Avant] Lit les codes barre sur la face avant. [Arrière] Lit les codes barre sur la face arrière.
Zone de recherche	Cochez [Activer] et définissez la zone de détection pour numériser une zone particulière du document. Si [Activer] n'est pas coché, toute la surface du document sera numérisée. Spécifiez la zone numérisée avec les coordonnées de décalage X et Y. Le point de référence de la détection dans le sens X (horizontal) est le bord gauche de l'entrée du papier pour la face avant par rapport au sens de chargement du papier et le bord droit de l'entrée du papier pour la face arrière. Indiquez la distance du haut du papier comme référence dans le sens Y (vertical). [Début décal. X] Indiquez la position où la numérisation doit commencer dans le sens horizontal. [Fin décal. X] Indiquez la position où la numérisation doit finir dans le sens horizontal. [Début décal. Y] Indiquez la position où la numérisation doit commencer dans le sens vertical. [Fin décal. Y] Indiquez la position où la numérisation doit finir dans le sens vertical.
Codes barres/ page	Désigne le nombre de codes barre (1 à 4) à lire par page.

<Paramètres des Codes barre EAN>

Paramètre	Description
Activer	Cliquez ici pour lire des codes barre EAN.
Marque	Numérise les codes marque.

<Paramètres des Codes barre code 39>

Paramètre	Description
Activer	Cliquez ici pour lire des codes barre code 39.
Somme de contrôle	Numérise la somme de contrôle.
Somme de contrôle de sortie	Vous pouvez choisir d'obtenir ou non la somme de contrôle lorsque [Somme de contrôle] est coché. Pour obtenir la somme de contrôle, cochez ce paramètre.
Sortie ST/SP	Fournit les codes START/STOP.

<Paramètres des Codes barre Codabar>

Paramètre	Description
Activer	Cliquez ici pour lire les codes barre Codabar.
Somme de contrôle	Numérise la somme de contrôle.
Somme de contrôle de sortie	Vous pouvez choisir d'obtenir ou non la somme de contrôle lorsque [Somme de contrôle] est coché. Pour obtenir la somme de contrôle, cochez ce paramètre.
Sortie ST/SP	Fournit les codes START/STOP.
Méthode	Désigne la méthode de calcul de la somme de contrôle. Spécifiez Modulus 16 ou 7DR.

<Paramètres des Codes barre Code 128>

Paramètre	Description
Activer	Cliquez ici pour lire les codes barre Code 128.

<Paramètres des Codes barre ITF>

Paramètre	Description
Activer	Cochez ce paramètre lors de la numérisation de codes ITF (y compris industriel 2 de 5).
Somme de contrôle	Numérise la somme de contrôle.
Somme de contrôle de sortie	Vous pouvez choisir d'obtenir ou non la somme de contrôle lorsque [Somme de contrôle] est coché. Pour obtenir la somme de contrôle, cochez ce paramètre.

<Paramètres des Codes barre UPC>

Paramètre	Description
Activer	Cliquez ici pour lire les codes barre UPC.
Marque	Détecte les codes marque.
UPC-A	Somme de contrôle : Numérise la somme de contrôle. Sortie en-tête : Fournit le code d'en-tête.
UPC-E	Somme de contrôle : Numérise la somme de contrôle. Sortie en-tête : Fournit le code d'en-tête.

<Boutons>

Paramètre	Description
OK	Valide les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.
Annuler	Annule tous les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.
Défaut	Rétablit les réglages par défaut de tous les paramètres.

Chapitre 4

Utilisation du logiciel TWAIN

Ce chapitre décrit les opérations lorsque le logiciel TWAIN fonctionne avec une application compatible TWAIN.

4.1 Sélection du logiciel TWAIN	46
4.2 Démarrage du logiciel TWAIN	47
4.3 Réglage des conditions de numérisation	48
Paramètres de base	49
Fonctions avancées	56

4.1

Sélection du logiciel TWAIN

Sélectionnez le logiciel TWAIN que vous voulez utiliser.
Effectuez cette opération une seule fois après avoir installé le logiciel TWAIN.
Cette opération n'aura pas besoin d'être répétée à moins que vous ne raccordez un autre scanner que le DR-5020/5080C.



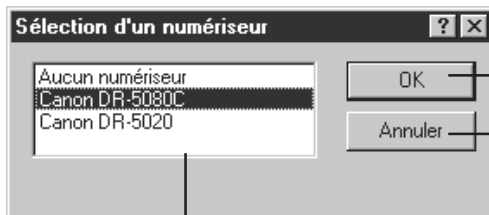
MEMO

Les boîtes de dialogue et les menus qui apparaissent dans ce manuel ne servent qu'à titre d'exemples. Selon l'application employée, leur contenu pourra varier. Certaines applications ne supporteront pas toutes les fonctions décrites dans ce manuel. Pour les détails, reportez-vous au manuel de l'application que vous utilisez.

1 Démarrez l'application compatible TWAIN.

2 Affichez l'écran de sélection du scanner.

L'écran de sélection du scanner dépend de l'application employée.



Sélection du scanner

Fermeture de la boîte de dialogue sans sélection du scanner

Les scanners disponibles sont affichés ici.

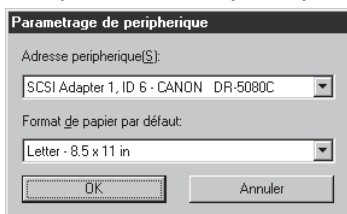


MEMO

Si " Canon DR-5020 et DR-5080C " ne figure pas dans la liste, installez le logiciel.

3 Cliquez sur **Canon DR-5020** ou **Canon DR-5080C** dans la liste, puis cliquez sur [OK].

⇒ Après l'installation du pilote TWAIN, l'écran Set Device s'affiche seulement la première fois que le pilote TWAIN est mis en marche.



4 Sélectionnez [Format de papier par défaut] et cliquez sur [OK].

⇒ Le format du papier sélectionné est le format par défaut.

4.2 Démarrage du logiciel TWAIN

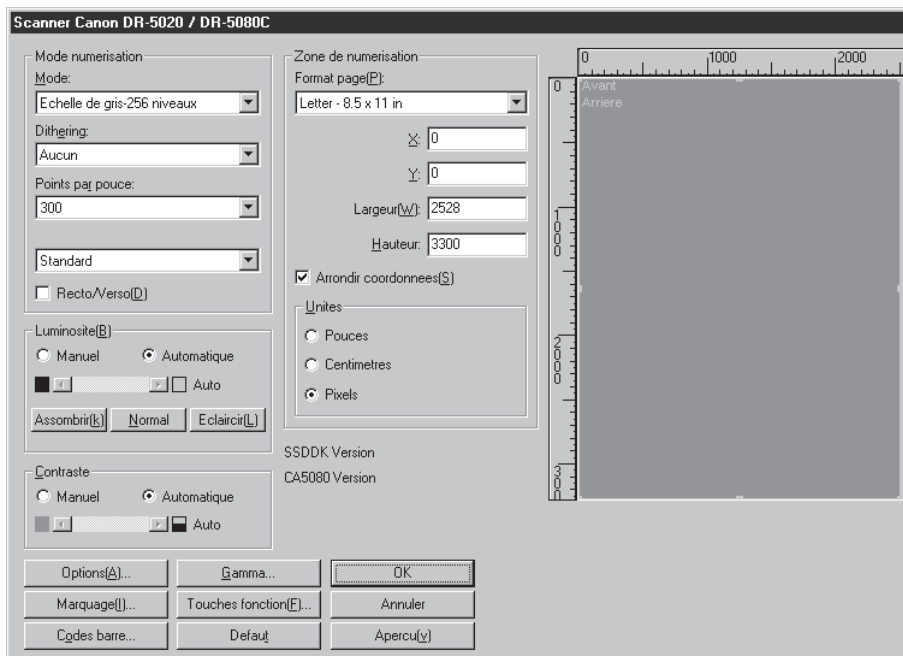
Démarrez le logiciel TWAIN depuis l'application compatible TWAIN.

1 Démarrez l'application compatible TWAIN.

2 Démarrez le logiciel TWAIN depuis le menu de démarrage de la numérisation “ Accès depuis le périphérique TWAIN ”.

Le menu de démarrage de la numérisation “ Accès depuis le périphérique TWAIN ” varie selon l'application utilisée. Pour les détails, reportez-vous au mode d'emploi de l'application.

➡ La boîte de dialogue Scanner Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C s'affiche.



4.3

Réglage des conditions de numérisation

Les menus de la boîte de dialogue Scanner Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C sont organisés de la façon suivante.
Affichez les boîtes de dialogue dont vous avez besoin pour la fonction que vous voulez utiliser et réglez les paramètres nécessaires.
Pour les détails sur les paramètres qui apparaissent dans chaque boîte de dialogue, reportez-vous à la page de référence.

Boîte de dialogue Scanner Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C

The screenshot shows the 'Scanner Canon DR-5020 / DR-5080C' dialog box. It is divided into several sections: 'Mode numérisation' (with options for grayscale, dithering, and resolution), 'Zone de numérisation' (with page format, crop marks, and dimensions), 'Luminosité' (with manual/automatic sliders and buttons), and 'Contraste' (with manual/automatic sliders and buttons). At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Options(A)...', 'Gamma...', 'OK', 'Marquage(I)...', 'Touches fonction(F)...', 'Annuler', 'Codes barre...', 'Défaut', and 'Aperçu(y)'. Five callout lines point from these buttons to a list of sub-dialogs on the right: 'Options(A)...' points to 'Boîte de dialogue Fonctions avancées' (→ P. 56); 'Marquage(I)...' points to 'Boîte de dialogue Marquage/Marque' (→ P. 32); 'Codes barre...' points to 'Boîte de dialogue Codes barre' (→ P. 40); 'Touches fonction(F)...' points to 'Boîte de dialogue Téléchargement gamma' (→ P. 37); and 'Gamma...' points to 'Boîte de dialogue Touches de fonction' (→ P. 30).

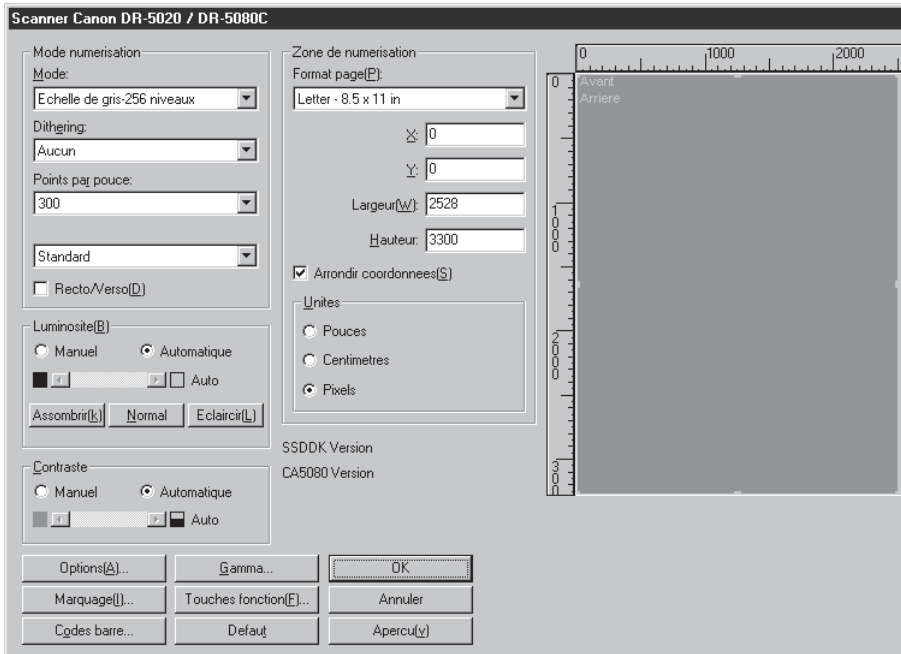


Pour de plus amples informations sur les touches de fonction, le téléchargement gamma, les codes barre et les marquage/marque, reportez-vous au chapitre 3 "Utilisation du logiciel TWAIN."

Paramètres de base

Ces paramètres définissent les conditions de base dans lesquelles s'effectue la numérisation.

Ce réglage s'effectue dans la boîte de dialogue Scanner Canon 5020/DR-5080C.



<Réglage du mode de numérisation>



MEMO

Les modes de numérisation pouvant être utilisés sont parfois restreints et la numérisation n'est pas toujours possible lorsque certains réglages sont effectués. Pour les détails, voir les " Tableaux des modes de numérisation du DR-5020/5080C " dans le Mode d'emploi du DR-5020/5080C (P. 88)

Paramètre	Description
Mode	<p>Définit la manière dont l'image doit être numérisée. Seule la numérisation en noir et blanc est disponible sur le DR-5020.</p> <p>[Noir et Blanc] L'image est entièrement numérisée en noir et blanc sans nuances de gris.</p> <p>[16, 256-Niveau de gris] Sélectionnez ce mode pour numériser des photographies et des documents en demi-tons avec nuances de gris. Le fichier sera d'autant plus important que le nombre de nuances de gris est élevé.</p> <p>[24-Bit Couleur] Sélectionnez ce paramètre pour numériser des originaux, tels que des photographies.</p> <p>[Couleur-3, 6, 12 bits -> 4, 8-bits Palette] La palette de 4 bits permet de convertir les données de couleurs 3 bits en 16 couleurs et la palette de 8 bits permet de convertir les données de couleurs 6 et 12 bits en 256 couleurs.</p>
Dithering	<p>Valide ou invalide le dithering.</p> <p>[Aucun] Pas de dithering. Ce paramètre sert à numériser du texte ou des dessins sans couleurs ni niveaux de gris.</p> <p>[Diffusion erreurs] Applique la diffusion d'erreurs pour simuler les gris des demi-tons. Ce paramètre sert à numériser les documents en demi-tons, tels que les photographies.</p>
Points par pouce	<p>Sert à définir la résolution, à laquelle le document sera numérisé. Vous avez le choix entre 13 résolutions : 100, 200, 210, 220, 230, 240, 250 , 260, 270, 280, 290, 300 et 400.</p>
Options de numérisation	<p>Sélectionnez le mode de numérisation.</p> <p>[Standard] Dans ce mode, l'original est numérisé et l'original suivant est numérisé lorsque toutes les données de la première image numérisée sont envoyées à l'ordinateur.</p> <p>[Numérisation anticipée] Dans ce mode, l'original est numérisé et l'original suivant est numérisé avant que les données de la première image numérisée soient envoyées à l'ordinateur.</p> <p>[1 seule page] Dans ce mode, une seule page est numérisée.</p>
Recto/Verso	<p>Cochez ce paramètre pour numériser les deux faces de la page.</p>

<Luminosité>

Paramètre	Description
Manuel	Permet de définir manuellement la luminosité à laquelle l'image sera numérisée. La luminosité peut se régler de 1 à 255 par un clic sur les boutons ◀ et ▶.
Automatique	La luminosité se règle automatiquement seulement si [Mode] a été réglé sur [Noir et Blanc] et [Dithering] sur [Aucun]. Lorsque [Mode] est réglé sur un autre paramètre et la luminosité est réglée sur [Automatique], le réglage par défaut de la luminosité est rétabli.
Assombrir	Règle la luminosité de l'ensemble de l'image sur la valeur 64 pour assombrir l'image.
Normal	Règle la luminosité de l'ensemble de l'image sur la valeur 128, la luminosité standard.
Eclaircir	Règle la luminosité de l'ensemble de l'image sur 192 pour éclaircir l'image.

<Contraste>

Paramètre	Description
Manuel	Permet d'ajuster manuellement le contraste. Le contraste peut se régler de 1 à 13. Cliquez sur les boutons ◀ et ▶ pour ajuster le contraste. Le contraste augmente lorsque la valeur augmente et il diminue lorsque la valeur diminue.
Automatique	Réglage du contraste par défaut.



MEMO

- Le réglage de contraste est désactivé lorsque le mode set "Blanc et Noir" est sélectionné.
- Sur le DR-5020, la case Contraste est grise lorsque le mode "Blanc et Noir" est sélectionné.

<Réglage de la zone numérisée>

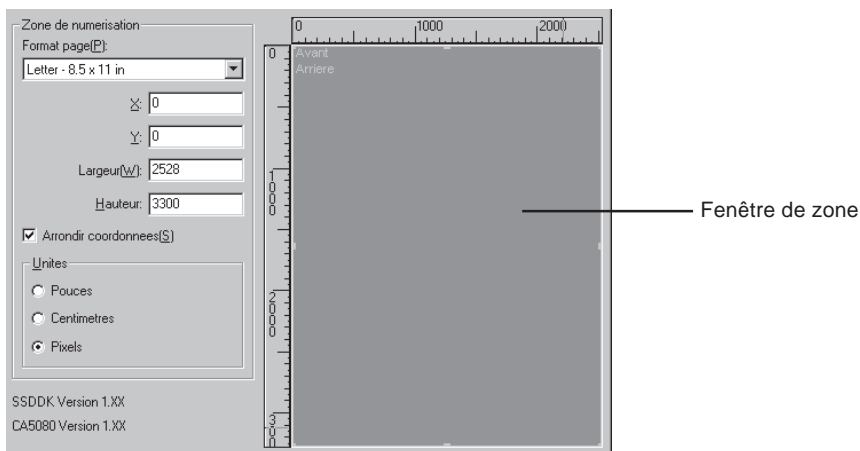
Ce réglage permet de sélectionner et de numériser une partie du document en plus du format défini dans [Format page].

Vous pouvez définir la zone numérisée pour la face avant et la face arrière du document. Notez, toutefois, que la taille et la position de la zone numérisée sur les faces avant et arrière seront identiques.

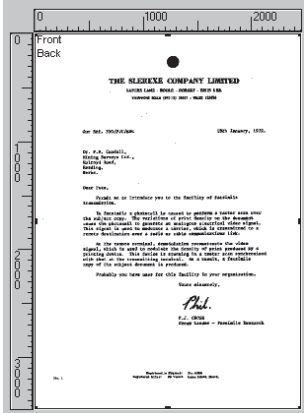
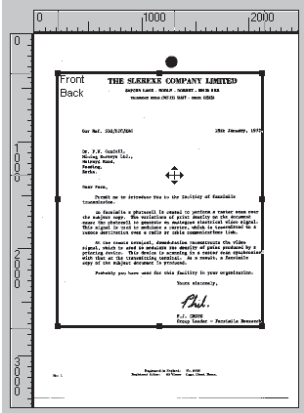
La zone peut être définie de deux façons : en indiquant les coordonnées ou d'autres valeurs numériques ou en désignant la zone directement sur la fenêtre.



Si vous avez sélectionné "Détecter format page" dans la boîte de dialogue "Fonctions avancées - Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C" (p. 58), les réglages effectués pour "Format page" et pour la zone numérisée seront ignorés.



Paramètre	Description
Format page	<p>Permet de sélectionner un format de papier pour le document à numériser.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Letter - 8,5 x 14 in Letter [Paysage] – 11 x 8.5 in Legal – 8.5 x 14 in Double Letter – 11 x 17 in A3 – 297 x 420 mm A4 – 210 x 297 mm A4 [Paysage] – 297 x 210 mm A5 – 148 x 210 mm A5 [Paysage] – 210 x 148 mm A6 – 105 x 148 mm A6 [Paysage] 148 x 105 mm B4 (ISO) – 250 x 353 mm B4 (JIS) – 257 x 364 mm B5 (ISO) – 176 x 250 mm B5 (ISO) [Paysage] – 176 x 250 mm B5 (JIS) – 182 x 257 mm B5 (JIS) [Paysage] – 182 x 257 mm B6 (ISO) – 125 x 176 mm B6 (ISO) [Paysage] – 176 x 125 mm B6 (JIS) – 128 x 182 mm B6 (JIS) [Paysage] – 182 x 128 mm Maximum scanner (295 x 432 mm) <p>Si le document numérisé est plus grand que le format défini, ses bords seront tronqués. Par contre, si le document numérisé est plus petit que la zone définie, une marge noire apparaîtra tout autour du document.</p> <p>Si vous avez sélectionné Détecter format page dans la boîte de dialogue Fonctions avancées - Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C, ce réglage sera ignoré.</p>
Position de l'axe	<p>X : Indiquez la coordonnée X du coin supérieur gauche de la zone numérisée.</p> <p>Y : Indiquez la coordonnée Y du coin supérieur gauche de la zone numérisée.</p> <p>Largeur : Indiquez la largeur de la zone numérisée.</p> <p>Hauteur : Indiquez la hauteur de la zone numérisée.</p> <p>Les mêmes positions des coordonnées doivent être réglées pour les faces avant et arrière.</p>

<p>Arrondir coordonnées</p>	<p>Permet d'ajuster automatiquement la position de l'axe dans la zone numérisée à une valeur arrondie. Si les pouces ont été définis comme unité, la valeur sera un multiple de 1/8" ; si les centimètres ont été définis, la valeur sera un multiple de 0,1 cm et si les pixels ont été définis, la valeur sera un multiple de huit pixels.</p>
<p>Texte</p>	<p>Définit l'unité employée pour l'indication du format de la zone numérisée. Vous avez le choix entre les pouces, les centimètres et les pixels.</p>
<p>(Fenêtre de zone)</p>	<p>La zone numérisée pour le format de page sélectionné apparaît dans la fenêtre de zone. La taille de la fenêtre de zone varie en fonction du réglage du format de page. Ajustez la taille de la zone numérisée en fonction de l'image de prévisualisation qui apparaît dans la fenêtre lorsque vous effectuez une prénumérisation (P. 55) du document. Vous pouvez ajuster la zone numérisée en tirant sur les manettes ■ de la zone encadrée. Vous pouvez aussi déplacer toute la zone numérisée sur la fenêtre. La zone numérisée spécifiée s'applique à la face avant et à la face arrière du document.</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;">   </div>

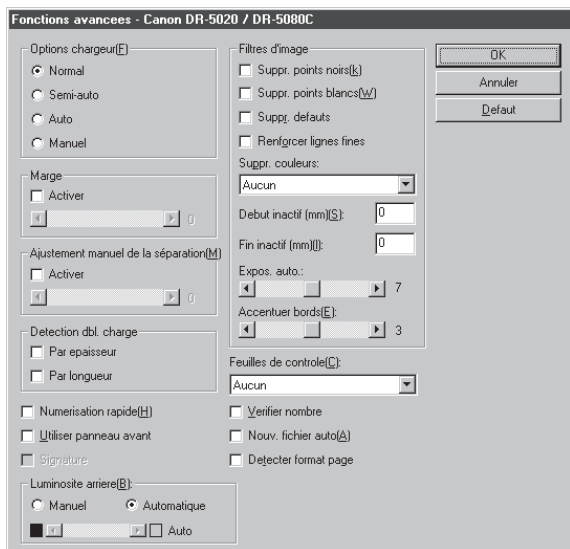
<Boutons>

Paramètre	Description
Options	Ouvre la boîte de dialogue Fonctions avancées - Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C (P. 56) qui permet de définir le filtre, la vitesse, la détection du format de la page, la détection des feuilles de contrôle ainsi que d'autres détails.
Marquage	Ouvre la boîte de dialogue Marquage/Marque (P. 32). Désigne la fonction de marquage ou la fonction de marque. La fonction Marquage imprime des caractères particuliers sur le document numérisé lorsque le module de marquage optionnel est installé. La fonction Marque ajoute des caractères particuliers aux images numérisées.
Codes barre	Ouvre la boîte de dialogue Codes barre (P. 40). Définit les conditions de lecture des codes barre lorsque le décodeur de codes barre optionnel est installé.
Gamma	Ouvre la boîte de dialogue Téléchargement gamma (P. 37). Télécharge et sauvegarde les données gamma des fichiers pour appliquer des couleurs et des teintes.
Touches fonction	Ouvre la boîte de dialogue Touches de fonction (P. 30) pour l'affectation de certaines fonctions aux touches de fonction du scanner.
Défaut	Rétablit les réglages par défaut de tous les paramètres.
OK	Active la numérisation avec les réglages actuels.
Annulation	Invalide les réglages actuels et annule la numérisation.
Bouton Aperçu	Numérise une page du document et affiche une image de prévisualisation dans la fenêtre de zone. <div> </div>





Fonctions avancées

Vous pouvez définir de manière plus précise les conditions dans lesquelles s'effectuera la numérisation.

Les paramètres suivants se définissent dans la boîte de dialogue "Fonctions avancées - Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C".



Paramètre	Description
Options chargeur	<p>Sélectionne la méthode de chargement.</p> <p>Normal : Le document est chargé (numérisé) lorsque vous le posez et la commande de numérisation a été validée dans l'application.</p> <p>Semi-auto : Le document est chargé (numérisé) lorsque la commande de numérisation est validée dans l'application et lorsque vous posez le document puis appuyez sur la touche de marche.</p> <p>Auto : Le document est chargé (numérisé) automatiquement lorsque vous le posez.</p> <p>Manual : Le document est chargé manuellement page par page après que la commande de numérisation a été validée dans l'application. Utilisez cette option pour numériser des pages particulièrement épaisses ou fines.</p> <p>L'option chargeur sur le panneau de commande du scanner change automatiquement même si vous n'appuyez pas sur le bouton [OK] pour valider les réglages effectués ici.</p>

Marge	<p>Ajuste les marges (supérieure, inférieure, gauche et droite) de la zone numérisée.</p> <p>Pour ajuster les marges, cliquez sur Activer et utilisez les boutons  et .</p> <p>Définissez les marges entre -10 (réduction de la zone numérisée de 10 mm) et +10 (agrandissement de la zone numérisée de 10 mm).</p> <p>Par exemple, si vous voulez agrandir légèrement la zone numérisée pour que les bords du document ne soient pas tronqués, ajustez dans le sens de +. Sinon, si vous voulez réduire légèrement la zone numérisée pour ne pas avoir de cadre noir autour de l'image numérisée, ajustez dans le sens de -.</p>
Ajustement manuel de l'épaisseur	<p>Permet de définir manuellement l'épaisseur de papier lorsqu'elle ne l'est pas automatiquement.</p> <p>Cliquez sur Activer et utilisez les boutons  et  pour ajuster l'épaisseur.</p> <p>L'épaisseur se définit dans la plage de 1 (le plus fin) à 13 (le plus épais). Utilisez ce paramètre pour ajuster manuellement l'épaisseur de papier lors de la numérisation d'originaux à revêtement spécial et de documents dont l'épaisseur ne peut pas être ajustée automatiquement, ou bien lorsque plusieurs feuilles sont fréquemment chargées dans le mode de réglage automatique de l'épaisseur de papier.</p>
Détection dbl. charge	<p>Sélectionnez la méthode de détection de double charge. Une " double charge " est détectée lorsqu'au moins deux feuilles du document sont chargées en même temps ou lorsqu'une partie d'une feuille se superpose à une autre feuille, lors de la numérisation continue des feuilles d'un document.</p> <p>[Par épaisseur] Sert à détecter la double charge de papier en fonction de l'épaisseur du papier. Si la première feuille d'un document(*) est moins épaisse que les feuilles suivantes, le scanner l'interprétera comme une double charge et indiquera une erreur.</p> <p>[Par longueur] Sert à détecter une double charge en fonction de la longueur du papier. Si la première feuille d'un document(*) est moins longue que les feuilles suivantes, le scanner l'interprétera comme une double charge et indiquera une erreur.</p> <p>* La détection de double charge utilise l'épaisseur et la longueur de la première feuille du document comme référence. Lorsque la première page du document est chargée, le scanner mémorise son épaisseur et sa longueur.</p>

Numérisation rapide	<p>Ce paramètre est disponible lorsque la résolution est réglée sur 200 ou 300 ppp.</p> <p>Lorsque 200 ppp est défini, les images sont numérisées à 200 x 100 ppp (Horizontal x Vertical) et l'image obtenue est à 200 x 200 ppp.</p> <p>Lorsque 300 ppp est défini, les images sont numérisées à 300 x 150 ppp (Horizontal x Vertical) et l'image obtenue est à 300 x 300 ppp.</p> <p>Bien que la numérisation soit plus rapide dans ces deux cas, la qualité de l'image numérisée sera légèrement inférieure.</p>
Utiliser panneau avant	<p>Permet de valider les réglages effectués sur le panneau de commande du scanner.</p>
Signature	<p>Valide le fonctionnement du module optionnel ED600 qui permet d'imprimer un cachet (texte, date et signature) au verso des documents.</p>
Feuilles de contrôle	<p>Sélectionne la manière dont les feuilles de contrôle du scanner sont détectées.</p> <p>[Aucun] Aucune feuille de contrôle du scanner n'est détectée.</p> <p>[Scanner, continuer] La feuille de contrôle du scanner est détectée et numérisée, puis la numérisation continue.</p> <p>[Sauter, continuer] La feuille de contrôle du scanner est détectée et sautée (non numérisée), puis la numérisation continue.</p> <p>[Scanner, arrêter] La feuille de contrôle du scanner est détectée et numérisée, puis la numérisation s'arrête.</p> <p>[Sauter, arrêter] La feuille de contrôle du scanner est détectée et sautée (non numérisée), puis la numérisation s'arrête.</p>
Vérifier nombre	<p>Comparez le nombre de pages comptées avant la numérisation et le nombre de pages numérisées. Si le nombre est différent, une erreur s'affiche.</p>
Nouv. fichier auto	<p>Ce réglage génère soit un nouveau fichier (ex. TIFF multipages) soit un nouveau répertoire (pour fichiers BMP, JPEG, etc.) à chaque arrêt de la numérisation en continu.</p> <p>Il permet ainsi de définir des limites de fichier dans l'application employée.</p>
Détecter format page	<p>Ce réglage sert à détecter le format de chaque document lors de la numérisation et à le numériser au même format.</p> <p>Lorsque ce réglage est sélectionné, Format page dans la boîte de dialogue Scanner Canon DR-5020/5080C est invalidé.</p>



<Réglage de la luminosité arrière>

Paramètre	Description
Manuel	Permet de régler la luminosité à laquelle le document sera numérisé. La luminosité peut être réglée de 1 à 255. Cliquez sur les boutons ◀ et ▶ pour ajuster la luminosité.
Automatique	La luminosité se règle automatiquement seulement lorsque [Mode] est réglé sur [Noir et Blanc] et [Dithering] sur [Aucun]. La luminosité par défaut est valide lorsque [Mode] est réglé sur un autre réglage que [Noir et Blanc] et la luminosité est réglée sur [Auto].

<Paramètres des filtres d'image>

Ces paramètres servent à définir les filtres de traitement de l'image.

Paramètre	Description
Suppr. points noirs	Supprime automatiquement les points noirs isolés (points seuls) sur fond noir.
Suppr. points blancs	Supprime automatiquement les points blancs isolés (points seuls) sur fond blanc.
Suppr. défauts	Supprime automatiquement les parties (protubérances) sortant des contours.
Renforcer lignes fines	Rejoint automatiquement les lignes interrompues ou à peine visibles lors de la numérisation d'un document contenant des lignes fines.
Suppr. couleurs	Cliquez sur ce bouton pour valider la suppression de couleurs. Cette fonction n'est valide que sur le DR-5080C. [Aucun] Toutes les couleurs sont numérisées. [Rouge] Les parties rouges du document ne sont pas numérisées. [Vert] Les parties vertes du document ne sont pas numérisées. [Bleu] Les parties bleues du document ne sont pas numérisées.
Début inactif	Si le document contient une zone où la suppression de couleur doit être désactivée, désignez le début de cette zone en indiquant la distance (mm) depuis le haut du papier.
Fin inactif	Désignez la fin de la zone où la suppression de couleurs doit être désactivée en indiquant une distance (mm) depuis le haut du papier.
Expos. auto.	Définit le niveau d'exposition automatique. (Cette fonction sert à ajuster la luminosité et le contraste en fonction de la teinte de la zone où l'image est sélectionnée.) Ce paramètre se règle sur 13 paliers à l'aide des boutons ◀ et ▶. Le réglage par défaut est 7.

Accentuer bords	Définit le niveau d'accentuation des contours des caractères et d'adoucissement du grain des images, telles les photographies. Ce paramètre se règle sur cinq paliers à l'aide des boutons  et  . Le réglage par défaut est 3.
------------------------	--



- Les paramètres [Suppression points noirs], [Suppression points blancs], [Suppression défauts] et [Renforcer lignes fines] sont validés lorsque [Mode] est réglé sur [Noir et Blanc] et [Dithering] est réglé sur [Diffusion erreurs].
- Le paramètre [Suppression couleurs] est validé lorsque [Mode] est réglé sur autre chose que [Couleur].
- [Exposition automatique] est validé lorsque [Mode] est réglé sur [Noir et blanc].
- [Accentuer bords] est validé dans tous les modes.

<Boutons>

Paramètre	Description
OK	Valide les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.
Annuler	Annule tous les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.
Défaut	Rétablit les réglages par défaut de tous les paramètres.

Index

- A -

Accentuer bords	28, 60
Activer détection codes barre	41
Activer Marquage	30
Ajustement manuel de l'épaisseur	26, 30, 57
Arrondir coordonnées	23, 54
Auto	25, 56
Autres options	25

- B -

Blanc sur noir	35
----------------------	----

- C -

Codabar	42
Code 128	42
Code 39	42
Codes barre	40
Codes barres / page	41
Compteur	33, 36
Configuration requise	6
Contraste	21, 51
Côté recherche	41

- D -

Décal. horiz.	34
Décal. vert.	34
Démarrage du logiciel TWAIN	47
Détecter format page	27, 58
Détection dbl. charge	26, 30, 57
Dialogue Paramètres du scanner ...	18
Dialogue touches de fonction.	30
Dithering	19, 50

- E -

EAN	41
Expos. auto.	28, 59

- F -

Fenêtre	23
Fenêtre de zone	24, 54
Feuilles de contrôle	27, 58

Format page	19, 23, 53
Fonctions avancées	56

- G -

Gauche à droite	35
-----------------------	----

- I -

Incrément	36
Incrémentation	36
Installation du logiciel	11
Installez le CD-ROM	10
ITF	42

- L -

Luminosité	20, 51
------------------	--------

- M -

Manual	25, 56
Marge	26, 57
Marquage	32
Marque	32
Mode	18, 50
Mode d'épaisseur fixe	30

- N -

Noir sur blanc	35
Noir sur image	35
Normal	25, 56
Nouv. fichier auto	27, 58
Numérisation rapide	27, 58

- O -

Options chargeur	25, 56
Options du numérisation	50
Orientation	35

- P -

Pages	35
Paramètres du décodeur de codes barre	40
Paramètres du type de marque	35
Petite police	35

Points par pouce	19, 50
Position de l'axe	23, 53

- R -

Recto/Verso	50
Réglage de la courbe gamma	37
Réglage de la luminosité arrière	59
Réglage des conditions de numérisation	17
Remise à zero	36
Renforcer lignes fines	28, 59
Restaurer les paramètres	30

- S -

Sauvegarder les paramètres	30
Sélection du logiciel ISIS	16
Sélection du logiciel TWAIN	46
Sélection région	21
Semi Auto	25, 56
Signature	27, 58
Suppr. couleurs	28, 59
Suppr. défauts	28, 59
Suppr. points blancs	28, 59
Suppr. points noirs	28, 59

- T -

Télécharger gamma	37
Texte	33, 54

- U -

UPC	43
Utiliser panneau avant	27, 58

- V -

Valeur départ	36
Valeur zero	36
Vérifier nombre	27, 58

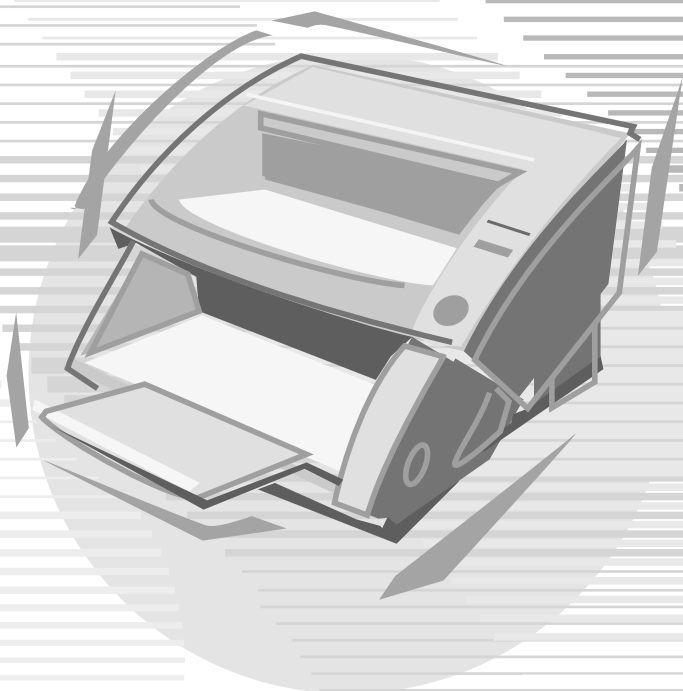
- Z -

Zone de recherche	41
-------------------------	----

ISIS/TWAIN Driver

Bedienungsanleitung

Bitte diese Bedienungsanleitung vor Inbetriebnahme des Gerätes sorgfältig lesen und die Anleitung griffbereit zum Nachschlagen aufbewahren.



HINWEIS

- ① Copyright© 1999 von CANON ELECTRONICS INC. Alle Rechte vorbehalten. Kein Teil dieser Publikation darf reproduziert, übertragen, abgeschrieben, in einem Datenspeichersystem gespeichert oder in irgendeiner Form in eine Sprache oder Computersprache übersetzt werden, und zwar in keiner Form und in keiner Weise, sei es elektronisch, mechanisch, magnetisch, optisch, chemisch, manuell oder anderweitig, wenn nicht die ausdrückliche Genehmigung von CANON ELECTRONICS INC. dazu vorliegt.
- ② Änderungen im Inhalt dieses Dokuments bleiben ohne vorherige Ankündigung vorbehalten.
- ③ Alle Anstrengungen wurden unternommen, um den Inhalt dieses Dokuments so akkurat wie möglich zu machen. Canon Electronics, Inc. und seine Tochterfirmen können aber keine Verantwortung für möglicherweise vorhandene Irrtümer und dadurch entstehende Folgen übernehmen.
- ④ Wir können keine Verantwortung für etwaige Schäden übernehmen, die aus dem Betrieb des Produktes resultieren, ungeachtet Punkt ③.

Warenzeichen und eingetragene Warenzeichen

- Microsoft, Windows® und Windows NT® eingetragene Warenzeichen der Microsoft Corporation in den USA und anderen Ländern.
- ISIS® ist ein eingetragenes Warenzeichen der Pixel Translation A Division of ActionPoint Inc.
- Adaptec ist ein eingetragenes Warenzeichen der ADAPTEC Inc.
- IBM und PC/AT sind eingetragene Warenzeichen der International Business Machines Corporation.
- Pentium® ist ein eingetragenes Warenzeichen der Intel Corporation U.S.A.
- In dieser Anleitung erwähnte Produktnamen dienen lediglich zur Identifizierung, wobei es sich dabei mitunter um Warenzeichen oder eingetragene Warenzeichen und/oder jeweiligen Firmen handelt.

EINLEITUNG

Herzlichen Glückwunsch zum Kauf des Canon DR-5020/5080C.

Insgesamt sind drei Anleitungen mit dem DR-5020/5080C mitgeliefert: ISIS/TWAIN-Treiber-Anleitung (diese Anleitung), DR-5020/5080C-Anleitung und Scanning Utility 5000 Anleitung.

Diese Bedienungsanleitung beschreibt die Bedienung des ISIS/TWAIN-Treibers für den DR-5020/5080C in Windows-Applikationen. Um die Funktionen voll auszunutzen und den DR-5020/5080C optimal anzuwenden, lesen Sie diese Bedienungsanleitung und die getrennte DR-5020/5080C Anleitung bitte sorgfältig und befolgen die Angaben. Scanner-Treiber wie ISIS oder TWAIN sind nicht erforderlich, da die mit dem DR-5020/5080C mitgelieferte Scanner-Applikation (Scanning Utility 5000) einen exklusiven Scanner-Treiber verwendet.

Nachdem Sie die Bedienungsanleitung gelesen haben, legen Sie sie an sicherer Stelle zum Nachschlagen ab.

Im folgenden eine kurze Beschreibung von Zweck und Inhalt dieser Anleitungen.

ISIS/TWAIN-Treiberanleitung (diese Anleitung)

Diese Anleitung beschreibt die Bedienung, wenn der Scanner mit einer ISIS-Treiber oder TWAIN-Treiber-kompatiblen Applikation betrieben wird.

DR-5020/5080C Bedienungsanleitung

Diese Anleitung beschreibt, wie der Scanner angeschlossen wird, Dokumente gescannt werden, gestautes Papier entfernt wird und gibt weitere wichtige Informationen zum Umgang mit dem Scanner. Lesen Sie diese Anleitung vor der Inbetriebnahme des DR-5020/5080C.

Scanning Utility 5000 Bedienungsanleitung

Diese Anleitung beschreibt, wie die mit dem Scanner mitgelieferte Applikation installiert und bedient wird.

■ Vorsicht

Beachten Sie folgendes bei der Verwendung des Scanners zur Erstellung von Kopien:

- Die Reproduktion von Banknoten, anderen Arten von Währungen oder Wertpapieren ist gesetzwidrig und wird gerichtlich verfolgt.
- Die Reproduktion von offiziellen Zertifikaten, Lizenzen, Fahrscheinen, urheberrechtlich geschützten und privaten Dokumenten o.ä. ist ebenfalls gesetzwidrig und kann gerichtlich verfolgt werden.
- Wenn ein gescanntes Bild für andere als rein persönliche Zwecke verwendet werden soll, ist immer die Genehmigung des Urheberrechtsinhabers erforderlich.

KONVENTIONEN

Im folgenden die Symbole und Konventionen, die in dieser Bedienungsanleitung verwendet werden. Vor dem Lesen der Bedienungsanleitung machen Sie sich bitte mit diesen Symbolen und Konventionen und ihren Bedeutungen vertraut.



Sorgfältig lesen, um Unfälle mit Verletzungen oder Todesfolge zu vermeiden.



Sorgfältig lesen, um Sachschäden oder Verlust wertvoller Daten zu vermeiden.



Kennzeichnet wichtige Informationen in dieser Anleitung. Eine Zahl in Klammern weist auf die Seitennummer hin, wo weitere Informationen zum betreffenden Satz oder Abschnitt gegeben werden.



Tips zu Bedienverfahren und Vermeidung von kleineren Schwierigkeiten.

■ Dieses Gerät

Diese Anleitung bezeichnet die Modelle DR-5020 und DR-5080C gemeinsam als "Scanner". Wenn eine Beschreibung sich speziell auf eines der Modelle bezieht, wird jeweils DR-5020 oder DR-5080C angegeben.

INHALT

EINLEITUNG	1
KONVENTIONEN	2
Kapitel 1 Hier zuerst lesen	5
1.1 Systemanforderungen	6
Bei Verwendung des ISIS/TWAIN-Treibers	6
1.2 Wie diese Anleitung gelesen wird	8
ISIS-kompatible Applikation	8
TWAIN-kompatible Applikation	8
Kapitel 2 Installation des ISIS/TWAIN-Treibers	9
2.1 Bevor Sie beginnen	10
2.2 Installation des Treibers	11
Kapitel 3 Verwendung des ISIS-Treibers	15
3.1 Wählen des ISIS-Treibers	16
3.2 Einstellung der Scannbedingungen	17
Grundlegende Einstellungen	18
Einstellen des Scannbereichs	22
Einstellung von Einzelheiten	25
Einstellung der Funktionstasten	30
Aufdrucken/Aufdruck-Einstellungen	32
Einstellen der Gammakurve	37
Barcode-Decoder-Einstellungen	40
Kapitel 4 Verwendung des TWAIN-Treibers	45
4.1 Wählen des TWAIN-Treibers	46
4.2 Starten des TWAIN-Treibers	47
4.3 Einstellung der Scannbedingungen	48
Grundlegende Einstellungen	49
Erweiterte Funktionen	56
Stichwortverzeichnis	61

Kapitel 1

Hier zuerst lesen

Dieses Kapitel beschreibt, was Sie wissen müssen, bevor Sie die DR-5020/5080C ISIS- und TWAIN-Treiber auf Ihrem Computer installieren.

1.1 Systemanforderungen.....	6
Bei Verwendung des ISIS/ TWAIN-Treibers	6
1.2 Wie diese Anleitung gelesen wird	8
ISIS-kompatible Applikation	8
TWAIN-kompatible Applikation	8



Systemanforderungen

Die folgende Hardware und das folgende Betriebssystem müssen verwendet werden, damit die ISIS/TWAIN-Treiber für DR-5020/5080C richtig arbeiten.

- Ein IBM PC/AT oder kompatibler Computer mit einem Pentium 133 MHz CPU oder besser mit mindestens 64 MB Speicher.
 - OS: Microsoft Windows® 95/98/Me oder Microsoft WindowsNT® 4.0/Windows 2000 Professional
 - Mindestens 100 MB Platz auf Festplatte (mindestens 5 MB nach Installation)
- SVGA-kompatibler Monitor
- Microsoft-kompatible Tastatur, Maus und Drucker, CD-ROM-Laufwerk (4x oder schneller)
- SCSI-Karte, deren richtige Funktion bestätigt ist
Die Funktion der folgenden SCSI-Karten wurde bestätigt:
Adaptec AHA-1540 Serie und AHA-2940 Serie
- Mit SCSI-2 kompatibles SCSI-Kabel

Bei Verwendung des ISIS/TWAIN-Treibers

- Installieren Sie immer den ISIS-Treiber und den TWAIN-Treiber im gleichen ISIS/TWAIN-Installationsverfahren. Diese Treiber können nicht getrennt installiert werden.
- Der ISIS/TWAIN-Treiber unterstützt möglicherweise nicht alle ISIS-kompatiblen und TWAIN-kompatiblen Applikationen.
- Die Dialogfelder und Menüs, die in ISIS/TWAIN-kompatiblen Applikationen in dieser Anleitung verwendet werden, sind nur Beispiele. Wie sie auf dem Bildschirm erscheinen, kann je nach verwendeter Applikation unterschiedlich sein. Manche Applikationen unterstützen nicht alle hier beschriebenen Funktionen. Einzelheiten erfahren Sie bei Ihrem Software-Lieferanten.
- Die Applikation unterstützt nicht die Funktionen des DR-5020/5080C und kann deshalb möglicherweise nicht richtig arbeiten.
- Dieser ISIS/TWAIN-Treiber verwendet [wnasp32.dll] zur Steuerung des Scanners. Der Scanner arbeitet nicht, wenn [wnasp32.dll] nicht korrekt installiert ist. Wenn [wnasp32.dll] nicht installiert ist, wenden Sie sich an den Hersteller der verwendeten SCSI-Karte oder an den Canon-Kundendienst.

- Wenn Sie den Treiber auf einem Windows-Rechner unter Windows 95 installieren und Sie die Datei [wnasp32.dll], die ursprünglich in Windows 95 installiert wurde, verwenden, kann es sein, daß der ISIS/TWAIN-Treiber nicht richtig funktioniert. In diesem Fall führen Sie [Aspiinst.exe] im Ordner [Pixtran] auf der Setup-CD aus, um einen Upgrade von [wnasp32.dll] zur neuesten Version vorzunehmen.

Wir haben bereits bestätigt, daß der folgende Bug vorhanden ist, wenn der Scanner mit einem Windows-Rechner unter Windows 95 gewählt wird:

- Ein gezwungener Programmabbruch tritt auf, wenn die Version von [wnasp32.dll] im System-Ordner "1,0,0,0" ist.

- Dieser ISIS/TWAIN-Treiber unterstützt sechs Sprachen (Japanisch, Englisch, Deutsch, Französisch, Spanisch und Italienisch). Die Sprache des Treibers wird automatisch entsprechend den regionalen Einstellungen in Windows gewählt. Wenn die Treibersprache sich von der Sprache der verwendeten Applikation unterscheidet, können die Dialogfelder des Treibers nicht richtig gezeigt werden. In diesem Fall die Sprache der Treibers an die Applikation anpassen. Zum Ändern der Treiber-Sprache ändern Sie die Regional-Einstellungen in der Systemsteuerung. Sie können auch die Treiber-Sprache ändern, ohne die Regional-Einstellungen zu ändern. Dazu fügen Sie die folgenden beiden Zeilen zur Datei "Setscan.ini" im Windows-Ordner hinzu. Dadurch wird die Treiber-Sprache eingestellt.

[Optionen]

iLanguage=xxxx (xxxx steht für Sprache)

xxxx (Sprachdefinitionen)

1031 = Deutsch

1033 = Englisch

1034 = Spanisch

1036 = Französisch

1040 = Italienisch

1041 = Japanisch

Wenn die spezifizierte Sprache nicht umgeschaltet wird, auch wenn Sie die Regional-Einstellungen in der Systemsteuerung ändern und die Sprache in der Datei Setscan.ini ändern, ist eine mögliche Ursache, daß die verwendete Applikation das Umschalten der Sprache behindert. In diesem Fall kann die Sprache nicht geändert werden.

1.2

Wie diese Anleitung gelesen wird

Lesen Sie das entsprechende Kapitel in dieser Anleitung, nachdem Sie zunächst geprüft haben, welcher Treiber, ISIS oder TWAIN, von der verwendeten Applikation unterstützt wird.

ISIS-kompatible Applikation

Kapitel 2 Installation des ISIS/TWAIN-Treibers (S. 9)

Dieser Abschnitt beschreibt, wie der ISIS/TWAIN-Treiber auf der Festplatte Ihres Computers installiert wird.

Kapitel 3 Verwendung des ISIS-Treibers (S. 15)

Dieses Kapitel beschreibt, wie der ISIS-Treiber aus der Applikation heraus gewählt wird und beschreibt die Scanner-Einrichtung im Detail.

TWAIN-kompatible Applikation

Kapitel 2 Installation des ISIS/TWAIN-Treibers (S. 9)

Dieser Abschnitt beschreibt, wie der ISIS/TWAIN-Treiber auf Ihrem Computer installiert wird.

Kapitel 4 Verwendung des TWAIN-Treibers (S. 45)

Dieses Kapitel beschreibt, wie der TWAIN-Treiber aus der Applikation heraus gewählt wird und beschreibt die Scanner-Einrichtung im Detail.



ANMERKUNG

Einzelheiten zum Anschluß des Scanners siehe DR-5020/5080C Bedienungsanleitung.

Kapitel 2

Installation des ISIS/ TWAIN-Treibers

Dieses Kapitel beschreibt das Verfahren zur Installation des DR-5020/5080C ISIS/TWAIN-Treibers auf Ihrem Computer.

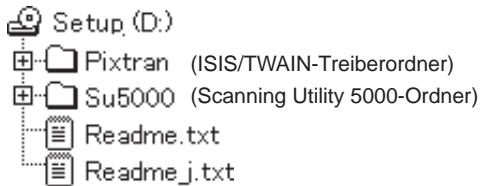
2.1 Bevor Sie beginnen	10
2.2 Installation des Treibers	11

2.1

Bevor Sie beginnen

Prüfen Sie die folgenden Punkte, bevor Sie mit der Installation des ISIS/TWAIN-Treibers beginnen.

- **Stellen Sie sicher, daß Microsoft Windows® 95/98/Me oder Microsoft Windows NT® 4.0 Workstation/Windows 2000 Professional auf dem Computer installiert ist, auf dem der ISIS/TWAIN-Treiber installiert werden soll.**
- **Schließen Sie den Computer an.**
Einzelheiten zum Anschluß des Scanners siehe separate DR-5020/5080C-Anleitung.
- **Setup-CD-ROM**
Die Setup-CD-ROM enthält die folgenden Schichten.
Vor dem Installieren des ISIS/TWAIN-Treibers lesen Sie bitte unbedingt die Datei "Readme.txt".
Nachdem Sie den ISIS/TWAIN-Treiber installiert haben, bewahren Sie die Setup-CD-ROM an einer sicheren Stelle auf.



2.2

Installation des Treibers

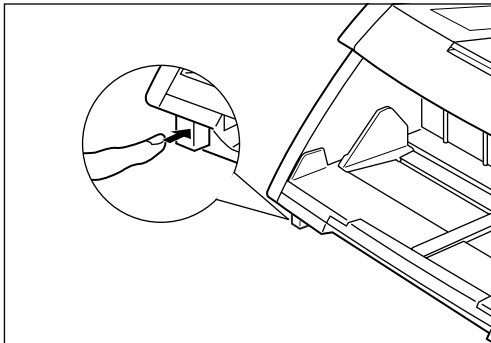
Installieren Sie den ISIS/TWAIN-Treiber.



ANMERKUNG

Das unten beschriebene Verfahren installiert sowohl den ISIS-Treiber als auch den TWAIN-Treiber. Diese Treiber können nicht getrennt installiert werden.

1 Schalten Sie den Scanner EIN.



2 Schalten Sie den Computer EIN.

⇒ Windows startet.

3 Bevor Sie die Installation beginnen, erstellen Sie Sicherungskopien der folgenden Dateien, wenn ein anderer ISIS-kompatibler Treiber bereits verwendet wird.

\\WINDOWS\\SYSTEM\\PIX*.DLL
\\WINDOWS\\PIXTRAN*.*



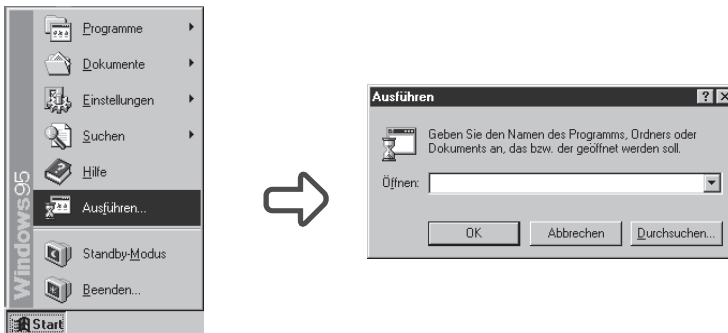
ANMERKUNG

- Wenn der ISIS/TWAIN-Treiber installiert ist, können die obigen Dateien modifiziert sein. Immer vor der Installation Sicherungskopien erstellen.
- Die Namen der Ordner \\Windows und \\Windows\\System sind je nach der verwendeten Windows-Version unterschiedlich. In den folgenden Erklärungen lesen Sie anstelle der Ordernamen \\Windows und \\Windows\\System die Ordernamen, wie sie in Ihrem System vorhanden sind.

4 Die CD mit den Setup-Daten ins CD-ROM-Laufwerk einschieben.

- 5 Klicken Sie auf die Schaltfläche [Start] und wählen Sie [Ausführen].**
Der erscheinende Bildschirm unterscheidet sich je nach verwendeter Windows-Version.

[Windows95]



- 6 Geben Sie "D:\pixtran\setup.exe" im "Öffnen"-Feld ein, und klicken Sie [OK] an.**

Das CD-ROM-Laufwerk ist in diesen Anweisungen als D: angegeben.

➡ Der Treiber-Einrichtung-Bildschirm erscheint.



7 Klicken Sie auf [Next], um die Installation auszuführen.

➔ Der Installation-Beendet-Bildschirm erscheint.



8 Klicken Sie auf [Finish], um die Installation abzuschließen.

Kapitel 3

Verwendung des ISIS-Treibers

Dieses Kapitel beschreibt die Vorgänge, wenn der ISIS-Treiber mit ISIS-kompatiblen Applikation läuft.

3.1 Wählen des ISIS-Treibers	16
3.2 Einstellung der Scannbedingungen .	17
Grundlegende Einstellungen	18
Einstellen des Scannbereichs	22
Einstellung von Einzelheiten	25
Einstellung der Funktionstasten	30
Imprinter-Einstellungen	32
Einstellen der Gammakurve	37
Barcode-Decoder-Einstellungen	40

3.1

Wählen des ISIS-Treibers

Wählen Sie den ISIS-Treiber, der verwendet werden soll. Führen Sie diesen Vorgang nur aus, nachdem der ISIS-Treiber installiert worden ist. Der Vorgang muß nicht wiederholt werden, wenn nicht ein anderer Scanner als DR-5020/5080C angeschlossen wird.



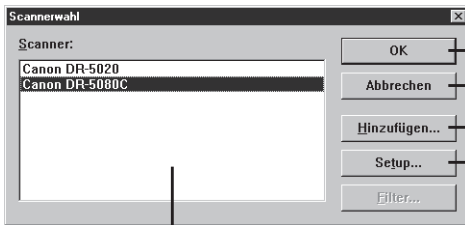
ANMERKUNG

Die in dieser Anleitung gezeigten Dialogfelder und Menüs sind nur Beispiele. Wie sie in der Praxis auf dem Bildschirm erscheinen, ist je nach verwendeter Applikation unterschiedlich. Manche Applikation unterstützen möglicherweise nicht alle in dieser Anleitung beschriebenen Funktionen. Einzelheiten erfragen Sie beim Lieferanten Ihrer Applikationssoftware.

1 Starten Sie die ISIS-kompatible-Applikation.

2 Öffnen Sie den Scannerwahl-Bildschirm.

Wie der Scannerwahl-Bildschirm erscheint, hängt von der verwendeten Applikation ab.



Liste verfügbarer Scanner.

Wählt den Scanner.

Schließt das Dialogfeld, ohne einen Scanner zu wählen.

Diese Schaltfläche klicken, um einen anderen Scanner hinzuzufügen.

Dient zur Eingabe der Scanner-Einstellungen.

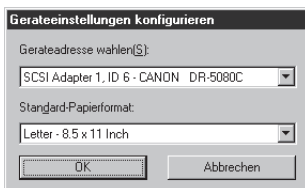


ANMERKUNG

Wenn Sie nicht Canon DR-5020 oder DR-5080C in der Liste sehen, installieren Sie den Treiber.

3 Klicken Sie auf Canon DR-5020 oder Canon DR-5080C in der Liste und dann [OK].

➡ Der Bildschirm "Geräteinstellungen konfigurieren" erscheint.



4 Stellen Sie das [Standard-Papierformat] ein, und klicken Sie auf [OK].

➡ Das hier eingegebene Papierformat wird als Vorgabe eingestellt.

3.2

Einstellung der Scannbedingungen

Das Dialogfeld "Scanner-Einstellungen" ist in der Menü-Hierarchie wie unten gezeigt organisiert.

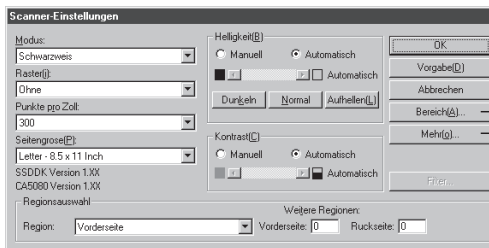
Die einzelnen Dialogfelder erscheinen je nach zu verwendender Funktion; nehmen Sie die gewünschten Einstellungen im betreffenden Dialogfeld vor. Einzelheiten zu den Einstellpunkten in diesen Dialogfeldern siehe zur Bezugnahme angegebene Seiten.

1 Starten Sie die ISIS-kompatible Applikation.

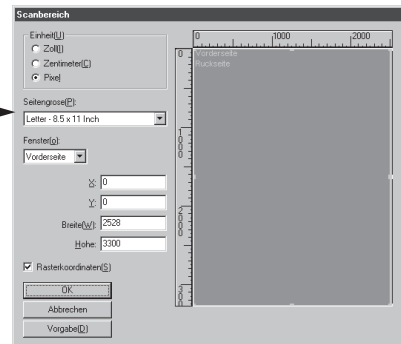
2 Rufen Sie den Bildschirm Scanner-Einstellungen ab.

Der erscheinende Bildschirm Scanner-Einstellungen sieht je nach der verwendeten Applikation leicht unterschiedlich aus.

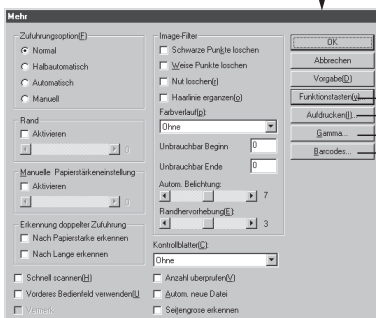
DEUTSCH



Dialogfeld Scanner-Einstellungen (S. 18)



Dialogfeld Scanbereich (S. 22)

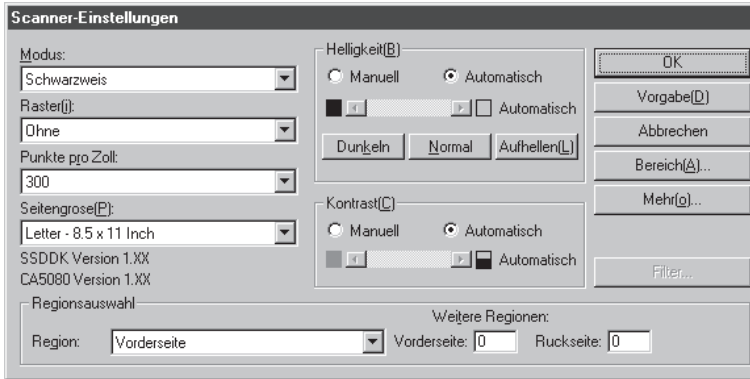


Dialogfeld Mehr (S. 25)

- Dialogfeld Funktionstasten (→ S. 30)
- Dialogfeld Aufdrucken/Aufdruck (→ S. 32)
- Dialogfeld Gamma herunterladen (→ S. 37)
- Dialogfeld Barcode (→ S. 40)

Grundlegende Einstellungen

Stellt die grundlegenden Scanbedingungen ein.
Diese Einstellung wird im Dialogfeld "Scanner-Einstellungen" ausgeführt.



<Scannereinstellungen>



ANMERKUNG

Die tatsächlich zum Scannen verwendeten Modi sind begrenzt, und Scannen ist manchmal je nach Kombination der Einstellungen unmöglich. Einzelheiten siehe "DR-5020/5080C Scanmodus-Tabellen" in der getrennten DR-5020/5080C Bedienungsanleitung (S. 88).

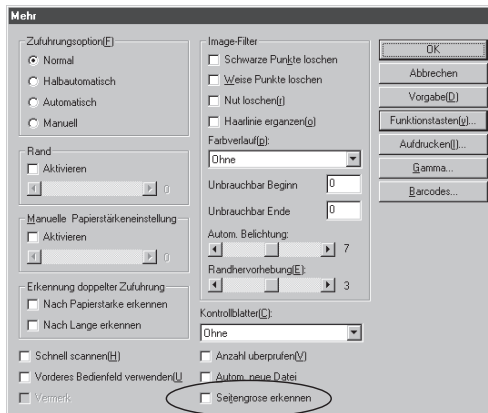
Funktion	Beschreibung
Modus	<p>Stellt ein, wie das Bild gescannt wird. Beim DR-5020 steht nur Schwarzweiß zur Verfügung.</p> <p>[Schwarzweiß] Scannt das Bild vollständig in Schwarzweiß ohne jegliche Grauschattierungen.</p> <p>[16-, 256-Stufen-Grauskalierung] Diesen Modus wählen, wenn Fotos und Halbton-Dokumente in Grauskalierung gescannt werden sollen. Je größer der Bit-Wert, desto größer wird die Datei.</p> <p>[3, 12, 24-Bit-Farbe] Diesen Modus wählen, wenn Farboriginale wie Fotos gescannt werden sollen.</p> <p>[Farbe-3, 6, 12 Bit -> 4, 8-Bit Palette] Diese 4-Bit-Palette dient zum Umwandeln von 3-Bit-Farbdaten in 16 Farben zur Ausgabe, und die 8-Bit-Palette dient zum Umwandeln von 6- und 12-Bit-Farbdaten in 256 Farben zur Ausgabe.</p>

Raster	<p>Schaltet Raster-Verarbeitung ein oder aus.</p> <p>[Ohne] Kein Raster. Für Scannen von Text oder Vorlagen mit dünnen Linien verwenden, wenn keine Farben oder Graustufen vorliegen.</p> <p>[Fehlerdiffusion] Legt automatisch Fehlerdiffusion an, um den Graubereich von Halbtönen zu simulieren. Diese Einstellung verwenden, um Dokumente mit Halbtonwerten wie Fotos zu scannen.</p>
Punkte pro Zoll	<p>Erlaubt es, die Auflösung einzustellen, die Anzahl der Punkte pro Zoll (dpi). Sie haben 13 Wahlen: 100, 200, 210, 220, 230, 240, 250, 260, 270, 280, 290, 300 und 400.</p>
Seitengröße	<p>Erlaubt es Ihnen, eine der folgenden Dokumentgrößen zum Scannen zu wählen:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Letter - 8.5 x 11 Inch Letter [gedreht]: 11 x 8.5 Inch Legal - 8.5 x 14 Inch Double Letter - 11 x 17 Inch A3 - 297 x 420 mm A4 - 210 x 297 mm A4 [gedreht] - 297 x 210 mm A5 - 148 x 210 mm A5 [gedreht] - 210 x 148 mm A6 - 105 x 148 mm A6 [gedreht] - 148 x 105 mm B4 (ISO) - 250 x 353 mm B4 (JIS) - 257 x 364 mm B5 (ISO) - 176 x 250 mm B5 (ISO) [gedreht] - 250 x 176 mm B5 (JIS) - 182 x 257 mm B5 (JIS) [gedreht] - 257 x 182 mm B6 (ISO) - 125 x 176 mm B6 (ISO) [gedreht] - 176 x 125 mm B6 (JIS) - 128 x 182 mm B6 (JIS) [gedreht] - 182 x 128 mm Maximum des Scanners (295 x 432 mm) <p>Wenn ein Dokument mit mehr als der vorgeschriebenen Größe gescannt wird, werden die Randmargen des Dokuments abgeschnitten.</p> <p>Alternativ, wenn ein Dokument gescannt wird, das kleiner als die vorgeschriebene Größe ist, erscheint ein schwarzer Rand an den Margen des Dokuments.</p>



Wenn Sie [16-level Gray] als Modus gewählt haben, werden die Daten nicht korrekt gespeichert. Wählen Sie stattdessen [Detect Page Size] im Dialogfenster "More Dialog" (S. 25), führen Sie einen Scanvorgang durch, und stellen Sie in der Applikationssoftware [JBIG] als Dateiformat zum Speichern der Daten ein.



Die Einstellungen "Seitengröße", die hier vorgenommen werden, sind ungültig, wenn Sie "Seitengröße erkennen" im Dialogfeld "Mehr" (S. 25) gewählt haben.



<Helligkeit>

Funktion	Beschreibung
Manuell	Stellt die Helligkeit des Bildes manuell ein. Die Helligkeit kann von 1 bis 255 eingestellt werden, indem die Schaltflächen und geklickt werden.
Automatisch	Die Helligkeit wird nur automatisch eingestellt, wenn [Modus] auf [Schwarzweiß] und [Raster] auf [Ohne] gestellt ist. Wenn [Modus] auf eine andere Einstellung gestellt ist und die Helligkeit auf [Automatisch], wird die Helligkeit auf Vorgabe zurückgestellt.
Dunklen-Schaltfläche	Stellt den Helligkeitswert auf 64 ein, um das Gesamtbild dunkler erscheinen zu lassen.
Normal-Schaltfläche	Stellt den Helligkeitswert auf 128 ein, um das Gesamtbild normal hell erscheinen zu lassen.
Aufhellen-Schaltfläche	Stellt den Helligkeitswert auf 192 ein, um das Gesamtbild heller erscheinen zu lassen.

<Kontrast>

Funktion	Beschreibung
Manuell	Stellt den Kontrast des gesamten gescannten Bildes manuell ein. Der Kontrast kann in 13 Stufen eingestellt werden. Zum Einstellen des Kontrastes die Schaltflächen  und  klicken. Große Werte steigern den Kontrast, und kleine Werte verringern ihn.
Automatisch	Stellt den Vorgabe-Kontrast ein.



ANMERKUNG

- Die Kontrasteinstellung ist deaktiviert, wenn der Modus auf "Schwarzweiß" gestellt ist.
- Beim DR-5020 ist das Kontrast-Wahlkästchen abgeblendet, wenn der Modus auf "Schwarzweiß" gestellt ist.

<Auswahl des Bereichs>

Funktion	Beschreibung
Region	Wählt die Dokumentenseite zur Einstellung der Helligkeit. Wählen Sie Vorderseite oder Rückseite.
Weitere Regionen	Mit diesem Scanner nicht unterstützt.

DEUTSCH

<Schaltflächen>

Funktion	Beschreibung
OK	Aktiviert die Einstellungen und schließt das Dialogfeld.
Vorgabe	Stellt alle Einstellungen auf Vorgabe zurück.
Abbrechen	Hebt alle vorgenommenen Einstellungen auf und schließt das Dialogfeld.
Bereich	Öffnet Dialogfeld "Scannbereich Einstellen" (S. 22), so daß Sie die Größe des zu scannenden Bereichs auf Vorder- und Rückseite einstellen können.
Mehr	Öffnet das Dialogfeld "Mehr" (S. 25), so daß Sie die speziellen Details wie Filter, Geschwindigkeit, Seitengrößenerkennung und Steuerblatt-Erkennung einstellen können.
Filter	Mit diesem Scanner nicht unterstützt.

Einstellen des Scannbereichs

Um nur einen Teil des Dokuments zu scannen, begrenzen Sie den Scannbereich. Der Scannbereich wird im Dialogfeld "Scannbereich" eingestellt.

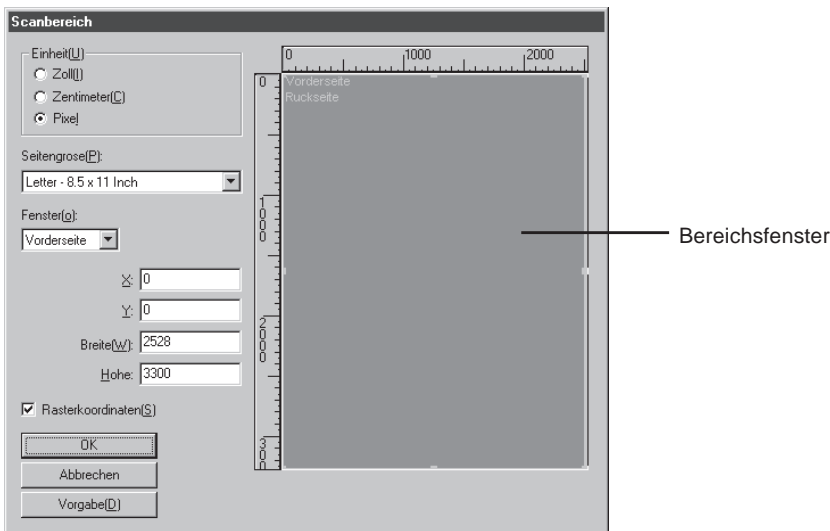
Sie können den Scannbereich sowohl an der Vorderseite als auch an der Rückseite des Dokuments einstellen. Beachten Sie, daß die Größe des Scannbereichs an der Vorderseite und Rückseite und die Koordinatenpositionen in Y (vertikaler) Richtung in der gleichen Einstellung vorgenommen werden müssen. Diese Punkte können nur für Koordinatenpositionen in der X (horizontalen) Richtung eingestellt werden.

Es gibt zwei Möglichkeiten zur Einstellung des Scannbereichs: Durch Eingabe von Koordinaten oder Zahlenwerten oder direkt durch Definierung des Bereichs auf dem Bildschirm.



ANMERKUNG

Die Einstellungen für Scannbereich, die hier vorgenommen werden, sind ungültig, wenn Sie "Seitengröße erkennen" im Dialogfeld "Mehr" (S. 25) gewählt haben.



Funktion	Beschreibung
Einheit	Stellt die Einheit zur Anzeige der Scannbereichsgröße ein. Wählen Sie zwischen Zoll, Zentimeter und Pixel (Bildpunkt).

Seitengröße	Wählt die Größe des zu scannenden Dokuments. Die verfügbaren Seitengrößeneinstellungen sind die gleichen wie die in [Seitengröße] im Dialogfeld [Scanner-Einstellungen]. Wenn Sie das Dialogfeld "Scannbereich" öffnen, erscheinen die in [Seitengröße] in [Scannereinstellungen] eingestellten Dokumentengrößen. Änderungen, die an den Einstellungen vorgenommen werden, erscheinen ebenfalls in [Seitengröße] im Dialogfeld [Scanner-Einstellungen].
Fenster	Wählt, ob die Vorder- oder Rückseite des Dokuments gescannt werden soll. Vorderseite: Gibt beide Seiten des Dokuments ein. (Die Scannbereich-Einstellungen gelten für beide Seiten des Dokuments.) Rückseite: Gibt die Rückseite des Dokuments ein. (Die X-Koordinateneinstellungen können vorne und hinten geändert werden.)
Achsenposition	X: Die X-Achsen-Koordinaten oben links im Scannbereich eingeben. Y: Die Y-Achsen-Koordinaten oben links im Scannbereich eingeben. Breite: Stellt die Breite des Scannbereichs ein. Höhe: Stellt die Höhe des Scannbereichs ein. "X" kann separat für Vorder- und Rückseite eingegeben werden. Die Einstellung für "Y", "Breite" und "Höhe" ist für Vorder- und Rückseite gleich.
Rasterkoordinaten	Stellt automatisch die Position der Achse im Scannbereich auf einen brauchbaren Wert ein. Wenn die Einheit auf Zoll gestellt ist, ist der Wert ein Vielfaches von 1/8 Zoll; wenn er auf Zentimeter gestellt ist, ist dieser Wert ein Vielfaches von 0,1 cm; und wenn er auf Pixel (Bildpunkt) gestellt ist, ist dieser Wert ein Vielfaches von 32 Pixeln.

<p>(Bereichsfenster)</p>	<p>Der Scannbereich wird im Bereichsfenster dargestellt. Die Größe des Bereichsfensters ist je nach Papiergröße unterschiedlich.</p> <p>Sie können die Größe des Scannbereichs durch Ziehen der ■ Markierungscursor am Bereichsrahmen einstellen. Sie können auch den gesamten Scannbereich verschieben.</p> <p>Geben Sie die Seite des Dokuments ein, an dem der Scannbereich geändert werden soll, unter [Vorderseite] (beide Seiten) oder [Rückseite] (Rückseite) unter "Fenster" ein.</p> <p>Wenn [Vorderseite] spezifiziert ist und der Scannbereich eingestellt ist, wird die Koordinatenposition auf die gleiche Position für Vorder- und Rückseite gestellt.</p> <p>Wenn [Rückseite] spezifiziert ist und der Bereich auf der Rückseite justiert wird, kann nur die X-Koordinate getrennt eingestellt werden.</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> </div>
---------------------------------	---



ANMERKUNG

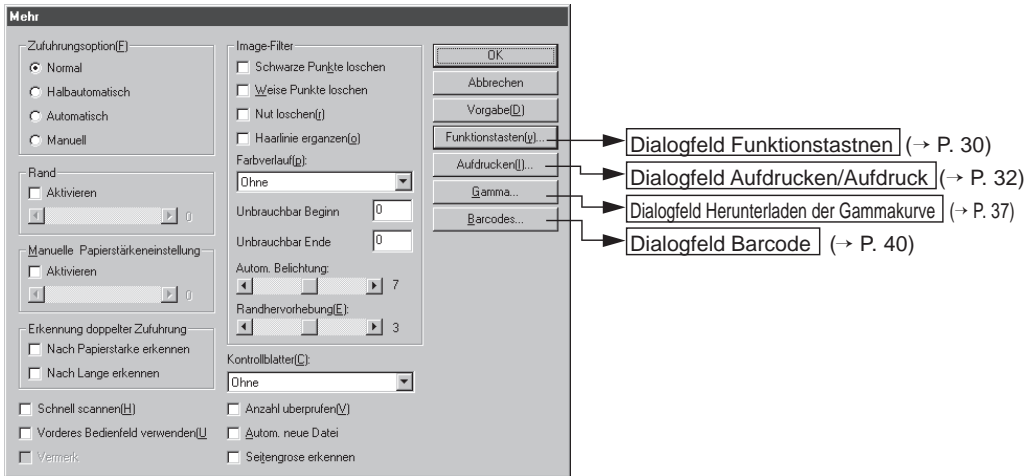
Wenn Sie die Vorderseite unter [Vorderseite] nach dem Einstellen des Bereichs auf der Rückseite unter [Rückseite] einstellen, wird die aktuell aktivierte Einstellung für [Rückseite] deaktiviert.

< Schaltflächen >

Funktion	Beschreibung
OK	Aktivieren der Einstellungen und Schließen des Dialogfelds.
Abbrechen	Hebt jegliche geänderte Einstellungen auf und schließt das Dialogfeld.
Vorgabe	Stellt alle Einstellungen auf Vorgabe zurück.





Einstellung von Einzelheiten

Stellt die Scannbedingungen im Detail ein.
Das Dialogfeld "Mehr" bietet die folgenden Einstellpunkte zur Einstellung der Scannbedingungen in größerem Detail.



Funktion	Beschreibung
Zuführungsoption	<p>Wählt die Zuführungsmethode.</p> <p>Normal: Das Dokument wird zugeführt (gescannt), wenn Sie das Dokument einlegen, und der Scannvorgang wird in der Applikation eingegeben.</p> <p>Halbautomatisch: Das Dokument wird eingezogen (gescannt), wenn Scannen in der Applikation eingegeben wird, und wenn das Dokument eingelegt und die Start-Taste gedrückt wird.</p> <p>Automatisch: Das Dokument wird automatisch eingezogen (gescannt), wenn Sie das Dokument einlegen.</p> <p>Manuell: Das Dokument wird manuell um jeweils eine Seite zugeführt, nachdem Scannen in der Applikation gewählt ist.</p> <p>Die Anzeige Zuführungsoption am Bedienfeld des Scanners wird umgeschaltet, egal ob die Schaltfläche [OK] für hier vorgenommene Einstellungen gedrückt wird.</p>





DEUTSCH

<p>Rand</p>	<p>Stellt die Ränder des Scannbereichs ein (oben, unten, links und rechts). Zum Einstellen der Ränder klicken Sie [Aktivieren] und verwenden die Schaltflächen  und .</p> <p>Geben Sie innerhalb des Bereichs -10 (verringert den Scannbereich um 10 mm) und +10 (vergrößert den Scannbereich um 10 mm) ein.</p> <p>Wenn Sie z.B. den Scannbereich leicht vergrößern wollen, so daß das Dokument nicht abgeschnitten wird, stellen Sie in Richtung + ein. Wenn der Scannbereich leicht verringert werden soll, so daß sich kein schwarzer Rand um das gescannte Bild, stellen Sie in Richtung - ein.</p>
<p>Manuelle Papierstärken-einstellung</p>	<p>Stellen Sie die Papierstärke manuell ein, wenn die Papierstärke nicht automatisch eingestellt wird. Klicken Sie auf "Aktivieren" und verwenden Sie die  und  Schaltflächen zum Einstellen der Stärke.</p> <p>Geben Sie die Stärke innerhalb des Bereichs 1 (am dünnsten) bis zu 13 (am dicksten) ein. Verwenden Sie diese Einstellung, um manuell die Papierstärke beim Scannen von speziell beschichteten Originalen und Dokumenten einzustellen, deren Papierstärke nicht automatisch eingestellt werden kann, oder wenn Doppelblattzufuhr häufig bei automatischer Papierstärkeneinstellung auftritt.</p>
<p>Erkennung doppelter Zuführung</p>	<p>Wählt die Erkennungsmethode für Doppelblattzufuhr. "Doppelte Zuführung" wird erkannt, wenn zwei oder mehr Blätter des Dokuments gleichzeitig eingezogen werden, oder wenn beim kontinuierlichen Scannen ein Teil eines Blatts ein anderes Blatt überlappt.</p> <p>[Nach Papierstärke erkennen] Erkennt Doppelblattzufuhr nach Papierstärke. Wenn das Papier stärker ist als das erste Blatt des Dokuments(*), beurteilt der Scanner dies als Doppelzuführung und gibt eine Fehlermeldung aus.</p> <p>[Nach Länge erkennen] Erkennt Doppelblattzufuhr nach Papierlänge. Wenn ein Blatt zugeführt wird, das länger ist als das erste Blatt des Dokuments(*), beurteilt das System dies als Doppelzuführung und gibt eine Fehlermeldung aus.</p> <p>* Doppelblatterkennung wird durch Bestimmung von Stärke und Länge des ersten Blatts des Dokuments als Standardblatt ausgeführt. Wenn das erste Blatt des Dokuments zugeführt wird, speichert der Scanner die Stärke und Länge des Dokuments.</p>

Schnell Scannen	<p>Diese Einstellung steht zur Verfügung, wenn die Auflösung auf 200 oder 300 dpi eingestellt ist.</p> <p>Wenn 200 dpi eingestellt ist, werden Bilder mit 200 x 100 dpi (horizontal x vertikal) gescannt und Bilder mit 200 x 200 dpi ausgegeben.</p> <p>Wenn 300 dpi eingestellt ist, werden Bilder mit 300 x 150 dpi (horizontal x vertikal) gescannt und Bilder mit 300 x 300 dpi ausgegeben.</p> <p>Der Scannvorgang geschieht in diesem Fall zwar schneller, aber die Qualität des mit hoher Geschwindigkeit gescannten Bildes wird etwas geringer.</p>
Vorderes Bedienfeld verwenden	Aktiviert die Einstellungen am Bedienfeld des Scanners.
Vermerk	Aktiviert den optionalen Vermerk
Kontrollblätter	<p>Wählt, wie der Scanner Kontrollblätter erkennen soll.</p> <p>[Ohne] Scanner-Kontrollblätter werden nicht erkannt.</p> <p>[Scannen, Scannen fortsetzen] Das Scanner-Kontrollblatt wird erkannt und gescannt, danach wird der Scannvorgang fortgesetzt.</p> <p>[Überspringen, Scannen fortsetzen] Das Scanner-Kontrollblatt wird erkannt und übersprungen (nicht gescannt), danach wird der Scannvorgang fortgesetzt.</p> <p>[Scannen, Scannen beenden] Das Scanner-Kontrollblatt wird erkannt und gescannt, danach stoppt der Scannvorgang.</p> <p>[Überspringen, Scannen beenden] Das Scanner-Kontrollblatt wird erkannt und übersprungen (nicht gescannt), danach stoppt der Scannvorgang.</p>
Anzahl überprüfen	Die Anzahl der gezählten Seiten vor dem Scannvorgang wird mit der Anzahl der gescannten Seiten verglichen. Wenn die Anzahl sich unterscheidet, erscheint eine Fehlermeldung.
Autom. Neue Datei	Diese Einstellung erzeugt jedesmal ein Neue-Seite-Signal, wenn ein kontinuierlicher Scannvorgang endet. Dadurch können die Datei-Begrenzungszeichen in der entsprechend verwendeten Applikation eingegeben werden.
Seitengröße erkennen	<p>Diese Einstellung erkennt die Größe jedes Dokuments beim Scannen und scannt das Dokument mit der betreffenden Größe.</p> <p>Wenn diese Option gewählt ist, ist Seitengröße im Dialogfeld "Scanner-Einstellungen" deaktiviert.</p>

<Bildfilter-Einstellungen>

Stellt die Bildverarbeitungsfilter ein.

Funktion	Beschreibung
Schwarze Punkte löschen	Löscht automatisch isolierte schwarze Punkte (einzelne Punkte) auf weißem Hintergrund.
Weißer Punkte löschen	Löscht automatisch isolierte weiße Punkte auf schwarzem Hintergrund.
Nut löschen	Löscht automatisch Teile (Nuten), die aus Konturen hervorstehen.
Haarlinie ergänzen	Fügt automatisch schwache oder unterbrochene dünne Linien zusammen, die entstehen, wenn Dokumente mit schwachen Linien gescannt werden.
Farbverlauf	Klicken Sie hier, um die Farbunterdrückung-Funktion zu aktivieren. Diese Funktion ist nur am DR-5080C aktiviert. [Ohne] Farblöschung wird nicht ausgeführt. [Rot] Rote Schrift/Bereiche auf dem Dokument werden unterdrückt/nicht gescannt. [Grün] Grüne Schrift/Bereiche auf dem Dokument werden unterdrückt/nicht gescannt. [Blau] Blaue Schrift/Bereiche auf dem Dokument werden unterdrückt/nicht gescannt.
Unbrauchbar Beginn	Wenn das Dokument einen Bereich enthält, wo Farbunterdrückung deaktiviert werden soll, den Startpunkt dieses Bereichs als Abstand (mm) von der Oberkante des Papiers angeben.
Unbrauchbar Ende	Den Endpunkt des Bereichs, wo Farbunterdrückung deaktiviert werden soll, als Abstand (mm) von der Oberkante des Papiers angeben.
Autom. Belichtung	Stellt den Pegel der AE (Autom. Belichtung) Funktion ein. (Diese Funktion stellt Helligkeit und Kontrast entsprechend der Schattierung in dem Bereich, in dem das Bild gewählt ist, ein.) Diese Einstellung kann in 13 Stufen mit den Schaltflächen  und  vorgenommen werden. Vorgabe ist 7.
Randhervorhebung	Stellt den Pegel zur Verbesserung der Konturen von Buchstaben ein. Diese Einstellung kann in fünf Stufen mit den Schaltflächen  und  vorgenommen werden. Vorgabe ist 3.



ANMERKUNG

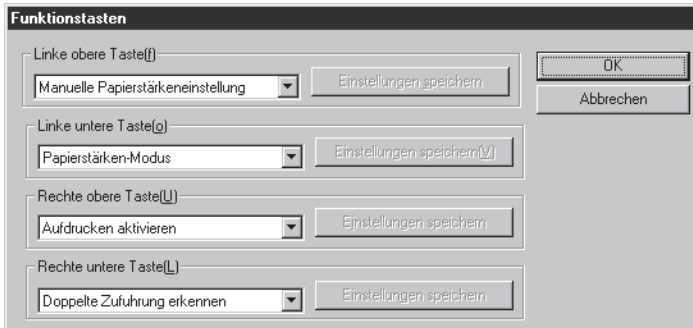
- [Schwarze Punkte löschen], [Weiße Punkte löschen], [Nur löschen] und [Haarlinie ergänzen] sind aktiviert, wenn [Modus] auf [Schwarzweiß] und [Raster] auf [Fehlerdiffusion] gestellt ist.
- [Farbverlauf] ist aktiviert, wenn [Modus] auf eine andere Einstellung als [Farbe] gestellt ist.
- [AE] ist aktiviert, wenn [Modus] auf [Schwarzweiß] gestellt ist.
- [Randhervorhebung] ist in allen Modi aktiviert.

<Schaltflächen>

Funktion	Beschreibung
OK	Aktivieren der Einstellungen und Schließen des Dialogfelds.
Abbrechen	Hebt alle geänderten Einstellungen auf und schließt das Dialogfeld.
Vorgabe	Stellt alle Einstellungen auf Vorgabe zurück.
Funktions-tasten	Öffnet das Dialogfeld "Funktionstasten" (S. 30). In diesem Dialogfeld können Sie spezifische Funktionen für die Funktionstasten am Scanner registrieren.
Aufdrucken (Imprinter)	Öffnet das Dialogfeld "Aufdrucken/Aufdruck" (S. 32). Stellt die Aufdrucken-Funktion oder die Aufdruck-Funktion ein. Die Aufdrucken-Funktion druckt spezifische Zeichen auf das gescannte Dokument, wenn die optionale Imprinter-Einheit installiert ist. Die Aufdruck-Funktion druckt spezifizierte Zeichen auf gescannte Bilder.
Gamma	Öffnet das Dialogfeld "Gamma herunterladen" (S. 37). Lädt und speichert Gammadaten als Datei, um Farben und Farbtöne auszudrücken.
Barcodes	Öffnet das Dialogfeld "Barcode" (S. 40). Stellt die Bedingungen zum Erkennen der Barcodes ein, wenn der optionale Barcode-Decoder installiert ist.

Einstellung der Funktionstasten

Den Funktionstasten am Scanner können bestimmte Funktionen zugeordnet werden. Die folgenden Einstellpunkte werden im Funktionstasten-Dialogfeld eingestellt.



Funktion	Beschreibung
<p>Wahl</p>	<p>Die den Funktionstasten zuzuordnenden Funktionen auf dem Pull-down-Menü wählen. Die folgenden fünf Funktionen stehen zur Wahl. Einzelheiten über diese Funktionen siehe getrennte DR-5020/5080C Bedienungsanleitung "Einstellung der Funktionstasten". (S. 60)</p> <p>[Manuelle Papierstärkeneinstellung] Zum manuellen Einstellen der Papierstärke.</p> <p>[Doppelte Zuführung erkennen] Erkennt automatisch Doppelblattzufuhr. "Doppelte Zuführung" wird erkannt, wenn zwei oder mehr Blätter des Dokuments gleichzeitig eingezogen werden, oder wenn ein Teil eines Blatts ein anderes Blatt überlappt.</p> <p>[Papierstärken-Modus] Stellt die Papierstärke auf einen festen Wert ein.</p> <p>[Aufdrucken aktivieren] Schaltet die Imprinter-Funktion ein oder aus, wenn der optionale Imprinter installiert ist.</p> <p>[Grundeinstellungen wiederherstellen] Registriert die Scanner-Einstellungen in der Software unter den Funktionstasten.</p>
<p>Einstellungen speichern</p>	<p>Durch Anklicken dieser Option nach dem Wählen von [Grundeinstellungen wiederherstellen] werden die gegenwärtigen Scanner-Einstellungen unter den Funktionstasten registriert.</p>

<Schaltflächen>

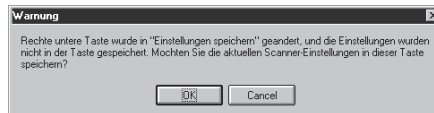
Funktion	Beschreibung
OK	Aktiviert die Einstellungen und schließt das Dialogfeld.
Abbrechen	Streicht alle geänderten Einstellungen und schließt das Dialogfeld.



ANMERKUNG

- Die folgende Meldung erscheint, wenn Sie [Grundeinstellungen wiederherstellen] wählen und auf [OK] klicken, ohne auf [Einstellungen speichern] geklickt zu haben. Durch Klicken auf [OK] werden alle Einstellungen gespeichert und das Dialogfeld geschlossen.

Durch Klicken auf [Cancel] wird das Display auf das Funktionstasten-Dialogfeld zurückgestellt. Prüfen Sie die Funktionstasten-Einstellungen in diesem Dialogfeld.



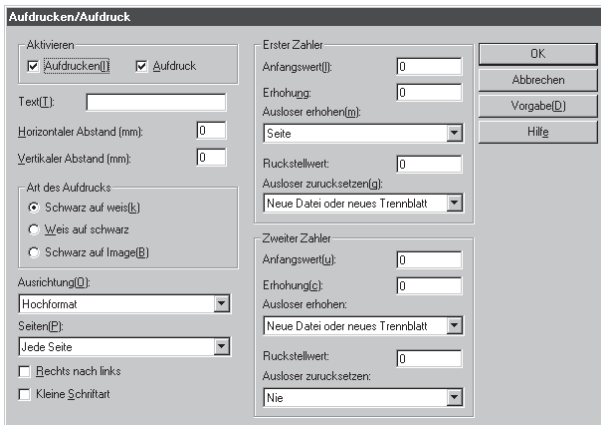
- Beachten Sie, daß bei bestimmten Applikationen die Scanner-Einstellungen manchmal nicht richtig durch Funktionstasten wiederhergestellt werden, auch wenn sie unter Funktionstasten registriert sind. Wenn Sie z.B. versuchen, die Scanner-Einstellungen mit den Funktionstasten zu ändern, wenn der Scanvorgang unterbrochen ist, weil das Papier verbraucht ist können gescannte Bilder manchmal nicht richtig gespeichert werden, nachdem der Scanvorgang fortgesetzt wird. Nachdem Sie den Scanvorgang gestartet haben, verwenden Sie die Funktionstasten nicht zum Wiederherstellen der Scannereinstellungen, bevor der Scanvorgang beendet ist.

Aufdrucken/Aufdruck-Einstellungen

Stellt den optionalen Imprinter und die Imprinter-Funktionen ein. Die Aufdrucken-Funktion druckt Buchstaben auf das Dokument, und die Aufdruck-Funktion fügt spezifizierte Zeichen zum gescannten Bild hinzu.

Diese Optionen werden im Imprinter-Dialogfeld eingestellt. Die Aufdrucken-Funktion ist nur verfügbar, wenn der optionale Imprinter installiert ist.

Für die Aufdruck-Funktion ist der Imprinter nicht erforderlich.



<Aktivieren>

Funktion	Beschreibung
Aufdrucken	Druckt die auf dem gescannten Bild angegebenen Zeichen und Zähler aus.
Aufdruck	Fügt die gescannten Bild hinzu angegebenen Zeichen und Zähler zum.

Text	<p>Die aufzudruckenden/einzufügenden Details eingeben. Bis zu 32 der folgenden Zeichen können eingegeben werden:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ziffern (0 bis 9) • Alphabetische Zeichen (Großbuchstaben, Kleinbuchstaben) • Leerstellen (Zwischenräume) • Die folgenden Symbole: ! " # \$ % & ' () * + - . / : ; < = > ? @ [\] ^ _ { } ~ ` , <p>Die obigen Zeichen werden so gedruckt (hinzugefügt) wie sie eingegeben wurden. Zusätzlich zu diesen Zeichen können Zähler, Zeit, Datum und Pfeile als besondere Zeichen angegeben werden.</p> <p><Zähler> Zum Aufdrucken (Einfügen) eines Zählers geben Sie im folgenden Format ein:</p> <p><C> : Drückt (fügt ein) einen 9stelligen Zähler</p> <p><C#> (# ist eine Zahl) : Drückt (fügt ein) einen Zähler mit # Stellen.</p> <p><CC> : Drückt (fügt ein) zwei 9stellige Zähler. Die beiden Zähler werden durch einen "." Punkt getrennt.</p> <p><C#C#> (# ist eine Zahl) : Drückt (fügt ein) zwei Zähler, die beide # Stellen haben. Die beiden Zähler werden durch einen "." Punkt getrennt</p> <p>Die Zeitgabe, mit der die Zähler herauf- oder heruntergezählt werden, wird unter "Erster Zähler/Zweiter Zähler" weiter hinten in dieser Anleitung beschrieben. (Wenn nur ein Zähler eingestellt ist, die Zeitgabe unter "Erster Zähler" einstellen. Wenn zwei Zähler eingestellt sind, den ersten Zähler unter [Zweiter Zähler] und den nachfolgenden unter [Erster Zähler] einstellen.</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">[Eingabe]</th> <th style="text-align: left;">[Aufdrucken/Aufdruck Ergebnis]</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><C></td> <td>000000000</td> </tr> <tr> <td><C6></td> <td>000000</td> </tr> <tr> <td><CC></td> <td><u>00000000.000000000</u> Zweiter Zähler Erster Zähler</td> </tr> <tr> <td><C5C4></td> <td>00000.0000</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><Zeit> Zum Drucken (Hinzufügen) des Datums, wo das Dokument gescannt wurde, geben Sie "<TIME>" ein. Die Zeit im 24-Stunden-Format wird in acht Stellen gedruckt (hinzugefügt), wie folgt. (Beispiel: 16:28:30)</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">[Eingabe]</th> <th style="text-align: left;">[Aufdrucken/Aufdruck Ergebnis]</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><TIME></td> <td>16:28:30</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	[Eingabe]	[Aufdrucken/Aufdruck Ergebnis]	<C>	000000000	<C6>	000000	<CC>	<u>00000000.000000000</u> Zweiter Zähler Erster Zähler	<C5C4>	00000.0000	[Eingabe]	[Aufdrucken/Aufdruck Ergebnis]	<TIME>	16:28:30
[Eingabe]	[Aufdrucken/Aufdruck Ergebnis]														
<C>	000000000														
<C6>	000000														
<CC>	<u>00000000.000000000</u> Zweiter Zähler Erster Zähler														
<C5C4>	00000.0000														
[Eingabe]	[Aufdrucken/Aufdruck Ergebnis]														
<TIME>	16:28:30														

	<p><Datum> Zum Drucken (Hinzufügen) des Datums im gescannten Dokument geben Sie eine der Kombinationen "<MDY>", "<DMY>" oder "<YMD>" ein, wobei Y (Jahr), M (Monat) und D (Tag) bedeutet. Das Datum im westlichen Kalender wird in zehn Stellen aufgedruckt (oder hinzugefügt), wie folgt. Jahr, Monat und Tag werden durch Schrägstrich "/" getrennt. (Beispiel 2001/3/4 (4. März 2001)). [Eingabe] [Aufdrucken/Aufdruck Ergebnis] <YMD> 2001/03/04</p> <p><Pfeil> Zum Aufdrucken (Hinzufügen) eines Pfeils, wie folgt eingeben: [Eingabe] [Aufdrucken/Aufdruck Ergebnis] <U> ↑ <D> ↓ <L> ← <R> →</p> <p>(*) Für mehr Präzision können bis zu 32 Zeichen gedruckt (oder hinzugefügt) werden. Wenn ein Zähler, ein Datum oder eine Zeit eingegeben wird, kann die Anzahl der gedruckten (oder hinzugefügten) Zeichen 32 überschreiten, auch wenn die Anzahl der eingegebenen Zeichen innerhalb von 32 liegt. In diesem Fall erscheint eine Fehlermeldung. Im untenstehenden Beispiel ist das Ergebnis von Drucken/Hinzufügen 32 Zeichen, obwohl nur 25 Zeichen eingegeben wurden. [Eingabe] [Aufdrucken/Aufdruck Ergebnis] CANON<YMD><TIME><C6> CANON 2001/03/04 16:28:30 000001</p>
Horizontaler Abstand	Die Position angeben, wo die Zeichen erscheinen sollen, in einem Abstand in mm von der linken Papierkante des Papiereinzugs in Dokumenteneinzugsrichtung.
Vertikaler Abstand	Die Position zum Drucken/Hinzufügen von Zeichen als Abstand in mm von der Oberkante des Dokuments angeben.

<Aufdruck-Schriftsetzung>

Funktion	Beschreibung
Schwarz auf weiß	Druckt (bzw. fügt hinzu) schwarze Zeichen auf weißem Hintergrund. DR-5020/5080C
Weiß auf schwarz	Druckt (bzw. fügt hinzu) weiße Zeichen auf schwarzem Hintergrund. DR-5020/5080C
Schwarz auf Image	Druckt schwarze Zeichen auf das gescannte Bild. DR-5020/5080C This

<Sonstige Einstellungen>

Funktion	Beschreibung
Ausrichtung	Wählt die Ausrichtung bzw. Drehung der zu druckenden (hinzuzufügenden) Zeichen. Hierbei kann eine unter den folgenden Optionen gewählt werden: [Hochformat] (Voreinstellung) Schriftarten werden nicht gedreht. [Querformat] 90-Grad-Drehung im Uhrzeigersinn [180 Grad] 180-Grad-Drehung im Uhrzeigersinn [270 Grad] 270-Grad-Drehung im Uhrzeigersinn
Seiten	Wählt die Seite, auf die spezifizierte Zeichen gedruckt oder hinzugefügt werden sollen. [Jede Seite] Auf allen Seiten [Seite nach Trennblatt] Auf der Seite nach dem Trennblatt
Rechts nach links	Druckt (bzw. fügt hinzu) Zeichen von rechts nach links.
Kleine Schriftarten	Druckt (bzw. fügt hinzu) Zeichen in einer kleinen (8 x 7 Punkte) Schriftart. (Normale Größe ist 12 x 12 Punkte.) Normale Größe CANON canon Kleine Schriftart CANON canon

<Einstellung des ersten und zweiten Zählers>

Funktion	Beschreibung
Anfangswert	Stellt den Zähler-Anfangswert. Die Voreinstellung ist 0.
Erhöhung	Stellt den Zählerzuwachs ein. Die Voreinstellung ist 0 (keine Änderung).
Auslöser erhöhen	Wählt die Zeitsteuerung für den Zählerzuwachs unter den folgenden Optionen: [Neue Datei] Wenn eine neue Datei erreicht ist. [Trennblatt] Wenn ein Trennblatt eingefügt wird. [Neue Datei oder neues Trennblatt] Wenn eine neue Datei erreicht ist oder ein Trennblatt eingefügt wird. [Seite] Wenn ein Blatt des Dokuments eingezogen wird. [Nie] Keine
Rückstellwert	Stellt nach der Rückstellung des Zählers den ersten Wert ein. Die Voreinstellung ist 0.
Auslöser zurücksetzen	Wählt die Zeitsteuerung für die Zähler-Rückstellung unter den folgenden Optionen: [Neue Datei] Wenn eine neue Datei erreicht ist. [Trennblatt] Wenn ein Trennblatt eingefügt wird. [Neue Datei oder neues Trennblatt] Wenn eine neue Datei erreicht ist oder ein Trennblatt eingefügt wird. [Seite] Wenn ein Blatt des Dokuments eingezogen wird. [Nie] Keine

<Schaltflächen>

Funktion	Beschreibung
OK	Aktiviert die Einstellungen und schließt das Dialogfeld.
Abbrechen	Streich alle geänderten Einstellungen und schließt das Dialogfeld.
Vorgabe	Stellt alle Einstellungen auf Vorgaben zurück.
Hilfe	Zeigt die [Text]-Definition.

Einstellen der Gammakurve

Die Gamma-Kurve einstellen.



ANMERKUNG

Die "Gammakurven-Einstellung" verwendet Gammakurven-Daten, die vom Anwender zur Einstellung der Ausgangswerte (Ausgabe zum Computer) bezogen auf die Eingabewerte für 256 Helligkeitsgrade im gescannten Bild verfügbar sind.

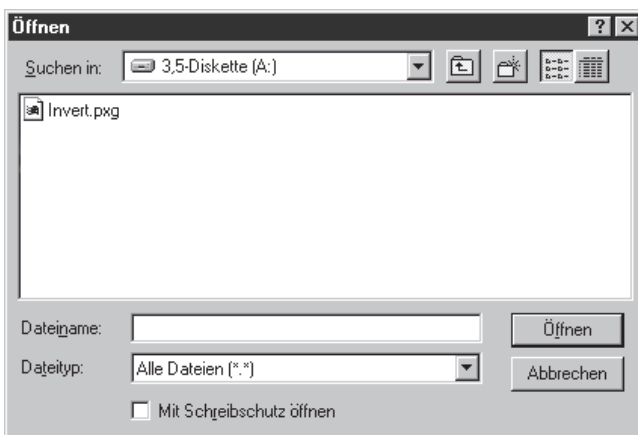
Einzelne Gammakurven werden für Grau (Schwarz und Weiß), Rot, Grün und Blau eingestellt.

Die hier eingestellte Gammakurve wird nicht aktiviert, wenn nicht [Heruntergeladene Datei verwenden] im Dialogfeld Gamma heruntergeladen angekreuzt ist.

- 1 Die Gammakurwendaten passend zur Gammakurve vorbereiten.
(Siehe "Vorbereitung von Gammakurwendaten" auf S. 38).
- 2 Die Farbe wählen, für die die Gammakurve eingestellt werden soll.



- 3 Auf [Herunterladen...] klicken und die verfügbaren Gammakurwendaten wählen.



4 Auf [Öffnen] klicken. Dies stellt die Gammakurve ein und stellt das Display zum Mehr-Dialogfeld zurück.

5 Zum Einstellen der Gammakurve für andere Farben Schritt 1 bis 4 wiederholen.

◆ Vorbereitung von Gammakurvendaten

Gammakurvendaten werden in einer Text-Datei (*.pxg) bestehend aus 258 Zeilen gespeichert. Diese Datei beschreibt die Ausgangswerte für jeden der 256 Eingangspegel.

Immer einen Kommentar in der ersten Zeile dieser Datei eintragen, und "256" in der 2. Zeile der Datei. Von der 3. Zeile ab werden die Ausgangswerte für die einzelnen Eingangswerte eingetragen. Geben Sie "0", "1", "2" usw. von der 3. Zeile an ein, und "255" für den Eingangswerte auf der 258. Zeile.

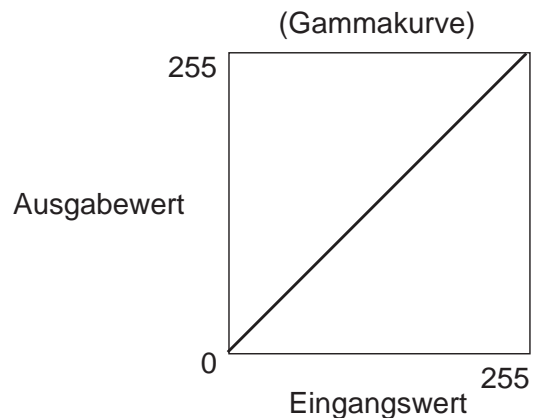
Kleine für die Gammadaten eingegebenen Werte führen zu einem dunklen Bild, und große Werte zu einem hellen.

◆ Beispiel

Normalerweise werden nach rechts geneigte Gammakurven vorbereitet. Eine nach links geneigte Gammakurve kann aber erstellt werden, indem alle Ausgangswerte umgekehrt werden. Als Ergebnis wird das Ausgabebild ebenfalls invertiert.

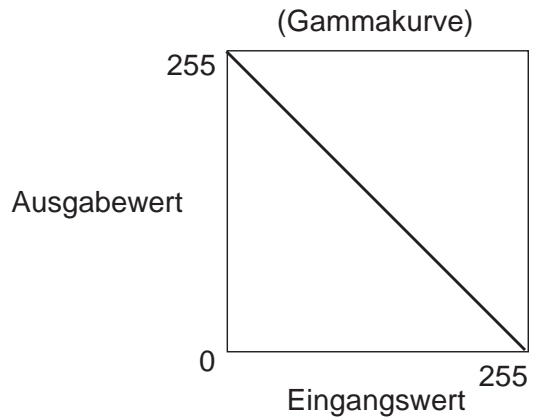
Gammakurvendaten

- 1. Zeile: Gammakurve
- 2. Zeile: 256
- 3. Zeile: 0
- 4. Zeile: 1
- 5. Zeile: 2
- |
- 253. Zeile: 250
- 254. Zeile: 251
- 255. Zeile: 252
- 256. Zeile: 253
- 257. Zeile: 254
- 258. Zeile: 255



Gammakurvendaten (invertiert)

- 1. Zeile: Gammakurve
- 2. Zeile: 256
- 3. Zeile: 255
- 4. Zeile: 254
- 5. Zeile: 253
- |
- 253. Zeile: 5
- 254. Zeile: 4
- 255. Zeile: 3
- 256. Zeile: 2
- 257. Zeile: 1
- 258. Zeile: 0



ANMERKUNG

Informationen über Gammakurvendaten werden intern vom Scanner bewahrt. Diese Informationen gehen nicht verloren, auch wenn der Scanner ausgeschaltet wird. Die Gammakurven-Information wird nicht geändert, bevor eine andere Gammakurve heruntergeladen wird.

DEUTSCH

Barcode-Decoder-Einstellungen

Die Barcode-Bedingungen einstellen. Diese Einstellungen sind nur verfügbar, wenn der optionale Barcode-Decoder installiert ist. Die Software muß den Barcode-Decoder unterstützen.

Auf dem Barcode-Dialogfeld können die folgenden Optionen gewählt werden:



ANMERKUNG

- Wenn zwei oder mehr Barcode-Typen horizontal ausgerichtet sind, kann ein Erkennungsfehler auftreten. Wählen Sie nur einen Barcode-Typ in der Barcode-Bereichseinstellung.
- Barcodes mit Aufdruckcodes können nicht zur gleichen Zeit wie Barcodes ohne Aufdruckcodes erkannt werden. Beim Scannen von Originalen, die sowohl Barcodes mit als auch ohne Aufdruckcodes enthalten, immer vor dem Scannen sicherstellen, daß der zu erkennende Bereich im Barcodebereich eingestellt wird.
- Wenn 400 dpi und Duplex-Scannen eingestellt ist, können nur Barcodes mit A4 Breite erkannt werden.
- Beim Scannen von Originalen, die zwei oder mehr Barcodes enthalten, und wenn nur ein spezifischer Typ von Barcode erkannt werden soll, stellen Sie den Erkennungsbereich im Barcode-Einstellbereich ein. Wenn dieser Bereich in der Scannbereich-Einstellung eingestellt wird, werden Barcodes außerhalb des Scannbereichs ebenfalls erkannt.
- Wenn der Barcode-Typ unbekannt ist, markieren Sie alle Wahlkästchen vor dem Scannen des Originals, so daß alle Barcode-Typen automatisch erkannt werden und die Prüfsumme nicht gescannt wird.

<Einstellungen>

Funktion	Beschreibung
Barcode-Erkennung aktivieren	Zum Lesen der Barcodes hier anklicken. Durch Markieren dieser Funktion können die folgenden Optionen gewählt werden:
Zu durchsuchende Seite	Wählt die Seite des Dokuments, auf dem Barcodes zu lesen sind. [Vorderseite durchsuchen] Liest Barcodes auf der Vorderseite [Rückseite durchsuchen] Liest Barcodes auf der Rückseite
Zu durchsuchender Bereich	[Aktivieren] markieren und den Erkennungsbereich einstellen, wenn nur ein bestimmter Abschnitt des Dokuments gescannt werden soll. Wenn [Aktivieren] nicht markiert wird, wird das gesamte Dokument gescannt. Den gewünschten Abschnitt mit X- und Y-Achsen-Koordinaten festlegen. Die Erkennungsreferenz in Richtung X (horizontal) ist die linke Kante des Papiereinzugs an der Vorderseite bezogen auf die Papiereinzugsrichtung, und die rechte Kante des Papiereinzugs an der Rückseite. Für die Erkennungsreferenz in Richtung Y (vertikal) die Länge von der Oberkante des Papiers eingeben. [Beginn X-Abstand] Die Position, an der der Scannvorgang in horizontaler Richtung starten soll, eingeben. [Ende X-Abstand] Die Position, an der der Scannvorgang in horizontaler Richtung enden soll, eingeben. [Beginn Y-Abstand] Die Position, an der der Scannvorgang in vertikaler Richtung starten soll, eingeben. [Ende Y-Abstand] Die Position, an der der Scannvorgang in vertikaler Richtung enden soll, eingeben.
Barcode pro Seite	Die Anzahl der zu lesenden Barcodes pro Blatt (1 bis 4) eingeben.

<EAN-Barcode-Einstellungen>

Funktion	Beschreibung
Aktivieren	Zum Lesen von EAN-Barcodes hier anklicken.
Aufdruck	Scannt den aufgedruckten Barcode.

<Code 39-Barcode-Einstellungen>

Funktion	Beschreibung
Aktivieren	Zum Lesen von Code 39-Barcodes hier anklicken.
Prüfsumme	Tastet die Prüfsumme ab.
Prüfsumme ausgeben	Sie können wählen, ob die Prüfsumme ausgegeben wird oder nicht, indem [Prüfsumme] markiert wird. Zur Ausgabe der Prüfsumme dieses Wahlkästchen markieren.
ST/SP ausgeben	Gibt START/STOP-Codes aus.

<Codabar-Barcode-Einstellungen>

Funktion	Beschreibung
Aktivieren	Zum Lesen von Codabar-Barcodes hier anklicken.
Prüfsumme	Tastet die Prüfsumme ab.
Prüfsumme ausgeben	Sie können wählen, ob die Prüfsumme ausgegeben wird oder nicht, indem [Prüfsumme] markiert wird. Zur Ausgabe der Prüfsumme dieses Wahlkästchen markieren.
ST/SP ausgeben	Gibt START/STOP-Codes aus.
Methode	Die Prüfsumme-Berechnungsmethode angeben. Entweder Modulo 16 oder 7DR wählen.

<Code 128-Barcode-Einstellungen>

Funktion	Beschreibung
Aktivieren	Zum Lesen von Code 128-Barcodes hier anklicken.

<ITF-Barcode-Einstellungen>

Funktion	Beschreibung
Aktivieren	Zum Lesen von ITF-Barcodes (einschließlich 2 aus 5 interleaved) hier anklicken.
Prüfsumme	Tastet die Prüfsumme ab.
Prüfsumme ausgeben	Sie können wählen, ob die Prüfsumme ausgegeben wird oder nicht, indem [Prüfsumme] markiert wird. Zur Ausgabe der Prüfsumme dieses Wahlkästchen markieren.

<UPC-Barcode-Einstellungen>

Funktion	Beschreibung
Aktivieren	Zum Lesen von UPC-Barcodes hier anklicken.
Aufdruck	Erkennt Aufdruck-Codes.
UPC-A	Prüfsumme ausgeben: Tastet die Prüfsumme ab. Kopfzeile ausgeben: Gibt den Kennsatz-Code aus.
UPC-E	Prüfsumme ausgeben: Tastet die Prüfsumme ab. Kopfzeile ausgeben: Gibt den Kennsatz-Code aus.

<Schaltflächen>

Funktion	Beschreibung
OK	Aktiviert die Einstellungen und schließt das Dialogfeld.
Abbrechen	Streicht alle geänderten Einstellungen und schließt das Dialogfeld.
Vorgabe	Stellt alle Einstellungen auf Vorgabe zurück.

Kapitel 4

Verwendung des TWAIN-Treibers

Dieses Kapitel beschreibt Betriebsvorgänge beim Ausführen von TWAIN-kompatiblen Applikationen mit dem TWAIN-Treiber.

4.1 Wählen des TWAIN-Treibers	46
4.2 Starten des TWAIN-Treibers	47
4.3 Einstellung der Scannbedingungen .	48
Grundlegende Einstellungen	49
Erweiterte Funktionen	56

4.1

Wählen des TWAIN-Treibers

Wählen Sie den TWAIN-Treiber, der verwendet werden soll. Führen Sie diesen Vorgang nur aus, nachdem der TWAIN-Treiber installiert worden ist. Der Vorgang muß nicht wiederholt werden, wenn nicht ein anderer Scanner als DR-5020/5080C angeschlossen wird.



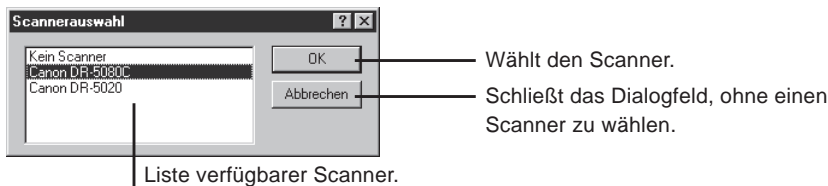
ANMERKUNG

Die in dieser Anleitung gezeigten Dialogfelder und Menüs sind nur Beispiele. Wie sie in der Praxis auf dem Bildschirm erscheinen, ist je nach verwendeter Applikation unterschiedlich. Manche Applikation unterstützen möglicherweise nicht alle in dieser Anleitung beschriebenen Funktionen. Einzelheiten erfragen Sie beim Lieferanten Ihrer Applikationssoftware.

1 Starten Sie die TWAIN-kompatible-Applikation.

2 Öffnen Sie den Scannerwahl-Bildschirm.

Wie der Scannerwahl-Bildschirm erscheint, hängt von der verwendeten Applikation ab.

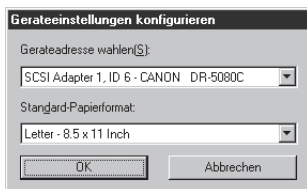


ANMERKUNG

Wenn Sie nicht Canon DR-5020 oder DR-5080C in der Liste sehen, installieren Sie den Treiber.

3 Klicken Sie auf Canon DR-5020 oder Canon DR-5080C in der Liste und dann [OK].

➡ Nachdem Sie den TWAIN-Treiber installiert haben, erscheint der Scannerwahl-Bildschirm nur beim ersten Starten des TWAIN-Treibers.



4 Stellen Sie [Standard-Papierformat] ein und klicken Sie auf [OK].

➡ Die hier eingestellte Seitengröße wird als Standard-Seitengröße genommen.

4.2 Starten des TWAIN-Treibers

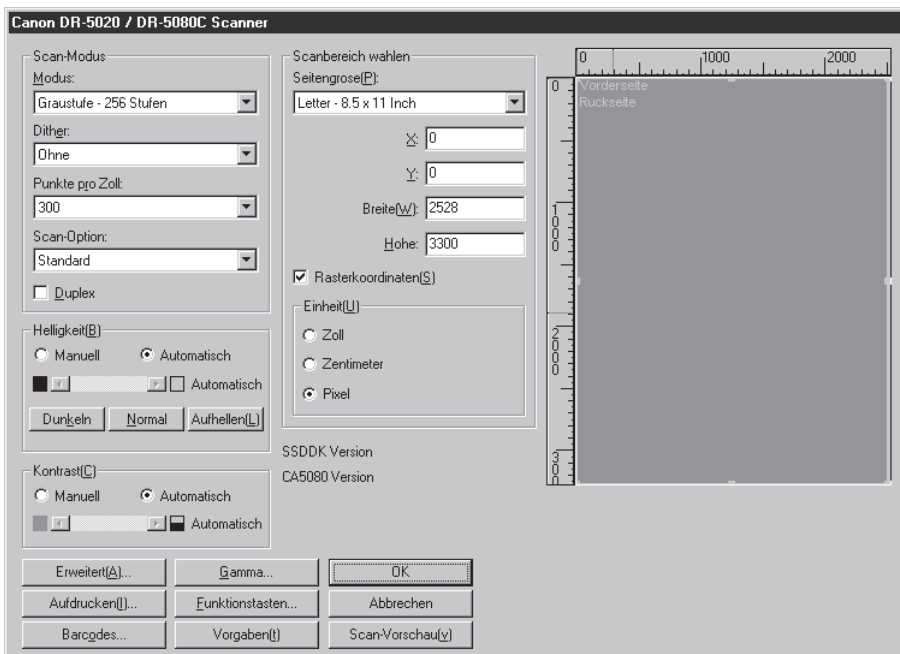
Starten Sie den TWAIN-Treiber aus der TWAIN-kompatiblen Applikation.

1 Die TWAIN-kompatible Applikation starten.

2 Den TWAIN-Treiber aus dem Scanner-Start-Menü “Eingabe von TWAIN-Vorrichtung” starten.

Das “Eingabe von TWAIN-Vorrichtung” Scanner-Start-Menü unterscheidet sich je nach verwendeter Applikation. Einzelheiten siehe Dokumentation der Applikation.

⇨ Das Canon DR-5020/5080C Scanner-Dialogfeld erscheint.



4.3

Einstellung der Scannbedingungen

Das Scanner-Dialogfeld ist in der Menü-Hierarchie, wie unten gezeigt organisiert. Die einzelnen Dialogfelder erscheinen je nach zu verwendender Funktion; nehmen Sie die gewünschten Einstellungen im betreffenden Dialogfeld vor. Einzelheiten zu den Einstellpunkten in diesen Dialogfeldern siehe zur Bezugnahme angegebene Seiten.

Canon DR-5020/5080C Scanner-Dialogfeld

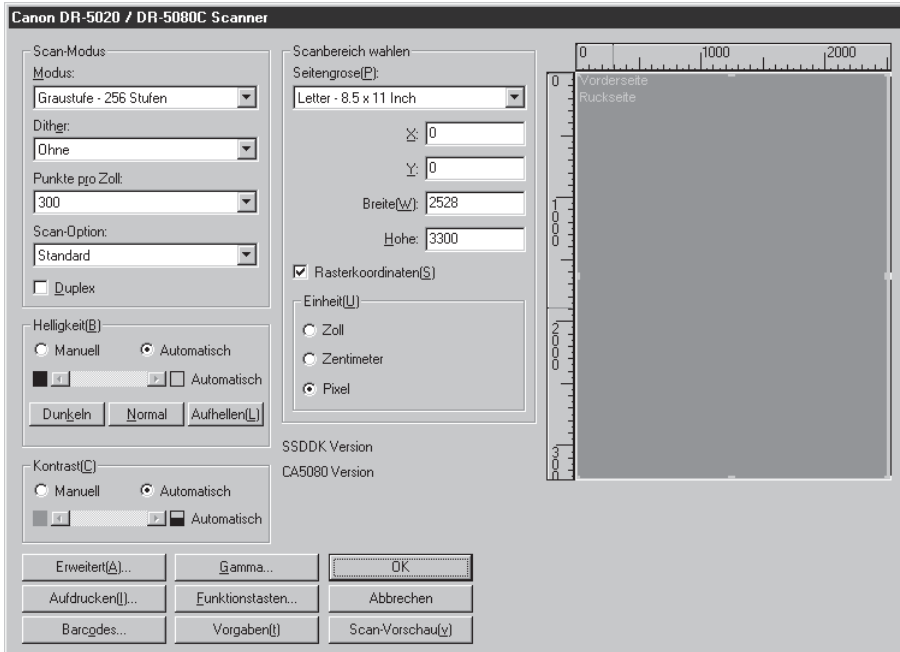
The screenshot shows the 'Canon DR-5020 / DR-5080C Scanner' dialog box. It is divided into several sections: 'Scan-Modus' (with 'Modus' set to 'Graustufe - 256 Stufen'), 'Helligkeit(B)' (set to 'Automatisch'), 'Kontrast(L)' (set to 'Automatisch'), 'Scanbereich wählen' (with 'Seitengröße(E)' set to 'Letter - 8.5 x 11 Inch'), and 'Einheit(L)' (set to 'Pixel'). At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Erweitert(A)...', 'Gamma...', 'OK', 'Aufdrucken(L)...', 'Funktionstasten...', 'Abbrechen', 'Barcode(s)...', 'Vorgaben(t)', and 'Scan-Vorschau(v)'. Five callout lines point from these buttons to a list of external dialog boxes: 'Dialogfeld Funktionstasten' (→ P. 30), 'Dialogfeld Herunterladen der Gammakurve' (→ P. 37), 'Dialogfeld Barcode' (→ P. 40), 'Dialogfeld Aufdrucken' (→ P. 32), and 'Dialogfeld Erweiterte Funktionen' (→ P. 56).



Einzelheiten über Funktionstasten, Gamma herunterladen, Barcodes und Aufdrucken/ Annotation siehe Kapitel 3 "Verwendung des ISIS-Treibers".

Grundlegende Einstellungen

Stellt die grundlegenden Scannbedingungen ein.
Diese Einstellung wird im Canon DR-5020/5080C Scanner-Dialogfeld ausgeführt.



<Einstellen des Scannmodus>





ANMERKUNG



Die tatsächlich zum Scannen verwendeten Modi sind begrenzt. Scannen ist manchmal je nach Kombination der Einstellungen unmöglich. Einzelheiten siehe "DR-5020/5080 Scanmodus-Tabellen" in der getrennten DR-5020/5080C Bedienungsanleitung (S. 88).

Funktion	Beschreibung
Modus	<p>Stellt ein, wie das Bild gescannt wird. Beim DR-5020 steht nur Schwarzweiß zur Verfügung.</p> <p>[Schwarzweiß] Scannt das Bild vollständig in Schwarzweiß ohne jegliche Grauschattierungen.</p> <p>[16-, 256-Stufen-Grauskalierung] Diesen Modus wählen, wenn Fotos und Halbton-Dokumente in Grauskalierung gescannt werden sollen. Je größer der Pegelwert, desto größer wird die Datei.</p> <p>[24-Bit-Farbe] Diesen Modus wählen, wenn Farboriginale wie Fotos gescannt werden sollen.</p> <p>[Farbe-3, 6, 12 Bit -> 4, 8-Bit Palette] Diese 4-Bit-Palette dient zum Umwandeln von 3-Bit-Farbdaten in 16 Farben zur Ausgabe, und die 8-Bit-Palette dient zum Umwandeln von 6- und 12-Bit-Farbdaten in 256 Farben zur Ausgabe.</p>
Dither	<p>Schaltet Raster-Verarbeitung ein oder aus.</p> <p>[Ohne] Kein Raster. Für Scannen von Text oder Vorlagen mit dünnen Linien verwenden, wenn keine Farben oder Graustufen vorliegen.</p> <p>[Fehlerdiffusion] Legt automatisch Fehlerdiffusion an, um den Graubereich von Halbtönen zu simulieren. Diese Einstellung verwenden, um Dokumente mit Halbtonwerten wie Fotos zu scannen.</p>
Punkte pro Zoll	<p>Erlaubt es, die Auflösung einzustellen, die Anzahl der Punkte pro Zoll (dpi). Sie haben 13 Wahlen: 100, 200, 210, 220, 230, 240, 250, 260, 270, 280, 290, 300 und 400 dpi (Punkte pro Zoll).</p>
Scan-Option	<p>Wählen Sie den Scan-Modus</p> <p>[Standard] In diesem Modus wird das Original gescannt, und das nächste Original wird gescannt, nachdem die gesamten gescannten Bilddaten zum PC übertragen sind.</p> <p>[Vorabscannen] In diesem Modus wird das Original gescannt, und das nächste Original wird gescannt, bevor die gescannten Bilddaten zum PC übertragen werden.</p> <p>[Einzelblatt scannen] In diesem Modus wird nur das Originalblatt gescannt.</p>
Duplex	<p>Markieren, um Vorder- und Rückseite eines Blatts zu scannen.</p>

<Helligkeit>

Funktion	Beschreibung
Manuell	Stellt die Helligkeit des Bildes manuell ein. Die Helligkeit kann von 1 bis 255 eingestellt werden, indem die Schaltflächen  und  geklickt werden.
Automatisch	Die Helligkeit wird nur automatisch eingestellt, wenn [Modus] auf [Schwarzweiß] und [Raster] auf [Ohne] gestellt ist. Wenn [Modus] auf eine andere Einstellung gestellt ist und die Helligkeit auf [Automatisch], wird die Helligkeit auf Vorgabe zurückgestellt.
Dunkeln-Schaltfläche	Stellt den Helligkeitswert auf 64 ein, um das Gesamtbild dunkler erscheinen zu lassen.
Normal-Schaltfläche	Stellt den Helligkeitswert auf 128 ein, um das Gesamtbild normal hell erscheinen zu lassen.
Aufhellen-Schaltfläche	Stellt den Helligkeitswert auf 192 ein, um das Gesamtbild heller erscheinen zu lassen.

<Kontrast>

Funktion	Beschreibung
Manuell	Stellt den Kontrast des gesamten gescannten Bildes manuell ein. Der Kontrast kann von 1 bis 13 eingestellt werden. Zum Einstellen des Kontrastes die Schaltflächen  und  klicken. Große Werte steigern den Kontrast, kleine Werte verringern ihn.
Automatisch	Stellt den Vorgabe-Kontrast ein.



ANMERKUNG

- Die Kontrasteinstellung ist deaktiviert, wenn der Modus auf "Schwarzweiß" gestellt ist.
- Beim DR-5020 ist das Kontrast-Wahlkästchen abgeblendet, wenn der Modus auf "Schwarzweiß" gestellt ist.

<Einstellen des Scannbereichs>

Diese Einstellung erlaubt es, einen spezifischen Teil innerhalb eines Dokuments zu wählen und zu scannen, zusätzlich zum Scannen des Dokuments mit der in [Seitengröße] eingestellten Größe.

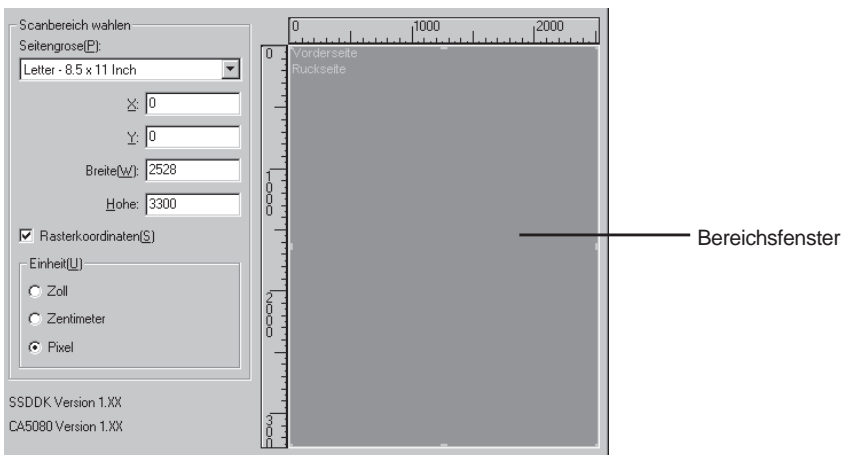
Sie können den Scannbereich sowohl an der Vorderseite als auch an der Rückseite des Dokuments einstellen. Beachten Sie, daß die Größe und Position des Scannbereichs an der Vorderseite und Rückseite in der gleichen Einstellung vorgenommen werden müssen.

Es gibt zwei Möglichkeiten zur Einstellung des Scannbereichs: Durch Eingabe von Koordinaten oder Zahlenwerten oder direkt durch Definierung des Bereichs auf dem Bildschirm.

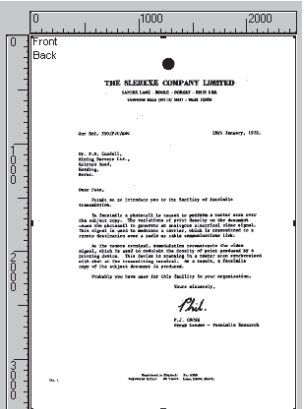
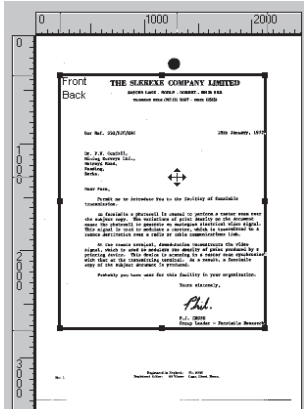


ANMERKUNG

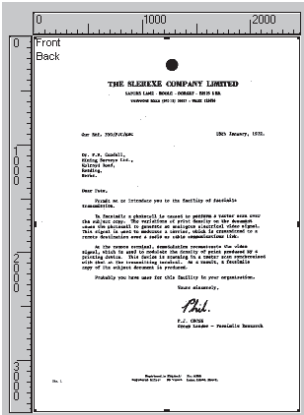
Die Einstellungen für "Seitengröße", die hier vorgenommen werden, sind ungültig, wenn Sie "Seitengröße erkennen" im Dialogfeld "Canon DR-5020/5080C Erweiterte Funktionen" (S. 58) gewählt haben.



Funktion	Beschreibung
Seitengröße	<p>Erlaubt es Ihnen, eine der folgenden Dokumentgrößen zum Scannen zu wählen:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Letter - 8.5 x 11 Inch Letter [gedreht]: 11 x 8.5 Inch Legal - 8.5 x 14 Inch (Vorgabe) Double Letter - 11 x 17 Inch A3 - 297 x 420 mm A4 - 210 x 297 mm A4 [gedreht] - 297 x 210 mm A5 - 148 x 210 mm A5 [gedreht] - 210 x 148 mm A6 - 105 x 148 mm A6 [gedreht] - 148 x 105 mm B4 (ISO) - 250 x 353 mm B4 (JIS) - 257 x 364 mm B5 (ISO) - 176 x 250 mm B5 (JIS) [gedreht] - 257 x 182 mm B5 (JIS) - 182 x 257 mm B5 (JIS) [gedreht] - 257 x 182 mm B6 (ISO) - 125 x 176 mm B6 (ISO) [gedreht] - 176 x 125 mm B6 (JIS) - 128 x 182 mm B6 (JIS) [gedreht] - 182 x 128 mm Maximum des Scanners (295 x 432 mm) <p>Wenn ein Dokument mit mehr als der vorgeschriebenen Größe gescannt wird, werden die Ränder des Dokuments abgeschnitten.</p> <p>Alternativ, wenn ein Dokument gescannt wird, das kleiner als die vorgeschriebene Größe ist, erscheint ein schwarzer Rand um das Dokuments.</p> <p>Falls Seitengröße erkennen im Erweiterte Funktionen-Dialogfeld von DR-5020/5080C gewählt wurde, wird diese Einstellung ignoriert.</p>
Position der Achse	<p>X: Die X-Koordinate in der oberen linken Ecke des Scannbereichs eingegeben.</p> <p>Y: Die Y-Koordinate in der oberen linken Ecke des Scannbereichs eingegeben.</p> <p>Breite: Stellt die Breite des Scannbereichs ein.</p> <p>Höhe: Stellt die Höhe des Scannbereichs ein.</p> <p>Die gleichen Koordinatenpositionen müssen auf Vorder- und Rückseite eingestellt werden.</p>

<p>Rasterkoordinaten</p>	<p>Stellt die Achsenposition im Scannbereich automatisch auf einen geeigneten Wert ein. Wenn die Einheit auf Zoll gestellt ist, ist der Wert ein Vielfaches von 1/8 Zoll; wenn er auf Zentimeter gestellt ist, ist dieser Wert ein Vielfaches von 0,1 cm; und wenn er auf Pixel (Bildpunkt) gestellt ist, ist dieser Wert ein Vielfaches von 32 Pixeln.</p>
<p>Einheit</p>	<p>Stellt die zur Anzeige des Scannbereichs verwendete Maßeinheit ein. Hierbei stehen Zoll, Zentimeter und Bildpunkte zur Wahl.</p>
<p>(Bereichsfenster)</p>	<p>Der Scannbereich wird im Bereichsfenster dargestellt. Die Größe des Bereichsfensters ist je nach Papiergröße unterschiedlich. Stellen Sie die Größe des Bereichs passend zum Vorschau-Fenster in Bereichsfenster durch Ausführen einer Vorschau (S. 55) des Dokuments ein. Sie können die Größe des Scannbereichs durch Ziehen der ■ Markierungscursor am Bereichsrahmen einstellen. Sie können auch den gesamten Scannbereich verschieben. Der spezifizierte Scannbereich gilt für sowohl Vorder- als auch Rückseite des Dokuments.</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;">   </div>

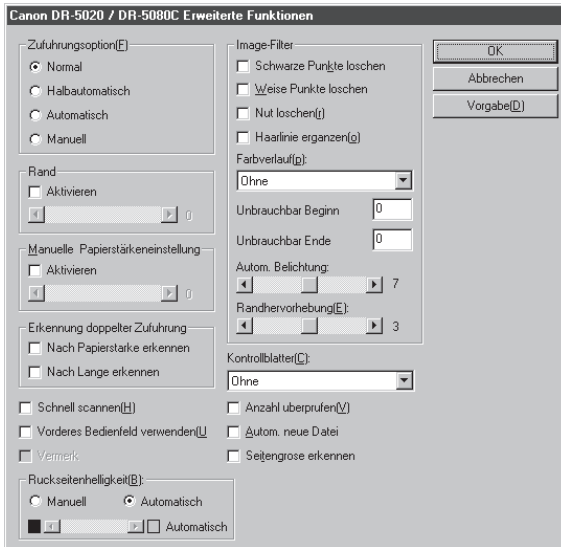
<Schaltflächen>

Funktion	Beschreibung
Erweitert...	Dient zum Abrufen des Erweiterte Funktionen-Dialogfelds des Canon DR-5020/5080C (S. 56) zum Einstellen von Details wie z.B. Filter, Scanngeschwindigkeit, Papierformaterkennung und Kontrollblatt-Erkennung.
Aufdrucken...	Ruft das Imprinter-Dialogfeld (S. 32) ab und dient zum Einstellen der Aufdrucken- oder Aufdruckfunktion. Die Aufdruckerfunktion druckt ausgewählte Zeichen auf das Dokument, wenn der optionale Imprinter installiert ist. Die Aufdruckfunktion fügt gescannten Bildern ausgewählte Zeichen hinzu.
Barcodes...	Ruft das Barcode-Dialogfeld ab (S. 40) und stellt die Bedingungen zum Lesen der Barcodes ein, wenn der optionale Barcode-Decoder installiert ist.
Gamma...	Ruft das Gamma Herunterladen-Dialogfeld ab (S. 37). Lädt und speichert Gamma-Daten für die Abbildung von Farben und Tönen in einer Datei.
Funktionstasten...	Ruft das Funktionstasten-Dialogfeld ab (S. 30), so daß den Funktionstasten des Scanner gewünschte Funktionen zugeordnet werden können.
Voreinstellung	Stellt alle Einstellungen auf Vorgaben zurück.
OK	Startet den Scannvorgang unter den aktuellen Einstellungen.
Abbrechen	Streich alle geänderten Einstellungen und bricht den Scannvorgang ab.
Scan-Vorschau	<p>Scannt eine Seite des Dokuments und zeigt eine Vorschau im Bereichsfenster.</p> 





Erweiterte Funktionen

Stellt detaillierte Scannbedingungen ein.

Die folgenden Punkte werden im Dialogfeld Erweiterte Funktionen des Canon DR-5020/5080C eingestellt.



Gegenstand	Beschreibung
Zuführungsoption	<p>Wählt die Zuführungsmethode</p> <p>Normal: Das Dokument wird zugeführt (gescannt), wenn Sie das Dokument laden, und der Scannvorgang wird in der Applikation eingegeben.</p> <p>Halbautomatisch: Das Dokument wird eingezogen (gescannt), wenn Scannen in der Applikation eingegeben wird, und wenn das Dokument eingelegt und die Start-Taste gedrückt wird.</p> <p>Automatisch: Das Dokument wird automatisch eingezogen (gescannt) wenn Sie das Dokument einlegen.</p> <p>Manuell: Das Dokument wird manuell um jeweils eine Seite zugeführt, nachdem Scannen in der Applikation gewählt ist.</p> <p>Die Anzeige Zuführungsoption am Bedienfeld des Scanners wird umgeschaltet, egal ob die Schaltfläche [OK] für hier vorgenommene Einstellungen gedrückt wird.</p>

Rand	<p>Stellt die Ränder des Scannbereichs ein (oben, unten, links und rechts).</p> <p>Zum Einstellen der Ränder klicken Sie [Aktivieren] und verwenden die Schaltflächen  und .</p> <p>Geben Sie innerhalb des Bereichs -10 (verringert den Scannbereich um 10 mm) und +10 (vergrößert den Scannbereich um 10 mm) ein.</p> <p>Wenn Sie z.B. den Scannbereich leicht vergrößern wollen, so daß das Dokument nicht abgeschnitten wird, stellen Sie in Richtung + ein. Wenn der Scannbereich leicht verringert werden soll, so daß sich kein schwarzer Rand um das Scannbild bildet, stellen Sie in Richtung - ein.</p>
Manuelle Papierstärken-einstellung	<p>Stellen Sie die Papierstärke manuell ein, wenn die Papierstärke nicht automatisch eingestellt wird.</p> <p>Klicken Sie auf "Aktivieren" und verwenden Sie die  und  Schaltflächen zum Einstellen der Stärke.</p> <p>Geben Sie die Stärke innerhalb des Bereichs 1 (am dünnsten) bis zu 13 (am dicksten) ein. Verwenden Sie diese Einstellung, um manuell die Papierstärke beim Scannen von speziell beschichteten Originalen und Dokumenten einzustellen, deren Papierstärke nicht automatisch eingestellt werden kann, oder wenn Doppelzuführung häufig bei automatischer Papierstärkeneinstellung auftritt.</p>
Erkennung doppelter Zuführung	<p>Wählt die Erkennungsmethode für doppelte Zuführung. "Doppelte Zuführung" wird erkannt, wenn zwei oder mehr Blatt des Dokuments gleichzeitig eingezogen werden, oder wenn beim kontinuierlichen Scannen ein Teil eines Blatts ein anderes Blatt überlappt.</p> <p>[Nach Papierstärke erkennen] Erkennt Doppelzuführung nach Papierstärke. Wenn das Papier stärker ist als das erste Blatt des Dokuments(*), beurteilt der Scanner dies als Doppelzuführung und gibt eine Fehlermeldung aus.</p> <p>[Nach Länge erkennen] Erkennt Doppelzuführung nach Papierlänge. Wenn ein Blatt zugeführt wird, das länger ist als das erste Blatt des Dokuments(*), beurteilt das System dies als Doppelzuführung und gibt eine Fehlermeldung aus.</p> <p>* Doppelblatterkennung wird durch Bestimmung von Stärke und Länge des ersten Blatts des Dokuments als Standardblatt ausgeführt. Wenn das erste Blatt des Dokuments zugeführt wird, speichert der Scanner die Stärke und Länge des Dokuments.</p>

<p>Schnell Scannen</p>	<p>Diese Einstellung steht zur Verfügung, wenn die Auflösung auf 200 oder 300 dpi eingestellt ist. Wenn 200 dpi eingestellt ist, werden Bilder mit 200 x 100 dpi (horizontal x vertikal) gescannt und Bilder mit 200 x 200 dpi ausgegeben. Wenn 300 dpi eingestellt ist, werden Bilder mit 300 x 150 dpi (horizontal x vertikal) gescannt und Bilder mit 300 x 300 dpi ausgegeben. Der Scannvorgang geschieht in diesem Fall zwar schneller, aber die Qualität des mit hoher Geschwindigkeit gescannten Bildes wird etwas geringer.</p>
<p>Vorderes Bedienfeld verwenden</p>	<p>Aktiviert die Einstellungen am Bedienfeld des Scanners.</p>
<p>Vermerk</p>	<p>Aktiviert den optionalen Vermerk.</p>
<p>Kontrollblätter</p>	<p>Wählt, wie der Scanner Kontrollblätter erkennt.</p> <p>[Ohne] Scanner-Kontrollblätter werden nicht erkannt.</p> <p>[Scannen, Scannen fortsetzen] Das Scanner-Kontrollblatt wird erkannt und gescannt, und danach wird der Scannvorgang fortgesetzt.</p> <p>[Überspringen, Scannen fortsetzen] Das Scanner-Kontrollblatt wird erkannt und übersprungen (nicht gescannt), und danach wird der Scannvorgang fortgesetzt.</p> <p>[Scannen, Scannen beenden] Das Scanner-Kontrollblatt wird erkannt und gescannt, und danach stoppt der Scannvorgang.</p> <p>[Überspringen, Scannen beenden] Das Scanner-Kontrollblatt wird erkannt und übersprungen (nicht gescannt), und danach stoppt der Scannvorgang.</p>
<p>Anzahl überprüfen</p>	<p>Die Anzahl der gezählten Seiten vor dem Scannvorgang mit der Anzahl der gescannten Seiten vergleichen. Wenn die Zahlen sich unterscheiden, erscheint eine Fehlermeldung.</p>
<p>Autom. neue Datei</p>	<p>Diese Einstellung erzeugt ein Neue-Seite-Signal jedesmal, wenn ein kontinuierlicher Scan endet. Dadurch können die Datei-Begrenzungszeichen in der entsprechenden verwendeten Applikation eingegeben werden.</p>
<p>Seitengröße erkennen</p>	<p>Diese Funktion erkennt beim Scannen das Format eines Dokuments und scannt das Dokument entsprechend dieser Größe. Wenn diese Funktion gewählt wurde, ist Seitengröße im Scanner-Dialogfeld des DR-5020/5080C deaktiviert.</p>





<Einstellung der Rückseitenhelligkeit>

Funktion	Beschreibung
Manuell	Stellt manuell die Helligkeit ein, mit der das Dokument gescannt werden soll. Die Helligkeit kann in einem Bereich von 1 bis 255 eingestellt werden. Klicken Sie auf die Schaltflächen ◀ und ▶, um die Helligkeit einzustellen.
Automatisch	Die Helligkeit wird nur automatisch eingestellt, wenn [Modus] auf [Schwarzweiß] und [Raster] auf [Ohne] gestellt ist. Wenn [Modus] auf eine andere Einstellung gestellt ist als [Schwarzweiß] und die Helligkeit auf [Automatisch], wird die Helligkeit auf Vorgabe zurückgestellt.

<Bildfilter-Einstellungen>

Den Bildverarbeitungsfilter einstellen.

Funktion	Beschreibung
Schwarze Punkte löschen	Löscht automatisch isolierte schwarze Punkte (einzelne Punkte) auf weißen Hintergründen.
Weißer Punkte löschen	Löscht automatisch isolierte weiße Punkte (einzelne Punkte) auf schwarzen Hintergründen.
Nut löschen	Löscht automatisch Teile (Nuten), die aus Konturen hervorstehen.
Haarlinie ergänzen	Fügt automatisch schwache oder unterbrochene dünne Linien zusammen, die entstehen, wenn Dokumente mit schwachen Linien gescannt werden.
Farbverlauf	Klicken Sie hier, um die Farbunterdrückung-Funktion zu aktivieren. Diese Funktion ist nur am DR-5080C aktiviert. [Ohne] Farbunterdrückung wird nicht ausgeführt. [Rot] Rote Schrift/Bereiche auf dem Dokument werden unterdrückt/nicht gescannt. [Grün] Grüne Schrift/Bereiche auf dem Dokument werden unterdrückt/nicht gescannt. [Blau] Blaue Schrift/Bereiche auf dem Dokument werden unterdrückt/nicht gescannt.
Unbrauchbar Beginn	Wenn das Dokument einen Bereich enthält, wo Farbunterdrückung deaktiviert werden soll, den Startpunkt dieses Bereichs als Abstand (mm) von der Oberkante des Papiers angeben.

Unbrauchbar Ende	Den Endpunkt des Bereichs, wo Farbunterdrückung deaktiviert werden soll, als Abstand (mm) von der Oberkante des Papiers angeben.
Autom. Belichtung	Stellt den Pegel der AE (Autom. Belichtung) Funktion ein. (Diese Funktion stellt Helligkeit und Kontrast entsprechend der Schattierung in dem Bereich, in dem das Bild gewählt ist, ein.) Diese Einstellung kann in 13 Stufen mit den Schaltflächen  und  vorgenommen werden. Vorgabe ist 7.
Randhervorhebung	Stellt den Pegel zur Verbesserung der Konturen von Buchstaben ein und weicht die Grobheit von Bildern wie Fotos auf. Diese Einstellung kann in fünf Stufen mit den Schaltflächen  und  vorgenommen werden. Vorgabe ist 3.



ANMERKUNG

- [Schwarze Punkte löschen], [Weiße Punkte löschen], [Nut löschen] und [Haarlinie ergänzen] sind aktiviert, wenn [Modus] auf [Schwarzweiß] und [Raster] auf [Fehlerdiffusion] gestellt ist.
- [Farbverlauf] ist aktiviert, wenn [Modus] auf eine andere Einstellung als [Farbe] gestellt ist.
- [AE] ist aktiviert, wenn [Modus] auf [Schwarzweiß] gestellt ist.
- [Randhervorhebung] ist in allen Modi aktiviert.

<Schaltflächen>

Funktion	Beschreibung
OK	Aktivieren der Einstellungen und Schließen des Dialogfelds.
Abbrechen	Hebt alle geänderten Einstellungen auf und schließt das Dialogfeld.
Vorgabe	Stellt alle Einstellungen auf Vorgabe zurück.

Stichwortverzeichnis

- A -

Achsenposition	23, 53
Anfangswert	36
Anzahl überprüfen	27, 58
Aufdruck	32
Aufdruck-Typ	35
Aufdrucken aktivieren	30
Aufdrucker	32
Auslöser erhöhen	36
Auslöser zurücksetzen	36
Ausrichtung	35
Autom. Belichtung	28, 59
Autom. Neue Datei	25, 58
Automatisch	25, 56

- B -

Barcode decoder Settings	40
Barcode pro Seite	41
Barcode-Erkennung aktivieren	41
Bereichfenster	24, 54

- C -

Codabar	42
Code 39	42
Code 128	42

- D -

Dialogfeld Aufdrucken/Aufdruck	32
Dialogfeld Barcode	40
Dialogfeld Erweiterte Funktionen	56
Dialogfeld Herunterladen der Gammakurve	37
Dialogfeld Mehr	25
Dialogfeld Scanner	48, 49
Dialogfeld Scanner-Einstellungen	18
Duplex	50

- E -

EAN	41
Einheit	22, 54
Einstellen der Gammakurve	37
Einstellung der Rückseitenhelligkeit	59

Einstellung der Scan-Bedingunge ..	17
Einstellungen speichern	30
Erhöhung	36
Erkennung doppelter Zuführung	26, 30, 57

- F -

Farbverlauf	28, 59
Fenster	23
Funktionstasten	30

- G -

Gammakurvendaten	38
Grundeinstellungen wiederherstellen	30

- H -

Haarlinie ergänzen	28, 59
Halbautomatisch	25, 56
Helligkeit	20, 51
Horizontaler Abstand	34
Installation des Treibers	11

- I -

ITF	42
-----------	----

- K -

Kleine Schriftarten	35
Kontrast	21, 51
Kontrollblätter	27, 58

- M -

Manuell	25, 56
Manuelle Papierstärkeneinstellung	26, 30, 57
Modus	18, 50

- N -

Normal	25, 56
Nut löschen	28, 59

- P -

Papierstärken-Modus	30
Punkte pro Zoll	19, 50

- R -

Rand	26, 57
Randhervorhebung	28, 60
Raster	19, 50
Rasterkoordinaten	23, 54
Rechts nach links	35
Regionsauswahl	21
Rückstellwert	36

- S -

Scanbereich	22, 52
Scan-Option	50
Schnell Scannen	27, 58
Schwarz auf Image	35
Schwarz auf weiß	35
Schwarze Punkte löschen	28, 59
Seiten	35
Seitengröße	19, 23, 53
Seitengröße erkennen	27, 58
Setup-CD-ROM	10
Starten des TWAIN-Treibers	47
Systemanforderungen	6

- T -

Text (Aufdrucken/Aufdruck)	33
----------------------------------	----

- U -

UPC	43
-----------	----

- V -

Vermerk	27, 58
Vertikaler Abstand	34
Vorderes Bedienfeld verwenden	27, 58

- W -

Wählen des ISIS-Treibers	16
Wählen des TWAIN-Treibers	46
Weiß auf schwarz	35
Weißer Punkte löschen	28, 59

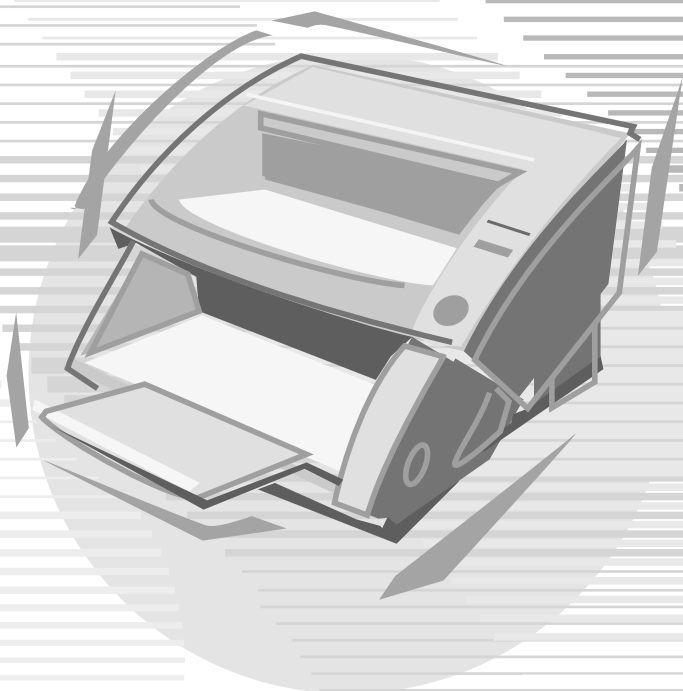
- Z -

Zähler	33, 36
Zu durchsuchende Seite	41
Zu durchsuchender Bereich	41
Zuführungsoption	25, 56

ISIS/TWAIN Driver

Instrucciones

Antes de utilizar esta unidad, cerciórese de leer detenidamente este manual, y después guárdelo en un lugar seguro.



AVISO

- ① Copyright© 1999 por CANON ELECTRONICS INC. Reservados todos los derechos. Ninguna de esta parte de esta publicación deberá reproducir, transmitir, transmitir, ni almacenarse en un sistema de recuperación, ni traducirse a ningún idioma ni lenguaje de PC de ninguna forma y con ningún medio, electrónico, mecánico, magnético, óptico, químico, manual, ni ningún otro, sin el previo permiso de CANON ELECTRONICS INC.
- ② El contenido de este manual está sujeto a cambios sin previo aviso.
- ③ Se han hecho todos los esfuerzos posibles para asegurar la precisión de la información presentada en este manual. Sin embargo, Canon Electronics Inc. Y las subsidiarias de la contraportada no se harán responsables por ningún error ni sus consecuencias.
- ④ No nos haremos responsables por ningún daño resultante de cualquier operación, a pesar del punto ③.

Marcas comerciales y registradas

- Microsoft Windows® y Microsoft Windows NT® son marcas registradas de Microsoft Corporation en EE.UU. y en otros países.
- ISIS® es una marca registrada de Pixel Translation A Division of ActionPoint Inc.
- Adaptec es una marca registrada de ADAPTEC Inc.
- IBM y PC/AT son marcas registradas de International Business Machines Corporation.
- Pentium® es una marca registrada de Intel Corporation U.S.A.
- Los nombres de los productos mencionados aquí son para fines de identificación solamente y pueden ser marcas comerciales y/o registradas de sus respectivas compañías.

INTRODUCCIÓN

Muchas gracias por la adquisición del escáner de documentos Canon DR-5020/5080C.

En total, con el DR-5020/5080C se suministran tres manuales: Instrucciones del Controlador ISIS/TWAIN (este manual), Instrucciones del DR-5020/5080C e instrucciones de la Scanning Utility 5000.

Este manual describe el modo de utilizar el controlador ISIS/TWAIN para usar el DR-5020/5080C en aplicaciones Windows. Cerciérese de leer este manual y las instrucciones del DR-5020/5080 por separado antes de usar el producto para asegurarse de poder utilizar de forma efectiva las funciones del DR-5020/5080C. Como la aplicación de escáner empaquetada con el DR-5020/5080C utiliza un controlador de escáner exclusivo, no necesita el uso de controladores de escáner, tales como el controlador ISIS o TWAIN.

Además, cuando haya leído este manual, asegúrese de guardarlo en un lugar seguro.

A continuación se describe el contenido de cada uno de estos manuales.

Instrucciones para el Controlador ISIS/TWAIN (este manual)

Este manual describe operaciones para cuando el escáner es utilizado con una utilidad compatible con el controlador ISIS o controlador TWAIN.

Instrucciones para el DR-5020/5080C

Este manual describe el modo de conectar el escáner, cargar documentos, retirar el papel atascado y otra información sobre el manejo del escáner. Lea esta manual antes de utilizar el DR-5020/5080C.

Instrucciones para la Scanning Utility 5000

Este manual describe el modo de utilizar la aplicación de escáner provista con el escáner.

■ Precaución

Tenga en cuenta lo siguiente cuando utilice el escáner para hacer copias:

- Es ilegal reproducir dinero, billetes, valores negociables y demás documentos prohibidos y puede estar sujeta a penalización judicial.
- También es ilegal reproducir certificados legales, billetes de viaje, documentos con derecho de autor y privados y otros ítems, y puede estar sujeta penalización judicial.
- Cuando vaya a utilizar una imagen copiada con cualquier otro fin que no sea para uso estrictamente personal o dentro de los confines de su propio hogar deberá obtener el permiso del propietario de los derechos de autor.

CONVENCIONALISMOS

Este manual utiliza los siguientes símbolos e indicaciones. Antes de empezar a leer este manual, lea lo siguiente y familiarícese con sus significados.



Lea atentamente para evitar la muerte o heridas graves.



Lea atentamente para evitar daños al equipo o la pérdida de valiosos datos.



Los memorándums indican el lugar donde podrá encontrar información útil en este manual. Un número entre paréntesis indica un número de página que contiene más información sobre la frase o párrafo previo.



Observaciones sobre operaciones y cómo evitar pequeñas dificultades.

■ Esta unidad

En este manual se hace referencia al DR-5020 y al DR-5080C conjuntamente como el «escáner». Si se requiere una información individual para cada tipo de máquina, este manual hace referencia al escáner específicamente mediante DR-5020 y DR-5080C.

ÍNDICE

INTRODUCCIÓN	1
CONVENCIONALISMOS	2
Capítulo 1 Lea esto primero	5
1.1 Requisitos del sistema	6
Cuando utilice el controlador ISIS/TWAIN	6
1.2 Forma de leer este manual	8
Aplicación compatible con ISIS	8
Aplicación compatible con TWAIN	8
Capítulo 2 Instalación del controlador ISIS/TWAIN	9
2.1 Antes de empezar	10
2.2 Instalación del controlador	11
Capítulo 3 Utilización del controlador ISIS	15
3.1 Selección del controlador ISIS	16
3.2 Fijación de las condiciones de exploración	17
Configuración básica	18
Fijación de la zona de exploración	22
Configuración detallada	25
Configuración de las teclas de función	30
Configuración del suplemento/sello	32
Configuración de curva Gamma	37
Opciones del decodificador de código de barras	40
Capítulo 4 Utilización del controlador TWAIN	45
4.1 Selección del controlador TWAIN	46
4.2 Inicio del controlador TWAIN	47
4.3 Fijación de las condiciones de exploración	48
Configuración básica	49
Opciones avanzadas	56
Índice alfabético	61

Capítulo 1

Lea esto primero

Ese capítulo describe cosas que debe saber antes de instalar los controladores ISIS y TWAIN del DR-5020/5080C en su ordenador.

1.1 Requisitos del sistema.....	6
Cuando utilice el controlador ISIS/TWAIN .	6
1.2 Forma de leer este manual	8
Aplicación compatible con ISIS	8
Aplicación compatible con TWAIN	8

1.1

Requisitos del sistema

Para que el controlador ISIS/TWAIN del DR-5020/5080C funcione correctamente deberá disponer del hardware y sistema operativo siguiente:

- Un ordenador IBM PC/AT o compatible, con una CPU Pentium a 133 MHz o superior y un mínimo de 64 MB de memoria
 - OS: Microsoft Windows® 95/98/Me o WindowsNT® 4.0 Workstation/Windows 2000 Professional
 - Al menos 100 MB de espacio libre en el disco duro (al menos 5 MB después de la instalación)
- Monitor compatible con SVGA
- Teclado, ratón e impresora compatibles con Microsoft Windows, Unidad de disco CD-ROM (velocidad 4x o más rápida)
- Tarjeta SCSI cuya operación haya sido confirmada
Se ha confirmado la operación de las siguientes tarjetas SCSI:
Adaptec serie AHA-1540 y serie AHA-2940
- Cable SCSI compatible con SCSI-2

Cuando utilice el controlador ISIS/TWAIN

- Cerciórese de instalar ambos controladores ISIS y TWAIN durante la misma operación de instalación. Estos controladores no se pueden instalar por separado.
- El controlador ISIS/TWAIN no soporta necesariamente todas las aplicaciones compatibles con ISIS y TWAIN.
- Los cuadros de diálogo y menús utilizados en las aplicaciones compatibles con ISIS/TWAIN mostrados en este manual son sólo ejemplos. Tenga en cuenta que la forma en que aparezcan en su propia pantalla podrá variar de acuerdo con la aplicación que esté utilizando. Algunas aplicaciones podrán no soportar todas las funciones descritas en este manual. Para más detalles, póngase en contacto con su distribuidor de software.
- La aplicación no soporta las funciones del DR-5020/5080C, por lo que ésta podrá no funcionar debidamente.
- Este controlador ISIS/TWAIN utiliza [wnasp32.dll] para controlar el escáner. Si [wnasp32.dll] no ha sido instalado correctamente, el escáner no funcionará. Si [wnasp32.dll] no está instalado, póngase en contacto con el fabricante de la tarjeta SCSI que esté utilizando, o con un representante de servicio Canon.

- Si va a instalar el controlador en un ordenador que esté funcionando con Windows 95, y utiliza el [wnasp32.dll] que fue instalado originalmente en Windows 95, el controlador ISIS/TWAIN podrá no funcionar correctamente. En este caso, ejecute [Aspiinst.exe] de la carpeta [Pixtran] que encontrará en el CD de instalación para actualizar [wnasp32.dll] con la última versión. Por nuestra parte ya hemos detectado el siguiente gazapo al seleccionar el escáner en un ordenador que funcionando con Windows 95:
 - Cuando la versión de [wnasp32.dll] de la carpeta del sistema es “1,0,0,0”, ocurre una finalización forzada.
- Este controlador ISIS/TWAIN soporta seis idiomas (japonés, inglés, alemán, francés, español e italiano). El idioma del controlador se selecciona automáticamente de acuerdo con la Configuración regional en Windows. Si el idioma del controlador difiere del idioma de la aplicación que esté utilizando, los cuadros de diálogo del controlador podrán no visualizarse correctamente. Si se diera el caso, haga coincidir el idioma del controlador con el de la aplicación. Para cambiar el idioma del controlador, cambie la Configuración regional en el panel de control. También puede cambiar el idioma del controlador sin cambiar la Configuración regional. Para ello, añada las dos líneas siguientes al archivo “Setscan.ini” en la carpeta Windows. Esto fijará el idioma del controlador.

[Opciones]

¡Language=xxxx (xxx significa idioma)

xxxx (definición de idioma)

1031=Alemán

1033=Inglés

1034=Español

1036=Francés

1040=Italiano

1041=Japonés

Si no consigue obtener el idioma especificado a pesar de cambiar la Configuración regional en el panel de control y cambiar el idioma en el archivo “Setscan.ini”, una causa probable podrá ser que la aplicación que está utilizando restringe el cambio de idioma. En este caso, no podrá cambiar el idioma.

1.2

Forma de leer este manual

Lea el capítulo respectivo en este manual después de haber comprobado primero cuál es el controlador, ISIS o TWAIN, que soporta la aplicación que esté utilizando.

Aplicación compatible con ISIS

Capítulo 2 Instalación del controlador ISIS/TWAIN (P. 9)

Esta sección describe el modo de instalar el controlador ISIS/TWAIN en el ordenador.

Capítulo 3 Utilización del controlador ISIS (P. 15)

Este capítulo describe el modo de seleccionar el controlador ISIS en la aplicación y su preparación detallada para la exploración.

Aplicación compatible con TWAIN

Capítulo 2 Instalación del controlador ISIS/TWAIN (P. 9)

Esta sección describe el modo de instalar el controlador ISIS/TWAIN en el ordenador.

Capítulo 4 Utilización del controlador TWAIN (P. 45)

Este capítulo describe el modo de seleccionar el controlador TWAIN en la aplicación y la preparación detallada para la exploración.



Para más detalles sobre cómo conectar el escáner, refiérase a las Instrucciones para el DR-5020/5080C.

Capítulo 2

Instalación del controlador ISIS/TWAIN

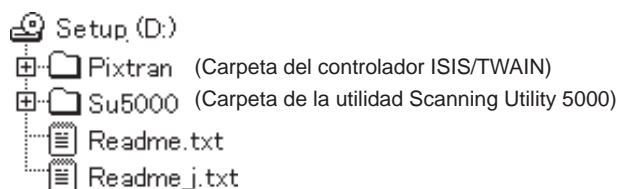
Esta sección describe el procedimiento para instalar el controlador ISIS/TWAIN del DR-5020/5080C en el ordenador.

2.1 Antes de empezar	10
2.2 Instalación del controlador	11

2.1 Antes de empezar

Antes de empezar a instalar el controlador ISIS/TWAIN, compruebe los ítems siguientes.

- **Cerciórese de que el sistema operativo del ordenador en el que va a instalar el controlador ISIS/TWAIN es Microsoft Windows® 95/98/Me o Microsoft WindowsNT® 4.0 Workstation/Windows 2000 Professional.**
- **Conecte el ordenador.**
Para más detalles sobre cómo conectarlo al escáner, refiérase a las Instrucciones del DR-5020/5080C por separado.
- **CD-ROM de instalación**
El CD-ROM de instalación está compuesto de las siguientes capas.
Antes de instalar el controlador ISIS/TWAIN, asegúrese de leer "Readme.txt".
Después de que haya instalado el controlador ISIS/TWAIN, guarde el disco CD-ROM de instalación en un lugar seguro.



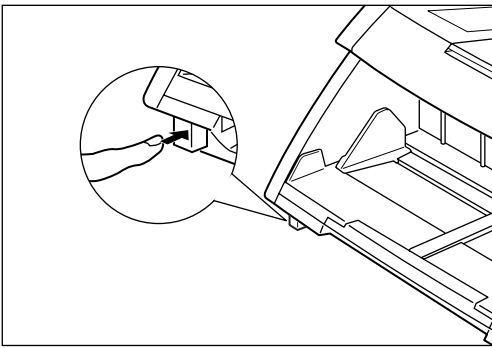
2.2 Instalación del controlador

Instale el controlador ISIS/TWAIN.



Con el procedimiento descrito abajo se instalan ambos controladores ISIS y TWAIN. Estos controladores no se pueden instalar por separado.

1 Encienda el escáner.



2 Encienda el ordenador.

⇒ Se iniciará Windows.

3 Si ya tiene instalado otro controlador compatible con ISIS, haga copias de seguridad de los siguientes archivos antes de empezar la instalación:

\\WINDOWS\\SYSTEM\\PIX*.DLL
\\WINDOWS\\PIXTRAN*.*



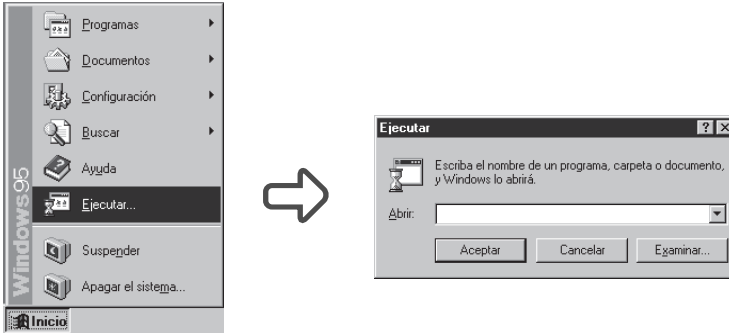
- Cuando haya instalado el controlador ISIS/TWAIN, podrá modificar los archivos de arriba. Antes de empezar la instalación, cerciórese de hacer copias de seguridad.
- Los nombres de las carpetas \\Windows y \\Windows\\system variarán de acuerdo con la versión de Windows que esté utilizando. En las siguientes explicaciones, sustituya los nombres de las carpetas \\Windows y \\Wwindows\\system con los nombres de las carpetas de la versión Windows que esté utilizando.

4 Inserte el disco de instalación en la unidad de CD-ROM.

5 Haga clic en el botón [Inicio] y seleccione Ejecutar.

La pantalla que aparezca variará de acuerdo con la versión de Windows que esté utilizando.

[Windows95]



6 En Abrir, escriba “D:\pixtran\setup.exe” y haga clic en [Aceptar].

En estas instrucciones, la unidad de CD-ROM esté especificada como D.

⇒ Aparecerá la pantalla de instalación del controlador.



7 Haga clic en [Next] para ejecutar la instalación.

⇒ Aparecerá la pantalla de instalación completada.



8 Haga clic en [Finish] para completar la instalación.

Capítulo 3

Utilización del controlador ISIS

Este capítulo describe las operaciones para cuando el controlador ISIS vaya a funcionar en una aplicación compatible con ISIS.

3.1 Selección del controlador ISIS	16
3.2 Fijación de las condiciones de exploración.....	17
Configuración básica	18
Fijación de la zona de exploración	22
Configuración detallada	25
Configuración de las teclas de función	30
Configuración del suplemento/sello.....	32
Configuración de curva Gamma	37
Opciones del decodificador de código de barras	40

3.1 Selección del controlador ISIS

Seleccione el controlador ISIS que vaya a utilizar.

Realice esta operación solamente después de haber conectado el controlador ISIS. Además, a menos que conecte un escáner distinto al DR-5020/5080C, no será necesario repetir esta operación.



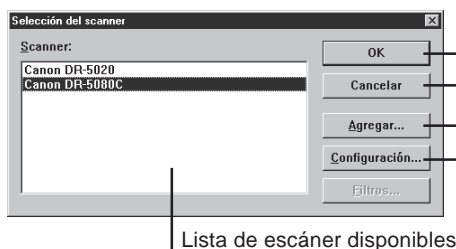
MEMORÁNDUM

Los cuadros de diálogo y menús de este capítulo son sólo ejemplos. Tenga en cuenta que la forma en que aparezcan en su propia pantalla podrá variar de acuerdo con la aplicación que esté utilizando. Algunas aplicaciones podrán no soportar todas las funciones descritas en este manual. Para más detalles, refiérase al manual de la aplicación que esté utilizando.

1 Inicie la aplicación compatible con ISIS.

2 Abra la pantalla Selección del escáner.

La pantalla de Selección de escáner que aparezca variará de acuerdo con la aplicación que esté utilizando.



Selecciona el escáner.

Cierra el cuadro de diálogo sin seleccionar el escáner.

Haga clic en este botón para agregar otros escáner.

Se utiliza para configurar el escáner.

Lista de escáner disponibles

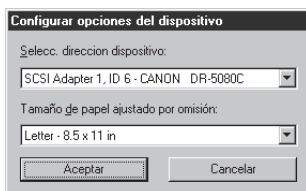


MEMORÁNDUM

Si no encuentra Canon DR-5020 o DR-5080C en la lista, instale el controlador.

3 Haga clic en Canon DR-5020 o Canon DR-5080C de la lista, y haga clic en [OK].

⇒ Se visualizará la pantalla Configurar opciones del dispositivo.



4 Ajuste el [Tamaño de papel ajustado por omisión] y haga clic en [Aceptar].

⇒ El tamaño de página que ajuste aquí será el ajuste por omisión.

3.2

Fijación de las condiciones de exploración de exploración

El cuadro de diálogo Opciones del escáner está organizado en la jerarquía de menú mostrada abajo.

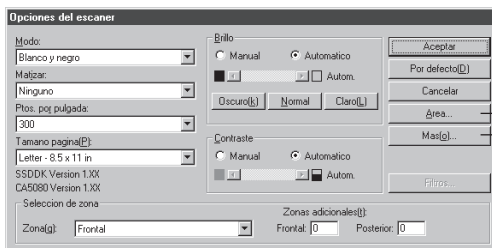
Visualice estos cuadros de diálogo de acuerdo con la función que quiera utilizar y realice las configuraciones necesarias.

Para más detalles sobre los ítems a configurar en cada uno de estos cuadros de diálogo, consulte el número de página de referencia.

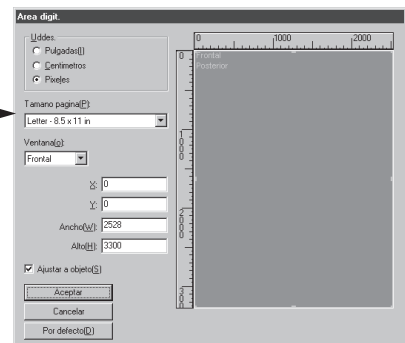
1 Inicie la aplicación compatible con ISIS.

2 Abra la pantalla Opciones del escáner.

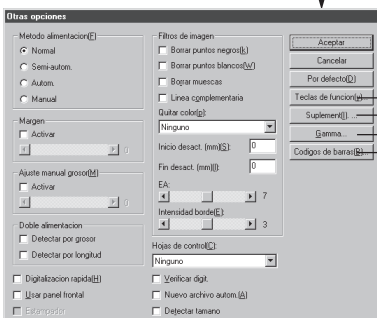
La pantalla de Opciones del escáner que aparezca variará de acuerdo con la aplicación que esté utilizando.



Cuadro de diálogo Opciones del escáner (p. 18)



Cuadro de diálogo Área digital (p. 22)



Cuadro de diálogo Otras opciones (p. 25)

Cuadro de diálogo Teclas de función (→ P. 30)

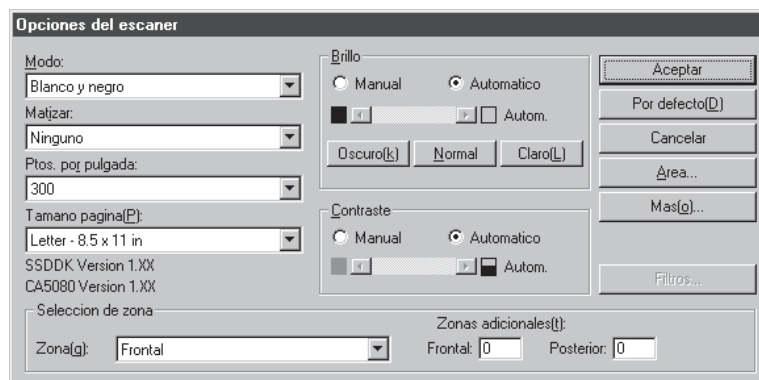
Cuadro de diálogo Impresión suplementaria/Sello (→ P. 32)

Cuadro de diálogo Descargar Gamma (→ P. 37)

Cuadro de diálogo Códigos de barras (→ P. 40)

Configuración básica

Establece las condiciones básicas de exploración.
Esta configuración se realiza en el cuadro de diálogo “Opciones del escáner”.



<Opciones de exploración>



Los modos que realmente pueden utilizarse para explorar son limitados y, dependiendo de la combinación de configuraciones, algunas veces no será posible hacer la exploración. Para más detalles, consulte las “Tablas de modos de exploración del DR-5020/5080” (P. 88) en las instrucciones del DR-5020/5080C por separado.

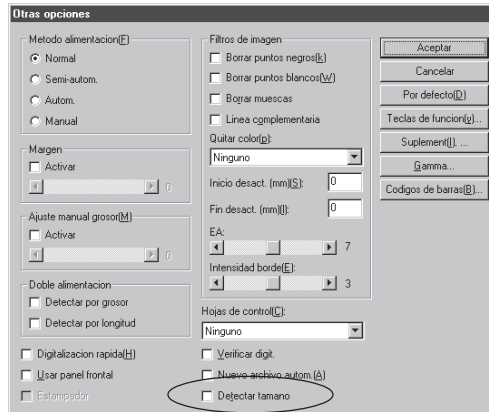
Ítem	Descripción
Modo	<p>Establece el modo en que se explorará la imagen. El DR-5020 solamente dispone de blanco y negro.</p> <p>[Blanco y negro] Explora la imagen completamente en blanco y negro sin sombreado en gris.</p> <p>[Gris de 16, 256 niveles] Seleccione este modo cuando explore fotografías y documentos de medios tonos en la escala de grises. Cuanto más alto sea el valor de nivel, mayor será el incremento del tamaño del archivo.</p> <p>[Color de 3, 12, 24 bits] Seleccione este modo cuando explore originales en color, tales como fotografías.</p> <p>[Color-3, 6, 12 Bit -> 4, 8-Bit Paleta] La paleta 4 bits se utiliza para convertir datos de color de 3 bits a 16 colores de salida, y la paleta 8 bits se utiliza para convertir 6 y 12 bits a 256 colores de salida.</p>

Matizar	<p>Activa y desactiva el matiz.</p> <p>[Ninguno] Sin matiz. Utilízelo para explorarar texto o trabajo artístico lineal donde no haya colores ni sombreado gris.</p> <p>[Difuminar errores] Aplica difuminación de error para simular la zona gris de los medios tonos. Seleccione esta configuración cuando explore documentos que contengan medios tonos, tales como fotografías.</p>
Ptos. por pulgada	<p>Le permite fijar la resolución, el número de puntos por pulgada (ppp). Tiene 13 opciones: 100, 200, 210, 220, 230, 240, 250, 260, 270, 280, 290, 300 y 400.</p>
Tamaño de página	<p>Le permite seleccionar uno de los siguientes tamaños de documentos a explorar:</p> <p>Letter – 8.5 x 11 pulgadas Letter [Girado] – 11 x 8.5 pulgadas Legal - 8.5 x 14 pulgadas (por defecto) Doble Letter – 11 x 17 pulgadas A3 - 297 x 420 mm A4 - 210 x 297 mm A4 [Girado] – 297 x 210 mm A5 - 148 x 210 mm A5 [Girado] – 210 x 148 mm A6 - 105 x 148 mm A6 [Girado] – 148 x 105 mm B4 (ISO) - 250 x 353 mm B4 (JIS) - 257 x 364 mm B5 (ISO) - 176 x 250 mm B5 [Girado] – 250 x 176 mm B5 (JIS) - 182 x 257 mm B5 (JIS) [Girado] – 257 x 182 mm B6 (ISO) – 125 x 176 mm B6 (ISO) [Girado] – 176 x 125 mm B6 (JIS) – 128 x 182 mm B6 (JIS) [Girado] – 182 x 128 mm Máximo (295 x 432 mm)</p> <p>Si se explora un documento más grande que el tamaño especificado, se recortarán los bordes adyacentes del documento. También, si se explora un documento más pequeño que el tamaño especificado, en los bordes adyacentes del documento se formará un margen negro.</p>



Si selecciona [16-nivel de gris] como modo, los datos no se guardarán correctamente. Seleccione [Detectar tamaño] en el cuadro de diálogo “Otras opciones” (P. 25), haga una exploración, y ponga el formato de archivo para guardar los datos en la aplicación en [JBIG].



Los ajustes de “Tamaño página” hechos aquí no serán válidos si ha marcado “Detectar tamaño” en el cuadro de diálogo “Otras opciones” (P. 25).



<Brillo>

Ítem	Descripción
Manual	Ajuste manualmente el brillo al que se va a realizar la exploración. El brillo puede ajustarse en una gama de 1 a 255 haciendo clic en los botones ◀ y ▶.
Automático	El brillo sólo se ajusta automáticamente cuando [Modo] está ajustado en [Blanco y negro] y [Matizar] en [Ninguno]. Cuando [Modo] esté ajustado en cualquier otra posición, y Brillo esté ajustado en [Automático], el ajuste de brillo retornará a su ajuste por defecto.
Botón Oscuro	Ajusta el valor del brillo a 64 para reproducir la imagen más oscura en general.
Botón Normal	Ajusta el valor del brillo a 128 para reproducir la imagen al brillo normal en general.
Botón Claro	Ajusta el valor del brillo a 192 para reproducir la imagen más clara en general.

<Contraste>

Ítem	Descripción
Manual	Ajuste manualmente el contraste. El contraste puede ajustarse en un margen de 1 a 13. Haga clic en los botones  y  para ajustar el contraste. El contraste aumenta ajustando un valor alto, y se reduce ajustando un valor bajo.
Automático	Establece el contraste por defecto.



MEMORÁNDUM

- Cuando Modo esté ajustado en “Blanco y negro”, el ajuste de contraste estará desactivado.
- En el DR-5020, la casilla de verificación Contraste estará en gris cuando Modo esté ajustado en “Blanco y negro”.

<Selección de zona>

Ítem	Descripción
Zona	Selecciona el lado del documento a ajustar el brillo. Selecione Frontal o Posterior.
Zonas adicionales	Este escáner no lo soporta.

<Botones>

Ítem	Descripción
Aceptar	Activa las configuraciones y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.
Por defecto	Devuelve todas las configuraciones a sus ajustes por defecto.
Cancelar	Cancela cualquier configuración que haya cambiado y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.
Área	Abre el cuadro de diálogo Área digital (P. 22) para que pueda fijar el tamaño de la zona a explorar en el lado frontal y lado posterior.
Más	Abre el cuadro de diálogo Otras opciones (P. 25) para que pueda fijar los detalles especiales tales como filtro, velocidad, detección del tamaño de página y detección de hoja de control.
Filtros	Este escáner no lo soporta.

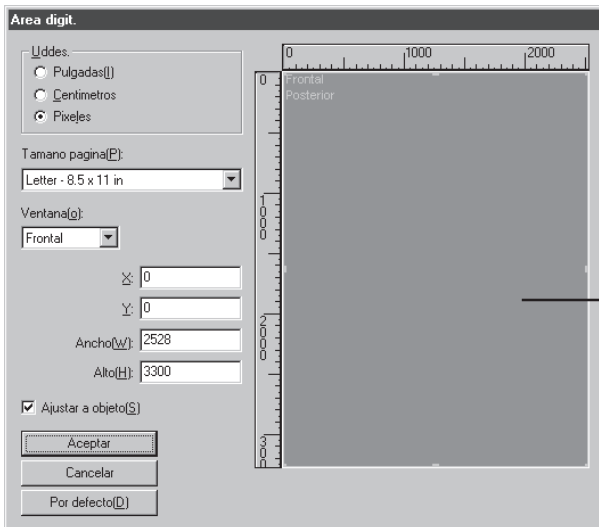
Fijación de la zona de exploración

Fije la zona de exploración si sólo quiere explorar una parte específica del documento. La zona a explorar se fija en el cuadro de diálogo “Área digital”. Puede ajustar la zona a explorar en ambos, el lado frontal o lado posterior del documento que vaya a explorar. Tenga en cuenta, sin embargo, que los ajustes del tamaño de la zona a explorar en los lados frontal y posterior y las posiciones de coordenada en la dirección Y (vertical) deben ser iguales. Estos ítems sólo se pueden ajustar para las posiciones de coordenada en la dirección X (horizontal). Existen dos formas de especificar la zona de exploración: introduciendo las coordenadas u otros valores numéricos, o especificando directamente la zona dentro de la ventana de zona.



MEMORÁNDUM

Los ajustes de zona de exploración hechos aquí no serán válidos si ha seleccionado “Detectar tamaño” en el cuadro de diálogo “Otras opciones” (P. 25).



Ventana de zona

Ítem	Descripción
Uddes.	Establece la unidad usada para indicar el tamaño de la zona de exploración. Elija entre pulgadas, centímetros y píxeles.

Tamaño página	<p>Seleccione el tamaño del documento que vaya a explorar. Los ajustes de tamaño de página disponibles son los mismos tamaños de documento que los de [Tamaño página] del cuadro de diálogo [Opciones del escáner]. Cuando abra el cuadro de diálogo [Area digital], aparecerán los tamaños de documento ajustados en [Tamaño página] del cuadro de diálogo [Opciones del escáner]. Cualquier cambio que se haga en estos ajustes será reflejado en [Tamaño página] del cuadro de diálogo [Opciones del escáner].</p>
Ventana	<p>Especifica el lado del documento en el que especificar la zona de exploración.</p> <p>Frontal: Especifica ambos lados del documento. (La configuración de la zona de exploración es igual para ambos lados del documento.)</p> <p>Posterior: Especifica el lado posterior del documento. (La configuración de la coordenada X puede cambiarse en los lados frontal y posterior.)</p>
Posición del eje	<p>X: Introduzca la coordenada X de la esquina superior izquierda de la zona a explorar.</p> <p>Y: Introduzca la coordenada Y de la esquina superior izquierda de la zona a explorar.</p> <p>Ancho: Introduzca la anchura de la zona a explorar.</p> <p>Alto: Introduzca la altura de la zona a explorar.</p> <p>«X» puede fijarse separadamente en los lados frontal y posterior.</p> <p>El ajuste de «Y», «Ancho» y «Alto» son iguales para los lados frontal y posterior.</p>
Ajustar a objeto	<p>Ajusta automáticamente la posición del eje en la zona de exploración a un valor conveniente.</p> <p>Cuando la unidad esté fijada en Pulgadas, este valor será un múltiplo de 1/8"; cuando esté ajustada en Centímetros, este valor será un múltiplo de 0,1 cm; y cuando esté ajustada en Píxeles, este valor será un múltiplo de 32 píxeles.</p>

<p>(Ventana de zona)</p>	<p>La zona de exploración para el tamaño de página se muestra en la ventana de zona. El tamaño de la ventana de zona varía de acuerdo con el ajuste de tamaño de papel.</p> <p>El tamaño de la zona de exploración puede ajustarse arrastrando los cuadrados ■ del cuadro de área. También puede arrastrar el área de exploración entera para moverla. Especifique en “Ventana” el lado del documento [Frontal] (ambos lados) o [Posterior] (lado posterior) en la que va a cambiar la zona de exploración.</p> <p>Cuando especifique [Frontal], y la zona de exploración esté ajustada, la posición de coordenada se ajustará en la misma posición para ambos lados frontal y posterior.</p> <p>Cuando especifique [Posterior], y esté ajustada la zona en el lado posterior, sólo podrá ajustarse independientemente la coordenada X.</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> </div>
---------------------------------	---



Cuando ajuste el lado frontal en [Frontal] después de haber ajustado la zona en el lado posterior en [Posterior], el ajuste [Posterior] activado actualmente se desactivará.

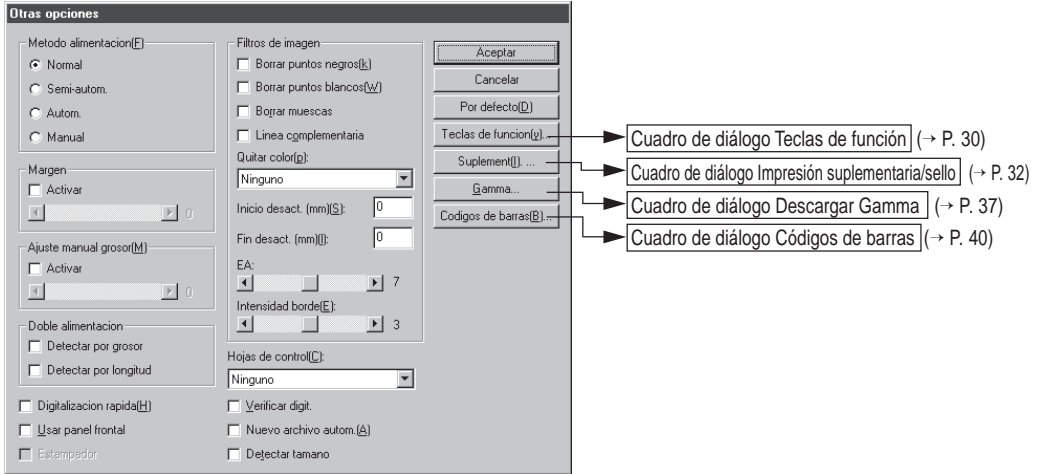
<Botones>

Ítem	Descripción
Aceptar	Activa las configuraciones y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.
Cancelar	Cancela cualquier configuración que haya cambiado y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.
Por defecto	Devuelve todas las configuraciones a sus ajustes por defecto.





Configuración detallada

Establezca las condiciones de exploración detalladamente.

El cuadro de diálogo Otras opciones le ofrece los ítems siguientes para configurar las condiciones de exploración más detalladamente.







Ítem	Descripción
Método alimentación	<p>Seleccione el método de alimentación.</p> <p>Normal: El documento pasa (es explorado) cuando lo carga y da la orden de exploración en la aplicación.</p> <p>Semi-autom.: El documento pasa (es explorado) cuando da la orden de exploración en la aplicación y cuando lo carga y presiona el la tecla de inicio.</p> <p>Autom.: El documento pasa (es explorado) automáticamente cuando lo carga.</p> <p>Manual: Los documentos pasan automáticamente de una en una hoja después de que de la orden de exploración en la aplicación. Utilice este modo cuando explore hojas especialmente gruesas o finas.</p> <p>La visualización de métodos de alimentación en el panel de operación del escáner cambiará tanto si presiona o no el botón [Aceptar] para los ajustes hechos aquí.</p>

<p>Margen</p>	<p>Ajuste los márgenes (superior, inferior, izquierdo y derecho) de la zona de exploración. Para ajustar los márgenes, haga clic en Activar y utilice los botones  y .</p> <p>Especifique entre los límites -10 (reduce la zona de exploración en 10 mm) a +10 (aumenta la zona de exploración en 10 mm). Por ejemplo, si quiere aumentar ligeramente la zona de exploración para que los bordes del documento no se recorten, ajuste en la dirección de +. O, si quiere reducir ligeramente la zona de exploración para que no se forme cuadro negro alrededor de la imagen explorada, ajuste en la dirección de -.</p>
<p>Ajuste manual grosor</p>	<p>Ajuste manualmente el grosor del papel cuando éste no se ajuste automáticamente. Haga clic en Activar y ajuste el grosor con los botones  y .</p> <p>Especifique el grosor dentro de los límites 1 (el más fino) a 13 (el más grueso). Utilice esta configuración para ajustar manualmente el grosor del papel cuando explore originales y documentos recubiertos con una capa especial cuyo grosor de papel no pueda ser ajustado automáticamente, o cuando en el modo de ajuste automático del grosor de papel ocurra doble alimentación con frecuencia.</p>
<p>Doble alimentación</p>	<p>Seleccione el método utilizado para detectar doble alimentación. "Doble alimentación" será detectada cuando entren juntas dos o más hojas del documento o cuando parte de una hoja solape a otra hoja al explorarse continuamente las hojas del documento.</p> <p>[Detectar por grosor] Detecta doble alimentación por el grosor del papel. Cuando entra una hoja más gruesa que la primera del documento(*), el escáner la toma como doble alimentación y visualiza un error.</p> <p>[Detectar por longitud] Detecta doble alimentación por la longitud del papel. Cuando entra una hoja más larga que la primera del documento(*), el escáner la toma como doble alimentación y visualiza un error.</p> <p>* La detección de doble alimentación se realiza tomando el grosor y longitud de la primera hoja del documento como hoja estándar. Cuando entra la primera hoja del documento, el escáner memoriza su grosor y la longitud.</p>

Digitalización rápida	<p>Esta configuración estará disponible cuando la resolución esté ajustada a 200 ó 300 ppp.</p> <p>Cuando se haya ajustado 200 ppp, las imágenes se explorarán a 200 x 100 ppp (horizontal x vertical) y se obtendrán imágenes a 200 x 200 ppp.</p> <p>Cuando se haya ajustado 300 ppp, las imágenes se explorarán a 300 x 150 ppp (horizontal x vertical) y se obtendrán imágenes a 300 x 300 ppp.</p> <p>Aunque la exploración se realiza a igual rapidez en cualquiera de los casos, tenga en cuenta que la calidad de la imagen explorada a alta velocidad disminuirá ligeramente.</p>
Usar panel frontal	Activa la configuración hecha en el panel de operación del escáner.
Estampador	Activa el estampador opcional.
Hojas de control	<p>Selecciona el modo en que el escáner detecta las hojas de control.</p> <p>[Ninguno] No se detectan las hojas de control del escáner.</p> <p>[Digitalizar, continuar] Se detecta y explora la hoja de control del escáner, y luego continúa la exploración.</p> <p>[Ignorar, Continuar] Se detecta la hoja de control del escáner y se ignora (no se explora), y luego continúa la exploración.</p> <p>[Digitalizar, detener] Se detecta y explora la hoja de control del escáner, y luego se detiene la exploración.</p> <p>[Ignorar, detener] Se detecta la hoja de control del escáner y omite (no se explora), y luego se detiene la exploración.</p>
Verificar digit.	Verifica el número de páginas contadas antes de la exploración en relación con el número actual de páginas exploradas. Si el número difiere, se visualiza un error.
Nuevo archivo autom.	Este ajuste genera una señal de salto de página cada vez que finaliza una exploración continua. Esto le permite fijar delimitadores de archivo en la aplicación correspondiente que esté utilizando.
Detectar tamaño	Este ajuste detecta el tamaño de cada documento a medida que es explorado, y explora el documento a ese tamaño. Cuando se selecciona este ajuste, se desactiva Tamaño página en el cuadro de diálogo Opciones del escáner.

<Configuración de filtros de imagen>

Fije los filtros de procesamiento de imagen.

Ítem	Descripción
Borrar puntos negros	Borra automáticamente los puntos negros (individuales) aislados sobre fondos blancos.
Borrar puntos blancos	Borra automáticamente los puntos blancos (individuales) aislados sobre fondos negros.
Borrar muescas	Borra automáticamente las partes (muescas) que salen de los contornos.
Línea complementaria	Une automáticamente las líneas apenas visibles o intermitentes que aparecen al explorar documentos que contiene líneas finas.
Quitar color	Haga clic aquí para activar la función de quitar color. Esta función sólo se activa en el DR-5080C. [Ninguno] La función de quitar color no se lleva a cabo. [Rojo] No se exploran las partes rojas del documento. [Verde] No se exploran las partes verdes del documento. [Azul] No se exploran las partes azules del documento.
Inicio desact.	Si el documento contiene una zona donde va a desactivarse la función de quitar color, especifique el punto de inicio de esta zona como distancia (mm) desde el borde superior del papel.
Fin desact.	Especifique el punto de finalización de la zona donde va desactivarse la función de quitar color como distancia (mm) desde el borde superior del papel.
EA	Fija el nivel de la función EA (Exposición automática). (Esta función fija el brillo y contraste de acuerdo con el sombreado en la zona en la que se selecciona la imagen.) Este ajuste puede configurarse en 13 pasos con los botones  y  . Por defecto es 7.
Intensidad borde	Fija el nivel para acentuar el contorno de las letras, y suavizar la granulosidad de imágenes tales como fotografías. Este ajuste puede configurarse en cinco pasos con los botones  y  . Por defecto es 3.



MEMORANDUM

- [Borrar puntos negros], [Borrar puntos blancos], [Borrar muescas] y [Línea complementaria] se activan cuando [Modo] está ajustado en [Blanco y negro] y [Matizar] en [Difuminar errores].
- [Quitar color] se activa cuando [Modo] está ajustado en cualquier posición diferente a [Color].
- [EA] se activa cuando [Modo] está ajustado en [Blanco y negro].
- [Intensidad borde] se activa en todos los modos.

<Botones>

Ítem	Descripción
Aceptar	Activa las configuraciones y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.
Cancelar	Cancela cualquier configuración que haya cambiado y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.
Por defecto	Devuelve todas las configuraciones a sus ajustes por defecto.
Teclas de función...	Abre el cuadro de diálogo Teclas de función (P. 30). En este cuadro de diálogo, puede asignar funciones específicas a las teclas de función del escáner.
Suplement...	Abre el cuadro de diálogo Impresión suplementaria/Sello (P. 32) para ajustar la función del impresor y la función del sello. La función de impresor imprime caracteres específicos en el documento explorado cuando está instalado el impresor opcional. La función del sello imprime caracteres especificados en las imágenes exploradas.
Gamma...	Abre el cuadro de diálogo Descargar Gamma (P. 37). Cargue y almacene datos gamma en el archivo para expresar colores y tonos.
Códigos de barras...	Abre el cuadro de diálogo Código de barras (P. 40). Establezca las condiciones para leer códigos de barras cuando esté instalado el decodificador de código de barras opcional.

Configuración de las teclas de función

Puede asignar funciones específicas a la teclas de función del escáner. Los ítems siguientes se configuran en el cuadro de diálogo Teclas de función.

Ítem	Descripción
Selección	<p>Seleccione en el menú desplegable las funciones a asignar a cada tecla de función.</p> <p>A cada una de las teclas de función se le puede asignar una de las cinco funciones siguientes. Para detalles sobre estas funciones, consulte “Configuración de las teclas de función” (P. 60) en las instrucciones para el DR-5020/5080C por separado.</p> <p>[Ajuste manual grosor] Ajusta manualmente el grosor del papel.</p> <p>[Doble alimentación] Detecta automáticamente doble alimentación. “Doble alimentación” será detectada cuando entren juntas dos o más hojas del documento o cuando parte de una hoja solape a otra.</p> <p>[Modo Grosor Fijo] Ajusta el grosor del papel a un valor fijado.</p> <p>[Activar impre. Supl.] Selecciona si quiere o no utilizar el impresor cuando está instalado el impresor opcional.</p> <p>[Recuperar Selección] Asigna a las teclas de función las configuraciones ajustadas en el software.</p>
Guardar Selección	<p>Si hace clic aquí estando seleccionado [Recuperar Selección], se asignarán a las teclas de función las configuraciones del escáner actuales.</p>

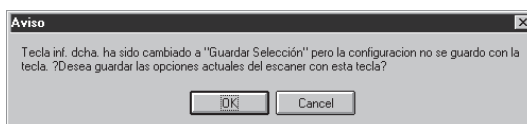
<Botones>

Ítem	Descripción
Aceptar	Activa las configuraciones y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.
Cancelar	Cancela cualquier configuración que haya cambiado y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.



MEMORÁNDUM

- Los mensajes siguientes aparecerán si selecciona [Recuperar Selección] y hace clic en [Aceptar] sin hacer clic en [Guardar Selección].
Al hacer clic en [OK] se memorizan todos los ajustes y se cierra el cuadro de diálogo. Al hacer clic en [Cancel] se retorna a la visualización del cuadro de diálogo Teclas de función. Compruebe en este cuadro de diálogo las funciones asignadas a las teclas de función.



- Tenga en cuenta que en algunas aplicaciones las teclas de función no restablecerán correctamente los ajustes del escáner si están asignados como teclas de función. Por ejemplo, si intenta cambiar los ajustes del escáner con las teclas de función cuando se haya interrumpido la exploración, por ejemplo, porque el escáner se ha quedado sin papel, algunas veces las imágenes exploradas no se guardarán debidamente después de reanudarse la exploración. Una vez comenzada la exploración, no utilice las teclas de función para restablecer los ajustes de escáner hasta haber finalizado la exploración.

Configuración del suplemento/sello

Configure las funciones del impresor opcional y sello. La función del impresor imprime caracteres en el documento, y la función del sello añade caracteres especificados a las imágenes exploradas.

Estas funciones se configuran en el cuadro de diálogo Impresión suplementaria/Sello.

Para utilizar la función del impresor, necesitará el impresor opcional.

Para usar sólo la función del sello, no necesita el impresor.

<Activar>

Ítem	Descripción
Suplement.	Imprime en la imagen explorada los caracteres y contadores que haya especificado.
Sello	Agrega en la imagen explorada los caracteres y contadores que haya especificado.

<p>Texto</p>	<p>Introduzca los detalles a imprimir (agregar). Puede introducir hasta 32 de los siguientes caracteres:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Números (0 a 9) • Caracteres alfabéticos (mayúsculas y minúsculas) • Espacio (en blanco) • Los símbolos siguientes: ! " # \$ % & ' () * + - . / : ; < = > ? @ [\] ^ _ { } ~ ` , <p>Los caracteres de arriba se imprimen (agregan) según se introducen. Además de estos caracteres, se pueden especificar como caracteres especiales los contadores, la hora, la fecha y las flechas.</p> <p><Contador> Para imprimir (agregar) un contador, introduzca el formato siguiente:</p> <p><C> : Imprime (agrega) un contador de 9 dígitos.</p> <p><C#> (# es un número) : Imprime (agrega) un contador con un número # de dígitos.</p> <p><CC> : Imprime (agrega) un contador de 9 dígitos. Los dos contadores están delimitados por un "." (punto).</p> <p><C#C#> (# es un número) : Imprime (agrega) dos contadores ambos con un número # de dígitos. Los dos contadores están delimitados por un "." (punto).</p> <p>El momento en que el contador aumenta o disminuye se ajusta en "Primer contador/Segundo Contador" descrito más adelante. (Cuando sólo establezca un contador, ajuste la hora en "Primer contador". Cuando establezca dos contadores, ajuste el primer contador en [Segundo contador] y el contador siguiente en [Primer contador].</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>[Introducción]</td> <td>[Resultado de Impresor/sello]</td> </tr> <tr> <td><C></td> <td>000000000</td> </tr> <tr> <td><C6></td> <td>000000</td> </tr> <tr> <td><CC></td> <td><u>000000000.000000000</u> Segundo contador Primer contador</td> </tr> <tr> <td><C5C4></td> <td>00000.0000</td> </tr> </table> <p><Hora> Para imprimir (agregar) la fecha en que ha sido explorado el documento, introduzca "<TIME>". La hora en el sistema de 24 horas se imprime (agrega) como 8 dígitos como sigue. (Por ejemplo: 16:28:30)</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>[Introducción]</td> <td>[Resultado de Impresor/sello]</td> </tr> <tr> <td><TIME></td> <td>16:28:30</td> </tr> </table>	[Introducción]	[Resultado de Impresor/sello]	<C>	000000000	<C6>	000000	<CC>	<u>000000000.000000000</u> Segundo contador Primer contador	<C5C4>	00000.0000	[Introducción]	[Resultado de Impresor/sello]	<TIME>	16:28:30
[Introducción]	[Resultado de Impresor/sello]														
<C>	000000000														
<C6>	000000														
<CC>	<u>000000000.000000000</u> Segundo contador Primer contador														
<C5C4>	00000.0000														
[Introducción]	[Resultado de Impresor/sello]														
<TIME>	16:28:30														

	<p><Fecha> Para imprimir (agregar) la fecha en que ha sido explorado el documento, introduzca una de las combinaciones siguientes “<MDY>”, “<DMY>” o “<YMD>”, siendo Y (año), M (mes) y D (día). La fecha del calendario occidental se imprime (agrega) como diez dígitos de la forma siguiente. El año, mes y el día están delimitados por una barra oblicua “/”. (Ejemplo: 2001/9/3/4 (4 de marzo, 2001))</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>[Introducción]</td> <td>Resultado del Impresor/sello]</td> </tr> <tr> <td><YMD></td> <td>2001/03/04</td> </tr> </table> <p><Flechas> Para imprimir (agregar) una flecha, introduzca lo siguiente:</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>[Introducción]</td> <td>[Resultado del Impresor/sello]</td> </tr> <tr> <td><U></td> <td>↑</td> </tr> <tr> <td><D></td> <td>↓</td> </tr> <tr> <td><L></td> <td>←</td> </tr> <tr> <td><R></td> <td>→</td> </tr> </table> <p>(*) Para ser más precisos, se pueden imprimir (agregar) hasta 32 caracteres. Cuando se introduce un contador, fecha u hora, el número real de caracteres que se imprimen (agregan) es superior a 32 incluso aunque el número de caracteres introducidos no pase de 32. Si se da el caso, se visualizará un mensaje de error. En el ejemplo de abajo, el resultado del impresor/sello es de 32 caracteres, aunque se han introducido 25 caracteres.</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>[Introducción]</td> <td>[Resultado del impresor/sello]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CANON<YMD><TIME><C6></td> <td>CANON 2001/03/04 16:28:30 000001</td> </tr> </table>	[Introducción]	Resultado del Impresor/sello]	<YMD>	2001/03/04	[Introducción]	[Resultado del Impresor/sello]	<U>	↑	<D>	↓	<L>	←	<R>	→	[Introducción]	[Resultado del impresor/sello]	CANON<YMD><TIME><C6>	CANON 2001/03/04 16:28:30 000001
[Introducción]	Resultado del Impresor/sello]																		
<YMD>	2001/03/04																		
[Introducción]	[Resultado del Impresor/sello]																		
<U>	↑																		
<D>	↓																		
<L>	←																		
<R>	→																		
[Introducción]	[Resultado del impresor/sello]																		
CANON<YMD><TIME><C6>	CANON 2001/03/04 16:28:30 000001																		
<p>Distancia horizontal</p>	<p>Especifique la posición en la van a aparecer los caracteres como distancia en mm desde el borde izquierdo de la entrada de alimentación de papel en la dirección de alimentación del papel.</p>																		
<p>Distancia vertical</p>	<p>Especifique la posición a imprimir/agregar caracteres como distancia en mm desde el borde superior del documento.</p>																		

<Configuración del tipo de sello>

Ítem	Descripción
Negro en blanco	Imprime (agrega) caracteres negros sobre un fondo blanco. DR-5020/5080C
Blanco en negro	Imprime (agrega) caracteres blancos sobre un fondo negro. DR-5020/5080C
Negro en imagen	Imprime (agrega) caracteres negros en la imagen explorada. DR-5020/5080C

<Otras configuraciones>

Ítem	Descripción
Orientación	Selecciona la rotación de fuentes a imprimir (agregar). Seleccione una de las siguientes: [Vertical] (por defecto) Sin rotación [Horizontal] Rotación 90 grados a derecha [180 grados] Rotación 180 grados [270 grados] Rotación 270 grados a derecha
Páginas	Selecciona la página en la que se van a imprimir o agregar caracteres especificados. [Cada página] En todas las páginas [Página tras separador] En la página siguiente al separador
Dcha.-izda.	Imprime (agrega) caracteres de derecha a izquierda.
Tipo pequeño	Imprime (agrega) caracteres usando una fuente pequeña (8 x 7 puntos). (La fuente normal es de 12 x 12 puntos.) Tamaño normal CANON canon Fuente pequeña CANON canon

<Configuración del primer y segundo contador>

Ítem	Descripción
Valor inicio	Establece el valor de inicio del contador. Por defecto es 0.
Incremento	Establece el incremento del contador. Por defecto es 0 (no cambia).
Activ. incremento	<p>Seleccione el momento para incrementar el contador de entre lo siguiente:</p> <p>[Nuevo archivo] Cuando se alcanza un nuevo archivo</p> <p>[Separador] Cuando se inserta un separador</p> <p>[Nuevo archivo o separador] Cuando se alcanza un nuevo archivo o se inserta un separador</p> <p>[Página] Cuando se alimenta una página del documento</p> <p>[Nunca] Ninguno</p>
Valor inicio	Establece el valor de inicio del contador. Por defecto es 0.
Vuelta inicio	<p>Seleccione el momento para reponer el contador de entre lo siguiente:</p> <p>[Nuevo archivo] Cuando se alcanza un nuevo archivo</p> <p>[Separador] Cuando se inserta un separador</p> <p>[Nuevo archivo o separador] Cuando se alcanza un nuevo archivo o se inserta un separador</p> <p>[Página] Cuando se alimenta una página del documento</p> <p>[Nunca] Ninguno</p>

<Botones>

Ítem	Descripción
Aceptar	Activa las configuraciones y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.
Cancelar	Cancela cualquier configuración que haya cambiado y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.
Por defecto	Devuelve todas las configuraciones a sus ajustes por defecto.
Ayuda	Muestra la definición [texto].

Configuración de curva Gamma

Configure la curva Gamma.



MEMORÁNDUM

La “Configuración de curva Gamma” utiliza los datos de curva gamma preparados por el usuario para ajustar los valores de salida (salida al ordenador) con respecto a los valores de entrada para 256 niveles de brillo en la imagen explorada.

Las curvas gamma individuales se configuran para gris (banco y negro), rojo, verde y azul.

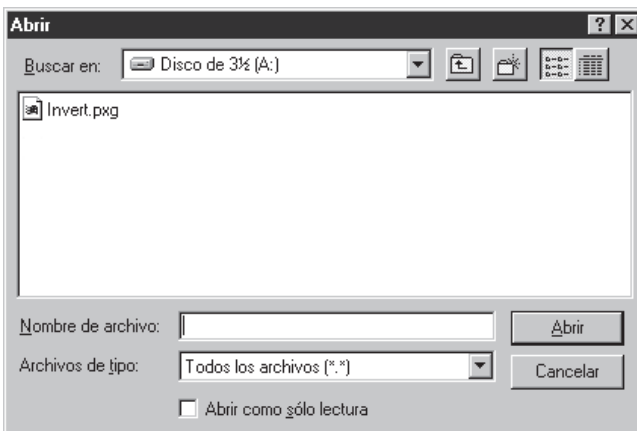
La curva gamma configurada aquí no se activará a menos que marque [Usar descarga] en el cuadro de diálogo Descargar Gamma.

1 Prepare datos de curva gamma apropiados para la curva gamma.
(Consulte “Preparación de datos de curva gamma” en P. 38.)

2 Seleccione el color para el que se va a configurar la curva gamma.



3 Haga clic en [Descargar...], y seleccione los datos de curva preparados.



4 Haga clic en [Abrir]. Esto configura la curva gamma y retorna al cuadro de diálogo Otras opciones.

5 Para configurar la curva gamma para otros colores, repita los pasos 1 a 4.

◆ Preparación de datos de curva gamma

Los datos de la curva gamma se guardan en un archivo de texto (*.pxg) compuesto de 258 líneas. Este archivo describe los valores de salida de cada uno de los 256 niveles de los valores de entrada.

Cerciórese de introducir un comentario en la 1ª línea de este archivo y “256” en la 2ª. Las líneas a partir de 3ª son para introducir cada valor de salida para cada valor de entrada. Ajuste “0”, “1”, “2”, etc. desde la 3ª línea en adelante, y “255” para el valor de entrada en la línea 258ª.

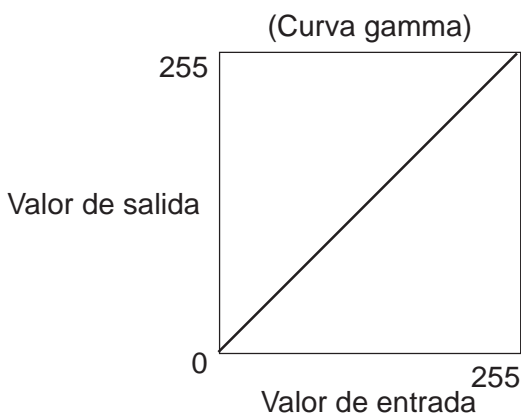
La introducción de valores pequeños para los datos de la curva gamma producirán una imagen oscura, y los valores altos producirán una imagen clara.

◆ Ejemplo

Normalmente, se preparan curvas gamma inclinadas hacia la derecha. Sin embargo, se puede preparar una curva gamma inclinada hacia la izquierda invirtiendo todos los valores de salida. Esto dará como resultado una imagen también invertida.

Datos de curva gamma

1ª línea: curva gamma
 2ª línea: 256
 3ª línea: 0
 4ª línea: 1
 5ª línea: 2
 |
 253ª línea: 250
 254ª línea: 251
 255ª línea: 252
 256ª línea: 253
 257ª línea: 254
 258ª línea: 255



Datos de curva gamma (invertida)

1ª línea: curva gamma lineal invertida

2ª línea: 256

3ª línea: 255

4ª línea: 254

5ª línea: 253

|
253ª línea: 5

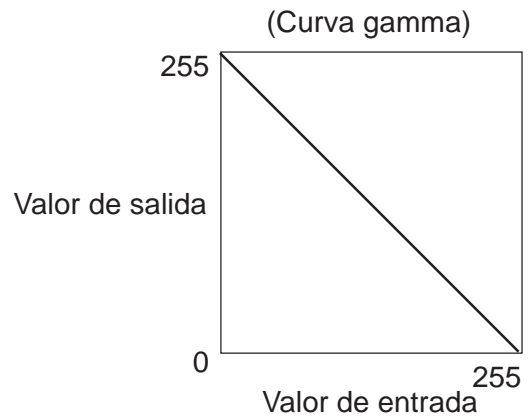
254ª línea: 4

255ª línea: 3

256ª línea: 2

257ª línea: 1

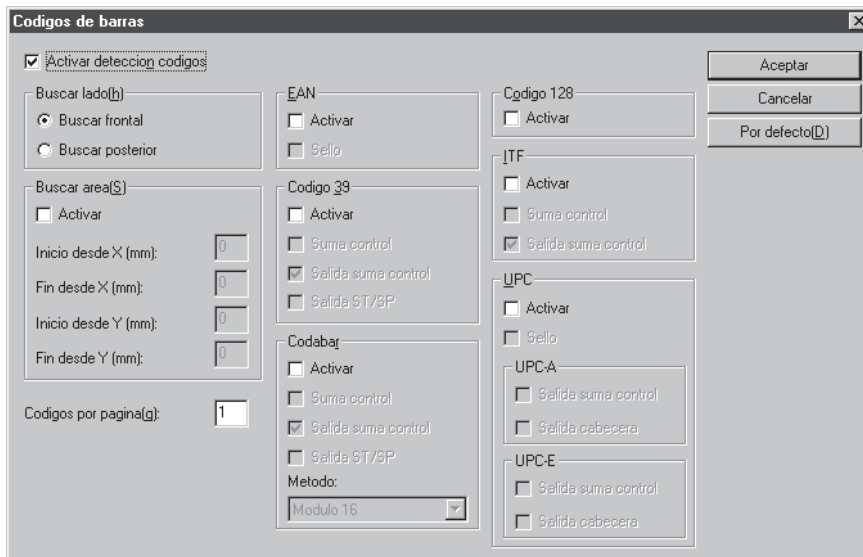
258ª línea: 0



La información sobre los datos de la curva gamma se mantiene en el interior del escáner, y no se borra aunque se apague el escáner. La información de la curva gamma no cambia hasta que se descargan los datos de otra curva gamma.

Opciones del decodificador de código de barras

Establece las condiciones del decodificador de código de barras. Estas opciones solamente están disponibles cuando está instalado el código de barras opcional. El software también deberá soportar el decodificador de códigos de barras. Los ítems siguientes se ajustan en el cuadro de diálogo Códigos de barras.



MEMORÁNDUM

- Si alinea horizontalmente dos o más tipos de códigos de barras, podrá ocurrir un error de reconocimiento. Seleccione sólo un tipo de código de barras en el área de ajuste de código de barras.
- Los códigos de barras con códigos de sello no pueden detectarse al mismo tiempo que los códigos de barras sin códigos de sello, asegúrese de ajustar la zona a detectar en el área de ajuste de código de barras antes de empezar a explorar.
- Cuando ajuste la exploración a 400 ppp y dúplex, solamente se detectarán los códigos de barras dentro del ancho A4.
- Cuando explore originales que contengan dos o más códigos de barras y sólo quiera detectar un tipo de código de barras específico, ajuste el área a detectar en el área de ajuste de código de barras.
Cuando ajuste esta área en el área de ajuste de código de barras, también se detectarán los códigos de barras de fuera de esta área de exploración.
- Si no conoce el tipo de código de barras, marque las casillas de todos los códigos de barras antes de explorar los originales para que se detecten automáticamente todos los tipos de códigos de barras y no se explore la suma control.

<Configuración>

Ítem	Descripción
Activar detección códigos	Haga clic aquí para activar la lectura de códigos de barras. Si marca este ítem podrá configurar los ítems siguientes.
Buscar lado	<p>Seleccione el lado del documento en el que van a leerse los códigos de barras.</p> <p>[Buscar frontal] Lee códigos de barras en la página frontal.</p> <p>[Buscar posterior] Lee códigos de barras en la página posterior.</p>
Buscar área	<p>Cuando explore solamente una zona específica del documento, marque [Activar] y establezca la zona de detección. Si [Activar] no está marcado se explorará el documento entero. Especifique la zona utilizando las coordenadas de los ejes X e Y.</p> <p>La referencia de detección en la dirección X (horizontal) es el borde izquierdo de la entrada de alimentación de papel para el lado frontal con respecto a la dirección de alimentación de papel, y el borde derecho de la entrada de alimentación de papel en la parte posterior.</p> <p>Para la referencia de detección en la dirección Y (vertical), introduzca la longitud desde el borde superior del papel.</p> <p>[Inicio desde X] Introduzca la posición donde se va a iniciar exploración en la dirección horizontal.</p> <p>[Fin desde X] Introduzca la posición donde se va a finalizar la exploración en la dirección horizontal.</p> <p>[Inicio desde Y] Introduzca la posición donde se va a iniciar exploración en la dirección vertical.</p> <p>[Fin desde Y] Introduzca la posición donde se va a finalizar la exploración en la dirección vertical.</p>
Códigos por página	Establece el número de códigos de barra (1 a 4) a leer por página.

<Opciones del código de barras EAN>

Ítem	Descripción
Activar	Haga clic aquí para leer códigos de barras EAN.
Sello	Explora códigos de sello.

<Opciones del Código 39>

Ítem	Descripción
Activar	Haga clic aquí para leer el Código 39.
Suma control	Explora suma control.
Salida suma control	Puede elegir emitir o no la suma control marcando o no [Suma control]. Para emitir al suma control, marque este ítem.
Salida ST/ SP	Emite códigos de inicio/parada.

<Opciones del código de barras Codabar>

Ítem	Descripción
Activar	Haga clic aquí para leer el código de barras Codabar.
Suma control	Explora la suma control.
Salida suma control	Puede elegir emitir o no la suma control marcando o no [Suma control]. Para emitir al suma control, marque este ítem.
Salida ST/ SP	Emite los códigos de inicio/parada.
Método	Especifica el método de cálculo de suma control. Seleccione Módulo 16 ó 7DR.

<Opciones del Código 128>

Ítem	Descripción
Activar	Haga clic aquí para leer el Código 128.

<Opciones del Código ITF>

Ítem	Descripción
Activar	Haga clic aquí cuando explore códigos ITF (incluyendo industrial 2 de 5).
Suma control	Explora la suma control.
Salida suma control	Puede elegir emitir o no la suma control marcando o no [Suma control]. Para emitir al suma control, marque este ítem.

<Opciones del código de barras UPC>

Ítem	Descripción
Activar	Haga clic aquí para leer el código de barras UPC.
Sello	Detecta códigos de sello.
UPC-A	Salida suma control: Explora la suma control. Salida cabecera: Emite el código de cabecera.
UPC-E	Salida suma control: Explora la suma control. Salida cabecera: Emite el código de cabecera.

<Botones>

Ítem	Descripción
Aceptar	Activa las configuraciones y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.
Cancelar	Cancela cualquier configuración que haya cambiado y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.
Por defecto	Devuelve todas las configuraciones a sus ajustes por defecto.

Capítulo 4

Utilización del controlador TWAIN

Este capítulo describe las operaciones para cuando el controlador TWAIN vaya a funcionar en una aplicación compatible con TWAIN.

4.1 Selección del controlador TWAIN	46
4.2 Inicio del controlador TWAIN	47
4.3 Fijación de las condiciones de exploración	48
Configuración básica	49
Opciones avanzadas	56

4.1

Selección del controlador TWAIN

Seleccione el controlador TWAIN que vaya a utilizar. Realice esta operación solamente después de haber conectado el controlador TWAIN. Además, a menos que conecte un escáner distinto al DR-5020/5080C, no será necesario repetir esta operación.



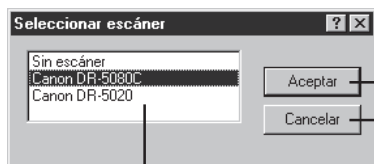
MEMORÁNDUM

Los cuadros de diálogo y menús de este capítulo son sólo ejemplos. Tenga en cuenta que la forma en que aparezcan en su propia pantalla podrá variar de acuerdo con la aplicación que esté utilizando. Algunas aplicaciones podrán no soportar todas las funciones descritas en este manual. Para más detalles, refiérase al manual de la aplicación que esté utilizando.

1 Inicie la aplicación compatible con TWAIN.

2 Abra la pantalla Selección del escáner.

La pantalla de Selección de escáner que aparezca variará de acuerdo con la aplicación que esté utilizando.



Lista de escáner disponibles

Selecciona el escáner.

Cierra el cuadro de diálogo sin seleccionar un escáner.

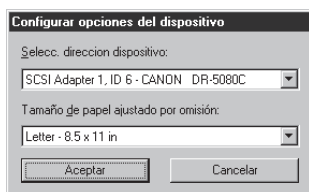


MEMORÁNDUM

Si no encuentra "Canon DR-5020 and DR-5080C" en la lista, instale el controlador.

3 Haga clic en Canon DR-5020 o Canon DR-5080C de la lista, y haga clic en [OK].

⇒ Cuando haya instalado el controlador TWAIN, la pantalla Set Device solamente se visualizará cuando se inicie el controlador TWAIN por primera vez.



4 Ajuste [Tamaño de papel ajustado por omisión] y haga clic en [OK].

⇒ El tamaño de página que ajustae aquí será el ajuste por omisión.

4.2 Inicio del controlador TWAIN

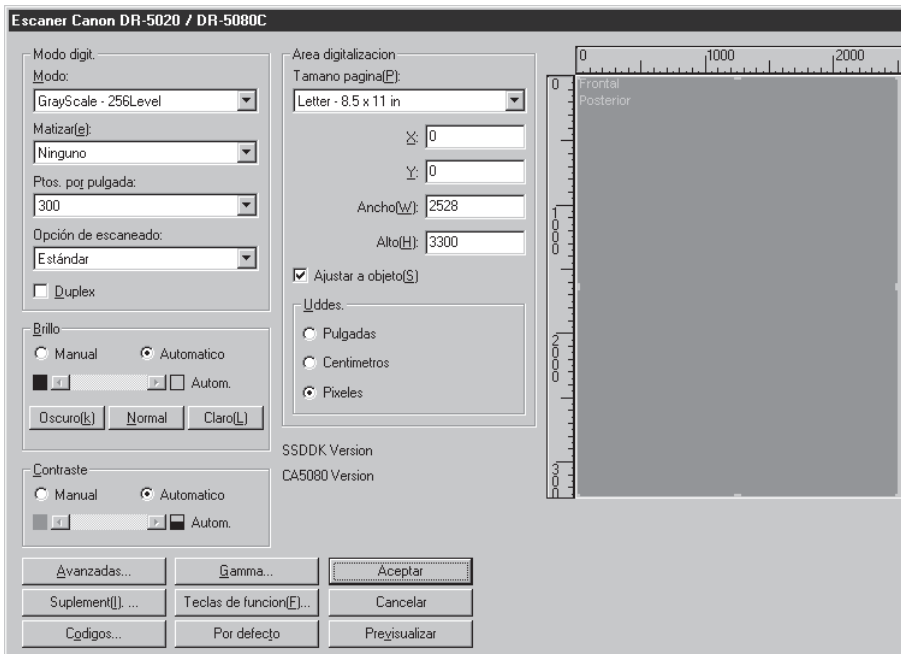
Inicie el controlador TWAIN desde la aplicación compatible con TWAIN.

1 Inicie la aplicación compatible con TWAIN.

2 Inicie el controlador TWAIN desde el menú de inicio de exploración “Enter from TWAIN device”.

El menú “Enter from TWAIN device” variará de acuerdo con la aplicación que esté utilizando. Para más detalles, consulte el manual de la aplicación.

⇒ Se visualizará el cuadro de diálogo Escáner Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C.



4.3

Fijación de las condiciones de exploración

El cuadro de diálogo Escáner Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C está organizado en la jerarquía de menú mostrada abajo.

Visualice estos cuadros de diálogo de acuerdo con la función que quiera utilizar y realice las configuraciones necesarias.

Para más detalles sobre los ítems a configurar en cada uno de estos cuadros de diálogo, consulte el número de página de referencia.

Cuadro de diálogo Escáner Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C

The screenshot shows the 'Escáner Canon DR-5020 / DR-5080C' dialog box. At the bottom, there are several buttons: 'Avanzadas...', 'Gamma...', 'Aceptar', 'Suplement[...]', 'Teclas de función[F]...', 'Cancelar', 'Códigos...', 'Por defecto', and 'Previsualizar'. Arrows point from these buttons to a list of dialog boxes and their reference pages:

- Avanzadas... → Cuadro de diálogo Opciones avanzadas (→ P. 56)
- Gamma... → Cuadro de diálogo Descargar Gamma (→ P. 37)
- Teclas de función[F]... → Cuadro de diálogo Teclas de función (→ P. 30)
- Códigos... → Cuadro de diálogo Códigos de barras (→ P. 40)
- Suplement[...], Impresor/Sello → Cuadro de diálogo Impresión suplementaria/Sello (→ P. 32)

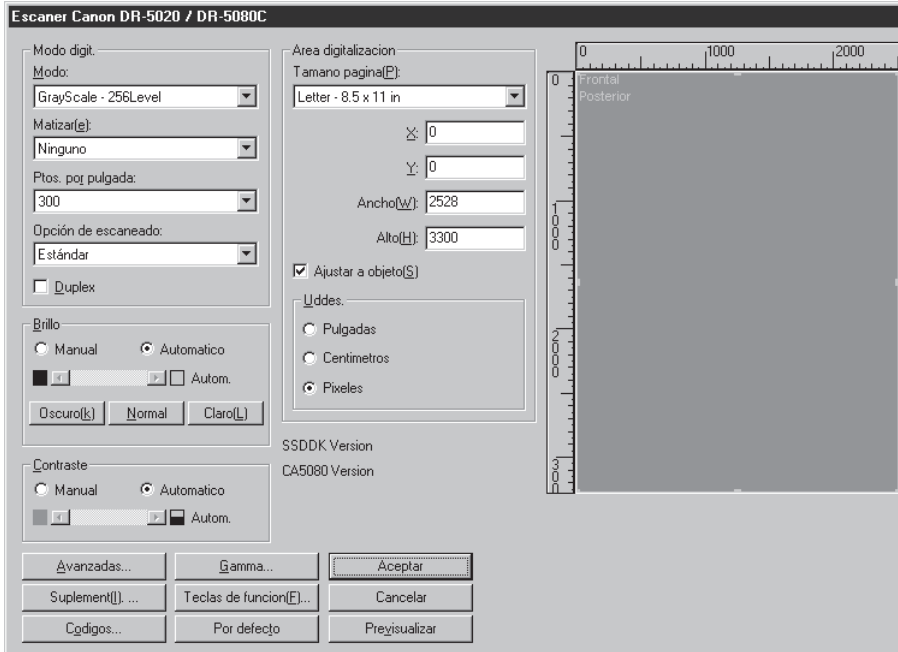


Para más detalles sobre las teclas de función, descarga de datos gamma, códigos de barras e impresor/sello, consulte "Cómo utilizar el controlador ISIS" en el Capítulo 3.

Configuración básica

Establezca las condiciones básicas de exploración.

Esta configuración se realiza en el cuadro de diálogo “Escáner Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C”.





<Fijación del modo de exploración>





Los modos que realmente pueden utilizarse para explorar son limitados y, dependiendo de la combinación de configuraciones, algunas veces no será posible hacer la exploración. Para más detalles, consulte las “Tablas de modos de exploración para el DR-5020/5080C” (P. 88) de las instrucciones del DR-5020/5080C por separado.

Ítem	Descripción
Modo	<p>Establece el modo en que se explorará la imagen. El DR-5020 solamente dispone de blanco y negro.</p> <p>[Blanco y negro] Explora la imagen completamente en blanco y negro sin sombreado en gris.</p> <p>[Gris de 16, 256 niveles] Seleccione este modo cuando explore fotografías y documentos de medios tonos en la escala de grises. Cuanto más alto sea el valor de nivel, mayor será el incremento del tamaño del archivo.</p> <p>[Color de 24 bits] Seleccione este modo cuando explore originales en color, tales como fotografías.</p> <p>[Color-3, 6, 12 Bit -> 4, 8-Bit Paleta] La paleta 4 bits se utiliza para convertir datos de color de 3 bits a 16 colores de salida, y la paleta 8 bits se utiliza para convertir 6 y 12 bits a 256 colores de salida.</p>
Matizar	<p>Activa y desactiva el matiz.</p> <p>[Ninguno] Sin matiz. Utilícelo para explorar texto o para trabajo artístico lineal donde no haya colores ni sombreado gris.</p> <p>[Difuminar errores] Aplica difuminación de error para simular la zona gris de los medios tonos. Seleccione esta configuración cuando explore documentos que contengan medios tonos, tales como fotografías.</p>
Ptos. por pulgada	<p>Selecciona la resolución a la que se va a explorar el documento. Seleccione una de las siguientes resoluciones: 100, 200, 210, 220, 230, 240, 250, 260, 270, 280, 290, 300 y 400 ppp (puntos por pulgada).</p>
Opción de escaneado	<p>Seleccione el modo de exploración.</p> <p>[Estándar] En este modo, se explora el original, y el siguiente original se explora después de enviar al ordenador personal todos los datos de la imagen explorada del primero.</p> <p>[Escanear hacia delante] En este modo, se explora el original, y el siguiente original se explora antes de enviar al ordenador personal los datos de la imagen explorada del primero.</p> <p>[Solo una pagina] En este modo, solamente se explora la hoja original.</p>
Dúplex	<p>Márquelo para explorar ambos lados de la hoja.</p>

<Brillo>

Ítem	Descripción
Manual	Ajuste manualmente el brillo con el que quiera realizar la exploración. El brillo puede ajustarse en una gama de 1 a 255 haciendo clic en los botones  y  .
Automático	El brillo sólo se ajusta automáticamente cuando [Modo] está ajustado en [Blanco y negro] y [Matizar] en [Ninguno]. Cuando [Modo] esté ajustado en cualquier otra posición, y Brillo esté ajustado en [Automático], el ajuste de brillo retornará a su ajuste por defecto.
Botón Oscuro	Ajusta el valor del brillo a 64 para reproducir la imagen más oscura en general.
Botón Normal	Ajusta el valor del brillo a 128 para reproducir la imagen al brillo normal en general.
Botón Claro	Ajusta el valor del brillo a 192 para reproducir la imagen más clara en general.

<Contraste>

Ítem	Descripción
Manual	Ajuste manualmente el contraste. El contraste puede ajustarse en un margen de 1 a 13. Haga clic en los botones  y  para ajustar el contraste. El contraste aumenta ajustando un valor alto, se reduce ajustando un valor bajo.
Automático	Establece el contraste por defecto.



- Cuando Modo esté ajustado en “Blanco y negro”, el ajuste de contraste estará desactivado.
- En el DR-5020, la casilla de verificación Contraste estará en gris cuando Modo esté ajustado en “Blanco y negro”.

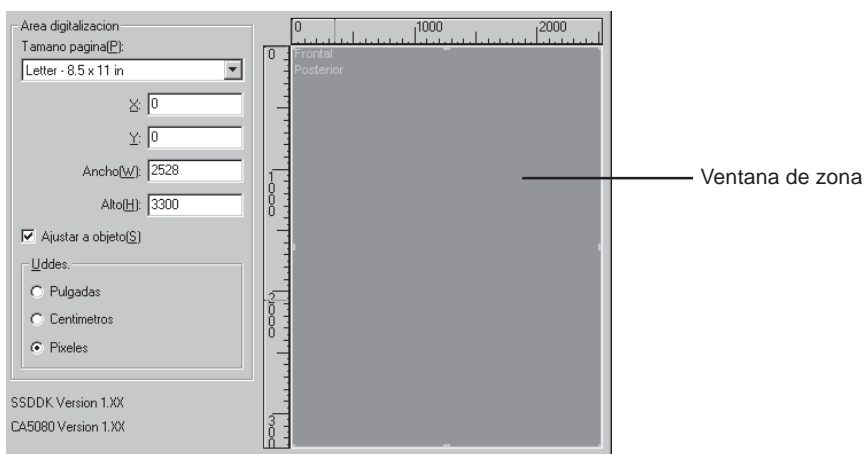
<Fijación de la zona de exploración>

Este ajuste le permite seleccionar y explorar una zona específica dentro del documento además de explorar el documento al tamaño fijado en [Tamaño página]. Puede especificar la zona de exploración en el lado frontal y posterior del documento a explorar. Tenga en cuenta, sin embargo, que el tamaño y posición de la zona fijada para los lados frontal y posterior serán iguales.

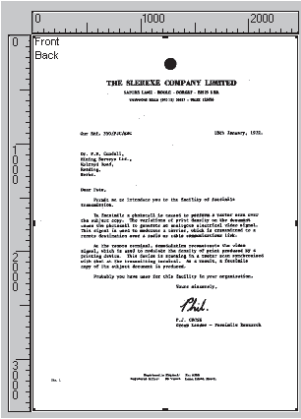
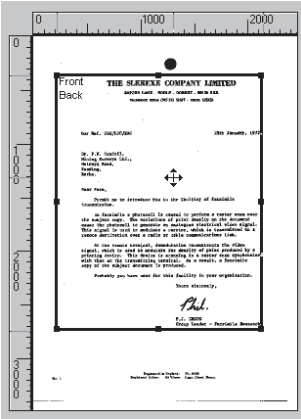
Hay dos formas de especificar la zona de exploración: introduciendo las coordenadas u otros valores numerales, o especificando la zona directamente dentro de la ventana de zona.



El ajuste "Tamaño página" y el ajuste de zona de exploración hechos aquí no serán válidos si ha seleccionado "Detectar tamaño" en el cuadro de diálogo "Opciones avanzadas de Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C" (P. 58).



Ítem	Descripción
Tamaño página	<p>Le permite seleccionar uno de los tamaños de página a explorar:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Letter - 8.5 x 11 pulgadas Letter [Girado] – 11 x 8.5 pulgadas Legal – 8.5 x 14 pulgadas Doble Letter – 11 x 17 pulgadas A3 - 297 x 420 mm A4 - 210 x 297 mm A4 [Girado] – 297 x 210 mm A5 - 148 x 210 mm A5 [Girado] – 210 x 148 mm A6 - 105 x 148 mm A6 [Girado] - 148 x 105 mm B4 (ISO) - 250 x 353 mm B4 (JIS) - 257 x 364 mm B5 (ISO) - 176 x 250 mm B5 (ISO) [Girado] – 250 x 176 mm B5 (JIS) - 182 x 257 mm B5 (JIS) [Girado] - 257 x 182 mm B6 (ISO) - 125 x 176 mm B6 (ISO) [Girado] - 176 x 125 mm B6 (JIS) - 128 x 182 mm B6 (JIS) [Girado] - 182 x 128 mm Máximo (295 x 432 mm) <p>Si se explora un documento más grande que el tamaño especificado, se recortarán los bordes adyacentes del documento. También, si se explora un documento más pequeño que el tamaño especificado, en los bordes adyacentes del documento se formará un margen negro.</p> <p>Si ha seleccionado Detectar tamaño en el cuadro de diálogo Opciones avanzadas de Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C, se ignorará esta configuración.</p>
Posición del eje	<p>X: Introduzca la coordenada X de la parte superior izquierda de la zona a explorar.</p> <p>Y: Introduzca la coordenada Y de la parte superior izquierda de la zona a explorar.</p> <p>Ancho: Introduzca la anchura de la zona a explorar.</p> <p>Alto: Introduzca la altura de la zona a explorar.</p> <p>Deberán ajustarse las mismas posiciones de coordenadas en los lados frontal y posterior.</p>

<p>Ajustar a objeto</p>	<p>Ajusta automáticamente la posición del eje en la zona de exploración a un valor conveniente. Cuando la unidad esté fijada en Pulgadas, este valor será un múltiplo de 1/8"; cuando esté ajustada en Centímetros, este valor será un múltiplo de 0,1 cm; y cuando esté ajustada en Píxeles, este valor será un múltiplo de 32 píxeles.</p>
<p>Uddes.</p>	<p>Establece la unidad usada para indicar el tamaño de la zona de exploración. Elija entre pulgadas, centímetros y píxeles.</p>
<p>(Ventana de zona)</p>	<p>La zona de exploración para el tamaño de papel se muestra en la ventana de zona. El tamaño de la ventana de zona varía de acuerdo con el ajuste de tamaño de papel. Ajuste el tamaño de la zona haciéndolo coincidir con la imagen de presentación preliminar visualizada en la ventana de zona realizando una exploración de presentación preliminar (P. 55) del documento. Puede ajustar el tamaño de la zona de exploración arrastrando los cuadrados ■ en el cuadro de zona. También puede arrastrar la zona de exploración entera para moverla. La zona de exploración especificada se aplica a ambos lados frontal y posterior del documento.</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;">   </div>

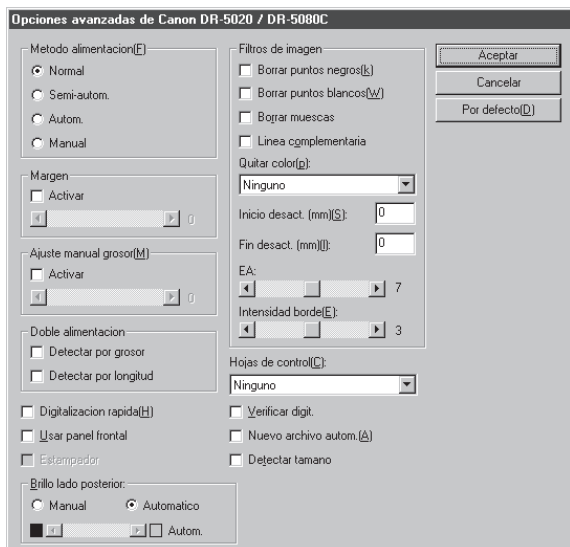
<Botones>

Ítem	Descripción
Avanzada...	Abre el cuadro de diálogo Opciones avanzadas de Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C (P. 56) para que pueda fijar detalles tales como filtro, velocidad de exploración, detección del tamaño de página y detección de hoja de control.
Suplement...	Abre el cuadro de diálogo Impresión suplementaria/sello (P. 32). Establezca la función del impresor o la función del sello. La función de impresor imprime caracteres especiales en el documento explorado cuando está instalado el impresor opcional. La función del sello agrega caracteres especificados a las imágenes exploradas.
Códigos...	Abre el cuadro de diálogo Código de barras (P. 40). Establezca las condiciones para leer códigos de barras cuando esté instalado el decodificador de código de barras opcional.
Gamma...	Abre el cuadro de diálogo Descargar Gamma (P. 37). Cargue y almacene datos gamma en el archivo para expresar colores y tonos.
Teclas de función...	Abre el cuadro de diálogo Teclas de función (P. 30). En este cuadro de diálogo, puede asignar funciones específicas a las teclas de función del escáner.
Por defecto	Devuelve todas las configuraciones a sus ajustes por defecto.
Aceptar	Inicia la exploración con los ajustes actuales.
Cancelar	Anula el ajuste actual, y cancela la exploración.
Previsualizar	Explora una página del documento, y visualiza una imagen de presentación preliminar en la ventana de zona. <div> </div>





Opciones avanzadas

Establezca las condiciones de exploración detalladamente.

Los ítems siguientes se configuran en el cuadro de diálogo Opciones avanzadas de Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C.



Ítem	Descripción
Método alimentación	<p>Seleccione el método de alimentación.</p> <p>Normal: El documento pasa (es explorado) cuando lo carga y da la orden de exploración en la aplicación.</p> <p>Semi-autom.: El documento pasa (es explorado) cuando da la orden de exploración en la aplicación y cuando lo carga y presiona la tecla de inicio.</p> <p>Autom.: El documento pasa (es explorado) automáticamente cuando lo carga.</p> <p>Manual: Los documentos pasan automáticamente de una en una hoja después de que de la orden de exploración en la aplicación. Utilice este modo cuando explore hojas especialmente gruesas o finas.</p> <p>La visualización de métodos de alimentación en el panel de operación del escáner cambiará tanto si presiona o no el botón [Aceptar] para los ajustes hechos aquí.</p>

Margen	<p>Ajusta los márgenes (superior, inferior, izquierdo y derecho) de la zona de exploración.</p> <p>Para ajustar los márgenes, haga clic en Activar y utilice los botones  y .</p> <p>Especifique entre los límites -10 (reduce la zona de exploración en 10 mm) a +10 (aumenta la zona de exploración en 10 mm). Por ejemplo, si quiere aumentar ligeramente la zona de exploración para que los bordes del documento no se recorten, ajuste en la dirección de +. O, si quiere reducir ligeramente la zona de exploración para que no se forme cuadro negro alrededor de la imagen explorada, ajuste en la dirección de -.</p>
Ajuste manual grosor	<p>Ajuste manualmente el grosor del papel cuando éste no se ajuste automáticamente. Haga clic en Activar y ajuste el grosor con los botones  y .</p> <p>Especifique el grosor dentro de los límites 1 (el más fino) a 13 (el más grueso). Utilice esta configuración para ajustar manualmente el grosor del papel cuando explore originales y documentos recubiertos con una capa especial cuyo grosor de papel no pueda ser ajustado automáticamente, o cuando en el modo de ajuste automático del grosor de papel ocurra doble alimentación con frecuencia.</p>
Doble alimentación	<p>Seleccione el método utilizado para detectar doble alimentación. "Doble alimentación" será detectada cuando entren juntas dos o más hojas del documento o cuando parte de una hoja solape a otra hoja al explorarse continuamente las hojas del documento.</p> <p>[Detectar por grosor] Detecta doble alimentación por el grosor del papel. Cuando entra una hoja más gruesa que la primera del documento(*), el escáner la toma como doble alimentación y visualiza un error.</p> <p>[Detectar por longitud] Detecta doble alimentación por la longitud del papel. Cuando entra una hoja más larga que la primera del documento(*), el escáner la toma como doble alimentación y visualiza un error.</p> <p>* La detección de doble alimentación se realiza tomando el grosor y longitud de la primera hoja del documento como hoja estándar. Cuando entra la primera hoja del documento, el escáner memoriza su grosor y la longitud.</p>

<p>Digitalización rápida</p>	<p>Esta configuración estará disponible cuando la resolución esté ajustada a 200 ó 300 ppp. Cuando se haya ajustado 200 ppp, las imágenes se explorarán a 200 x 100 ppp (horizontal x vertical) y se obtendrán imágenes a 200 x 200 ppp. Cuando se haya ajustado 300 ppp, las imágenes se explorarán a 300 x 150 ppp (horizontal x vertical) y se obtendrán imágenes a 300 x 300 ppp. Aunque la exploración se realiza a igual rapidez en cualquiera de los casos, tenga en cuenta que la calidad de la imagen explorada a alta velocidad disminuirá ligeramente.</p>
<p>Usar panel frontal</p>	<p>Activa los ajustes hechos en el panel de operación del escáner.</p>
<p>Estampador</p>	<p>Activa el estampador opcional.</p>
<p>Hojas de control</p>	<p>Selecciona el modo en que el escáner detecta las hojas de control.</p> <p>[Ninguno] No se detectan las hojas de control del escáner.</p> <p>[Digitalizar, continuar] Se detecta y explora la hoja de control del escáner, y luego continúa la exploración.</p> <p>[Ignorar, Continuar] Se detecta la hoja de control del escáner y se ignora (no se explora), y luego continúa la exploración.</p> <p>[Digitalizar, detener] Se detecta y explora la hoja de control del escáner, y luego se detiene la exploración.</p> <p>[Ignorar, detener] Se detecta la hoja de control del escáner y omite (no se explora), y luego se detiene la exploración.</p>
<p>Verificar digit.</p>	<p>Verifica el número de páginas contadas antes de la exploración en relación con el número actual de páginas exploradas. Si el número difiere, se visualiza un error.</p>
<p>Nuevo archivo autom.</p>	<p>Este ajuste genera una señal de salto de página cada vez que finaliza una exploración continua. Esto le permite fijar delimitadores de archivo en la aplicación correspondiente que esté utilizando.</p>
<p>Detectar tamaño</p>	<p>Este ajuste detecta el tamaño de cada documento a medida que es explorado, y explora el documento a ese tamaño. Cuando se selecciona este ajuste, se desactiva Tamaño página en el cuadro de diálogo Escáner Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C.</p>

<Ajuste del brillo del lado posterior>

Ítem	Descripción
Manual	Ajuste manualmente el brillo al que se va a realizar la exploración. El brillo puede ajustarse en una gama de 1 a 255 haciendo clic en los botones ◀ y ▶.
Automático	El brillo sólo se ajusta automáticamente cuando [Modo] está ajustado en [Blanco y negro] y [Matizar] en [Ninguno]. Cuando [Modo] esté ajustado en cualquier otra posición, y Brillo esté ajustado en [Automático], el ajuste de brillo retornará a su ajuste por defecto.

<Configuración de filtros de imagen>

Fije los filtros de procesamiento de imagen.

Ítem	Descripción
Borrar puntos negros	Borra automáticamente los puntos negros (individuales) aislados sobre fondos blancos.
Borrar puntos blancos	Borra automáticamente los puntos blancos (individuales) aislados sobre fondos negros.
Borrar muescas	Borra automáticamente las partes (muescas) que salen de los contornos.
Línea complementaria	Une automáticamente las líneas apenas visibles o intermitentes que aparecen al explorar documentos que contiene líneas finas.
Quitar color	Haga clic aquí para activar la función de quitar color. Esta función sólo se activa en el DR-5080C. [Ninguno] La función de quitar color no se lleva a cabo. [Rojo] No se exploran las partes rojas del documento. [Verde] No se exploran las partes verdes del documento. [Azul] No se exploran las partes azules del documento.
Inicio desact.	Si el documento contiene una zona donde va a desactivarse la función de quitar color, especifique el punto de inicio de esta zona como distancia (mm) desde el borde superior del papel.
Fin desact.	Especifique el punto de finalización de la zona donde va desactivarse la función de quitar color como distancia (mm) desde el borde superior del papel.
EA	Fija el nivel de la función EA (Exposición automática). (Esta función fija el brillo y contraste de acuerdo con el sombreado en la zona en la que se selecciona la imagen.) Este ajuste puede configurarse en 13 pasos con los botones ◀ y ▶. Por defecto es 7.

Intensidad borde	Fija el nivel para acentuar el contorno de las letras, y suavizar la granulosidad de imágenes tales como fotografías. Este ajuste puede configurarse en cinco pasos con los botones ◀ y ▶. Por defecto es 3.
-------------------------	--



MEMORÁNDUM

- [Borrar puntos negros], [Borrar puntos blancos], [Borrar muescas] y [Línea complementaria] se activan cuando [Modo] está ajustado en [Blanco y negro] y [Matizar] en [Difuminar errores].
- [Quitar color] se activa cuando [Modo] está ajustado en cualquier posición diferente a [Color].
- [EA] se activa cuando [Modo] está ajustado en [Blanco y negro].
- [Intensidad borde] se activa en todos los modos.

<Botones>

Ítem	Descripción
Aceptar	Activa las configuraciones y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.
Cancelar	Cancela cualquier configuración que haya cambiado y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.
Por defecto	Devuelve todas las configuraciones a sus ajustes por defecto.

Índice alfabético

- A -

Activ. incremento	36
Activar detección códigos	41
Activar impre. Supl.	30
Addon Type	35
Advanced Features dialog	56
Ajuste manual grosor	26, 30, 57
Autom.	25, 56

- B -

Barcode Dialog	40
Borrar muescas	28, 59
Borrar puntos blancos	28, 59
Borrar puntos negros	28, 59
Brillo	20, 51

- C -

CD-ROM de instalación	10
Codabar	42
Code 128	42
Code 39	42
Códigos por página	41
Contador	33, 36
Contraste	21, 51

- D -

Detectar tamaño	27, 58
Digitalización rápida	27, 58
Distancia horizontal	34
Doble alimentación	26, 30, 57
Dúplex	50

- E -

EA	28, 59
EAN	41
Estampador	27, 58

- G -

Gamma Curve data	38
Gamma Download dialog	37
Guardar Selección	30

- H -

Hojas de control	27, 58
------------------------	--------

- I -

Imprinter/Addon Dialog	32
Increment	36
Instalación del controlador	11
Intensidad borde	28, 60
ITF	42

- L -

Línea complementaria	28, 59
----------------------------	--------

- M -

Manual	25, 56
Margen	26, 57
Matizar	19, 50
Método alimentación	25, 56
Modo	18, 50
Modo Grosor Fijo	30
More dialog	25

- N -

Negro en blanco	35
Negro en imagen	35
Normal	25, 56

Normal.....	25, 56
Nuevo archivo autom.	27, 58

- O -

Opciones del decodificador de código de barras	40
Opción de escaneado	50
Orientación	35

- P -

Páginas	35
Posición del eje	23, 53
Ptos. por pulgada	19, 50

- Q -

Quitar color	28, 59
--------------------	--------

- R -

Recuperar Selección	30
---------------------------	----

- S -

Sello	32
Suplement.	32

- T -

Tamaño página	19, 23, 53
---------------------	------------

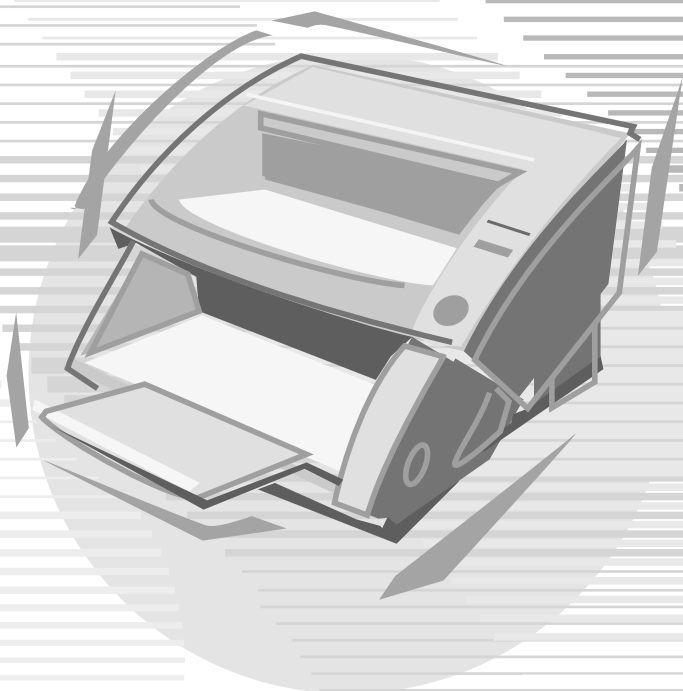
- V -

Valor inicio	36
Ventana de zona	24, 54

ISIS/TWAIN Driver

Intruzioni

Assicurarsi di leggere attentamente queste Istruzioni prima di usare l'unità e conservare questo manuale in un luogo sicuro dopo l'uso.



AVVISO

- ① Copyright© 1999 di CANON ELECTRONICS INC. Tutti i diritti riservati. Nessuna parte di questa pubblicazione può essere riprodotta, trasmessa, trascritta, memorizzata in sistemi di recupero o tradotta in qualsiasi lingua o linguaggio informatico in qualsiasi forma e con qualsiasi mezzo, elettronico, meccanico, magnetico, ottico, chimico, manuale o altrimenti, senza previo permesso di CANON ELECTRONICS INC.
- ② Il contenuto di questo manuale è soggetto a modifiche senza preavviso.
- ③ Si è fatto il possibile per assicurare l'accuratezza delle informazioni contenute in questo manuale. Tuttavia, Canon Electronics Inc. e le consociate indicate sul retro copertina non si assumono alcuna responsabilità per alcun errore o le sue conseguenze.
- ④ Non ci assumiamo alcuna responsabilità per danni derivanti dalle operazioni nonostante la voce ③.

Marchi e marchi registrati

- Microsoft Windows® e Microsoft Windows NT® sono marchi registrati di Microsoft Corporation negli Stati Uniti e in altri paesi.
- ISIS® è un marchio registrato di Pixel Translation A Division of ActionPoint Inc.
- Adaptec è un marchio registrato di ADAPTEC Inc.
- IBM e PC/AT sono marchi registrati di International Business Machines Corporation.
- Pentium® è un marchio registrato di Intel Corporation U.S.A.
- In questo manuale si fa riferimento a nomi di prodotto esclusivamente a scopo d'identificazione e teniamo a precisare che potrebbero essere marchi e/o marchi.

INTRODUZIONE

Grazie per avere acquistato Document Scanner DR-5020/5080C Canon. Con il modello DR-5020/5080C vengono forniti in tutto tre manuali: Istruzioni per il driver ISIS/TWAIN (questo manuale), Istruzioni per DR-5020/5080C e Istruzioni per Scanning Utility 5000.

Questo manuale descrive il funzionamento per il driver ISIS/TWAIN usando il modello DR-5020/5080C con applicazioni per ambiente Windows. Leggere questo manuale e le Istruzioni per DR-5020/5080C prima dell'uso e assicurarsi che le funzioni del modello DR-5020/5080C vengano effettivamente utilizzate. Siccome l'applicazione acclusa al modello DR-5020/5080C utilizza un driver esclusivo, i driver di scanner quali l'ISIS o il TWAIN non sono necessari.

Inoltre, dopo avere letto il manuale, non mancare di conservarlo in un posto sicuro.

Di seguito descriviamo i contenuti di ciascuno di questi manuali.

Istruzioni per il driver ISIS/TWAIN (questo manuale)

Questo manuale descrive il funzionamento dello scanner con un driver ISIS o con un'applicazione compatibile con il driver TWAIN.

Istruzioni per il DR-5020/5080C

Questo manuale spiega come collegare lo scanner, come caricare documenti, come rimuovere carta inceppata e altre informazioni su come usare lo scanner. Leggere questo manuale prima di cominciare ad usare il DR-5020/5080C.

Istruzioni per Scanning Utility 5000

Questo manuale spiega come funziona l'applicazione acclusa allo scanner.

■ **Attenzione**

Quando lo scanner viene utilizzato per eseguire copie, tenere conto di quanto segue:

- La riproduzione di monete, altre forme di valute o titoli negoziabili è reato e viene perseguita in termini di legge.
- La riproduzione di certificati ufficiali, licenze, biglietti di viaggio, documenti protetti da copyright o privati e simili, anche costituisce reato e viene perseguito in termini di legge.
- Quando la copia di un'immagine viene utilizzata per altri scopi che non sia quello personale o l'uso entro i confini della propria abitazione, richiedere il permesso del proprietario del copyright.

CONVENZIONI

In questo manuale vengono utilizzati i seguenti simboli e indicazioni. Prima di cominciare a leggere il manuale, leggere quanto segue e apprenderne il significato.



Leggere attentamente per evitare rischi di morte o gravi lesioni personali.



Leggere attentamente per evitare danni all'apparecchio o perdite di dati indispensabili.



I riferimenti indicano dove reperire informazioni utili in questo manuale. Il numero racchiuso tra parentesi indica il numero della pagina che contiene ulteriori informazioni circa la frase o il paragrafo precedente.



Fornisce consigli per l'esecuzione delle operazioni e su come risolvere piccoli problemi.

■ Questa unità

In questo manuale DR-5020 e DR-5080C vengono definiti collettivamente come lo "scanner". Quando occorre una descrizione specifica per il singolo tipo di macchina, nel manuale viene specificato lo scanner DR-5020 o DR-5080C.

INDICE

INTRODUZIONE	1
CONVENZIONI	2
Capitolo 1 Leggere prima	5
1.1 Requisiti del sistema	6
Usò del driver ISIS/TWAIN	6
1.2 Come leggere questo manuale	8
ISIS - Applicazione compatibile	8
TWAIN - Applicazione compatibile	8
Capitolo 2 Installazione del driver ISIS/TWAIN	9
2.1 Preliminari	10
2.2 Installazione del driver	11
Capitolo 3 Uso del driver ISIS	15
3.1 Selezione del driver ISIS	16
3.2 Impostazione delle condizioni di scansione	17
Impostazioni fondamentali	18
Posizione degli assi	22
Dettagli delle impostazioni	25
Impostazione dei tasti di funzione	30
Impostazioni di stampa e timbro	32
Impostazione della curva gamma	37
Impostazioni del decodificatore di cadici a barre	40
Capitolo 4 Uso del driver TWAIN	45
4.1 Selezione del driver TWAIN	46
4.2 Avviare il driver TWAIN	47
4.3 Impostazione delle condizioni di scansione	48
Impostazioni di base	49
Funzioni avanzate	56
INDICE ANALITICO	61

Capitolo 1

Leggere prima

Questo capitolo descrive le cose che bisogna conoscere prima di installare nel computer i driver ISIS e TWAIN del DR-5020/5080C.

1.1 Requisiti del sistema	6
Usò del driver ISIS/TWAIN	6
1.2 Come leggere questo manuale	8
ISIS - Applicazione compatibile	8
TWAIN - Applicazione compatibile	8



Requisiti del sistema

Perché i driver ISIS e TWAIN del DR-5020/5080C funzionino correttamente è necessario il seguente hardware.

- Un computer IBM PC/AT o compatibile con CPU Pentium 133 MHz o superiore e almeno 64 MB di memoria
 - SO: Windows® 95/98/Me Microsoft o WindowsNT® 4.0 Workstation/Windows 2000 Professional
 - Almeno 100 MB di spazio libero sull'hard disk (almeno 5 MB dopo l'installazione)
- Monitor compatibile SVGA
- Tastiera, mouse e stampante compatibili con Windows Microsoft, Unità CD-ROM (velocità 4x o superiore).
- Una scheda SCSI il cui funzionamento sia stato certificato
Il funzionamento delle seguenti schede SCSI è stato certificato:
Adaptec Serie AHA-1540 e serie AHA-2940
- Cavo SCSI compatibile con SCSI-2

Uso del driver ISIS/TWAIN

- Installare sia il driver ISIS che il driver TWAIN in un'unica operazione di installazione del driver ISIS/TWAIN. Questi driver non possono essere installati separatamente.
- Non necessariamente i driver ISIS e TWAIN supportano tutte le applicazioni ISIS compatibili e TWAIN compatibili.
- Le finestre di dialogo e i menu delle applicazioni compatibili con il driver ISIS/TWAIN riportate in questo manuale sono soltanto degli esempi. Si noti che quando appaiono sullo schermo possono essere diverse a seconda dell'applicazione che si sta usando. Alcune applicazioni non supportano tutte le funzioni descritte in questo manuale. Per maggiori dettagli contattare il proprio fornitore di software.
- L'applicazione non supporta le funzioni del modello DR-5020/5080C e pertanto potrebbe non funzionare correttamente.
- Questo driver ISIS/TWAIN utilizza [wnasp32.dll] per il controllo dello scanner. Lo scanner non può funzionare se [wnasp32.dll] non è stato installato correttamente. Se [wnasp32.dll] non è stato installato, contattate il produttore della scheda SCSI che state utilizzando, oppure l'assistenza tecnica Canon.

- Nel caso in cui il driver ISIS/TWAIN venga installato su un computer dotato di sistema operativo Windows 95 e che utilizza un [wnasp32.dll] già installato su Windows 95, può accadere che il driver non funzioni regolarmente. In questo caso, lanciate [Aspiinst.exe] che si trova nella cartella [Pixtran] del CD di configurazione per aggiornare [wnasp32.dll] all'ultima versione.
Abbiamo già verificato il seguente problema nel caso si selezioni lo scanner su un computer che utilizza Windows 95:
 - L'applicazione si chiude forzatamente quando la versione di [wnasp32.dll] nella Cartella Sistema è "1,0,0,0".
- Questo driver ISIS/TWAIN supporta sei lingue (Giapponese, Inglese, Tedesco, Francese, Spagnolo e Italiano). La lingua adottata dal driver viene selezionata automaticamente per adattarsi alle impostazioni di paese in Windows.
Se la lingua adottata dal driver è diversa dalla lingua usata dall'applicazione in uso, le finestre di dialogo del driver forse non sono state visualizzate in modo corretto. Se accade ciò, adattare la lingua del driver all'applicazione.
Per cambiare la lingua adottata dal driver, cambiare le impostazioni di paese nel pannello di controllo.
È possibile inoltre cambiare la lingua adottata dal driver senza cambiare le impostazioni di paese. Per fare ciò, aggiungere le seguenti due linee al file "Setscan.ini" che si trova nella cartella Windows. Questo imposterà la lingua adottata dal driver.

[Opzionali]

jLingua=xxxx (xxxx indica la lingua)

xxx (definizioni della lingua)

1031=Tedesco

1033=Inglese

1034=Spagnolo

1036=Francese

1040=Italiano

1041=Giapponese

Se anche dopo avere cambiato le impostazioni di paese nel pannello di controllo e dopo avere cambiato la lingua nel file Setscan.ini la lingua che si è specificata non viene sostituita, una delle cause probabili è che l'applicazione in uso non consente la sostituzione della lingua. In questo caso non è possibile sostituire la lingua.

1.2

Come leggere questo manuale

Leggere il relativo capitolo di questo manuale dopo avere prima controllato quale driver, ISIS o TWAIN, è supportato dall'applicazione che si sta utilizzando.

ISIS - Applicazione compatibile

Capitolo 2 Installazione del driver ISIS/TWAIN (P. 9)

Questo capitolo descrive come installare il driver ISIS/TWAIN sull'hard disk del computer.

Capitolo 3 Uso del driver ISIS (p. 15)

Questo capitolo descrive come selezionare il driver ISIS dall'interno dell'applicazione e descrive in dettaglio le impostazioni iniziali per la scansione.

TWAIN - Applicazione compatibile

Capitolo 2 Installazione del driver ISIS/TWAIN (P. 9)

Questo capitolo descrive come installare il driver ISIS/TWAIN sull'hard disk del computer.

Capitolo 4 Uso del driver TWAIN (p. 45)

Questo capitolo descrive come selezionare il driver TWAIN dall'interno dell'applicazione e descrive in dettaglio le impostazioni iniziali per la scansione.



RIFERIMENTO

Per i dettagli su come collegare lo scanner, far riferimento alle Istruzioni per il DR-5020/5080C.

Capitolo 2

Installazione del driver ISIS/TWAIN

Questo capitolo descrive come installare nel computer il driver ISIS/TWAIN per DR-5020/5080C.

2.1 Preliminari	10
2.2 Installazione del driver	11

2.1 Preliminari

Prima di avviare l'installazione del driver ISIS/TWAIN, controllare le cose seguenti.

- **Assicurarsi che il Sistema Operativo in funzione sul computer su cui deve essere installato il driver ISIS/TWAIN sia Microsoft Windows® 95/98/Me oppure Microsoft WindowsNT® Workstation/Windows 2000 Professional.**

- **Collegare il computer**

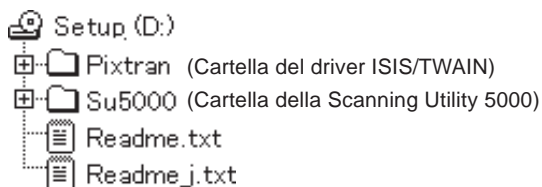
Per maggiori dettagli su come collegare lo scanner fare riferimento alle Istruzioni per DR-5020/5080C.

- **CD-ROM di installazione**

Il CD-ROM di installazione comprende gli elementi seguenti.

Prima di installare il driver ISIS/TWAIN, si raccomanda di leggere il file "Readme.txt".

Dopo aver installato il driver ISIS/TWAIN, conservare il CD-ROM di installazione in un luogo sicuro.



2.2 Installazione del driver

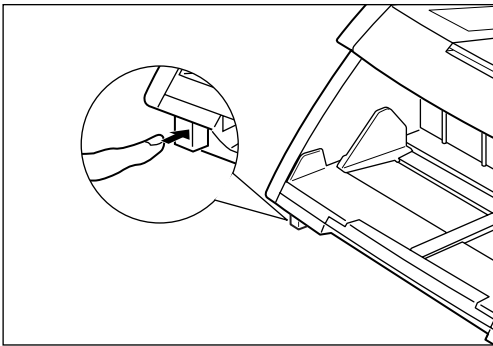
Installare il driver ISIS/TWAIN.



RIFERIMENTO

La procedura descritta sotto installa entrambi i driver, ISIS e TWAIN. Questi driver non possono essere installati separatamente.

1 Accendere lo scanner.



2 Accendere il computer.

⇒ Windows si avvia.

3 Se un altro drive compatibile con il driver ISIS è già in uso, prima di eseguire l'installazione, creare copie di backup dei seguenti file.

`\WINDOWS\SYSTEM\PIX*.DLL`

`\WINDOWS\PIXTRAN*.*`



RIFERIMENTO

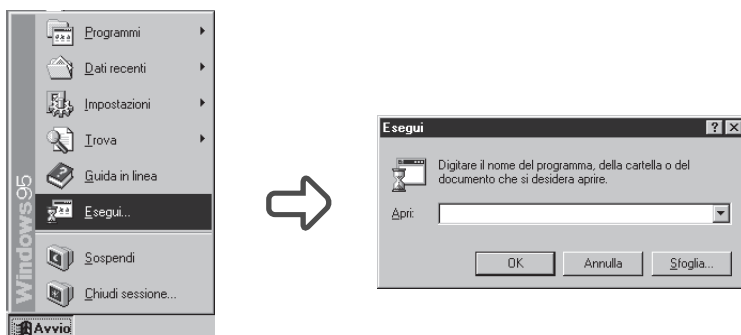
- Se è installato un driver ISIS/TWAIN i file sopra riportati possono essere modificati. Creare copie di backup prima di eseguire l'installazione.
- I nomi delle cartelle \Windows e \Windows\System variano a seconda della versione di Windows utilizzata. Nelle spiegazione che seguono, sostituire i nomi delle cartelle \Windows e \Windows\System con i nomi delle cartelle della versione di Windows che si sta utilizzando.

4 Inserire il disco di installazione nel lettore di CD-ROM.

5 Cliccare il tasto [Avvio] e selezionare Esegui.

La schermata che appare può variare a seconda della versione Windows in funzione.

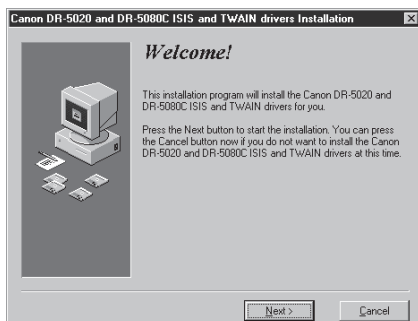
[Windows95]



6 In Esegui, digitare “D:\pixtran\setup.exe” e cliccare [OK].

In queste istruzioni il lettore di CD-ROM viene indicato con D.

⇒ Appare la schermata di avvio installazione del driver.



7 Per eseguire l'installazione cliccare [Next].

⇒ Appare la schermata di installazione del driver completata.



8 Per completare l'installazione cliccare su [Finish].

Capitolo 3

Uso del driver ISIS

Questo capitolo descrive le operazioni quando il driver ISIS deve funzionare su una applicazione ISIS compatibile.

3.1 Selezione del driver ISIS	16
3.2 Impostazione delle	
condizioni di scansione	17
Impostazioni fondamentali	18
Posizione degli assi	22
Dettagli delle impostazioni	25
Impostazione dei tasti di funzione	30
Impostazioni di stampa e timbro	32
Impostazione della curva gamma	37
Impostazioni del decodificatore	
di cadici a barre	40

3.1 Selezione del driver ISIS

Selezionare il driver ISIS che si intende usare.
 Eseguire questa operazione una sola volta dopo avere installato il driver ISIS.
 Inoltre, questa operazione non deve essere ripetuta fino a quando si collega uno scanner diverso dal modello DR-5020/5080C.



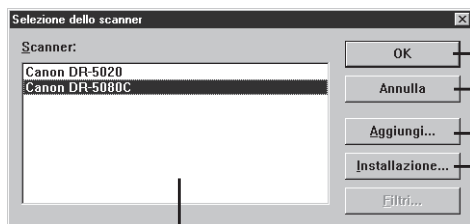
RIFERIMENTO

Le finestre di dialogo e i menu descritti in questo manuale sono soltanto esempi. L'aspetto che assumono sul proprio schermo potrebbe variare a seconda dell'applicazione usata. Alcune applicazioni non supportano tutte le funzioni descritte in questo manuale. Per maggiori dettagli, fare riferimento al manuale dell'applicazione in uso.

1 Avviare l'applicazione compatibile con il driver ISIS.

2 Visualizzare la schermata Selezione scanner.

La schermata Selezione Scanner che appare varia a seconda dell'applicazione in uso.



- OK — Seleziona lo scanner.
- Annulla — Chiude la finestra di dialogo senza selezionare lo scanner.
- Aggiungi... — Cliccare questo pulsante per aggiungere altri scanner.
- Installazione... — Da usare per eseguire le impostazioni dello scanner.
- Filtri...

Gli scanner disponibili vengono visualizzati qui.

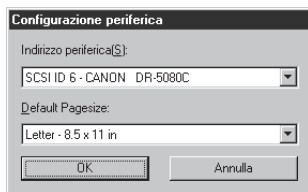


RIFERIMENTO

Se sulla schermata non si riesce a vedere Canon DR-5020 oppure Canon DR-5080C, installare il driver.

3 Cliccare Canon DR-5020 oppure Canon DR-5080C nella lista, e cliccare [OK].

➔ Verrà visualizzata la schermata Configura le impostazioni della periferica.



4 Impostare l'opzione [Default Pagesize] (Formato di pagina predefinito) e fare clic su [OK].

➔ Il formato di pagina impostato qui viene considerato come impostazione predefinita.

3.2 Impostazione delle condizioni di scansione

La finestra di dialogo Impostazioni Scanner è organizzata nella gerarchia di menu mostrata sotto.

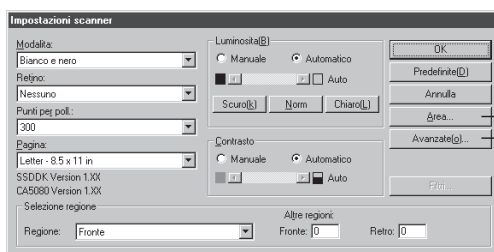
Se necessario visualizzare queste finestre di dialogo a seconda della funzione che si vuole usare ed eseguire le necessarie impostazioni.

Per maggiori dettagli sulle voci di impostazione di ciascuna di queste finestre di dialogo, vedere il numero di pagina di riferimento.

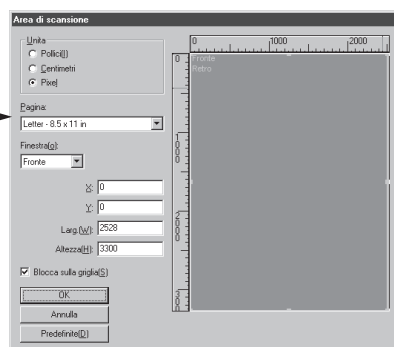
1 Avviare l'applicazione compatibile con il driver ISIS.

2 Visualizzare la schermata Impostazioni Scanner.

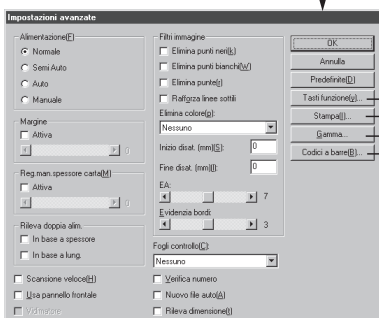
La schermata Impostazioni Scanner che appare varia a seconda dell'applicazione in uso.



Finestra di dialogo Impostazioni Scanner (p. 18)



Finestra di dialogo Area Scanner (p. 22)



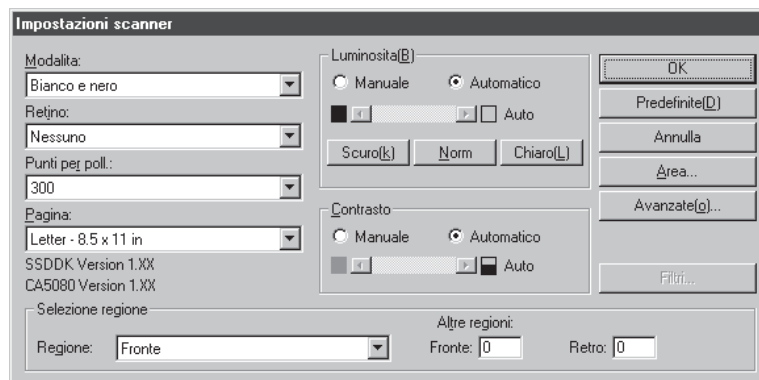
Finestra di dialogo Più dialogo (p. 25)

- Finestra di dialogo Tasti funzione (→ P.30)
- Finestra di dialogo Stampante/Componente aggiuntiva Dialogo (→ P.32)
- Finestra di dialogo Carica Gamma (→ P.37)
- Finestra di dialogo Dialogo Codice a Barre (→ P.40)

Impostazioni fondamentali

Imposta le condizioni di scansione fondamentali.

Questa impostazione viene eseguita nella finestra di dialogo “Impostazioni scanner”.



<Impostazioni di scansione>



Le modalità che possono essere effettivamente usate per la digitalizzazione sono limitate e a volte, in funzione delle impostazioni della combinazione, la digitalizzazione può non essere possibile. Per i dettagli, vedere nelle “Tabelle delle modalità di scansione dei modelli DR-5020 e DR-5080C” (P. 88).

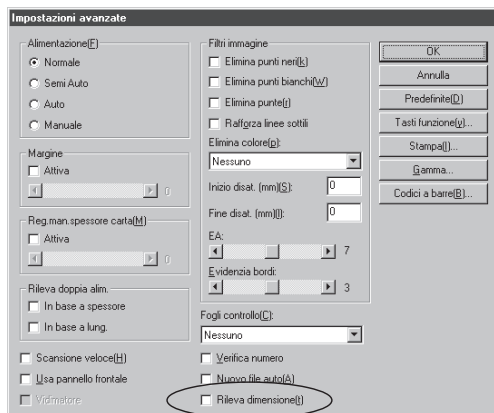
Voce	Descrizione
Modalità	<p>Imposta la modalità di scansione delle immagini. Per il DR-5020 è disponibile solo Bianco e nero.</p> <p>[Bianco e nero] Digitalizza le immagini esclusivamente in bianco e nero senza toni di grigio.</p> <p>[Grigio di 16, 256 livello.] Selezionare questa modalità per digitalizzare con la scala dei toni di grigio, foto e documenti in toni di grigio. Più grande è il valore del livello, maggiore è il formato del file.</p> <p>[Colore a 3, 12, 24 bit]. Selezionare questa modalità per digitalizzare a colori, foto e documenti in toni di grigio. Più grande è il numero di bit, maggiore è il formato del file.</p> <p>[Colore-3, 6, 12 bit -> 4, 8-Bit Tavolozza]. La tavolozza a 4 bit viene utilizzata per convertire i dati dei colori a 3 bit in 16 colori per l'uscita e la tavolozza a 8 bit viene utilizzata per convertire i dati dei colori a 6 e 12 bit in 256 colori per l'uscita.</p>

Retino	<p>Attiva e disattiva la retinatura.</p> <p>[Nessuna] Senza retinatura. Usare per digitalizzare testo o disegni senza colori o toni di grigio.</p> <p>[Diffusione errore] Applica automaticamente la diffusione d'errore per simulare l'area grigia dei toni di grigio. Usare questa impostazione per digitalizzare foto e documenti in toni di grigio.</p>
Punti per poll.	<p>Permette di impostare la risoluzione, il numero di punti per pollice (dpi). Le opzioni selezionabili sono 13: 100, 200, 210, 220, 230, 240, 250, 260, 270, 280, 290, 300 e 400.</p>
Pagina	<p>Permette di selezionare uno dei seguenti formati di documento da digitalizzare:</p> <p>Lettera - 8,5 x 11 poll. Lettera [Ruotata] - 11 x 8,5 poll. Legal - 8,5 x 14 poll. Lettera doppia - 11 x 17 poll. A3 - 297 x 420 mm A4 - 210 x 297 mm A4 [Ruotato] - 297 x 210 mm A5 - 148 x 210 mm A5 [Ruotato] - 210 x 148 mm A6 - 105 x 148 mm A6 [Ruotato] - 148 x 105 mm B4 (ISO) - 250 x 353 mm B4 (JIS) - 257 x 364 mm B5 (ISO) - 176 x 250 mm B5 [Ruotato] (ISO) - 250 x 176 mm B5 (JIS) - 182 x 257 mm B5 [Ruotato] (JIS) - 257 x 182 mm B6 (ISO) - 125 x 176 mm B6 [Ruotato] (ISO) - 176 x 125 mm B6 (JIS) - 128 x 182 mm B6 [Ruotato] (JIS) - 182 x 128 mm</p> <p>Se si digitalizza un documento di formato più grande di quello specificato, i bordi di contorno verranno tagliati. Viceversa, se si digitalizza un documento di formato più piccolo di quello specificato, sui bordi di contorno apparirà una fascia nera.</p>



I dati non saranno salvati correttamente se si seleziona [16 livelli di grigio] come modalità, si seleziona [Rileva dimensione] nella finestra di dialogo “Più dialogo” (P.25), si esegue una scansione, e si imposta il formato di file per il salvataggio dei dati dell'applicazione in [JBIG].



Le impostazioni “Formato Pagina” fatte qui non saranno valide se si è selezionato “Rileva dimensione” nella finestra di dialogo “Impostazioni avanzate” (P. 25).



<Luminosità>

Voce	Descrizione
Manuale	Impostare manualmente la luminosità in cui eseguire la scansione. La luminosità può essere impostata a scelta in un arco che va da 1 a 255, e regolata facendo clic sui tasti ◀ e ▶.
Automatico	La luminosità viene impostata automaticamente solo quando [Modo] è impostato su [Bianco e nero] e [Retino] è impostato su [Nessuno]. Quando [Modo] è impostato su un'altra impostazione e luminosità è impostata su [Automatico], l'impostazione della luminosità ritorna quella predefinita.
Pulsante Scuro	Imposta il valore di luminosità su 64, per riprodurre l'immagine totale più scura.
Pulsante Norm	Imposta su 128 il valore di luminosità per riprodurre l'immagine globale a luminosità standard.
Pulsante Chiaro	Imposta su 192 il valore di luminosità per riprodurre l'immagine globale più chiara.

<Contrasto>

Voce	Descrizione
Manuale	Imposta manualmente il contrasto. Il contrasto può essere impostato a scelta in una gamma da 1 a 13. Cliccare i tasti  e  per regolare il contrasto. Impostando un valore più grande il contrasto aumenta e impostando un valore più piccolo il contrasto diminuisce.
Automatico	Imposta il valore predefinito del contrasto.



RIFERIMENTO

- Le impostazioni del contrasto vengono disabilitate quando si imposta la [Modalità] su [Bianco e nero].
- Su DR-5020, la finestra di controllo del [Contrasto] e grigia quando la [Modalità] è impostata su [Bianco e nero].

<Selezione regione>

Voce	Descrizione
Regione	Seleziona la facciata del documento per cui impostare la luminosità. Selezionare Anteriore o Posteriore.
Altre regioni	Non supportato da questo scanner.

<Pulsanti>

Voce	Descrizione
OK	Abilita le impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.
Predefinite	Ripristina tutte le impostazioni predefinite.
Annulla	Annulla tutte le modifiche alle impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.
Area	Per aprire la finestra di dialogo Area di scansione (P. 22) in modo che si possano impostare le dimensioni dell'area da digitalizzare sulla pagina anteriore o sulla pagina posteriore.
Avanzate	Per aprire la finestra di dialogo Impostazioni avanzate (P. 25) in modo che si possano impostare le opzioni specifiche quali filtro, velocità, rilevamento formato pagina e rilevamento Foglio di controllo.
Filtri	Non supportato da questo scanner.

Posizione degli assi

Impostare l'area di scansione se si desidera digitalizzare soltanto una parte del documento. L'area di scansione viene impostata nella finestra di dialogo "Area di scansione".

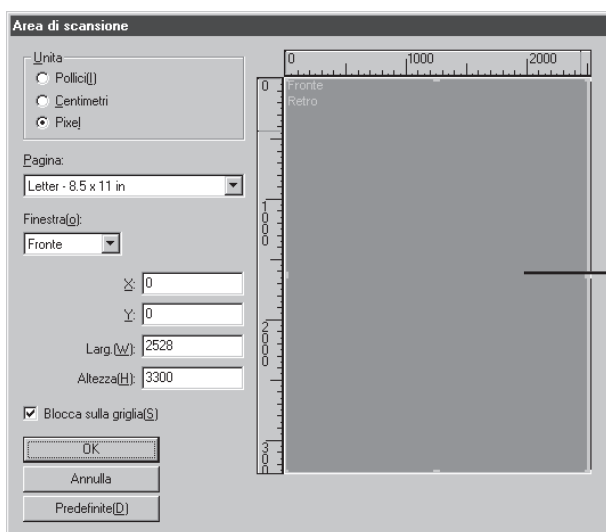
L'area di scansione può essere impostata su entrambe le facciate, anteriore e posteriore, del documento che si vuole digitalizzare. Notare tuttavia che la grandezza dell'area di scansione sulle facciate anteriore e posteriore e le posizioni delle coordinate in direzione Y (verticale) devono essere impostate sullo stesso valore. Queste voci possono essere impostate solo per le posizioni delle coordinate nella direzione X (orizzontale).

Ci sono due modi per specificare l'area di scansione: immettendo le coordinate o altri valori numerici, oppure specificando l'area dentro la finestra dell'area.



RIFERIMENTO

Le impostazioni dell'area di scansione seguite in questa occasione non saranno valide se si è selezionato "Rileva dimensione" nella finestra di dialogo "Impostazioni avanzate" (P. 25).



Finestra dell'area

Voce	Descrizione
Unità	Imposta l'unità di misura dell'area di scansione. Scegliere fra Pollici, Centimetri e pixel.

Pagina	Seleziona la grandezza del documento che si vuole digitalizzare. Le impostazioni dei formati pagina disponibili sono gli stessi formati documento di quelli in [Pagina] nella finestra di dialogo [Impostazioni scanner]. Quando si apre la finestra di dialogo [Area di scansione], vengono visualizzati i formati documento impostati in [Pagina] nella finestra di dialogo [Impostazioni scanner]. I cambiamenti delle impostazioni fatti qui vengono riportati anche [Pagina] nella finestra di dialogo [Impostazioni scanner].
Finestra	<p>Specifica la facciata del documento per cui occorre specificare l'area di scansione.</p> <p>Anteriore: Specifica entrambe le facciate del documento. (Le impostazioni dell'area di scansione sono le stesse per entrambe le facciate del documento.)</p> <p>Posteriore: Specifica la facciata posteriore del documento. (Le impostazioni delle coordinate X possono essere cambiate sulle facciate anteriore e posteriore.)</p>
Posizione degli assi	<p>X: Immettere la coordinata X dell'angolo in alto a sinistra dell'area di scansione.</p> <p>Y: Immettere la coordinata Y dell'angolo in alto a sinistra dell'area di scansione.</p> <p>Larg.: Immettere la larghezza dell'area di scansione.</p> <p>Altezza: Immettere la lunghezza dell'area di scansione.</p> <p>"X" può essere impostata indipendentemente per le facciate anteriore e posteriore.</p> <p>Le impostazioni di "Y", "larghezza" e "altezza" sono le stesse per le facciate anteriore e posteriore.</p>
Blocca sulla griglia	<p>Regola automaticamente la Posizione dell'asse nell'area di scansione su un valore adeguato.</p> <p>Se l'unità è impostata su Pollici, questo valore è un multiplo di 1/8 di pollice; se è impostata su Centimetri, questo valore è un multiplo di 0,1 cm; se invece è impostata su Pixel, questo valore è un multiplo di 32 pixel.</p>

(Finestra dell'area)

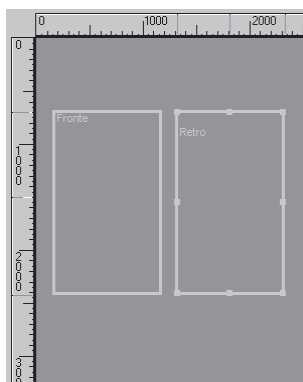
L'area di scansione del formato carta viene visualizzata nella finestra dell'area. La grandezza dell'area varia a seconda dell'impostazione del formato carta.

La grandezza dell'area di scansione si può regolare trascinando i cursori ■ sul riquadro dell'area. È anche possibile trascinare l'intera area di scansione per spostare l'area di scansione.

Specificare in [Anteriore] (entrambe le facciate) o [Posteriore] (facciata posteriore) la facciata del documento su cui l'area di scansione deve essere cambiata, in "Finestra".

Se si è specificato [Anteriore] e si è regolato l'area di scansione, la posizione delle coordinate è impostata sulla stessa posizione su tutt'e due le facciate, anteriore e posteriore.

Se si è specificato [Posteriore] e si è regolato l'area sulla facciata posteriore, solo la coordinata X può essere regolata indipendentemente.



RIFERIMENTO

Quando si regola la facciata anteriore in [Anteriore] dopo aver regolato l'area sulla facciata posteriore in [Posteriore], viene disabilitata l'impostazione [Posteriore] correntemente abilitata.

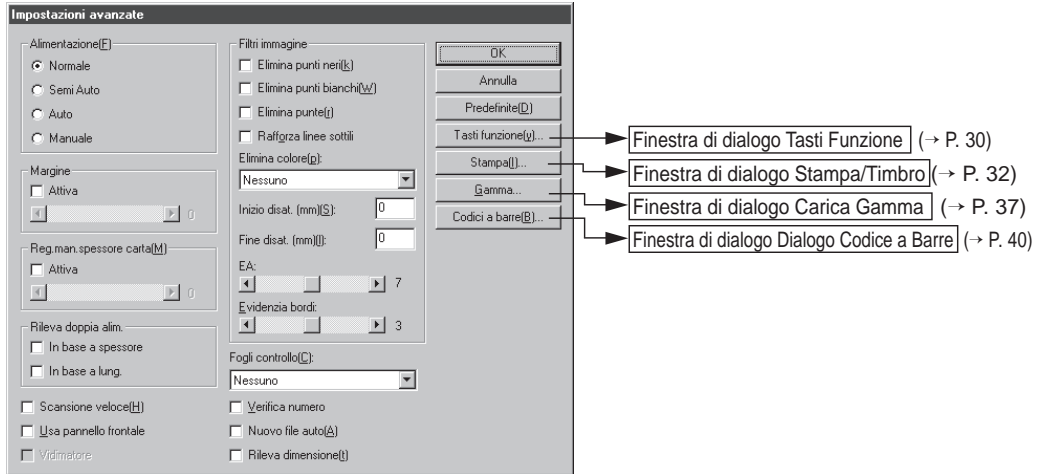
<Buttons>

Voce	Descrizione
OK	Attiva le impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.
Annulla	Annulla tutte le modifiche alle impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.
Predefinite	Ripristina tutte le impostazioni predefinite.





Dettagli delle impostazioni

Per impostare le condizioni di scansione in dettaglio.

La finestra di dialogo Impostazioni avanzate include le voci seguenti per l'impostazione dettagliata delle condizioni di scansione.







Voce	Descrizione
Alimentazione	<p>Per selezionare il metodo di alimentazione.</p> <p>Normale: Il documento viene fatto avanzare (digitalizzato) quando viene caricato e la scansione viene avviata dall'applicazione.</p> <p>Semi Auto: Il documento viene fatto avanzare (digitalizzato) quando la scansione viene avviata dall'applicazione e quando il documento viene caricato e poi viene premuto il tasto START.</p> <p>Auto: Il documento viene fatto avanzare (digitalizzato) automaticamente quando viene caricato.</p> <p>Manuale: Il documento viene fatto avanzare a mano una pagina per volta dopo che è stata avviata la scansione dall'applicazione. Usarlo per digitalizzare pagine particolarmente spesse o sottili.</p> <p>Il display Feeding Options sul pannello operativo dello scanner viene cambiato indipendentemente dal fatto che si è premuto il tasto [OK] per le impostazioni eseguite qui.</p>

<p>Margine</p>	<p>Per regolare i margini (superiore, inferiore, sinistro e destro) dell'area di scansione.</p> <p>Per regolare i margini, cliccare Attiva e usare i pulsanti  e .</p> <p>Specificare un valore nell'intervallo -10 (riduce l'area di scansione di 10 mm) e +10 (aumenta l'area di scansione di 10 mm).</p> <p>Per esempio, se si desidera aumentare leggermente l'area di scansione in modo che i bordi del documento non vengano tagliati, regolare nella direzione +. Oppure, se si desidera ridurre leggermente l'area di scansione in modo che non venga aggiunta una cornice nera intorno all'immagine digitalizzata, regolare nella direzione -.</p>
<p>Reg.man. spessore carta</p>	<p>Per impostare a mano lo spessore della carta quando non viene regolato automaticamente.</p> <p>Cliccare Attiva e usare i pulsanti  e  per regolare lo spessore.</p> <p>Specificare lo spessore nell'intervallo da 1 (più sottile) a 13 (più spessa). Usare questa impostazione per regolare a mano lo spessore della carta quando vengono digitalizzati originali con coperture speciali e documenti di cui lo spessore della carta non può essere regolato automaticamente o quando si verifica frequentemente la doppia alimentazione nella modalità di regolazione automatica dello spessore della carta.</p> <p>Questa voce può essere impostata anche sul pannello operativo dello scanner. Per i dettagli, far riferimento alle istruzioni per l'hardware fornite separatamente.</p>
<p>Rileva doppia alim.</p>	<p>Seleziona il metodo usato per rilevare la doppia alimentazione. Viene rilevata "Doppia alimentazione" quando due o più fogli del documento vengono alimentati assieme o quando una parte di un foglio si sovrappone a un altro foglio quando i fogli nel documento vengono digitalizzati in modo continuo.</p> <p>[In base a spessore]</p> <p>Rileva la doppia alimentazione in base allo spessore della carta. Se viene alimentato un documento(*) di spessore maggiore del primo foglio del documento, lo scanner giudica questa cosa come doppia alimentazione e visualizza un errore.</p> <p>[In base a lung.]</p> <p>Rileva la doppia alimentazione in base alla lunghezza della carta. Se viene alimentato un documento di lunghezza maggiore del primo foglio del documento(*), lo scanner giudica questa cosa come doppia alimentazione e visualizza un errore.</p> <p>* Il rilevamento di doppia alimentazione viene eseguito considerando lo spessore e la lunghezza del primo foglio del documento come foglio standard. Quando il primo foglio del documento viene alimentato, lo scanner memorizza lo spessore e la lunghezza del documento.</p>

Scansione veloce	<p>Questa impostazione è disponibile quando la risoluzione viene impostata a 200 o 300 dpi.</p> <p>Quando viene impostato 200 dpi, le immagini vengono digitalizzate a 200 x 100 dpi (orizzontale x verticale) e stampate come immagini a 200 x 200 dpi.</p> <p>Quando viene impostato 300 dpi, le immagini vengono digitalizzate a 300 x 150 dpi (orizzontale x verticale)) e stampate come immagini a 300 x 300 dpi.</p> <p>Sebbene la scansione venga eseguita più velocemente in entrambi i casi, ricordare che la qualità delle immagini digitalizzate ad alta velocità diminuisce leggermente.</p>
Usa pannello frontale	Attiva le impostazioni eseguite sul pannello operativo dello scanner.
Vidimatore	Attiva il vidimatore opzionale.
Fogli controllo	<p>Per selezionare la modalità di rilevamento dei Fogli di controllo dello scanner.</p> <p>[Nessuno] I Fogli di controllo dello scanner non vengono rilevati.</p> <p>[Scansione e continua] Il Foglio di controllo dello scanner viene rilevato e digitalizzato, poi continua la scansione.</p> <p>[Salta e continua] Il Foglio di controllo dello scanner viene rilevato e saltato (non digitalizzato), poi continua la scansione.</p> <p>[Scansione e fine] Il Foglio di controllo dello scanner viene rilevato e digitalizzato, poi la scansione si arresta.</p> <p>[Salta e fine] Il Foglio di controllo dello scanner viene rilevato e saltato (non digitalizzato), poi la scansione si arresta.</p>
Verifica numero	Per confrontare il numero di pagine prima della scansione rispetto al numero effettivo di pagine digitalizzate. Se il numero è diverso, viene segnalato un errore.
Nuovo file auto	Con questa impostazione viene generato un segnale di interruzione pagina ogni volta che finisce una scansione continua. Questo permette di definire un delimitatore di file nella corrispondente applicazione utilizzata.
Rileva dimensione	<p>Questa impostazione rileva il formato di ogni documento quando viene digitalizzato e digitalizza il documento in quel formato.</p> <p>Quando viene selezionata, nella finestra di dialogo Impostazioni scanner, viene disattivata Pagina.</p>

<Impostazioni dei filtri immagine>

Per impostare i filtri di elaborazione delle immagini.

Voce	Descrizione
Elimina punti neri	Elimina automaticamente i punti neri isolati (punti singoli) su sfondi bianchi.
Elimina punti bianchi	Elimina automaticamente i punti bianchi isolati (punti singoli) su sfondi neri.
Elimina punte	Elimina automaticamente le parti sporgenti (punte) dai contorni.
Rafforza linee sottili	Unisce automaticamente le linee tratteggiate o impercettibili che si verificano nella digitalizzazione di documenti contenenti linee sottili.
Elimina colore	<p>Cliccare qui per attivare la funzione di esclusione. Questa impostazione viene attivata solo nel DR-5080C.</p> <p>[Nessuno] Il colore non viene escluso.</p> <p>[Rosso] Non vengono digitalizzate le parti di colore rosso del documento.</p> <p>[Verde] Non vengono digitalizzate le parti di colore verde del documento.</p> <p>[Blu] Non vengono digitalizzate le parti di colore blu del documento.</p>
Inizio disat.	Se il documento contiene un'area in cui il colore non deve essere escluso, specificare il punto iniziale dell'area come distanza (mm) dal bordo superiore della carta.
Fine disat.	Specificare il punto finale dell'area dove il colore non deve essere escluso come distanza (mm) dal bordo superiore della carta.
EA	<p>Imposta il livello della funzione EA (esposizione automatica). (Questa funzione imposta la luminosità e il contrasto in relazione all'ombreggiatura dell'area nella quale l'immagine viene selezionata.)</p> <p>Questa voce può essere impostata in 13 incrementi utilizzando i pulsanti  e . Il valore predefinito è 7.</p>
Evidenzia bordi	<p>Imposta il livello per enfatizzare i contorni dei caratteri e per ridurre le irregolarità delle immagini come nel caso di fotografie.</p> <p>Questa voce può essere impostata in 5 livelli utilizzando i pulsanti  e . Il valore predefinito è 3.</p>



RIFERIMENTO

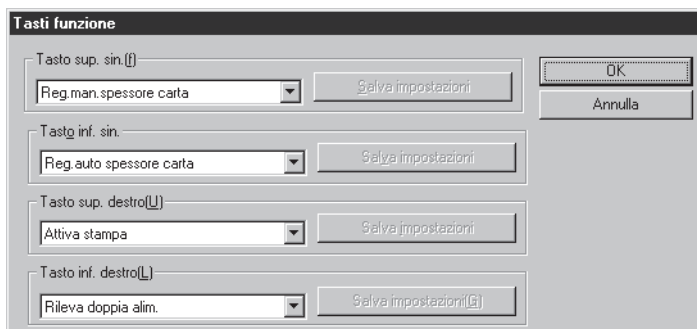
- [Elimina punti neri], [Elimina punti bianchi], [Elimina punte] e [Rafforza linee sottili] vengono abilitate quando [Modo] è impostato su [Bianco e nero] e [Retino] è impostato su [Diffusione Errore].
- [Esclusione colore] è abilitata quando [Modo] è impostato su una qualsiasi impostazione eccetto [Colore].
- [EA] è abilitata quando [Modo] è impostato su [Bianco e nero].
- [Enfatizza contorni] è abilitata in tutte le modalità.

<Pulsanti>

Voce	Descrizione
OK	Attiva le impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.
Annulla	Annulla tutte le modifiche alle impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.
Predefinite	Ripristina tutte le impostazioni predefinite.
Tasti funzione...	Apri la finestra di dialogo Tasti funzione (P. 30). In questa finestra di dialogo è possibile registrare le funzioni specifiche da assegnare ai tasti di funzione dello scanner.
Stampa...	Apri la finestra di dialogo Dialogo Stampa/Timbro (P. 32) per impostare la funzione stampa o la funzione timbro. La funzione stampa serve per stampare caratteri particolari sul documento digitalizzato quando è stata installata l'unità di stampa opzionale. La funzione timbro serve per aggiungere specifici caratteri su immagini digitalizzate.
Gamma...	Apri la finestra di dialogo Carica Gamma (P. 37). Carica e salva in un file i dati gamma, per l'espressione dei colori e dei toni.
Codici a barre...	Apri la finestra di dialogo Codici a barre (P. 40). Per impostare le condizioni di lettura dei codici a barre quando è stato installato il decodificatore di codici a barre opzionale.

Impostazione dei tasti di funzione

Ai tasti di funzione dello scanner possono essere assegnate funzioni specifiche. Le voci seguenti vengono impostate nella finestra di dialogo Tasti funzione.



Voce	Descrizione
Selezione	<p>Selezionare le funzioni da assegnare ai tasti di funzione dal menu a cascata.</p> <p>Per i tasti funzione si può scegliere dalle seguenti cinque funzioni. Per i dettagli su queste funzioni, far riferimento alle Impostazione dei tasti di funzione in Istruzioni per il DR-5020/5080C. (P. 60)</p> <p>[Reg.man.spessore carta] Regola manualmente lo spessore della carta.</p> <p>[Rileva doppia alim.] Rileva automaticamente la doppia alimentazione. “Doppia alimentazione” viene rilevata quando due o più fogli del documento vengono alimentati assieme o quando una parte di un foglio si sovrappone a un altro foglio.</p> <p>[Reg.auto spessore carta] Imposta lo spessore della carta su un valore fisso.</p> <p>[Attiva stampa] Seleziona se attivare o no la funzione stampa quando è stata installata la stampante opzionale.</p> <p>[Ripristina impostazioni] Memorizza le impostazioni dello scanner impostate nel software ai tasti di funzione.</p>
Salva impostazioni	<p>Se si clicca questo quando [Ripristina tutte le funzioni] è selezionato, le attuali impostazioni dello scanner vengono memorizzate sotto i tasti di funzione.</p>

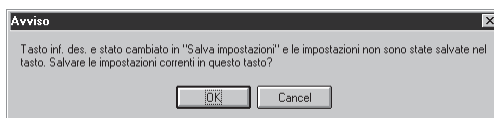
<Tasti>

Voce	Descrizione
OK	Attiva le impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.
Annulla	Annulla tutte le modifiche alle impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.



RIFERIMENTO

- Il messaggio seguente appare se si seleziona [Ripristina tutte le funzioni] e si clicca [OK] senza cliccare [Memorizza tutte le impostazioni].
Cliccando [OK] si memorizza tutte le impostazioni e si chiude la finestra di dialogo. Cliccando [Cancel] si ripristina il display della finestra di dialogo dei tasti funzione. Controllare le impostazioni dei tasti funzione in questa finestra di dialogo.



- In alcune applicazioni a volte le impostazioni dello scanner non vengono ripristinate correttamente tramite i tasti funzione, anche se sono state registrate sui tasti funzione.
Ad esempio, se si tenta di modificare le impostazioni dello scanner tramite un tasto funzione quando viene interrotta la scansione, a causa dell'esaurimento della carta dello scanner, le immagini digitalizzate a volte non vengono salvate correttamente quando si riprende la scansione. Dopo che si è avviata la scansione, fino alla fine della scansione non utilizzare i tasti funzione per ripristinare le impostazioni dello scanner.

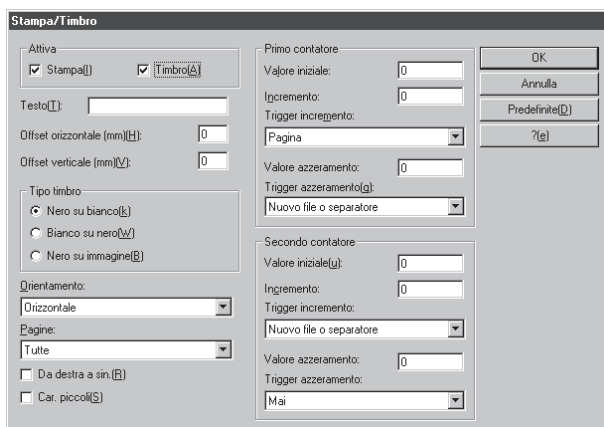
Impostazioni di stampa e timbro

Imposta le funzioni di stampa e timbro opzionali. La funzione di stampa stampa i caratteri sul documento e la funzione timbro aggiunge le immagini digitalizzate sui caratteri specifici.

Queste opzioni vengono impostate nella finestra di dialogo Stampa/Timbro.

Per utilizzare la funzione di stampa c'è bisogno della stampante opzionale.

Per utilizzare solo la funzione di timbro, non c'è bisogno della stampante.



<Attiva>

Voce	Descrizione
Stampa	Stampa i caratteri e i contatori specificati sull'immagine digitalizzata.
Timbro	Aggiunge i caratteri e i contatori specificati sull'immagine digitalizzata.

<p>Testo</p>	<p>Immettere i dettagli da stampare (timbro). Si possono immettere fino a un massimo di 32 dei caratteri seguenti:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Numeri (da 0 a 9) • Caratteri alfabetici (maiuscoli, minuscoli) • Spazio (in bianco) • I simboli seguenti <p>! " # \$ % & ' () * + - . / : ; < = > ? @ [\] ^ _ { } ~ ` ,</p> <p>I caratteri sopra vengono stampati (aggiunti) man mano che vengono immessi. In aggiunta a questi caratteri si possono specificare, come caratteri speciali, data, ora, contatore e frecce.</p> <p><Contatore> Per stampare (aggiungere) un contatore, immettere nel formato seguente:</p> <p><C> : Stampa (aggiunge) un contatore a 9 cifre.</p> <p><C#> (# è un numero) : Stampa (aggiunge) un contatore composto di numero di cifre #.</p> <p><CC> : Stampa (aggiunge) due contatori di 9 cifre. I due contatori sono separati da un "." (punto).</p> <p><C#C#> (# è un numero) : Stampa (aggiunge) due contatori entrambi di # cifre. I due contatori sono separati da un "." (punto).</p> <p>I tempi in cui il contenuto del contatore viene aumentato o diminuito viene impostato in "Primo contatore/Secondo contatore", descritti più avanti. (Se c'è un solo contatore, impostare il tempo in "Primo contatore". Se ci sono due contatori, impostare il primo contatore in [Secondo contatore] e il contatore successivo in [Primo contatore].</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>[Immissione]</td> <td>[Risultato Stampa/Timbro]</td> </tr> <tr> <td><C></td> <td>000000000</td> </tr> <tr> <td><C6></td> <td>000000</td> </tr> <tr> <td><CC></td> <td><u>000000000.000000000</u></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Secondo contatore Primo contatore</td> </tr> <tr> <td><C5C4></td> <td>00000.00000</td> </tr> </table> <p><Tempo> Per stampare (aggiungere) la data in cui il documento è stato digitalizzato, immettere "<TIME>". L'ora nell'orologio di 24 ore viene stampata (aggiunta) con otto cifre come segue. (Esempio: 16:28:30)</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>[Immissione]</td> <td>[Risultato Stampa/Timbro]</td> </tr> <tr> <td><TIME></td> <td>16:28:30</td> </tr> </table>	[Immissione]	[Risultato Stampa/Timbro]	<C>	000000000	<C6>	000000	<CC>	<u>000000000.000000000</u>		Secondo contatore Primo contatore	<C5C4>	00000.00000	[Immissione]	[Risultato Stampa/Timbro]	<TIME>	16:28:30
[Immissione]	[Risultato Stampa/Timbro]																
<C>	000000000																
<C6>	000000																
<CC>	<u>000000000.000000000</u>																
	Secondo contatore Primo contatore																
<C5C4>	00000.00000																
[Immissione]	[Risultato Stampa/Timbro]																
<TIME>	16:28:30																

	<p><Data> Per stampare (aggiungere) la data in cui il documento è stato digitalizzato, immettere uno tra "<MDY>", "<DMY>" o "<YMD>" come combinazione di Y (year = anno), M (month = mese) e D (day = giorno). La data in calendario occidentale viene stampata (aggiunta) in dieci cifre, come segue. L'anno, il mese e il giorno sono separati da "/". (Esempio: 2001/3/4 (4 marzo 2001)) [Immissione] [Risultato Stampa/Timbro] <YMD> 2001/03/04</p> <p><Freccia> Per stampare (Timbro), immettere quanto segue: [Immissione] [Risultato Stampa/Timbro] <U> ↑ <D> ↓ <L> ← <R> →</p> <p>(*) Per essere più precisi, possono essere stampati (aggiunti) fino a 32 caratteri. Quando viene immesso contatore, data o ora, e il numero di caratteri effettivamente stampati (aggiunti) supera i 32 caratteri anche se il numero di caratteri immessi è di 32 caratteri o meno. Se questo accade viene visualizzato un messaggio di errore. Nell'esempio sotto il risultato stampa/timbro è di 32 caratteri sebbene vengano immessi 25 caratteri. [Immissione] [Risultato Stampa/Timbro] CANON<YMD><TIME><C6> CANON 2001/03/04 16:28:30 000001</p>
<p>Offset orizzontale</p>	<p>Specificare la posizione dove i caratteri devono essere aggiunti come una distanza in mm da bordo sinistro dell'apertura di alimentazione della carta nella direzione di avanzamento del documento.</p>
<p>Offset verticale</p>	<p>Specificare la posizione in cui stampare/aggiungere i caratteri come una distanza in mm da bordo superiore del documento.</p>

<Impostazioni del tipo di timbro>

Voce	Descrizione
Nero su bianco	Stampa (aggiunge) caratteri neri su uno sfondo bianco. DR-5020/5080C
Bianco su nero	Stampa (aggiunge) caratteri bianchi su uno sfondo nero. DR-5020/5080C
Nero su immagine	Stampa (aggiunge) caratteri neri sull'immagine digitalizzata. BRK-5020/5080C This

<Altre impostazioni>

Voce	Descrizione
Orientamento	Seleziona la rotazione dei caratteri da stampare (aggiungere). Selezionare una delle seguenti impostazioni: [Orizzontale] (predefinita) I caratteri non vengono ruotati. [Verticale] Rotazione di 90 gradi in senso orario [180 gradi] Rotazione di 180 gradi [270 gradi] Rotazione di 270 gradi in senso orario
Pagine	Seleziona la pagina sulla quale devono essere stampati o aggiunti i caratteri. [Tutte] Su tutte le pagine [Pagina dopo separatore] Sulla pagina dopo il separatore
Da destra a sin.	Stampa (aggiunge) i caratteri da destra a sinistra.
Car. piccoli	Stampa (aggiunge) i caratteri utilizzando un carattere piccolo (8 x 7 punti). (Il formato solito è 12 x 12 punti.) Formato solito CANON canon Carattere piccolo CANON canon

<Impostazioni del primo e secondo contatore>

Voce	Descrizione
Valore iniziale	Imposta il valore iniziale del contatore. Il valore predefinito è 0.
Incremento	Imposta l'incremento del contatore. Il valore predefinito è 0 (non cambia).
Trigger incremento	Definire quando deve essere incrementato il contatore selezionando una delle voci seguenti: [Nuovo file] Quando viene creato un nuovo file [Separatore] Quando viene inserito un separatore [Nuovo file o separatore] Quando viene creato un nuovo file o quando viene inserito un separatore [Pagina] Quando viene alimentata una pagina del documento [Mai] Nessuno
Valore azzeramento	Imposta il primo valore dopo l'azzeramento del contatore. Il valore base è 0.
Trigger azzeramento	Definire quando deve essere azzerato il contatore selezionando una delle voci seguenti: [Nuovo file] Quando viene creato un nuovo file [Separatore] Quando viene inserito un separatore [Nuovo file o separatore] Quando viene creato un nuovo file o quando viene inserito un separatore [Pagina] Quando viene alimentata una pagina del documento [Mai] Nessuno

<Pulsanti>

Voce	Descrizione
OK	Attiva le impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.
Annulla	Annulla tutte le modifiche alle impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.
Predefinite	Ripristina tutte le impostazioni predefinite.
Pulsante	Visualizza la definizione [Testo].

Impostazione della curva gamma

Impostare la curva gamma.



RIFERIMENTO

La “impostazione curva gamma” per regolare i valori di uscita (uscita verso il computer) usa i dati curva gamma predisposti dall’utente rispettando i valori d’ingresso di 256 livelli di luminosità nell’immagine digitalizzata.

Per il grigio (nero e bianco), rosso, verde e blu vengono impostate curve gamma individuali.

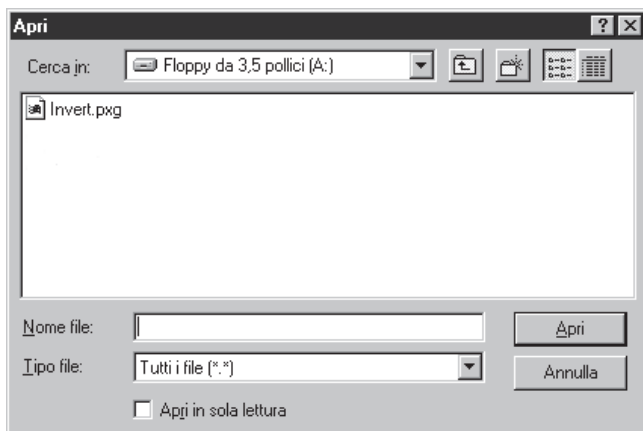
La curva gamma qui impostata è disabilitata fino a quando si esegue il controllo [Usa Gamma] nella finestra di dialogo Carica Gamma.

1 Preparare i dati della curva gamma accoppiati alla curva gamma. (Vedere “Preparazione Dati Curva Gamma” a P. 38.)

2 Selezionare il colore per il quale deve essere impostata la curva gamma.



3 Cliccare [Carica...], e selezionare dati curva gamma predisposti.



4 Cliccare [Apri]. Questo imposta la curva gamma e riporta il display alla finestra di dialogo Impostazioni avanzate.

5 Per impostare la curva gamma di altri colori, ripetere dal punto 1 al punto 4.

◆ Preparazione dei dati della curva gamma

I dati della curva gamma vengono memorizzati in un file di testo (*.pxg) formato da 258 linee. Questo file descrive i valori di uscita per ciascuno dei 256 livelli dei valori d'ingresso.

Inserire un commento nella prima linea di questo file, e "256" nella seconda linea di questo file. Nelle linee dalla terza in avanti va inserito il valore di uscita di ciascun valore d'ingresso. Inserire "0", "1", "2" e così via dalla terza linea in avanti, e "255" il valore d'ingresso nella 258^a linea.

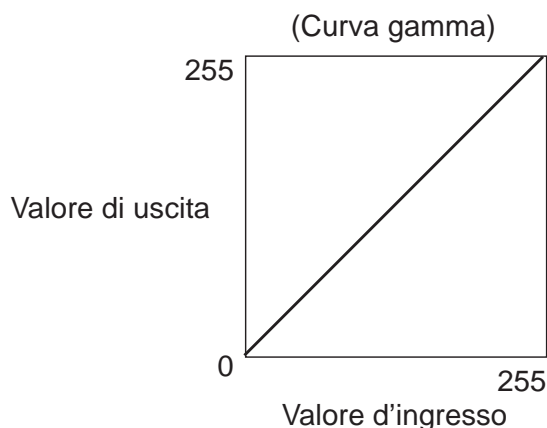
L'immissione di valori bassi per i dati della curva gamma determina un'immagine scura, e valori alti determinano un'immagine chiara.

◆ Esempio

Di norma, vengono predisposte curve gamma inclinate verso destra. Tuttavia è possibile preparare una curva gamma inclinata verso sinistra invertendo tutti i valori di uscita. Ne risulta, che anche l'immagine di uscita sarà invertita.

Dati della curva gamma

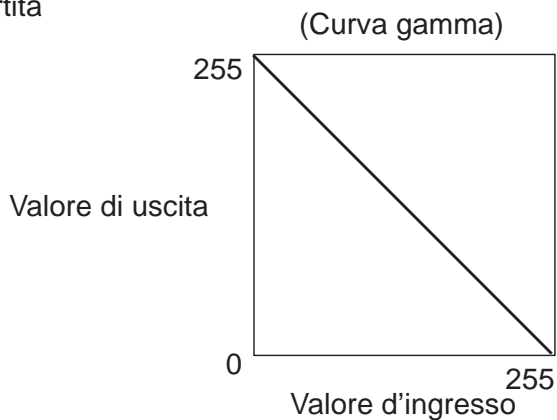
1^a linea: curva gamma
 2^a linea: 256
 3^a linea: 0
 4^a linea: 1
 5^a linea: 2
 |
 253^a linea: 250
 254^a linea: 251
 255^a linea: 252
 256^a linea: 253
 257^a linea: 254
 258^a linea: 255



Dati della curva gamma (invertita)

1^a linea: curva gamma lineare invertita2^a linea: 2563^a linea: 2554^a linea: 2545^a linea: 253

|

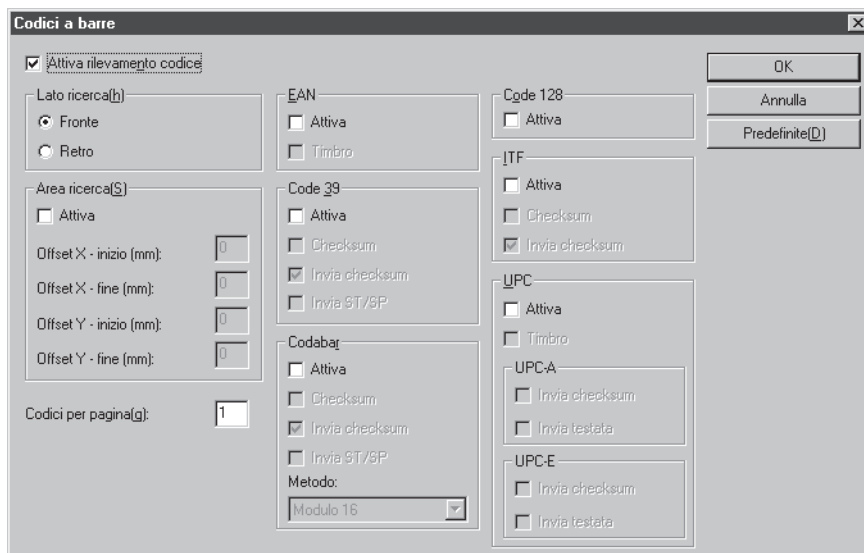
253^a linea: 5254^a linea: 4255^a linea: 3256^a linea: 2257^a linea: 1258^a linea: 0

RIFERIMENTO

Le informazioni sui dati della curva gamma si trovano all'interno dello scanner, e anche se lo scanner viene spento non vengono cancellate. Le informazioni sulla curva gamma non vengono cambiate fino a quando si caricano altri dati della curva gamma.

Impostazioni del decodificatore di codici a barre

Impostare le condizioni del decodificatore di cadici a barre. Queste impostazioni sono disponibili solo quando è stato installato il decodificatore di codici a barre opzionale. Il software deve supportare anche il decodificatore dei codici a barre. Le voci seguenti vengono impostate nella finestra di dialogo Codici a barre.



RIFERIMENTO

- Quando due o più tipi di codice a barre sono allineati in orizzontale, potrebbe verificarsi un errore di riconoscimento. Selezionare solo un tipo di codice a barre nell'impostazione dell'area dei codici a barre.
- I codici a barre con codici di timbro non possono essere rilevati contemporaneamente ai codici a barre senza codici di timbro. Quando si digitalizza originali contenenti sia codici a barre con codici di timbro che codici a barre senza codici di timbro, prima di cominciare l'operazione di digitalizzazione, si raccomanda di impostare l'area per rilevare nell'impostazione dell'area dei codici a barre.
- Quando 400 dpi e scansione duplex sono impostate, possono essere rilevati solo i codici a barre all'interno della larghezza A4.
- In caso di digitalizzazione di originali contenenti due o più codici a barre, se si vuole rilevare solo uno specifico tipo di codice a barre, impostare l'area per rilevare nell'impostazione dell'area dei codici a barre. Quando quest'area viene impostata nell'impostazione dell'area dei codici a barre, anche i codici a barre che cadono fuori dall'area di scansione vengono rilevati.
- Se non si conosce il tipo di codice a barre, marcare tutte le caselle di controllo dei codici a barre prima di digitalizzare l'originale in modo che tutti i tipi di codice a barre vengano automaticamente rilevati e la somma di controllo non venga digitalizzata.

<Impostazioni>

Voce	Descrizione
Attiva rilevamento codice	Cliccare qui per attivare la lettura dei codici a barre. Selezionando questa voce si possono eseguire le seguenti impostazioni.
Lato ricerca	Seleziona il lato del documento sul quale devono essere letti i codici a barre. [Fronte] Legge i codici a barre sulla pagina anteriore. [Retro] Legge i codici a barre sulla pagina posteriore.
Area ricerca	Selezionare [Attiva] e impostare l'area di rilevazione per digitalizzare soltanto un'area specifica del documento. Se [Attiva] viene lasciato non selezionato, viene digitalizzata tutta la superficie del documento. Specificare l'area indicando le coordinate dell'asse X e Y. Il riferimento di rilevamento nella direzione X (orizzontale) è il bordo sinistro dell'apertura di alimentazione della carta per la facciata anteriore, guardando alla direzione di avanzamento, e il bordo destro dell'apertura di alimentazione della carta sulla facciata posteriore. Come riferimento di rilevamento in direzione Y (verticale), immettere la lunghezza dal bordo superiore della carta. [Offset X - inizio] Immettere la posizione da cui deve cominciare la digitalizzazione in direzione orizzontale. [Offset X - fine] Immettere la posizione in cui deve finire la digitalizzazione in direzione orizzontale. [Offset Y - inizio] Immettere la posizione da cui deve cominciare la digitalizzazione in direzione verticale. [Offset Y - fine] Immettere la posizione in cui deve finire la digitalizzazione in direzione verticale.
Codici per pagina	Imposta il numero di codici a barre (da 1 a 4) da leggere per pagina.

<Impostazioni del codice a barre EAN >

Voce	Descrizione
Attiva	Cliccare qui per leggere i codici a barre EAN.
Timbro	Digitalizza i codici timbro.

<Impostazioni del codice a barre Code39>

Voce	Descrizione
Attiva	Cliccare qui per leggere i codici a barre Code39.
Checksum	Digitalizza le somme di controllo.
Invia checksum	Si può scegliere se stampare o meno le somme di controllo quando [Checksum] è selezionato. Per stampare le somme di controllo, selezionare questa voce.
Invia ST/SP	Invia i codici START/STOP.

<Impostazioni del codice a barre Codabar>

Voce	Descrizione
Attiva	Cliccare qui per leggere i codici a barre Codabar.
Checksum	Digitalizza le somme di controllo.
Invia Checksum	Si può scegliere se stampare o meno le somme di controllo quando [Checksum] è selezionato. Per stampare il Checksum, selezionare questa voce.
Invia ST/SP	Invia i codici START/STOP.
Metodo	Specificare il metodo di calcolo delle somme di controllo. Specificare Modulo 16 o 7DR.

<Impostazioni del codice a barre Code128>

Voce	Descrizione
Attiva	Cliccare qui per leggere i codici a barre Code128.

<Impostazioni del codice a barre ITF>

Voce	Descrizione
Attiva	Selezionare questa voce per digitalizzare codici ITF (compreso industriale 2 di 5)
Checksum	Digitalizza le somme di controllo.
Invio Checksum	Si può scegliere se stampare o meno le somme di controllo quando [Checksum] è selezionato. Per stampare il Checksum, selezionare questa voce.

<Impostazioni del codice a barre UPC>

Voce	Descrizione
Attiva	Cliccare qui per leggere i codici a barre UPC.
Timbro	Rileva i codici timbro.
UPC-A	Stampa di somme di controllo: Digitalizza somme di controllo. Stampa testata: Stampa il codice di testata.
UPC-E	Stampa di somme di controllo: Digitalizza somme di controllo. Stampa testata: Stampa il codice di testata.

<Pulsanti>

Voce	Descrizione
OK	Attiva le impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.
Annulla	Annulla tutte le modifiche alle impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.
Predefinite	Ripristina tutte le impostazioni predefinite.

Capitolo 4

Uso del driver TWAIN

Questo capitolo descrive le operazioni quando il driver TWAIN viene eseguito in applicazioni TWAIN compatibili.

4.1 Selezione del driver TWAIN.....	46
4.2 Avviare il driver TWAIN.....	47
4.3 Impostazione delle condizioni di scansione	48
Impostazioni di base	49
Funzioni avanzate.....	56

4.1 Selezione del driver TWAIN

Selezionare il driver TWAIN che si intende usare.

Eeguire questa operazione una sola volta dopo avere installato il driver TWAIN. Inoltre, questa operazione non deve essere ripetuta fino a quando si collega uno scanner diverso dal modello DR-5020/5080C.



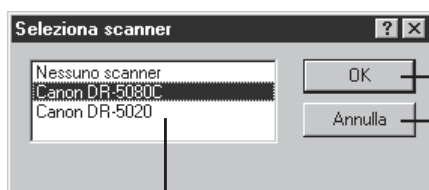
RIFERIMENTO

Le finestre di dialogo e i menu descritti in questo manuale sono soltanto esempi. L'aspetto che assumono sul proprio schermo potrebbe variare a seconda dell'applicazione usata. Alcune applicazioni non supportano tutte le funzioni descritte in questo manuale. Per maggiori dettagli, fare riferimento al manuale dell'applicazione in uso.

1 Avviare l'applicazione compatibile con il driver TWAIN.

2 Aprire la schermata Selezione scanner.

La schermata Selezione Scanner che appare varia a seconda dell'applicazione in uso.



Seleziona lo scanner.

Chiude la finestra di dialogo senza selezionare lo scanner.

Gli scanner disponibili vengono visualizzati qui.

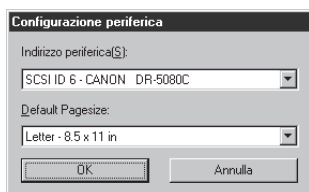


RIFERIMENTO

Se sulla schermata non si riesce a vedere "Canon DR-5020 e Canon DR-5080C", installare il driver.

3 Cliccare Canon DR-5020 oppure Canon DR-5080C nella lista, e cliccare [OK].

➡ Dopo aver installato il driver TWAIN, solo quando il driver TWAIN viene avviato per la prima volta viene visualizzata la schermata Imposta periferica.



4 Impostare l'opzione [Default Pagesize] (Formato di pagina predefinito) e fare clic su [OK].

➡ Il formato di pagina impostato qui viene impostato come formato di pagina predefinito.

4.2 Avviare il driver TWAIN

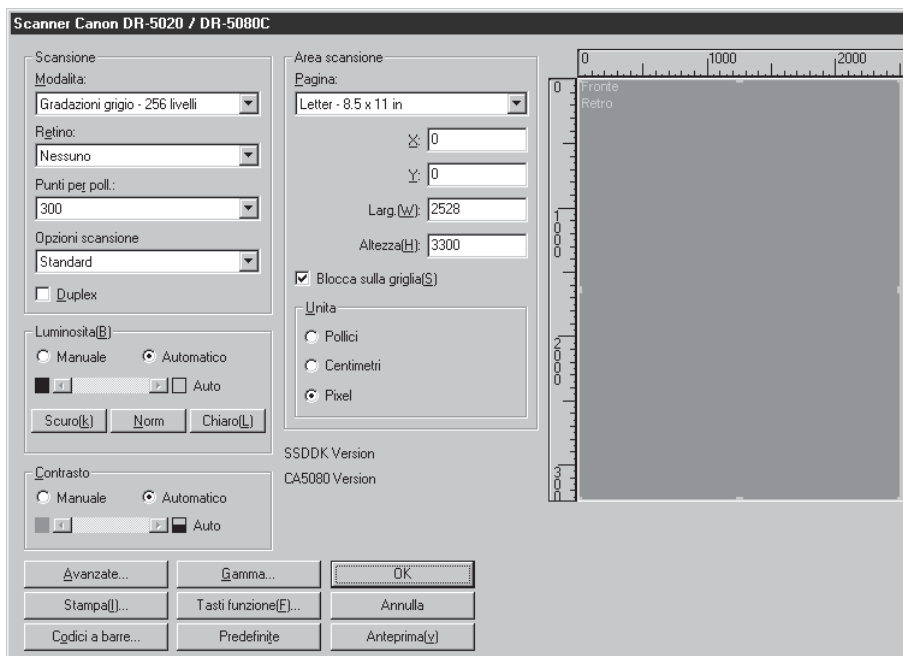
Avviare il driver TWAIN dall'applicazione compatibile con il driver TWAIN.

1 Avviare l'applicazione compatibile con il driver TWAIN.

**2 Avviare il driver TWAIN dal menu di avvio della scansione
“Immissione dal dispositivo TWAIN”.**

Il menu di avvio della scansione “Immissione dal dispositivo TWAIN” cambia a seconda dell'applicazione in uso. Per maggiori dettagli, fare riferimento al manuale dell'applicazione.

↳ Viene visualizzata la finestra di dialogo Scanner Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C.



4.3

Impostazione delle condizioni di scansione

La finestra di dialogo Scanner DR-5020/DR-5080C Canon è organizzata nella gerarchia di menu mostrata sotto.

Se necessario visualizzare queste finestre di dialogo a seconda della funzione che si vuole usare ed eseguire le necessarie impostazioni.

Per maggiori dettagli sulle voci di impostazione di ciascuna di queste finestre di dialogo, vedere il numero di pagina di riferimento.

Finestra di dialogo Scanner Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C

The screenshot shows the 'Scanner Canon DR-5020 / DR-5080C' dialog box. It is divided into several sections: 'Scansione' (Scanning), 'Area scansione' (Scanning Area), 'Luminosità' (Brightness), 'Contrasto' (Contrast), and a bottom row of function buttons. Arrows point from the following buttons to their respective page numbers:

- Avanzate...** points to **Finestra di dialogo Caratteristiche Avanzate** (→ P. 56)
- Gamma...** points to **Finestra di dialogo Carica Gamma** (→ P. 37)
- Tasti funzione(F)...** points to **Finestra di dialogo Tasti Funzione** (→ P. 30)
- Codici a barre...** points to **Finestra di dialogo Dialogo Codice a Barre** (→ P. 40)
- Stampa(L)...** points to **Finestra di dialogo Dialogo Stampa** (→ P. 32)



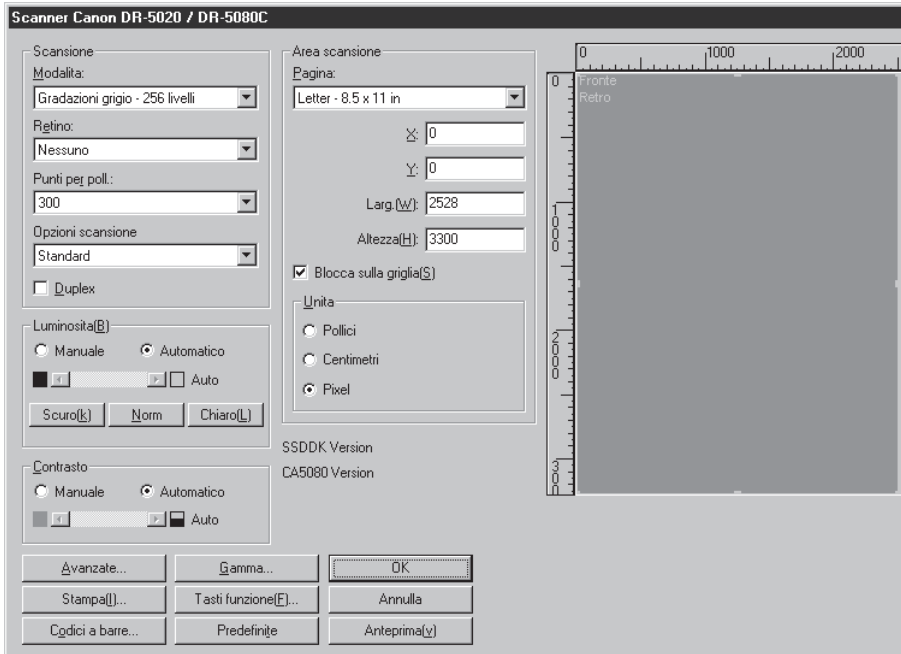
RIFERIMENTO

Per ulteriori dettagli sui tasti funzione, sul caricamento della gamma, sui codici a barre e sulle funzioni aggiuntive della stampate, vedere il capitolo 3 “Modalità d’uso del driver ISIS.”

Impostazioni di base

Impostare le condizioni di scansione di base.

Questa impostazione viene eseguita nella finestra di dialogo Scanner Canon DR-5020/DR-5080C.



<Impostazione della Modalità Scansione>





RIFERIMENTO



Le modalità utilizzate attualmente per la scansione sono limitate, e a volte la scansione non è possibile a causa delle combinazioni di impostazione. Per maggiori dettagli, vedere nelle Istruzioni per il DR-5020/5080C "Tabelle delle modalità di scansione dei modelli DR-5020 e DR-5080C" (P. 88).

Voce	Descrizione
Modalità	<p>Imposta la modalità di scansione delle immagini. Per il DR-5020 è disponibile solo Bianco e nero.</p> <p>[Bianco e nero] Digitalizza le immagini esclusivamente in bianco e nero senza toni di grigio.</p> <p>[Grigio di 16, 256 livello.] Selezionare questa modalità per digitalizzare con la scala dei toni di grigio, foto e documenti in toni di grigio. Più grande è il valore del livello, maggiore è il formato del file.</p> <p>[Colore a 24 bit] Selezionare questa voce per digitalizzare originali a colori quali le fotografie.</p> <p>[Colore-3, 6, 12 bit -> 4, 8-Bit Tavolozza] La tavolozza a 4 bit viene utilizzata per convertire i dati dei colori a 3 bit in 16 colori per l'uscita e la tavolozza a 8 bit viene utilizzata per convertire i dati dei colori a 6 e 12 bit in 256 colori per l'uscita.</p>
Retino	<p>Attiva e disattiva la retinatura.</p> <p>[Nessuno] Senza retinatura. Usare per digitalizzare testo o disegni senza colori o toni di grigio.</p> <p>[Diffusione errore] Applica la diffusione d'errore per simulare l'area grigia dei toni di grigio. Selezionare questa impostazione per digitalizzare documenti contenenti toni di grigio quali le fotografie.</p>
Punti per poll.	<p>Seleziona la risoluzione in cui il documento viene digitalizzato. Selezionare una di queste risoluzioni: 100, 200, 210, 220, 230, 240, 250, 260, 270, 280, 290, 300 e 400 dpi (punti per pollici).</p>
Opzioni scansione	<p>Selezionare la modalità di scansione.</p> <p>[Standard] In questa modalità, viene digitalizzato l'originale e poi viene digitalizzato l'originale successivo dopo che tutti i dati immagine digitalizzati sono stati inviati al personal computer.</p> <p>[Avanti] In questa modalità, viene digitalizzato l'originale e poi viene digitalizzato l'originale successivo prima che tutti i dati immagine digitalizzati siano stati inviati al personal computer.</p> <p>[Pagina singola] In questa modalità, viene digitalizzato solo un foglio dell'originale.</p>
Duplex	<p>Selezionare per digitalizzare entrambe le facciate della pagina.</p>

<Luminosità>

Voce	Descrizione
Manuale	Imposta in modo manuale la luminosità in cui eseguire la digitalizzazione. La luminosità può essere impostata scegliendo in una gamma che va da 1 a 255, regolata cliccando i tasti  e  .
Automatico	La luminosità viene impostata automaticamente solo quando [Modo] è impostato su [Bianco e nero] e [Retino] è impostato su [Nessuno]. Quando [Modo] è impostato su un'altra impostazione, e luminosità è impostata su [Automatico], l'impostazione della luminosità ritorna al valore predefinito.
Pulsante Scuro	Imposta il valore di luminosità su 64 per riprodurre l'immagine intera più scura.
Pulsante Norm	Imposta il valore di luminosità su 128 per riprodurre l'immagine intera a luminosità standard.
Pulsante chiaro	Imposta il valore di luminosità su 192 per riprodurre l'immagine intera più chiara.

<Contrasto>

Voce	Descrizione
Manuale	Per regolare a mano il contrasto. Il contrasto può essere impostato a scelta in una gamma da 1 a 13. Cliccare i tasti  e  per regolare il contrasto. Impostando un valore più grande il contrasto aumenta e impostando un valore più piccolo il contrasto diminuisce.
Automatico	Imposta il valore predefinito del contrasto.



RIFERIMENTO

- Le impostazioni del contrasto vengono disabilitate quando si imposta la [Modalità] su [Bianco e nero].
- Su DR-5020, la finestra di controllo del [Contrasto] e grigia quando la [Modalità] è impostata su [Bianco e nero].

<Impostazione dell'area di scansione>

Questa impostazione consente di selezionare e digitalizzare una specifica area all'interno del documento in aggiunta alla possibilità di digitalizzare il documento nelle dimensioni impostate [Pagina].

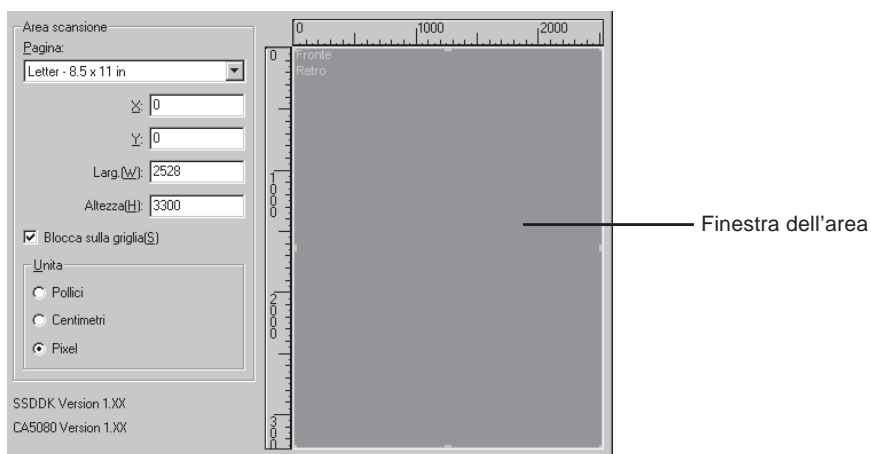
È possibile specificare l'area di scansione sul fronte e sul retro del documento da digitalizzare. Si noti, tuttavia, che le dimensioni e la posizione dell'area di scansione sul fronte e sul retro del documento hanno la stessa impostazione.

Ci sono due modi di specificare l'area di scansione: immettendo delle coordinate o altri valori numerici, oppure specificando direttamente l'area all'interno della finestra.

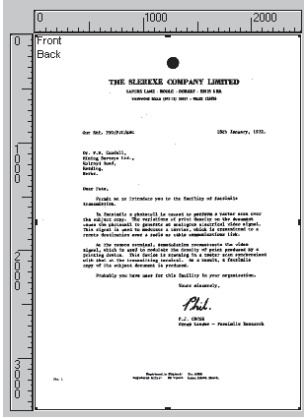
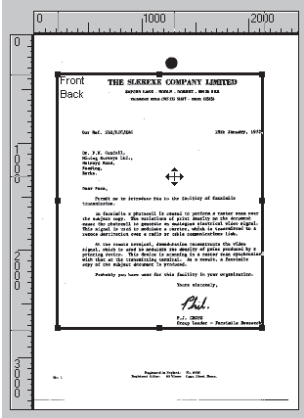


RIFERIMENTO

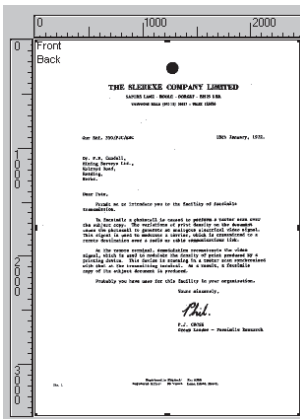
Le impostazioni per le "Pagina" e per l'area di scansione qui eseguite sono valide se all'interno della finestra di dialogo Caratteristiche Avanzate DR-5020/5080C Canon si è selezionato "Rileva dimensione" (P. 58).



Voce	Descrizione
Pagina	<p>Permette di selezionare uno dei formati documento da digitalizzare.</p> <p>Lettera - 8,5 x 11 poll. Lettera [Ruotata] - 11 x 8,5 poll. Legal - 8,5 x 14 poll. Lettera doppia - 11 x 17 poll. A3 - 297 x 420 mm A4 - 210 x 297 mm A4 [Ruotato] - 297 x 210 mm A5 - 148 x 210 mm A5 [Ruotato] - 210 x 148 mm A6 - 105 x 148 mm A6 [Ruotato] - 148 x 105 mm B4 (ISO) - 250 x 353 mm B4 (JIS) - 257 x 364 mm B5 (ISO) - 176 x 250 mm B5 (ISO) [Ruotato] - 250 x 176 mm B5 (JIS) - 182 x 257 mm B5 [Ruotato] (JIS) - 257 x 182 mm B6 (ISO) - 125 x 176 mm B6 (ISO) [Ruotato] - 176 x 125 mm B6 (JIS) - 128 x 182 mm B6 (JIS) [Ruotato] - 182 x 128 mm Massimo dello scanner (295 x 432 mm)</p> <p>Se viene digitalizzato un documento più grande del formato specificato, i bordi intorno al documento vengono tagliati. Viceversa, se viene digitalizzato un documento più piccolo del formato specificato, sui bordi intorno al documento viene aggiunto un margine nero.</p> <p>Quando nella finestra di dialogo Caratteristiche Avanzate DR-5020/5080C Canon viene selezionato Rileva dimensione, questa impostazione viene ignorata.</p>
Posizione degli assi	<p>X: Immettere la coordinata X dell'angolo in alto a sinistra dell'area di scansione.</p> <p>Y: Immettere la coordinata Y dell'angolo in alto a sinistra dell'area di scansione.</p> <p>Larg.: Immettere la larghezza dell'area di scansione.</p> <p>Altezza: Immettere l'altezza dell'area di scansione.</p> <p>Per le facciate anteriore e posteriore devono essere impostate le stesse posizioni di coordinate.</p>

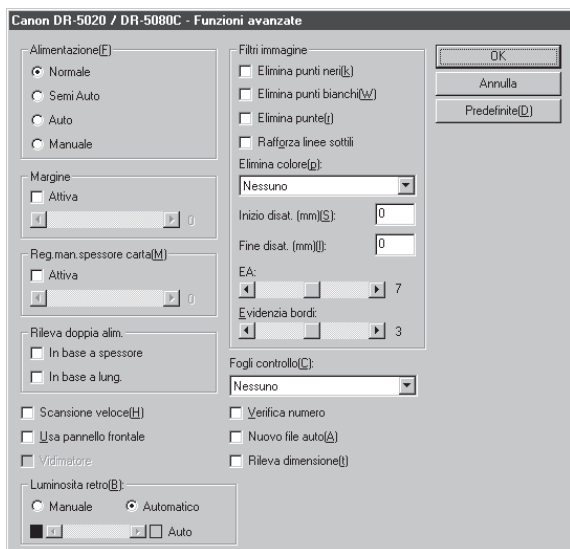
<p>Blocca sulla griglia</p>	<p>Regola automaticamente su un valore appropriato la Posizione dell'asse X nell'area di scansione. Quando l'impostazione dell'unità è Pollici, questo valore è un multiplo di 1/8"; quando l'impostazione è Centimetri, questo valore è un multiplo di 0,1 cm; Quando l'impostazione è Pixels, questo valore è un multiplo di 32 pixel.</p>
<p>Unità</p>	<p>Imposta l'unità utilizzata per indicare il formato dell'area di scansione. Scegliere tra Pollici, Centimetri e Pixel.</p>
<p>(Finestra dell'area)</p>	<p>L'area di scansione per il formato carta viene visualizzata nella finestra dell'area. La grandezza della finestra dell'area varia in funzione dell'impostazione del formato carta. Regolare la grandezza dell'area appropriata all'immagine di anteprima visualizzata nella finestra dell'area eseguendo sul documento una scansione di anteprima (P. 55). La grandezza dell'area di scansione si può regolare trascinando i cursori ■ sul riquadro dell'area. È anche possibile trascinare l'intera area di scansione per spostare l'area di scansione. L'area di scansione specificata viene applicata sia alla facciata anteriore che alla facciata posteriore del documento.</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;">   </div>

<Pulsanti>





Voce	Descrizione
Avanzate...	Apri la finestra di dialogo Caratteristiche Avanzate DR-5020/5080C Canon (P. 56) in modo che si possano impostare dettagli quali filtro, velocità di scansione, rilevamento formato pagina e rilevamento Foglio di controllo.
Stampa...	Apri la finestra di dialogo Stampa/Timbro (P. 32). Imposta la funzione stampa o la funzione timbro. La funzione stampa serve per stampare caratteri particolari sul documento digitalizzato quando è stata installata l'unità di stampa opzionale. La funzione timbro aggiunge immagini digitalizzate con caratteri particolari.
Codici a barre...	Apri la finestra di dialogo Codici a barre (P. 40). Per impostare le condizioni di lettura dei codici a barre quando è stato installato il decodificatore di codici a barre opzionale.
Gamma...	Apri la finestra di dialogo Carica Gamma (P. 37). Carica e salva in un file i dati gamma, per l'espressione dei colori e dei toni.
Tasti funzione...	Apri la finestra di dialogo Tasti funzione (P. 30) in modo che si possano registrare le funzioni specifiche da assegnare ai tasti di funzione dello scanner.
Predefinite	Ripristina tutte le impostazioni predefinite.
OK	Avvia la scansione con le impostazioni attuali.
Annulla	Elimina le impostazioni attuali e annulla l'operazione di scansione.
Anteprima	Digitalizza una pagina del documento e visualizza un'immagine in anteprima nella finestra dell'area. 

Funzioni avanzate

Per impostare le condizioni di scansione dettagliate. Le voci seguenti vengono impostate nella finestra di dialogo Caratteristiche Avanzate DR-5020/5080C Canon.



Voce	Descrizione
Alimentazione	<p>Per selezionare il metodo di alimentazione.</p> <p>Normale: Il documento viene fatto avanzare (digitalizzato) quando viene caricato e la scansione viene avviata dall'applicazione.</p> <p>Semi Auto: Il documento viene fatto avanzare (digitalizzato) quando la scansione viene avviata dall'applicazione e quando il documento viene caricato e poi viene premuto il tasto START.</p> <p>Auto: Il documento viene fatto avanzare (digitalizzato) automaticamente quando viene caricato.</p> <p>Manuale: Il documento viene fatto avanzare a mano una pagina per volta dopo che è stata avviata la scansione dall'applicazione. Usarlo per digitalizzare pagine particolarmente spesse o sottili.</p> <p>Il display Feeding Options sul pannello operativo dello scanner viene cambiato a prescindere dal fatto che si sia premuto il tasto [OK] per le impostazioni eseguite qui.</p>

Margine	<p>Per regolare i margini (superiore, inferiore, sinistro e destro) dell'area di scansione.</p> <p>Per regolare i margini, cliccare Attiva e usare i pulsanti  e .</p> <p>Specificare un valore nell'intervallo -10 (riduce l'area di scansione di 10 mm) e +10 (aumenta l'area di scansione di 10 mm).</p> <p>Per esempio, se si desidera aumentare leggermente l'area di scansione in modo che i bordi del documento non vengano tagliati, regolare nella direzione +. Oppure, se si desidera ridurre leggermente l'area di scansione in modo che non venga aggiunta una cornice nera intorno all'immagine digitalizzata, regolare nella direzione -.</p>
Reg.man. spessore carta	<p>Per impostare a mano lo spessore della carta quando non viene regolato automaticamente.</p> <p>Cliccare Attiva e usare i pulsanti  e  per regolare lo spessore.</p> <p>Specificare lo spessore nell'intervallo da 1 (più sottile) a 13 (più spessa). Usare questa impostazione per regolare a mano lo spessore della carta quando vengono digitalizzati originali con patinatura speciale e documenti il cui lo spessore della carta non può essere regolato automaticamente o quando si verifica frequentemente la doppia alimentazione nella modalità di regolazione automatica dello spessore della carta.</p>
Rileva doppia alim.	<p>Seleziona il metodo usato per rilevare la doppia alimentazione. Viene rilevata "Doppia alimentazione" quando due o più fogli del documento vengono alimentati assieme o quando una parte di un foglio si sovrappone a un altro foglio quando i fogli nel documento vengono digitalizzati in modo continuo.</p> <p>[In base a spessore] Rileva la doppia alimentazione in base allo spessore della carta. Se viene alimentato un documento(*) di spessore maggiore del primo foglio del documento, lo scanner giudica questa cosa come doppia alimentazione e visualizza un errore.</p> <p>[In base a lung.] Rileva la doppia alimentazione in base alla lunghezza della carta. Se viene alimentato un documento di lunghezza maggiore del primo foglio del documento(*), lo scanner giudica questa cosa come doppia alimentazione e visualizza un errore.</p> <p>* Il rilevamento di doppia alimentazione viene eseguito considerando lo spessore e la lunghezza del primo foglio del documento come foglio standard. Quando il primo foglio del documento viene alimentato, lo scanner memorizza lo spessore e la lunghezza del documento.</p>

<p>Scansione veloce</p>	<p>Questa impostazione è disponibile quando la risoluzione viene impostata a 200 o 300 dpi. Quando viene impostato 200 dpi, le immagini vengono digitalizzate a 200 x 100 dpi (orizzontale x verticale) e stampate come immagini a 200 x 200 dpi. Quando viene impostato 300 dpi, le immagini vengono digitalizzate a 300 x 150 dpi (orizzontale x verticale)) e stampate come immagini a 300 x 300 dpi. Sebbene la scansione venga eseguita più velocemente in entrambi i casi, ricordare che la qualità delle immagini digitalizzate ad alta velocità diminuisce leggermente.</p>
<p>Usa pannello frontale</p>	<p>Attiva le impostazioni eseguite sul pannello operativo dello scanner.</p>
<p>Vidimatore</p>	<p>Attiva il vidimatore opzionale.</p>
<p>Fogli controllo</p>	<p>Seleziona come lo scanner rileva i Fogli di controllo dello scanner.</p> <p>[Nessuno] I Fogli di controllo dello scanner non vengono rilevati.</p> <p>[Scansione e continua] Il Foglio di controllo dello scanner viene rilevato e digitalizzato, poi continua la scansione.</p> <p>[Salta e continua] Il Foglio di controllo dello scanner viene rilevato e saltato (non digitalizzato), poi continua la scansione.</p> <p>[Scansione e fine] Il Foglio di controllo dello scanner viene rilevato e digitalizzato, poi la scansione si arresta.</p> <p>[Salta a fine] Il Foglio di controllo dello scanner viene rilevato e saltato (non digitalizzato), poi la scansione si arresta.</p>
<p>Verifica numero</p>	<p>Verificare il numero di pagine contate prima della scansione rispetto al numero effettivo di pagine digitalizzate. Se il numero è diverso, viene segnalato un errore.</p>
<p>Nuovo file auto</p>	<p>Con questa impostazione viene generato un segnale di interruzione pagina ogni volta che finisce una scansione continua. Questo permette di definire un separatore di file nella corrispondente applicazione utilizzata.</p>
<p>Rileva dimensione</p>	<p>Questa impostazione rileva il formato dei singoli documenti man mano che vengono digitalizzati e provvede a che siano digitalizzati in quel formato. Quando questa voce viene selezionata, viene disattivata la voce Formato Pagina nella finestra di dialogo dello scanner DR-5020/DR-5080C.</p>



<Impostazione di luminosità facciata posteriore>

Voce	Descrizione
Manuale	Impostare manualmente la luminosità a cui il documento deve essere digitalizzato. La luminosità può essere impostata a scelta in una gamma da 1 a 255. Cliccare i tasti ◀ e ▶ per regolare la luminosità.
Automatico	La luminosità viene impostata automaticamente solo quando [Modo] è impostato su [Bianco e nero] e [Retino] è impostato su [Nessuno]. La luminosità predefinita viene impostata quando [Modo] non è impostato su [Bianco e nero] e la luminosità viene impostata su [Auto].

<Impostazioni dei filtri immagini>

Per impostare i filtri di elaborazione delle immagini.

Voce	Descrizione
Elimina punti neri	Elimina automaticamente i punti neri isolati (punti singoli) su sfondi bianchi.
Elimina punti bianchi	Elimina automaticamente i punti bianchi isolati (punti singoli) su sfondi neri.
Elimina punte	Elimina automaticamente le parti sporgenti (punte) dai contorni.
Rafforza linee sottili	Unisce automaticamente le linee tratteggiate o impercettibili che si verificano nella digitalizzazione di documenti contenenti linee sottili.
Elimina colore	Cliccare qui per attivare la funzione di esclusione. Questa impostazione viene attivata solo nel DR-5080C. [Nessuno] Il colore non viene escluso. [Rosso] Non vengono digitalizzate le parti di colore rosso del documento. [Verde] Non vengono digitalizzate le parti di colore verde del documento. [Blu] Non vengono digitalizzate le parti di colore blu del documento.
Inizio disat.	Se il documento contiene un'area in cui il colore non deve essere escluso, specificare il punto iniziale dell'area come distanza (mm) dal bordo superiore della carta.
Fine disat.	Specificare il punto finale dell'area dove il colore non deve essere escluso come distanza (mm) dal bordo superiore della carta.
EA	Imposta il livello della funzione EA (esposizione automatica). (Questa funzione imposta la luminosità e il contrasto in relazione all'ombreggiatura dell'area nella quale l'immagine viene selezionata.) Questa voce può essere impostata in 13 incrementi utilizzando i pulsanti ◀ e ▶. Il valore predefinito è 7.

Evidenzia bordi	Imposta il livello di enfatizzazione per marcare i contorni dei caratteri e ridurre le irregolarità delle immagini quali le foto. Questa voce può essere impostata a scelta fra cinque livelli utilizzando i tasti  e  . Il valore predefinito è 3.
------------------------	---



RIFERIMENTO

- [Elimina punti neri], [Elimina punti bianchi], [Elimina punte] e [Rafforza linee sottili] vengono abilitate quando [Modo] è impostato su [Bianco e nero] e [Retino] è impostato su [Diffusione Errore].
- [Esclusione colore] è abilitata quando [Modo] è impostato su una qualsiasi impostazione eccetto [Colore].
- [EA] è abilitata quando [Modo] è impostato su [Bianco e nero].
- [Enfatizza contorni] è abilitata in tutte le modalità.

<Pulsanti>

Voce	Descrizione
OK	Attiva le impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.
Annulla	Annulla tutte le modifiche alle impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.
Predefinite	Ripristina tutte le impostazioni predefinite.

INDICE ANALITICO

- A -

Addon Type	35
Advanced Features dialog	56
Alimentazione	25, 56
Area ricerca	41
Attiva rilevamento codice	41
Attiva stampa	30
Auto	25, 56
Avviare il driver TWAIN	47

- B -

Barcode Dialog	40
Bianco su nero	35
Blocca sulla griglia	23, 54

- C -

Car. piccoli	35
CD-ROM di installazione	10
Codabar	42
Code 128	42
Code 39	42
Codici per pagina	41
Contatore	33, 36
Contrasto	21, 51

- D -

Da destra a sin.	35
Duplex	50

- E -

EA	28, 59
EAN	41
Elimina colore	28, 59
Elimina punte	28, 59
Elimina punti bianchi	28, 59
Elimina punti neri	28, 59
Evidenzia bordi	28, 60

- F -

Finestra	23
Finestra dell'area	24, 54
Fogli controllo	27, 58

- G -

Gamma Curve data	38
Gamma Download dialog	37

- I -

Impostazione della curva gamma	37
Impostazione delle condizioni di scansione	17
Impostazione di luminosità facciata posteriore	59
Impostazioni del decodificatore di codici a barre	40
Imprinter/Addon Dialog	32
Increment	36
Installazione del driver	11
ITF	42

- L -

Lato ricerca	41
Luminosità	20, 51

- M -

Manuale	25, 56
Margine	26, 57
Modalità	18, 50
Modo Spessore Fisso	30
More dialog	25

- N -

Nero su bianco	35
Nero su immagine	35
Nuovo file auto	27, 58

- O -

Offset orizzontale	34
Offset verticale	34
Opzioni scansione	50
Orientamento	35

- P -

Pagina	19, 23, 53
Pagine	35
Posizione degli assi	23, 53
Punti per poll.	19, 50

- R -

Rafforza linee sottili	28, 59
Reg.man. spessore carta	26, 30, 57
Requisiti del sistema	6
Retino	19, 50
Rileva dimensione	27, 58
Rileva doppia alim.	26, 30, 57
Ripristina tutte le funzioni.	30

- S -

Salva impostazioni	30
Scanner dialog box	48, 49
Scansione veloce	27, 58
Selezione del driver ISIS	16
Selezione del driver TWAIN	46
Selezione regione	21
Semi Auto	25, 56
Stampa	32

- T -

Testo	33
Timbro	32
Trigger azzeramento	36
Trigger incremento	36

- U -

Unità	22, 54
UPC	43
Usa pannello frontale	27, 58

- V -

Valore azzeramento	36
Valore iniziale	36
Verifica numero	27, 58
Vidimatore	27, 58

Canon

CANON ELECTRONICS INC.

1248, SHIMOKAGEMORI, CHICHIBU-SHI, SAITAMA 369-1892, JAPAN

CANON U.S.A. INC.

ONE CANON PLAZA, LAKE SUCCESS, N.Y.11042, U.S.A.

CANON CANADA INC.

6390 DIXIE ROAD, MISSISSAUGA, ONTARIO L5T 1P7, CANADA

CANON EUROPA N.V.

BOVENKERKERWEG 59-61, 1185XB AMSTELVEEN, THE NETHERLANDS

CANON LATIN AMERICA, INC.

6505, BLUE LAGOON DRIVE, SUITE 325 MIAMI, FLORIDA 33126 U.S.A.

CANON AUSTRALIA PTY. LTD.

1 THOMAS HOLT DRIVE, NORTH RYDE, SYDNEY. N.S.W, 2113. AUSTRALIA

CANON SINGAPORE PTE. LTD.

79 ANSON ROAD #09-01/06, SINGAPORE 079906

CANON HONG KONG COMPANY LTD.

10/F., LIPPO SUN PLAZA, 28 CANTON ROAD, TSIMSHATSUI, KOWLOON, HONG KONG.



Canon

DOCUMENT SCANNER

DR-5020/5080C

Scanning Utility 5000

**Instructions
Mode d'emploi
Bedienungsanleitung
Instrucciones
Intruzioni**



ENGLISH

FRANÇAIS

DEUTSCH

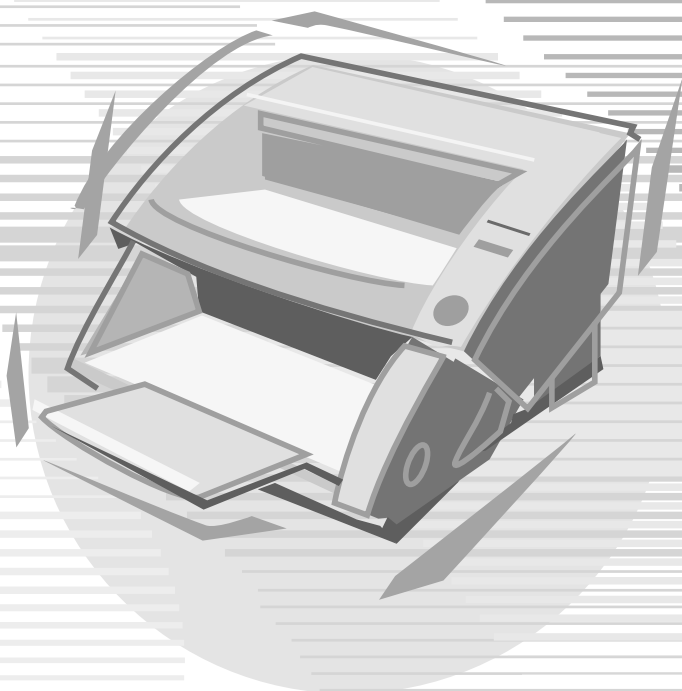
ESPAÑOL

ITALIANO

Scanning Utility 5000

Instructions

Be sure to thoroughly read this Instructions before using this unit, and store this manual in a safe place after use.



NOTICE

- ① Copyright© 1999 by CANON ELECTRONICS INC. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language or computer language in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, manual, or otherwise, without the prior permission of CANON ELECTRONICS INC.
- ② The contents of this manual are subject to change without notice.
- ③ Every effort has been made to ensure the accuracy of information presented in this manual. However, Canon Electronics Inc. and the subsidiaries on the back cover assume no responsibility for any errors or their consequences.
- ④ We do not assume any responsibility for damage resulting from operations regardless of item ③.

Trademarks and Registered Trademarks

- Microsoft Windows® and Microsoft Windows NT® are registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and in other countries.
- ISIS® is a registered trademark of Pixel Translation A Division of ActionPoint Inc.
- Adaptec is a registered trademark of ADAPTEC Inc.
- IBM and PC/AT are registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation.
- Pentium® is a registered trademark of Intel Corporation U.S.A.
- Product names mentioned herein are for identification purposes only and may be trademarks and/or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

INTRODUCTION

Thank you for purchasing the Canon Document Scanner DR-5020/5080C. In all, three manuals are provided with the DR-5020/5080C: Scanning Utility 5000 Instructions (this manual), DR-5020/5080C Instructions and ISIS/TWAIN Driver Instructions.

This manual describes how to operate the scanner application “Scanning Utility 5000” provided with the DR-5020/5080C. Be sure to read this manual and the separate DR-5020/5080C Instructions before use to ensure that the functions of the DR-5020/5080C are effectively utilized. Scanner drivers such as an ISIS or TWAIN driver are not required as the scanner application packaged with the DR-5020/5080C uses an exclusive scanner driver.

Also, after you have read this manual, be sure to store this manual in a safe place.

The following describes the contents of each of these manuals.

Scanning Utility 5000 Instructions (this manual)

This manual describes how to operate the scanner application “Scanning Utility 5000” provided with the scanner.

DR-5020/5080C Instructions

This manual describes how to connect the scanner, load documents, remove jammed paper and other information on how to handle the scanner. Read this manual before you start to operate the DR-5020/5080C.

ISIS/TWAIN Driver Instructions

This manual describes operations when the scanner is used with an ISIS driver or TWAIN driver compatible application.

■ Caution

Take note of the following when using the scanner to make copies:

- Reproducing money, other forms of currency or negotiable securities is an offense and may be subject to criminal prosecution.
- Reproducing official certificates, licenses, travel tickets, copyright protected and private documents and other items is also against the law and may be subject to criminal prosecutions.
- Obtain the copyright holder’s permission when a copied image will be used for anything other than your own personal use or use within the confines of your own household.

CONVENTIONS

This manual uses the following symbols and indications. Before you start reading this manual, read the following and familiarize yourself with their meanings.



Read carefully to avoid death or serious injury.



Read carefully to avoid damage to the equipment or loss of valuable data.



Memos indicate where you will find useful information in this manual. A number enclosed in parentheses refers to a page number that contains more information about the previous sentence or paragraph.



Tips about operations and how to avoid minor difficulties.

■ This Unit

This manual refers to the DR-5020 and DR-5080C collectively as the “scanner.” If a description is required for each individual machine type, this manual refers to the scanner specifically by DR-5020 and DR-5080C.

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION	1
CONVENTIONS	2

Chapter 1 Installation and Basic Operation of Scanning Utility 5000 **5**

1.1 System Requirements	6
1.2 Installing Scanning Utility 5000	7
Before You Begin	7
Installing Scanning Utility 5000	8
Uninstalling Scanning Utility 5000	11
1.3 Basic Scanning Utility 5000 Operations	12
Startup and Exit	12
◆ Startup	12
◆ Exit	12
Explanation of the Scanning Utility 5000 Screen	13
◆ Menu bar	14
◆ Tool bar	16

Chapter 2 Scanning a Document **19**

2.1 Flowchart of Scanning	20
2.2 Scanning Procedure	21
Preparing the Scanner and the Computer	21
Setting Basic Scan Conditions	22
Loading and Scanning a Document	23
◆ Scanning two or more pages	23
◆ Scanning just one page and confirming the scanned image	26
Confirming the Scanned Image	27
Saving the Scanned Image	28
◆ About save formats	28
◆ Saving scanned images to file (Scan Page)	29
Printing the Scanned Image	30
Opening Image Files	32
2.3 Various Scanning Modes	33
Scanning According to Feed Mode	33
◆ Selecting the feed mode	35

◆ Scanning in the Semi-Auto mode	37
◆ Scanning in the Auto mode	40
◆ Scanning in the Manual mode	43
Duplex Scanning	46
Directly Printing Scanned Images	47
Using Function Sheets	48
◆ Scanner Control Sheet	49
◆ Job Separation Sheet	51
High-speed Scanning	52
Verify Scan	54
◆ Setting verify scan	54
◆ Entering the number of pages in a document	56
◆ Scanning documents	58
2.4 Setting Scan Conditions	60
Basic Settings	61
Detailed Settings	63
Imprinter/Addon Settings	69
Bar Code Decoder Settings	74
Setting the Gamma Curve	79
Dropout Color Settings (supported on DR-5080C only)	82
Function Key Settings	83
Chapter 3 Troubleshooting	85
3.1 When An Error Message is Displayed	86
3.2 When The Scanned Image is Not Normal	88
Index	89

Chapter 1

Installation and Basic Operation of Scanning Utility 5000

This chapter describes how to install Scanning Utility 5000, and the basic operation of Scanning Utility 5000.

1.1 System Requirements	6
1.2 Installing Scanning Utility 5000	7
1.3 Basic Scanning Utility 5000 Operations	12

1.1

System Requirements

You must have the following hardware and OS for Scanning Utility 5000 to work correctly.

- An IBM PC/AT or compatible computer with a Pentium 133 MHz CPU or higher and at least 64 MB of memory
 - OS: Microsoft Windows® 95/98/Me or Microsoft Windows NT® 4.0 Workstation/Windows 2000 Professional
 - At least 100 MB of hard disk space (at least 5 MB after installation)
- An SVGA compatible display
- A Microsoft Windows compatible keyboard, mouse and printer, CD-ROM drive (4x speed or faster)
- A SCSI card whose operation has been confirmed
Operation of the following SCSI cards has been confirmed:
Adaptec AHA-1540 series and AHA-2940 series
- SCSI-2 compatible SCSI cable



MEMO

- Scanning Utility 5000 uses a dedicated scanner driver. Scanner drivers such as the ISIS driver and TWAIN driver are not required.
- When you install Scanning Utility 5000, another folder “\ceiscan” is created under the Windows folder in addition to the installation destination folder, and the file “cei*.dll” is copied to \Windows\system.
Note that Scanning Utility 5000 no longer operates correctly if these files are modified.
- The names of the \Windows and \Windows\system folders vary according to the version of Windows you are running. In the following explanations, substitute the names of the \Windows and \Windows\system folders with the names of the folders in the version of Windows you are using.



Installing Scanning Utility 5000

This section describes how to install Scanning Utility 5000 and the installation procedure.

Before You Begin

Check the following items before you begin to install Scanning Utility 5000.

- **Make sure that the OS of the computer on which you are going to install Scanning Utility 5000 is either Microsoft Windows® 95/98/Me or Microsoft Windows NT® 4.0 Workstation/Windows 2000 Professional.**

- **Connection with your computer**

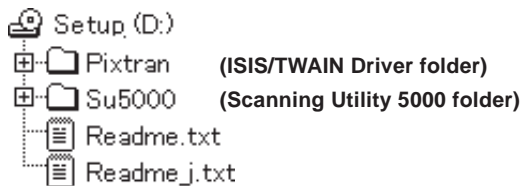
For details on how to connect the scanner, refer to the separate DR-5020/5080C Instructions.

- **Setup CD-ROM**

The setup CD-ROM comprises the following layers.

Before you install Scanning Utility 5000, be sure to read "Readme.txt".

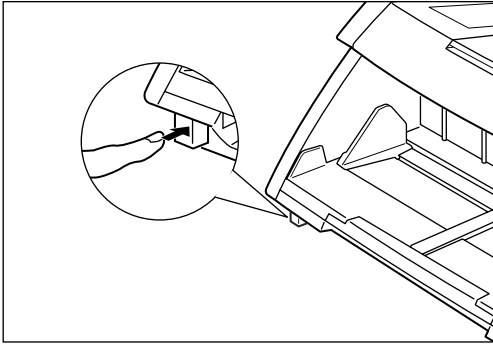
After you have installed Scanning Utility 5000, store the setup CD-ROM in a safe place.



Installing Scanning Utility 5000

The following describes the procedure for installing Scanning Utility 5000 on the computer.

1 Turn the scanner ON.



2 Turn the computer ON.

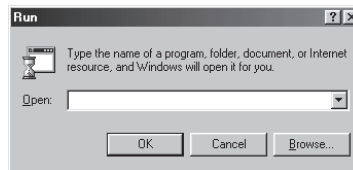
⇒ Windows starts up.

3 Insert the setup disc into the CD-ROM drive.

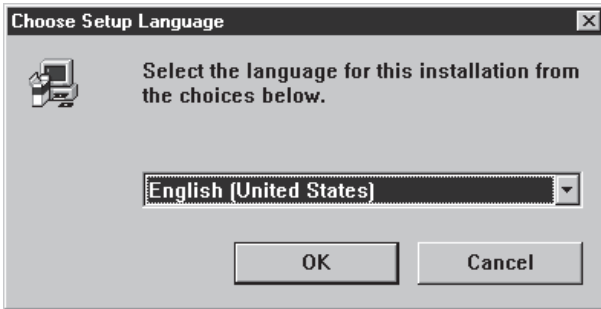
4 Click [Start] and select Run.

The screen that appears varies according to the version of Windows you are running.

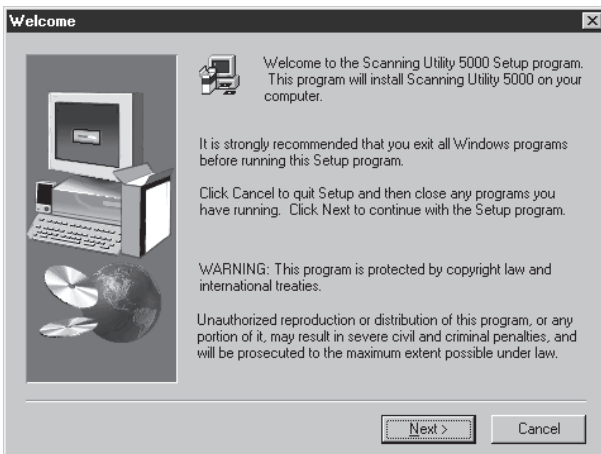
[Windows98]



- 5** At Open, type “d:\su5000\setup.exe” and click [OK].
In these instructions, the CD-ROM drive is specified as D.
⇒ The Choose Setup Language dialog box appears.

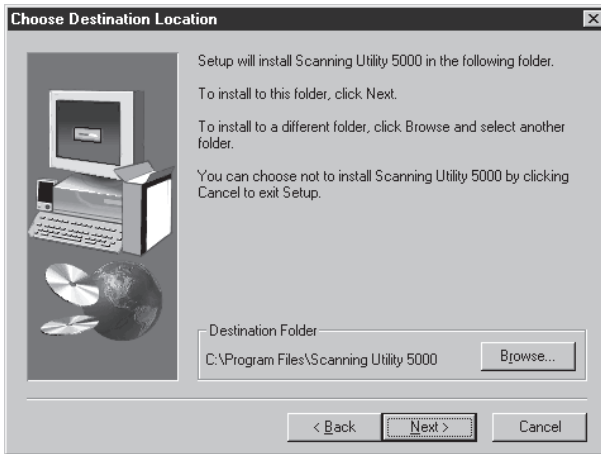


- 6** Select English (United States) and click [OK].
⇒ The Welcome dialog box appears.



7 Click [Next].

➡ The Choose Destination Location dialog box appears.

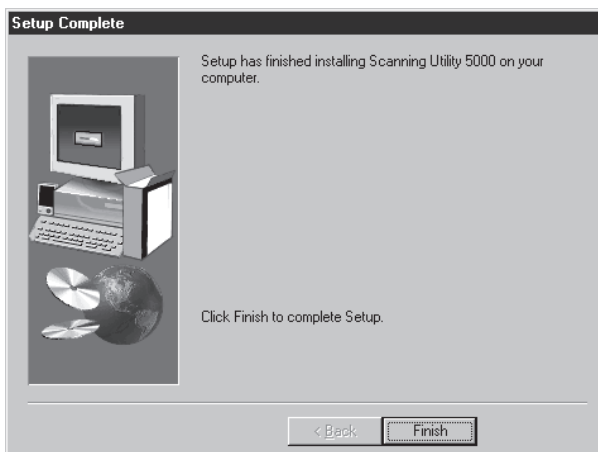


8 Check the displayed installation directory, and then click [Next].

To change the installation directory, click [Browse], and then choose the new installation directory.

➡ Installation begins.

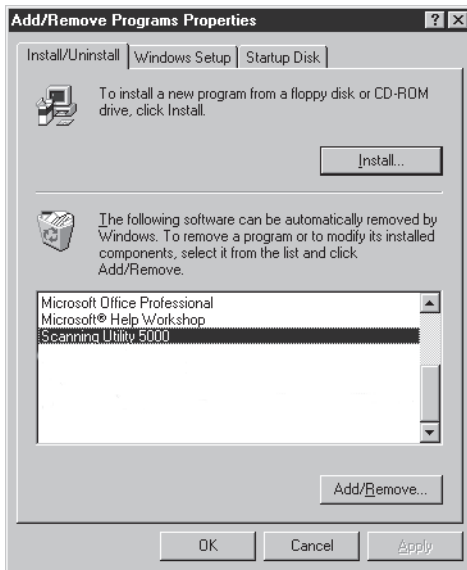
9 This continues the installation. After a while, the Setup Complete dialog box appears.



10 Click Finish to complete the installation.

Uninstalling Scanning Utility 5000

To uninstall Scanning Utility 5000, open “Add/Remove Programs” in the control panel, select [Scanning Utility 5000] and click [Add/Delete].



1.3

Basic Scanning Utility 5000 Operations

This section describes how to start up and exit Scanning Utility 5000, and the Scanning Utility 5000 screens.

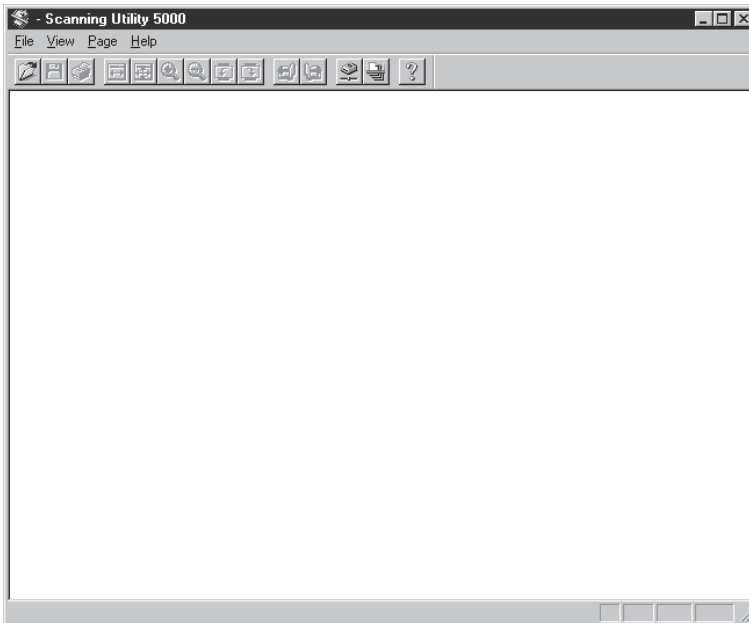
Startup and Exit

Start up or exit Scanning Utility 5000.

◆ Startup

1 Click [Start] and choose [Program] - [Scanning Utility 5000].

⇒ Scanning Utility 5000 starts up.



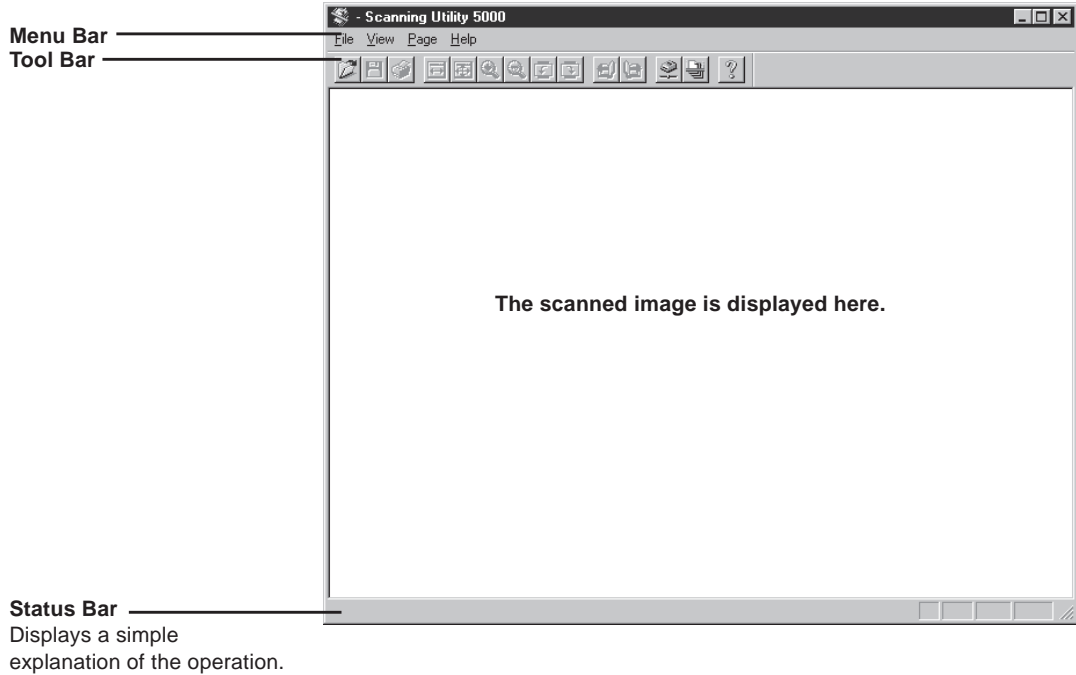
◆ Exit

1 On the Scanning Utility 5000 screen, select [File] - [Exit].

⇒ You can exit Scanning Utility 5000.

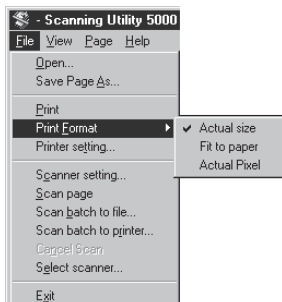
Explanation of the Scanning Utility 5000 Screen

This section describes the functions of Menu Bar and Tool Bar on the Scanning Utility 5000 screen.



◆ Menu bar

File menu



Open

Opens an image saved to file.

Save Page As...

Saves the currently displayed page under a different name after one page has been scanned.

Print

Prints the image.

Print Format

Actual size: Prints at the same size as the paper regardless of the paper or the resolution at which the image was scanned.

Fit to paper: Prints the image matched to the paper size when the document is larger than the paper.

Actual pixel: Prints each single dot in the scanned image using one output dot on the printer. For this reason, the print size becomes smaller when a scanned image is output on a small dot resolution printer.

Printer setting...

Sets the printer. The name of the printer currently set at Normally used printer is displayed as the printer name.

Scanner setting...

Sets the scanner. For details on settings, see “2.4 Setting Scan Conditions” (P.60).

Scan page

Scans only a single page.

Scan batch to file...

Scans and saves the document to a specified file.

Scan batch to printer...

Scans and prints the document on the printer currently set at Normally used printer.

Cancel Scan

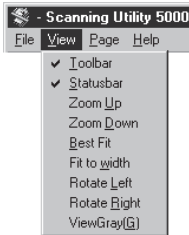
Cancel scanning.

Select scanner...

Selects a scanner to be used.

Exit

Exits Scanning Utility 5000.

View menu**Toolbar**

You can switch display of the tool bar ON and OFF. When this item is checked, the tool bar is displayed. When it is not checked, the tool bar is not displayed. Each click of this menu item switches display ON and OFF.

Statusbar

You can switch display of the status bar ON and OFF. When this item is checked, the status bar is displayed. When it is not checked, the tool bar is not displayed. Each click of this menu item switches display ON and OFF.

Zoom Up

Each click of this button enlarges the image on screen. Images cannot be enlarged beyond 100% (actual size).

Zoom Down

Each click of this button reduces the image on screen.

Best Fit

Displays the entire image in the window.

Fit to width

Displays the image so that its width matches the width of the window.

Rotate Left

Rotates images left (counterclockwise) by 90°.

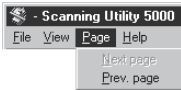
Rotate Right

Rotates images right (clockwise) by 90°.

View Gray

Displays black-and-white images in gray scale.

Page menu



Next page

Displays the image on the next page.

Prev. page

Displays the image on the previous page.

Help Menu



About

Displays the version information and copyright of Scanning Utility 5000.

◆ Tool bar



Opens a scanned image saved to file.



Saves the currently displayed page under a different name after one page has been scanned.



Prints the scanned image.



Displays the image so that its width matches the width of the window.



Displays the entire image in the window.



Each click of this button enlarges the image on screen. Images cannot be enlarged beyond 100% (actual size).



Each click of this button reduces the image on screen.



Rotates the image left (counterclockwise) by 90°.



Rotates the image right (clockwise) by 90°.



Displays the image of the previous page.



Displays the image of the next page.



Sets the scanner. For details on settings, see “2.4 Setting Scan Conditions” (P.60).



Scans and saves the document to a specified file. For details on the scan procedure, see “2.2 Scanning Procedure” (P.21).



Displays the version information and copyright of Scanning Utility 5000.

Chapter 2

Scanning a Document

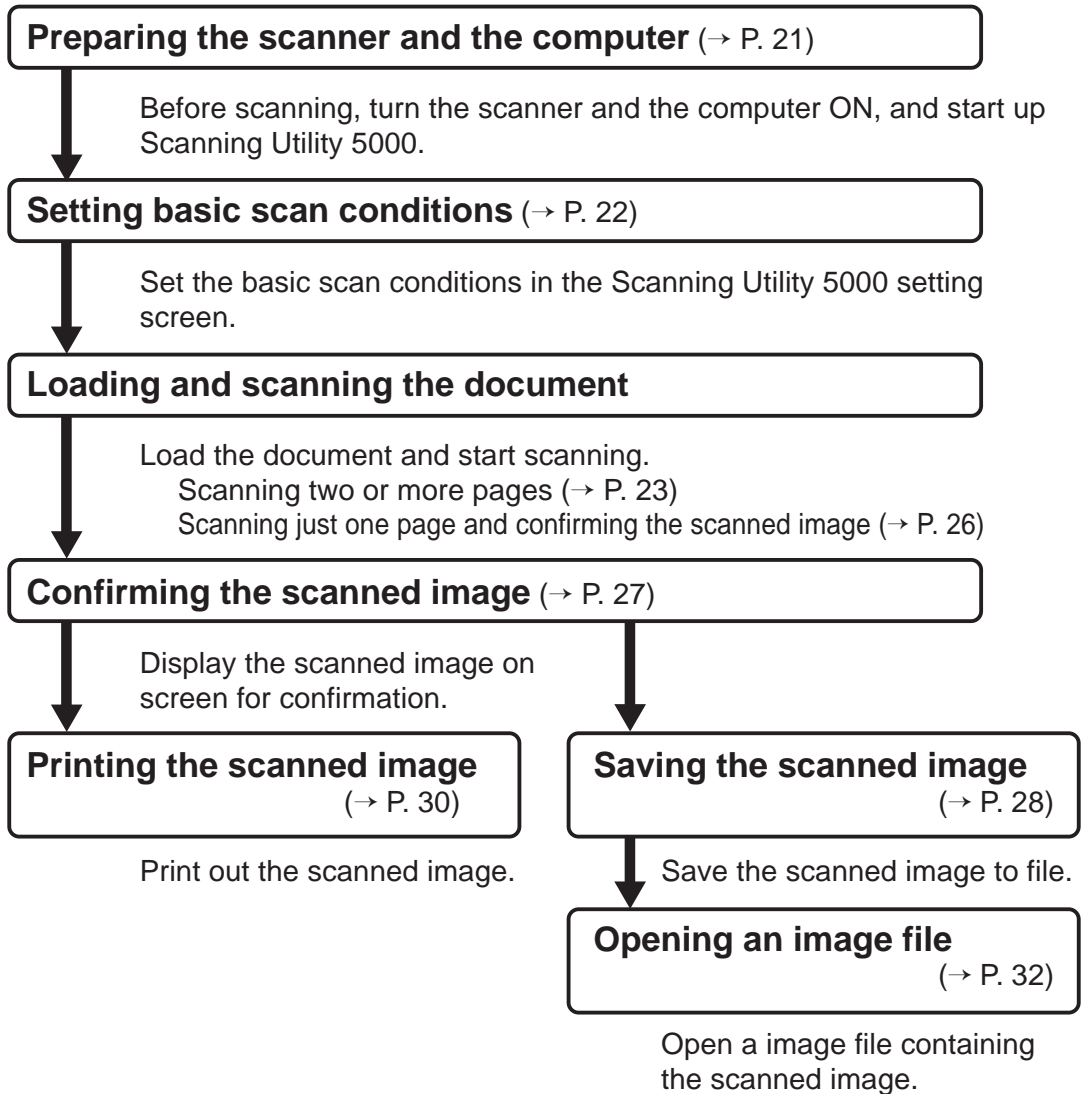
This chapter describes how to scan a document using Scanning Utility 5000.

2.1 Flowchart of Scanning	20
2.2 Scanning Procedure	21
2.3 Various Scanning Modes	33
2.4 Setting Scan Conditions	60

2.1

Flowchart of Scanning

Follow this general procedure to start scanning a document using Scanning Utility 5000.



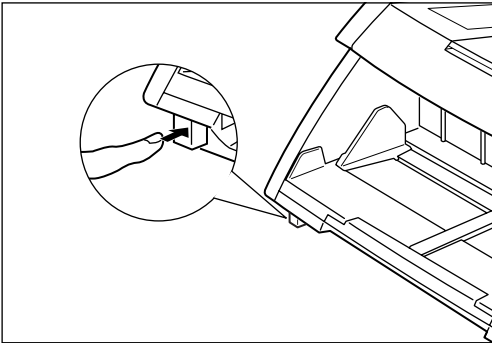
2.2 Scanning Procedure

Preparing the Scanner and the Computer

Before scanning, turn the scanner and the computer ON, and start up Scanning Utility 5000.

ENGLISH

1 Turn the scanner ON.

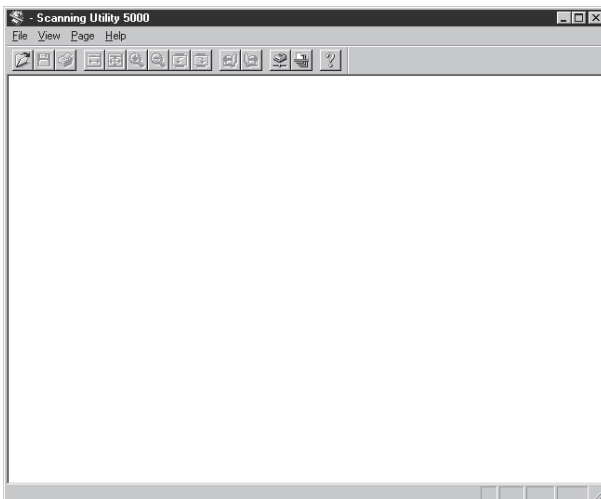


2 Turn the computer ON.

⇒ Windows starts up.

3 Click [Start] and select [Program] - [Scanning Utility 5000].

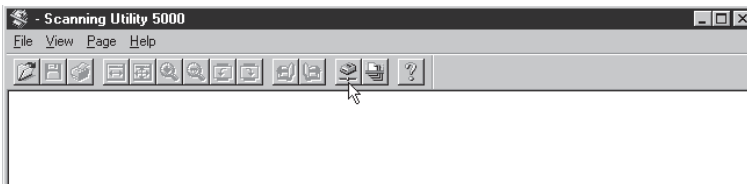
⇒ Scanning Utility 5000 starts up.



Setting Basic Scan Conditions

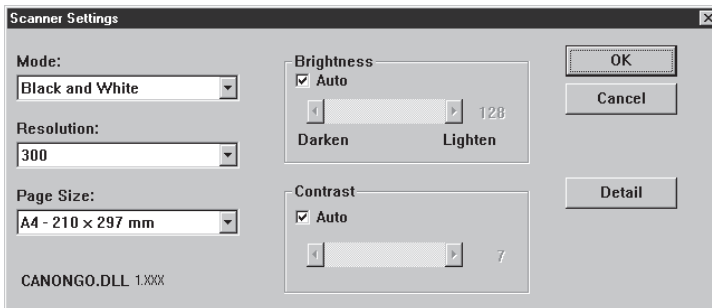
Set the basic scan conditions in the “Scanner Settings” dialog box. There are five items to set in the basic scan conditions: Mode, Resolution, Page Size, Brightness and Contrast. For details on settings, see “2.4 Setting Scan Conditions” (P.60).

1 Either select [File] - [Scanner setting], or click  on the Tool Bar.



➔ The Scanner Settings dialog box is displayed.

2 Set the basic items.



Mode: Sets the type of image to be scanned.

Resolution: Sets the resolution (dpi).

Page Size: Specifies the size of the document to be scanned.

Brightness: Adjusts the brightness of the entire scanned image.

Contrast: Adjust the contrast of the entire scanned image.



MEMO

For details of settings, see 2.4 Setting Scan Conditions (P. 60).

3 Click [OK] to return to the scan operation screen.

Loading and Scanning a Document

Load a document on the document tray and start scanning.

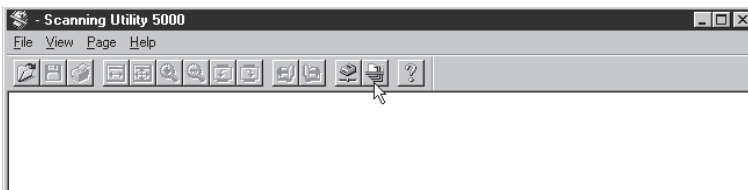
There are two ways of scanning documents: scanning two or more pages, and scanning just one page and then confirming the scanned image.

◆ Scanning two or more pages

You can scan documents comprising two or more pages in one of four modes: Remote, Auto, Semi-Auto and Manual. The scanning procedure varies according to each of these modes.

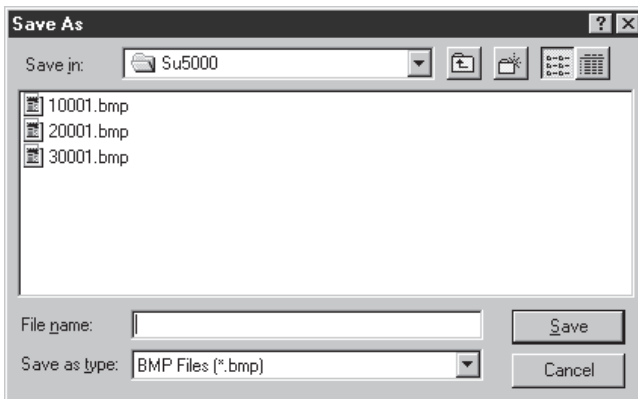
The following description is for a document scanned in the Remote mode. For details of scanning in the other modes, see “2.3 Various Scanning Modes” (P.33).

- 1 Select [File] - [Scan batch to file], or click  on the Tool Bar.



⇒ The Save As dialog box appears.

- 2 Decide on the name of the file to scan the image under, file type (save format) and where to save the file, and click [Save].



⇒ The Start scanning dialog box is displayed.



HINT

File Type displays the various file formats that you can save scanned images in. The following four file types matched to the mode that you are scanning the document in are displayed:

TIFF (*.tif), BMP (*.bmp), JBIG (*.jbg), JPEG (*.jpg)



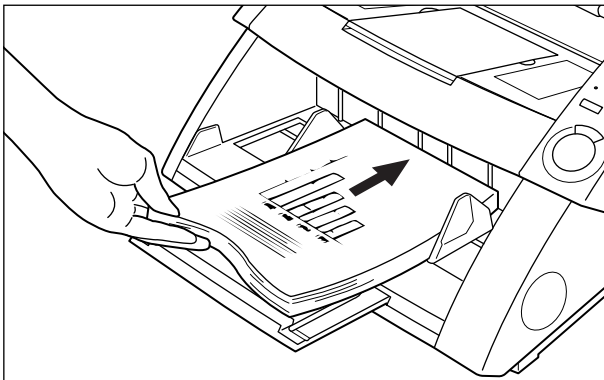
MEMO

When TIFF is selected, the image spread over several scanned pages (including scanning in the Duplex mode) is saved as a single file.

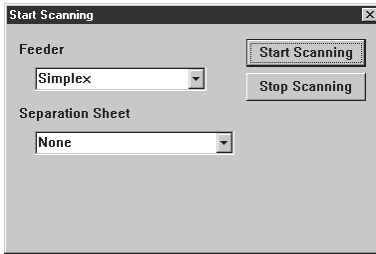
When you select the BMP, JPEG or JBIG format, each of the pages in the document are saved as separate files in the folder specified as the save destination. Files comprise the name to which the first image is specified, and a running number "0001", "0002" and so forth is automatically appended to subsequent files. (For example, let's assume that pages are saved in BMP format to the file name "scan.bmp". The files "scan.bmp", "scan0001.bmp", "scan0002.bmp" and so forth are created.)

When files are separated using the Auto New File function or File Separator Sheet, folders appended with a running number ("0001", "0002" and so forth) are automatically created after each file separation, and images are saved to files in these folders.

3 Load the document on the document tray.



4 Click [Start Scanning].



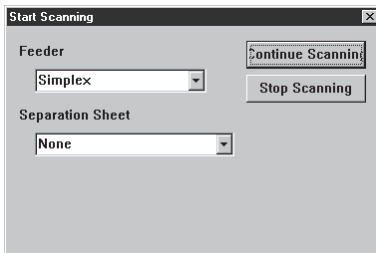
➔ Scanning starts.



If scanning does not start, check to see if all the Feeding Option key lamps on the operation panel on the scanner are OFF (Remote mode).

5 Scanning is paused when the document tray runs out of pages to scan.

➔ The Start Scanning (paused) dialog box appears.



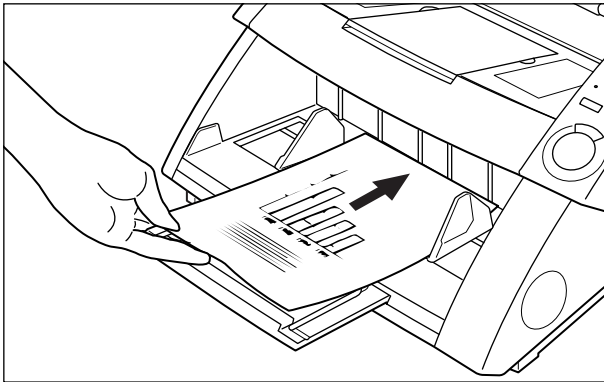
6 To continue scanning, load another document on the document tray and click [Continue Scanning]. To stop scanning, click [Stop Scanning].

7 Confirm the scanned image. (P. 27)

◆ Scanning just one page and confirming the scanned image

Before you start scanning a document comprising a number of sheets, you can scan just one page and confirm the scanned image. In this scan mode, the scanned image is not automatically saved. If you want to save it, save it manually. (See “Saving the Scanned Image” P.28)

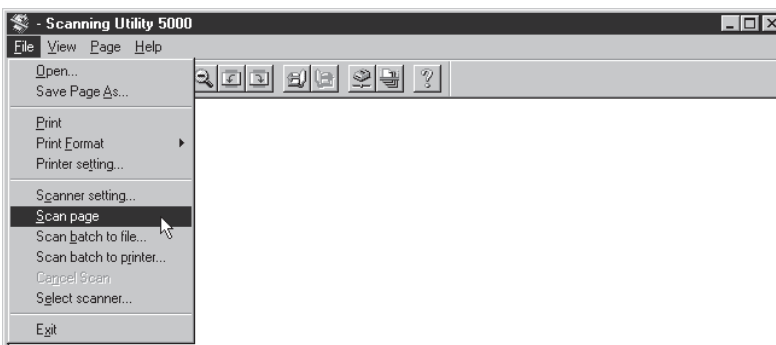
1 Load one page on the document tray.



MEMO

If you have placed two or more pages on the document tray, the document tray will stay at the up position after the first page of the document is scanned. Remove the other pages on the document tray, and lower the document tray to the down position.

2 Select [File] - [Scan page].



⇒ The document is scanned.

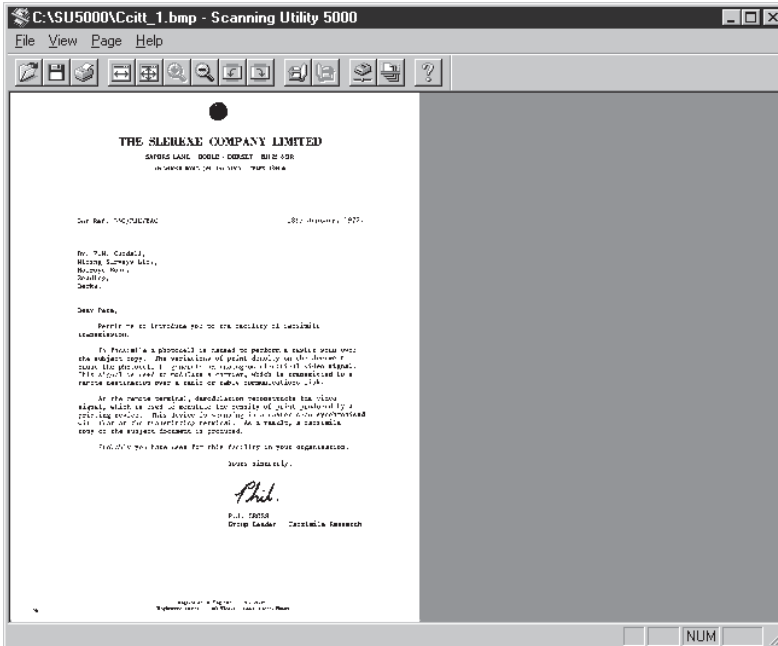
3 Check the scanned image. (P.27)

4 Save the scanned image if necessary. (P.29)

Confirming the Scanned Image









Display the scanned image on the screen for confirmation.

1 Confirm the scanned image on screen.



HINT

You can use the buttons on the tool bar to enlarge or reduce the display of the image, and rotate the scanned image for confirmation.

-  Displays the image so that its width matches the width of the window.
-  Displays the entire image in the window.
-  Each click of this button enlarges the image on screen. Images cannot be enlarged beyond 100% (actual size).
-  Each click of this button reduces the image on screen.
-  Rotates the image left (counterclockwise) by 90°.
-  Rotates the image right (clockwise) by 90°.
-  Displays the next image.
-  Displays the previous image.

Saving the Scanned Image

◆ About save formats

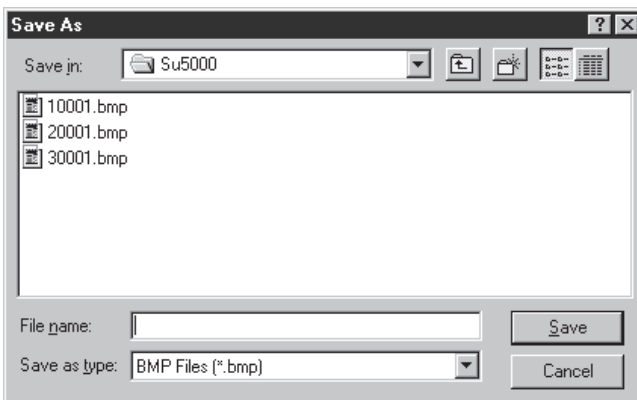
Scanned images can be saved to files in one of the TIFF, BMP, JPEG or JBIG file formats.

The available file save format varies according to the Scanning Mode setting during actual scanning.

The following table shows the file formats supported by Scanning Utility 5000.

Scanning Mode	Compatible File Format			
	BMP	JBIG	JPEG	TIFF (MMR)
Black and White, Black and White-ED	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>
Gray scale 2-bit, 4-bit	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>
Gray scale 8-bit	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	
Color	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>	

Specify the file format in the Save As dialog box.



Select the file format at Save as type.



MEMO

When TIFF is selected, the image spread over several scanned pages (including duplex scanning) is saved as a single file.

When you select the BMP, JPEG or JBIG format, each of the pages in the document are saved as separate files in the folder specified as the save destination. Files comprise the name to which the first image is specified, and a running number "0001", "0002" and so forth is automatically appended to subsequent files. (For example, let's assume that pages are saved in BMP format to the file name "scan.bmp". The files "scan.bmp", "scan0001.bmp", "scan0002.bmp" and so forth are created.)

When files are separated using the Auto New File function or File Separator Sheet, folders appended with a running number ("0001", "0002" and so forth) are automatically created after each file separation, and images are saved to files in these folders.

◆ Saving scanned images to file (Scan page)

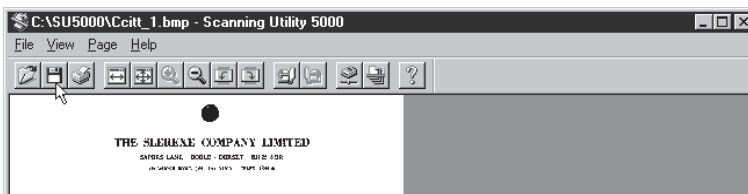
When a single-page document is scanned, the scanned image is not saved. If you need to save the scanning image, follow the procedure below.



MEMO

When two or more pages are scanned (P.23), the images are automatically saved to the specified file when they are scanned. So, they need not be saved again.

1 Either select [File] - [Save Page As...], or click  on the tool bar with the scanned image displayed in the Scanning Utility 5000 screen.



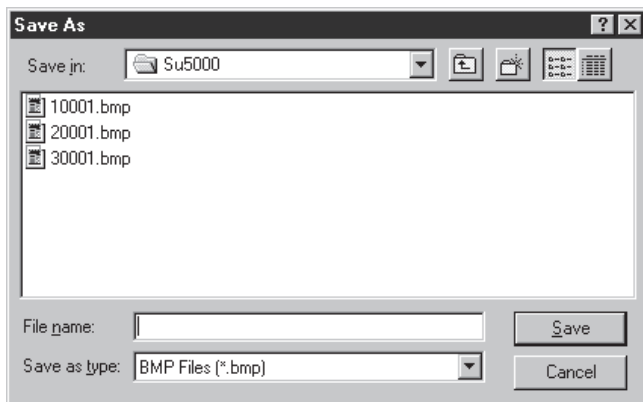
➔ The Save As dialog box is displayed.



MEMO

[Save Page As] saves only the currently displayed page as a different file. When you are scanning two or more pages, and you use this command to save images saved as a single TIFF (multi TIFF) file, be sure to save the images under a different file name. Note that if you overwrite the images by saving them under the same file name, the images of a different page currently not displayed are deleted.

2 Decide on the name of the file to scan the image under, file type (file format) and where to save the file, and click Save.



➔ The scanned image is saved to the file that you specified.



Before you decide on the file name and type (file format) and where it is to be saved, thoroughly read “About save formats” (P.28).

Printing the Scanned Image


Print the scanned image.

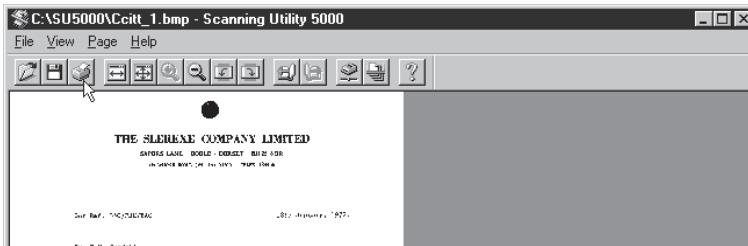


There are three ways of printing scanned images.

Before you start printing, select one of the following under [File] - [Print Format].

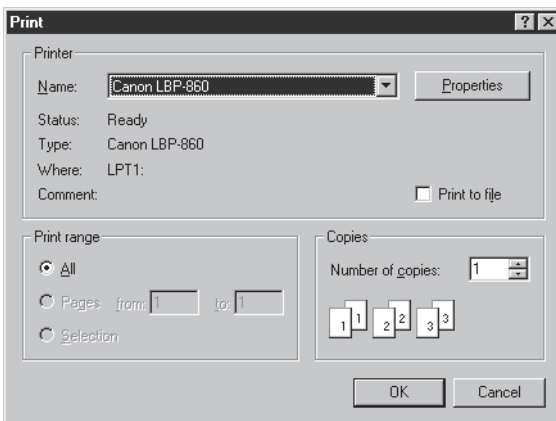
- Actual size
Prints the scanned image at actual size regardless of the paper on which it is to be printed and the resolution in which the image is scanned.
- Fit to paper
Prints the scanned image so that it fits on the paper when the size of the document is larger than the paper on which the scanned image is printed.
- Actual Pixel
One dot in the scanned image is output as one dot on the printer.

- 1** Either select [File] - [Print], or click  on the tool bar with the scanned image displayed in the Scanning Utility 5000 screen.



➞ The Print setting screen is displayed.

- 2** Set the printing details, and click [OK].



➞ The scanning image is printed.



- The printer properties screen varies according to your printer. For details, refer to the manual or the help file of the printer driver that you are using.
- Though [All] is selected in the printing range setting, only the currently displayed page is printed.

Opening Image Files

Open the file contained a scanned image.



MEMO

Only TIFF, BMP, JPEG, JBIG images saved on the Scanning Utility 5000 can be opened as image files on Scanning Utility 5000.

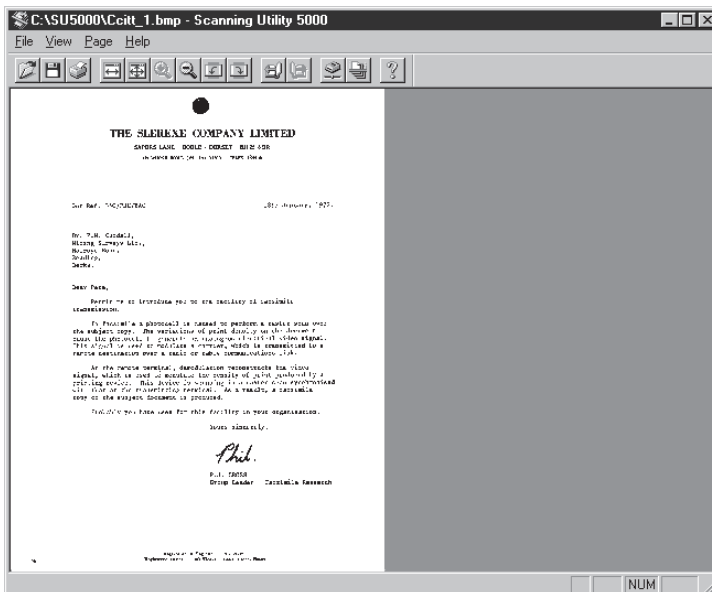
1 Select [File] - [Open], or click on the Tool Bar.




➔ The Open dialog box is displayed.

2 Select a file and click [OK].

➔ The selected file is displayed.



MEMO

- Note that if you overwrite and save an opened TIFF (multi TIFF) file by [File] - [Save Page As] or by the  button, only the currently displayed page is saved, and the images of all other pages are deleted.
- To close an opened file, quit Scanning Utility 5000 by [File] - [Exit].

2.3 Various Scanning Modes

You can scan documents in various ways on Scanning Utility 5000. For example, you can change the feed mode for the document is to be fed according to your particular scanning requirements, scan both sides of a document, or scan documents at high speed.

This section describes the following ways of scanning documents:

- Scanning according to feed mode (Remote, Semi-Auto, Auto, Manual modes)
- Duplex scanning
- Directly printing scanned images (scan batch to print)
- Using Function Sheets
- High-speed scanning
- Verify count scanning

Scanning According to Feed Mode

Select from the following feed modes to suit the quality of the document and paper type.

The following feed modes are available:

- **Remote**

When you load the document on the scanner and instruct “Start scanning” in Scanning Utility 5000, the paper starts to be fed. Two or more pages can be loaded in this mode.



MEMO

For details on the Remote mode, see “Scanning two or more pages” (P.23).

- **Semi Auto**

Instruct “Start scanning” in Scanning Utility 5000, load the document, and press the Start key on the scanner to start feeding.

Two or more pages can be loaded in this mode.

- **Auto**

When you instruct “Start scanning” in Scanning Utility 5000 and load the document on the scanner, the scanner automatically starts feeding.

Two or more pages can be loaded in this mode.

- **Manual**

Instruct “Start scanning” in Scanning Utility 5000, and manually insert one page at a time.



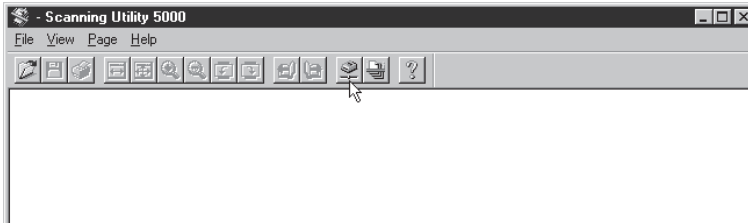
MEMO

For details on how to load documents, see “3.2 Document Feeding and Scanning” (P. 38) in the DR-5020/5080C Instructions.

The following describes the procedure for selecting the feed mode and the scanning procedure according to each feed mode.

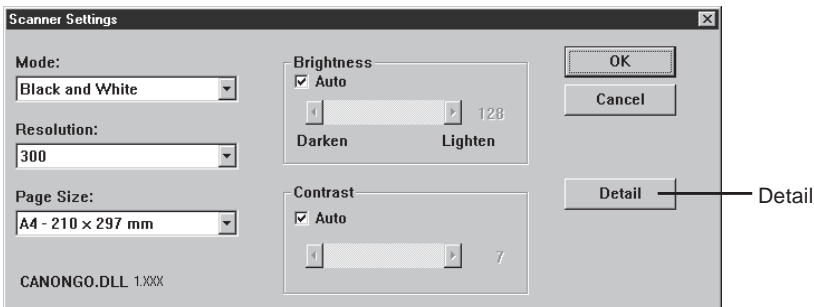
◆ Selecting the feed mode

1 Either select [File] - [Scanner setting], or click  on the Tool Bar.



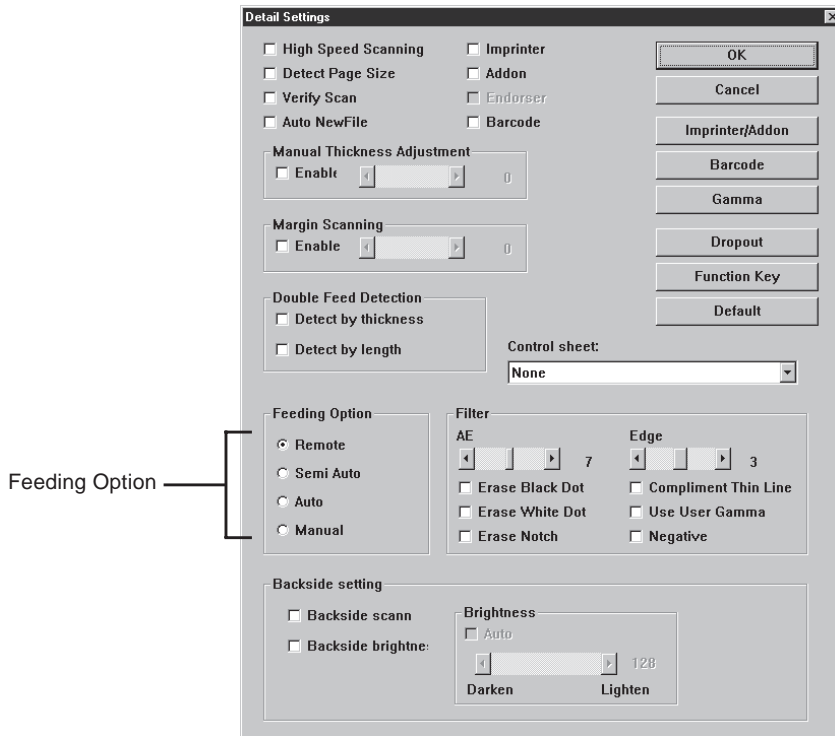
⇒ The Scanner Settings dialog box is displayed.

2 In the Scanner Settings dialog box, click [Detail].



⇒ The Detail Settings dialog box is displayed.

3 At Feeding Option, select the feed mode.



4 Click [OK] to return to the Scanner Settings dialog box.

5 Click [OK] to return to the scan operation screen.



The feed mode can also be set on the operation panel of the scanner. Press the [Feeding Option] key on the operation panel to light the lamp of the desired feeding mode. When the Remote mode is set, none of the lamps lights.

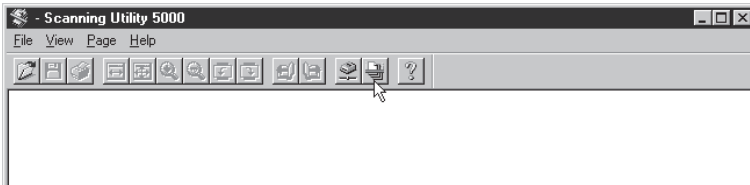
◆ Scanning in the Semi-Auto mode

Set the feed mode to the Semi-Auto mode and then scan the document.

1 Carry out the operation described in “Selecting the Feed Mode” and select “Semi-Auto”.

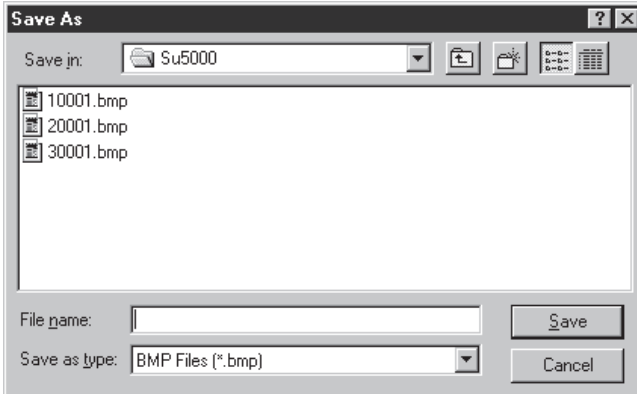
⇒ Semi-Auto on the operation panel lights.

2 Either select [File] - [Scan batch to file], or click  on the tool bar.



⇒ The Save As dialog box appears.

3 Decide on the name of the file to scan the image under, file type (file format) and where to save the file, and click Save.

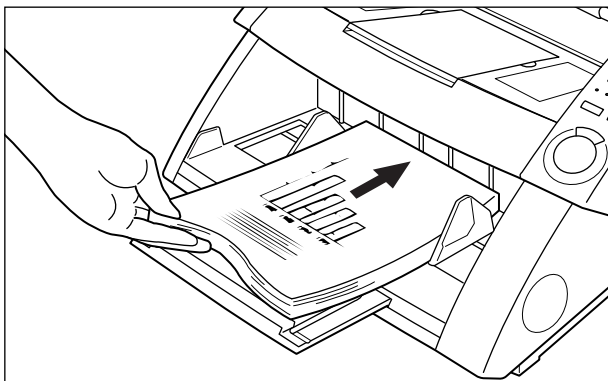


⇒ The Start Scanning dialog appears.

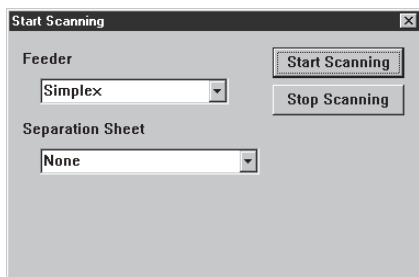


Before you decide on the file name and type (file format) and where it is to be saved, thoroughly read “About save formats” (P.28).

4 Load the document on the document tray.

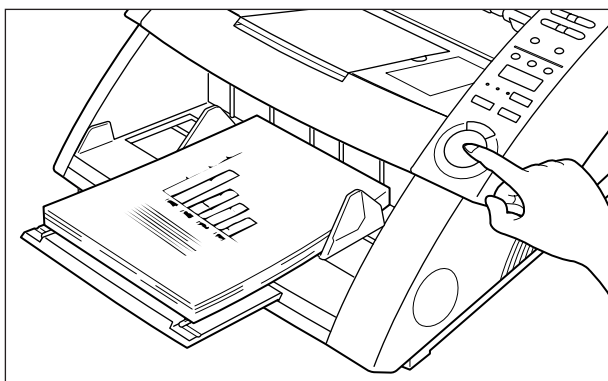


5 Click [Start Scanning].



➔ The Start key in the center of the operation panel lights (green).

6 Press the Start key on the scanner's operation panel.



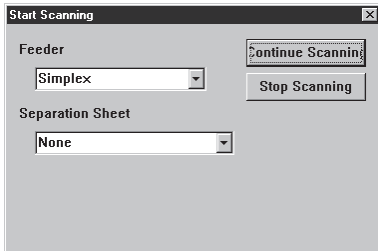
➔ Scanning starts.

When the scanner runs out of document sheets to scan, the document tray is lowered, and the scanner waits for the next document to be loaded.

7 Load the next document on the document tray and press the Start key on the scanner's operation panel.

8 When the scanner runs out of document sheets to scan, press the Stop key.

⇒ The Start Scanning (paused) dialog box appears.



9 To stop scanning, click [Stop Scanning].
To continue scanning, click [Start Scanning], and return to step 7.

10 Check the scanned image. (P.27)

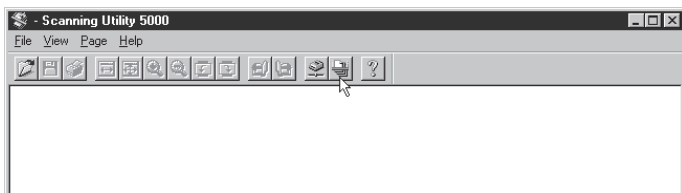
◆ Scanning in the Auto mode

Set the feed mode to the Auto mode and then scan the document.

1 Carry out the operation described in “Selecting the Feed Mode” and select “Auto”.

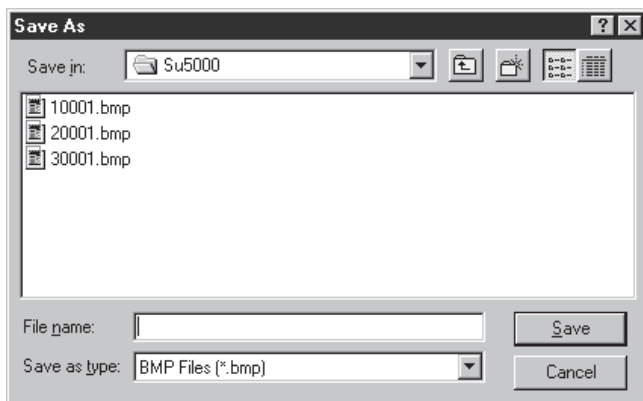
⇒ Auto on the operation panel lights.

2 Either select [File] - [Scan batch to file], or click on the tool bar.



⇒ The Save As dialog box appears.

3 Decide on the name of the file to scan the image under, file type (file format) and where to save the file, and click [Save].



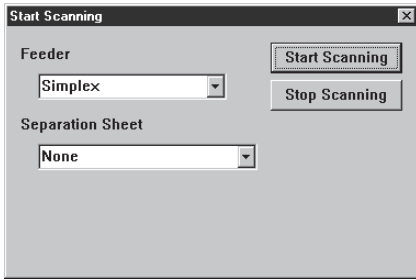
⇒ The Start Scanning dialog appears.



MEMO

Before you decide on the file name and type (file format) and where it is to be saved, thoroughly read “About save formats” (P.28).

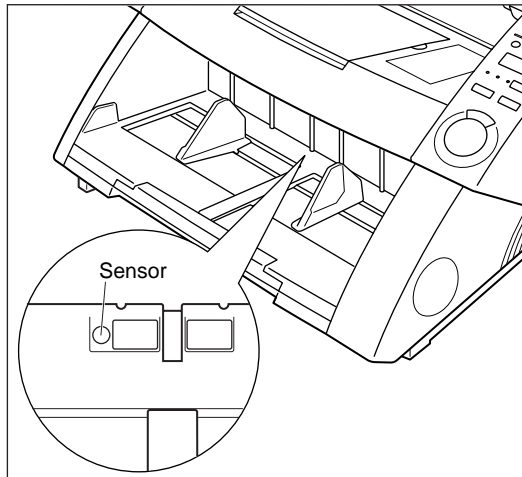
4 Click [Start Scanning].



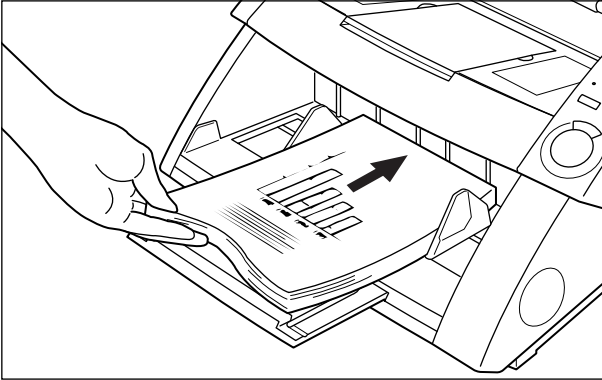
➞ The Start key in the center of the operation panel lights (green).



When the scanning mode is set to Auto, the sensor located on the document tray shown in the figure below automatically detects the document to start scanning. When something covers the sensor on the document tray after you have instructed scanning in the application, the scanner erroneously judges that a document has been loaded, and the document tray starts to move. Make sure that objects other than the document do not cover the sensor on the document tray.



5 Load the document on the document tray.



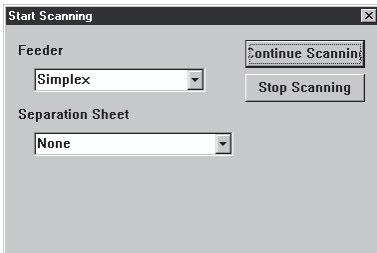
⇒ Scanning starts.

When the scanner runs out of document sheets to scan, the document tray is lowered, and the scanner waits for the next document to be loaded.

6 Load the next document on the document tray.

7 When the scanner runs out of document sheets to scan, press the Stop key on the scanner's operation panel.

⇒ The Start Scanning (paused) dialog box appears.



8 To stop scanning, click [Stop Scanning].

To continue scanning, click [Start Scanning], and return to step 5.

9 Confirm the scanned image. (P.27)

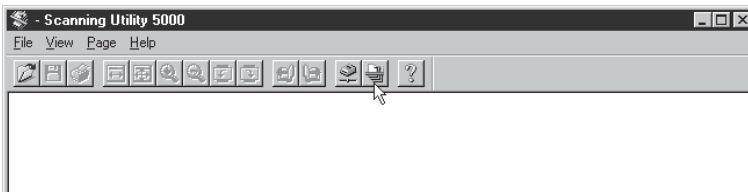
◆ Scanning in the Manual mode

Each page of the document is scanned as you manually insert them into the scanner one sheet at a time.

1 Carry out the operation described in “Selecting the Feed Mode” and select “Manual”.

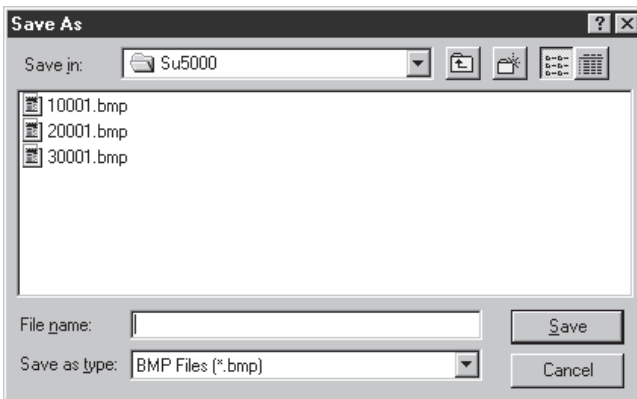
➡ Manual on the operation panel lights, and the document tray rises.

2 Select [File] - [Scan batch to file], or click on the Tool Bar.



➡ The Save As dialog box is displayed.

3 Decide on the name and type (save format) to scan the image under and where to save the file, and click Save.

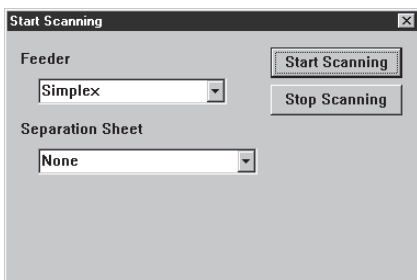


➡ The Start Scanning dialog box appears.

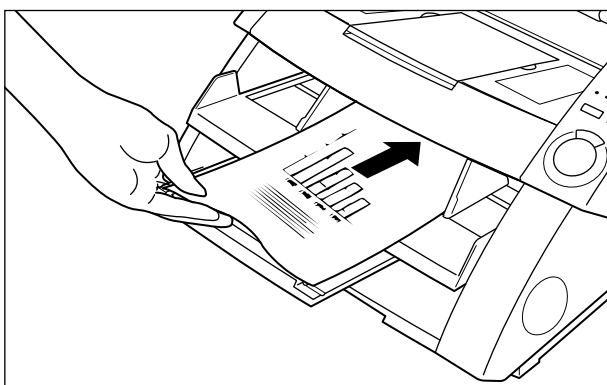


Before you decide on the file name and type (file format) and where it is to be saved, thoroughly read “About Save Formats” (P.28).

4 Click [Start Scanning].



5 Load one sheet on the document tray.

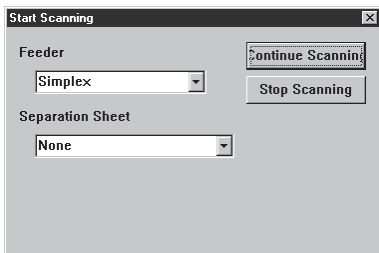


⇒ The document is scanned, and the scanner waits for the next document to be inserted.

6 Continue to insert the document, one page at a time.

7 When scanning ends, press [Stop Scanning].

⇒ The Start Scanning (paused) dialog box appears.



8 To stop scanning, click [Stop Scanning].

To continue scanning, click [Start Scanning], and return to step 5.



MEMO

Even after scanning has ended, the document tray will not be lowered until you cancel the Manual mode. Cancel this mode by pressing the Feeding Option key or by "Selecting the feed mode" (P.35).

9 Confirm the scanned image. (P. 27)

Duplex Scanning

Duplex scanning allows double-sided documents to be scanned.

Duplex scanning is carried out in the same way as regular scanning except that you select duplex when you instruct start of scanning.

1 Make the scan settings and scan the document according to the currently selected feed mode.

Refer to the page indicated for details on each feed mode.

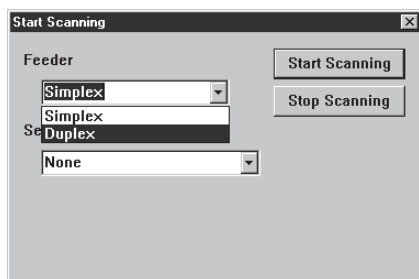
Remote mode: “Scanning two or more pages” (P.23)

Semi-Auto mode: “Scanning in the Semi-Auto mode” (P.37)

Auto mode: “Scanning in the Auto mode” (P.40)

Manual mode: “Scanning in the Manual mode” (P.43)

2 When the Start Scanning dialog box is displayed, click the Feeder tab and select duplex to start scanning.



- Duplex scanning can also be set on the operation panel of the scanner. Press the Simplex/Duplex key on the operation panel to select [Duplex] and carry out the necessary scan operations (step 1 above).
- You can also perform duplex scanning using Function Sheets (Scanner Control Sheets).
If the scanner control sheet is set on the top of the document, both sides of the document are automatically scanned. For more details, see the “Using Function Sheets” (P.48) or refer to the separate DR-5020/5080C Instructions.

Directly Printing Scanned Images

Images of scanned documents can be printed out as they are.
In this case, scanned images are not saved to file.



MEMO

The scanned image is automatically printed out on the printer currently selected at Normally Used Printer.
Set up the printer to be used in [File] - [Printer setting].

ENGLISH

1 Make the scan settings and scan the document according to the currently selected feed mode.

Refer to the page indicated for details on each feed mode.

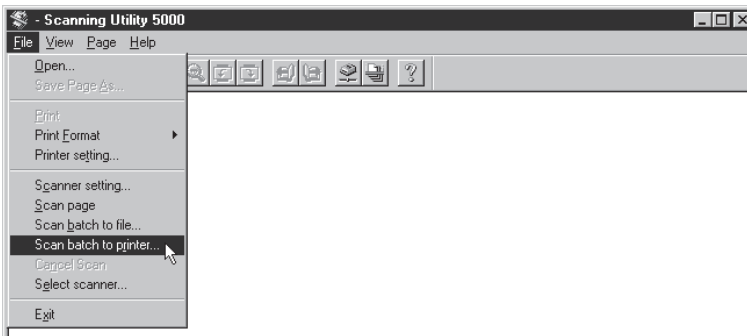
Remote mode: “Scanning two or more pages” (P.23)

Semi-Auto mode: “Scanning in the Semi-Auto mode” (P.37)

Auto mode: “Scanning in the Auto mode” (P.40)

Manual mode: “Scanning in the Manual mode” (P.43)

2 Select [File] - [Scan batch to printer...].



➡ The document is scanned and is printed on the printer currently set at Normally Used Printer.

Using Function Sheets

Function Sheets are packaged with the scanner. These sheets are used to control scanner operation.

There are two types of Function Sheets:

● **Scanner Control Sheets**

These sheets control the mode in which the document is scanned. The following Control Sheets for each of the scan modes are provided.

For Duplex mode

Tells the scanner to scan and store contents of front and back of the page. Insert this Function Sheet before the document to be scanned, and load it together with the document in the scanner.

For Simplex mode

Tells the scanner to scan and store only the front side of the page. Insert this Function Sheet before the document to be scanned, and load it together with the document in the scanner.

For Photo mode

Tells the scanner to turn ON the Photo mode for scanning and storing photographs. Insert this Function Sheet before the photo document, and load it together with the document in the scanner. This sheet is valid only when Scan Mode on the application is set to Black and White. This sheet is ignored if it is loaded with Scan Mode set to Grayscale or Color.

For Text mode

Tells the scanner to turn ON the Text mode for scanning and storing text. Insert this Function Sheet before the text document, and load it together with the document in the scanner. This sheet is valid only when Scan Mode on the application is set to Black and White. This sheet is ignored if it is loaded with Scan Mode set to Grayscale or Color.

● **Job Separation Sheet**

Automatically divides a document into separate files for storing the scanned image for each job. Insert this Function Sheet before the next document, and load it together with the document in the scanner.



MEMO

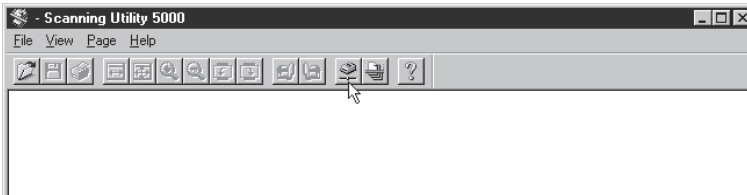
- For more details on the above sheets, see the separate DR-5020/5080C Instructions or the Function Sheet Instructions.
- Though Function Sheets can be mixed in with different sizes of documents and scanned, try as much as possible to use Function Sheets the same size as the document.

The following describes the respective procedures for scanning documents using these Function Sheets.

◆ Scanner Control Sheet

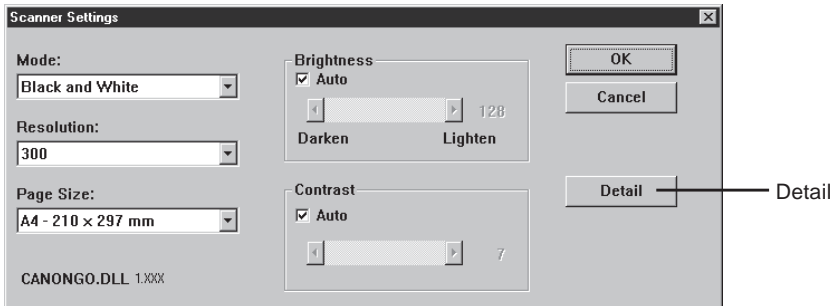
Before you use a Scanner Control Sheet when scanning a document, select the sheet detect setting.

- 1 Either select [File] - [Scanner setting], or click  on the Tool Bar.



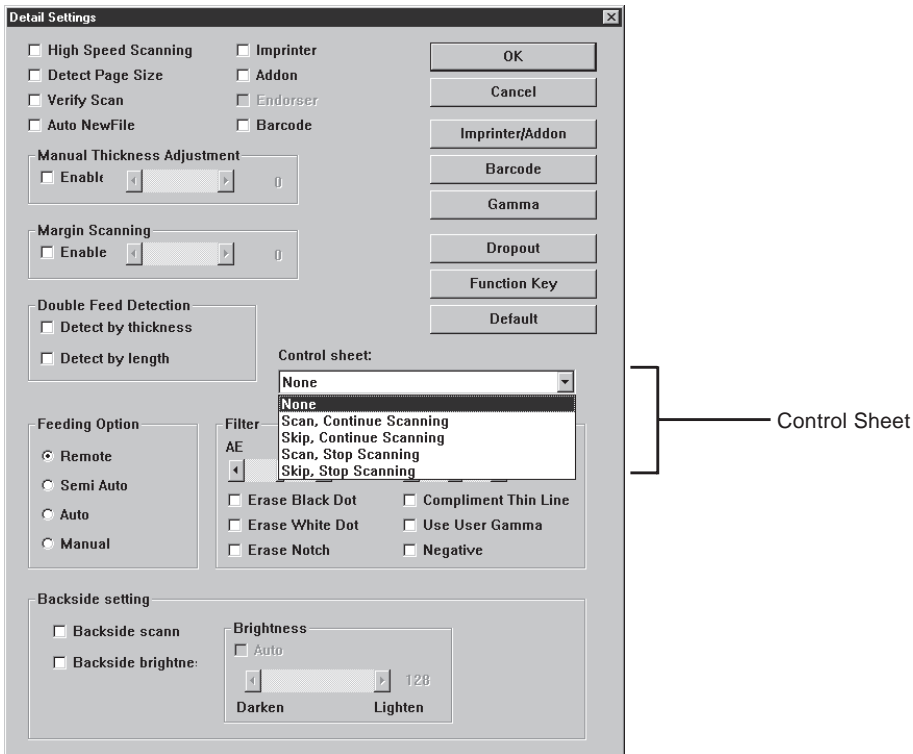
⇒ The Scanner Settings dialog box is displayed.

- 2 In the Scanner Settings dialog box, click [Detail].



⇒ The Detail Settings dialog box is displayed.

3 At Control Sheet, select the detection type.



- **None**
Scanner Control Sheets are not detected.
- **Scan, Continue Scanning**
The scanner Control Sheet is detected and scanned, and then scanning continues.
- **Skip, Continue Scanning**
The scanner Control Sheet is detected and skipped (not scanned), and then scanning continues.
- **Scan, Stop Scanning**
The scanner Control Sheet is detected and scanned, and then scanning stops.
- **Skip, Stop Scanning**
The scanner Control Sheet is detected and skipped (not scanned), and then scanning stops.

4 Click [OK] to return to the Scanner Settings dialog box.

5 Click [OK] to return to the scan operation screen.

6 Scan the document together with the Control Sheet.

◆ Job Separation Sheet

When you use a Job Separation Sheet, scanning is carried out in the same way as regular scanning except that you select the detection setting when you instruct start of scanning.

1 Make the scan settings and scan the document according to the currently selected feed mode.

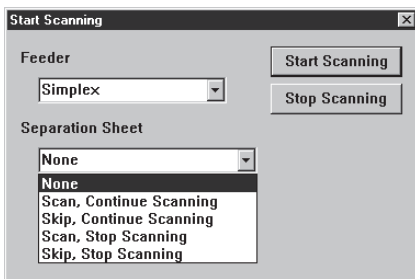
Refer to the page indicated for details on each feed mode.

Remote mode: “Scanning two or more pages” (P.23)

Semi-Auto mode: “Scanning in the Semi-Auto mode” (P.37)

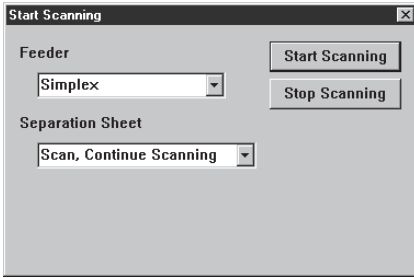
Auto mode: “Scanning in the Auto mode” (P.40)

2 When the Start Scanning dialog box is displayed, click the Separation Sheet tab ▾ and select the detection type.



- **None**
Does not detect the Job Separation Sheet.
- **Scan, Continue Scanning**
Records the details of the Job Separation Sheet as an image and continues scanning.
- **Skip, Continue Scanning**
Continues scanning without recording the details of the Job Separation Sheet as an image.
- **Scan, Stop Scanning**
Records the details of the Job Separation Sheet as an image and stops scanning.
- **Skip, Stop Scanning**
Stops scanning without recording the details of the Job Separation Sheet as an image.

3 Click [Start Scanning].



High-speed Scanning

Scan documents at high speed.

Though the document feed speed is increased, reducing the time it takes to scan a document, image quality is slightly impaired.



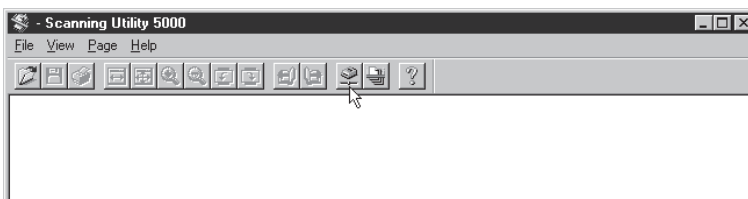
MEMO

High-speed scanning can be executed only when the resolution is set to 200 dpi or 300 dpi.

When 200 dpi is set, images are scanned at 200 x 100 (Horizontal x Vertical) dpi and output as a 200 x 200 dpi image.

When 300 dpi is set, images are scanned at 300 x 150 (Horizontal x Vertical) dpi and output as a 300 x 300 dpi image.

1 Either select [File] - [Scanner setting...], or click on the Tool Bar.



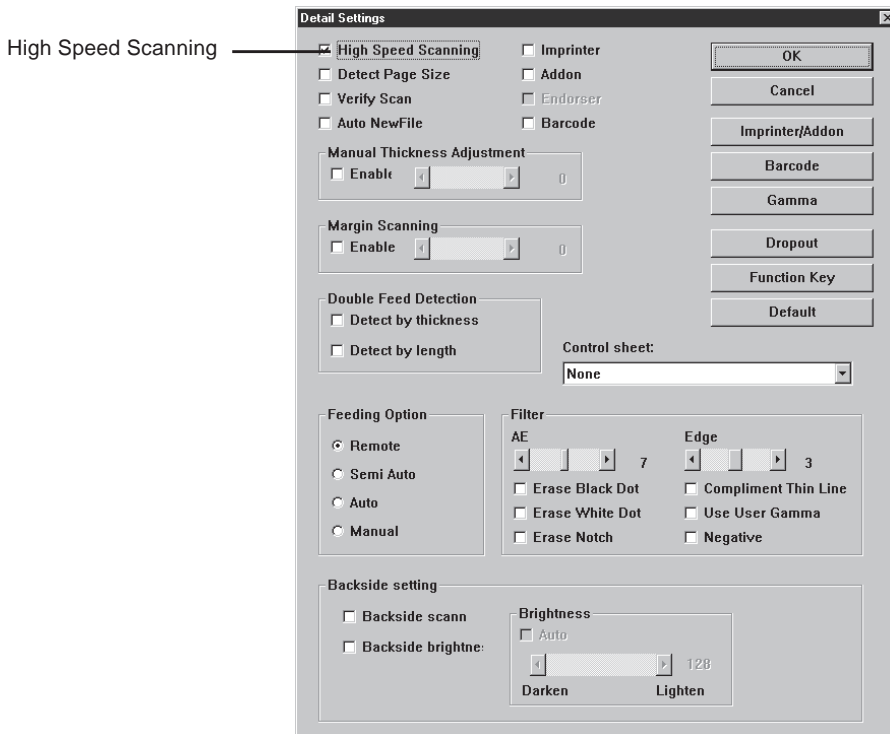
➔ The Scanner Settings dialog box is displayed.

2 In the Scanner Settings dialog box, click [Detail].



⇒ The Detail Settings dialog box is displayed.

3 To select high-speed scanning, click the High Speed Scanning check box.



4 Click [OK] to return to the Scanner Settings dialog box.

5 Click [OK] to return to the scan operation screen.

6 Scan the document according to the currently selected feed mode.

Refer to the page indicated for details on each feed mode.

Remote mode: "Scanning two or more pages" (P.23)

Semi-Auto mode: "Scanning in the Semi-Auto mode" (P.37)

Auto mode: "Scanning in the Auto mode" (P.40)

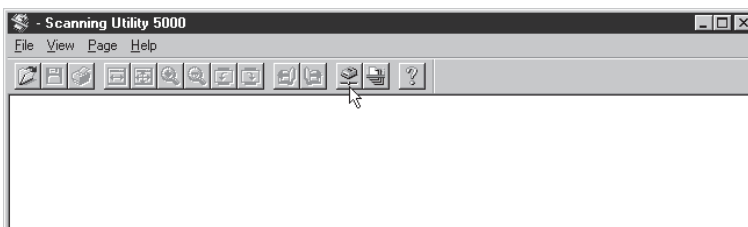
Manual mode: "Scanning in the Manual mode" (P.43)

Verify Scan

The feature allows you to verify the number of document pages entered (or, counted) before the scan against the actual number of scanned pages. If the numbers differ, an error message is displayed.

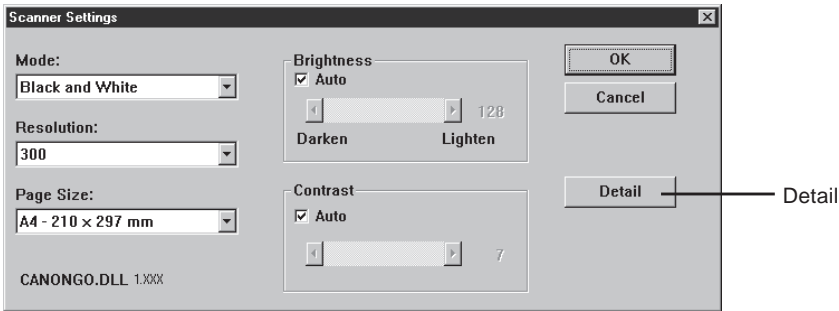
◆ Setting verify scan

1 Either select [File] - [Scanner setting...], or click  on the Tool Bar.



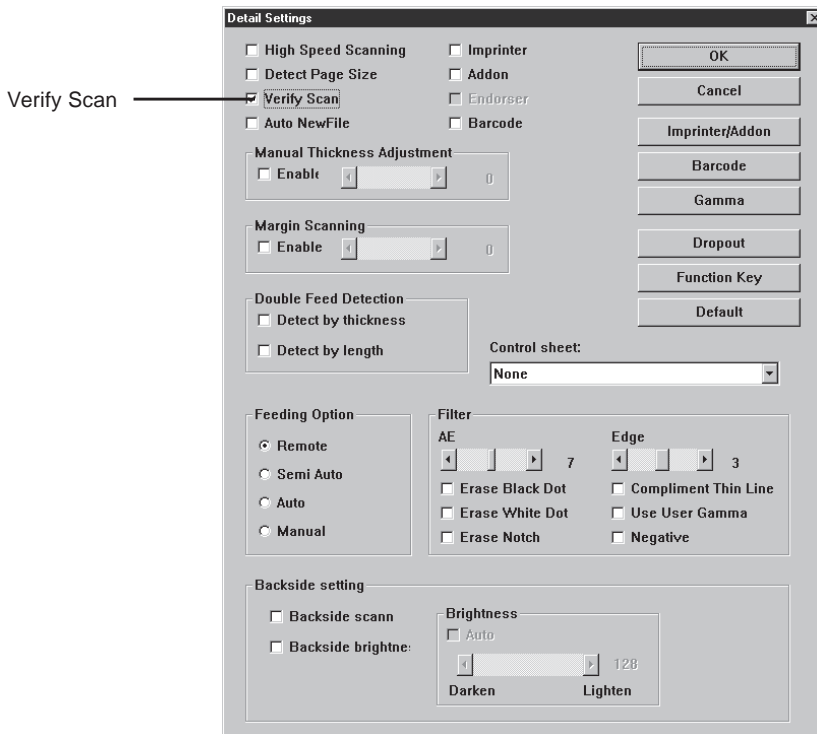
⇒ The Scanner Settings dialog box is displayed.

2 In the Scanner Settings dialog box, click [Detail].



⇒ The Detail Settings dialog box is displayed.

3 To select verify count scanning, click the Verify Scan check box.



4 Click [OK] to return to the Scanner Settings dialog box.

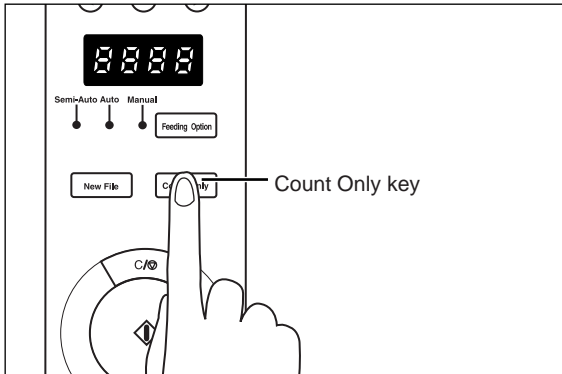
5 Click [OK] to return to the scan operation screen.

◆ Entering the number of pages in a document

If you already know the number of pages in the document

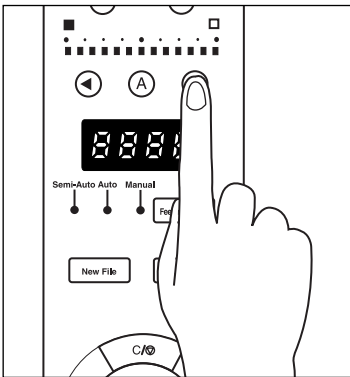
Directly enter the number of pages on the counter display.

- 1 Press the **Count Only** key on the scanner's operation panel.



➞ The Count Only key and Semi-Auto lamp light, and the Start key turns green.

- 2 Press the ◀ and ▶ buttons on the operation panel of the scanner to enter the number of pages.



➞ The number appears on the counter display.



MEMO

Pressing the ▶ button increments the number, and pressing the ◀ button decrements the number.

To quickly increment or decrement the number, hold down the button.

3 When you have set the number of pages in the document, press the Count Only key to cancel the Count Only mode.

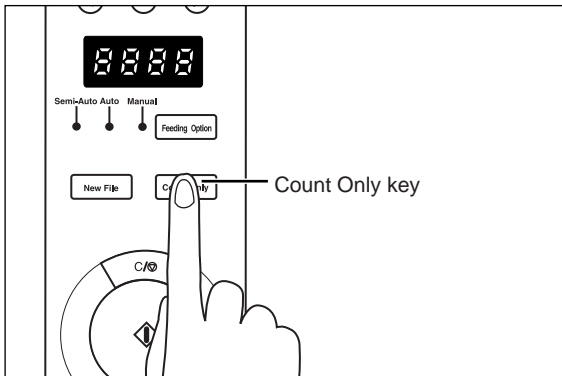


To reset the counter display, hold down the Stop key for at least two seconds.

If you don't know the number of pages in the document

Use the scanner's count function to count the number of pages.

1 Press the Count Only key on the scanner's operation panel.



➔ The Count Only key and Semi-Auto lamp light, and the Start key turns green.

2 Load the document on the document tray and press the Start key.

➔ The number of pages in the document is counted, and the document page count appears on the counter display.

3 When you have finished counting the number of pages in the document, press the Count Only key to cancel the Count Only mode.



To reset the counter display, hold down the Stop key for at least two seconds.

◆ Scanning documents

If the number of pages that you entered (or, counted) differs from the actually scanned number of pages, an error message appears on the counter displayed after scanning is finished.

1 Scan the document according to the currently selected feed mode.

Refer to the page indicated for details on each feed mode.

Remote mode: “Scanning two or more pages” (P.23)

Semi-Auto mode: “Scanning in the Semi-Auto mode” (P.37)

Auto mode: “Scanning in the Auto mode” (P.40)

Manual mode: “Scanning in the Manual mode” (P.43)

2 Load the document and start scanning.

- **If the actual number of scanned pages is more than the number of pages displayed on the counter display:**

The document is scanned and scanning stops at the number of pages displayed on the counter display.

The counter display changes to the “U01” error display, and the “Verify Count Error” error message is displayed on the computer screen.

Go back and start counting the number of pages in the document again.



“U01” is also displayed together with an error message when a verify scan is made without displaying the number of pages in the document.

- **If the actual number of scanned pages is less than the number of pages displayed on the counter display:**

The counter display changes to “U02” to indicate a verify count error. Go back and start counting the number of pages in the document again.

A probable cause is that double-feed is occurring. Check to see if all pages in the document have been scanned or not.



MEMO

To reset the error display, press the Stop key.

2.4 Setting Scan Conditions

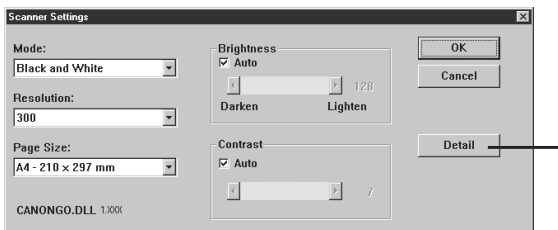
Set the conditions that are applied when the document is scanned. Select the dialog box matched to the function, and make the desired setting. For details on the parameters in each of these dialog boxes, see the reference page indicated for the dialog box.

1 Either select [File] - [Scanner setting...], or click  on the tool bar.

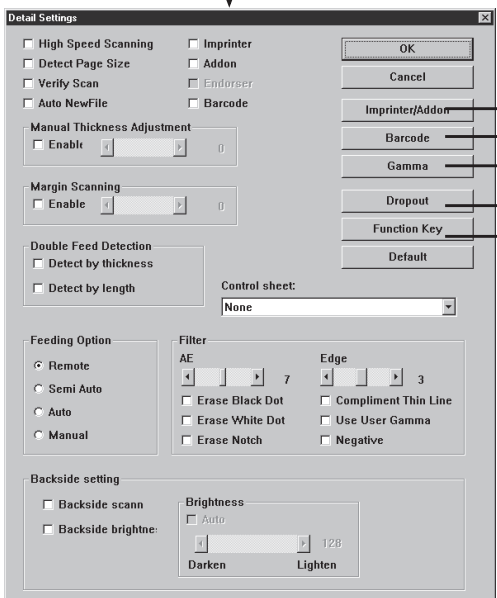


➔ The Scanner Settings dialog box appears.

2 Display the desired setting screen, and make the required settings.



Scanner Settings dialog box (→ P.61)

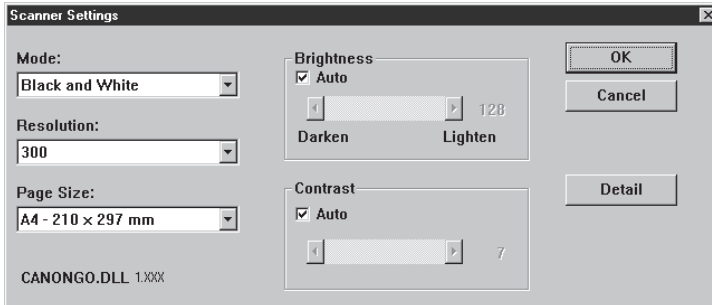


- Imprinter/Addon (→ P.69)
- Barcode (→ P.74)
- Gamma (→ P.79)
- Dropout (→ P.82)
- Function Key (→ P.83)

Detail Settings dialog box (→ P.63)

Basic Settings

Set the basic conditions for scanning documents.
The basic settings are set in the Scanner Settings dialog box.



<Scanner Settings>

Item	Description
Mode	<p>Sets how the image is to be scanned. Only [Black and White] [Black and White ED] is available for the DR-5020.</p> <p>The available modes are sometimes limited depending on the size of the paper. For details, see “DR-5020/5080C Scan Mode Tables” (P.88) in the DR-5020/5080C Instructions.</p> <p>[Black and White] This setting scans the image completely in black and white with no shade of gray.</p> <p>[Black and White-ED] This setting scans the image completely in black and white. Halftone gray areas are simulated and reproduced using error diffusion.</p> <p>[Grayscale-4 (16, 256) level] Select this mode when scanning photos and half-tone documents in gray scale. The larger the level value, the more the size of the file increases.</p> <p>[Color-3 (6, 12, 24 bit)] Select this mode when scanning photos and half-tone documents in color. The larger the bit value, the more the size of the file increases.</p>
Resolution	<p>Allows you to set the resolution, the number of dots per inch. You have 13 choices: 100, 200, 210, 220, 230, 240, 250, 260, 270, 280, 290, 300 and 400 dpi.</p> <p>If you select 200 or 300, you can also select High Speed Scanning (P.63) in the Detail Settings dialog box.</p> <p>The available modes are sometimes limited depending on the size of the paper. For details, see “DR-5020/5080C Scan Mode Tables” (P.88) in the separate DR-5020/5080C Instructions.</p>

Page Size	<p>Allows you to select the paper size of the document to be scanned. Available choices are as follows:</p> <p>LETTER - 8.5 x 11 in. LEGAL - 8.5 x 14 in. A3 - 297 x 420 mm A4 - 210 x 297 mm A4-R - 297 x 210 mm A5 - 148 x 210 mm A6 - 105 x 148 mm B4 (ISO) - 250 x 353 mm B4 (JIS) - 257 x 364 mm B5 (ISO) - 176 x 250 mm B5 (JIS) - 182 x 257 mm Scanner's maximum (295 x 432 mm)</p> <p>If a document larger than the specified size is scanned, the surrounding edges of the document will be clipped. Alternately, if a document smaller than the specified size is scanned, a black margin will be formed on the surrounding edges of the document.</p> <p>If you have selected Detect Page Size (P.63) in the Detail Settings dialog box, this setting is ignored.</p>
Brightness	<p>Automatically or manually sets the brightness of the image. When you manually set the brightness, you can set within the range 1 to 255.</p>
Contrast	<p>Automatically or manually sets the contrast. When you manually set the contrast, you can set within the range 1 to 13. A larger value increases the contrast, while a smaller value decreases the contrast.</p>



MEMO

- The contrast setting is disabled when [Mode] is set to [Black and White].
- On DR-5020, the [Contrast] checkbox is gray when [Mode] is set to [Black and White].

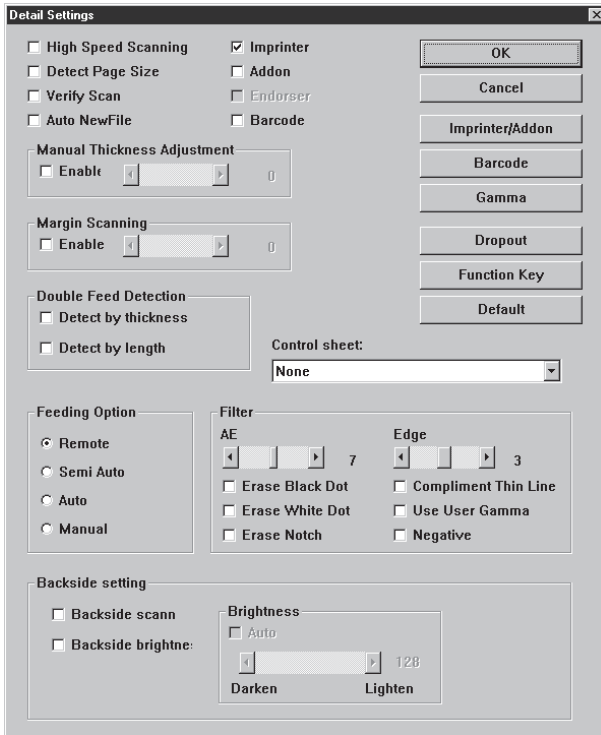
<Buttons>

Item	Description
OK	After you are finished making settings, click [OK] to enable them and close the dialog box.
Cancel	Cancels any settings you have changed and closes the dialog box.
Detail	Opens the Detail Settings dialog box (P.63) so you can set special features like filter, scan speed, page size detection, and Control Sheet detection.

Detailed Settings

Set detailed scan conditions.

These items are set in the Detail Settings dialog box.



Item	Description
High Speed Scanning	<p>This setting is available when the resolution is set to 200 or 300 dpi.</p> <p>When 200 dpi is set, images are scanned at 200 x 100 dpi (Horizontal x Vertical) and output as a 200 x 200 dpi image. When 300 dpi is set, images are scanned at 300 x 150 dpi (Horizontal x Vertical) and output as a 300 x 300 dpi image. Though scanning is carried out more quickly in either case, note that the quality of the image scanned at high speed diminishes slightly.</p> <p>For details on high speed scanning, see P.52.</p>
Detect Page Size	<p>The DR-5020/5080C sets the scanning area according to the detected width and length of the document and scans the entire page.</p> <p>When selected, Page Size (P.62) in the Scanner Settings dialog box is disabled.</p>

Verify Scan	Verify the number of pages counted before the document is scanned against the actual number of scanned pages. If the numbers differ, an error is displayed. For details on the verify scan procedure, see P.54.
Auto NewFile	This setting generates a page break signal each time that a continuous scan is stopped.
Imprinter	Enables the imprinter function for printing any specified characters on scanned documents. The optional imprinter unit is required to use this function.
Addon	Enables the addon function for entering any specified characters on the scanned image.
Endorser	Enables use of the endorser. The optional endorser is required to use this function.
Barcode	Enables the bar code function for reading bar codes in documents. The optional bar code decoder is required to use this function.
Manual Thickness Adjustment	Manually sets the paper thickness when automatic paper thickness adjustment is not used. Check the Enable check box and use the ◀ and ▶ buttons to adjust the thickness. Specify the thickness within the range 1 (thinnest) to 13 (thickest). Use this function to manually adjust the paper thickness when scanning coated documents and documents whose paper thickness cannot be adjusted automatically, or when double feed occurs frequently in the automatic paper thickness adjustment mode. This setting can also be made on the operation panel of the scanner. For details, see the separate DR-5020/5080C Instructions.

Margin Scanning	<p>Adjusts the margins (top, bottom, left and right) of the scanning area.</p> <p>To adjust the margins, click Enable and use the ◀ and ▶ buttons.</p> <p>Specify within the range -10 (reduces scanning area by 10 mm) to +10 (enlarges scanning area by 10 mm).</p> <p>For example, if you want to slightly enlarge the scanning area so that document edges are not clipped, adjust in the + direction. Or, if you want to slightly reduce the scanning area so that a black frame is not formed around the scanned image, adjust in the - direction.</p>
Double Feed Detection	<p>Select the method used to detect double feed. "Double feed" is detected when two or more sheets of the document are fed together or when part of one sheet overlaps another sheet when the sheets in the document are scanned continuously.</p> <p>[Detect by thickness] Detects double feed by the thickness of the paper. When a document thicker than the first sheet of the document(*) is fed, the scanner judges this to be a double feed and displays an error.</p> <p>[Detect by length] Detects double feed by the length of the paper. When a document longer than the first sheet of the document(*) is fed, the scanner judges this to be a double feed and displays an error.</p> <p>* Double feed detection is carried out taking the thickness and length of the first sheet of the document as the standard sheet. When the first sheet of the document is fed, the scanner memorizes the thickness and length of the document.</p>

Control sheet	<p>Selects how the scanner detects scanner Control Sheets (Function Sheets) (P.48).</p> <p>-None Scanner Control Sheets are not detected.</p> <p>-Scan, Continue scanning The scanner Control Sheet is detected and scanned, and then scanning continues.</p> <p>-Skip, Continue scanning The scanner Control Sheet is detected and skipped (not scanned), and then scanning continues.</p> <p>-Scan, Stop scanning The scanner Control Sheet is detected and scanned, and then scanning stops.</p> <p>-Skip, Stop scanning The scanner Control Sheet is detected and skipped (not scanned), and then scanning stops.</p> <p>For details on how to scan with Control Sheets, see “Function Sheets” in the separate DR-5020/5080C Instructions.</p>
Feeding Option	<p>Selects the feed method.</p> <p>Remote: The document starts to be fed (scanned) when you load the document and instruct scanning in the application.</p> <p>Semi Auto: The document is fed (scanned) when scanning is instructed in the application and when you load the document and press the Start key.</p> <p>Auto: The document is fed (scanned) automatically when you load the document.</p> <p>Manual: The document is fed manually one page at a time after scanning is instructed in the application. Use this when scanning particularly thick or thin pages.</p> <p>This item can be also set on the scanner’s operation panel. For details, refer to the separate DR-5020/5080C Instructions.</p>
Backside setting	<p>Set this item to scan the back side of documents.</p> <p>[Backside scanning] Scans the back side of the document (documents are loaded face down on the scanner).</p> <p>[Backside brightness] Automatically or manually sets the brightness of the image. When you manually set the brightness, you can set within the range 1 to 255.</p>







MEMO

- When the [Backside scanning] checkbox is marked, the Feeder setting when the [Start Scanning] dialog box is opened becomes [Simplex].
- When scanning is performed with the [Backside scanning] checkbox marked and Feeder setting set to [Duplex], the Backside scanning checkbox becomes gray when the [Detailed Settings] dialog box is opened.
- A gray [Backside scanning] checkbox can be restored to normal by clicking the checkbox.

<Filter settings>

Set the image processing filters.

Item	Description
AE	Specify the contrast level within the range 1 to 13 by clicking the  and  buttons. Default is 7.
Edge Emphasis	Sets the level for emphasizing the contour of lettering, and softening the roughness of images such as photos. This setting can be set in 5 steps using the  and  buttons. Default is 3.
Erase Black dot	Automatically erases isolated black dots (single dots) on white backgrounds.
Erase White dot	Automatically erases isolated white dots (single dots) on black backgrounds.
Erase Notch	Automatically erases parts (notches) protruding outside contours.
Compliment Thin Line	Automatically joins faint or broken lines that occur when scanning documents containing thin lines.
Use User Gamma	Check this item to actually use the gamma data read by the Gamma button.
Negative	Outputs a negative scanned image.



MEMO

- [AE] is enabled when [Mode] is set to [Black and White].
- [Edge Emphasis] is enabled in all modes.
- [Erase Black Dots], [Erase White Dots], [Erase Notch] and [Compliment Thin Line] are enabled when [Mode] is set to [Black and White], [Black and White ED] or [Color-3 bit].

<Buttons>

Item	Description
OK	Enables the settings and closes the dialog box.
Cancel	Cancels any settings you have changed, and closes the dialog box.
Imprinter/ Addon	Opens the Imprinter/Addon Settings dialog box (P.69). Sets the imprinter function or the addon function. The imprinter function prints specific characters on the scanned document when the optional imprinter unit is installed. The addon function appends scanned images with specified characters.
Barcode	Opens the Barcode Settings dialog box (P.74). Sets parameters relating to scanning of bar codes when the optional bar code decoder is installed.
Gamma	Opens the Gamma Settings dialog box (P.79). Loads and saves to file gamma data for expressing colors and tones. Loaded gamma data is enabled when the Use User Gamma check box is checked.
Dropout	Opens the Dropout Settings dialog box (P.82). Disables scanning of specific colors (drops out) in documents. This feature is available only for DR-5080C.
Function Key	Opens the Function Key Settings dialog box (P.83). Sets registration of specific functions to function keys on the scanner.
Default	Click this button to return all settings to their defaults.



MEMO

Dropout is valid when the scan mode is set to Black and White, Black and White ED or Grayscale.

Imprinter/Addon Settings

When the optional imprinter is installed, any characters and counters can be printed on the scanned document. When the addon function is used, any characters or counters can be added to the scanned image.

The character strings to be printed or added by the addon function and their printing conditions are set in the Imprinter/Addon Settings dialog box.

The settings made in this dialog box are applied to both the imprinter and addon functions. So, the character strings that are printed by the imprinter will be the same as the character strings that are added by the addon function.



MEMO

- The addon function can be used even if the imprinter is not installed.
- If you set the addon function and scan the document in the Duplex mode, characters will be printed on the image on the front side (side facing up when the document is fed) of the document.

Item	Description
Text	<p>Enter the details to be printed (added on). You can enter up to 32(*) of the following characters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Numbers (0 to 9) • Alphabet characters (upper-case, lower-case) • Space (blank) • The following symbols: ! " # \$ % & ' () * + - . / : ; < = > ? @ [\] ^ _ { } ~ ` <p>The above characters are printed (added on) as entered. In addition to these characters, counters, date, time and arrows can be specified as special characters.</p>

<Counter>

To print (add on) a counter, specify a number enclosed by brackets [].

The number enclosed by brackets [] becomes the counter start number, and the number of entered digits becomes the number of digits in the counter.

To set two counters, enter two counters delimited by a “.” (period) in the format “Counter 1.Counter 2”. (See the entry example below.)

The timing that the counter is incremented or decremented is set at “Counter 1/Counter 2 Setting” described later. (When only Counter 1 is set, set the timing in “Counter 1 Setting”.)

[Input]	[Print/Addon Result]
CANON[10001.00001]	CANON 10001 00001

<Time>

To print (add on) the time that the document was scanned, enter “\TIME”.

The time in the 24-hour clock is printed (added on) as eight digits as follows.

(Example: 16:28:30)

[Input]	[Print/Addon Result]
\TIME	16:28:30

<Date>

To print (add on) the date that the document was scanned, enter one of “\MDY”, “\DMY” or “\YMD” as a combination of Y (year), M (month) or D (day).


The date in the Western calendar is printed (added on) as ten digits as follows.

The year, month and date are delimited by a slash “/”.

(Example: 2001/3/4 (March 4, 2001))

[Input]	[Print/Addon Result]
\YMD	2001/03/04

	<p><Arrow> To print (add on) an arrow, enter as follows:</p> <table> <tr> <td>[Input]</td> <td>[Print/Addon Result]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>\u</td> <td>↑</td> </tr> <tr> <td>\d</td> <td>↓</td> </tr> <tr> <td>\l</td> <td>←</td> </tr> <tr> <td>\r</td> <td>→</td> </tr> </table> <p>(*) To be more precise, up to 32 characters can be printed (added on). When a counter, date or time is entered, the number of characters that are actually printed (added on) exceeds 32 even if the number of entered characters is within 32 characters. If this happens, an error message is displayed. In the example below, the print/addon result is 32 characters even though 25 characters have been entered.</p> <table> <tr> <td>[Input]</td> <td>[Print/Addon Result]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CANON \YMD \TIME [000001]</td> <td>CANON 2001/03/04 16:28:30 000001</td> </tr> </table>	[Input]	[Print/Addon Result]	\u	↑	\d	↓	\l	←	\r	→	[Input]	[Print/Addon Result]	CANON \YMD \TIME [000001]	CANON 2001/03/04 16:28:30 000001
[Input]	[Print/Addon Result]														
\u	↑														
\d	↓														
\l	←														
\r	→														
[Input]	[Print/Addon Result]														
CANON \YMD \TIME [000001]	CANON 2001/03/04 16:28:30 000001														
Horizontal Offset (mm)	Specify the position on the scanned image, distance in mm from the left edge of the document feed inlet from the feed direction, to add on characters and counters when using the addon feature.														
Vertical Offset (mm)	Specify the position to print or add on characters as a distance in mm from the top edge of the document.														
Pages	Selects which page to print or add on. [Page] Prints or adds on every page. [Separator] Prints or adds on the next page indicated by the Job Separation Sheet or New File key.														

<p>Addon Type</p>	<p>Selects how the letters are to be added on the data.</p> <p>[Black on White] Prints (adds on) black letters on a white background.</p> <p>DR-5020/5080C</p> <p>[White on Black] Prints (adds on) white letters on a black background.</p> <p>DR-5020/5080C</p> <p>[Black on Image] Prints (adds on) black letters on the image.</p> 
<p>Orientation</p>	<p>Selects rotation of fonts to be printed or added on.</p> <p>[None] (default) Fonts are not rotated.</p> <p>[Landscape] 90 degree rotation clockwise</p> <p>[180 Degrees] 180 degree rotation</p> <p>[270 Degrees] 270 degree rotation clockwise</p>
<p>Small Font</p>	<p>Prints (adds on) characters using a small (8 x 7 dots) font. (Usual size is 12 x 12 dots.) When the addon function is used, the size of the characters as the image changes according to the resolution at which the document is scanned.</p> <p>Usual size <i>CANON canon</i></p> <p>Small font <i>CANON canon</i></p>
<p>Right to Left</p>	<p>Prints (adds on) characters from the right to the left.</p>

<First and Second Counter Settings>

Two counters can be set in a text string. Set the details of the counter when a counter has been set.

Item	Description
Increment Trigger	Selects the timing for incrementing the counter from the following: [Job Separator] When a Job Separation Sheet is inserted, or the save destination file is changed [Page] When the page changes [Never] None
Increment	Sets the counter increment.
Reset Triger	Selects the timing for resetting the counter from the following: [Job Separator] When a Job Separation Sheet is inserted [Page] When the page changes [Never] None (default)
Start Value	Sets the counter start value (the first value after resetting). Default is 0.

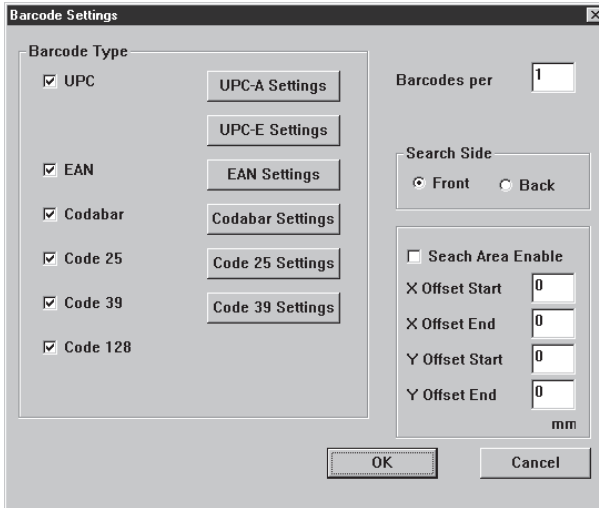
<Buttons>

Item	Description
OK	Enables the settings and closes the dialog box.
Cancel	Cancel any settings you have changed and closes the dialog box.

Bar Code Decoder Settings

Perform the settings for scanning bar codes. These settings are enabled only when the optional bar code decoder is installed.

These items are set in the Barcode Settings dialog box.



MEMO

- When two or more bar code types are aligned horizontally, a recognition error may occur. Select only one type of bar code in the bar code area setting.
- Bar codes with addon codes cannot be detected at the same time as bar codes without addon codes. When scanning originals containing both bar codes with addon codes and bar codes without addon codes, be sure to set the area to detect in the bar code area setting before you start scanning.
- When 400 dpi and duplex scanning is set, only bar codes within the A4 width can be detected.
- When scanning originals containing two or more bar codes and you want to detect only a specific type of bar code, set the area to detect in the bar code area setting. When this area is set in the scan area setting, bar codes outside of the scan area are also detected.
- When the bar code type is unknown, mark all bar code check boxes before scanning the original so that all bar code types are automatically detected and the checksum is not scanned.
- When a bar code is scanned, the file "Barcode.log" is automatically created in the \Scanning Utility 5000 folder.

<Barcode Type>

Set the type of bar codes to be read by the bar code decoder.

Item	Description
UPC	Click here to read UPC bar codes.
EAN	Click here to read EAN bar codes.
Codabar	Click here to read Codabar bar codes.
Code 25	Click here to read Code 25 bar codes.
Code 39	Click here to read Code 39 bar codes.
Code 128	Click here to read Code 128 bar codes.

<Scan Settings>

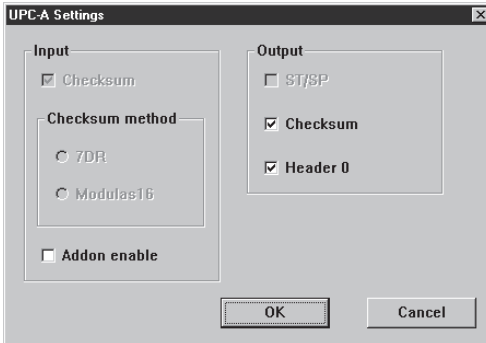
Item	Description
Barcodes per	Set the number of bar codes to be read per page (1 to 4).
Search Side	Select the side to be read (Front or Back).
Area	Sets the area in which the bar code is to be read. Check the Search Area Enable check box and input the values.

<Buttons>

Item	Description
OK	Enables the settings and closes the dialog box.
Cancel	Cancel any settings you have changed and closes the dialog box.

◆ UPC-A bar code settings

Set the details of UPC-A bar codes.



[Input] - [Addon enable]

Click here to read addon codes. (The setting made here is also reflected in the UPC-E bar code.)

[Output] - [Checksum]

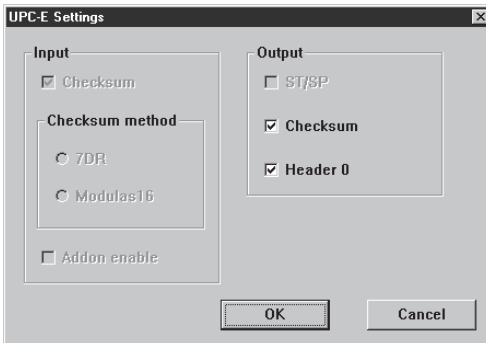
Click here to enable output of the checksum code.

[Output] - [Header 0]

Click here to enable output of the header on UPC codes.

◆ UPC-E bar code settings

Set the details of UPC-E bar codes.



[Output] - [Checksum]

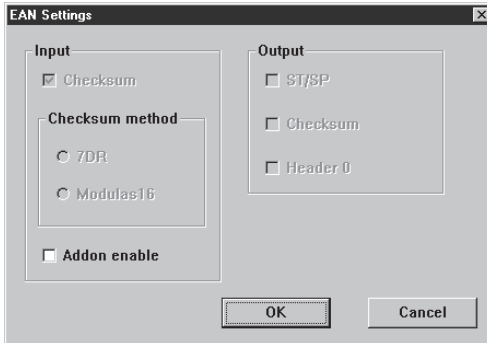
Click here to enable output of the checksum code.

[Output] - [Header 0]

Click here to enable output of the header on UPC codes.

◆ EAN bar code settings

Set the details of EAN bar codes.

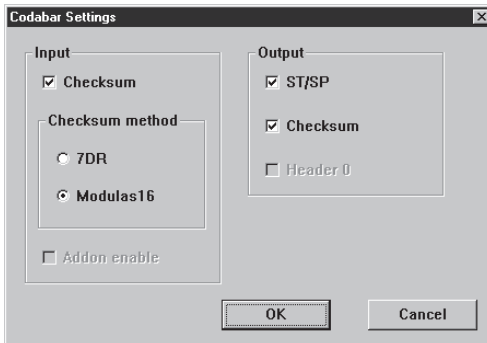


[Input] - [Addon enable]

Click here to read addon codes.

◆ Codabar bar code settings

Set the details of Codabar bar codes.



[Input] - [Checksum]

Click here to read checksum codes.

[Input] - [7DR]

Click here when the checksum calculated by Codabar reads a 7DR bar code.

[Input] - [Modulus16]

Click here when the checksum calculated by Codabar reads a Modulus16 bar code.

[Output] - [ST/SP]

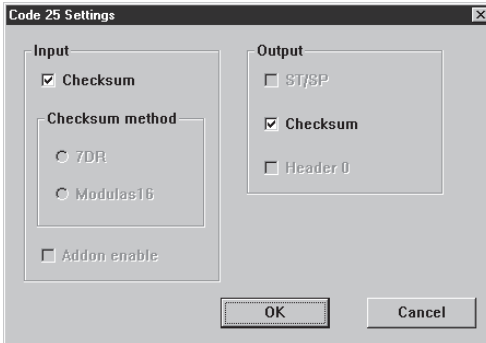
Click here to enable output of start/stop codes.

[Output] - [Checksum]

When [Input] - [Checksum] is checked, you can set whether or not to output the checksum code.

◆ Code 25 bar code settings

Set the details Code 25 bar codes.



[Input] - [Checksum]

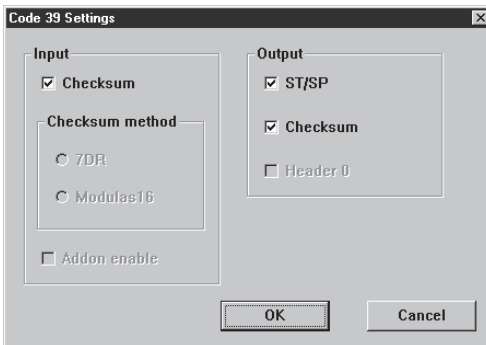
Click here to read checksum codes.

[Output] - [Checksum]

When [Input] - [Checksum] is checked, you can set whether or not to output the checksum code.

◆ Code 39 bar code settings

Set the details of Code 39 bar codes.



[Input] - [Checksum]

Click here to read checksum codes.

[Output] - [ST/SP]

Click here to enable output of start/stop codes.

[Output] - [Checksum]

When [Input] - [Checksum] is checked, you can set whether or not to output the checksum code.

Setting the Gamma Curve

Set the gamma curve.



MEMO

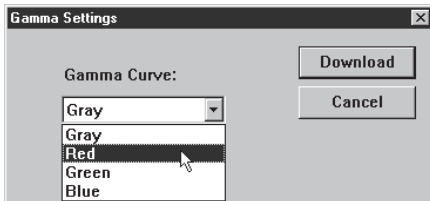
The “gamma curve setting” uses gamma curve data prepared by the user to adjust the output values (output to the computer) with respect to the input values for 256 levels of brightness in the scanned image.

Individual gamma curves are set for gray (black and white), red, green and blue.

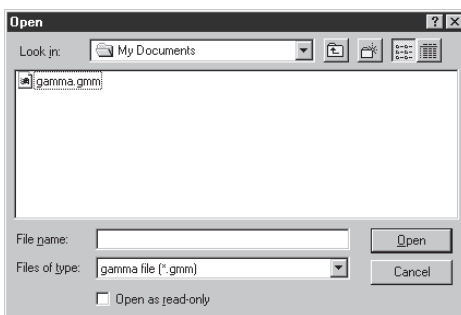
The gamma curve set here will not be enabled unless you check [Use User Gamma] in the filter settings (P.67).

ENGLISH

- 1 Prepare gamma curve data matched to the gamma curve. (See “Preparing Gamma Curve Data” on P.80.)
- 2 Select the color for which the gamma curve is to be set.



- 3 Press [Download], and select the prepared gamma curve data.



4 Click [Open]. This sets the gamma curve and returns the display to the Detail Settings dialog box.

5 To set the gamma curve for other colors, repeat steps 1 to 4.

◆ Preparing Gamma Curve Data

Gamma curve data is stored in a text file (*.gmm) comprising 258 lines. This file describes the output values for each of the 256 levels of input values.

Be sure to enter a comment in the 1st line of this file, and “256” in the 2nd line of this file. The 3rd line onwards are for entering each output value for each input value. Set “0”, “1”, “2” and so forth from the 3rd line onwards, and “255” for the input value on the 258th line.

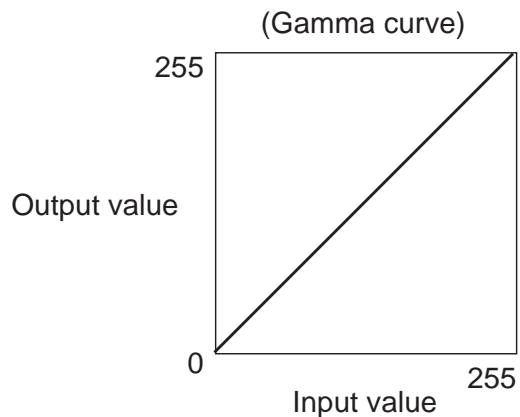
Small values entered for the gamma data curve result in the image being reproduced dark, and large values result in the image being reproduced light.

◆ Example

Normally, rightward-inclining gamma curves are prepared. However, a leftward-inclining gamma curve can be prepared by inverting all output values. As a result, the output image also will be inverted.

Gamma curve data

1st line: gamma curve
 2nd line: 256
 3rd line: 0
 4th line: 1
 5th line: 2
 |
 253th line: 250
 254th line: 251
 255th line: 252
 256th line: 253
 257th line: 254
 258th line: 255



Gamma curve data (inverted)

1st line: Inverted linear gamma curve

2nd line: 256

3rd line: 255

4th line: 254

5th line: 253

|

253th line: 5

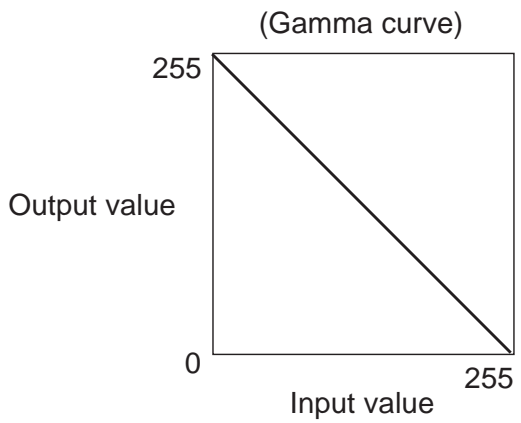
254th line: 4

255th line: 3

256th line: 2

257th line: 1

258th line: 0



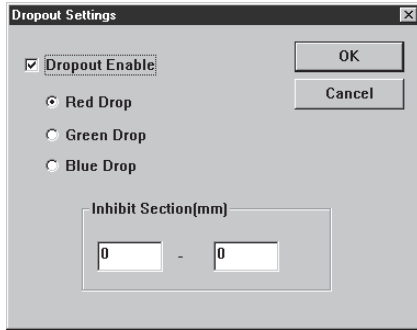
MEMO

Information on the gamma curve data is held internally by the scanner, and is not cleared even if the scanner power is turned OFF. The gamma curve information is not changed until other gamma curve data is downloaded.

Dropout Color Settings (supported on DR-5080C only)

Disables scanning of specific colors (drops out) red, blue or green areas in documents.

Set up dropout in the Dropout Settings dialog box.



Item	Description
Dropout Enable (Specify color)	Click here to enable the dropout function. [Red Drop] Disables scanning of red parts of the document. [Green Drop] Disables scanning of green parts of the document. [Blue Drop] Disables scanning of blue parts of the document.
Inhibit Section (mm)	You can specify the range in which dropout is inhibited. Specify the start position on the left side and the end position on the right side. Specify each of these positions as a distance in mm from the top edge of the paper.

<Buttons>

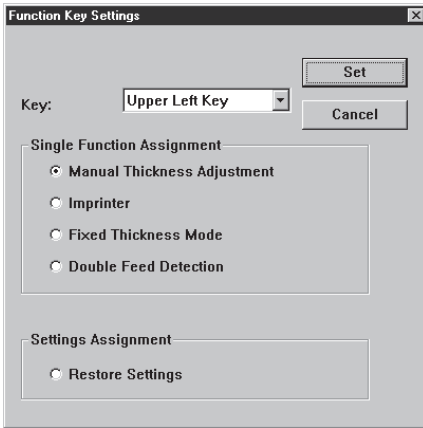
Item	Description
OK	Enables the settings and closes the dialog box.
Cancel	Cancels any settings you have changed and closes the dialog box.

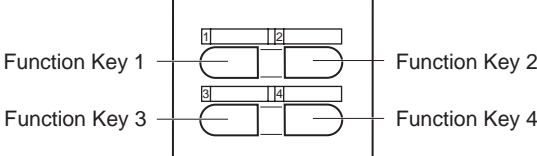


- Dropout is valid when the [scan mode] is set to [Black and White], [Black and White ED] or [Grayscale].
- Lines sometimes appear at the boundary of the dropout inhibit section on the scanned image when the inhibit section is set.

Function Key Settings

Specific functions can be memorized to the function keys on the scanner. Function key settings are made in the Function Key assign dialog box.



Item	Description
Key No.	Select from the pull-down menu the key to register a function to. 
Assign Single Function	You can assign the following four functions to the function keys. For details of these functions and their defaults, refer to the separate DR-5020/5080C Instructions "Function Key Settings." (P.60) [Manual Thickness Adjustment] Adjusts the paper thickness manually. [Imprinter] Selects whether or not to use the imprinter when the optional imprinter is installed. [Fixed Thickness Mode] Sets the paper thickness to a fixed value. [Double Feed Detection] Automatically detects double feed. "Double feed" is detected when two or more sheets of the document are fed together or when part of one sheet overlaps another sheet.
Settings Assignment	You can also register the scanner settings in addition to the Assign Single Function described above. [Restore Settings] Selecting this function registers to the function keys the scanner settings that are set when the [Set] button is clicked.

<Buttons>

Item	Description
Set	Enables the settings and closes the dialog box.
Cancel	Cancels any settings you have changed and closes the dialog box.

Chapter 3

Troubleshooting

This chapter describes the causes of trouble that may occur and how to remedy the trouble.

3.1 When An Error Message is Displayed	86
3.2 When The Scanned Image is Not Normal	88



3.1

When An Error Message is Displayed

Error messages may be displayed if the document cannot be scanned properly. Check the type of error according to the error code and remedy the error as follows.

Message	JAM occurred. Remove the paper.
Remedy	Paper jam occurred on scanner. Remove jammed paper. For more details, see the separate DR-5020/5080C Instructions.

Message	Cover is opened. Close the cover.
Remedy	The scanner cover (upper unit) is open. Close the cover.

Message	Scanner is not found. Check the cable.
Remedy 1	The computer cannot recognize the scanner. Make sure that the computer and scanner are correctly connected by a cable.
Remedy 2	This message may be displayed with the computer recognizing the scanner. In this case, a probable cause is that the SCSI card not matched to the computer is installed. This error message is sometimes no longer output by turning asynchronous transfer in the scanner's user mode OFF. If this does not rectify the problem, contact the computer or SCSI card manufacturer.

Message	Parameter is not valid. Change the parameters.
Remedy	An invalid value was set in the scan conditions in the Scanner Settings dialog box. Change the setting to a valid value.

Message	Scanner reset detected. Try again.
Remedy	Follow the on-screen message to turn the power ON and OFF again.

Message	No page was found. Set the paper and try again.
Remedy	The document is not loaded on the scanner. Load the document, and try scanning again.

Message	Scanner is busy. Check if it is CountOnly mode.
Remedy	The scanner may currently be in the Count Only mode (mode for counting the number of scanned document pages) (P.56). Cancel the Count Only mode, and try again.
Message	Scanner is busy. Wait for a while and try again.
Remedy	The scanner is currently processing other data, and cannot scan new documents. Try again later.
Message	Verify count error occurred. Try again.
Remedy	The number of document pages set in the verify scan (P.54) does not match the actual number of scanned pages. When "U01" is displayed on the counter display, count the number of document pages again. When "U02" is displayed, make sure that all document pages have been scanned.
Message	Parameter is not valid. Change the parameters again.
Remedy	The scan condition setup is inappropriate. Change the setup, and try scanning again.
Message	File access error occurred. Check if another app. use this file or write protected.
Remedy	The image file that you tried to open is in use by another application, and cannot be opened. Close the file in the other application. Or, the image file that you tried to save is write-protected. This file cannot be overwritten. Save the file under another name.
Message	File already exists, do you wish to over-write?
Remedy	The file name that you are trying to save the scanned image file under already exists. To overwrite the existing file, click [Yes]. To cancel overwriting, click [No] and save under a different name.
Message	A double paper-feed has occurred. Please check the document and the scanned image on the display and scan the document again.
Remedy	A document was skewed. Please remove the document and then scan it again. When removing the document, draw it out gently taking care not to rip it.
Message	A document was skewed. Please remove the document and scan it again.
Remedy	A double paper-feed has occurred. Please check the document and the scanned image on the display and scan the document again. This error occurs if you scan a stack of documents comprising different sizes and thicknesses of paper. Either scan documents having the same paper size and thickness, or set double paper-feed detection to OFF.

3.2

When The Scanned Image is Not Normal

If there is a problem in the scanned image (image is not sharp or stripes appear in the image), one of the following may be a probable cause. Check as follows and take the appropriate remedy.

- **The scanning glasses and rollers on the scanner are dirty.**

If the scanning glasses and rollers on the scanner are dirty, that dirt will appear on the scanned image.

→ Clean the scanning glasses and rollers. For details, see Chapter 5 “Daily Cleaning” (P.83) in the separate DR-5020/5080C Instructions.

- **The scan conditions are inappropriate.**

When the scan condition setup is inappropriate, the scanned image will not be sharp or appears darkish.

→ Check the brightness, contrast and other settings.

If the scanned image is foggy or the document is not scanned at all, a probable cause is that brightness is set too high.

If the scanned image appears darkish, a probable cause is that the brightness is set too low.

- **Scanning Utility 5000 does not run correctly.**

If the document cannot be scanned correctly even if the scan conditions are adjusted, a probable cause is that Scanning Utility 5000 is not running correctly.

→ Re-install the Scanning Utility 5000. See “1.2 Installing Scanning Utility 5000” (P.7).

- **Other Causes**

If the above remedies do not rectify the problem, contact a Canon service department.

Index

- A -

AE	67
About	16, 17
Actual pixel (Print Format)	14, 30
Actual size (Print Format)	14, 30
Addon	64
Addon Type	72
Assign Single Function	83
Auto (Feeding Option)	34, 40, 66
Auto NewFile	64

- B -

BMP	28
Backside brightness	66
Back side scanning	66
Backside setting	66
Barcode	64
Barcode Decoder Settings	74
Barcodes per	75
Basic Settings	61
Best Fit	15, 16
Brightness	22, 62

- C -

Cancel Scan	15
Codabar	77
Code 128	75
Code 25	78
Code 39	78
Complement Thin Line	67
Confirming the scanned image	27
Contrast	22, 62
Control sheet	49, 66

- D -

Detail settings dialog box	63
Detect Page Size	63
Double Feed Detection	65, 83
Dropout Color Settings	82
Dropout Enable	82
Duplex Scanning	46

- E -

EAN	77
Edge Emphasis	67
Endorser	64
Erase Black dot	67
Erase Notch	67
Erase White dot	67
Error Message	86
Exit	12, 15

- F -

Feed Mode	33, 66
Feeding Option	66
File menu	14
Fit to paper (Print Format)	14, 30
Fit to width	15, 16
Flowchart of Scanning	20
Function Key Settings	83

- H -

Help menu	16
High Speed Scanning	52, 63
Horizontal Offset	71

- I -

Imprinter	64
Imprinter/Addon Settings	69
Increment	73
Increment Triger	73
Inhibit section	82
Installing Scanning Utility 5000	7

- J -

JBIG	28
JPEG	28
Job Separation Sheet	51

- K -

Key No.	83
--------------	----

- L -

Loading and scanning a document	23
---------------------------------------	----

- M -	
Manual mode	34, 43, 66
Manual Thickness Adjustment ..	64, 83
Margin Scanning	65
Menu Bar	13, 14
Mode	22, 61

- N -	
Negative	67
Next page	16, 17

- O -	
Open	14, 16
Opening image file	32
Orientation	72

- P -	
Page menu	16
Pages	71
Page Size	22, 62
Preparing the scanner and the computer ..	21
Prev. page	16, 17
Print	14, 16
Print Format	14, 30
Printer setting	14
Printing the scanned image	30

- R -	
Remote	23, 33, 66
Reset Triger	73
Resolution	22, 61
Restore Settings	83
Right to Left	72
Rotate Left	15, 17
Rotate Right	15, 17

- S -	
Save Page As	14, 16, 29
Save formats	28
Saving the scanned image	28
Scan batch to file	14, 17, 23
Scan batch to printer	14
Scan page	14, 26
Scanner Control Sheet	49
Scanner setting	14, 17, 22, 60
Scanning Procedure	21
Select Scanner	15

Semi Auto mode	34, 37, 66
Setting basic scan conditions	22
Settings Assignment	83
Setup CD-ROM	7
Small Font	72
Start Value	73
Startup	12
Status Bar	13
String (Imprinter/Addon)	69
System requirements	6

- T -	
TIFF	28
Tool Bar	13, 16
Trouble shooting	85

- U -	
Uninstalling Scanning Utility 5000 ...	11
UPC	76
Use User Gamma	67

- V -	
Verify Scan	54, 64
Vertical Offset	71
View Gray	15
View menu	15

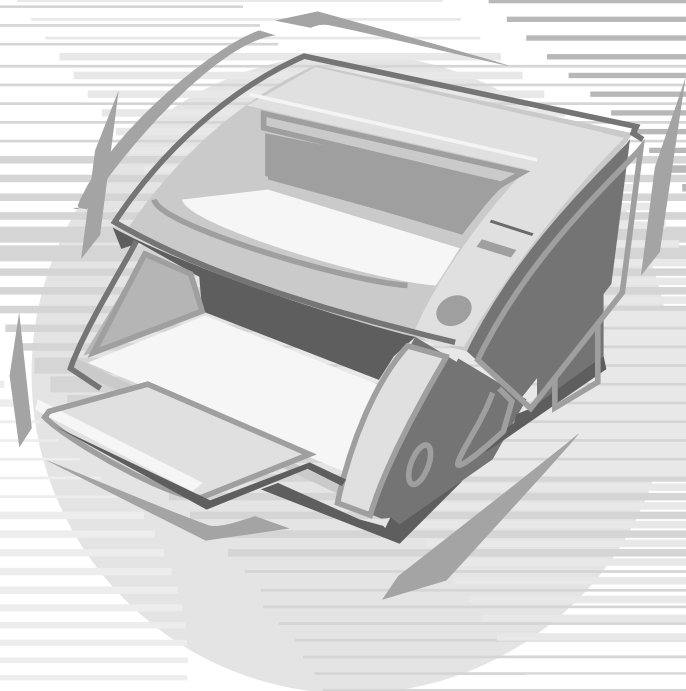
- W -	
When the scanned image in not normal	88

- Z -	
Zoom Down	15, 16
Zoom Up	15, 16

Scanning Utility 5000

Mode d'emploi

Lisez attentivement ce mode d'emploi avant d'utiliser cet appareil, et rangez-le en lieu sûr après l'avoir consulté.



NOTICE

- ① Copyright© 1999 par CANON ELECTRONICS INC. Tous droits réservés. Aucune partie de cette publication ne peut être reproduite, transmise, transcrite, stockée dans une banque de données ou traduite dans une langue quelconque ou dans une langue informatique sous quelque forme que ce soit ou par quelque moyen que ce soit, électronique, mécanique, magnétique, optique, chimique, manuel ou autre, sans le consentement de CANON ELECTRONICS INC.
- ② Le contenu de ce mode d'emploi pourra être changé sans préavis.
- ③ Tous les efforts possibles ont été faits pour assurer la précision des informations contenues dans ce manuel. Néanmoins, Canon Electronics Inc. et les succursales citées au dos de la couverture rejettent toute responsabilité pour toute erreur ou les conséquences possibles de cette erreur.
- ④ Nous rejetons toute responsabilité pour les dommages résultant du fonctionnement, quels que soient les termes de l'article ③.

Marques de fabrique et marques déposées

- Microsoft Windows® et Microsoft Windows NT® sont des marques de Microsoft Corporation déposées aux Etats-Unis et dans d'autres pays.
- ISIS® est une marque déposée de Pixel Translation A Division of ActionPoint Inc.
- Adaptec est une marque déposée ADAPTEC Inc.
- IBM et PC/AT sont des marques déposées de International Business Machines Corporation.
- Pentium® est une marque déposée de Intel Corporation U.S.A.
- Les noms de produits mentionnés dans ce manuel servent à titre d'identification seulement et peuvent être des marques de fabrique et/ou des marques déposées de leurs détenteurs respectifs.

INTRODUCTION

Merci pour l'achat du scanner de documents Canon DR-5020/5080C.

En tout, trois manuels sont livrés avec le DR-5020/5080C : le Mode d'emploi Scanning Utility 5000 (ce manuel), le Mode d'emploi du DR-5020/5080C et le Mode d'emploi du logiciel ISIS/TWAIN.

Ce manuel explique comment utiliser l'application du scanner " Scanning Utility 5000 " fourni avec le DR-5020/5080C. Pour assimiler toutes les fonctions de ce scanner et en tirer le meilleur parti, veuillez lire avec attention ce manuel et le Mode d'emploi séparé du DR-5020/5080C. Des logiciels de numérisation spéciaux, tels que le logiciel ISIS ou TWAIN ne sont pas nécessaires car l'application fournie avec le DR-5020/5080C emploie un logiciel de numérisation particulier.

Après avoir lu ces modes d'emploi, veuillez les ranger en lieu sûr.

Chaque mode d'emploi contient les informations suivantes.

Mode d'emploi de Scanning Utility 5000 (ce manuel)

Ce manuel indique comment utiliser l'application " Scanning Utility 5000 " livrée avec le scanner.

Mode d'emploi du DR-5020/5080C

Ce manuel explique comment raccorder le scanner, charger des documents, résoudre les incidents papier ainsi que d'autres informations importantes. Veuillez le lire avant d'utiliser le DR-5020/5080C.

Mode d'emploi des logiciel ISIS/TWAIN

Ce manuel indique comment fonctionne le scanner lorsqu'il est utilisé avec une application compatible avec le logiciel ISIS ou TWAIN.

■ Attention

Veuillez noter les points suivants lorsque vous utilisez le scanner pour faire des copies :

- La reproduction de billets ou d'autres types de devises ou de valeurs négociables est un délit pouvant entraîner des poursuites judiciaires.
- La reproduction de titres officiels, licences, billets de transport, documents privés ou protégés par le copyright et de tout autre document est contraire à la loi et peut entraîner des poursuites judiciaires.
- La copie d'images dans un but non personnel ou familial exige l'autorisation du propriétaire du copyright.

CONVENTIONS

Ce manuel contient les symboles et indications ci-dessous.
Veuillez lire ce qui suit avec attention pour vous familiariser avec leurs significations.



A lire avec attention. Risque de mort ou de blessure grave.



A lire avec attention. Risque de dommage matériel ou de perte de données précieuses.



Indique où trouver des informations utiles dans ce manuel. Le nombre entre parenthèses indique la page de référence contenant de plus amples informations sur la phrase ou le paragraphe précédent.



Indique des conseils sur l'emploi du scanner ou les problèmes mineurs à éviter.

■ Cet appareil

Les DR-5020 et DR-5080C sont appelés collectivement “ scanner ” dans ce manuel. Si une description particulière est nécessaire pour l'une de ces machines, le nom du scanner, DR-5020 ou 5080C, sera mentionné explicitement.

SOMMAIRE

INTRODUCTION	1
CONVENTIONS	2

Chapitre 1 Installation et fonctionnement de base de Scanning Utility 5000 **5**

1.1 Configuration requise	6
1.2 Installation de Scanning Utility 5000	7
Préparatifs	7
Installation de Scanning Utility 5000	8
Désinstallation de Scanning Utility 5000	11
1.3 Fonctionnement de base de Scanning Utility 5000	12
Ouverture et fermeture	12
◆ Ouverture	12
◆ Fermeture	12
Ecran Scanning Utility 5000	13
◆ Barre de menus	14
◆ Barre d'outils	16

Chapitre 2 Numérisation d'un document **19**

2.1 Schéma de fonctionnement	20
2.2 Numérisation	21
Préparation du scanner et de l'ordinateur	21
Réglage des conditions de base de numérisation	22
Chargement et numérisation d'un document	23
◆ Numérisation de deux pages ou plus	23
◆ Numérisation d'une seule page et vérification de l'image numérisée. .	26
Vérification de l'image numérisée	27
Sauvegarde de l'image numérisée	28
◆ A propos des formats de sauvegarde	28
◆ Sauvegarde d'images numérisées dans un fichier (numérisation d'une seule page)	29
Impression de l'image numérisée	30
Ouverture des fichiers d'image	32
2.3 Divers modes de numérisation	33
Numérisation dans les divers modes de chargement	33

◆ Sélection du mode de charge	35
◆ Numérisation dans le mode Semi-auto	37
◆ Numérisation dans le mode Auto	40
◆ Numérisation dans le mode Manuel	43
Numérisation Duplex	46
Impression directe des images numérisées	47
Utilisation des feuilles de fonction	48
◆ Feuille de contrôle du scanner	49
◆ Feuille de séparation des travaux	51
Numérisation rapide	52
Vérification de la numérisation	54
◆ Validation de la vérification de la numérisation	54
◆ Introduction du nombre de pages du document	56
◆ Numérisation de documents	58
2.4 Réglage des conditions de numérisation	60
Paramètres de base	61
Paramètres détaillés	63
Paramètres Marquage/Marque	69
Paramètres du décodeur de codes barres	74
Réglage de la courbe gamma	79
Paramètres de suppression des couleurs (DR-5080C seulement)	82
Paramètres des touches de fonction	83
Chapitre 3 En cas de panne	85
3.1 Si un message d'erreur s'affiche	86
3.2 Si l'image numérisée n'est pas normale	88
Index	89

Chapitre 1

Installation et fonctionnement de base de Scanning Utility 5000

Ce chapitre décrit comment installer Scanning Utility 5000 ainsi que le fonctionnement de base de Scanning Utility 5000.

1.1 Configuration requise	6
1.2 Installation de Scanning Utility 5000 ..	7
1.3 Fonctionnement de base de Scanning Utility 5000	12

1.1

Configuration requise

Pour pouvoir utiliser l'application Scanning Utility 5000 correctement vous devez avoir le matériel et le système d'exploitation suivants.

- Ordinateur IBM PC/AT ou compatible, avec microprocesseur Pentium 133 MHz ou supérieur et au moins 64 Mo de mémoire
 - Système d'exploitation : Microsoft Windows® 95/98/Me ou Microsoft Windows NT® 4.0 Workstation/Windows 2000 Professional
 - Au moins 100 Mo d'espace libre sur le disque dur (au moins 5 Mo après l'installation)
- Affichage compatible SVGA
- Clavier, souris et imprimante compatibles avec Microsoft Windows, Lecteur de CD-ROM (Vitesse 4x ou plus)
- Carte SCSI compatible
La compatibilité des cartes suivantes a été confirmée :
Adaptec Séries AHA-1540 et AHA-2940
- Câble SCSI compatible SCSI-2



- Scanning Utility 5000 emploie un logiciel de scanner spécial. Les logiciels de scanner tels que les logiciels ISIS et TWAIN ne sont pas nécessaires.
- Lorsque vous installez Scanning Utility 5000, un dossier " \ceiscan " est créé dans le dossier Windows en plus du dossier de destination d'installation et le fichier " cei*.dll " est copié dans \Windows\system.
Scanning Utility 5000 ne fonctionnera pas correctement si ces fichiers sont modifiés.
- Les noms des dossiers système \Windows et \Windows\system diffèrent selon la version Windows utilisée. Dans les explications suivantes, substituez les noms de dossiers système \Windows et \Windows\system aux noms de dossiers de votre version Windows.

1.2

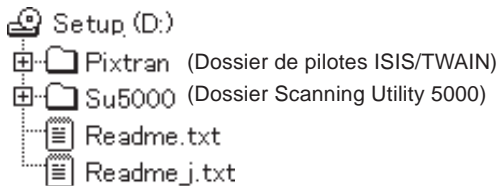
Installation de Scanning Utility 5000

Cette partie indique comment installer Scanning Utility 5000.

Préparatifs

Vérifiez les points suivants avant d'installer Scanning Utility 5000.

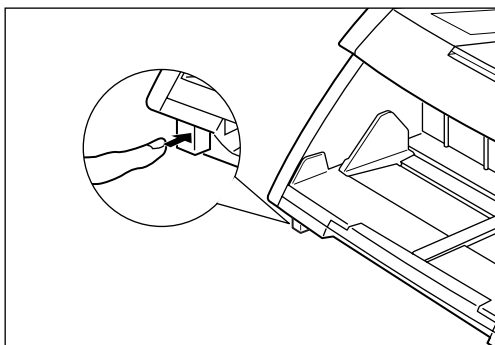
- **Assurez-vous que le système d'exploitation de l'ordinateur sur lequel Scanning Utility 5000 doit être installé est le système Microsoft Windows® 95/98/Me ou Microsoft Windows NT® 4.0 Workstation/Windows 2000 Professional.**
- **Raccordez le scanner à l'ordinateur.**
Pour les détails sur le raccordement du scanner, reportez-vous au Mode d'emploi séparé du DR-5020/5080C.
- **Installez le CD-ROM**
L'installation du CD-ROM s'effectue de la façon suivante.
Avant d'installer le Scanning Utility 5000, ne manquez pas de lire "Readme.txt". Une fois l'installation du Scanning Utility 5000 terminée, rangez le CD-ROM en lieu sûr.



Installation de Scanning Utility 5000

Vous trouverez ici les informations nécessaires pour installer Scanning Utility 5000 sur votre ordinateur.

1 Allumez le scanner.



2 Allumez l'ordinateur.

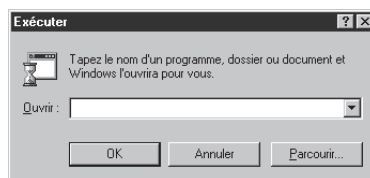
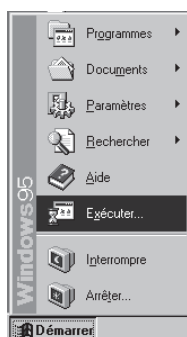
⇒ Windows démarre.

3 Insérez la disquette d'installation dans le lecteur CD-ROM.

4 Cliquez sur le bouton [Démarrer] et sélectionnez [Exécuter].

L'écran qui apparaît varie selon la version de Windows que vous utilisez.

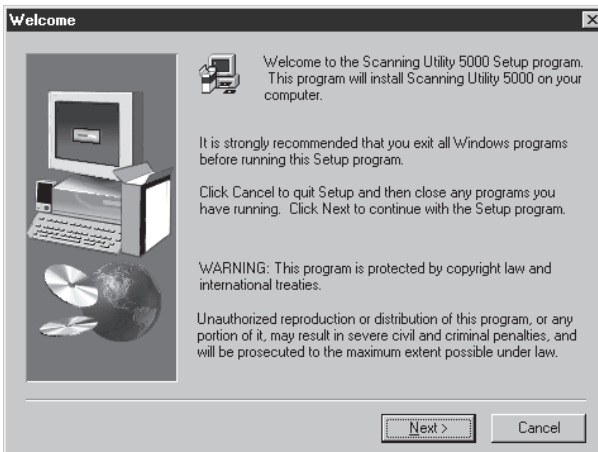
[Windows95]



- 5** Sous Ouvrir, tapez “ D:\su5000\setup.exe ” et cliquez sur [OK]. Dans ce mode d’emploi, le lecteur de CD-ROM est désigné par D.
⇒ La boîte de dialogue Sélection de la langue d’installation apparaît.

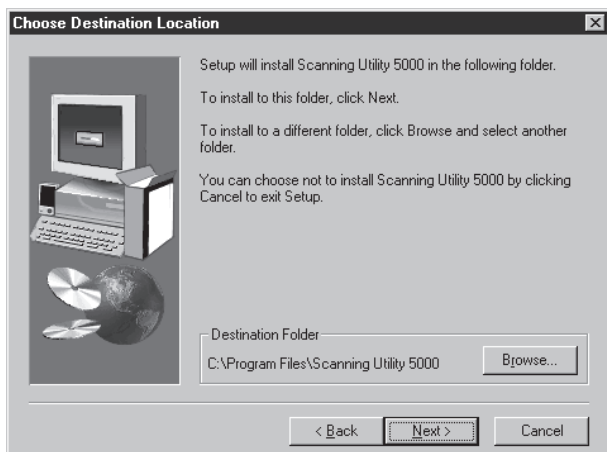


- 6** Sélectionnez Anglais (U.S.) et cliquez sur [OK].
⇒ La boîte de dialogue Welcome apparaît.



7 Cliquez sur [Next].

⇒ La boîte de dialogue Choose Destination Location apparaît.

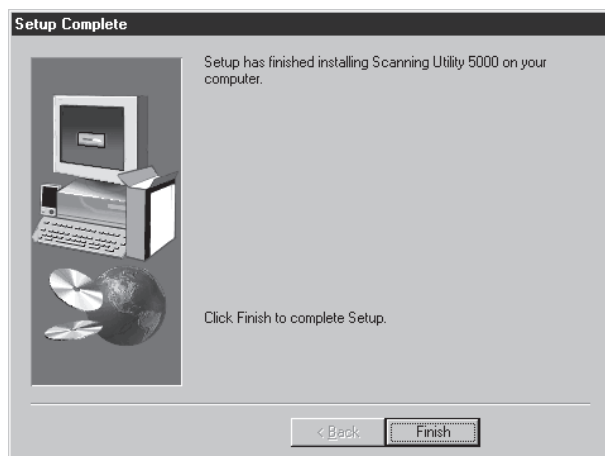


8 Vérifiez le répertoire d'installation affiché et cliquez sur [Next].

Pour changer le répertoire d'installation, cliquez sur [Browse], puis choisissez le nouveau répertoire d'installation.

⇒ L'installation commence.

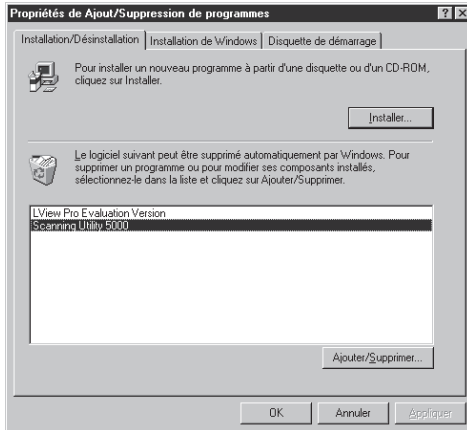
9 L'installation se poursuit. Un instant plus tard, la boîte de dialogue Setup Complete apparaît.



10 Cliquez sur [Finish] pour terminer l'installation.

Désinstallation de Scanning Utility 5000

Pour désinstaller Scanning Utility 5000, ouvrez “ Ajout/Suppression de programmes ” dans le panneau de configuration, sélectionnez [Scanning Utility 5000] et cliquez sur [Ajouter/Supprimer].



1.3

Fonctionnement de base de Scanning Utility 5000

Cette partie explique comment ouvrir et fermer Scanning Utility 5000 et décrit les écrans de Scanning Utility 5000.

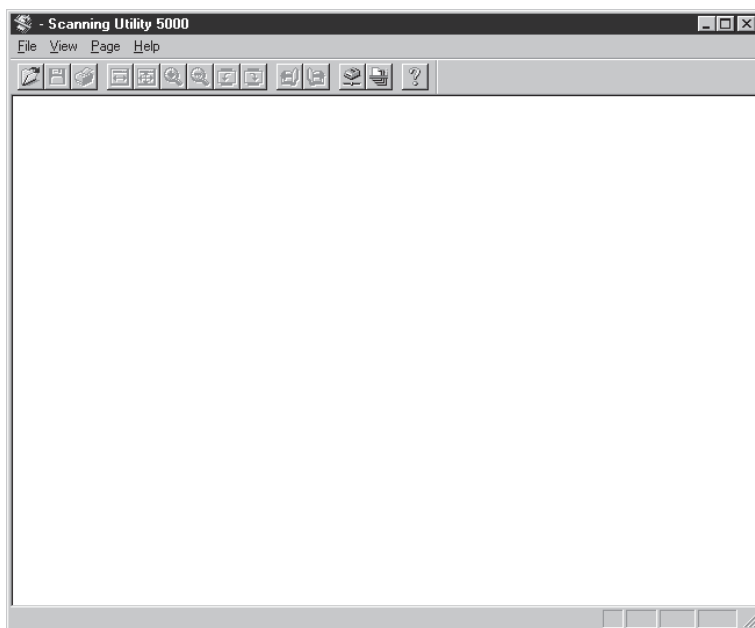
Ouverture et fermeture

Vous ouvrez et fermez Scanning Utility 5000 de la façon suivante.

◆ Ouverture

1 Cliquez sur le bouton [Démarrer] et choisissez [Programmes] – [Scanning Utility 5000].

⇒ Scanning Utility 5000 s'ouvre.



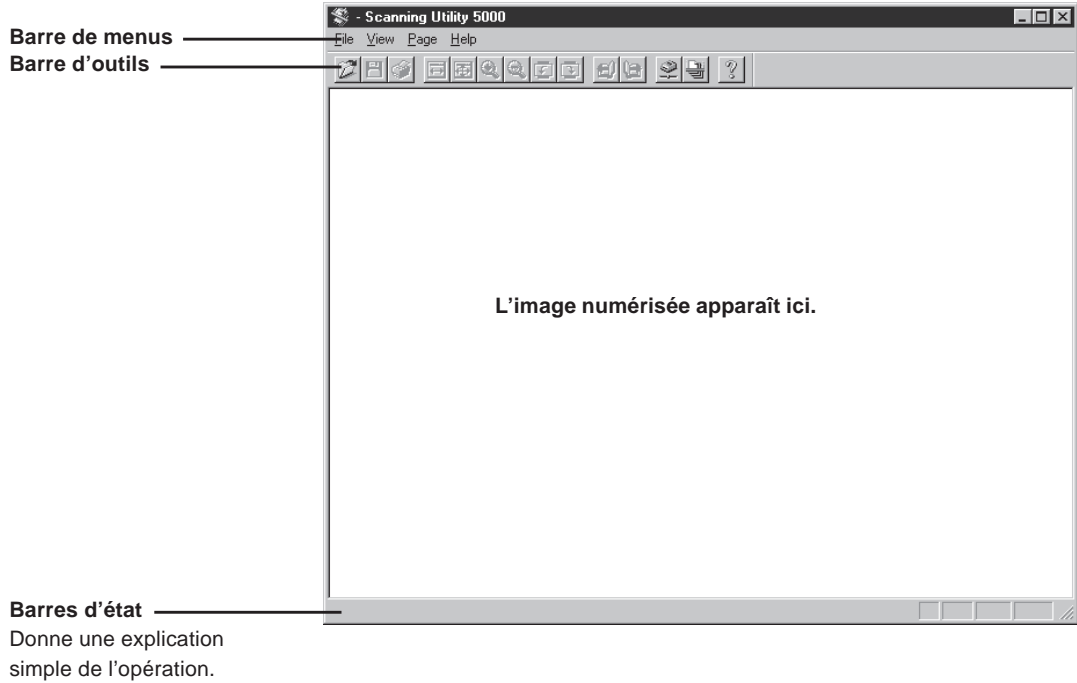
◆ Fermeture

1 Sur l'écran Scanning Utility 5000, sélectionnez [File] – [Exit].

⇒ Scanning Utility 5000 se ferme.

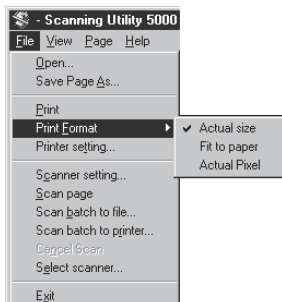
Ecran Scanning Utility 5000

Cette partie décrit les fonctions de la barre de menus et de la barre d'outils de l'écran Scanning Utility 5000.



◆ Barre de menus

Menu File



Open

Ouvre l'image sauvegardée dans un fichier.

Save Page As...

Sauvegarde l'image actuellement affichée sous un autre nom après la numérisation d'une page.

Print

Imprime l'image.

Print Format

Actual size : Imprime dans le même format que le papier, quel que soit le type de papier ou la résolution à laquelle l'image a été numérisée.

Fit to paper : Imprime l'image à la dimension du papier si le document est plus grand que le papier.

Actual pixel : Chaque point de l'image numérisée est représenté par un point sur l'image imprimée.
C'est la raison pour laquelle la taille de l'image imprimée est plus petite si l'image numérisée est imprimée sur une imprimante à petits points.

Printer Setting...

Règle l'imprimante. Indique le nom de l'imprimante actuellement sélectionnée comme imprimante habituelle.

Scanner setting...

Règle le scanner. Pour les détails sur les paramètres, voir " 2.4 Réglage des conditions de numérisation " (P.60).

Scan page

Numérise une seule page.

Scan batch to file...

Numérise et sauvegarde le document dans le fichier désigné.

Scan batch to printer...

Numérise et imprime le document sur l'imprimante actuellement sélectionnée comme imprimante habituelle.

Cancel Scan

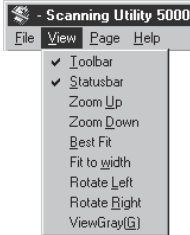
Annule la numérisation.

Select Scanner...

Sélectionne le scanner qui doit être utilisé.

Exit

Ferme Scanning Utility 5000.

Menu View**Toolbar**

Sert à activer ou désactiver l'affichage de la barre d'outils. Lorsque cette option est cochée, la barre d'outils apparaît. Lorsqu'elle n'est pas cochée, la barre d'outils n'apparaît pas.

A chaque clic de l'option du menu, l'affichage de la barre d'outils est activé ou désactivé.

Statusbar

Sert à activer ou désactiver l'affichage de la barre d'état. Lorsque cette option est cochée, la barre d'état apparaît. Lorsqu'elle n'est pas cochée, la barre d'état n'apparaît pas.

A chaque clic de l'option du menu, l'affichage de la barre d'état est activé ou désactivé.

Zoom Up

A chaque clic de cette option, l'image affichée s'agrandit. Les images ne peuvent pas être agrandies de plus de 100% (leur taille réelle).

Zoom Down

A chaque clic de cette option, l'image se réduit.

Best Fit

Affiche l'image entière sur toute la fenêtre.

Fit to width

Adapte la largeur de l'image à celle de la fenêtre.

Rotate Left

Rotation de l'image vers la gauche (sens antihoraire) de 90°.

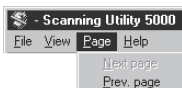
Rotate Right

Rotation de l'image vers la droite (sens horaire) de 90°.

View Gray

Affiche des images en noir et blanc et niveaux de gris.

Menu Page



Next page

Affiche l'image de la page suivante.

Prev. page

Affiche l'image de la page précédente.

Menu Help



About

Affiche les informations concernant la version et le copyright de Scanning Utility 5000.

◆ Barre d'outils



Ouvre une image numérisée sauvegardée dans un fichier.



Sauvegarde la page actuellement affichée sous un autre nom après la numérisation d'une page.



Imprime l'image numérisée.



Adapte la largeur de l'image à celle de la fenêtre.



Affiche l'image entière sur toute la fenêtre.



A chaque clic de ce bouton, l'image affichée s'agrandit. Les images ne peuvent pas être agrandies de plus de 100% (leur taille réelle).



A chaque clic de ce bouton, l'image affichée est réduite.



Fait tourner l'image vers la gauche (sens antihoraire) de 90°.



Fait tourner l'image vers la droite (sens horaire) de 90°.



Affiche l'image de la page précédente.



Affiche l'image de la page suivante.



Règle le scanner. Pour les détails à ce sujet, voir “ 2.4 Réglage des conditions de numérisation ” (P. 60).



Numérise et sauvegarde le document dans un fichier particulier. Pour les détails sur la numérisation, voir “ 2.2 Numérisation ” (P.21).



Affiche les informations concernant la version et le copyright de Scanning Utility 5000.

Chapitre 2

Numérisation d'un document

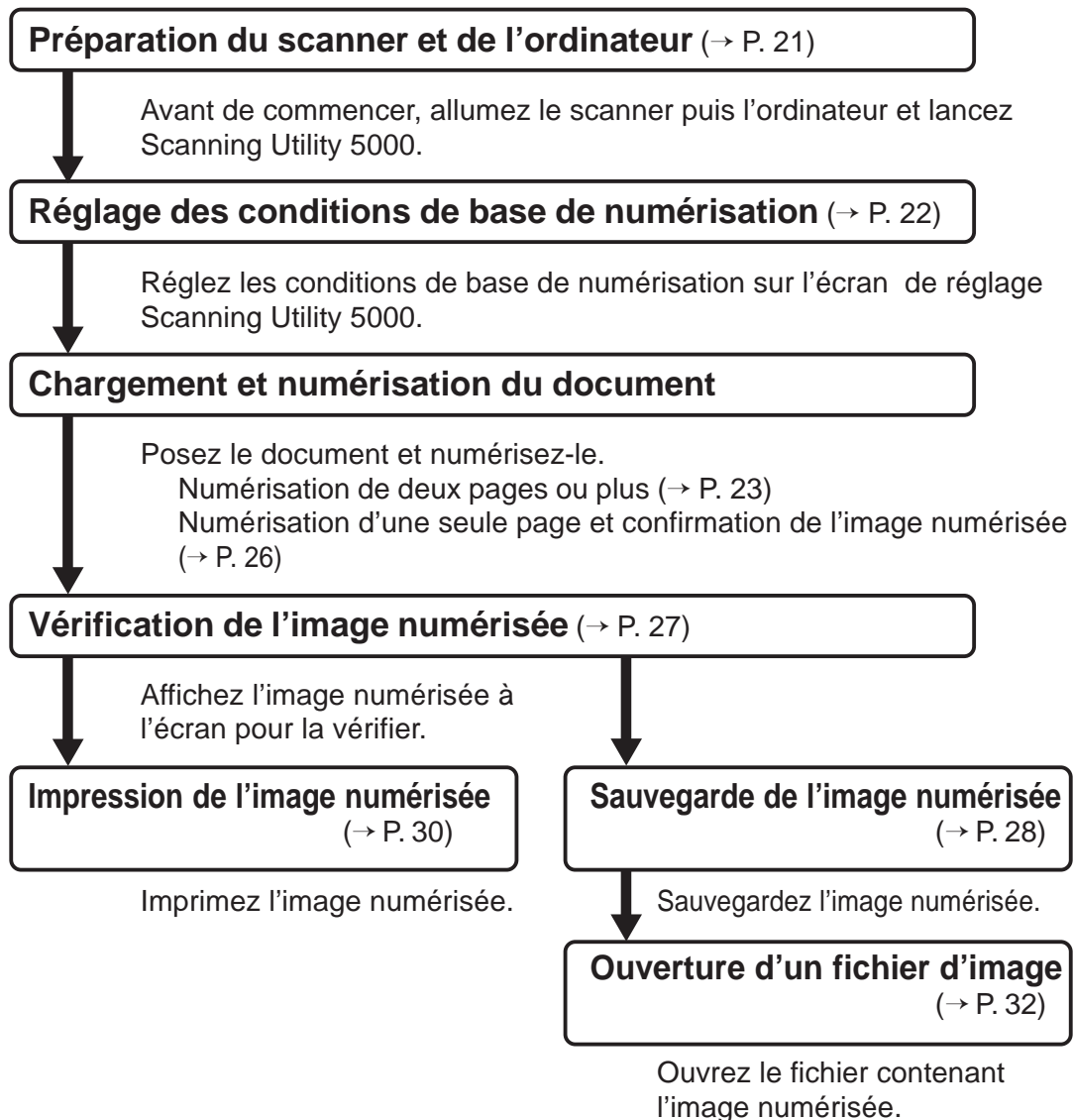
Ce chapitre indique comment numériser un document à l'aide de Scanning Utility 5000.

2.1 Schéma de fonctionnement	20
2.2 Numérisation	21
2.3 Divers modes de numérisation	33
2.4 Réglage des conditions de numérisation	60

2.1

Schéma de fonctionnement

Suivez ce schéma général pour numériser un document à l'aide de Scanning Utility 5000.

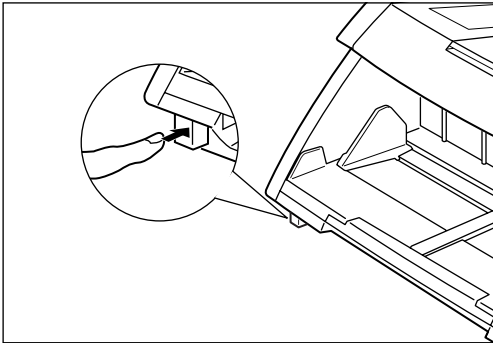


2.2 Numérisation

Préparation du scanner et de l'ordinateur

Avant de commencer, allumez le scanner et l'ordinateur et lancez Scanning Utility 5000.

1 Allumez le scanner.

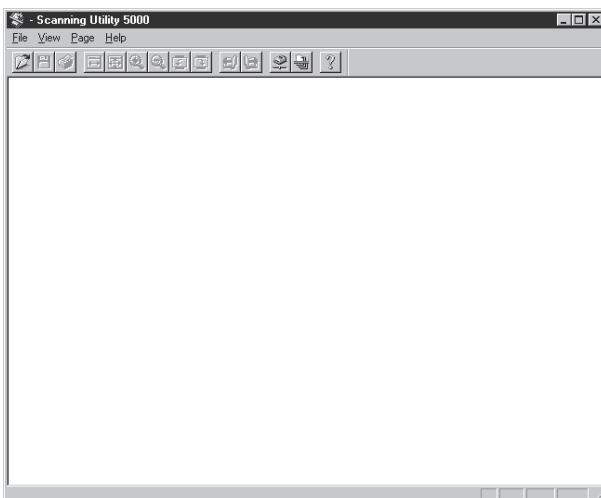


2 Allumez l'ordinateur.

⇒ Windows démarre.

3 Cliquez sur [Démarrer] et choisissez [Programmes] – [Scanning Utility 5000].

⇒ Scanning Utility 5000 démarre.



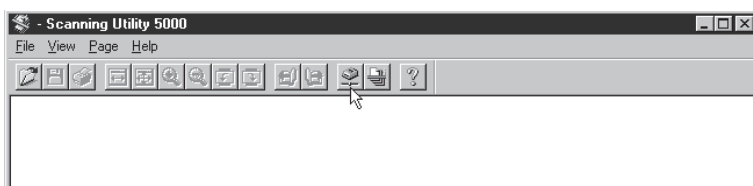
Réglage des conditions de base de numérisation

Réglez les conditions de base dans la boîte de dialogue " Paramètres du scanner ".

Cet écran contient cinq paramètres à régler : Mode, Résolution, Format page, Luminosité et Contraste.

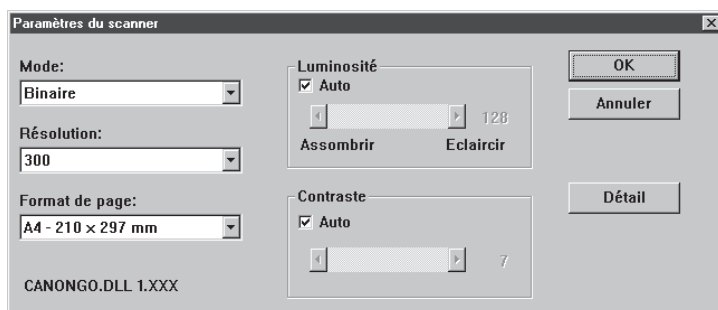
Pour les détails sur ces paramètres, voir " 2.4 Réglage des conditions de numérisation " (P.60).

1 Sélectionnez [File] – [Scanner setting] ou cliquez sur  dans la barre d'outils.



➔ La boîte de dialogue Paramètres du scanner apparaît.

2 Réglez les paramètres de base.



Mode: Désigne le type d'image à numériser.

Résolution: Définit la résolution (ppp).

Format de page: Désigne le format du document à numériser.

Luminosité: Ajuste la luminosité générale de l'image numérisée.

Contraste: Ajuste le contraste général de l'image numérisée.



MEMO

Pour les détails, voir 2.4 Réglage des conditions de numérisation. (P.60).

3 Cliquez sur [OK] pour revenir à l'écran de numérisation.

Chargement et numérisation d'un document

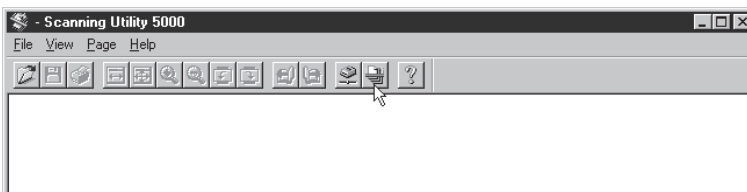
Posez un document sur le plateau de documents et numérisez-le. Il existe deux méthodes pour numériser un document : numérisation de deux pages ou plus et numérisation d'une seule page puis confirmation de l'image numérisée.

◆ Numérisation de deux pages ou plus

Vous pouvez numériser des documents de deux pages ou plus dans un des quatre modes suivants:

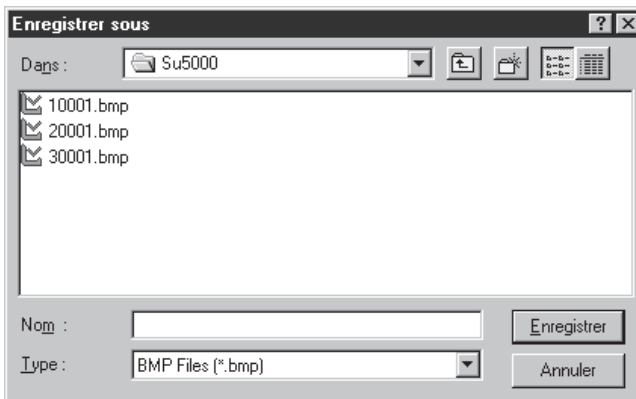
Distant, Semi-auto, Auto et Manuel. La procédure change selon le mode utilisé. Voici une description de la numérisation dans le mode Distant. Pour les détails sur la numérisation dans les autres modes, voir " 2.3 Divers modes de numérisation " (P.33).

1 Sélectionnez [File] - [Scan batch to file] ou cliquez sur  dans la barre d'outils.



➞ La boîte de dialogue Enregistrer sous apparaît.

2 Indiquez le nom de fichier sous lequel l'image sera numérisée, le type de fichier (format de sauvegarde) et l'endroit où le fichier doit être sauvegardé, puis cliquez sur [Enregistrer].



➞ La boîte de dialogue Start Scanning apparaît.



CONSEIL

Le paramètre Type indique les divers formats de fichiers sous lesquels les images numérisées peuvent être sauvegardées. Les quatre types de fichiers correspondant au mode dans lequel vous numérisez le document sont les suivants :

TIFF (*.tif), BMP (*.bmp), JBIG (*.jbg), JPEG (*.jpg)

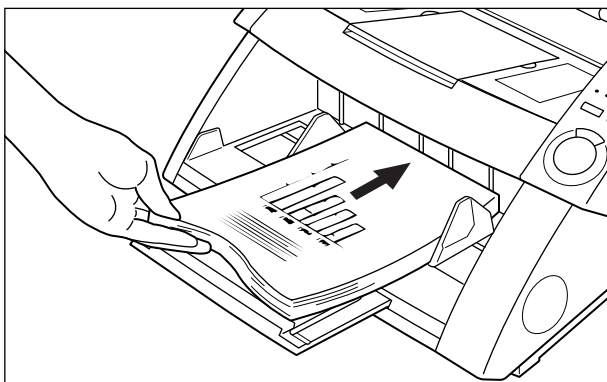


MEMO

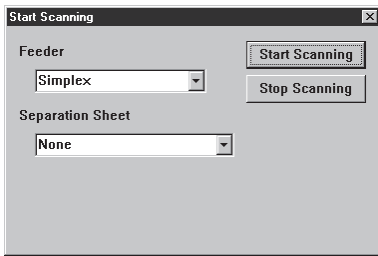
Lorsque TIFF est sélectionné, l'image s'étendant sur plusieurs pages numérisées (numérisation en mode Duplex comprise) est sauvegardée dans un seul fichier. Lorsque vous sauvegardez des fichiers dans le format BMP, JPEG ou JBIG, chacune des pages numérisées du document est sauvegardée dans un fichier particulier dans le dossier spécifié comme dossier de destination. Le nom de ce fichier est constitué du nom du type de fichier où la première image a été enregistrée et d'un numéro consécutif "0001", "002", etc. pour les pages suivantes. (Par exemple, si vous sauvegardez des images de format BMP dans le fichier "scan.bmp", les fichiers "scan0001.bmp", "scan0002.bmp", etc. seront automatiquement créés.)

Si vous séparez des fichiers en utilisant la fonction Nouveau fichier auto ou une feuille de séparation des fichiers, les dossiers numérotés (" 0001 ", " 0002 ", etc.) seront créés automatiquement à chaque séparation de fichiers et les images seront sauvegardées dans les fichiers de ces dossiers.

3 Posez le document sur le plateau de documents.



4 Cliquez sur [Start Scanning].



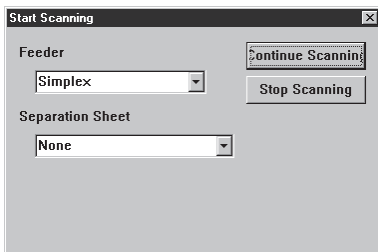
⇒ La numérisation commence.



Si la numérisation ne commence pas, vérifiez que les témoins des touches Feeding Option sur le panneau de commande du scanner sont éteints (Mode Distant).

5 La numérisation s'arrête lorsqu'il n'y a plus de pages sur le plateau de documents.

⇒ La boîte de dialogue Start Scanning (pause) apparaît.



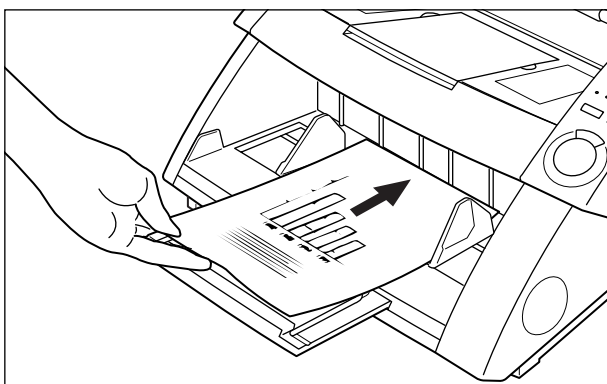
6 Pour continuer, posez un autre document sur le plateau de documents et cliquez sur [Continue Scanning]. Pour arrêter la numérisation, cliquez sur [Stop Scanning].

7 Vérifiez l'image numérisée. (P. 27)

◆ Numérisation d'une seule page et vérification de l'image numérisée.

Avant de numériser un document comprenant plusieurs pages, vous pouvez numériser une seule page et vérifier l'image obtenue. Dans ce mode de numérisation, l'image numérisée n'est pas automatiquement sauvegardée. Si vous voulez la sauvegarder, faites-le manuellement.
(Voir " Sauvegarde de l'image numérisée " P. 28)

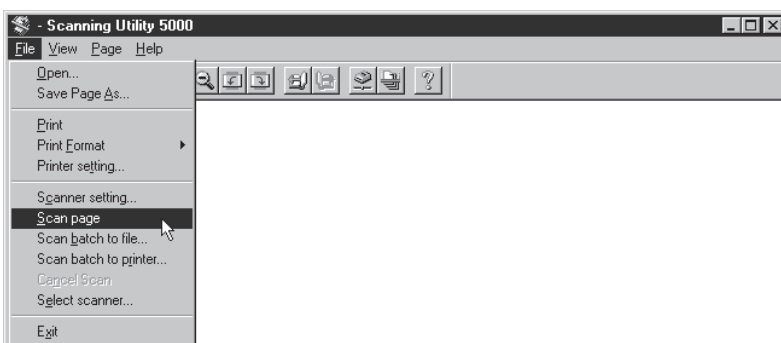
1 Posez une page sur le plateau de documents.



Si vous avez posé deux pages ou plus sur le plateau de documents, le plateau de documents restera en position haute après la numérisation de la première page du document.

Retirez les autres pages du document et faites revenir le plateau de documents en position basse.

2 Sélectionnez [File] - [Scan page].



⇒ Le document est numérisé.

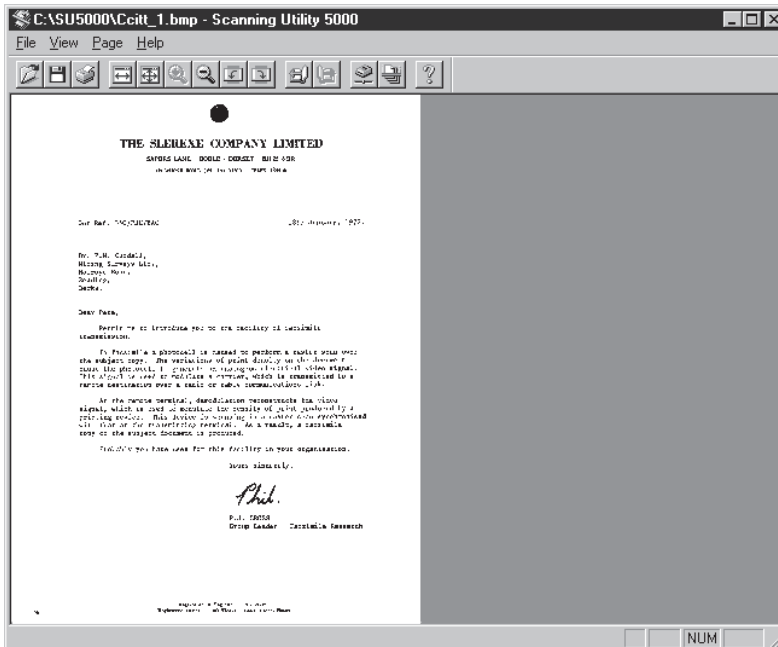
3 Vérifiez l'image numérisée. (P. 27)

4 Sauvegardez l'image numérisée, si nécessaire. (P. 29)

Vérification de l'image numérisée









Affichez l'image numérisée sur l'écran pour la vérifier.

1 Vérifiez l'image numérisée à l'écran.



CONSEIL

Vous pouvez utiliser les boutons de la barre d'outils pour agrandir ou réduire l'affichage de l'image et réorienter l'image numérisée pour la vérifier.

-  Adapte la largeur de l'image à celle de la fenêtre.
-  Affiche l'image entière sur toute la fenêtre.
-  A chaque clic de ce bouton, l'image affichée s'agrandit. Les images ne peuvent pas être agrandies de plus de 100% (leur taille réelle).
-  A chaque clic de ce bouton, l'image affichée est réduite.
-  Rotation de l'image vers la gauche (sens antihoraire) de 90°.
-  Rotation de l'image vers la droite (sens horaire) de 90°.
-  Affichage de l'image suivante.
-  Affichage l'image précédente.

Sauvegarde de l'image numérisée

◆ A propos des formats de sauvegarde

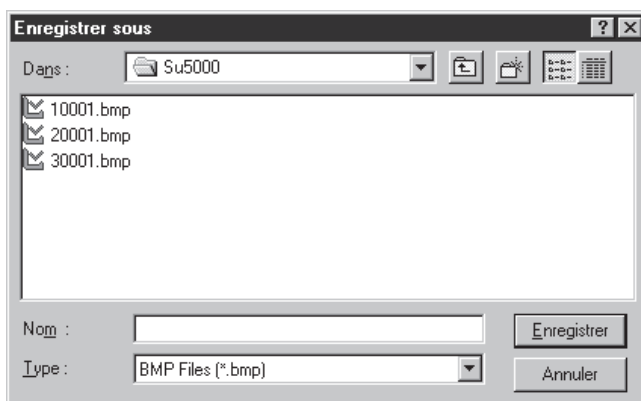
Les images numérisées peuvent être sauvegardées dans des fichiers de formats TIFF, BMP, JPEG ou JBIG.

Le format de fichier disponible varie selon le réglage du mode de numérisation valide au moment de la numérisation.

Le tableau suivant indique les formats de fichier supportés par Scanning Utility 5000.

Mode de numérisation	Format de fichier compatible			
	BMP	JBIG	JPEG	TIF (MMR)
Binaire, Binaire-ED	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>
Echelle de gris 2 bits, 4 bits	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>
Echelle de gris 8 bits	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	
Couleurs	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>	

Désignez le format de fichier dans la boîte de dialogue Enregistrer sous.



Sélectionnez le format de fichier dans Type.



MEMO

Lorsque TIFF est sélectionné, l'image s'étendant sur plusieurs pages numérisées (numérisation en mode Duplex comprise) est sauvegardée dans un seul fichier. Lorsque vous sauvegardez des fichiers dans le format BMP, JPEG ou JBIG, chacune des pages numérisées du document est sauvegardée dans un fichier particulier dans le dossier spécifié comme dossier de destination. Le nom de ce fichier est constitué du nom du type de fichier où la première image a été enregistrée et d'un numéro consécutif "0001", "002", etc. pour les pages suivantes. (Par exemple, si vous sauvegardez des images de format BMP dans le fichier "scan.bmp", les fichiers "scan0001.bmp", "scan0002.bmp", etc. seront automatiquement créés.)

Si vous séparez des fichiers en utilisant la fonction Nouveau fichier auto ou une feuille de séparation des fichiers, les dossiers numérotés (" 0001 ", " 0002 ", etc.) seront créés automatiquement à chaque séparation de fichiers et les images seront sauvegardées dans les fichiers de ces dossiers.


◆ Sauvegarde d'images numérisées dans un fichier (numérisation d'une seule page)

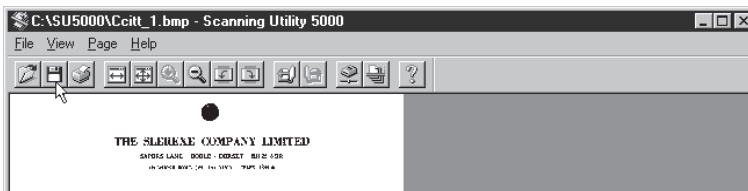
Lorsqu'un document d'une seule page est numérisé, l'image numérisée n'est pas sauvegardée. Si elle doit être sauvegardée, procédez de la façon suivante.



MEMO

Lorsque deux pages ou plus sont numérisées (P. 23), les images sont automatiquement sauvegardées dans le fichier désigné au moment où elles sont numérisées. Elles n'ont pas besoin d'être sauvegardées à nouveau.

- 1 Sélectionnez [File] - [Save Page As...] ou cliquez sur  dans la barre d'outils lorsque l'image numérisée est affichée sur l'écran Scanning Utility 5000.



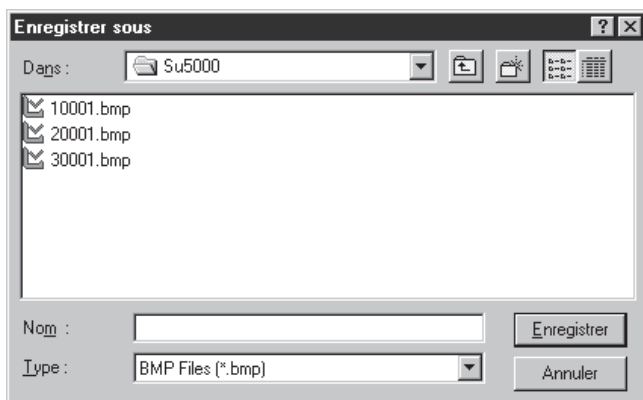
➔ La boîte de dialogue Enregistrer sous apparaît.



MEMO

[Save Page As] ne sauvegarde que la page actuellement affichée dans un autre fichier. Lorsque vous numérisez deux pages ou plus et utilisez cette commande pour sauvegarder des images sous forme de fichier TIFF unique (multi TIFF), veillez à les sauvegarder sous un autre nom de fichier, sinon les images sauvegardées sous le même nom de fichier seront écrasées.

2 Indiquez le nom du fichier sous lequel vous voulez sauvegarder l'image, le type de fichier (format de fichier) et l'endroit où le fichier doit être sauvegardé, puis cliquez sur [Enregistrer].



➔ L'image numérisée est sauvegardée dans le fichier que vous avez désigné.



MEMO

Avant d'indiquer le nom et le type du fichier (format de fichier) et l'endroit où le fichier doit être sauvegardé, reportez-vous à " A propos des formats de sauvegarde " (P. 28).

Impression de l'image numérisée

Imprimez l'image numérisée.




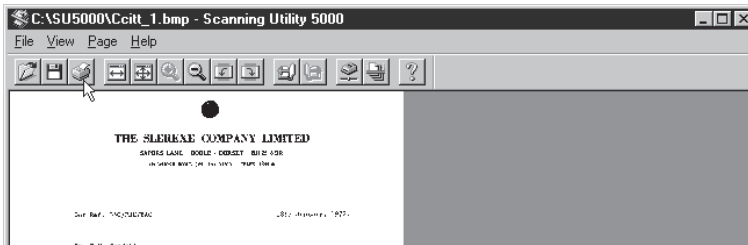
MEMO

Il y a trois façons d'imprimer les images numérisées.

Avant d'imprimer, sélectionnez une des options suivantes dans [File] – [Print Format].

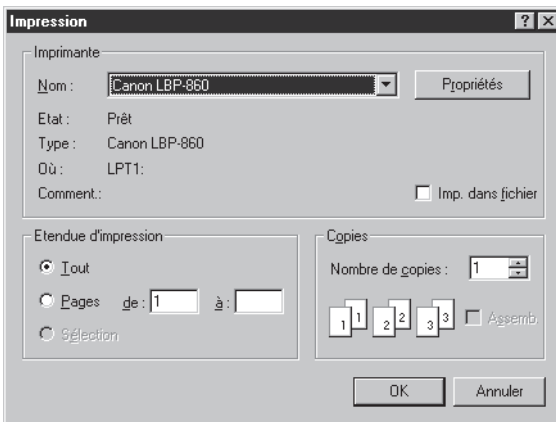
- Actual Size
Imprime l'image numérisée à sa taille réelle quel que soit le format du papier où elle sera imprimée et la résolution à laquelle elle a été numérisée.
- Fit to paper
Imprime l'image numérisée au format du papier si le document est plus grand que le papier sur lequel il est imprimé.
- Actual Pixel
Un point de l'image numérisée correspond à un point de l'image imprimée.

- 1 Sélectionnez [File] - [Print] ou cliquez sur  dans la barre d'outils lorsque l'image numérisée est affichée sur l'écran Scanning Utility 5000.



⇒ L'écran de réglage de l'imprimante apparaît.

- 2 Effectuez les réglages et cliquez sur [OK].



⇒ L'image numérisée est imprimée.



- L'écran de propriétés de l'imprimante varie selon l'imprimante. Pour les détails, reportez-vous au manuel ou à l'aide en ligne du pilote de l'imprimante que vous utilisez.
- Bien que l'option [All] soit sélectionnée dans le réglage de la plage d'impression, seule la page actuellement affichée sera imprimée.

Ouverture des fichiers d'image

Ouvrez le fichier contenant l'image numérisée.



MEMO

Seuls les fichiers d'images TIFF, BMP, JPEG ou JBIG sauvegardés dans Scanning Utility 5000 peuvent être ouverts dans Scanning Utility 5000.

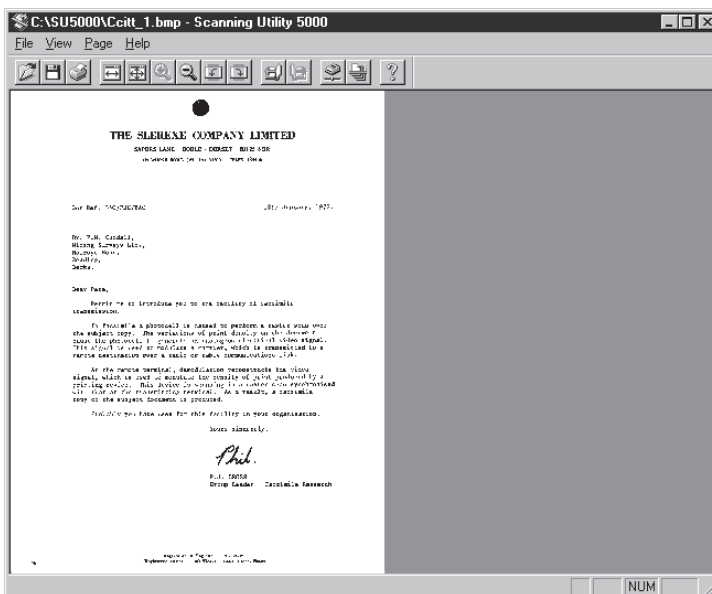
1 Sélectionnez [File] - [Open] ou cliquez sur  dans la barre d'outils.




➔ La boîte de dialogue Ouvrir apparaît.

2 Sélectionnez un fichier et cliquez sur [OK].

➔ Le fichier sélectionné apparaît.



MEMO

- Notez que si vous écrasez et sauvegardez un fichier TIFF (multi TIFF) ouvert en cliquant sur [File] – [Save Page As] ou en appuyant sur le bouton , seule la page affichée actuellement sera sauvegardée et toutes les images des autres pages seront supprimées.
- Pour fermer un fichier ouvert, fermez Scanning Utility 5000 en cliquant sur [File] – [Exit].

2.3

Divers modes de numérisation

Vous pouvez numériser les documents de diverses manières avec Scanning Utility 5000. Par exemple, vous pouvez choisir de modifier le mode de chargement papier en fonction de besoins particuliers, de numériser les deux faces d'un document ou de numériser les documents plus rapidement.

Cette partie décrit les méthodes de numérisation de documents suivantes:

- Numérisation dans les divers modes de charge (modes Distant, Semi-auto, Auto, manuel)
- Numérisation des deux faces (Duplex)
- Impression directe des images numérisées (scan batch print)
- Utilisation des feuilles de fonction
- Numérisation rapide
- Vérification de la numérisation

Numérisation dans les divers modes de charge

Sélectionnez un des modes de charge suivants en fonction de la qualité du document et du type de papier.

Les modes de chargement papier suivants sont disponibles :

- **Distant**

Lorsque vous posez le document sur le scanner et activez la commande Start Scanning dans Scanning Utility 5000, le papier est chargé. Des documents de deux pages ou plus peuvent être chargés.



MEMO

Pour les détails sur le mode Distant, voir “ Numérisation de deux pages ou plus ” (P. 23).

- **Semi-Auto**

Activez la commande Start Scanning dans Scanning Utility 5000, posez le document et appuyez sur la touche de marche du scanner pour commencer la numérisation.

Deux pages ou plus peuvent être chargées dans ce mode.

- **Auto**

Lorsque vous activez la commande Start Scanning dans Scanning Utility 5000, et posez le document sur le scanner, la numérisation commence automatiquement.

Deux pages ou plus peuvent être chargées dans ce mode.

- **Manuel**

Activez la commande Start Scanning dans Scanning Utility 5000 et insérez une seule page à la fois.




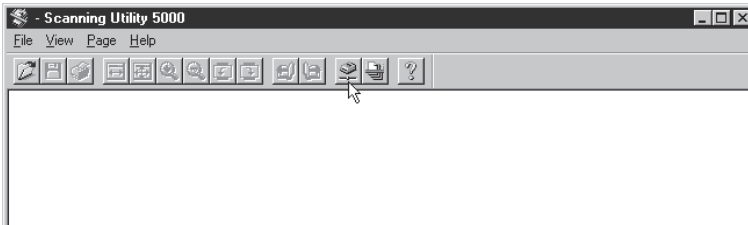
MEMO

Pour les détails sur la manière de poser les documents, voir " 3.2 Chargement et numérisation d'un document " (P. 38) dans le Mode d'emploi du DR-5020/5080C.

Voici comment procéder pour sélectionner le mode de chargement et la marche à suivre pour numériser un document dans chaque mode.

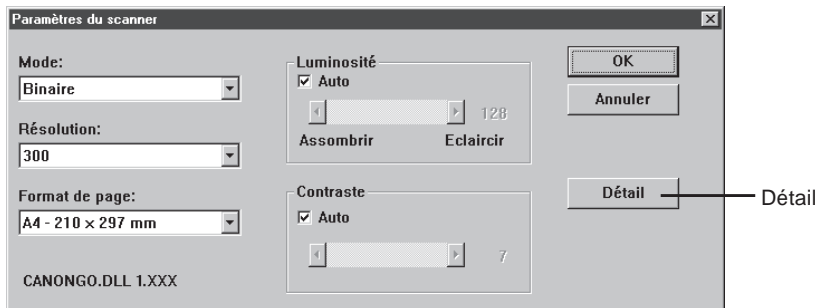
◆ Sélection du mode de charge

1 Sélectionnez [File] – [Scanner setting] ou cliquez sur  dans la barre d'outils.



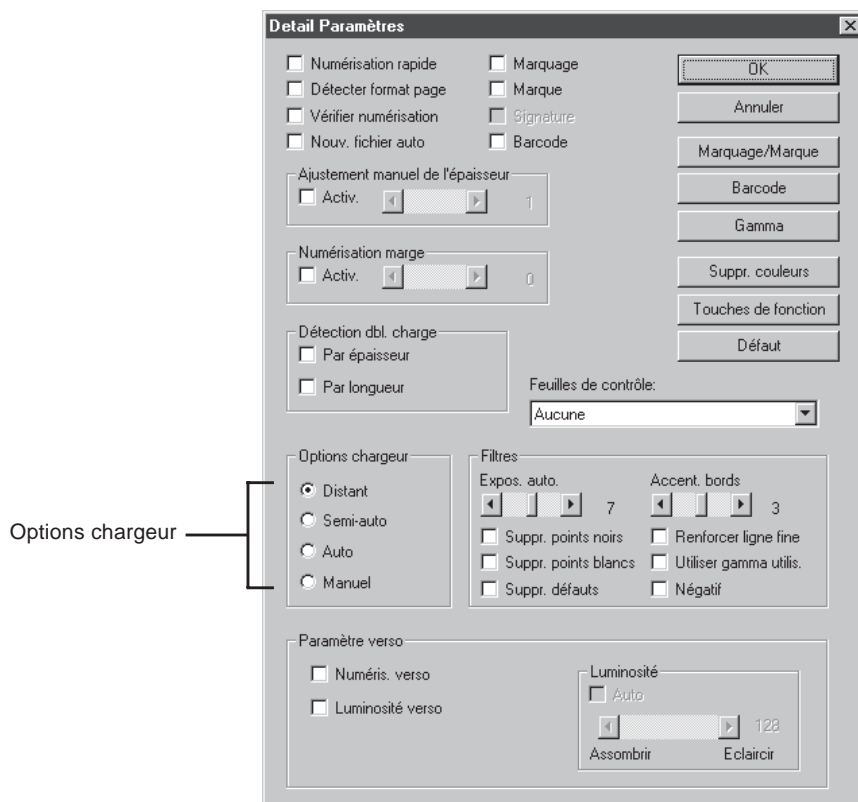
➔ La boîte de dialogue Paramètres du scanner apparaît.

2 Dans la boîte de dialogue Paramètres du scanner, cliquez sur [Détail].



➔ La boîte de dialogue Détail paramètres apparaît.

3 A Options chargeur, sélectionnez le mode de charge.



4 Cliquez sur [OK] pour revenir à la boîte de dialogue Paramètres du scanner.

5 Cliquez sur [OK] pour revenir à l'écran de numérisation.



Le mode de chargement papier peut aussi être modifié grâce au panneau de commande du scanner. Appuyez sur la touche Feeding Option sur le panneau de commande pour allumer le témoin du mode souhaité. Lorsque le mode Distant est sélectionné, aucun des témoins ne s'allume.

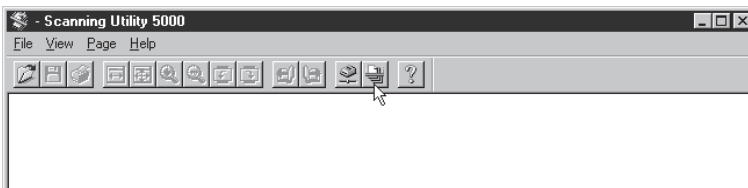
◆ Numérisation dans le mode Semi-Auto

Validez le mode Semi-auto et numérisez ensuite de document.

1 Effectuez l'opération décrite dans “ Sélection du mode de charge ” et sélectionnez “ Semi-Auto ”.

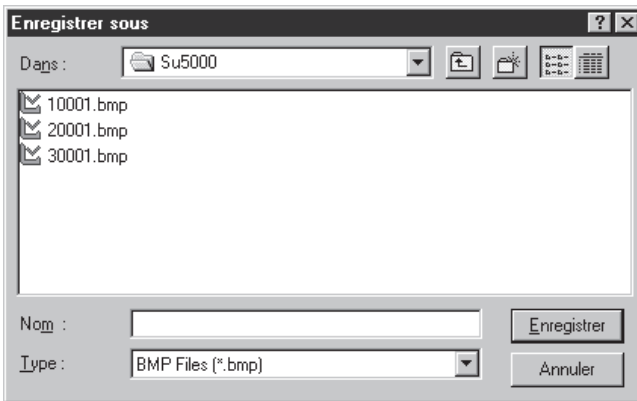
⇒ Le témoin Semi-Auto sur le panneau de commande du scanner s'allume.

2 Sélectionnez [File] - [Scan batch to file] ou cliquez sur dans la barre d'outils.



⇒ La boîte de dialogue Enregistrer sous apparaît.

3 Indiquez le nom de fichier sous lequel l'image sera numérisée, le type de fichier (format de sauvegarde) et l'endroit où le fichier doit être sauvegardé, puis cliquez sur [Enregistrer].

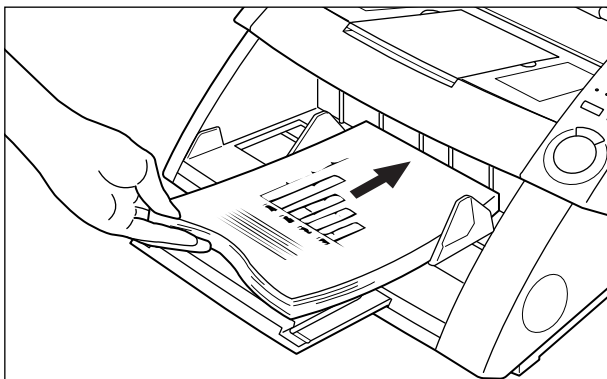


⇒ La boîte de dialogue Start scanning apparaît.

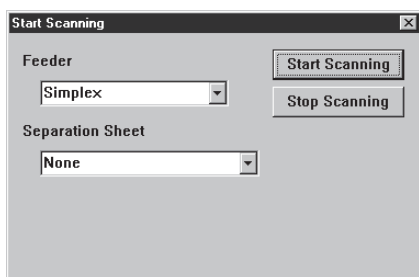


Avant d'indiquer le nom et le type du fichier (format de fichier) et l'endroit où le fichier doit être sauvegardé, reportez-vous à “ A propos des formats de sauvegarde ” (P. 28).

4 Posez le document sur le plateau de documents.

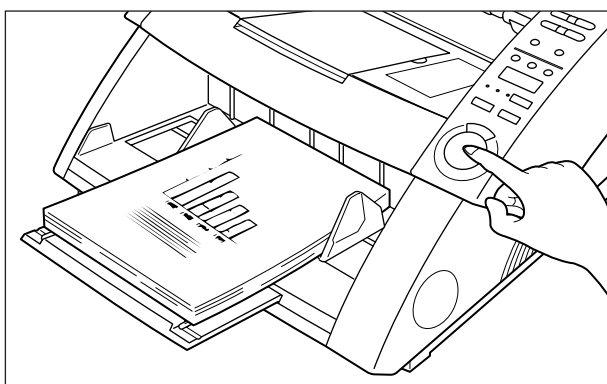


5 Cliquez sur [Start scanning].



⇒ La touche de marche au centre du panneau de commande du scanner s'allume (vert).

6 Appuyez sur la touche de marche sur le panneau de commande du scanner.



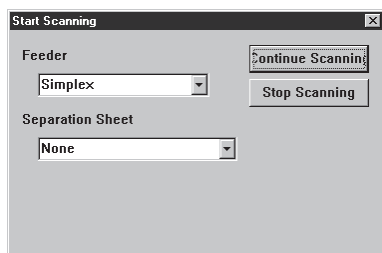
⇒ La numérisation commence.

Lorsqu'il n'y a plus de feuilles à numériser, le plateau de documents s'abaisse et le scanner attend que de nouvelles feuilles soient posées.

7 Posez le document suivant sur le plateau de documents et appuyez sur la touche de marche du panneau de commande du scanner.

8 Lorsqu'il n'y a plus de feuilles à numériser, appuyez sur la touche d'arrêt.

⇒ La boîte de dialogue Start Scanning (pause) apparaît.



9 Pour arrêter la numérisation, cliquez sur [Stop Scanning].
Pour continuer la numérisation, cliquez sur [Start Scanning] et revenez à l'étape 7.

10 Vérifiez l'image numérisée. (P. 27)

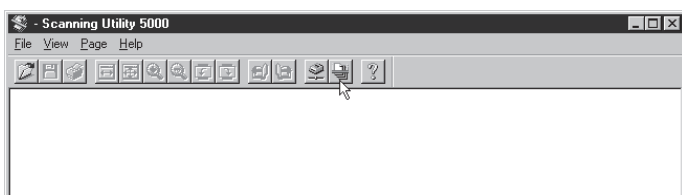
◆ Numérisation dans le mode Auto

Validez le mode Auto et numérisez le document.

1 Effectuez l'opération décrite dans " Sélection du mode de charge " et sélectionnez " Auto ".

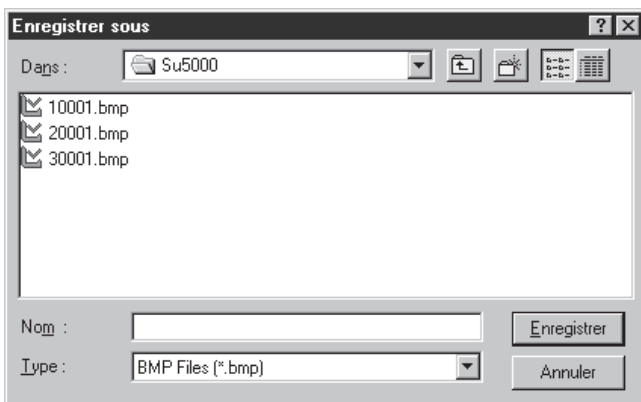
⇒ Le témoin Auto sur le panneau de commande du scanner s'allume.

2 Sélectionnez [File] - [Scan batch to file] ou cliquez sur dans la barre d'outils.



⇒ La boîte de dialogue Enregistrer sous apparaît.

3 Indiquez le nom de fichier sous lequel l'image sera numérisée, le type de fichier (format de sauvegarde) et l'endroit où le fichier doit être sauvegardé, puis cliquez sur [Enregistrer].



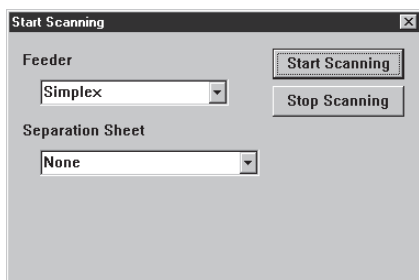
⇒ La boîte de dialogue Start Scanning apparaît.



MEMO

Avant d'indiquer le nom et le type du fichier (format de fichier) et l'endroit où le fichier doit être sauvegardé, reportez-vous à " A propos des formats de sauvegarde " (P. 28).

4 Cliquez sur [Start Scanning].



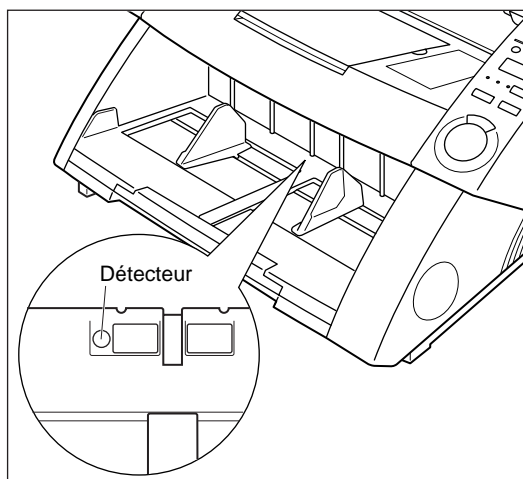
➔ La touche de marche au centre du panneau de commande du scanner s'allume (vert).



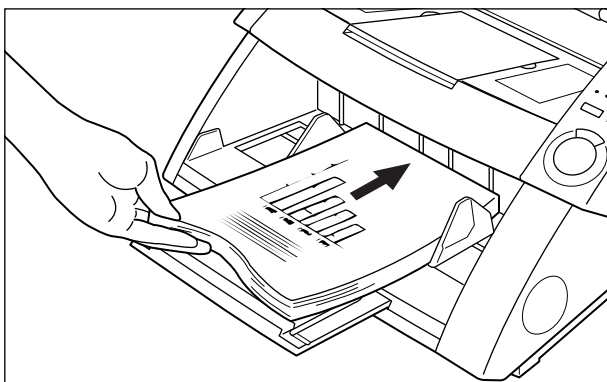
ATTENTION

Lorsque le mode de numérisation est réglé sur Auto, le détecteur situé sur le plateau de documents, comme indiqué sur l'illustration ci-dessous, détecte automatiquement le document et la numérisation commence.

Si le détecteur reste couvert par quelque chose après la numérisation, le scanner l'interprétera comme un document et le plateau de documents se mettra à bouger. Veuillez à ne pas recouvrir le détecteur par autre chose que des documents.



5 Posez le document sur le plateau de documents.



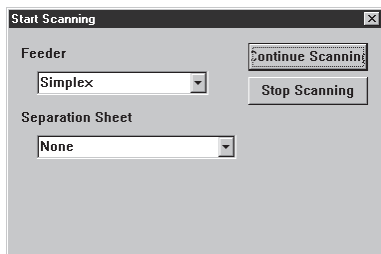
⇒ La numérisation commence.

Lorsqu'il n'y a plus de feuilles à numériser dans le scanner, le plateau de documents s'abaisse et le scanner attend que vous posiez le document suivant.

6 Posez le document suivant sur le plateau de documents.

7 Lorsqu'il n'y a plus de feuilles à numériser, appuyez sur la touche d'arrêt sur le panneau de commande du scanner.

⇒ La boîte de dialogue Start Scanning (pause) apparaît.



8 Pour arrêter la numérisation, cliquez sur [Stop Scanning].

Pour continuer la numérisation, cliquez sur [Start Scanning] et revenez à l'étape 5.

9 Vérifiez l'image numérisée. (P. 27)

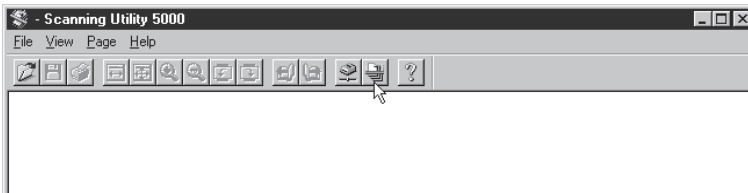
◆ Numérisation dans le mode Manuel

Vous pouvez aussi numériser un document manuellement en insérant chaque page une à une dans le scanner.

1 Effectuez l'opération décrite dans “ Sélection du mode de chargement ” et sélectionnez “ Manuel ”.

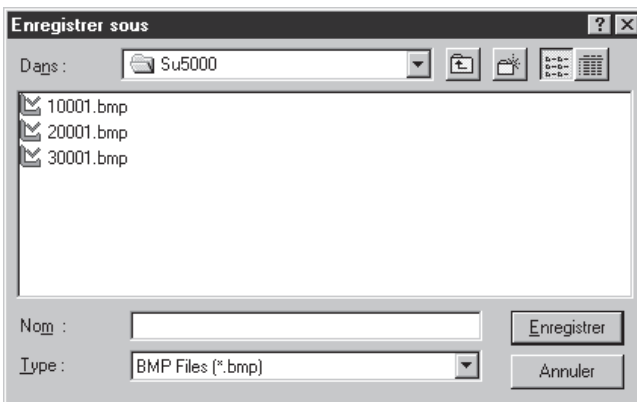
⇒ Le témoin Manual sur le panneau de commande du scanner s'allume et le plateau de documents s'élève.

2 Sélectionnez [File] - [Scan Batch File] ou cliquez sur dans la barre d'outils.



⇒ La boîte de dialogue Enregistrer sous apparaît.

3 Indiquez le nom et le type (format de sauvegarde) de fichier sous lequel l'image sera sauvegardée et cliquez sur [Enregistrer].

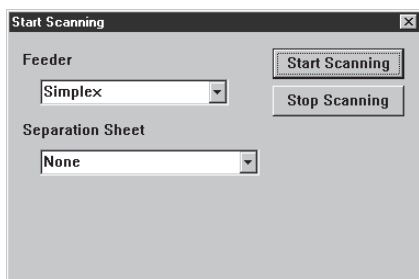


⇒ La boîte de dialogue Start Scanning apparaît.

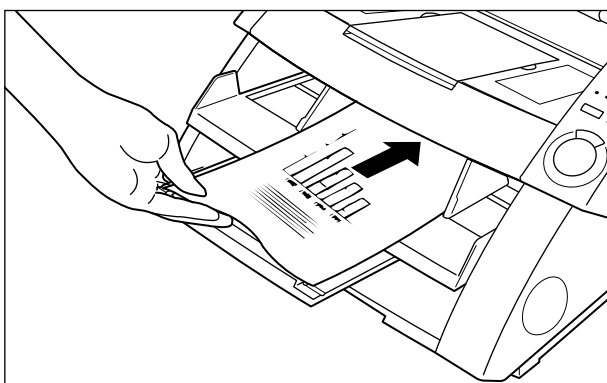


Avant d'indiquer le nom et le type du fichier (format de fichier) et l'endroit où le fichier doit être sauvegardé, reportez-vous à “ A propos des formats de sauvegarde ” (P. 28).

4 Cliquez sur [Start Scanning].



5 Posez une page sur le plateau de documents.

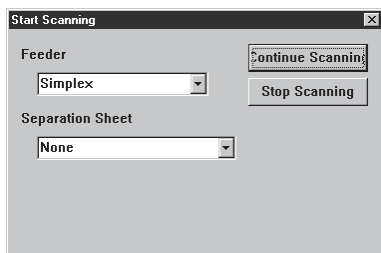


⇒ Le document est numérisé et le scanner attend que vous posiez le document suivant.

6 Continuez à insérer le document, page par page.

7 Lorsque vous avez terminé, appuyez sur [Stop Scanning].

⇒ La boîte de dialogue [Start Scanning] (pause) apparaît.



8 Pour arrêter la numérisation cliquez sur [Stop Scanning].

Pour continuer la numérisation, cliquez sur [Start Scanning] et revenez à l'étape 5.



MEMO

Lorsque la numérisation est terminée, le plateau de documents ne s'abaisse que si vous annulez le mode Manuel. Annulez ce mode en appuyant sur la touche Feeding Option ou en sélectionnant le mode de charge (P.35).

9 Vérifiez l'image numérisée (P. 27).

Numérisation Duplex

La numérisation Duplex permet de numériser des documents à deux faces (Recto Verso).

La numérisation Duplex s'effectue de la même manière que la numérisation ordinaire mais vous devez sélectionner Duplex lorsque vous activez la commande de numérisation.

1 Réglez les paramètres de numérisation et numérisez le document en fonction du mode de charge actuellement sélectionné.

Reportez-vous à la page indiquée entre parenthèses pour les détails sur chaque mode de charge.

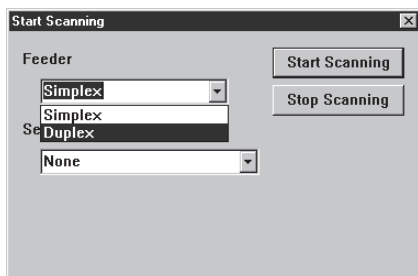
Mode Distant : "Numérisation de deux pages ou plus". (P. 23)

Mode Semi-auto : "Numérisation dans le mode Semi-auto". (P. 37)

Mode Auto : "Numérisation dans le mode Auto". (P. 40)

Mode Manuel : "Numérisation dans le mode Manuel". (P. 43)

2 Lorsque la boîte de dialogue Start Scanning apparaît, cliquez sur le bouton Feeder ▾ et sélectionnez Duplex avant de commencer.



MEMO

- La numérisation Duplex peut aussi être sélectionnée sur le panneau de commande du scanner.
Appuyez sur la touche Simplex/Duplex du panneau de commande du scanner pour sélectionner [Duplex] et effectuez les opérations nécessaires (étape 1 ci-dessus) pour numériser le document.
- Vous pouvez aussi utiliser les feuilles de fonction (feuilles de contrôle du scanner) pour la numérisation Duplex.
Si la feuille de contrôle du scanner est posée sur le haut du document, les deux faces du document seront automatiquement numérisées. Pour de plus amples informations à ce sujet, voir "Utilisation des feuilles de fonction" (P. 48) ou reportez-vous au Mode d'emploi séparé du DR-5020/5080C.

Impression directe des images numérisées

Les images des documents numérisés peuvent être imprimées telles quelles. Dans ce cas, elles ne seront pas sauvegardées dans un fichier.



MEMO

L'image numérisée est automatiquement imprimée sur l'imprimante sélectionnée comme imprimante habituelle.
Sélectionnez l'imprimante dans [File] – [Printer setting].

1 Réglez les paramètres de numérisation et numérisez le document en fonction du mode de charge actuellement sélectionné.

Reportez-vous à la page indiquée entre parenthèses pour les détails sur chaque mode de charge.

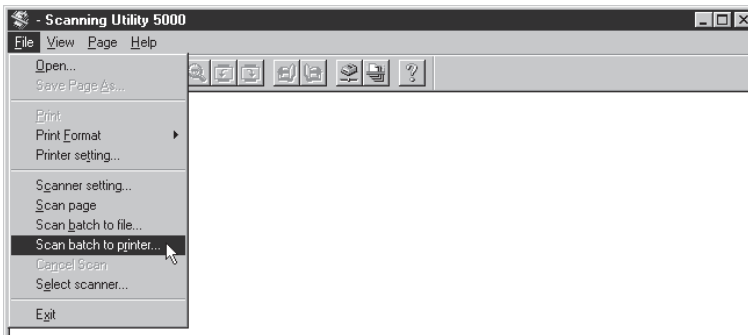
Mode Distant : “Numérisation de deux pages ou plus”. (P. 23)

Mode Semi-auto : “ Numérisation dans le mode Semi-auto ”. (P. 37)

Mode Auto : “ Numérisation dans le mode Auto ”. (P. 40)

Mode Manuel : “ Numérisation dans le mode Manuel ”. (P. 43)

2 Sélectionnez [File] - [Scan batch to printer].



⇒ Le document est numérisé et imprimé sur l'imprimante actuellement sélectionnée comme imprimante habituelle.

Utilisation des feuilles de fonction

Des feuilles de fonction sont fournies avec le scanner. Elles peuvent être utilisées pour contrôler la numérisation.

Les deux types de feuilles de fonction suivantes sont fournies avec le scanner.

● Feuilles de contrôle du scanner

Ces feuilles contrôlent le mode dans lequel le document est numérisé. Les feuilles de contrôle suivantes sont fournies pour chaque mode de numérisation.

Mode Recto-verso

Commande au scanner de numériser et de stocker le contenu de la face avant et de la face arrière de la page.

Insérez cette feuille avant le document qui doit être numérisé et posez-la avec le document dans le scanner.

Mode Recto

Commande au scanner de numériser et de stocker le contenu de la face avant de la page seulement. Insérez la feuille de fonction avant le document à numériser et posez-la avec le document dans le scanner.

Mode Photo

Commande au scanner de valider le mode Photo pour la numérisation et le stockage de photographies. Insérez la feuille de fonction avant le document photographique et posez-la avec le document dans le scanner. Cette feuille n'est valide que lorsque le mode de numérisation est réglé sur Binaire dans l'application. Elle est ignorée si le mode de numérisation est réglé sur niveaux de gris ou Couleurs.

Mode Texte

Commande au scanner de valider le mode Texte pour la numérisation et le stockage de textes. Insérez cette feuille de fonction avant le document et posez-la avec le document dans le scanner. Cette feuille n'est valide que lorsque le mode de numérisation est réglé sur Binaire dans l'application. Elle est ignorée si le mode de numérisation est réglé sur niveaux de gris ou Couleurs.

● Feuille de séparation des travaux

Divise automatiquement un document en fichiers séparés dans lesquels sera stocké chaque travail. Insérez cette feuille de fonction avant le nouveau document et posez-la avec le document dans le scanner.




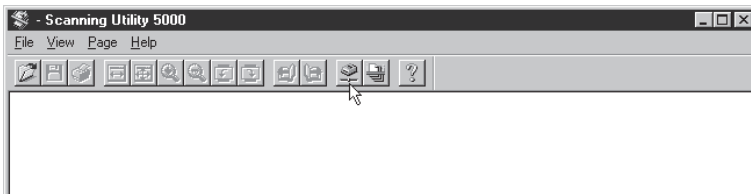
- Pour de plus amples informations sur les feuilles de fonction, reportez-vous au Mode d'emploi du DR-5020/5080C ou au Guide d'utilisation des feuilles de fonction.
- Bien que les feuilles de fonction puissent être mélangées avec des documents de taille différente, essayez d'utiliser des feuilles de fonction de même taille que le document dans la mesure du possible.

Voici comment procéder pour numériser des documents à l'aide des feuilles de fonction.

◆ Feuille de contrôle du scanner

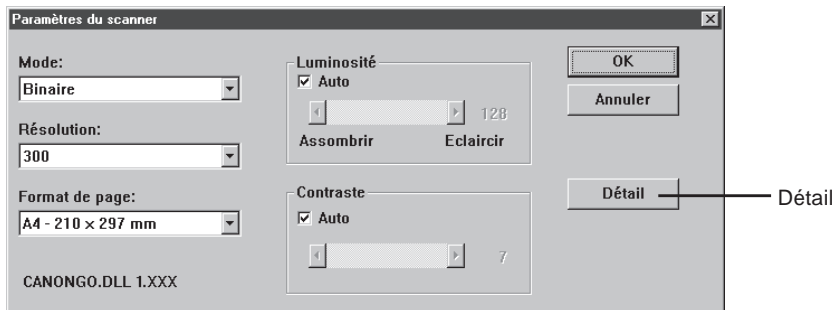
Avant d'utiliser une feuille de contrôle lors de la numérisation d'un document, sélectionnez le réglage de détection de feuille.

- 1 Sélectionnez [File] – [Scanner setting] ou cliquez sur  dans la barre d'outils.



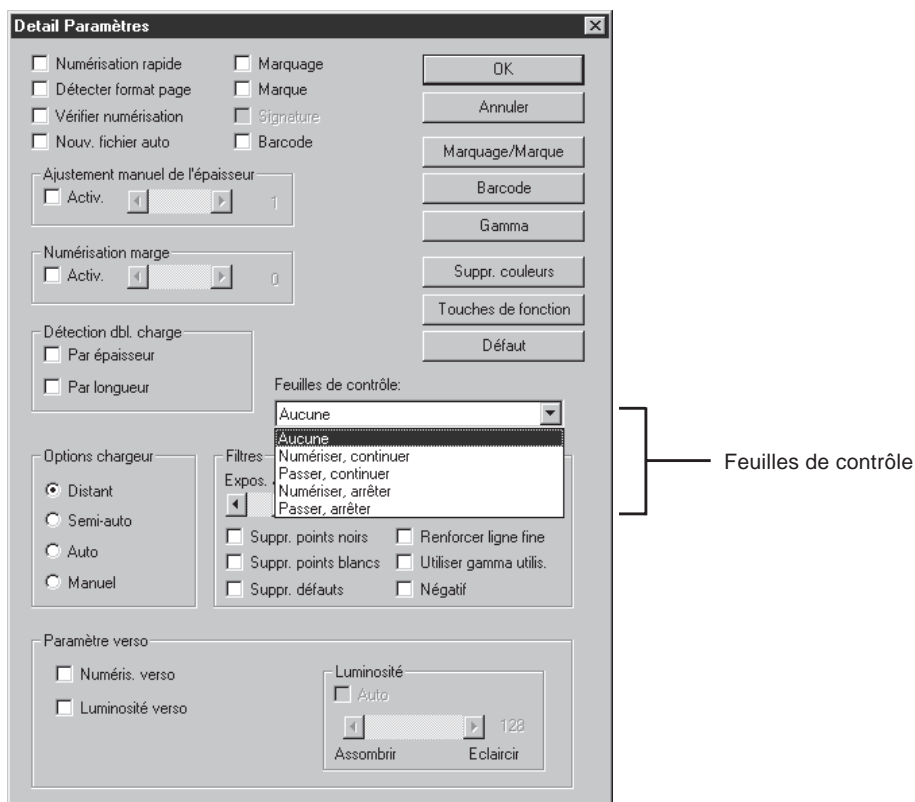
⇒ La boîte de dialogue Paramètres du scanner apparaît.

- 2 Dans la boîte de dialogue Paramètres du scanner, cliquez sur [Détail].



⇒ La boîte de dialogue Détail paramètres apparaît.

3 A Feuilles de contrôle, sélectionnez le type de détection.



- **Aucune**
Les feuilles de contrôle du scanner ne sont pas détectées.
- **Numériser, continuer**
La feuille de contrôle du scanner est détectée et numérisée, puis la numérisation continue.
- **Passer, continuer**
La feuille de contrôle du scanner est détectée et sautée (non numérisée), puis la numérisation continue.
- **Numériser, arrêter**
La feuille de contrôle du scanner est détectée et numérisée, puis la numérisation s'arrête.
- **Passer, arrêter**
La feuille de contrôle du scanner est détectée et sautée (non numérisée), puis la numérisation s'arrête.

4 Cliquez sur [OK] pour revenir à la boîte de dialogue Paramètres du scanner.

5 Cliquez sur [OK] pour revenir à l'écran de numérisation.

6 Numérisez le document avec la feuille de contrôle.

◆ Feuille de séparation des travaux

Lorsque vous utilisez une feuille de séparation des travaux, la numérisation s'effectue de la même manière que la numérisation ordinaire mais vous devez sélectionner le paramètre de détection lorsque vous activez la commande de numérisation.

1 Réglez les paramètres de numérisation et numérisez le document en fonction du mode de charge actuellement sélectionné.

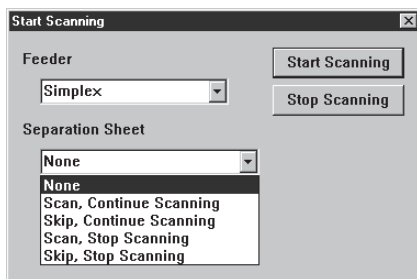
Reportez-vous à la page indiquée entre parenthèses pour les détails sur chaque mode de charge.

Mode Distant : “Numérisation de deux pages ou plus”. (P. 23)

Mode Semi-auto : “ Numérisation dans le mode Semi-auto ”. (P. 37)

Mode Auto : “ Numérisation dans le mode Auto ”. (P. 40)

2 Lorsque la boîte de dialogue Start Scanning apparaît, cliquez sur le bouton Separation Sheet ▾ et sélectionnez le type de détection.



- **None**

La feuille de séparation des travaux n'est pas détectée.

- **Scan, Continue Scanning**

Enregistre les détails de la feuille de séparation des travaux sous forme d'image et continue la numérisation.

- **Skip, Continue Scanning**

La numérisation continue sans enregistrer les détails de la feuille de séparation des travaux sous forme d'image.

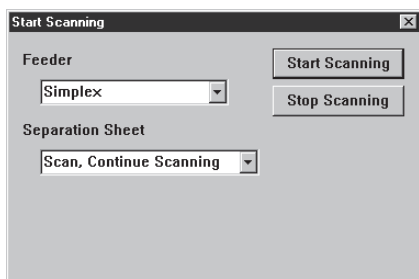
- **Scan, Stop Scanning**

Enregistre les détails de la feuille de séparation des travaux sous forme d'image et arrête la numérisation.

- **Skip, Stop Scanning**

Arrête la numérisation sans enregistrer les détails de la feuille de séparation des travaux sous forme d'image.

3 Cliquez sur le bouton [Start Scanning].



Numérisation rapide

Le document est numérisé rapidement.

Bien que la vitesse de charge du document augmente, ce qui réduit le temps de numérisation du document, la qualité de l'image est légèrement inférieure.



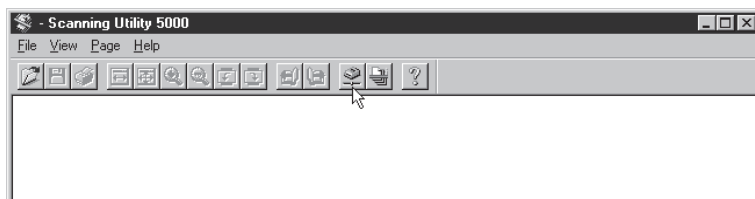
MEMO

La numérisation rapide peut être exécutée seulement si 200 ppp ou 300 ppp sont validés comme résolution.

Si 200 ppp est validé, les images seront numérisées à 200 x 100 (Horizontal x Vertical) ppp et sortiront à 200 x 200 ppp.

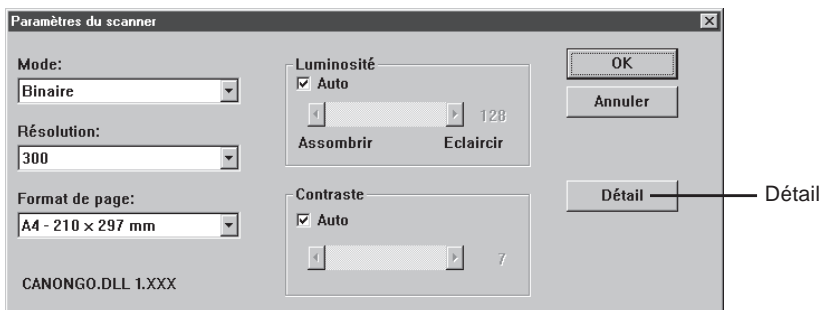
Si 300 ppp est validé, les images seront numérisées à 300 x 150 (Horizontal x Vertical) ppp et sortiront à 300 x 300 ppp.

1 Sélectionnez [File] – [Scanner setting...] ou cliquez sur dans la barre d'outils.



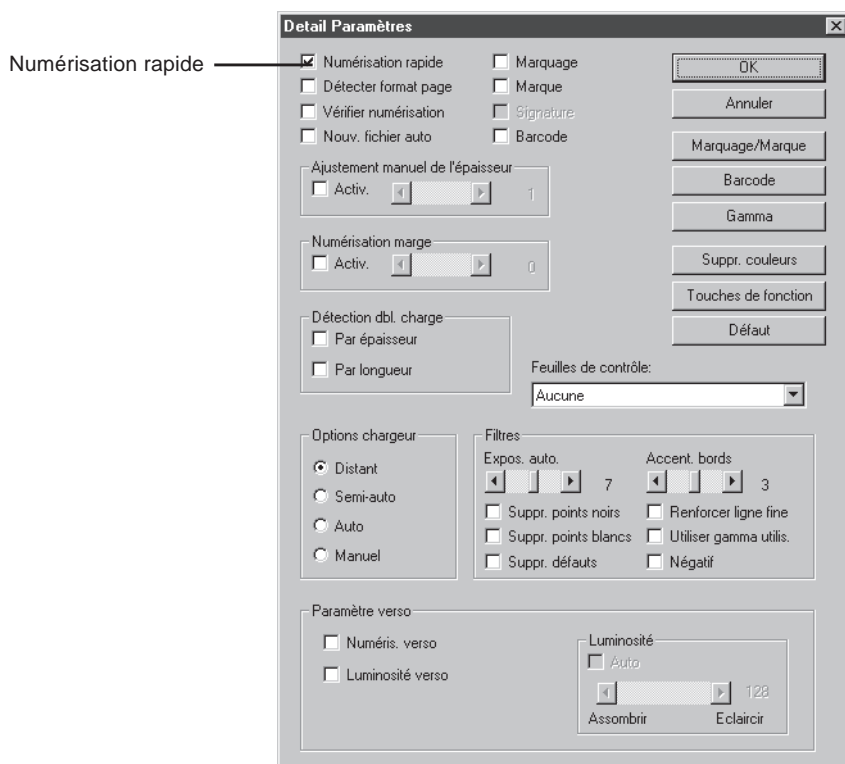
⇒ La boîte de dialogue Paramètres du scanner apparaît.

2 Dans la boîte de dialogue Paramètres du scanner, cliquez sur [Détail].



⇒ La boîte de dialogue Détail paramètres apparaît.

3 Pour sélectionner la numérisation rapide, cliquez sur la case Numérisation rapide.



4 Cliquez sur [OK] pour revenir à la boîte de dialogue Paramètres du scanner.

5 Cliquez sur [OK] pour revenir à l'écran de numérisation.

6 Numérisez le document en fonction du mode de charge actuellement sélectionné.

Reportez-vous à la page indiquée entre parenthèses pour les détails sur chaque mode de charge.

Mode Distant : "Numérisation de deux pages ou plus". (P. 23)

Mode Semi-auto : " Numérisation dans le mode Semi-auto ". (P. 37)

Mode Auto : " Numérisation dans le mode Auto ". (P. 40)

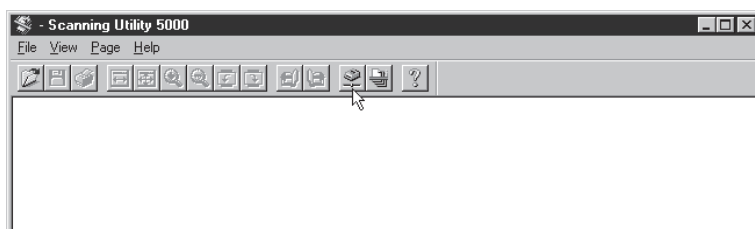
Mode Manuel : " Numérisation dans le mode Manuel " (P. 43)

Vérification de la numérisation

Cette fonction permet de vérifier le nombre de pages du documents indiqué (ou compté) avant la numérisation par rapport au nombre de pages numérisées. Si les nombres sont différents, une erreur sera affichée.

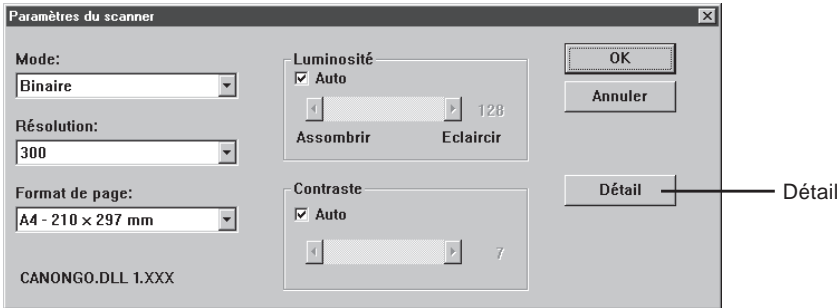
◆ Validation de la vérification de la numérisation

1 Sélectionnez [File] – [Scanner setting...] ou cliquez sur  dans la barre d'outils.



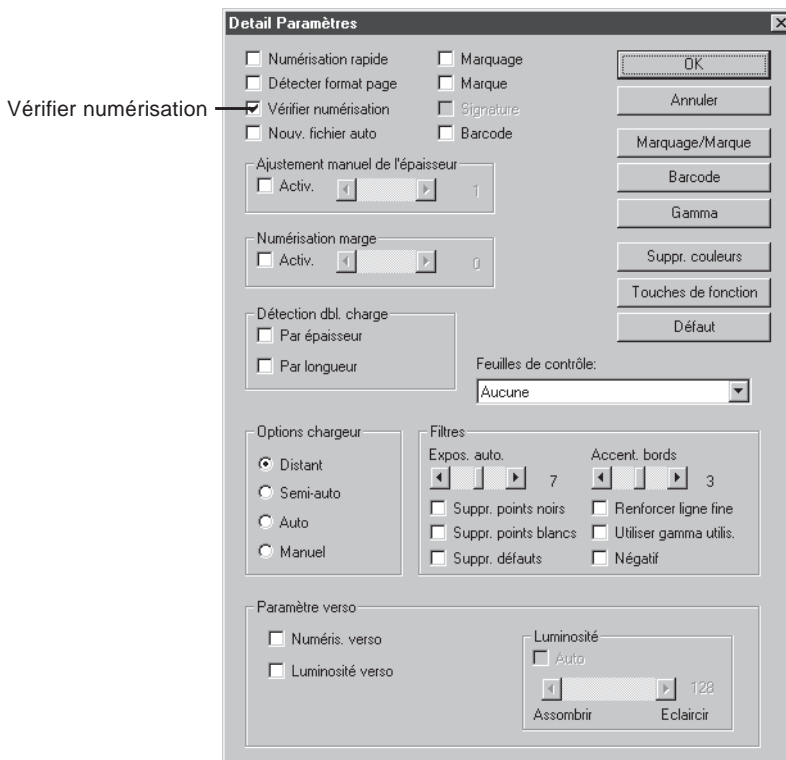
➞ La boîte de dialogue Paramètres du scanner apparaît.

2 Dans la boîte de dialogue Paramètres du scanner, cliquez sur [Détail].



➡ La boîte de dialogue Paramètres du scanner apparaît.

3 Pour sélectionner la vérification de la numérisation, cliquez sur la case Vérifier numérisation.



4 Cliquez sur [OK] pour revenir à la boîte de dialogue Paramètres du scanner.

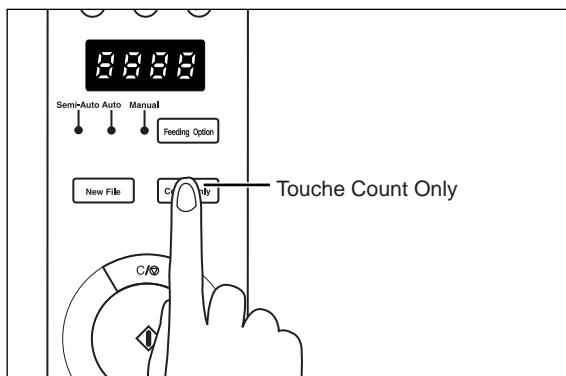
5 Cliquez sur [OK] pour revenir à l'écran de numérisation.

◆ Introduction du nombre de pages du document

Si vous connaissez déjà le nombre de pages du document que vous voulez numériser

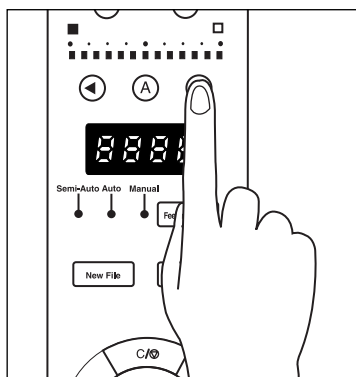
Introduisez directement le nombre de pages sur le compteur.

1 Appuyez sur la touche Count Only du panneau de commande du scanner.



➔ La touche Count Only et le témoin Semi-Auto s'allument et la touche de marche devient verte.

2 Appuyez sur les touches ◀ et ▶ sur le panneau de commande du scanner pour indiquer le nombre de pages.



➔ Le nombre de pages apparaît dans le compteur.



MEMO

Si vous appuyez sur la touche ▶ le nombre augmentera et si vous appuyez sur la touche ◀ le nombre diminuera.
Pour augmenter ou diminuer plus rapidement le nombre, maintenez la pression sur la touche.

3 Lorsque vous avez indiqué le nombre de pages du document, appuyez sur la touche Count Only pour annuler le mode de comptage.

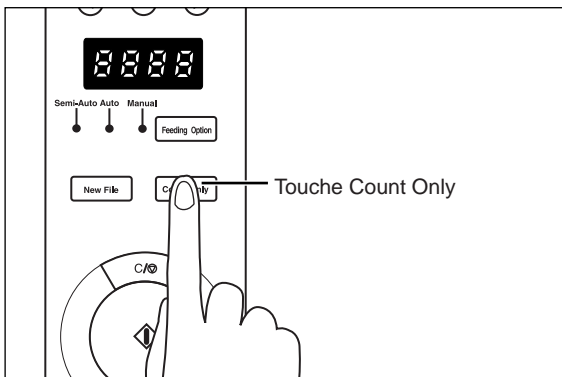


Pour remettre le compteur à zéro, appuyez sur la touche d'arrêt pendant au moins deux secondes.

Si vous ne connaissez pas le nombre de pages du document

Utilisez la fonction de comptage du scanner pour compter le nombre de pages.

1 Appuyez sur la touche Count Only du panneau de commande du scanner.



⇒ La touche Count Only et le témoin Semi-Auto s'allument et la touche de marche devient verte.

2 Posez le document sur le plateau de documents et appuyez sur la touche de marche.

⇒ Le nombre de pages du document est compté et apparaît dans le compteur.

3 Lorsque vous avez terminé de compter le nombre de pages du document, appuyez à nouveau sur la touche Count Only pour annuler le mode de comptage.



Pour remettre le compteur à zéro, appuyez sur la touche d'arrêt pendant au moins deux secondes.

◆ Numérisation de documents

Si le nombre de pages que vous avez introduit (ou compté) est différent du nombre de pages numérisées, un message d'erreur apparaîtra dans le compteur à la fin de la numérisation.

1 Numérisez le document en fonction du mode de chargement papier actuellement sélectionné.

Reportez-vous à la page indiquée entre parenthèses pour les détails sur chaque mode de charge.

Mode Distant : “Numérisation de deux pages ou plus”. (P. 23)

Mode Semi-auto : “Numérisation dans le mode Semi-auto”. (P. 37)

Mode Auto : “Numérisation dans le mode Auto”. (P. 40)

Mode Manuel : “Numérisation dans le mode Manuel”. (P. 43)

2 Posez le document et numérisez-le.

- **Si le nombre de pages numérisées est supérieur au nombre de pages indiqué par le compteur :**

Le document a été numérisé et la numérisation s'est arrêtée au nombre de pages indiqué par le compteur.

Le compteur affiche le code d'erreur “ U01 ” et le message “ Verify Count Error ” apparaît sur l'écran de l'ordinateur.

Recompter le nombre de pages du document.



MEMO

“ U01 ” apparaît aussi avec un message d'erreur lorsque vous effectuez une vérification de la numérisation sans afficher le nombre de pages du document.

- **Si le nombre de pages numérisées est inférieur au nombre de pages indiqué par le compteur :**

Le compteur indique une erreur de vérification de la numérisation par le code " U02 " .

Recomptez le nombre de pages du document.

Plusieurs pages du document ont probablement été chargées en même temps. Vérifiez si toutes les pages du document ont été numérisées.



MEMO

Pour remettre le compteur à zéro, appuyez sur la touche d'arrêt.

2.4

Réglage des conditions de numérisation

Réglez les conditions dans lesquelles la numérisation sera effectuée. Sélectionnez la boîte de dialogue dont vous avez besoin pour la fonction que vous voulez utiliser et réglez les paramètres nécessaires.

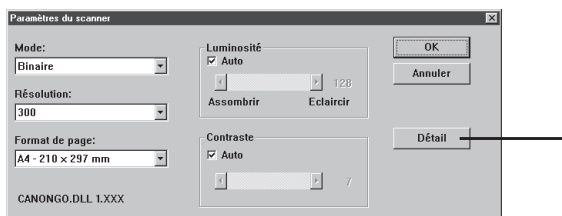
Pour les détails sur les paramètres qui apparaissent dans chaque boîte de dialogue, voir la page de référence.

1 Sélectionnez [File] – [Scanner setting...] ou cliquez sur  dans la barre d'outils.

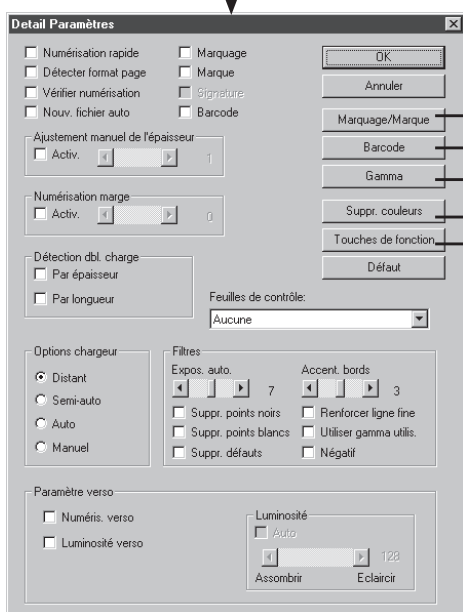


⇒ La boîte de dialogue Paramètres du scanner apparaît.

2 Affichez l'écran du paramètre souhaité et effectuez les réglages nécessaires.



Boîte de dialogue Paramètres du scanner (→ P. 61)



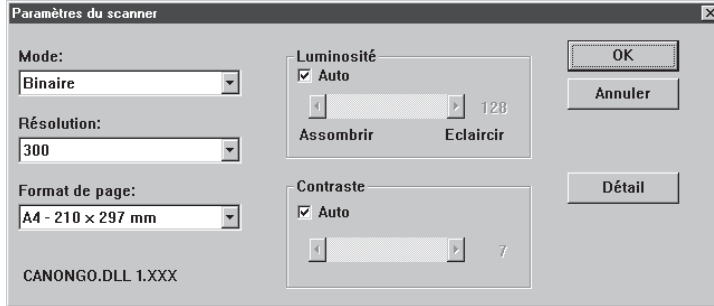
- Marquage/Marque (→ P. 69)
- Barcode (→ P. 74)
- Gamma (→ P. 79)
- Suppr. couleurs (→ P. 82)
- Touches de fonction (→ P. 83)

Boîte de dialogue Détail Paramètres (→ P. 63)

Paramètres de base

Les paramètres de base définissent les conditions de base pour la numérisation de documents.

Ils se règlent dans la boîte de dialogue Paramètres du scanner.



<Paramètres du scanner>

Paramètre	Description
Mode	<p>Définit la manière dont l'image sera numérisée. Seul le mode [Binaire] [Binaire ED] est disponible sur le DR-5020.</p> <p>Les modes disponibles sont parfois limités par le format du papier. Pour les détails, voir "Tableaux des modes de numérisation du DR-5020/5080C" (P. 88) dans le Mode d'emploi du DR-5020/5080C.</p> <p>[Binaire] Ce réglage numérise l'image complètement en noir et blanc sans nuances de gris.</p> <p>[Binaire ED] Ce réglage numérise l'image complètement en noir et blanc. Des zones de demi-tons sont simulées et reproduites grâce à la diffusion d'erreurs.</p> <p>[Echelle de gris – 4 (16, 256)] Ce mode sert à numériser des photos et des documents à nuances de gris et en demi-tons. La taille du fichier sera d'autant plus grande que le nombre de nuances augmente.</p> <p>[Couleurs – 3 (6, 12, 24 bits)] Ce mode sert à numériser des photos et des documents en couleurs et demi-tons. La taille du fichier sera d'autant plus grande que le nombre de bits augmente.</p>
Résolution	<p>Ce mode permet de définir la résolution, c'est-à-dire le nombre de points par pouce.</p> <p>Vous avez le choix entre 13 résolutions: 100, 200, 210, 220, 230, 240, 250, 260, 270, 280, 290, 300 et 400 ppp.</p> <p>Si vous sélectionnez 200 ou 300, vous pourrez aussi sélectionner Numérisation rapide (P. 63) dans la boîte de dialogue Détail Paramètres.</p> <p>Les modes disponibles sont parfois limités par le format du papier. Pour les détails, voir "Tableaux des modes de numérisation du DR-5020/5080C" (P. 88) dans le Mode d'emploi du DR-5020/5080C.</p>

Format de page	<p>Sert à sélectionner un des formats de document suivants :</p> <p>LETTER - 8,5 x 11 pouces LEGAL - 8,5 x 14 pouces A3 – 297 x 420 mm A4 – 210 x 297 mm A4-R – 297 x 210 mm A5 – 148 x 210 mm A6 – 105 x 148 mm B4 (ISO) – 250 x 353 mm B4 (JIS) – 257 x 364 mm B5 (ISO) – 176 x 250 mm B5 (JIS) – 182 x 257 mm Maximum scanner (295 x 432 mm)</p> <p>Si le document numérisé est plus grand que le format défini, ses bords seront tronqués. Par contre, si le document numérisé est plus petit que le format défini, une marge noire apparaîtra tout autour du document.</p> <p>Si vous avez sélectionné Détecter format page (P. 63) dans la boîte de dialogue Détail Paramètres, ce réglage sera ignoré.</p>
Luminosité	<p>Permet de définir automatiquement ou manuellement la luminosité de l'image. La luminosité peut être réglée manuellement dans une plage de 1 à 255.</p>
Contraste	<p>Permet d'ajuster automatiquement ou manuellement le contraste. Le contraste peut être réglé manuellement dans une plage de 1 à 13. Le contraste est élevé si la valeur est élevée et il est faible si la valeur est faible.</p>



- Le réglage de contraste est désactivé lorsque le [Mode] [Binaire] est sélectionné.
- Sur le DR-5020, la case [Contraste] est grise lorsque le [Mode] [Binaire] est sélectionné.

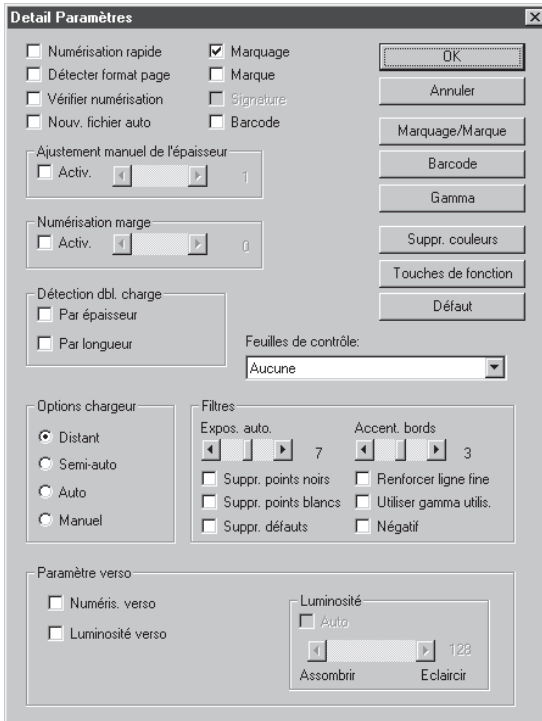
<Boutons>

Paramètre	Description
OK	Lorsque vous avez terminé des réglages, ce bouton valide les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.
Annuler	Annule tous les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.
Détail	Ouvre la boîte de dialogue Détail Paramètres (P. 63) pour le paramétrage de fonctions particulières, comme les filtres, la vitesse de numérisation, la détection du format de page et la



Paramètres détaillés

Définissez les conditions de numérisation.

Ces paramètres se définissent dans la boîte de dialogue Détail Paramètres.



Paramètre	Description
Numérisation rapide	<p>Ce paramètre est disponible lorsque la résolution est réglée sur 200 ou 300 ppp.</p> <p>Lorsque 200 ppp est défini, les images sont numérisées à 200 x 100 ppp (Horizontal x Vertical) et l'image obtenue est à 200 x 200 ppp.</p> <p>Lorsque 300 ppp est défini, les images sont numérisées à 300 x 150 ppp (Horizontal x Vertical) et l'image obtenue est à 300 x 300 ppp.</p> <p>Bien que la numérisation soit plus rapide dans ces deux cas, la qualité de l'image numérisée sera légèrement inférieure.</p> <p>Pour les détails sur la numérisation rapide, voir P. 52.</p>
Détecter format page	<p>Le DR-5020/5080C définit la zone numérisée en fonction de la largeur et de la longueur du document détectées et numérise toute la page.</p> <p>Lorsque cette option est sélectionnée, Format de page (P. 62) dans la boîte de dialogue Paramètres du scanner est désactivé.</p>

Vérifier numérisation	Vérifiez le nombre de pages comptées avant la numérisation par rapport au nombre de pages numérisées. Si les nombres sont différents, une erreur s'affiche. Pour les détails sur la vérification de la numérisation, voir la marche à suivre à la page 54.
Nouveau fichier auto	Ce réglage génère un signal de saut de page à chaque arrêt de la numérisation.
Marquage	Valide la fonction Marquage pour imprimer des caractères particuliers sur le document numérisé. Le module de marquage optionnel doit être installé pour pouvoir utiliser cette fonction.
Marque	Valide la fonction Marque pour l'impression de caractères particuliers sur l'image numérisée.
Signature	Valide le fonctionnement du module optionnel ED600 qui permet d'imprimer un cachet (texte, date et signature) au verso des documents.
Barcode	Valide la fonction de lecture des codes barres qui apparaissent dans les documents. Le décodeur de codes barres optionnel est nécessaire pour pouvoir utiliser cette fonction.
Ajustement manuel de l'épaisseur	Permet de définir manuellement l'épaisseur de papier quand elle ne l'est pas automatiquement. Cliquez sur Activer et utilisez les boutons  et  pour définir l'épaisseur. L'épaisseur se définit dans la plage de 1 (le plus fin) à 13 (le plus épais). Utilisez ce paramètre pour ajuster manuellement l'épaisseur de papier lors de la numérisation d'originaux à revêtement spécial et de documents dont l'épaisseur ne peut pas être ajustée automatiquement, ou bien lorsque plusieurs feuilles sont fréquemment chargées dans le mode d'ajustement automatique de l'épaisseur de papier. Ce paramètre peut aussi être défini sur le panneau de commande du scanner. Pour les détails, reportez-vous au Mode d'emploi du DR-5020/5080C.

Numérisation marge	<p>Ajuste les marges (haut, bas, gauche et droite) de la zone numérisée.</p> <p>Pour ajuster les marges, cliquez sur Activer et utilisez les boutons ◀ et ▶.</p> <p>Définissez les marges entre -10 (réduction de la zone numérisée de 10 mm) et +10 (agrandissement de la zone numérisée de 10 mm).</p> <p>Par exemple, si vous voulez agrandir légèrement la zone numérisée pour que les bords du document ne soient pas tronqués, ajustez dans le sens de +. Sinon, si vous voulez réduire légèrement la zone numérisée pour ne pas avoir de cadre noir autour de l'image numérisée, ajustez dans le sens de -.</p>
Détection double charge	<p>Sélectionnez la méthode de détection de double charge. Une " double charge " est détectée lorsqu'au moins deux feuilles du document sont chargées en même temps ou lorsqu'une partie d'une feuille se superpose à une autre feuille, lors de la numérisation continue des feuilles d'un document.</p> <p>[Par épaisseur] Sert à détecter la double charge de papier en fonction de l'épaisseur du papier. Si la première feuille d'un document(*) est moins épaisse que les feuilles suivantes, le scanner interprétera une double charge lors de la numérisation de la 2^e feuille et indiquera une erreur.</p> <p>[Par longueur] Sert à détecter une double charge en fonction de la longueur du papier. Si la première feuille d'un document(*) est moins longue que les feuilles suivantes, le scanner interprétera une double charge lors de la numérisation de la 2^e feuille et indiquera une erreur.</p> <p>* La détection de double charge prend l'épaisseur et la longueur de la première feuille du document comme référence. Lorsque la première page du document est chargée, le scanner mémorise l'épaisseur et la longueur du document.</p>

<p>Feuilles de contrôle</p>	<p>Sélectionne la manière dont les feuilles de contrôle du scanner seront détectées. (P. 48)</p> <p>[Aucune] Aucune feuille de contrôle du scanner n'est détectée.</p> <p>[Numériser, continuer] La feuille de contrôle du scanner est détectée et numérisée, puis la numérisation continue.</p> <p>[Passer, continuer] La feuille de contrôle du scanner est détectée et sautée (non numérisée), puis la numérisation continue.</p> <p>[Numériser, arrêter] La feuille de contrôle du scanner est détectée et numérisée, puis la numérisation s'arrête.</p> <p>[Passer, arrêter] La feuille de contrôle du scanner est détectée et sautée (non numérisée), puis la numérisation s'arrête.</p> <p>Pour les détails sur la numérisation avec les feuilles de contrôle, voir " Feuilles de fonction " dans le Mode d'emploi du DR-5020/5080C.</p>
<p>Options chargeur</p>	<p>Sélectionne la méthode de charge.</p> <p>Distant : Le document est chargé (numérisé) lorsque vous le posez et validez la commande de numérisation dans l'application.</p> <p>Semi-auto : Le document est chargé (numérisé) lorsque vous validez la commande de numérisation dans l'application et posez le document puis appuyez sur la touche de marche.</p> <p>Auto : Le document est chargé (numérisé) automatiquement lorsque vous posez le document.</p> <p>Manuel : Le document est chargé manuellement page par page après que la commande de numérisation ait été validée dans l'application. Utilisez cette option pour numériser des pages particulièrement épaisses ou fines.</p> <p>Ce paramètre peut aussi être défini sur le panneau de commande du scanner. Pour les détails, reportez-vous au Mode d'emploi du DR-5020/5080C.</p>
<p>Paramètres verso</p>	<p>Réglez ces paramètres pour numériser la face arrière d'un document.</p> <p>[Numérisation verso] Numérise la face arrière du document (les documents sont chargés face contre le scanner).</p> <p>[Luminosité verso] Définit automatiquement ou manuellement la luminosité de l'image. La luminosité peut être réglée manuellement dans la plage de 1 et 255.</p>



MEMO

- Lorsque la case [Numérisation verso] du document est cochée, le réglage de chargeur est [Simplex] lorsque la boîte de dialogue de [Start Scanning] est ouverte.
- Si la numérisation est effectuée alors que la case [Numérisation verso] est cochée et le réglage de chargeur est [Duplex], la case à cocher [Numérisation arrière] devient grise lorsque la boîte de dialogue [Détail Paramètres] est ouverte.
- Lorsque la case [Numérisation verso] est grise, il suffit de cliquer dessus pour qu'elle redevienne normale.

<Filtres>

Désignent les filtres de traitement de l'image.

Paramètre	Description
Exposition automatique	Définit le niveau de contraste dans une plage comprise entre 1 et 13 par un clic sur les boutons ◀ et ▶. Le réglage par défaut est 7.
Accentuer bords	Définit le niveau d'accentuation des contours des lettres et d'adoucissement du grain des images, telles les photos. Ce paramètre se règle sur 5 paliers à l'aide des boutons ◀ et ▶. Le réglage par défaut est 3.
Suppression points noirs	Supprime automatiquement les points noirs isolés (points uniques) sur un fond blanc.
Suppression points blancs	Supprime automatiquement les points blancs isolés (points uniques) sur un fond noir.
Suppression défauts	Supprime automatiquement les parties (protubérances) sortant des contours.
Renforcer ligne fine	Rejoint automatiquement les lignes fines interrompues ou à peine visibles lorsque le document numérisé contient des lignes fines.
Utiliser gamma utilisateur	Cochez ce paramètre pour utiliser les données gamma lues en utilisant le bouton Gamma.
Négatif	Produit le négatif de l'image numérisée.



MEMO

- Le paramètre [Exposition automatique] est validé lorsque [Mode] est réglé sur [Binaire].
- Le paramètre [Accentuer bords] est validé dans tous les modes.
- Les paramètres [Suppression points noirs], [Suppression points blancs], [Suppression défauts] et [Renforcer ligne fine] sont validés lorsque [Mode] est réglé sur [Binaire], [Binaire ED] ou [Couleur 3 bits].

<Boutons>

Paramètre	Description
OK	Valide les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.
Annuler	Annule tous les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.
Marquage/ Marque	Ouvre la boîte de dialogue Marquage/Marque (P. 69). Permet de valider la fonction Marquage ou de marque. Avec la fonction Marquage, des caractères particuliers sont imprimés sur le document numérisé, si le module de marquage optionnel est installé. Avec la fonction Marque, des caractères particuliers sont ajoutés aux images numérisées.
Barcode	Ouvre la boîte de dialogue Paramètres Barcode (P. 74). Règle les paramètres relatifs aux codes barres lorsque le décodeur de codes barres optionnel est installé.
Gamma	Ouvre la boîte de dialogue Paramètres gamma (P. 79). Importe et sauvegarde les données gamma de fichiers pour appliquer des couleurs et des tons. Les données gamma téléchargées sont validées lorsque la case Utiliser gamma utilisateur est cochée.
Suppression couleurs	Ouvre la boîte de dialogue Suppression couleurs (P. 82). Désactive la numérisation de certaines couleurs des documents. Cette fonction n'est disponible que sur le DR-5080C.
Touches de fonction	Ouvre la boîte de dialogue Paramètres des touches de fonction (P. 83). Dans cette boîte de dialogue, vous pouvez attribuer des fonctions particulières aux touches de fonction du scanner.
Défaut	Cliquez sur ce bouton pour rétablir les réglages par défaut de tous les paramètres.



MEMO

La suppression de couleurs est valide lorsque le mode de numérisation est réglé sur Binaire, Binaire ED ou Echelle de gris.

Paramètres Marquage/ Marque

Lorsque le module de marquage optionnel est installé, n'importe quels caractère et compteur peuvent être imprimés sur le document numérisé. La fonction Marque permet d'ajouter des caractères et des compteurs aux images numérisées. Les caractères à imprimer ou à ajouter avec la fonction marque et les conditions d'impression se définissent dans la boîte de dialogue Paramètres Marquage/ Marque.

Les réglages effectués dans cette boîte de dialogue sont valides pour les deux fonctions, Marquage et Marque. Ainsi les caractères imprimés par le module de marquage seront identiques aux caractères ajoutés par la fonction Marque.



MEMO

- La fonction Marque peut être utilisée même sans module de marquage.
- Si vous validez la fonction Marque et numérisez le document en mode Duplex, les caractères seront imprimés sur la face avant (face dirigée vers le haut lorsque le document est chargé) du document.


FRANÇAIS

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Paramètres Marquage/ Marque". It has a "Texte:" field at the top left. Below it are two sections for "1er compteur" and "2ème compteur", each with "Incréméntation:" (dropdown menu set to "Séparateur"), "Incrément:" (text box with "0"), "Remise à zéro:" (dropdown menu set to "Séparateur"), and "Valeur départ:" (text box with "0"). To the right of these are "Décal. horiz. (mm):" and "Décal. vert. (mm):" (both text boxes with "0"), "Pages:" (dropdown menu set to "Page"), "Type de marque:" (dropdown menu set to "Noir sur blanc"), and "Orientation:" (dropdown menu set to "Aucun"). At the bottom right are two checkboxes: "Petite police" and "Droite à gauche", both of which are unchecked. "OK" and "Annuler" buttons are at the top right.

Paramètre	Description
Texte	<p>Saisissez les caractères à imprimer (ajouter). Vous pouvez saisir jusqu'à 32 (*) caractères parmi les caractères suivants :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Numériques (0 à 9) • Alphabétiques (majuscules et minuscules) • Espace (blanc) • Symboles, au choix : ! " # \$ % & ' () * + - . / : ; < = > ? @ [\] ^ _ { } ~ ` <p>Les caractères ci-dessus sont imprimés (ajoutés) tels qu'ils sont saisis.</p> <p>Outre ces caractères, vous pouvez désigner comme caractères spéciaux des compteurs, l'heure et la date et des flèches.</p>

	<p><Compteur> Pour imprimer (ajouter) un compteur, désignez un nombre entre crochets []. Le nombre entre crochets [] devient la valeur de départ du compteur et le nombre de chiffres saisis devient le nombre de chiffres dans le compteur. Pour désigner deux compteurs, indiquez deux compteurs en les délimitant par un “ . ” (point) dans le format “ Compteur 1.Compteur 2 ”. (Voir l'exemple ci-dessous). Le moment où le compteur est incrémenté ou décrétementé se définit dans “ 1^{er}/2^{ème}compteur ” comme indiqué plus loin. (Lorsqu'un seul compteur est désigné, réglez le moment dans “ 1^{er} compteur ”.</p> <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="width: 50%;">[Saisie]</td> <td style="width: 50%;">[Caractères imprimés/ajoutés]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CANON[10001.00001]</td> <td>CANON 10001 00001</td> </tr> </table> <p><Heure> Pour imprimer (ajouter) l'heure à laquelle le document a été numérisé, indiquez “ \TIME ”. L'heure est imprimée (ajoutée) dans le format de 24 heures sous forme de huit chiffres. (Exemple : 16:28:30)</p> <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="width: 50%;">[Saisie]</td> <td style="width: 50%;">[Caractères imprimés/ajoutés]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>\TIME</td> <td>16:28:30</td> </tr> </table> <p><Date> Pour imprimer (ajouter) la date où le document a été numérisé, entrez une des combinaisons suivantes : “\MDY ”, “\DMY ” ou “\YMD ” de Y (année), M (mois) et D (jour). La date dans le calendrier est imprimée (ajoutée) sous la forme de dix chiffres. L'année, le mois et le jour sont délimités par une barre oblique “ / ”. (Exemple : 2001/3/4 (4 mars 2001))</p> <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="width: 50%;">[Saisie]</td> <td style="width: 50%;">[Caractères imprimés/ajoutés]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>\YMD</td> <td>2001/03/04</td> </tr> </table>	[Saisie]	[Caractères imprimés/ajoutés]	CANON[10001.00001]	CANON 10001 00001	[Saisie]	[Caractères imprimés/ajoutés]	\TIME	16:28:30	[Saisie]	[Caractères imprimés/ajoutés]	\YMD	2001/03/04
[Saisie]	[Caractères imprimés/ajoutés]												
CANON[10001.00001]	CANON 10001 00001												
[Saisie]	[Caractères imprimés/ajoutés]												
\TIME	16:28:30												
[Saisie]	[Caractères imprimés/ajoutés]												
\YMD	2001/03/04												

	<p><Flèche> Pour imprimer (ajouter) une flèche, procédez comme suit :</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>[Saisie]</td> <td>[Caractères affichés/ajoutés]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>\u</td> <td>↑</td> </tr> <tr> <td>\d</td> <td>↓</td> </tr> <tr> <td>\l</td> <td>←</td> </tr> <tr> <td>\r</td> <td>→</td> </tr> </table> <p>(*) Pour plus de précision, 32 caractères au maximum peuvent être imprimés (ajoutés). Lorsqu'un compteur, une date ou une heure est enregistré, le nombre de caractères imprimés (ajoutés) dépassent 32 même si le nombre de caractères saisis est inférieur à 32 caractères. Dans ce cas, un message d'erreur apparaît. Dans l'exemple ci-dessous, 32 caractères sont imprimés/ajoutés bien que 25 caractères seulement aient été saisis.</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>[Saisie]</td> <td>[Caractères imprimés/ajoutés]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CANON \YMD \TIME [000001]</td> <td>CANON 2001/03/04 16:28:30 000001</td> </tr> </table>	[Saisie]	[Caractères affichés/ajoutés]	\u	↑	\d	↓	\l	←	\r	→	[Saisie]	[Caractères imprimés/ajoutés]	CANON \YMD \TIME [000001]	CANON 2001/03/04 16:28:30 000001
[Saisie]	[Caractères affichés/ajoutés]														
\u	↑														
\d	↓														
\l	←														
\r	→														
[Saisie]	[Caractères imprimés/ajoutés]														
CANON \YMD \TIME [000001]	CANON 2001/03/04 16:28:30 000001														
Décalage horizontal	Indiquez la position où les caractères seront ajoutés sur l'image numérisée par une distance en mm, depuis le côté gauche de l'entrée du papier, dans le sens du chargement du document pour ajouter des caractères et un compteur lorsque vous utilisez la fonction Marque.														
Décalage vertical	Indiquez la position des caractères à imprimer ou à ajouter par une distance en mm depuis le haut du document.														
Pages	Permet de sélectionner la page où les caractères seront imprimés ou ajoutés. [Page] Imprime ou ajoute les caractères sur chaque page. [Séparateur] Imprime ou ajoute des caractères sur la page suivante, indiquée par le feuille de séparation des travaux ou la touche de New File.														

<p>Type de marque</p>	<p>Sélectionne la façon dont les caractères seront ajoutés aux données.</p> <p>[Noir sur blanc] Imprime (ajoute) des caractères noirs sur un fond blanc. DR-5020/5080C</p> <p>[Blanc sur noir] Imprime (ajoute) des caractères blancs sur un fond noir. DR-5020/5080C</p> <p>[Noir sur image] Imprime (ajoute) des caractères noirs sur l'image. </p>
<p>Orientation</p>	<p>Sélectionne l'orientation des caractères à imprimer ou à ajouter.</p> <p>[Aucun] (réglage par défaut) Sans rotation</p> <p>[Paysage] Rotation horaire de 90 degrés</p> <p>[180 degrés] Rotation de 180 degrés</p> <p>[270 degrés] Rotation horaire de 270 degrés</p>
<p>Petite police</p>	<p>Imprime (ajoute) une petite police de caractères (8 x 7 points). (Taille usuelle : 12 x 12 points) Lorsque la fonction Marque est utilisée, la taille des caractères change selon la résolution à laquelle le document est numérisé.</p> <p>Taille usuelle <i>CANON canon</i></p> <p>Petite police <i>CANON canon</i></p>
<p>Droite à gauche</p>	<p>Imprime (ajoute) des caractères de droite à gauche.</p>

<Paramètres des 1^{er} et 2^{ème} compteurs>

Deux compteurs peuvent être désignés. Réglez-en les détails.

Paramètre	Description
Incrémentation	Sélectionne le moment de l'incrémentation du compteur de la façon suivante : [Séparateur] Lorsqu'une feuille de séparation des travaux est insérée, ou le fichier de destination est changé. [Page] Lorsque la page change [Jamais] Aucun
Incrément	Définit l'incrément du compteur.
Remise à zéro	Sélectionne le moment où le compteur est remis à zéro de la façon suivante : [Séparateur] Lorsqu'une feuille de séparation des travaux est insérée. [Page] Lorsque la page change [Jamais] Aucun (défaut)
Valeur départ	Définit la valeur de départ du compteur (la première valeur après la remise à zéro). Le réglage par défaut est 0.

<Boutons>

Paramètre	Description
OK	Valide les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.
Annuler	Annule tous les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.

Paramètres du décodeur de codes barres

Réglez ces paramètres pour numériser des codes barres. Ces paramètres ne sont disponibles que lorsque le décodeur de codes barres optionnel est installé. Les paramètres suivants se définissent dans la boîte de dialogue Paramètres Barcode.



MEMO

- Si un ou deux types de codes barre sont alignés horizontalement, une erreur de reconnaissance peut se produire. Sélectionnez un seul type de code barre dans le réglage de zone de code barre.
- Les codes barre sans codes marque ne peuvent pas être détectés en même temps que les codes barre avec codes marque. Lors de la numérisation d'originaux contenant des codes barre avec codes marque et de codes barre sans codes marque, n'oubliez pas de désigner la zone à détecter dans le réglage de zone de code barre avant la numérisation.
- Lors de la numérisation à 400 ppp et en duplex, seuls les codes barre qui se trouvent dans la largeur A4 sont détectés.
- Pendant la numérisation d'originaux contenant deux codes barre ou plus, définissez la zone qui doit être détectée dans le réglage de zone de code barre si vous voulez détecter un type particulier de code barre seulement. Lorsque la zone est définie, les codes barre hors de la zone numérisée sont aussi détectés.
- Si vous ne connaissez pas le type du code barre, cochez tous les types de codes barre avant la numérisation de l'original pour que tous les codes soient automatiquement détectés. La somme de contrôle ne sera pas numérisée.
- Lorsqu'un code barres est numérisé, le fichier « Barcode.log » est automatiquement créé dans le dossier \Scanning Utility 5000.

<Types Barcode>

Désignez le type de codes barres devant être lu par le décodeur de codes barres.

Paramètre	Description
UPC	Cliquez ici pour la lecture des codes barres UPC.
EAN	Cliquez ici pour la lecture des codes barres EAN.
Codabar	Cliquez ici pour la lecture des codes barres Codabar.
Code 25	Cliquez ici pour la lecture des codes barres Code 25.
Code 39	Cliquez ici pour la lecture des codes barres Code 39
Code 128	Cliquez ici pour la lecture des codes barres Code 128.

<Paramètres de numérisation>

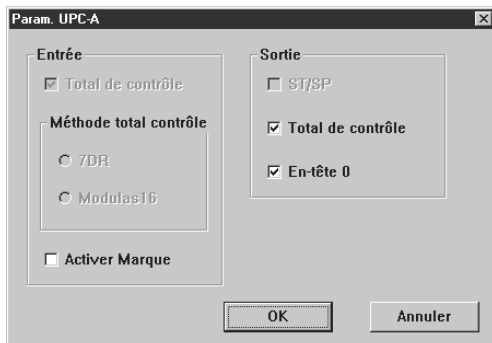
Paramètre	Description
Barcodes/ page :	Définit le nombre de codes barres devant être lus par page (1 à 4).
Côté recherche	Sélectionne la face du document sur laquelle les codes barres doivent être lus (avant ou arrière).
Activer zone recherche	Définit la zone où le code barres doit être lu. Cliquez sur la case à cocher Activer zone rech. et indiquez des valeurs.

<Boutons>

Paramètre	Description
OK	Valide les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.
Annuler	Annule tous les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.

◆ Paramètres UPC-A

Définissent les détails des codes barres UPC-A.



[Entrée] – [Activer Marque]

Cliquez ici pour lire des codes marque. (Le réglage effectué ici se répercute dans le code barres UPC-E.)

[Sortie] – [Total de contrôle]

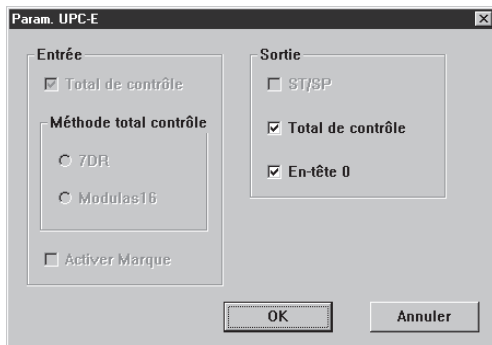
Cliquez ici pour valider la sortie du code du total de contrôle.

[Sortie] – [En-tête 0]

Cliquez ici pour valider la sortie de l'en-tête des codes barres UPC.

◆ Paramètres UPC-E

Définissent les détails des codes barres UPC-E.



[Sortie] – [Total de contrôle]

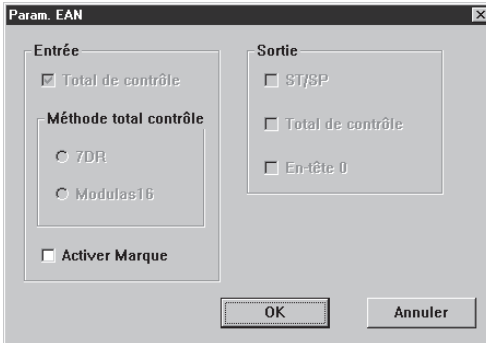
Cliquez ici pour valider la sortie du code du total de contrôle.

[Sortie] – [En-tête 0]

Cliquez ici pour valider la sortie de l'en-tête des codes barres UPC.

◆ Paramètres EAN

Définissent les détails des codes barres EAN.

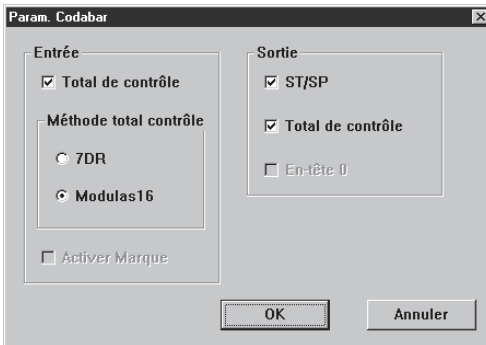


[Entrée] – [Activer Marque]

Cliquez ici pour lire des codes marque.

◆ Paramètres Codabar

Définissent les détails des codes barres Codabar.



[Entrée] – [Total de contrôle]

Cliquez ici pour lire les codes du total de contrôle.

[Entrée] - [7DR]

Cliquez ici lorsque le total de contrôle calculé par Codabar lit un code barres 7DR.

[Entrée] – [Modulas16]

Cliquez ici lorsque le total de contrôle calculé par Codabar lit un code barres Modulas16.

[Sortie] – [ST/SP]

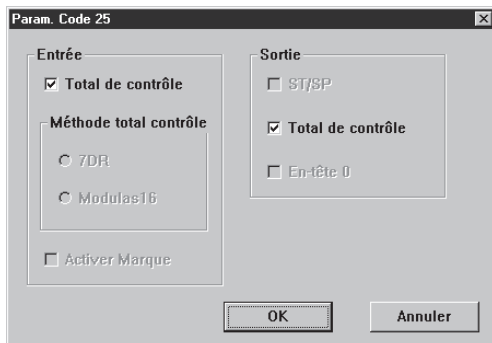
Cliquez ici pour valider la sortie des codes de marche/arrêt.

[Sortie] – [Total de contrôle]

Lorsque [Entrée] – [Total de contrôle] est coché, vous pouvez choisir de sortir ou non le code du total de contrôle.

◆ Paramètres Code 25

Définissent les détails des codes barres Code 25.



[Entrée] – [Total de contrôle]

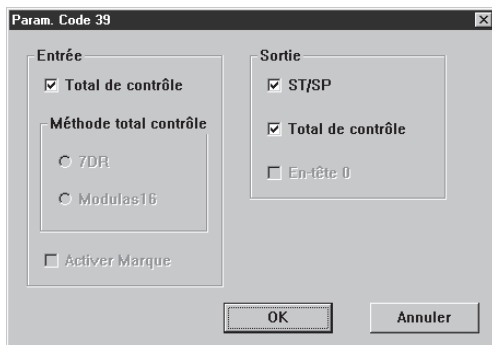
Cliquez ici pour lire les codes du total de contrôle.

[Sortie] – [Total de contrôle]

Lorsque [Entrée] – [Total de contrôle] est coché, vous pouvez choisir de sortir ou non le code du total de contrôle.

◆ Paramètres Code 39

Définissent les détails des codes barres Code 39.



[Entrée] – [Total de contrôle]

Cliquez ici pour lire les codes du total de contrôle.

[Sortie] – [ST/SP]

Cliquez ici pour valider la sortie des codes de marche/arrêt.

[Sortie] – [Total de contrôle]

Lorsque [Entrée] – [Total de contrôle] est coché, vous pouvez choisir de sortir ou non le code du total de contrôle.

Réglage de la courbe gamma

Définissez la courbe gamma.



MEMO

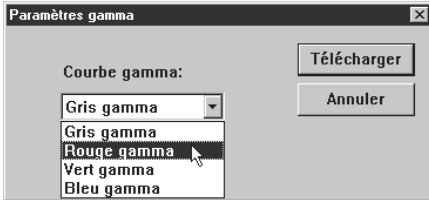
Le réglage de la courbe gamma emploie les données de courbe gamma pré-réglées par l'utilisateur pour le réglage des valeurs de sortie (provenant de l'ordinateur) en fonction des valeurs entrées pour les 256 niveaux de luminosité de l'image numérisée.

Les courbes gamma individuelles sont réglées pour le gris (noir et blanc), le rouge, le vert et bleu.

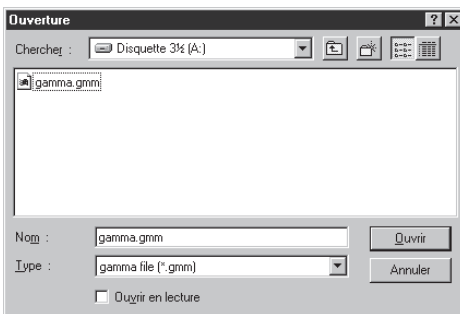
La courbe gamma réglée ici n'est pas validée tant que [Utiliser gamma utilisateur] n'est pas coché dans les réglages de filtres (P. 67).

1 Préparez les données de courbe gamma correspondant à la courbe gamma. (Voir " Préparation des données de la courbe gamma " à la page 80.)

2 Sélectionnez la couleur pour laquelle la courbe gamma doit être réglée.



3 Cliquez sur [Télécharger] et sélectionnez les données de courbe gamma préparées.



4 Cliquez sur [Ouvrir]. La courbe gamma est validée et la boîte de dialogue Détail Paramètres réapparaît.

5 Pour régler la courbe gamma pour d'autres couleurs, répétez les étapes 1 à 4.

◆ Préparation des données de la courbe gamma

Les données de la courbe gamma sont stockées dans un fichier de texte (*.gmm) de 258 lignes. Ce fichier décrit les valeurs de sortie pour chacun des 256 niveaux des valeurs entrées.

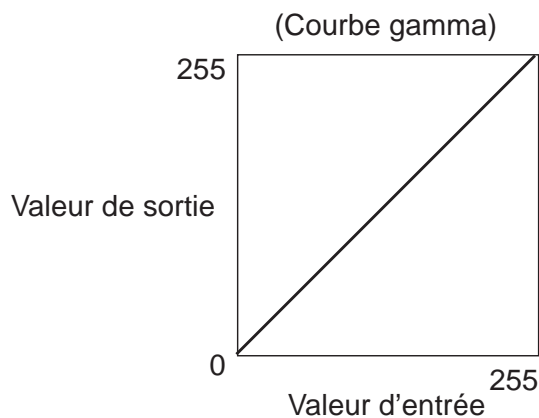
Veillez à écrire un commentaire sur la première ligne de ce fichier et " 256 " sur la seconde ligne de ce fichier. A partir de la troisième ligne, les lignes sont réservées à l'entrée de la valeur de sortie pour chaque valeur entrée. Réglez " 0 ", " 1 ", " 2 ", etc. à partir de la troisième ligne et " 255 " pour la valeur entrée sur la 258^e ligne. La saisie de petites valeurs pour la courbe de données gamma correspond à une reproduction sombre de l'image et la saisie de grandes valeurs correspond à une reproduction claire de l'image.

◆ Exemple

Normalement, les courbes gamma préparées sont inclinées vers la droite. Toutefois, une courbe gamma inclinée vers la gauche peut être préparée en inversant toutes les valeurs de sortie. Dans ce cas, l'image de sortie sera aussi inversée.

Données de courbe gamma

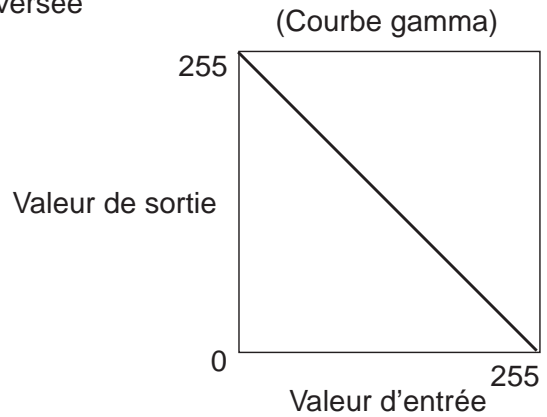
1^{ère} ligne : courbe gamma
 2^e ligne : 256
 3^e ligne : 0
 4^e ligne : 1
 5^e ligne : 2
 |
 253^e ligne : 250
 254^e ligne : 251
 255^e ligne : 252
 256^e ligne : 253
 257^e ligne : 254
 258^e ligne : 255



Données de courbe gamma (inversée)

1^{ère} ligne : courbe gamma linéaire inversée2^e ligne : 2563^e ligne : 2554^e ligne : 2545^e ligne : 253

|

253^e ligne : 5254^e ligne: 4255^e ligne: 3256^e ligne: 2257^e ligne : 1258^e ligne : 0

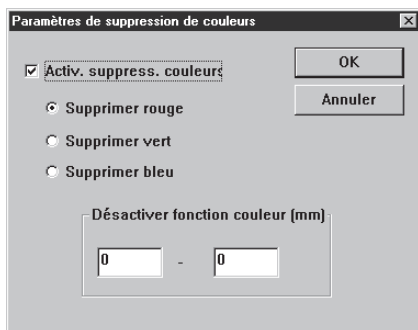
MEMO

Les informations sur les données de courbe gamma sont conservées dans le scanner et ne sont pas supprimées même à la mise hors tension du scanner. Les informations de courbe gamma ne changent pas tant que d'autres données de courbe gamma ne sont pas importées.

Paramètres de suppression des couleurs (DR-5080C seulement)

Ces paramètres inactivent la numérisation de certaines couleurs du document, par exemple les parties rouges, bleues ou vertes.

Configurez ces paramètres dans la boîte de dialogue Paramètres de suppression de couleurs.



Paramètres	Description
Activer suppression couleurs	<p>Cliquez ici pour valider la suppression de couleurs. (Désignation de la couleur)</p> <p>[Supprimer rouge] Les parties rouges du document ne sont pas numérisées.</p> <p>[Supprimer vert] Les parties vertes du document ne sont pas numérisées.</p> <p>[Supprimer bleu] Les parties bleues du document ne sont pas numérisées.</p>
Désactiver fonction couleur (mm)	<p>Permet de définir la plage où la suppression de couleurs sera valide. Désignez le début sur le côté gauche et la fin sur le côté droit. Ces positions se définissent en mm depuis le haut du papier.</p>

<Boutons>

Paramètre	Description
OK	Valide les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.
Annuler	Annule tous les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.



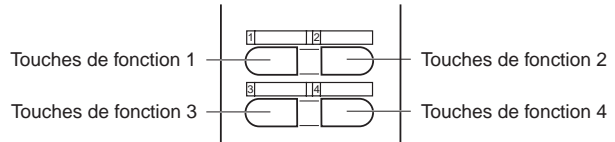
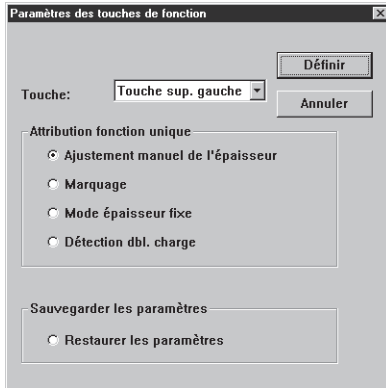
MEMO

- La suppression de couleurs est valide lorsque le mode de numérisation est réglé sur Binaire, Binaire ED ou Echelle de gris.
- Des lignes apparaissent parfois à la limite sur l'image numérisée lorsque [Désactiver fonction couleur] est validé.

Paramètres des touches de fonction

Des fonctions particulières peuvent être affectées aux touches de fonction du scanner.

Ces paramètres se règlent dans la boîte de dialogue



Paramètre	Description
Touche	Sélectionnez sur le menu déroulant la touche à laquelle une fonction doit être affectée.
Attribution fonction unique	<p>Vous pouvez affecter les quatre fonctions suivantes aux touches de fonction. Pour les détails sur ces fonctions et leurs réglages par défaut, reportez-vous à “ Paramètres des touches de fonction ” dans le Mode d’emploi séparé du DR-5020/5080C. (P. 60)</p> <p>[Ajustement manuel de l'épaisseur] Pour définir manuellement l'épaisseur de papier.</p> <p>[Marquage] Pour sélectionner ou non la fonction Marquage lorsque le module de marquage optionnel est installé.</p> <p>[Mode épaisseur fixe] Pour régler l'épaisseur de papier sur une valeur fixe.</p> <p>[Détection dbl. charge] Pour détecter automatiquement une double charge. Une “ double charge ” est détectée lorsqu’au moins deux pages sont chargées en même temps ou lorsque qu’une partie d’une page se superpose à une autre page. (L’action sur la touche provoque le contrôle simultané de la longueur et de l’épaisseur.)</p>
Sauvegarder les paramètres	<p>Vous pouvez aussi affecter tous les paramètres du scanner en plus de l’affectation d’une fonction unique.</p> <p>[Restaurer les paramètres] Vous pouvez affecter à l’une des 4 touches de fonction le rétablissement de tous les paramètres habituellement utilisés par l’opérateur (et définis par un clic sur le bouton [Set 3].)</p>

<Boutons>

Paramètre	Description
Définir	Valide les réglages et ferme la boîte de dialogue.
Annuler	Annule les réglages effectués et ferme la boîte de dialogue.

Chapitre 3

En cas de panne

Ce chapitre décrit les causes de problèmes pouvant se produire et la façon de les résoudre.

3.1 Si un message d'erreur s'affiche	86
3.2 Si l'image numérisée n'est pas normale	88

3.1

Si un message d'erreur s'affiche

Des messages d'erreur s'affichent si le document ne peut pas être numérisé normalement.

Vérifiez le type d'erreur en fonction du code affiché et résolvez le problème en vous reportant au guide suivant.

Message **JAM occured. Remove the paper.**

Solution Incident papier à l'intérieur du scanner. Retirez le papier. Pour de plus amples informations, voir le Mode d'emploi séparé du DR-5020/5080C.

Message **Cover is opened. Close the cover.**

Solution Le capot du scanner (partie supérieure) est ouvert. Fermez-le.

Message **Scanner is not found. Check the cable.**

Solution 1 L'ordinateur ne peut pas reconnaître le scanner. Assurez-vous que l'ordinateur et le scanner sont raccordés correctement par un câble.

Solution 2 Ce message peut apparaître bien que l'ordinateur reconnaisse le scanner. La cause de ce problème vient probablement de la carte SCSI installée sur l'ordinateur qui n'est pas adaptée. Ce message d'erreur disparaît souvent en désactivant le transfert asynchrone dans le mode Utilisateur du scanner. Si le problème ne peut pas être résolu de cette façon, contactez le fabricant de l'ordinateur ou de la carte SCSI.

Message **Paramètre incorrect. Modifiez-le.**

Parameter is not valid. Change the parameters.

Solution Une valeur invalide a été définie dans les conditions de numérisation dans la boîte de dialogue Paramètres du scanner. Remplacez cette valeur par la valeur adéquate.

Message **Scanner reset detected. Try again.**

Solution Suivez le message qui apparaît sur l'écran pour mettre le scanner en et hors service.

Message **No page was found. Set the paper and try again.**

Solution Pas de document dans le scanner. Posez le document et essayez à nouveau.

Message	Scanner is busy. Check if it is CountOnly mode.
Solution	Le scanner peut être actuellement dans le mode de comptage (du nombre de pages du document numérisé) (P. 56). Annulez ce mode et essayez à nouveau.
Message	Scanner is busy. Wait for a while and try again.
Solution	Le scanner est en train de traiter d'autres données et ne peut pas numériser d'autres documents. Essayez plus tard.
Message	Verify count error occured. Try again.
Solution	Le nombre de pages du document obtenu lors de la vérification de la numérisation (P. 54) ne correspond pas au nombre de pages numérisées. Lorsque " U01 " apparaît dans le compteur, comptez à nouveau le nombre de pages du document. Lorsque " U02 " apparaît, assurez-vous que les pages du document ont toutes été numérisées.
Message	Parameter is not valid. Change the parameters again.
Solution	Le réglage des conditions de numérisation n'est pas correct. Changez les réglages et numérisez à nouveau le document.
Message	File access error occured. Check if another app. use this file or write protected.
Solution	Le fichier d'image que vous essayez d'ouvrir est utilisé par une autre application ou ne peut pas être ouvert. Fermez le fichier dans l'autre application. Ou bien, le fichier d'image que vous essayez de sauvegarder est protégé. Il est impossible de le réécrire. Sauvegardez le fichier sous un autre nom.
Message	File already exists, do you wish to over-write?
Solution	Le nom du fichier où vous essayez de sauvegarder le fichier de l'image numérisée existe déjà. Pour réécrire le fichier existant, cliquez sur [Oui]. Sinon, cliquez sur [Non] et sauvegardez le fichier sous un autre nom.
Message	Il s'est produit une double alimentation papier. Verifiez, s'il vous plaît, le document et l'image numérisée à l'écran et scannez le document à nouveau.
Solution	Un document était de biais. Otez le document et numérisez-le à nouveau, s'il vous plaît. Otez-le doucement pour ne pas le déchirer.
Message	Un document était de biais. Otez le document et numérisez-le à nouveau, s'il vous plaît.
Solution	Double alimentation papier. Vérifiez, s'il vous plaît, le document et l'image numérisée à l'écran et scannez le document à nouveau. Cette erreur se produit si vous posez trop de documents de différentes tailles et épaisseurs. Numérisez des documents de même taille et épaisseur ou réglez la détection de double alimentation sur OFF.

3.2

Si l'image numérisée n'est pas normale

Si l'image numérisée présente un problème (image floue ou bandes sur l'image), un des problèmes suivants en est probablement la cause. Vérifiez les points de ce guide pour résoudre le problème.

- **Les vitres de numérisation et les cylindres du scanner sont sales.**

Si les vitres de numérisation et les cylindres sont sales, la saleté apparaîtra sur l'image numérisée.

→ Nettoyez les vitres de numérisation et les cylindres. Pour les détails, voir Chapitre 5 "Entretien quotidien" (P. 83) du Mode d'emploi séparé du DR-5020/5080C.

- **Les conditions de numérisation ne sont pas adaptées.**

Lorsque les conditions de numérisation ne sont pas adaptées, l'image numérisée n'est pas nette ou apparaît sombre.

→ Vérifiez la luminosité, le contraste et les autres réglages.

Si l'image numérisée est floue ou le document n'est pas numérisé du tout, le problème vient probablement de la luminosité qui est trop intense.

Si l'image numérisée apparaît sombre, le problème vient probablement de la luminosité qui est trop faible.

- **Scanning Utility 5000 ne fonctionne pas correctement.**

Si le document ne peut pas être numérisé correctement bien que les conditions de numérisation soient correctes, le problème peut provenir d'un mauvais fonctionnement de Scanning Utility 5000.

→ Réinstallez Scanning Utility 5000. Voir "1.2 Installation de Scanning Utility 5000" (P. 7).

- **Autres causes**

Si les solutions mentionnées ci-dessus ne permettent pas de résoudre le problème, contactez le service après-vente Canon.

Index

- A -

About	16, 17
Accentuer bords	67
Activer suppression couleurs	82
Actual pixel (Print Format)	14, 30
Actual size (Print Format)	14, 30
Ajustement manuel de l'épaisseur	64, 83
Attribution fonction unique	83
Auto (Feeding Option)	34, 40, 66

- B -

Barcode	74
Barcodes/page :	75
Barre d'outils	13, 16
Barre de menus	13, 14
Barres d'état	13
Best Fit	15, 16
BMP	28
Boîte de dialogue Détail paramètres	63

- C -

Cancel Scan	15
Chargement et numérisation d'un document	23
Codabar	77
Code 25	78
Code 39	78
Code 128	75
Configuration requise	6
Contraste	22, 62

- D -

Décalage horizontal	71
Décalage vertical	71
Désactiver fonction couleur	82
Désinstallation de Scanning Utility 5000	11
Détecter format page	63
Détection double charge	65, 83
Distant	23, 33, 66
Droite à gauche	72

- E -

EAN	77
En cas de panne	85
Exposition automatique	67

- F -

Fermeture	12, 15
Feuille de contrôle du scanner	49
Feuilles de contrôle	49, 66
Fit to paper (Print Format)	14, 30
Fit to width	15, 16
Format de page	22, 62
Formats de sauvegarde	28

- I -

Impression de l'image numérisée ...	30
Incrément	73
Incrémentation	73
Installation de Scanning Utility 5000 .	7
Installez le CD-ROM	7

- J -

JBIG	28
JPEG	28

- L -

Luminosité	22, 62
Luminosité verso	66

- M -

Marquage	64
Marque	64
Menu File	14
Menu Help	16
Menu Page	16
Menu View	15
Message d'erreur	86
Mode	22, 61
Mode de charge	33, 66
Mode Manuel	34, 43, 66
Mode Semi-Auto	34, 37, 66

- N -

Négatif	67
Next page	16, 17
Nouveau fichier auto	64
Numérisation	21
Numérisation Duplex	46
Numérisation marge	65
Numérisation rapide	52, 63
Numérisation verso	66

- O -

Open	14, 16
Options chargeur	66
Orientation	72
Ouverture	12
Ouverture d'un fichier d'image	32

- P -

Pages	71
Paramètres de base	61
Paramètres de suppression des couleurs	82
Paramètres des touches de fonction	83
Paramètres du décodeur de codes barres	74
Paramètres Marquage/Marque	69
Paramètres verso	66
Petite police	72
Préparation du scanner et de l'ordinateur	21
Prev. page	16, 17
Print	14, 16
Print Format	14, 30
Printer setting	14

- R -

Réglage des conditions de base de numérisation	22
Remise à zéro	73
Renforcer ligne fine	67
Résolution	22, 61
Restaurer les paramètres	83
Rotate Left	15, 17
Rotate Right	15, 17

- S -

Sauvegarde de l'image numérisée	28
Sauvegarder les paramètres	83
Save Page As	14, 16, 29
Scan batch to file	14, 17, 23
Scan batch to printer	14
Scan page	14, 26
Scanner setting	14, 17, 22, 60
Schéma de fonctionnement	20
Select Scanner	15
Si l'image numérisée n'est pas normale	88
Signature	64
Suppression défauts	67
Suppression points blancs	67
Suppression points noirs	67

- T -

Texte	69
TIFF	28
Touche	83
Type de marque	72

- U -

UPC	76
Utiliser gamma utilisateur	67

- V -

Valeur départ	73
Vérification de l'image numérisée ...	27
Vérifier numérisation	54, 64
View Gray	15

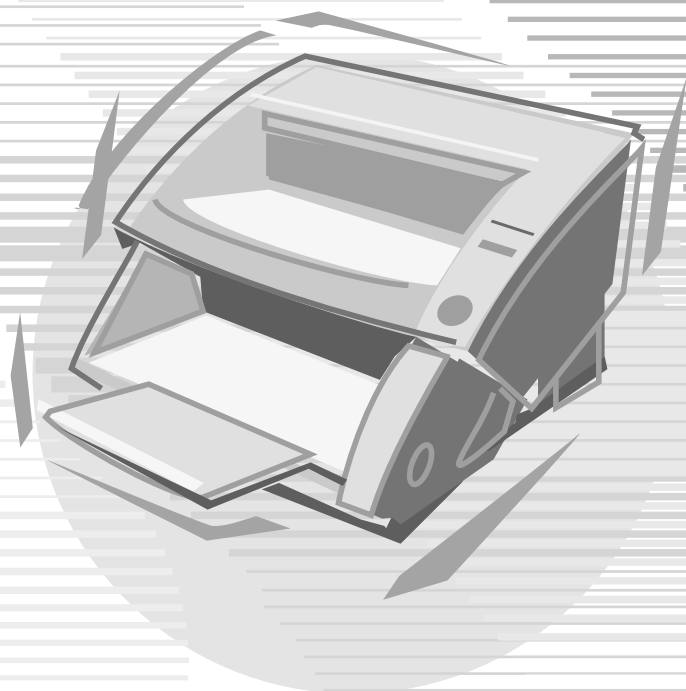
- Z -

Zoom Down	15, 16
Zoom Up	15, 16

Scanning Utility 5000

Bedienungsanleitung

Bitte diese Bedienungsanleitung vor Inbetriebnahme des Gerätes sorgfältig lesen und die Anleitung griffbereit zum Nachschlagen aufbewahren.



HINWEIS

- ① Copyright© 1999 von CANON ELECTRONICS INC. Alle Rechte vorbehalten. Kein Teil dieser Publikation darf reproduziert, übertragen, abgeschrieben, in einem Datenspeichersystem gespeichert oder in irgendeiner Form in eine Sprache oder Computersprache übersetzt werden, und zwar in keiner Form und in keiner Weise, sei es elektronisch, mechanisch, magnetisch, optisch, chemisch, manuell oder anderweitig, wenn nicht die ausdrückliche Genehmigung von CANON ELECTRONICS INC. dazu vorliegt.
- ② Änderungen im Inhalt dieses Dokuments bleiben ohne vorherige Ankündigung vorbehalten.
- ③ Alle Anstrengungen wurden unternommen, um den Inhalt dieses Dokuments so akkurat wie möglich zu machen. Canon Electronics, Inc. und seine Tochterfirmen können aber keine Verantwortung für möglicherweise vorhandene Irrtümer und dadurch entstehende Folgen übernehmen.
- ④ Wir können keine Verantwortung für etwaige Schäden übernehmen, die aus dem Betrieb des Produktes resultieren, ungeachtet Punkt ③.

Warenzeichen und eingetragene Warenzeichen

- Microsoft, Windows[®] und Windows NT[®] eingetragene Warenzeichen der Microsoft Corporation in den USA und anderen Ländern.
- ISIS[®] ist ein eingetragenes Warenzeichen der Pixel Translation A Division of ActionPoint Inc.
- Adaptec ist ein eingetragenes Warenzeichen der ADAPTEC Inc.
- IBM und PC/AT sind eingetragene Warenzeichen der International Business Machines Corporation.
- Pentium[®] ist ein eingetragenes Warenzeichen der Intel Corporation U.S.A.
- In dieser Anleitung erwähnte Produktnamen dienen lediglich zur Identifizierung, wobei es sich dabei mitunter um Warenzeichen oder eingetragene Warenzeichen und/oder jeweiligen Firmen handelt.

EINLEITUNG

Herzlichen Glückwunsch zum Kauf des Canon Dokumenten-Scanner DR-5020/5080C.

Insgesamt sind drei Anleitungen mit dem DR-5020/5080C mitgeliefert: Scanning Utility 5000 Anleitung (diese Anleitung), DR-5020/5080C-Anleitung und ISIS/TWAIN-Treiber-Anleitung.

Diese Bedienungsanleitung beschreibt die Bedienung der "Scanning Utility 5000", die mit dem DR-5020/5080C mitgeliefert ist. Um die Funktionen voll auszunutzen und den DR-5020/5080C optimal zu anzuwenden, lesen Sie diese Bedienungsanleitung und die getrennte DR-5020/5080C Anleitung bitte sorgfältig und befolgen die Angaben. Scanner-Treiber wie ISIS- oder TWAIN-Treiber sind nicht erforderlich, da die mit dem DR-5020/5080C mitgelieferte Scanner-Applikation (Scanning Utility 5000) einen exklusiven Scanner-Treiber verwendet. Nachdem Sie die Bedienungsanleitung gelesen haben, legen Sie sie an sicherer Stelle zum Nachschlagen ab.

Im folgenden eine kurze Beschreibung von Zweck und Inhalt dieser Anleitungen.

Scanning Utility 5000 Bedienungsanleitung (diese Anleitung)

Diese Anleitung beschreibt, wie die mit dem Scanner mitgelieferte Applikation "Scanning Utility 5000" installiert und bedient wird.

DR-5020/5080C Bedienungsanleitung

Diese Anleitung beschreibt, wie der Scanner angeschlossen wird, Dokumente gescannt werden, gestautes Papier entfernt wird und gibt weitere wichtige Informationen zum Umgang mit dem Scanner. Lesen Sie diese Anleitung vor der Inbetriebnahme des DR-5020/5080C.

ISIS/TWAIN-Treiberanleitung

Diese Anleitung beschreibt die Bedienung, wenn der Scanner mit einer ISIS-Treiber oder TWAIN-Treiber-kompatiblen Applikation betrieben wird.

■ Vorsicht

Beachten Sie folgendes bei der Verwendung des Scanners zur Erstellung von Kopien:

- Die Reproduktion von Banknoten, anderen Arten von Währungen oder Wertpapieren ist gesetzwidrig und wird gerichtlich verfolgt.
- Die Reproduktion von offiziellen Zertifikaten, Lizenzen, Fahrscheinen, urheberrechtlich geschützten und privaten Dokumenten o.ä. ist ebenfalls gesetzwidrig und kann gerichtlich verfolgt werden.
- Wenn ein gescanntes Bild für andere als rein persönliche Zwecke verwendet werden soll, ist immer die Genehmigung des Urheberrechtsinhabers erforderlich.

KONVENTIONEN

Im folgenden die Symbole und Konventionen, die in dieser Bedienungsanleitung verwendet werden. Vor dem Lesen der Bedienungsanleitung machen Sie sich bitte mit diesen Symbolen und Konventionen und ihren Bedeutungen vertraut.



Sorgfältig lesen, um Unfälle mit Verletzungen oder Todesfolge zu vermeiden.



Sorgfältig lesen, um Sachschäden oder Verlust wertvoller Daten zu vermeiden.



Kennzeichnet wichtige Informationen in dieser Anleitung. Eine Zahl in Klammern weist auf die Seitennummer hin, wo weitere Informationen zum betreffenden Satz oder Abschnitt gegeben werden.



Tips zu Bedienverfahren und Vermeidung von kleineren Schwierigkeiten.

■ Dieses Gerät

Diese Anleitung bezeichnet die Modelle DR-5020 und DR-5080C gemeinsam als "Scanner". Wenn eine Beschreibung sich speziell auf eines der Modelle bezieht, wird jeweils DR-5020 oder DR-5080C angegeben.

INHALT

EINLEITUNG	1
KONVENTIONEN	2

Kapitel 1 Installation und grundlegende Bedienung der Scanning Utility 5000 **5**

1.1 Systemanforderungen	6
1.2 Installation der Scanning Utility 5000	7
Bevor Sie beginnen	7
Installation von Scanning Utility 5000	8
Deinstallieren der Scanning Utility 5000	11
1.3 Grundlegender Betrieb von Scanning Utility 5000	12
Starten und Beenden	12
◆ Starten	12
◆ Beenden	12
Der Scanning Utility 5000 Bildschirm	13
◆ Menüleiste	14
◆ Toolleiste	16

Kapitel 2 Scannen eines Dokuments **19**

2.1 Flußdiagramm des Scannvorgangs	20
2.2 Scannverfahren	21
Vorbereiten des Scanners und des Computers	21
Einstellen der grundlegenden Scannbedingungen	22
Laden und Scannen eines Dokuments	23
◆ Scannen von zwei oder mehr Seiten	23
◆ Scannen von nur einer Seite und Bestätigen des gescannten Bildes ..	26
Bestätigen des gescannten Bildes	27
Speichern des gescannten Bildes	28
◆ Über Speicherformate	28
◆ Speichern gescannter Bilder als Datei (Einzelseiten-Scan)	29
Drucken des gescannten Bildes	30
Öffnen einer Bilddatei	32
2.3 Verschiedene Scannbetriebsarten	33
Scannen entsprechend Einzugsmodus	33
◆ Wählen des Einzugsmodus	35

◆ Scannen im Halbautomatisch-Modus	37
◆ Scannen im Automatisch-Modus	40
◆ Scannen im Manuell-Modus	43
Duplex-Scannen	46
Direktes Drucken gescannter Bilder	47
Verwendung von Funktionsblättern	48
◆ Scanner-Kontrollblatt	49
◆ Aufgaben-Trennblatt	51
Schnelles Scannen	52
Scannen mit Überprüfen der Anzahl	54
◆ Einstellung für Scannen mit Überprüfen der Anzahl	54
◆ Eingeben der Seitenzahl in einem Dokument	56
◆ Scannen von Dokumenten	58
2.4 Einstellung der Scannbedingungen	60
Grundlegende Einstellungen	61
Detail-Einstellungen	63
Imprinter-Einstellungen	69
Barcode-Einstellungen	74
Einstellen der Gammakurve	79
Farbunterdrückung-Einstellungen (nur von DR-5080C unterstützt)	82
Funktionstasten-Einstellung	83
Kapitel 3 Fehlersuche	85
3.1 Wenn eine Fehlermeldung erscheint	86
3.2 Wenn das gescannte Bild nicht normal ist	88
Stichwortverzeichnis	89

Kapitel 1

Installation und grundlegende Bedienung der Scanning Utility 5000

In diesem Kapitel wird beschrieben, wie die Scanning Utility 5000 installiert wird, ebenso die grundlegende Bedienung der Scanning Utility 5000.

1.1 Systemanforderungen.....	6
1.2 Installation der Scanning Utility 5000 .	7
1.3 Grundlegender Betrieb von Scanning Utility 5000.....	12

1.1

Systemanforderungen

Die folgende Hardware und das folgende Betriebssystem müssen verwendet werden, damit die Scanning Utility 5000 richtig arbeitet.

- Ein IBM PC/AT oder kompatibler Computer mit einem Pentium 133 MHz CPU oder besser mit mindestens 64 MB Arbeitsspeicher
 - Betriebssystem: Microsoft Windows® 95/98/Me oder Microsoft WindowsNT® 4.0 Workstation/Windows 2000 Professional
 - Mindestens 100 MB Platz auf Festplatte (mindestens 5 MB nach Installation)
- SVGA-kompatibler Monitor
- Microsoft-kompatible Tastatur, Maus und Drucker, CD-ROM-Laufwerk (4x oder schneller)
- Eine SCSI-Karte, deren richtige Funktion bestätigt ist
Die Funktion der folgenden SCSI-Karten wurde bestätigt:
Adaptec AHA-1540 Serie und AHA-2940 Serie
- Mit SCSI-2 kompatibles SCSI-Kabel



ANMERKUNG

- Die Scanning Utility 5000 verwendet einen speziellen Scannertreiber. Scannertreiber wie ISIS oder TWAIN sind nicht erforderlich.
- Wenn Sie die Scanning Utility 5000 installieren, wird ein neuer Ordner "ceiscan" unter dem Windows-Ordner zusätzlich zum Installations-Zielordner erzeugt, und die Datei "cei*.dll" wird zum Verzeichnis \Windows\system kopiert. Beachten Sie, daß die Scanning Utility 5000 nicht mehr richtig arbeitet, falls diese Dateien modifiziert werden.
- Die Namen der Ordner \Windows und \Windows\System sind je nach der verwendeten Windows-Version unterschiedlich. In den folgenden Erklärungen lesen Sie anstelle der Ordernamen \Windows und \Windows\System die Ordernamen, wie sie in Ihrem System vorhanden sind.

1.2

Installation der Scanning Utility 5000

Dieser Abschnitt beschreibt die Installation der Scanning Utility 5000 und das Installationsverfahren.

Bevor Sie beginnen

Prüfen Sie die folgenden Punkte, bevor Sie mit der Installation der Scanning Utility 5000 beginnen.

- **Stellen Sie sicher, daß das Betriebssystem, unter dem Scanning Utility 5000 installiert wird, Windows 95/98/Me oder Windows NT 4.0 Workstation/Windows 2000 Professional ist.**

- **Anschluß an den Computer**

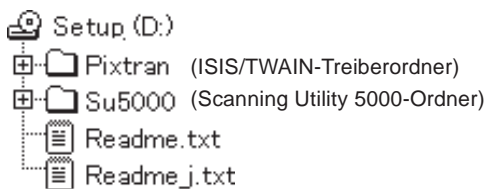
Einzelheiten zum Anschluß des Scanners siehe getrennte DR-5020/5080C-Anleitung.

- **Setup-CD-ROM**

Die Setup-CD-ROM enthält die folgenden Schichten.

Vor dem Installieren der Scanning Utility 5000 lesen Sie bitte unbedingt die Datei [Readme.txt].

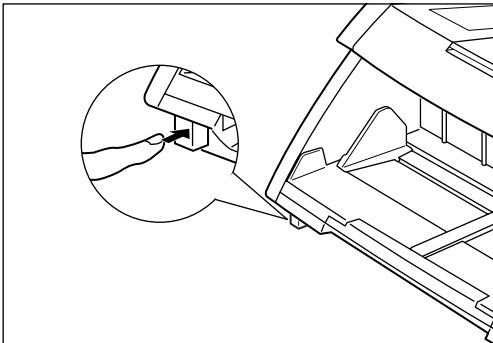
Nachdem Sie die Scanning Utility 5000 installiert haben, bewahren Sie die Setup-CD-ROM an einer sicheren Stelle auf.



Installation von Scanning Utility 5000

Im folgenden wird der Vorgang zum Installieren der Scanning Utility 5000 auf dem Computer beschrieben.

1 Den Scanner einschalten.



2 Schalten Sie den Computer EIN.

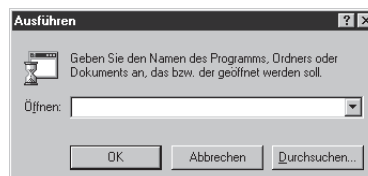
⇒ Windows startet.

3 Die CD mit den Setup-Daten ins CD-ROM-Laufwerk einschieben.

4 Klicken Sie auf die Schaltfläche [Start] und wählen Sie [Ausführen].

Der erscheinende Bildschirm ist je nach verwendeter Windows-Version unterschiedlich.

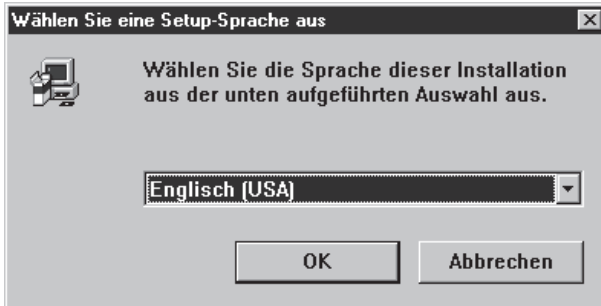
[Windows95]



5 Geben Sie "d:\su5000\setup.exe" im "Öffnen"-Feld ein, und klicken Sie [OK] an.

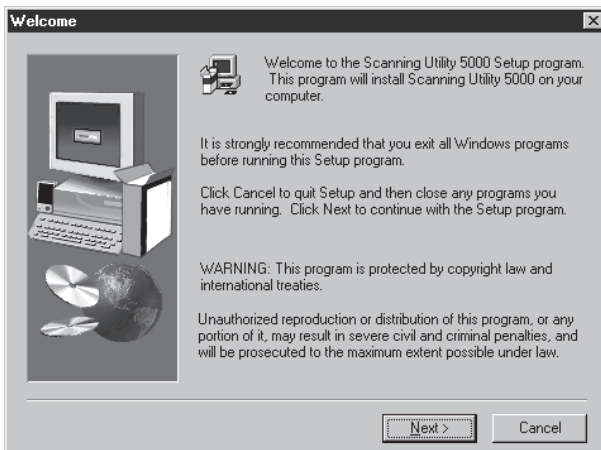
Das CD-ROM-Laufwerk ist in diesen Anweisungen als D: angegeben.

⇒ Das Dialogfeld "Wählen Sie eine Setup-Sprache aus" erscheint.



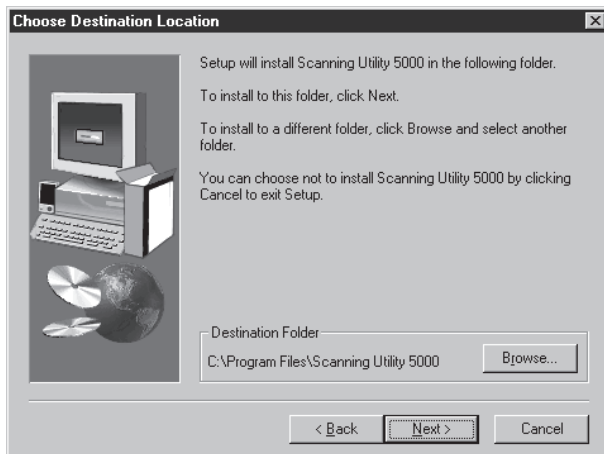
6 Wählen Sie "Englisch" und klicken Sie auf [OK].

⇒ Das "Welcome" Dialogfeld erscheint.



7 Klicken Sie auf die Schaltfläche [Next].

➔ Das Dialogfeld "Choose Destination Location" erscheint.

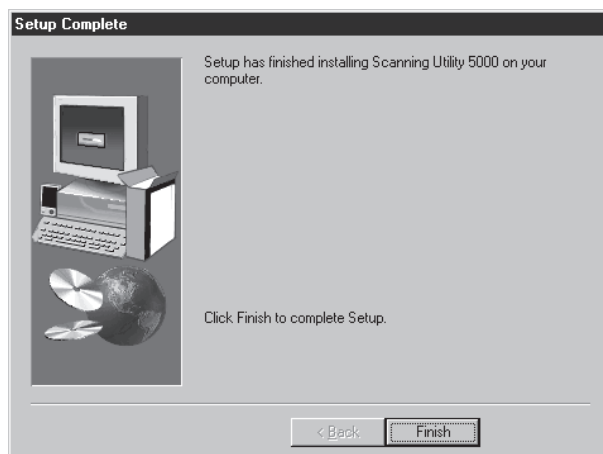


8 Klicken Sie auf das gezeigte Installationsverzeichnis und anschließend auf [Next].

Zum Wählen eines anderen Verzeichnisses klicken Sie auf [Browse].

➔ Die Installation beginnt.

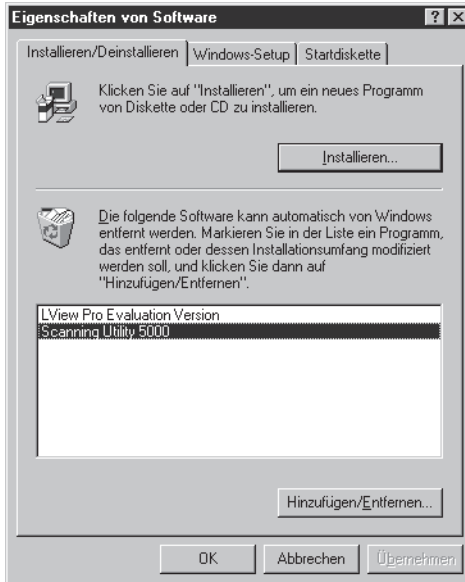
9 Damit wird die Installation fortgesetzt. Nach kurzer Zeit erscheint das Dialogfeld "Setup Complete".



10 Klicken Sie auf [Finish], um die Installation zu beenden.

Deinstallieren der Scanning Utility 5000

Zum Deinstallieren der Scanning Utility 5000 öffnen Sie "Software" in der Systemsteuerung, wählen [Scanning Utility 5000] und klicken auf [Hinzufügen/Entfernen].



1.3

Grundlegender Betrieb von Scanning Utility 5000

Dieses Kapitel beschreibt das Starten und Beenden von Scanning Utility 5000 und die Scanning Utility 5000 Bildschirme.

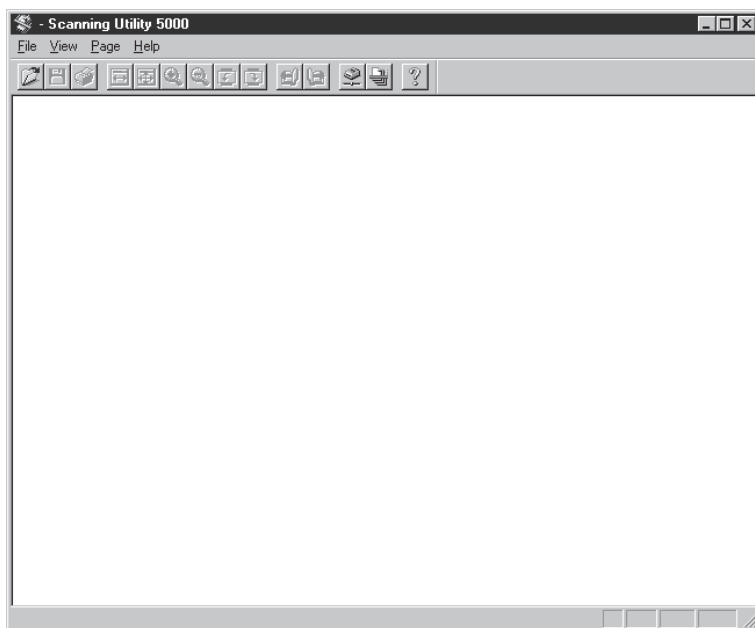
Starten und Beenden

Starten oder Beenden von Scanning Utility 5000.

◆ Starten

- 1 Klicken Sie auf die Schaltfläche [Start] und wählen Sie [Programme] - [Scanning Utility 5000].

➡ Scanning Utility 5000 startet.



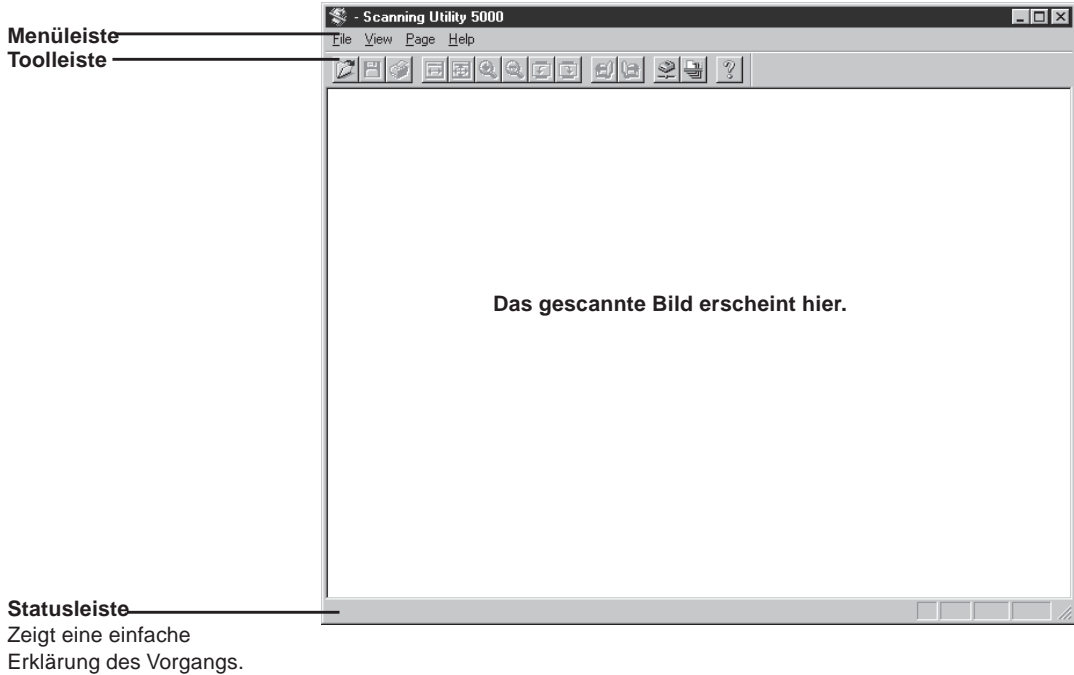
◆ Beenden

- 1 Im Scanning Utility 5000 Bildschirm wählen Sie [File] - [Exit].

➡ Sie können Scanning Utility 5000 verlassen.

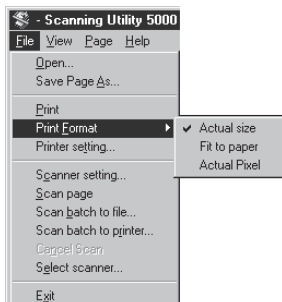
Der Scanning Utility 5000 Bildschirm

Dieses Kapitel beschreibt die Funktionen der Menüleiste und der Toolleiste im Scanning Utility 5000-Bildschirm.



◆ Menüleiste

Datei-Menü



Open

Öffnet ein gescanntes und als Datei gespeichertes Bild.

Save Page As...

Speichert die Datei des gescannten Bildes unter einem anderen Namen.

Print

Druckt das Bild aus.

Print Format

Actual Size (Tatsächliche Größe): Druckt im gleichen Papierformat, ungeachtet des Papiers oder der Auflösung, mit dem das Bild gescannt wurde.

Fit to paper (An Papier anpassen): Druckt das Bild passend zum Papierformat, wenn das Dokument größer als das Papier ist.

Actual pixel (Tatsächliche Pixel): Druckt jeden einzelnen Bildpunkt im gescannten Bild mit einem Ausgabepunkt auf dem Drucker. Aus diesem Grund wird das Druckformat kleiner, wenn ein gescanntes Bild auf einem Drucker mit kleiner Punktauflösung ausgegeben wird.

Printer setting...

Zur Einstellung des Druckers. Der Name des momentan bei [Normal verwendeter Drucker] eingestellten Druckers wird als Druckername gezeigt.

Scanner setting...

Stellt den Scanner ein. Einzelheiten zur Einstellung siehe "2.4 Einstellung der Scannbedingungen" (S. 60).

Scan page

Scannt eine einzelne Seite.

Scan batch to file...

Scannt und speichert das Dokument als spezifizierte Datei.

Scan batch to printer...

Scannt und druckt das Dokument auf dem Drucker, der bei [Normal verwendeter Drucker] eingestellt ist.

Cancel Scan

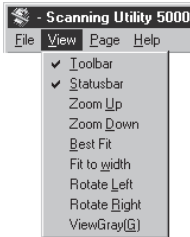
Hebt den Scannvorgang auf.

Select scanner...

Wählt einen Scanner zur Verwendung aus.

Exit

Verläßt Scanning Utility 5000.

Betrachten-Menü**Toolbar**

Sie können die Anzeige der Toolleiste ein- und ausschalten. Wenn dieser Gegenstand angekreuzt ist, wird die Toolleiste gezeigt. Wenn er nicht angekreuzt ist, wird die Toolleiste nicht angezeigt. Bei jedem Klicken auf diesen Menüpunkt wird die Anzeige zwischen ein und aus umgeschaltet.

Statusbar

Sie können die Anzeige der Statusleiste ein- und ausschalten. Wenn diese Funktion angekreuzt ist, wird die Statusleiste gezeigt. Wenn er nicht angekreuzt ist, wird die Statusleiste nicht angezeigt. Bei jedem Klicken auf diesen Menüpunkt wird die Anzeige zwischen ein und aus umgeschaltet.

Zoom Up

Bei jedem Klicken dieser Schaltfläche wird das Bild auf dem Bildschirm vergrößert. Bilder können nicht über 100% hinweg (tatsächliche Größe) vergrößert werden.

Zoom Down

Bei jedem Klicken dieser Schaltfläche wird das Bild auf dem Bildschirm verkleinert.

Best Fit

Zeigt das gesamte Bild im Fenster.

Fit to width

Zeigt das Bild so, daß seine Breite zur Breite des Fensters paßt.

Rotate Left

Dreht das Bild nach links (gegen den Uhrzeigersinn) um 90°.

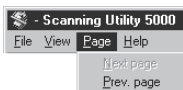
Rotate Right

Dreht das Bild nach rechts (im Uhrzeigersinn) um 90°.

View Gray

Zeigt grauskalierte Schwarzweißbilder an.

Seite-Menü



Next page

Zeigt das Bild auf der nächsten Seite.

Prev. page

Zeigt das Bild auf der vorherigen Seite.

Hilfe-Menü



About

Zeigt die Versionsinformation und den Urheberrechtshinweis von Scanning Utility 5000.

◆ Tooleiste



Öffnet die Datei eines gescannten Bildes.



Speichert die momentan gezeigte Seite unter einem anderen Namen, nachdem eine Seite gescannt wurde.



Druckt das gescannte Bild.



Zeigt das Bild so, daß seine Breite zur Breite des Fensters paßt.



Zeigt das gesamte Bild im Fenster.



Bei jedem Klicken dieser Schaltfläche wird das Bild auf dem Bildschirm vergrößert. Bilder können nicht über 100% hinweg (tatsächliche Größe) vergrößert werden.



Bei jedem Klicken dieser Schaltfläche wird das Bild auf dem Bildschirm verkleinert.



Dreht das Bild nach links (gegen den Uhrzeigersinn) um 90°.



Dreht das Bild nach rechts (im Uhrzeigersinn) um 90°.



Zeigt das Bild auf der vorherigen Seite.



Zeigt das Bild auf der nächsten Seite.



Stellt den Scanner ein. Einzelheiten siehe "2.4 Einstellen der Scannbedingungen" (S. 60).



Scannt und speichert das Dokument zu einer spezifizierten Datei. Einzelheiten siehe "2.2 Scannverfahren" (S. 21).



Zeigt Versions- und Urheberrechtsinformation der Scanning Utility 5000.

Kapitel 2

Scannen eines Dokuments

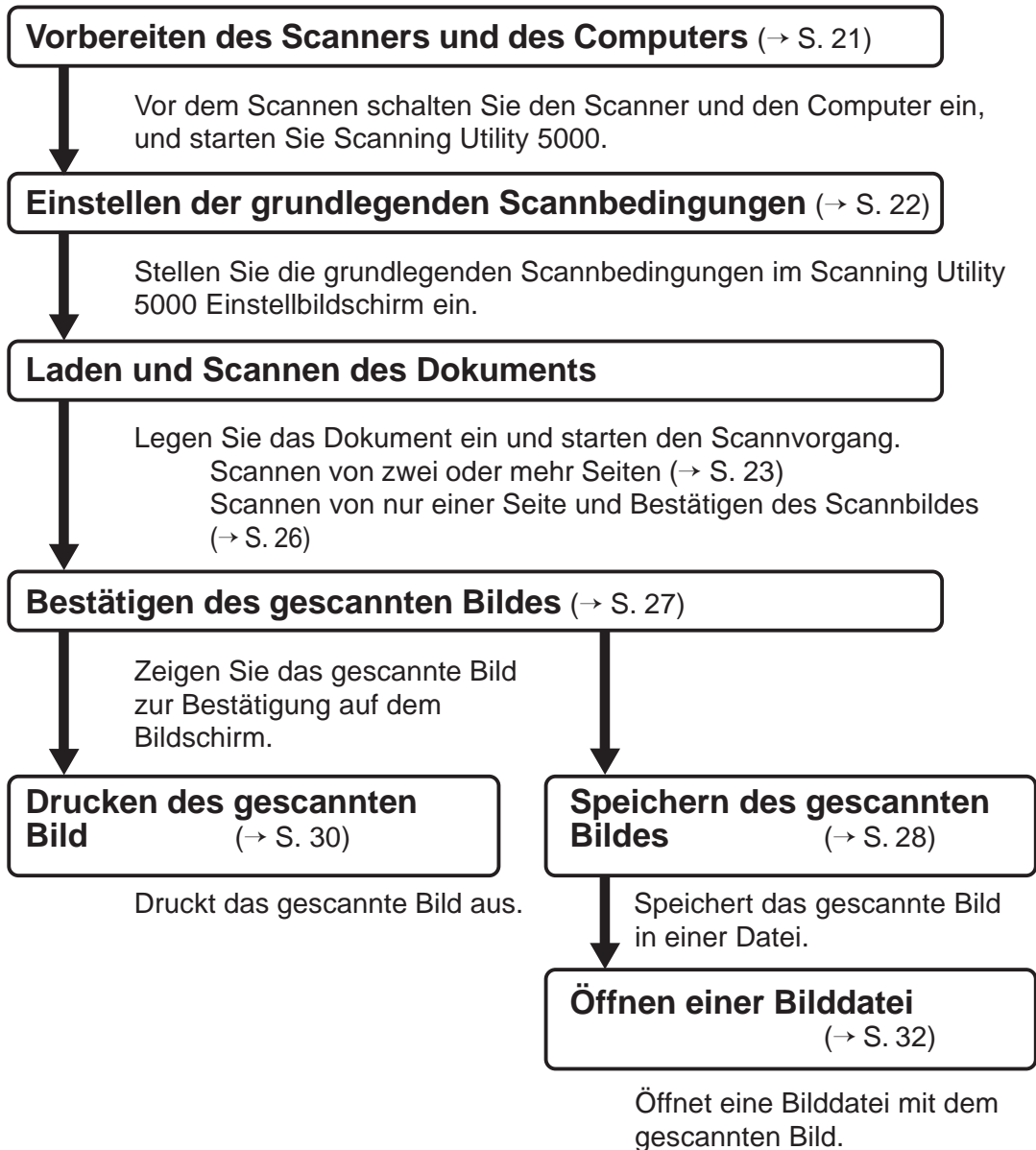
Dieses Kapitel beschreibt das Scannen eines Dokuments mit der Scanning Utility 5000.

2.1 Flußdiagramm des Scannvorgangs ..	20
2.2 Scannverfahren	21
2.3 Verschiedene Scannbetriebsarten	33
2.4 Einstellung der Scannbedingungen .	60

2.1

Flußdiagramm des Scannvorgangs

Folgen Sie diesem allgemeinen Verfahren, um ein Dokument mit Scanning Utility 5000 zu scannen.

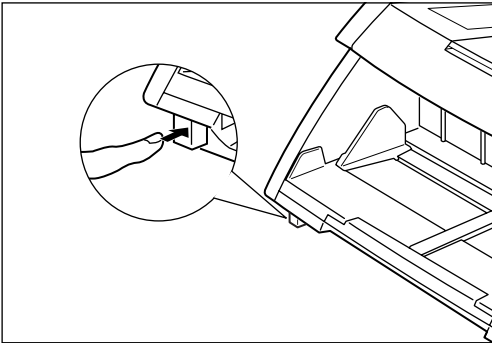


2.2 Scannverfahren

Vorbereiten des Scanners und des Computers

Vor dem Scannen schalten Sie den Scanner und den Computer ein, und starten Sie Scanning Utility 5000.

1 Schalten Sie den Scanner ein

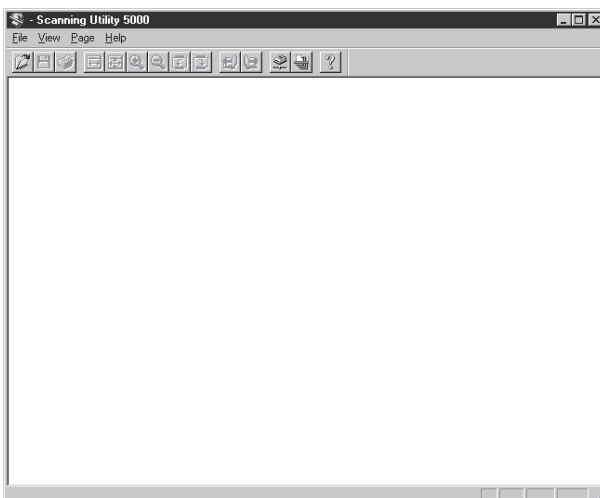


2 Schalten Sie den Computer ein.

➞ Windows startet.

3 Klicken Sie auf die Schaltfläche [Start] und wählen Sie [Programme] - [Scanning Utility 5000].


➞ Scanning Utility 5000 startet.

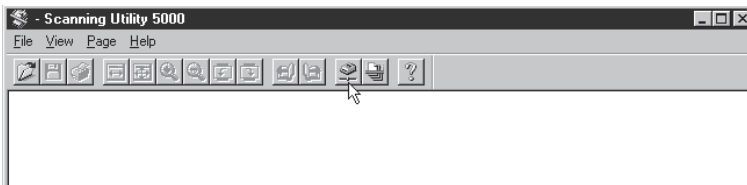


Einstellen der grundlegenden Scannbedingungen

Stellen Sie die grundlegenden Scannbedingungen im “Scanner-Einstellungen” Dialogfeld ein.

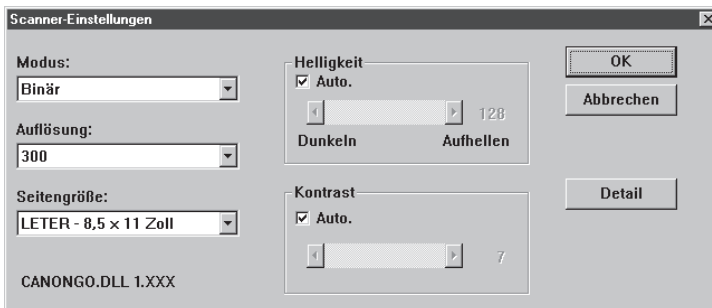
Es gibt fünf Möglichkeiten zur Einstellung: Modus, Auflösung, Seitengröße, Helligkeit und Kontrast. Einzelheiten zur Einstellung siehe “2.4 Einstellung der Scannbedingungen” (S. 60).

- 1 Entweder wählen Sie [File] - [Scanner setting], oder Sie klicken auf  in der Tooleiste.



➔ Das Dialogfeld Scanner-Einstellungen erscheint.

- 2 Stellen Sie die grundlegenden Einstellpunkte ein.



Modus: Stellt den Typ des zu scannenden Bilds ein.

Auflösung: Stellt die Auflösung ein (dpi).

Seitengröße: Spezifiziert das Seitenformat des zu scannenden Bilds.

Helligkeit: Stellt die Helligkeit des gesamten gescannten Bilds ein.

Kontrast: Stellt den Kontrast des gesamten gescannten Bilds ein.



ANMERKUNG

Einzelheiten der Einstellungen siehe 2.4 Einstellung der Scannbedingungen. (S. 60)

- 3 Klicken Sie auf [OK], um zum Dialogfeld Scanner-Einstellungen zurückzukehren.

Laden und Scannen eines Dokuments

Legen Sie ein Dokument in das Dokumentenfach und beginnen Sie den Scannvorgang.


Es gibt zwei Möglichkeiten zum Scannen von Dokumenten: Scannen von zwei oder mehr Seiten, und Scannen von nur einer Seite und anschließendes Bestätigen des gescannten Bildes.

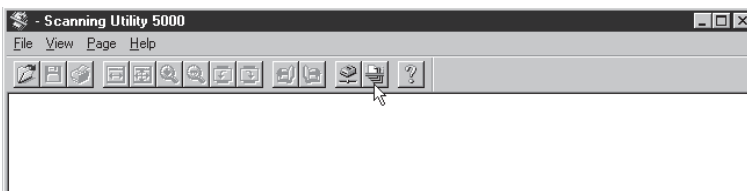
◆ Scannen von zwei oder mehr Seiten

Sie können Dokumente, die aus zwei oder mehr Seiten bestehen, auf einen von vier Modi scannen:

Fern, automatisch, halbautomatisch und manuell. Das Scannverfahren ist für jeden Modus unterschiedlich.

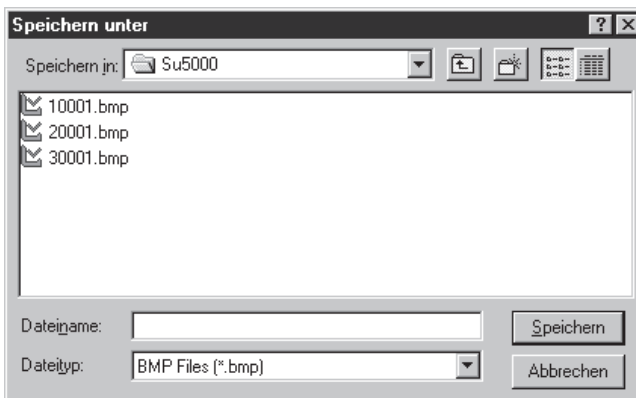
Die folgende Beschreibung bezieht sich auf ein Dokument, das im Fern-Modus gescannt wurde. Einzelheiten zum Scannen in anderen Modi siehe "2.3 Verschiedene Scannbetriebsarten". (S. 33)

- 1 Wählen Sie [File] - [Scan batch to file] oder klicken Sie auf  in der Tooleiste.



➞ Das Dialogfeld [Speichern unter] erscheint.

- 2 Geben Sie den Namen der Datei ein, zu der das Bild gescannt werden soll, den Dateityp (Format zum Abspeichern) und den Ordner für die Datei, und klicken Sie auf [Speichern].



➞ Das Dialogfeld "Start Scanning" erscheint.



TIP

Dateityp zeigt die verschiedenen Dateiformate, mit denen gescannte Bilder gespeichert werden können. Die folgenden vier Dateitypen können entsprechend dem Modus zum Scannen des Dokuments gezeigt werden:

TIFF (*.tif), BMP (*.bmp), JBIG (*.jbg), JPEG (*.jpg)



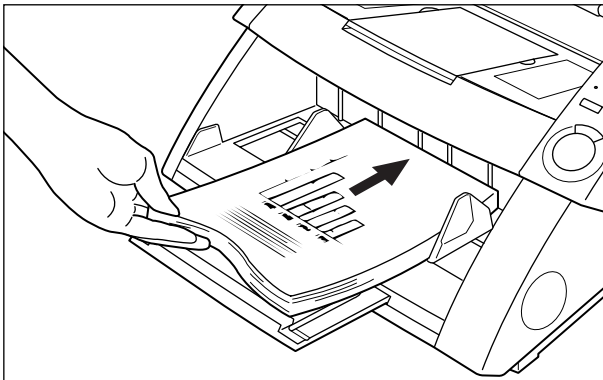
ANMERKUNG

Wenn TIFF als Dateiformat gewählt wird, wird ein Bild, das über mehrere gescannte Seiten verteilt ist (einschließlich Duplex-Scanning), als einzelne Datei gespeichert.

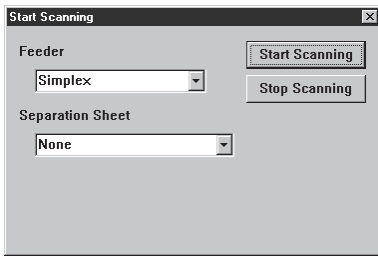
Wenn Sie das Format BMP, JPEG oder JBIG wählen, werden die Seiten des Dokuments als getrennte Dateien in dem für das Speichern definierten Zielordner gespeichert. Der Dateiname besteht dabei aus dem Namen des ersten Bildes plus einer laufenden Nummer "0001", "0002" usw., die automatisch an nachfolgende Dateien angehängt wird. (Wenn Sie z.B. Bilder im BMP-Format unter der Datei "scan.bmp" speichern, werden automatisch die Seiten in den Dateien "scan0001.bmp", "scan0002.bmp" usw. erzeugt.)

Wenn Dateien mit der Funktion Autom. neue Datei oder Trennblatt erzeugt werden, werden Ordner mit einer laufenden Nummer ("0001", "0002" usw.) bei jeder Aufgabentrennung erzeugt, und die Bilder werden als jeweils eigene Dateien in diesen Ordnern gespeichert.

3 Legen Sie das Dokument auf das Dokumentenfach.



4 Klicken Sie auf die Schaltfläche [Start Scanning].



➔ Der Scannvorgang beginnt.

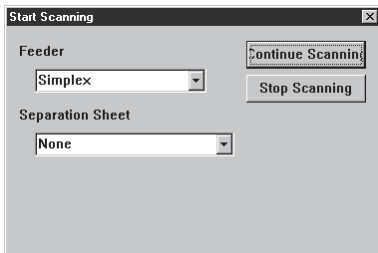


ANMERKUNG

Wenn der Scannvorgang nicht beginnt, prüfen Sie, ob alle Einzugoptionslämpchen am Bedienfeld des Scanners erloschen sind (Fern-Modus).

5 Der Scannvorgang wird unterbrochen, wenn alle Seiten im Dokumentenfach eingezogen sind.

➔ Das Dialogfeld [Start Scanning] (Pause) erscheint.



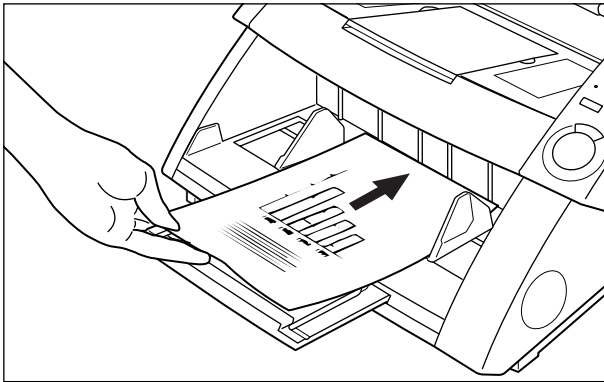
6 Zum Fortsetzen des Scannens legen Sie ein weiteres Dokument im Dokumentenfach ein und klicken Sie auf [Continue Scanning]. Zum Stoppen des Scannens klicken Sie auf [Stop Scanning].

7 Bestätigen Sie das gescannte Bild. (S. 27)

◆ Scannen von nur einer Seite und Bestätigen des gescannten Bildes

Bevor Sie ein aus mehreren Blättern bestehendes Dokument scannen, können Sie nur eine Seite scannen und das gescannte Bild bestätigen. In diesem Scannmodus wird das gescannte Bild nicht automatisch gespeichert. Wenn Sie es speichern möchten, tun Sie dies auf manuelle Weise. (Siehe "Speichern des gescannten Bildes", S. 28.)

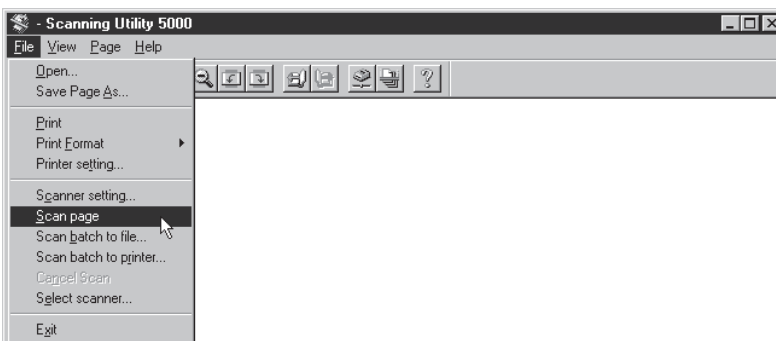
1 Legen Sie eine Seite in den Scanner ein.



Wenn Sie zwei oder mehr Seiten in das Dokumentenfach eingelegt haben, bleibt das Dokumentenfach in hochgefahrterer Stellung, nachdem die erste Seite des Dokuments gescannt ist.

Entfernen Sie die anderen Seiten im Dokumentenfach, und senken Sie das Dokumentenfach in die untere Position ab.

2 Wählen Sie [File] - [Scan page].



⇒ Das Dokument wird gescannt.

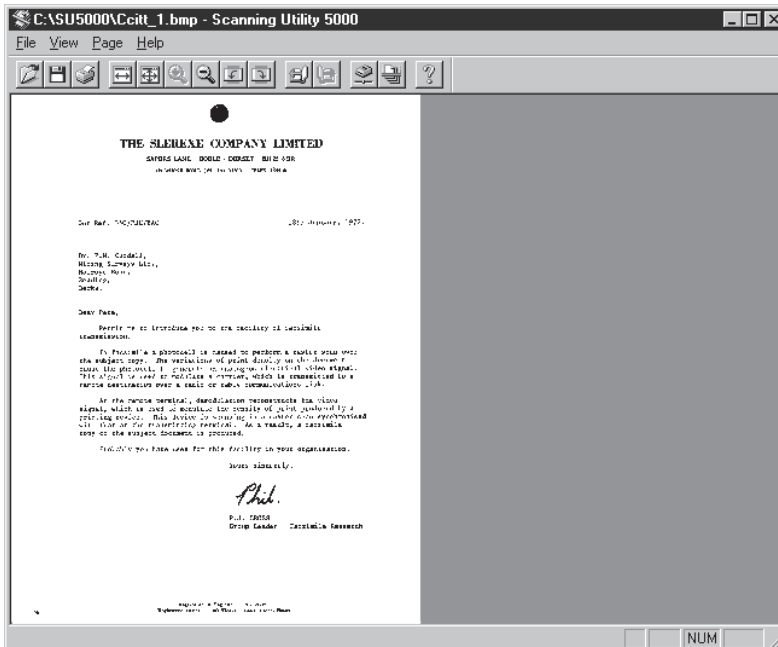
3 Bestätigen Sie das gescannte Bild. (S. 27)

4 Speichern Sie das gescannte Bild, wenn nötig. (S. 29)

Bestätigen des gescannten Bildes









Rufen Sie das gescannte Bild zur Bestätigung auf den Bildschirm.

1 Bestätigen Sie das gescannte Bild auf dem Bildschirm.



TIP

Sie können die Schaltflächen in der Tooleiste zum Vergrößern oder Verkleinern der Bildarstellung verwenden und das gescannte Bild zur Bestätigung drehen.

-  Zeigt das Bild so, daß seine Breite zur Breite des Bildfensters paßt.
-  Zeigt das Bild so, daß das gesamte Bild in das Bildfenster paßt.
-  Bei jedem Klicken der Schaltfläche wird das Bild auf dem Bildschirm vergrößert. Bilder können nicht über 100% hinweg (tatsächliche Größe) vergrößert werden.
-  Bei jedem Klicken der Schaltfläche wird das Bild auf dem Bildschirm verkleinert.
-  Dreht das Bild um 90° nach links (gegen den Uhrzeigersinn).
-  Dreht das Bild um 90° nach rechts (im Uhrzeigersinn).
-  Zeigt das nächste Bild.
-  Zeigt das vorherige Bild.

Speichern des gescannten Bildes

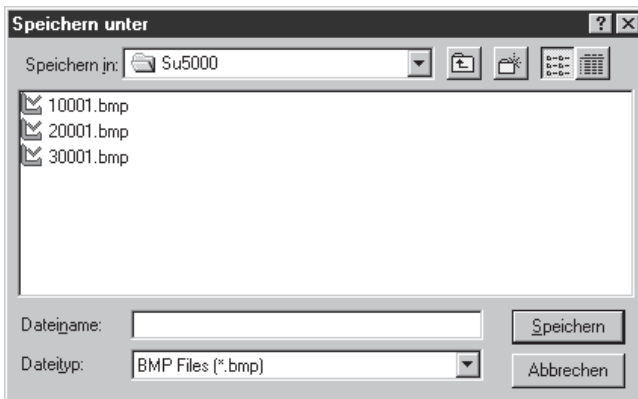
◆ Über Speicherformate

Dateien können in den Formaten TIFF, BMP, JPEG und JBIG gespeichert werden. Das verfügbare Dateiformat ist je nach Scannmuseinstellung während des Scannvorgangs unterschiedlich.

Die folgende Tabelle zeigt das von Scanning Utility 5000 unterstützte Dateiformat.

Abtastmodus	Kompatibles Dateiformat			
	BMP	JBIG	JPEG	TIF (MMR)
Schwarzweiß, Schwarzweiß-ED	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>
Grauskalierung, 2-Bit, 4-Bit	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>
Grauskalierung 8-Bit	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	
Farbe	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>	

Geben Sie das Dateiformat im Dialogfeld "Speichern unter" ein.



Wählen Sie das Dateiformat als "Dateityp".



ANMERKUNG

Wenn TIFF als Dateiformat gewählt wird, wird ein Bild, das über mehrere gescannte Seiten verteilt ist (einschließlich Duplex-Scanning), als einzelne Datei gespeichert. Wenn Sie das Format BMP, JPEG oder JBIG wählen, werden die Seiten des Dokuments als getrennte Dateien in dem für das Speichern definierten Zielordner gespeichert. Der Dateiname besteht dabei aus dem Namen des ersten Bildes plus einer laufenden Nummer "0001", "0002" usw., die automatisch an nachfolgende Dateien angehängt wird. (Wenn Sie z.B. Bilder im BMP-Format unter der Datei "scan.bmp" speichern, werden automatisch die Seiten in den Dateien "scan0001.bmp", "scan0002.bmp" usw. erzeugt.)

Wenn Dateien mit der Funktion Autom. neue Datei oder Trennblatt erzeugt werden, werden Ordner mit einer laufenden Nummer ("0001", "0002" usw.) bei jeder Aufgabentrennung erzeugt, und die Bilder werden als jeweils eigene Dateien in diesen Ordnern gespeichert.


◆ Speichern gescannter Bilder als Datei (Einzelseiten-Scan)

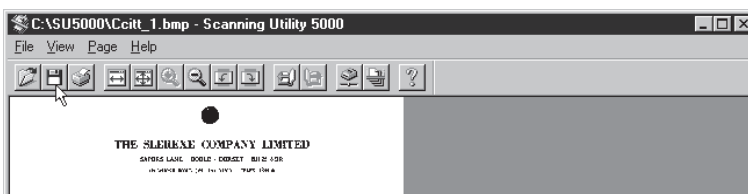
Wenn ein Einzelseiten-Dokument gescannt wird, wird das gescannte Bild nicht gespeichert. Wenn Sie das gescannte Bild speichern möchten, verfahren Sie wie folgt.



ANMERKUNG

Wenn zwei oder mehr Seiten (S. 23) gescannt werden, werden die Bilder automatisch beim Scannen in der spezifizierten Datei gesichert, so daß sie nicht erneut gespeichert werden müssen.

- 1 Entweder wählen Sie **[File] - [Save Page As...]** oder klicken Sie auf  in der Tooleiste während das gescannte Bild im Scanning Utility 5000-Bildschirm erscheint.



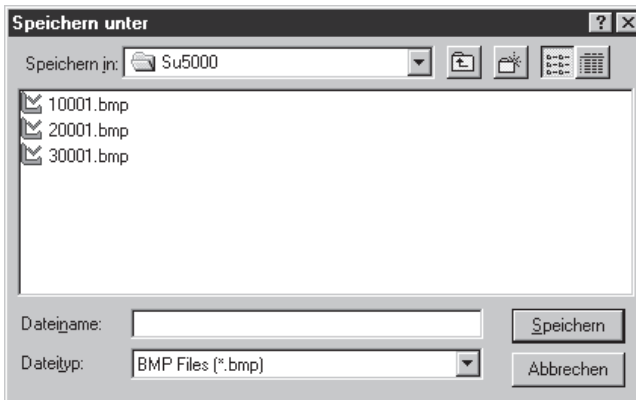
➔ Das Dialogfeld [Speichern unter] erscheint.



ANMERKUNG

[Save Page As...] speichert nur die momentan gezeigte Seite als andere Datei. Wenn Sie zwei oder mehr Seiten scannen und diesen Befehl wählen, um Bilder als einzelne TIFF (Multi-TIFF) Datei zu speichern, immer sicherstellen, daß die Bilder unter einem anderen Dateinamen gespeichert werden. Beachten Sie, daß Sie die Bilder überschreiben, wenn Sie sie unter dem gleichen Dateinamen speichern und daß dabei die Bilder anderer momentan nicht gezeigter Seiten überschrieben werden.

2 Entscheiden Sie den Namen, unter dem das Bild gescannt werden soll, den Dateityp (Dateiformat) und den Ablageort der Datei, und klicken Sie auf [Speichern].



➔ Das gescannte Bild wird unter dem eingegebenen Dateinamen abgespeichert.



ANMERKUNG

Bevor Sie den Dateinamen und Typ (Dateiformat) und den Zielordner entscheiden, lesen Sie bitte "Über Speicherformate" (S. 28).

Drucken des gescannten Bildes

Drucken Sie das gescannte Bild.

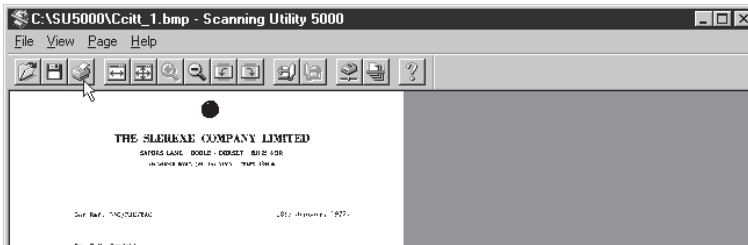


ANMERKUNG

Es gibt drei Methoden zum Ausdrucken gescannter Bilder. Bevor Sie mit dem Drucken beginnen, wählen Sie eine der Methoden unter [File] - [Print Format].

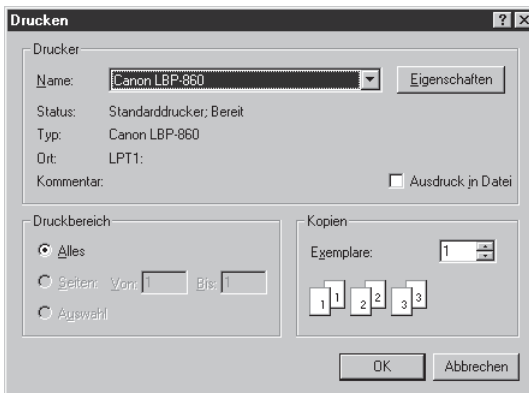
- Actual Size (Tatsächliche Größe):
Druckt auf das gleiche Papierformat, ungeachtet des Papiers oder der Auflösung, mit dem das Bild gescannt wurde.
- Fit to paper (An Papier anpassen):
Druckt das Bild passend zum Papierformat, wenn das Dokument größer als das Papier ist.
- Actual pixel (Tatsächliche Pixel):
Druckt jeden einzelnen Bildpunkt im gescannten Bild mit einem Ausgabepunkt auf dem Drucker.

- 1** Wählen Sie entweder [File] - [Print] oder klicken Sie auf  in der Tooleiste, während das gescannte Bild im Scanning Utility 5000 Bildschirm erscheint.



➔ Das Bildschirm Druckeinstellungen erscheint.

- 2** Die Druckdetails einstellen, und auf [OK] klicken.



➔ Das gescannte Bild wird gedruckt.



- Der Bildschirm Drucker-Eigenschaften ist je nach vorhandenem Drucker unterschiedlich. Einzelheiten siehe Bedienungsanleitung oder Hilfe-Datei des verwendeten Druckertreibers.
- Obwohl [Alle] in der Druckbereich-Einstellung gewählt ist, wird nur die momentan gezeigte Seite gedruckt.

Öffnen einer Bilddatei

Öffnen Sie eine Datei, die ein gescanntes Bild enthält.



ANMERKUNG

Nur TIFF-, BMP-, JPEG- oder JBIG-Bilder, die in Scanning Utility 5000 gespeichert wurden, können mit Scanning Utility 5000 geöffnet werden.

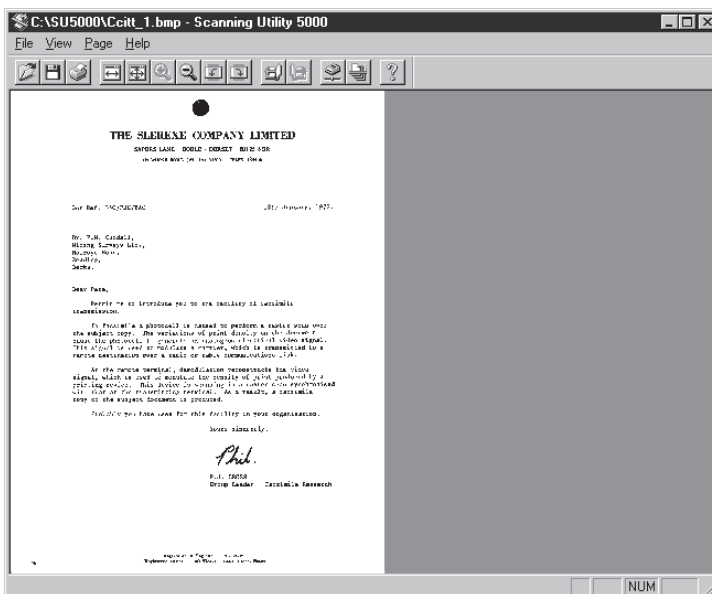
1 Wählen Sie [File] - [Open] oder klicken Sie auf  in der Toolleiste.




➔ Das Dialogfeld [Öffnen] erscheint.

2 Wählen Sie eine Datei und klicken Sie auf [OK].

➔ Die gewählte Datei erscheint.



ANMERKUNG

- Beachten Sie, daß wenn Sie eine geöffnete TIFF-Datei (Multi-TIFF) mit [File] - [Save Page As] oder mit der Schaltfläche  überschrieben, wird nur die momentan gezeigte Seite gespeichert, und die Bilder nachfolgender Seiten gehen verloren.
- Zum Schließen einer geöffneten Datei die Scanning Utility 5000 mit [File] - [Exit] beenden.

2.3

Verschiedene Scannbetriebsarten

Sie können Dokumente mit dem Scanning Utility 5000 auf verschiedene Modi scannen. So können Sie z.B. einstellen, ob der Einzugsmodus für das Original modifiziert wird, um bestimmten Scannbedingungen zu entsprechen, beide Seiten eines Dokuments zu scannen, oder Dokumente mit hoher Geschwindigkeit zu scannen.

Dieser Abschnitt beschreibt die folgenden Modi zum Scannen von Dokumenten:

- Scannen entsprechend dem Einzugsmodus (Fern, Halbautomatisch, Auto, Manuell)
- Duplex-Scannen
- Direktes Drucken gescannter Bilder
- Verwendung von Kontrollblättern
- Schnelles Scannen
- Scannen mit Zählung

Scannen entsprechend Einzugsmodus

Wählen Sie unter den folgenden Einzugsbetriebsarten, entsprechend der Qualität des Dokuments und dem Papiertyp.

Die folgenden Einzugsmodi stehen zur Verfügung:

- **Fern**

Wenn Sie das Dokument in den Scanner legen und im Scanning Utility 5000 "Start Scanning" eingeben, beginnt der Papiereinzug. Sie können Dokumente bestehend aus zwei oder mehr Blättern einlegen.



ANMERKUNG

Einzelheiten zum Fern-Modus siehe "Scannen von zwei oder mehr Seiten" (S. 23).

- **Halbautomatisch**

Geben Sie in der Scanning Utility 5000 "Start Scanning" ein, legen Sie das Dokument ein, und drücken Sie die Start-Taste am Scanner zum Starten des Scannvorgangs.

Zwei oder mehr Seiten können in diesem Modus eingelegt werden.

- **Auto**

Wenn Sie in der Scanning Utility 5000 "Start Scanning" eingeben und das Dokument im Scanner einlegen, startet der Scanner automatisch den Scannvorgang.

Zwei oder mehr Seiten können in diesem Modus eingelegt werden.

- **Manuell**

Geben Sie in der Scanning Utility 5000 "Start Scanning" ein, und setzen Sie eine Seite zur Zeit ein.




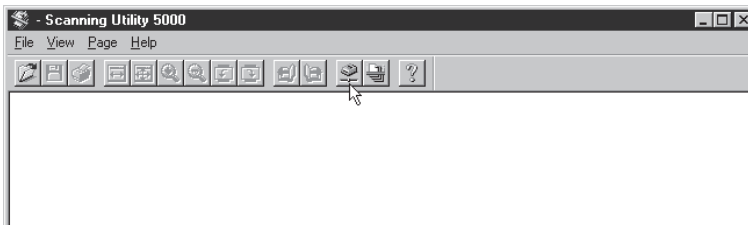
ANMERKUNG

Einzelheiten zum Einsetzen von Dokumenten siehe "3.2 Einlegen und Scannen von Dokumenten" (S. 38) in der DR-5020/5080C-Anleitung.

Im folgenden wird das Verfahren zum Wählen des Einzugmodus und das Scannverfahren entsprechend jedem Einzugmodus beschrieben.

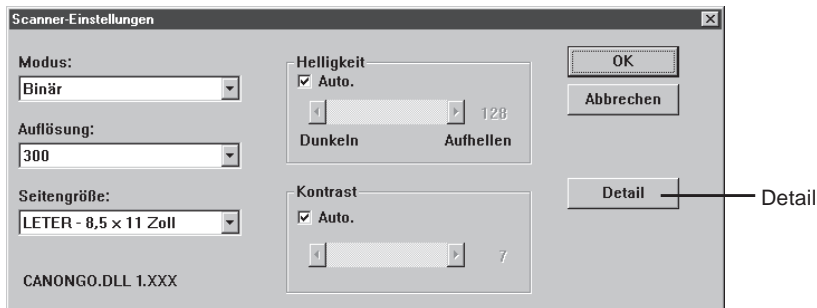
◆ Wählen des Einzugmodus

- 1 Wählen Sie entweder [File] - [Scanner setting] oder klicken Sie auf  in der Toolleiste.



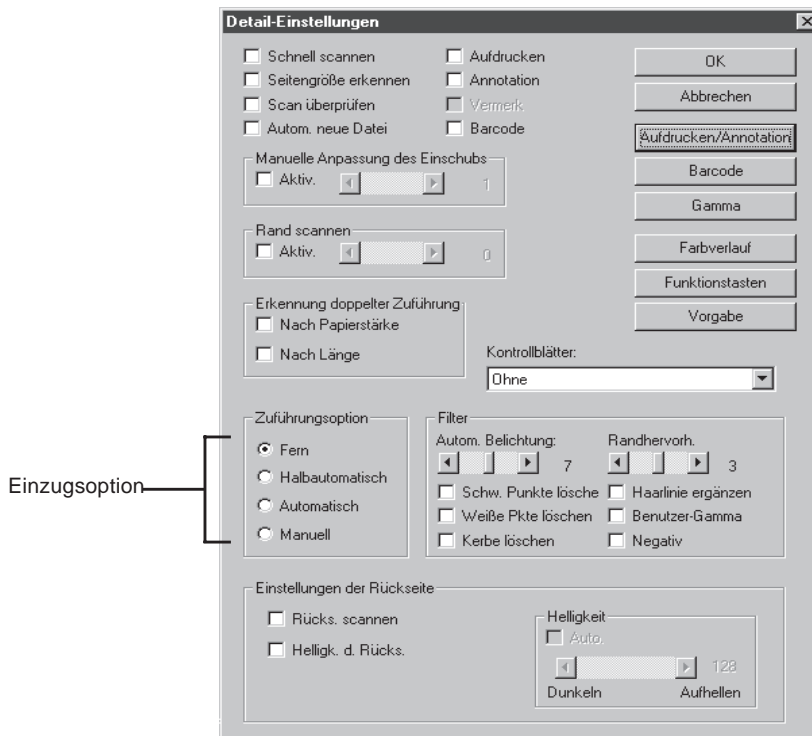
➞ Das Dialogfeld Scanner-Einstellungen erscheint.

- 2 Im Dialogfeld Scanner-Einstellungen klicken Sie auf die Schaltfläche "Detail".



➞ Das Dialogfeld "Detail-Einstellungen" erscheint.

3 Bei der Einzugsoption wählen Sie den Einzugsmodus.



4 Klicken Sie auf [OK], um zum Dialogfeld Scanner-Einstellungen zurückzukehren.

5 Klicken Sie auf [OK], um zum Scannverfahren-Bildschirm zurückzukehren.




Der Einzugsmodus kann auch auf dem Bedienfeld des Scanners eingestellt werden. Drücken Sie die Taste [Feeding Option] am Bedienfeld, so daß das Lämpchen des gewünschten Einzugsmodus aufleuchtet. Wenn der Fernmodus eingestellt ist, leuchtet keines der Lämpchen auf.

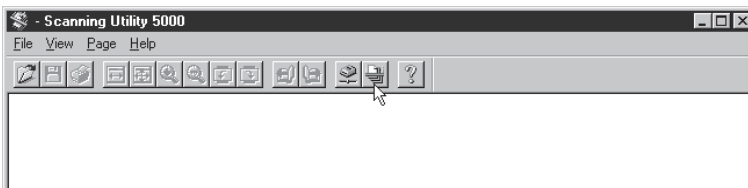
◆ Scannen im Halbautomatisch-Modus

Stellen Sie den Einzugsmodus auf Halbautomatisch und scannen das Dokument.

- 1 Führen Sie das Verfahren aus, wie unter “Wählen des Einzugsmodus” beschrieben und wählen dann “Halbautomatisch”.**

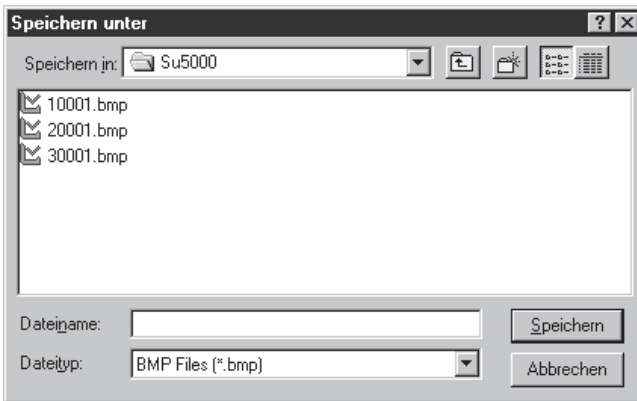
➞ Das Semi-Auto-Lämpchen am Bedienfeld leuchtet auf.

- 2 Wählen Sie entweder [File] - [Scan batch to file] oder klicken Sie auf  in der Toolleiste.**



➞ Das Dialogfeld [Speichern unter] erscheint.

- 3 Entscheiden Sie den Namen, unter dem das Bild gescannt werden soll, den Dateityp (Dateiformat) und den Ablageort der Datei, und klicken Sie auf [Speichern].**



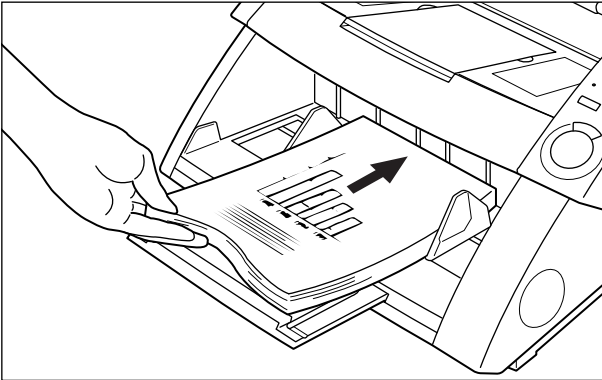
➞ Das Dialogfeld “Start Scanning” erscheint.



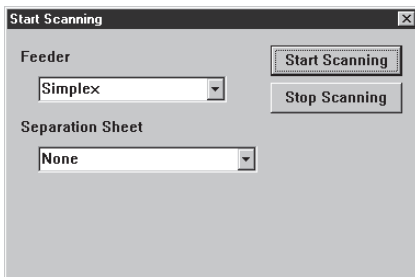
ANMERKUNG

Bevor Sie den Dateinamen und Typ (Dateiformat) und den Zielordner entscheiden, lesen Sie bitte “Über Speicherformate” (S. 28).

4 Legen Sie das Dokument im Scanner ein.

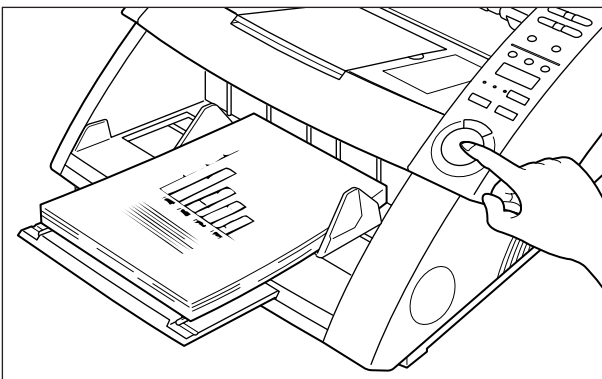


5 Klicken Sie auf [Start Scanning].



➔ Die Start-Taste in der Mitte des Bedienfelds leuchtet auf (grün).

6 Drücken Sie die Start-Taste am Bedienfeld des Scanners.



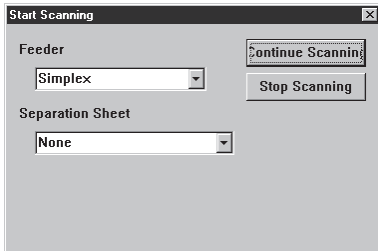
➔ Der Scannvorgang beginnt.

Wenn der Scanner keine Dokumentenblätter zum Scannen mehr vorfindet, wird das Dokumentenfach abgesenkt, und der Scanner wartet auf das nächste einzulegende Dokument.

7 Legen Sie das nächste Dokument in das Dokumentenfach ein, und drücken Sie die Start-Taste am Scanner-Bedienfeld.

8 Wenn der Scanner keine weiteren Dokumente zu scannen hat, drücken Sie die Stopp-Taste.

⇒ Das Dialogfeld [Start Scanning] (Pause) erscheint.



9 Zum Stoppen des Scannens klicken Sie auf [Stop Scanning]. Zum Fortsetzen des Scannens klicken Sie auf [Start Scanning] und kehren zu Schritt 7 zurück.


10 Prüfen Sie das gescannte Bild. (S. 27)

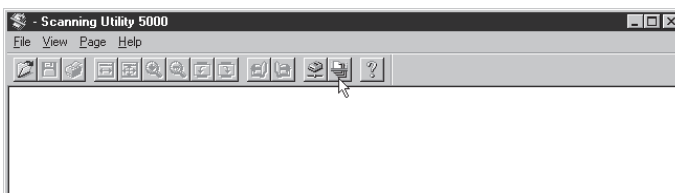
◆ Scannen im Automatisch-Modus

Stellen Sie den Einzugsmodus auf Auto und scannen das Dokument.

1 Führen Sie das Verfahren aus, wie unter “Wählen des Einzugsmodus” beschrieben und wählen dann “Auto”.

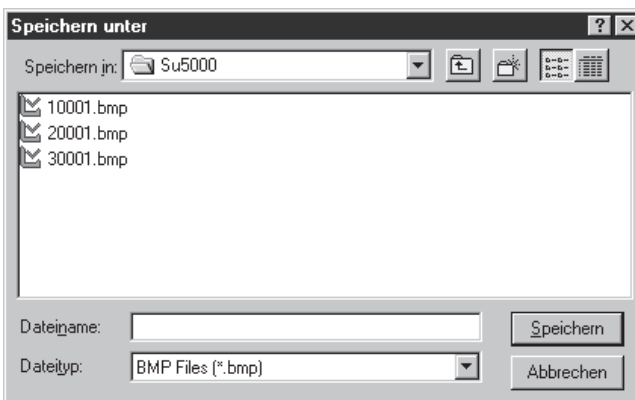
⇒ “Auto” am Bedienfeld leuchtet auf.

2 Wählen Sie entweder [File] - [Scan batch to file] oder klicken Sie auf  in der Toolleiste.



⇒ Das Dialogfeld [Speichern unter] erscheint.

3 Entscheiden Sie den Namen, unter dem das Bild gescannt werden soll, den Dateityp (Dateiformat) und den Ablageort der Datei, und klicken Sie auf [Speichern].



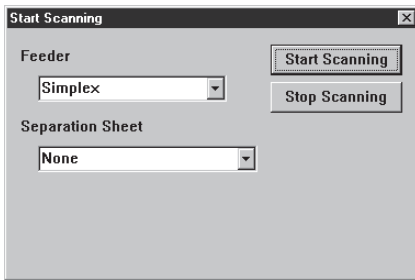
⇒ Das Dialogfeld “Start Scanning” erscheint.



ANMERKUNG

Bevor Sie den Dateinamen und Typ (Dateiformat) und den Zielordner entscheiden, lesen Sie bitte “Über Speicherformate” (S. 28).

4 Klicken Sie auf [Start Scanning].

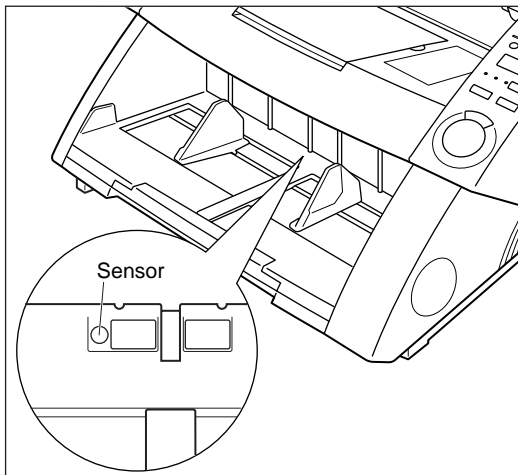


➔ Die Start-Taste in der Mitte des Bedienfelds leuchtet auf (grün).

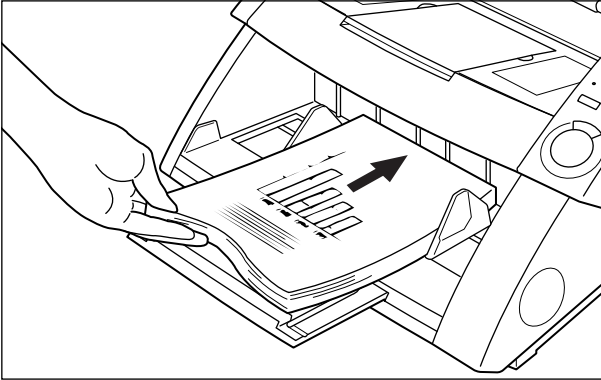


VORSICHT

Wenn der Scannmodus auf Auto gestellt ist, erkennt der Sensor am Dokumentenfach, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt, automatisch das Dokument, um den Scannvorgang zu starten. Wenn der Sensor am Dokumentenfach abgedeckt ist, nachdem Sie den Scannvorgang in der Applikation eingegeben haben, beurteilt der Scanner fälschlich, daß ein Dokument eingelegt ist, und das Dokument beginnt sich zu bewegen. Stellen Sie sicher, daß nicht der Sensor im Dokumentenfach durch andere Gegenstände als Dokumente verdeckt ist.



5 Legen Sie das Dokument im Scanner ein.



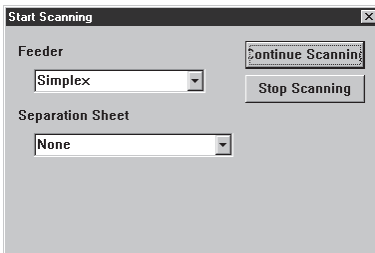
➞ Der Scannvorgang beginnt.

Wenn der Scanner keine weiteren Dokumente zum Scannen vorfindet, wird das Dokumentenfach abgesenkt, und der Scanner wartet auf das nächste einzulegende Dokument.

6 Legen Sie das nächste Dokument auf das Dokumentenfach.

7 Wenn der Scanner keine weiteren Dokumente zum Scannen vorfindet, drücken Sie die Stopp-Taste am Bedienfeld des Scanners.

➞ Das Dialogfeld [Start Scanning] (Pause) erscheint.



8 Zum Stoppen des Scannens klicken Sie auf [Stop Scanning].

Zum Fortsetzen des Scannens klicken Sie auf [Start Scanning], und kehren zu Schritt 5 zurück.

9 Prüfen Sie das gescannte Bild. (S. 27)

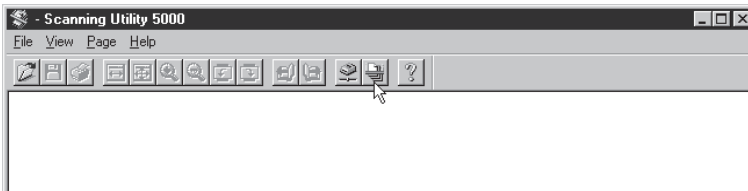
◆ Scannen im Manuell-Modus

Jede Seite des Dokuments wird gescannt, während Sie diese manuell einzeln in den Scanner einlegen.

1 Führen Sie das Verfahren aus, wie unter “Wählen des Einzugsmodus” beschrieben und wählen dann “Manuell”.

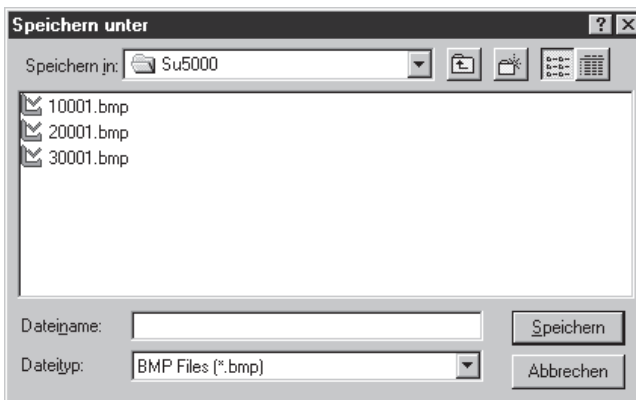
➔ Die Manual-Anzeige am Bedienfeld leuchtet auf, und das Dokumentenfach fährt hoch.

2 Wählen Sie entweder [File] - [Scan batch to file] oder klicken Sie auf in der Tooleiste.



➔ Das Dialogfeld [Speichern unter] erscheint.

3 Entscheiden Sie den Namen und den Dateityp (Dateiformat) zum Scannen des Bildes und den Zielordner der Datei, und klicken Sie auf [Speichern].



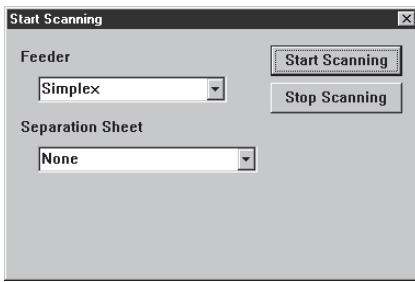
➔ Das Dialogfeld “Start Scanning” erscheint.



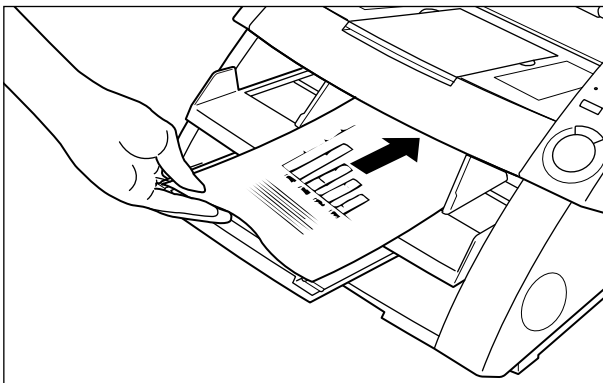
ANMERKUNG

Bevor Sie den Dateinamen und Typ (Dateiformat) und den Zielordner entscheiden, lesen Sie bitte “Über Speicherformate” (S. 28).

4 Klicken Sie auf [Start Scanning].



5 Legen Sie eine Seite im Dokumentenfach ein.

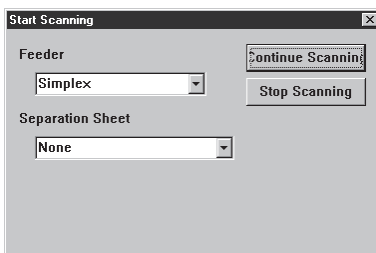


⇒ Das Dokument wird gescannt, und der Scanner wartet auf das nächste einzuführende Dokument.

6 Führen Sie das Dokument weiter ein, eine Seite zur Zeit.

7 Wenn der Scannvorgang endet, klicken Sie auf [Stop Scanning].

⇒ Das Dialogfeld [Start Scanning] (Pause) erscheint.



- 8 Zum Stoppen des Scannens klicken Sie auf [Stop Scanning].**
Zum Fortsetzen des Scannens klicken Sie auf [Start Scannig], und kehren zu Schritt 5 zurück.



ANMERKUNG

Wenn der Scannvorgang beendet ist, wird das Dokumentenfach nicht abgesenkt, bevor der Manuell-Modus aufgehoben wird. Heben Sie diesen Modus auf, indem Sie die Zuführoption-Taste drücken oder entsprechend "Wählen des Einzugsmodus" (S. 35).

- 9 Bestätigen Sie das gescannte Bild. (S. 27)**

Duplex-Scannen

Duplex-Scannen erlaubt das Scannen von doppelseitigen Dokumenten.

Duplex-Scannen wird auf gleiche Weise wie normales Scannen ausgeführt, ausgenommen daß Sie DUPLEX wählen, wenn Sie den Start des Scannvorgangs eingeben.

1 Nehmen Sie die Scanner-Einstellungen vor und scannen Sie das Dokument entsprechend dem momentan gewählten Einzugsmodus.

Einzelheiten zu den einzelnen Einzugsmodi siehe angegebene Seite.

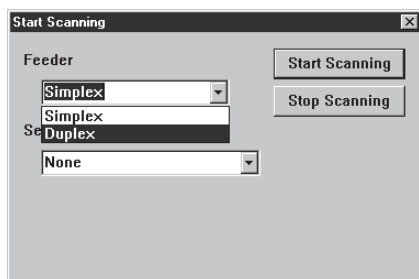
Fern-Modus: "Scannen von zwei oder mehr Seiten" (S. 23).

Halbautomatisch-Modus: "Scannen im Halbautomatisch-Modus" (S. 37).

Automatisch-Modus: "Scannen im Automatisch-Modus" (S. 40).

Manuell-Modus: "Scannen im Manuell-Modus" (S. 43).

2 Wenn das Dialogfeld "Start Scanning" erscheint, klicken Sie auf Feeder und wählen Sie "Duplex" zum Starten des Scannens.



ANMERKUNG

- Duplex-Scannen ist auch mit Hilfe der Kontrollblätter möglich. Drücken Sie die Simplex/Duplex-Taste am Bedienfeld um [Duplex] zu wählen und führen Sie die erforderlichen Scannvorgänge aus (Schritt 1 oben).
- Sie können auch den Duplex-Scannbetrieb mit den Kontrollblättern (Scanner-Kontrollblättern) ausführen.

Wenn das entsprechende Kontrollblatt oben auf dem Dokument eingelegt wird, werden beide Seiten des Dokuments automatisch gescannt. Einzelheiten siehe "Verwendung von Kontrollblättern" (S. 48) oder siehe separate DR-5020/5080C-Anleitung.

Direktes Drucken gescannter Bilder

Bilder gescannter Dokumente können so gedruckt werden, wie sie sind.
In diesem Fall werden gescannte Bilder nicht als Datei gespeichert.



ANMERKUNG

Das gescannte Bild wird automatisch auf dem momentan als normal verwendeter Drucker gewählten Drucker ausgedruckt.
Richten Sie den zu verwendenden Drucker mit [File] - [Printer Setting] ein.

1 Nehmen Sie die Scanner-Einstellungen vor und scannen Sie das Dokument entsprechend dem momentan gewählten Einzugsmodus.

Einzelheiten zu den einzelnen Einzugsmodi siehe angegebene Seite.

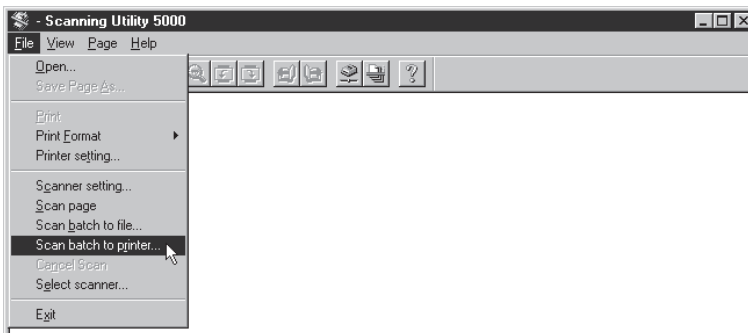
Fern-Modus: "Scannen von zwei oder mehr Seiten" (S. 23).

Halbautomatisch-Modus: "Scannen im Halbautomatisch-Modus" (S. 37).

Automatisch-Modus: "Scannen im Automatisch-Modus" (S. 40).

Manuell-Modus: Scannen im Manuell-Modus (S. 43)

2 Wählen Sie entweder [File] - [Scan batch to printer...].



➔ Das Dokument wird abgetastet und auf dem momentan unter normal verwendeter Drucker eingestelltem Drucker gedruckt.

Verwendung von Funktionsblättern

Mit dem Scanner werden Funktionsblätter mitgeliefert. Diese Blätter dienen zur Steuerung des Scannerbetriebs.

Es gibt zwei Typen von Funktionsblättern:

● **Scanner-Kontrollblätter**

Diese Blätter steuern den Modus, in dem das Dokument gescannt wird. Die folgenden Steuerblätter für jeden Scannmodus sind mitgeliefert.

Für Duplex-Modus

Durch Zuführen dieses Funktionsblatts scannt der Scanner die Vorderseite und Rückseite des Blatts und speichert deren Inhalt. Dieses Funktionsblatt vor dem Dokument einfügen und zusammen mit dem Dokument in den Scanner einlegen.

Für Simplex-Modus

Durch Zuführen dieses Funktionsblatts scannt der Scanner nur die Vorderseite des Blatts und speichert deren Inhalt. Dieses Funktionsblatt vor dem Dokument einfügen und zusammen mit dem Dokument in den Scanner einlegen.

Für Foto-Modus

Zum Scannen und Speichern von Fotos schaltet der Scanner durch Zuführen dieses Funktionsblatts auf Fotomodus um. Dieses Funktionsblatt vor einem Fotodokument einfügen und zusammen mit dem Dokument in den Scanner einlegen. Dieses Blatt ist nur gültig, wenn der Scannmodus in der Applikation auf Schwarzweiß gestellt ist. Das Blatt wird ignoriert, wenn es bei auf Grauskalierung oder Farbe gestelltem Scannmodus eingesetzt wird.

Für Text-Modus

Zum Scannen und Speichern von Text schaltet der Scanner durch Zuführen dieses Funktionsblatts auf Textmodus um. Dieses Funktionsblatt vor einem Textdokument einfügen und zusammen mit dem Dokument in den Scanner einlegen. Dieses Blatt ist nur gültig, wenn der Scannmodus in der Applikation auf Schwarzweiß gestellt ist. Das Blatt wird ignoriert, wenn es bei auf Grauskalierung oder Farbe gestelltem Scannmodus eingesetzt wird.

● **Jobtrennblatt**

Unterteilt einen Dokumentenstapel zur Erstellung einer jeweils neuen Datei nach dem Speichern. Dieses Funktionsblatt zwischen Dokumenten einfügen und zusammen mit den Dokumenten in den Scanner einlegen.




ANMERKUNG

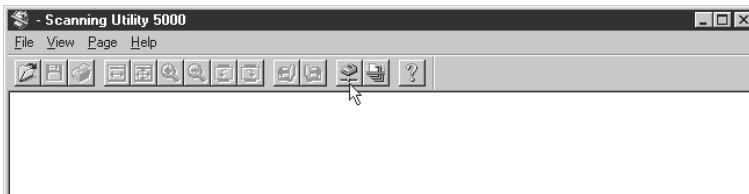
- Einzelheiten über die Funktionsblätter siehe separate DR-5020/5080C-Anleitung oder Bedienungsanleitung für Kontrollblätter.
- Funktionsblätter können mit verschiedenen Formaten von Dokumenten verwendet und eingescannt werden. Versuchen Sie nach Möglichkeit, Funktionsblätter des gleichen Formats wie das Dokument zu verwenden.

Im folgenden werden die entsprechenden Verfahren zum Scannen von Dokumenten mit diesen Funktionsblättern beschrieben.

◆ Scanner-Kontrollblatt

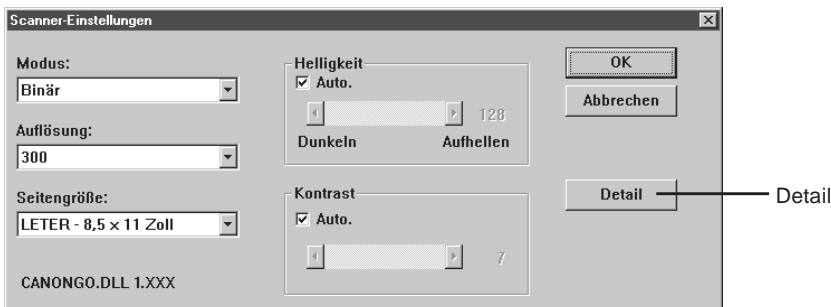
Bevor Sie ein Scanner-Kontrollblatt beim Scannen eines Dokuments verwenden, wählen Sie die Einstellung zur Blatterkennung.

- 1 Wählen Sie entweder [File] - [Scanner setting], oder klicken Sie  auf der Toolleiste.



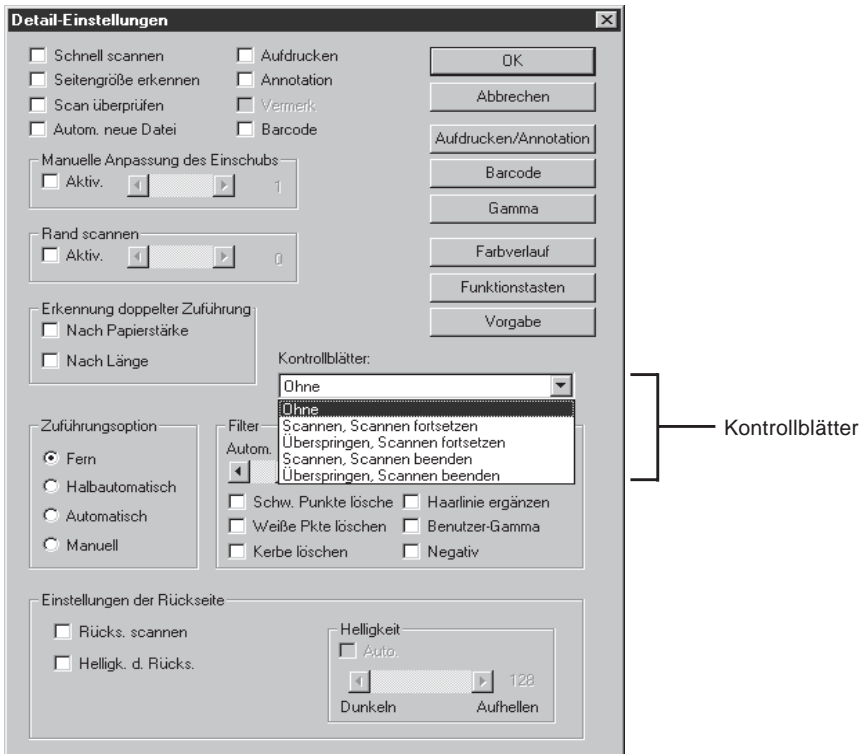
⇒ Das Dialogfeld Scanner-Einstellungen erscheint.

- 2 Im Dialogfeld Scanner-Einstellungen klicken Sie auf [Detail].



⇒ Das Dialogfeld Detail-Einstellungen erscheint.

3 Im folgenden wird das Verfahren für die einzelnen Erkennungseinstellungen für Kontrollblätter beschrieben:



- **Ohne**
Scanner-Kontrollblätter werden nicht erkannt.
- **Scannen, Scannen fortsetzen**
Das Scanner-Kontrollblatt wird erkannt und gescannt, danach wird der Scannvorgang fortgesetzt.
- **Überspringen, Scannen fortsetzen**
Das Scanner-Kontrollblatt wird erkannt und übersprungen (nicht gescannt), danach wird der Scannvorgang fortgesetzt.
- **Scannen, Scannen beenden**
Das Scanner-Kontrollblatt wird erkannt und gescannt, danach wird der Scannvorgang beendet.
- **Überspringen, Scannen beenden**
Das Scanner-Kontrollblatt wird erkannt und übersprungen (nicht gescannt), danach wird der Scannvorgang beendet.

4 Klicken Sie auf [OK], um zum Dialogfeld Scanner-Einstellungen zurückzukehren.

5 Klicken Sie auf [OK], um zum Scannbetrieb-Bildschirm zurückzukehren.

6 Scannen Sie das Dokument zusammen mit dem Kontrollblatt.

◆ Jobtrennblatt

Wenn Sie ein Jobtrennblatt verwenden, wird der Scannvorgang auf gleiche Weise ausgeführt wie beim normalen Scannen, ausgenommen daß die Erkennungseinstellung beim Starten des Scannens gewählt wird.

1 Nehmen Sie die Scanner-Einstellungen vor, und scannen Sie das Dokument entsprechend dem momentan gewählten Einzugsmodus.

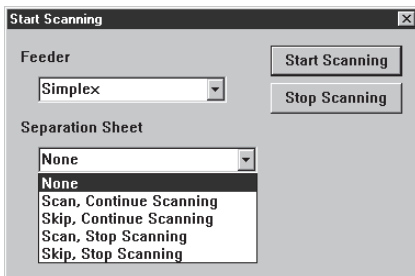
Einzelheiten zu den einzelnen Einzugsmodi siehe angegebene Seite.

Fern-Modus: "Scannen von zwei oder mehr Seiten" (S. 23).

Halbautomatisch-Modus: "Scannen im Halbautomatisch-Modus" (S. 37).

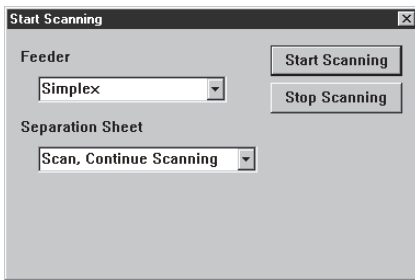
Automatisch-Modus: "Scannen im Automatisch-Modus" (S. 40).

2 Wenn das Dialogfeld [Start Scanning] erscheint, klicken Sie auf das Register Trennblatt ▾ und wählen Sie die Erkennungseinstellung.



- **None**
Scanner-Kontrollblätter werden nicht erkannt.
- **Scan, Continue Scanning**
Das Scanner-Kontrollblatt wird erkannt und gescannt, danach wird der Scannvorgang fortgesetzt.
- **Skip, Continue Scanning**
Das Scanner-Kontrollblatt wird erkannt und übersprungen (nicht gescannt), danach wird der Scannvorgang fortgesetzt.
- **Scan, Stop Scanning**
Das Scanner-Kontrollblatt wird erkannt und gescannt, danach wird der Scannvorgang beendet.
- **Skip, Stop Scanning**
Das Scanner-Kontrollblatt wird erkannt und übersprungen (nicht gescannt), danach wird der Scannvorgang beendet.

3 Klicken Sie auf [Start Scanning].



Schnelles Scannen

Scannen Sie Dokumente mit hoher Geschwindigkeit. Obwohl die Dokumenten-Einzugsgeschwindigkeit gesteigert wird, wird durch Verringern der Zeit zum Scannen die Bildqualität leicht beeinträchtigt.



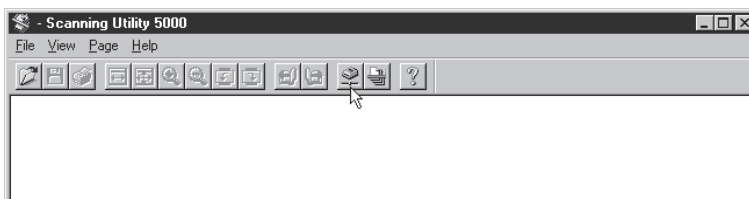
ANMERKUNG

Schnelles Scannen kann nur ausgeführt werden, wenn die Auflösung auf 200 dpi oder 300 dpi eingestellt ist.

Wenn 200 dpi eingestellt ist, werden Bilder mit 200 x 100 (horizontal x vertikal) dpi eingestellt und als 200 x 200 dpi ausgegeben.

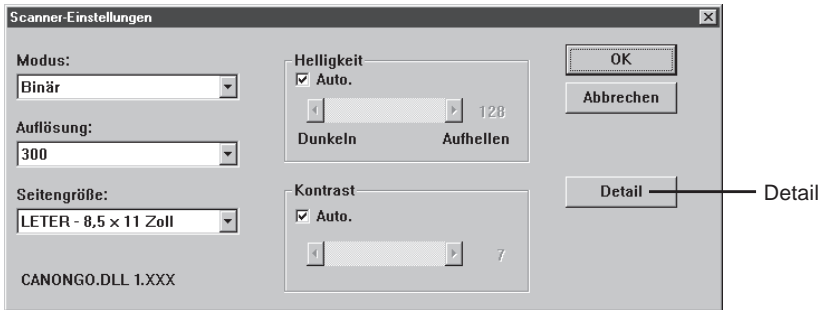
Wenn 300 dpi eingestellt ist, werden Bilder mit 300 x 150 (horizontal x vertikal) dpi eingestellt und als 300 x 300 dpi ausgegeben.

1 Wählen Sie entweder [File] - [Scanner setting...] oder klicken Sie auf in der Tooleiste.



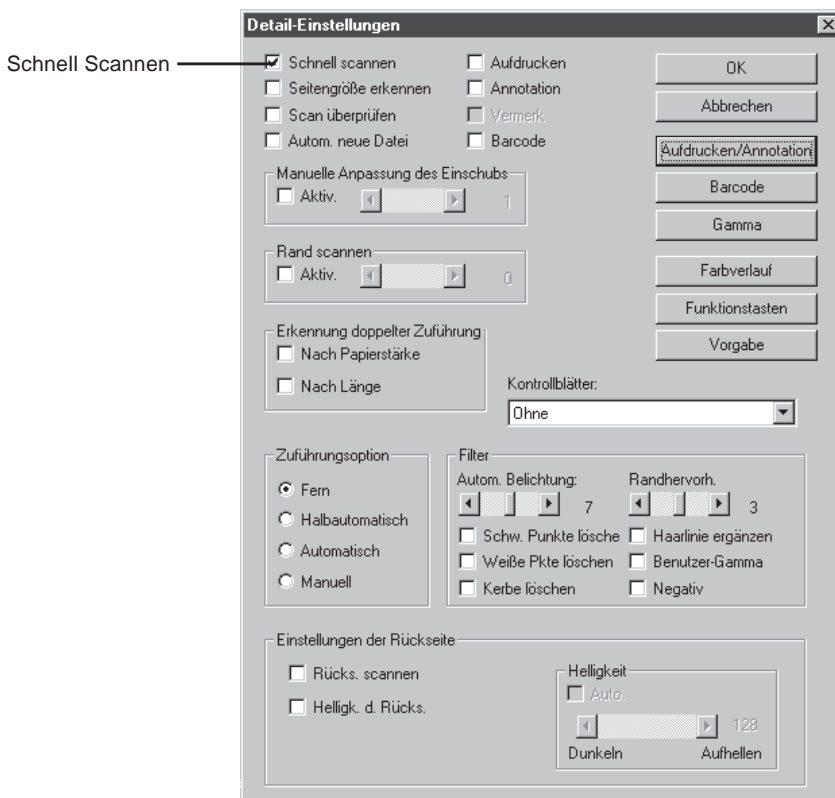
➞ Das Dialogfeld Scanner-Einstellungen erscheint.

2 Im Dialogfeld Scanner-Einstellungen klicken Sie auf die Schaltfläche [Detail].



➞ Das Dialogfeld "Detail-Einstellungen" erscheint.

3 Zum Wählen von schnellem Scannen klicken Sie das Wahlkästchen für Schnell Scannen.



4 Klicken Sie auf [OK], um zum Dialogfeld Scanner-Einstellungen zurückzukehren.

5 Klicken Sie auf [OK], um zum Bildschirm “Scannbetrieb” zurückzukehren.

6 Scannen Sie das Dokument.

Einzelheiten zu den einzelnen Einzugsmodi siehe angegebene Seite.

Fern-Modus: “Scannen von zwei oder mehr Seiten” (S. 23).

Halbautomatisch-Modus: “Scannen im Halbautomatisch-Modus” (S. 37).


Automatisch-Modus: “Scannen im Automatisch-Modus” (S. 40).

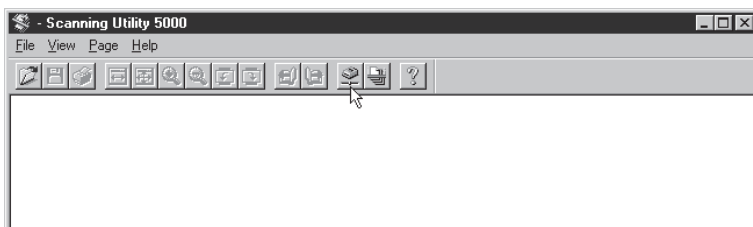
Manuell-Modus: “Scannen im Manuell-Modus” (S. 43)

Scannen mit Überprüfen der Anzahl

Bestätigen Sie die Anzahl der eingegebenen (oder gezählten) Dokumentenseiten vor dem Scannen im Vergleich zur tatsächlichen Anzahl der gescannten Seiten. Wenn sich die Zahlen unterscheiden, erscheint eine Fehlermeldung.

◆ Einstellung für Scannen mit Überprüfen der Anzahl

1 Wählen Sie entweder [File] - [Scanner setting...] oder klicken Sie auf  in der Tooleiste.



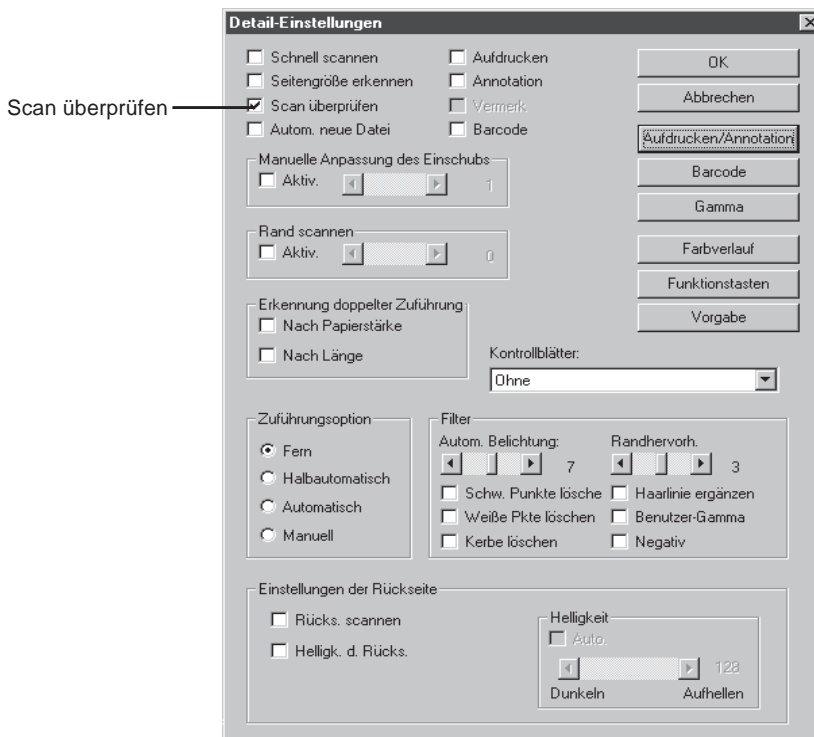
➞ Das Dialogfeld Scanner-Einstellungen erscheint.

2 Im Dialogfeld Scanner-Einstellungen klicken Sie auf die Schaltfläche [Detail].



➞ Das Dialogfeld "Detail-Einstellungen" erscheint.

3 Zum Bestätigen der Zählung klicken Sie auf das Wahlkästchen Scan überprüfen.



4 Klicken Sie auf [OK], um zum Dialogfeld Scanner-Einstellungen zurückzukehren.

5 Klicken Sie auf [OK], um zum Scannbetrieb-Bildschirm zurückzukehren.

◆ Eingeben der Seitenzahl in einem Dokument

Wenn Sie bereits die Seitenzahl in einem zu scannenden Dokument kennen.

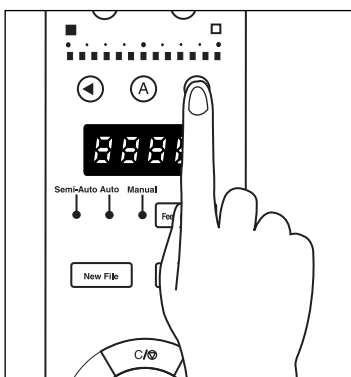
Geben Sie diese Zahl direkt im Zählerdisplay ein.

1 Drücken die Nur-Zählen-Taste am Scanner-Bedienfeld.



➔ Die Nur-Zählen-Taste und das Semi-Auto-Lämpchen leuchten, und die Start-Taste leuchtet grün.

2 Drücken Sie die Tasten ◀ und ▶ am Scanner-Bedienfeld, um die Seitenzahl einzugeben.



➔ Die Zahl erscheint im Zählerdisplay.



ANMERKUNG

Wenn die Taste ▶ gedrückt wird, wird die Zahl höher gestellt, und wenn die Taste ◀ gedrückt wird, wird sie niedriger gestellt.
Zum schnellen Höher- oder Niedrigerstellen die Taste gedrückt gehalten.

3 Wenn Sie die Seitenzahl in einem Dokument eingestellt haben, drücken Sie die Nur-Zählen-Taste, um den Nur-Zählen-Betrieb aufzuheben.



ANMERKUNG

Zum Zurückstellen der Zähleranzeige die Stopp-Taste mindestens zwei Sekunden gedrückt halten.

Zählen der Seitenzahl in einem Dokument

Wenn Sie die Anzahl der Seiten in einem zu scannenden Dokument nicht kennen, führen Sie den Zählvorgang mit der Zählfunktion des Scanners aus.

1 Drücken Nur-Zählen-Taste am Bedienfeld des Scanners.



➔ Die Nur-Zählen-Taste und die Semi-Auto-Lampe blinken, und die Start-Taste leuchtet grün.

2 Legen Sie das Dokument auf das Dokumentenfach und drücken Sie die Start-Taste.

➔ Die Anzahl der Seiten im Dokument wird gezählt, und die Zählung erscheint im Zählerdisplay.

3 Drücken Sie die Nur-Zählen-Taste erneut, um den Nur-Zählen-Modus aufzuheben.



ANMERKUNG

Zum Zurückstellen der Zähleranzeige die Stopp-Taste mindestens zwei Sekunden gedrückt halten.

◆ Scannen von Dokumenten

Wenn die eingegebene (oder gezählte) Blattanzahl sich von der tatsächlich gescannten Blattanzahl unterscheidet, erscheint eine Fehlermeldung nach dem Scannen im Zählerdisplay.

1 Scannen Sie das Dokument entsprechend dem aktuell gewählten Einzugsmodus.

Einzelheiten zu den einzelnen Einzugsmodi siehe angegebene Seite.

Fern-Modus: "Scannen von zwei oder mehr Seiten" (S. 23).

Halbautomatisch-Modus: "Scannen im Halbautomatisch-Modus" (S. 37).

Automatisch-Modus: "Scannen im Automatisch-Modus" (S. 40).

Manuell-Modus: "Scannen im Manuell-Modus" (S. 43).

2 Legen Sie das Dokument auf das Dokumentenfach und starten Sie den Scannvorgang.

- **Wenn die tatsächliche Anzahl gescannter Seiten größer als die Anzahl der Seiten im Zählerdisplay ist:**

Das Dokument wird gescannt, und der Scannvorgang stoppt bei der im Zählerdisplay gezeigten Seitenzahl.

Die Zähleranzeige wechselt auf "U01" Fehlermeldung um, und die Fehlermeldung "Verify Count Error" (Zählfehler bestätigen) erscheint im Computer.

Zählen Sie die Anzahl der Seiten im Dokument erneut.



ANMERKUNG

"U01" zusammen mit einer Fehlermeldung erscheint, wenn ein Bestätigungsscan gemacht wurde, ohne die Seitenzahl im Dokument zu bestätigen.

- **Wenn die tatsächliche Anzahl von gescannten Seiten kleiner als die im Zähler-Display gezeigte Anzahl von Seiten ist:**

Der Zähler wechselt auf "U02" um, um einen Bestätigungszähl-Fehler zu zeigen. Zählen Sie die Anzahl der Seiten im Dokument erneut.

Eine mögliche Ursache ist Doppeleinzug. Prüfen Sie, ob alle Seiten im Dokument gescannt worden sind oder nicht.




ANMERKUNG

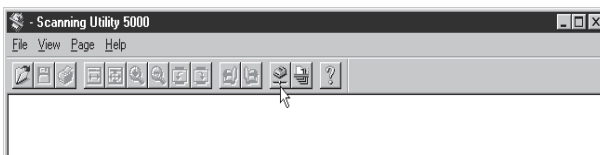
Zum Zurückstellen des Fehlerdisplays drücken Sie die Stopp-Taste.

2.4

Einstellung der Scannbedingungen

Stellen Sie die Bedingungen beim Scannen des Dokuments ein. Wählen Sie das zur Funktion passende Dialogfeld, und nehmen die gewünschte Einstellung vor. Einzelheiten zu den Parametern in diesen Dialogfeld siehe Bezugsseite im Dialogfeld.

1 Entweder wählen Sie [File] - [Scanner setting...], oder sie klicken auf  in der Tooleiste.

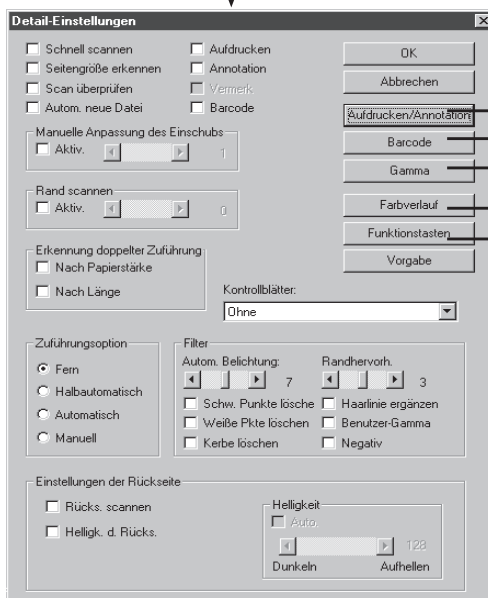


⇒ Das Dialogfeld Scanner-Einstellungen erscheint.

2 Stellen Sie die grundlegenden Einstellpunkte im gewünschten Einstellbildschirm ein.



Dialogfeld Scanner-Einstellungen (→ S.61)



Aufdrucken/Annotation (→ S.69)

Barcode (→ S.74)

Gamma (→ S.79)

Farbverlauf (→ S.82)

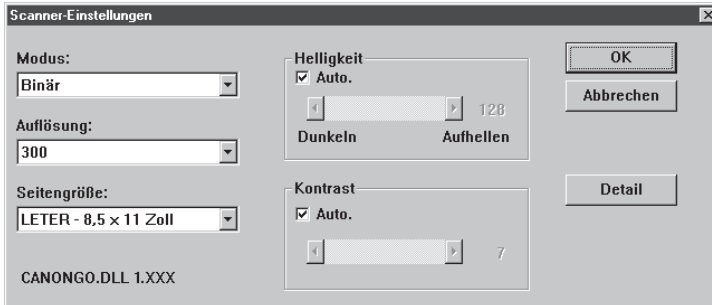
Funktionstasten (→ S.83)

Dialogfeld Detail-Einstellungen (→ S.63)

Grundlegende Einstellungen

Stellt grundlegende Scanner-Bedingungen ein.

Diese Gegenstände werden im Dialogfeld Scanner-Einstellungen eingestellt.



<Scanner-Einstellungen>

Funktion	Beschreibung
Modus	<p>Stellt ein, wie das Bild gescannt wird. Nur [Binär] und [Binäre ED] steht beim DR-5020 zur Verfügung. Die verfügbaren Modi sind manchmal durch das Papierformat begrenzt. Einzelheiten siehe "siehe "DR-5020/5080C Scanmodus-Tabellen" (S. 88) in der separaten DR-5020/5080C Anleitung.</p> <p>[Schwarzweiß] Scannt das Bild vollständig in Schwarzweiß ohne jegliche Grauschattierungen.</p> <p>[Binäre ED] Diese Einstellung scannt das Bild vollständig in schwarz/weiß ab, ohne jegliche Grauschattierungen. Halbton-Graubereiche werden mit Fehlerdiffusion simuliert und reproduziert.</p> <p>[Graustufe - 4 Stufen] (16-, 256-Stufen-Grau) Diesen Modus wählen, wenn Fotos und Halbton-Dokumente mit Grauskalierung gescannt werden sollen. Je größer der Pegelwert, desto größer wird die Datei.</p> <p>[Farbe - 3 Bit] (6, 12, 24 Bit) Diesen Modus wählen, wenn Farboriginale wie Fotos gescannt werden sollen. Je größer der Bit-Wert, desto größer die Datei.</p>
Auflösung	<p>Erlaubt es, die Auflösung, die Anzahl der Punkte/Zoll, einzustellen. Sie haben 13 Wahlen: 100, 200, 210, 220, 230, 240, 250, 260, 270, 280, 290, 300 und 400. Wenn Sie 200 oder 300 wählen, können Sie auch Schnell Scannen (S. 63) im Dialogfeld Detail-Einstellungen wählen. Die verfügbaren Modi sind manchmal je nach Papierformat begrenzt. Einzelheiten siehe "siehe "DR-5020/5080C Scanmodus-Tabellen" (S. 88) in der separaten DR-5020/5080C Anleitung.</p>

Seitengröße	<p>Erlaubt es Ihnen, eine der folgenden Dokumentengrößen zum Scannen zu wählen. Die folgenden Wahlen stehen zur Verfügung:</p> <p>LETTER - 8.5 x 11 Zoll LEGAL - 8.5 x 14 Zoll A3 - 297 x 420 mm A4 - 210 x 297 mm A4-R - 297 x 210 mm A5 - 148 x 210 mm A6 - 105 x 148 mm B4 (ISO) - 250 x 353 mm B4 (JIS) - 257 x 364 mm B5 (ISO) - 176 x 250 mm B5 (JIS) - 182 x 257 mm Scanner-Maximum (295 x 432 mm)</p> <p>Wenn ein Dokument mit mehr als der vorgeschriebenen Größe gescannt wird, werden die Randbereiche des Dokuments abgeschnitten.</p> <p>Alternativ, wenn ein Dokument gescannt wird, das kleiner als die vorgeschriebene Größe ist, erscheint ein schwarzer Rand an den Rändern des Dokuments.</p> <p>Wenn Sie im Dialogfeld "Detail-Einstellungen" die Wahl "Seitengröße erkennen" gewählt haben (S. 63), wird diese Einstellung ignoriert.</p>
Helligkeit	<p>Stellt die Helligkeit des Bildes manuell ein. Die Helligkeit kann in 255 Stufen eingestellt werden.</p>
Kontrast	<p>Stellt den Kontrast des gesamten gescannten Bildes manuell ein. Der Kontrast kann in 13 Stufen eingestellt werden. Ein größerer Wert stellt den Kontrast höher ein, und ein kleinerer Wert stellt ihn niedriger ein.</p>



ANMERKUNG

- Die Kontrasteinstellung ist deaktiviert, wenn [Modus] auf [Schwarzweiß] gestellt ist.
- Beim DR-5020 ist das [Kontrast] Wahlkästchen abgeblendet, wenn [Modus] auf [Schwarzweiß] gestellt ist.

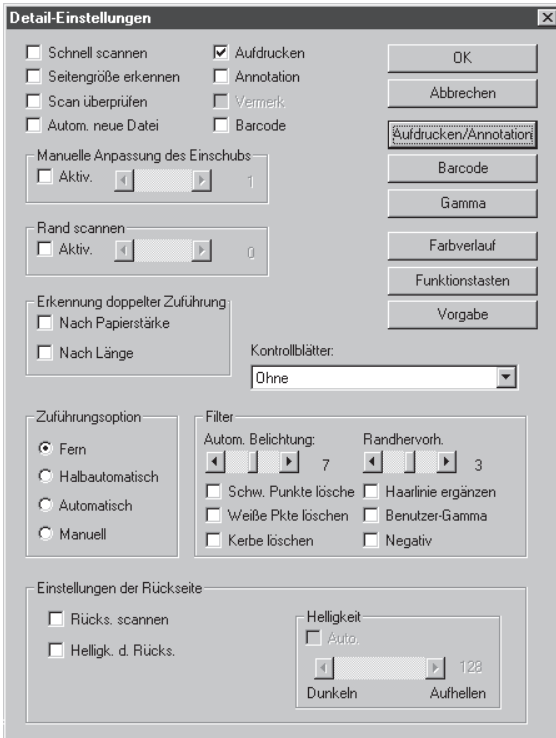
<Schaltflächen>

Funktion	Beschreibung
OK	Aktiviert die Einstellungen und schließt das Dialogfeld.
Abbrechen	Hebt alle vorgenommenen Einstellungen auf und schließt das Dialogfeld.
Detail	Öffnet das Dialogfeld "Detail-Einstellungen" (S. 63), so daß spezielle Merkmale wie Filter, Scangeschwindigkeit, Seitenformaterkennung und Kontrollblatterkennung eingestellt werden können.

Detail-Einstellungen

Stellt Detail-Einstellungen ein.

Diese Gegenstände werden im Dialogfeld "Detail-Einstellungen" eingestellt.



Funktion	Beschreibung
Schnell scannen	<p>Diese Einstellung steht zur Verfügung, wenn die Auflösung auf 200 oder 300 dpi eingestellt ist.</p> <p>Wenn 200 dpi eingestellt ist, werden Bilder mit 200 x 100 dpi (horizontal x vertikal) gescannt und Bilder mit 200 x 200 dpi ausgegeben.</p> <p>Wenn 300 dpi eingestellt ist, werden Bilder mit 300 x 150 dpi (horizontal x vertikal) gescannt und Bilder mit 300 x 300 dpi ausgegeben.</p> <p>Der Scannvorgang geschieht in diesem Fall zwar schneller, aber die Qualität des mit hoher Geschwindigkeit gescannten Bildes wird etwas geringer.</p> <p>Einzelheiten zum Schnell-Scannen siehe "Schnelles Scannen" (S. 52).</p>
Seitengröße erkennen	<p>Die Einstellung erkennt die Größe jedes Dokuments beim Scannen und scannt das Dokument in der betreffenden Größe.</p> <p>Wenn diese Option gewählt ist, ist Seitengröße im Dialogfeld "Scanner-Einstellungen" deaktiviert.</p>

Anzahl überprüfen	Die Anzahl der gezählten Seiten vor dem Scannvorgang mit der Anzahl der gescannten Seiten vergleichen. Wenn sie sich unterscheiden, erscheint eine Fehlermeldung. Einzelheiten zum Überprüfen der Anzahl siehe S. 54.
Automatisch Neue Datei	Diese Einstellung erzeugt ein Neue-Seite-Signal jedesmal, wenn ein kontinuierlicher Scan endet.
Aufdrucken	Aktiviert die Imprinter-Funktion zum Aufdrucken zusätzlicher Information auf gescannten Dokumenten. Die optionale Imprinter-Einheit ist erforderlich.
Annotation	Schaltet die Imprinter-Funktion zur Eingabe spezifizierter Zeichen auf dem gescannten Bild ein.
Vermerk	Aktiviert den optionalen Vermerk. Für die Verwendung dieser Funktion ist der optionale Vermerk notwendig.
Barcode	Schaltet die Barcode-Erkennung ein oder aus. Der optionale Barcode-Decoder ist für diese Funktion erforderlich.
Manuelle Papierstärken-einstellung	<p>Stellen Sie manuell die Papierstärke ein, wenn die Papierstärke nicht automatisch eingestellt wird.</p> <p>Klicken Sie auf "Aktivieren" und verwenden Sie die ◀ und ▶ Schaltflächen zum Einstellen der Stärke.</p> <p>Geben Sie die Stärke innerhalb des Bereichs 1 (am dünnsten) bis zu 13 (am dicksten) ein. Verwenden Sie diese Einstellung, um manuell die Papierstärke beim Scannen von speziell beschichteten Originalen und Dokumenten einzustellen, deren Papierstärke nicht automatisch eingestellt werden kann, oder wenn Doppelzuführung häufig bei automatischer Papierstärkeneinstellung auftritt.</p> <p>Diese Einstellung kann auch mit dem Bedienfeld des Scanners vorgenommen werden. Einzelheiten siehe separate DR-5020/5080C Anleitung.</p>

Rand scannen	<p>Stellt die Ränder des Scannbereichs ein (oben, unten, links und rechts).</p> <p>Zum Einstellen der Ränder klicken Sie [Aktiv.] und verwenden die Schaltflächen ◀ und ▶.</p> <p>Geben Sie innerhalb des Bereichs -10 (verringert den Scannbereich um 10 mm) und +10 (vergrößert den Scannbereich um 10 mm) ein.</p> <p>Wenn Sie z.B. den Scannbereich leicht vergrößern wollen, so daß das Dokument nicht abgeschnitten wird, stellen Sie in Richtung + ein. Wenn der Scannbereich leicht verringert werden soll, so daß sich kein schwarzer Rand um das Scannbild bildet, stellen Sie in Richtung – ein.</p>
Erkennung doppelter Zuführung	<p>Wählt die Doppelblatterkennung. "Doppelte Zuführung" wird erkannt, wenn zwei oder mehr Blätter des Dokuments gleichzeitig eingezogen werden, oder wenn beim kontinuierlichen Scannen ein Teil eines Blatts ein anderes Blatt überlappt.</p> <p>[Nach Papierstärke erkennen] Doppelblatterkennung nach Papierstärke. Wenn das Papier Stärke ist als das erste Blatt des Dokuments(*), beurteilt der Scanner dies als Doppelzuführung und gibt eine Fehlermeldung aus.</p> <p>[Nach Länge erkennen] Doppelblatterkennung nach Papierlänge. Wenn ein Blatt zugeführt wird, das länger ist als das erste Blatt des Dokuments(*), beurteilt das System dies als Doppelzuführung und gibt eine Fehlermeldung aus.</p> <p>* Doppelblatterkennung wird durch Bestimmung von Stärke und Länge des ersten Blatts des Dokuments als Standardblatt ausgeführt. Wenn das erste Blatt des Dokuments zugeführt wird, speichert der Scanner die Stärke und Länge des Dokuments.</p>

<p>Kontrollblätter</p>	<p>Wählt, wie der Scanner Kontrollblätter erkennt. (S. 48)</p> <p>[Ohne] Scanner-Kontrollblätter werden nicht erkannt.</p> <p>[Scannen, Scannen fortsetzen] Das Scanner-Kontrollblatt wird erkannt und gescannt, danach wird der Scannvorgang fortgesetzt.</p> <p>[Überspringen, Scannen fortsetzen] Das Scanner-Kontrollblatt wird erkannt und übersprungen (nicht gescannt), danach wird der Scannvorgang fortgesetzt.</p> <p>[Scannen, Scannen beenden] Das Scanner-Kontrollblatt wird erkannt und gescannt, danach stoppt der Scannvorgang.</p> <p>[Überspringen, Scannen beenden] Das Scanner-Kontrollblatt wird erkannt und übersprungen (nicht gescannt), danach stoppt der Scannvorgang.</p> <p>Einzelheiten zum Scannen mit Kontrollblättern siehe "Funktionsblätter" in der separaten DR-5020/5080C Anleitung.</p>
<p>Zuführungsoption</p>	<p>Wählt die Zuführungsmethode.</p> <p>Fern: Das Dokument wird zugeführt (gescannt), wenn Sie das Dokument einlegen und in der Applikation Scannen wählen.</p> <p>Halbautomatisch: Das Dokument wird eingezogen (gescannt), wenn Scannen in der Applikation gewählt wird, und wenn das Dokument eingelegt und die Start-Taste gedrückt wird.</p> <p>Automatisch: Das Dokument wird automatisch eingezogen (gescannt) wenn Sie das Dokument einlegen.</p> <p>Manuell: Das Dokument wird manuell um jeweils eine Seite zugeführt, nachdem Scannen in der Applikation gewählt ist. Verwenden Sie diese Methode beim Scannen von besonders starken oder dünnen Belegen.</p> <p>Dieser Punkt kann auch im Bedienfeld des Scanners eingestellt werden. Einzelheiten siehe DR-5020/5080C-Anleitung.</p>
<p>Einstellungen der Rückseite</p>	<p>Verwenden Sie diese Funktion zum Scannen der Rückseite von Dokumenten.</p> <p>[Rücks. scannen] Scannt die Rückseite des Dokuments (Dokumente werden mit der Vorderseite nach unten weisend in den Scanner eingelegt.)</p> <p>[Helligkeit d. Rücks.] Gibt die Helligkeit automatisch ein. Manuell kann diese in einem Bereich von 1 bis 255 eingestellt werden.</p>



ANMERKUNG

- Wenn das Wahlkästchen [Rücks. scannen] markiert ist, wird die Papiereinzugeinstellung beim Öffnen des Dialogfeld [Start Scanning] [Simplex].
- Wenn Scannen ausgeführt wird, während das Wahlkästchen [Rücks. Scannen] markiert ist und die Papiereinzugeinstellung auf [Duplex] gestellt ist, wird das Wahlkästchen [Rücks. Scannen] abgeblendet, wenn das Dialogfeld [Detail-Einstellungen] geöffnet wird.
- Ein abgeblendetes Wahlkästchen [Rücks. Scannen] kann auf normal zurückgesetzt werden, indem das Wahlkästchen geklickt wird.

<Filter-Einstellungen>

Stellt die Bildverarbeitungsfilter ein.

Funktion	Beschreibung
Autom. Belichtung	Stellt den Pegel des Kontrastes ein. Diese Einstellung kann in 13 Stufen mit den Schaltflächen ◀ und ▶ vorgenommen werden. Vorgabe ist 7.
Randhervorhebung	Stellt den Pegel zur Verbesserung der Kontur von Beschriftung ein. Diese Einstellung kann in 5 Stufen mit den Schaltflächen ◀ und ▶ vorgenommen werden. Vorgabe ist 3.
Schwarze Punkte löschen	Löscht automatisch isolierte schwarze Punkte (Einzelpunkte) auf weißen Hintergründen.
Weißer Punkte löschen	Löscht automatisch isolierte weiße Punkte (Einzelpunkte) auf schwarzen Hintergründen.
Nut löschen	Löscht automatisch Teile (Nuten), die aus Konturen hervorstehen.
Haarlinie ergänzen	Fügt automatisch schwache oder unterbrochene dünne Linien zusammen, die entstehen, wenn Dokumente mit schwachen Linien gescannt werden.
Benutzer-Gamma	Diese Funktion prüfen, um die mit Gamma-Schaltfläche gelesenen Gammadaten zu verwenden.
Negativ	Gibt ein negatives gescanntes Bild aus.



ANMERKUNG

- [Autom. Belichtung] ist aktiviert, wenn [Modus] auf [Schwarzweiß] gestellt ist.
- [Randhervorhebung] ist in allen Betriebsarten aktiviert.
- [Schwarze Punkte löschen], [Weiße Punkte löschen], [Nut löschen] und [Haarlinie ergänzen] sind aktiviert, wenn [Modus] auf [Binär], [Binäre ED] oder [Farbe - 3 Bit] gestellt ist.

<Schaltflächen>

Funktion	Beschreibung
OK	Aktivieren der Einstellungen und Schließen des Dialogfelds.
Abbrechen	Hebt alle geänderten Einstellungen auf und schließt das Dialogfeld.
Aufdrucken/Annotation	Öffnet das Dialogfeld "Aufdrucken/Annotation" (S. 69). Stellt die Imprinter-Funktion oder die Annotation-Funktion ein. Die Imprinter-Funktion druckt spezifische Zeichen auf das gescannte Dokument, wenn die optionale Imprinter-Einheit installiert ist. Die Annotation-Funktion druckt spezifizierte Zeichen auf gescannte Bilder.
Barcode	Öffnet das Dialogfeld "Barcode" (S. 74). Stellt die Bedingungen zum Lesen der Barcodes ein, wenn der optionale Barcode-Decoder installiert ist.
Gamma	Öffnet das Dialogfeld "Gamma-Einstellungen" (S. 79). Lädt und speichert Gammadaten als Datei, um Farben und Farbtöne auszudrücken.
Farbverlauf	Öffnet das Dialogfeld zu Farbunterdrückung (S. 82). Deaktiviert das Scannen spezifischer Farben (Dropout) in Dokumenten. Dieses Merkmal steht nur für den DR-5080C zur Verfügung.
Funktionstaste	Öffnet das Dialogfeld Funktionstasten (S. 83). Stellt die Registrierung spezifischer Funktionen unter Funktionstasten am Scanner ein.
Vorgabe	Setzt alle Einstellungen auf Vorgabewerte zurück.



ANMERKUNG

Farbunterdrückung ist gültig, wenn der Scannmodus auf Binär, Binäre ED oder Grauskalierung gestellt ist.

Aufdrucken/Annotation Einstellungen

Stellt den optionalen Imprinter und die Annotationfunktionen ein.

Die Imprinter-Funktion erlaubt es, Zeichen und Zählungen auf gescannten Dokumenten aufzudrucken. Die Annotation-Funktion erlaubt es, Zeichen und Zählungen auf gescannten Bildern aufzudrucken.

Die folgenden Einstellpunkte werden im Aufdrucken/Aufdrucker-Dialogfeld eingestellt. Diese Einstellungen sind nur verfügbar, wenn der optionale Imprinter installiert ist.



ANMERKUNG

- Die Annotation-Funktion kann verwendet werden, auch wenn der Imprinter nicht installiert ist.
- Wenn Sie die Annotation-Funktion aktivieren und das Dokument im Duplexmodus scannen, werden Zeichen auf das Bild auf der Vorderseite (Seite, die beim Einlegen nach oben weist) gedruckt.

DEUTSCH

Funktion	Beschreibung
Text	<p>Die aufzudruckenden/einzufügenden Details eingeben. Bis zu 32(*) der folgenden Zeichen können eingegeben werden:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ziffern (0 bis 9) • Alphabetische Zeiche (Großbuchstaben, Kleinbuchstaben) • Leerstellen (Zwischenräume) • Die folgenden Symbole: ! " # \$ % & ' () * + - . / : ; < = > ? @ [\] ^ _ { } ~ ` <p>Die obigen Zeichen werden aufgedruckt (eingefügt) wie sie eingegeben werden. Zusätzlich zu diesen Zeichen können Zähler, Zeit und Datum als spezielle Zeichen spezifiziert werden.</p>

	<p><Zähler> Zum Aufdrucken (Einfügen) eines Zählers geben Sie eine Zahl in rechteckigen Klammern ein. Die in rechteckigen Klammern [] eingefügte Zahl wird die erste Zählernummer, und die Anzahl der eingegebenen Ziffern die zweite Zählernummer. Zum Einstellen der Zähler geben Sie zwei Zähler ein, die mit einem "." (Punkt) getrennt werden, und zwar im Format "Erster Zähler, Zweiter Zähler". (Siehe Eingabebeispiel unten.) Die Zeitgabe, mit der der Zähler hoch- oder heruntergezählt wird, wird in der Einstellung "Erster Zähler/Zweiter Zähler" wie später beschrieben eingestellt. (Wenn nur der Erste Zähler eingestellt ist, die Zeitgabe in "Einstellung des Ersten Zählers" einstellen.)</p> <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="width: 50%;">[Eingabe]</td> <td style="width: 50%;">[Aufdrucken/Annotation Ergebnis]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CANON[10001.00001]</td> <td>CANON 10001 0001</td> </tr> </table> <p><Zeit> Zum Drucken (Hinzufügen) des Datums, wo das Dokument gescannt wurde, geben Sie "\TIME" ein. Die Zeit im 24-Stunden-Format wird in acht Stellen gedruckt (hinzugefügt), wie folgt. (Beispiel: 16:28:30)</p> <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="width: 50%;">[Eingabe]</td> <td style="width: 50%;">[Aufdrucken/Annotation Ergebnis]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>\TIME</td> <td>16:28:30</td> </tr> </table> <p><Datum> Zum Drucken (Hinzufügen) des Datums des gescannten Dokuments geben Sie eine der Kombinationen "\MDY", "\DMY" oder "YMD" als Kombination von Y (Jahr), M (Monat) und D (Tag) ein. Das Datum im westlichen Kalender wird in zehn Stellen aufgedruckt (oder hinzugefügt), wie folgt. Jahr, Monat und Tag werden durch Schrägstrich "/" getrennt. (Beispiel 2001/3/4 (4. März 2001).)</p> <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="width: 50%;">[Eingabe]</td> <td style="width: 50%;">[Aufdrucken/Annotation Ergebnis]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>\YMD</td> <td>2001/03/04</td> </tr> </table>	[Eingabe]	[Aufdrucken/Annotation Ergebnis]	CANON[10001.00001]	CANON 10001 0001	[Eingabe]	[Aufdrucken/Annotation Ergebnis]	\TIME	16:28:30	[Eingabe]	[Aufdrucken/Annotation Ergebnis]	\YMD	2001/03/04
[Eingabe]	[Aufdrucken/Annotation Ergebnis]												
CANON[10001.00001]	CANON 10001 0001												
[Eingabe]	[Aufdrucken/Annotation Ergebnis]												
\TIME	16:28:30												
[Eingabe]	[Aufdrucken/Annotation Ergebnis]												
\YMD	2001/03/04												

<p>Annotationsart</p>	<p>Wählt, wie die Buchstaben auf die Daten gedruckt werden.</p> <p>[Schwarz auf weiß] Druckt (fügt ein) schwarze Buchstaben auf weißem Hintergrund.</p> <p>DR-5020/5080C</p> <p>[Weiß auf schwarz] Druckt (fügt ein) weiße Buchstaben auf schwarzem Hintergrund.</p> <p>DR-5020/5080C</p> <p>[Schwarz auf Image] Druckt (fügt ein) schwarze Buchstaben auf einem Bild.</p> <p>DR-5020/5080C</p>
<p>Ausrichtung</p>	<p>Wählt die Ausrichtung der zu druckenden (hinzuzufügenden) Schriftarten.</p> <p>[Ohne] (Vorgabe) Keine Rotation</p> <p>[Querformat] 90 Grad Drehung im Uhrzeigersinn</p> <p>[180 Grad] 180 Grad Drehung</p> <p>[270 Grad] 270 Grad Drehung</p>
<p>Kleine Schriftart</p>	<p>Druckt (bzw. fügt hinzu) Zeichen in einer kleinen (8 x 7 Punkte) Schriftart. (Normale Größe ist 12 x 12 Punkte.) Wenn die Annotation-Funktion verwendet wird, ändert sich die Größe der Zeichen mit der Bildänderung entsprechend der Scannauflösung.</p> <p>Normale Größe CANON canon</p> <p>Kleine Schriftart CANON canon</p>
<p>Rechts nach links</p>	<p>Druckt (bzw. fügt hinzu) Zeichen von rechts nach links.</p>

<Einstellungen für ersten und zweiten Zähler>

Zwei Zähler können in einer Zeichenfolge eingefügt werden. Geben Sie die Details des Zählers ein, wenn ein Zähler eingegeben ist.

Funktion	Beschreibung
Auslöser erhöhen	Stellt den Zählerzuwachs ein. Die Voreinstellung ist 0 (keine Änderung). [Trennblatt] Wenn ein Trennblatt eingesetzt ist oder die Zieldatei geändert wird. [Seite] Wenn die Seite wechselt [Nie] Ohne
Erhöhung	Stellt die Erhöhung des Zählers ein.
Auslöser zurücksetzen	Wählt die Zeitsteuerung für die Zähler-Rückstellung unter den folgenden: [Trennblatt] Wenn ein Trennblatt eingefügt wird. [Seite] Wenn die Seite wechselt. [Nie] Keine (Vorgabe)
Anfangswert	Stellt den Anfangswert für den Zähler ein (der erste Wert nach der Rückstellung). Vorgabe ist 0.

<Schaltflächen>

Funktion	Beschreibung
OK	Aktivieren der Einstellungen und Schließen des Dialogfelds.
Abbrechen	Hebt alle geänderten Einstellungen auf und schließt das Dialogfeld.

Barcode-Einstellungen

Stellt die Bedingungen zum Erkennen von Barcodes ein. Diese Einstellungen werden nur aktiviert, wenn der optionale Barcode-Decoder installiert ist. Diese Einstellung wird im Dialogfeld "Barcode-Einstellungen" ausgeführt.



ANMERKUNG

- Wenn zwei oder mehr Barcode-Typen horizontal ausgerichtet sind, kann ein Erkennungsfehler auftreten. Wählen Sie nur einen Barcode-Typ in der Barcode-Bereichseinstellung.
- Barcodes mit Annotationscodes können nicht zur gleichen Zeit wie Barcodes ohne Annotationscodes erkannt werden. Beim Scannen von Originalen, die sowohl Barcodes mit als auch ohne Annotationscodes enthalten, immer vor dem Scannen sicherstellen, daß der zu erkennende Bereich im Barcodebereich eingestellt wird.
- Wenn 400 dpi und Duplex-Scannen eingestellt ist, können nur Barcodes auf A4 Breite erkannt werden.
- Beim Scannen von Originalen, die zwei oder mehr Barcodes enthalten, und wenn nur ein spezifischer Typ von Barcode erkannt werden soll, stellen Sie den Erkennungsbereich im Barcode-Einstellbereich ein. Wenn dieser Bereich in der Scannbereich-Einstellung eingestellt wird, werden Barcodes außerhalb des Scannbereichs ebenfalls erkannt.
- Wenn der Barcode-Typ unbekannt ist, markieren Sie alle Wahlkästchen vor dem Scannen des Originals, so daß alle Barcode-Typen automatisch erkannt werden, und die Prüfsumme nicht gescannt wird.
- Wenn ein Barcode gescannt wird, wird die Datei "Barcode.log" automatisch im Ordner \Scanning Utility 5000 erzeugt.

<Barcode-Art>

Stellt den Typ der mit dem Barcodeleser zu lesenden Barcodes ein.

Funktion	Beschreibung
UPC	Zum Lesen von UPC-Barcodes hier klicken.
EAN	Zum Lesen von EAN-Barcodes hier klicken.
Codabar	Zum Lesen von Codabar-Barcodes hier klicken.
Code 25	Zum Lesen von Code 25-Barcodes hier klicken.
Code 39	Zum Lesen von Code 39-Barcodes hier klicken.
Code 128	Zum Lesen von Code 128-Barcodes hier klicken.

<Scan-Einstellungen>

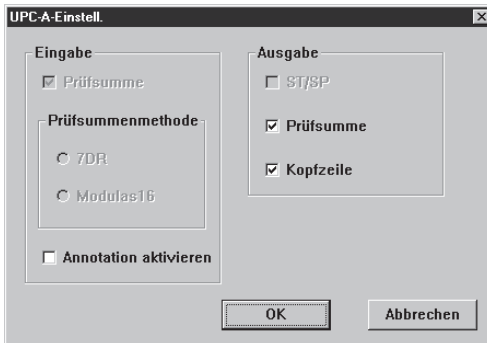
Funktion	Beschreibung
Barcodes per	Stellt die Anzahl von zu lesenden Barcodes pro Seite ein (1 bis 4).
Zu durchsuchende Seite	Wählen Sie die zu lesende Seite (vorne oder hinten).
Bereich	Stellt den Bereich ein, in dem der Barcode gelesen werden soll. Klicken Sie das Wahlkästchen Bereich und geben Sie die Werte ein.

<Schaltflächen>

Funktion	Beschreibung
OK	Aktivieren der Einstellungen und Schließen des Dialogfelds.
Abbrechen	Hebt alle geänderten Einstellungen auf und schließt das Dialogfeld.

◆ UPC-A Barcode-Einstellungen.

Stellt die Details für UPC-A-Barcodes ein.



[Eingabe] - [Annotation aktivieren]

Hier klicken, um Annotation-Codes zu lesen. (Diese Einstellung wird auch im UPC-E Barcode reflektiert.)

[Ausgabe] - [Prüfsumme]

Hier klicken, um Ausgabe des Prüfsummen-Codes zu aktivieren.

[Ausgabe] - [Kopfzeile]

Hier klicken, um die Ausgabe der Kopfzeile bei UPC-Codes zu aktivieren.

◆ UPC-E Barcode-Einstellungen.

Stellt die Details für UPC-E-Barcodes ein.



[Ausgabe] - [Prüfsumme]

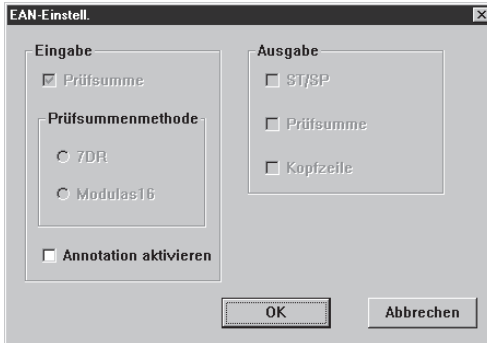
Hier klicken, um Ausgabe des Prüfsummen-Codes zu aktivieren.

[Ausgabe] - [Kopfzeile]

Hier klicken, um die Ausgabe der Kopfzeile bei UPC-Codes zu aktivieren.

◆ EAN-Barcode-Einstellungen.

Stellt die Details für EAN-Barcodes ein.



[Eingabe] - [Annotation aktivieren]

Hier klicken, um Annotation-Codes zu lesen.

◆ Codabar-Barcode-Einstellungen

Stellt die Einstellungen für Codabar-Barcodes ein.



[Eingabe] - [Prüfsumme]

Hier klicken, um Prüfsummen-Codes zu lesen.

[Eingabe] - [7DR]

Hier klicken, wenn die mit Codabar berechnete Prüfsumme einen 7DR Barcode liest.

[Eingabe] - [Modulas16]

Hier klicken, wenn die mit Codabar berechnete Prüfsumme einen Modulas16 Barcode liest.

[Ausgabe] - [ST/SP]

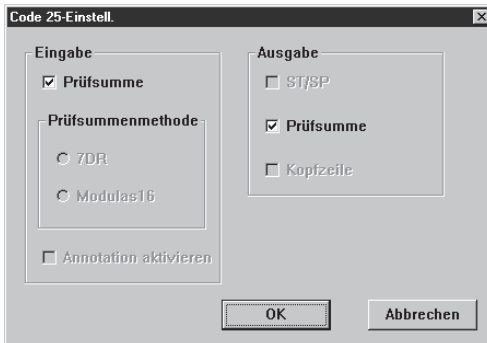
Hier klicken, um Ausgabe von Start/Stop-Codes zu aktivieren.

[Ausgabe] - [Prüfsumme]

Wenn [Eingabe] - [Prüfsumme] aktiviert ist, können Sie einstellen, ob der Prüfsummencode ausgegeben wird oder nicht.

◆ Code 25 Barcode-Einstellungen.

Stellt die Details für Code-25-Barcodes ein.



[Eingabe] - [Prüfsumme]

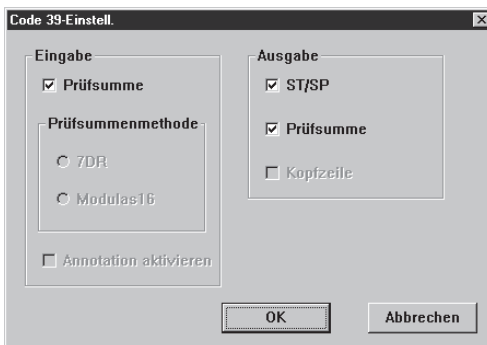
Hier klicken, um Prüfsummen-Codes zu lesen.

[Ausgabe] - [Prüfsumme]

Wenn [Eingabe] - [Prüfsumme] aktiviert ist, können Sie einstellen, ob der Prüfsummencode ausgegeben wird oder nicht.

◆ Code 39 Barcode-Einstellungen.

Stellt die Details für Code-39-Barcodes ein.



[Eingabe] - [Prüfsumme]

Hier klicken, um Prüfsummen-Codes zu lesen.

[Ausgabe] - [ST/SP]

Hier klicken, um Ausgabe von Start/Stop-Codes zu aktivieren.

[Ausgabe] - [Prüfsumme]

Wenn [Eingabe] - [Prüfsumme] aktiviert ist, können Sie einstellen, ob der Prüfsummencode ausgegeben wird oder nicht.

Einstellen der Gammakurve

Die Gamma-Kurve einstellen.

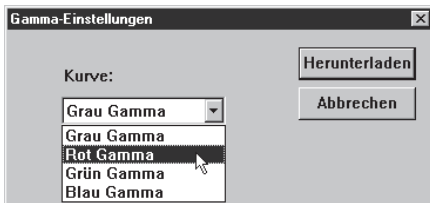


ANMERKUNG

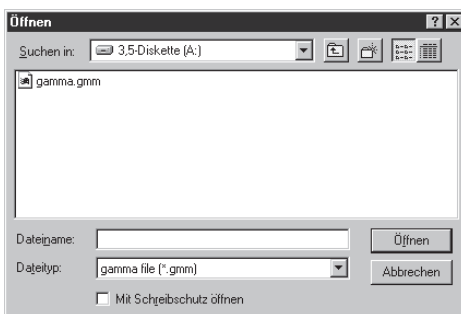
Die "Gammakurven-Einstellung" verwendet Gammakurven-Daten, die vom Anwender zur Einstellung der Ausgangswerte (Ausgabe zum Computer) bezogen auf die Eingabewerte für 256 Helligkeitsgrade im gescannten Bild vorbereitet sind. Einzelne Gammakurven werden für Grau (Schwarz und Weiß), Rot, Grün und Blau eingestellt.

Die hier eingestellte Gammakurve wird nicht aktiviert, wenn nicht [Heruntergeladene Datei verwenden] in den Filtereinstellungen (S. 67) aktiviert ist.

- 1 Die Gammakurvendaten passend zur Gammakurve vorbereiten. (Siehe "Vorbereitung von Gammakurvendaten" auf S. 80).
- 2 Die Farbe, für die die Gammakurve eingestellt werden soll, wählen.



- 3 Auf [Herunterladen] klicken und die vorbereiteten Gammakurvendaten wählen.



4 Auf [Öffnen] klicken. Dies stellt die Gammakurve ein und stellt das Display zum Mehr-Dialogfeld zurück.

5 Zum Einstellen der Gammakurve für andere Farben Schritt 1 bis 4 wiederholen.

◆ Vorbereitung von Gammakurvendaten

Gammakurvendaten werden in einer Text-Datei (*.pxg) bestehend aus 258 Zeilen gespeichert. Diese Datei beschreibt die Ausgangswerte für jeden der 256 Eingangspegel.

Immer einen Kommentar in der ersten Zeile dieser Datei eintragen, und "256" in der 2. Zeile der Datei. Von der 3. Zeile ab werden die Ausgangswerte für die einzelnen Eingangswerte eingetragen. Geben Sie "0", "1", "2" usw. von der 3. Zeile an ein, und "255" für den Eingangswerte auf der 258. Zeile.

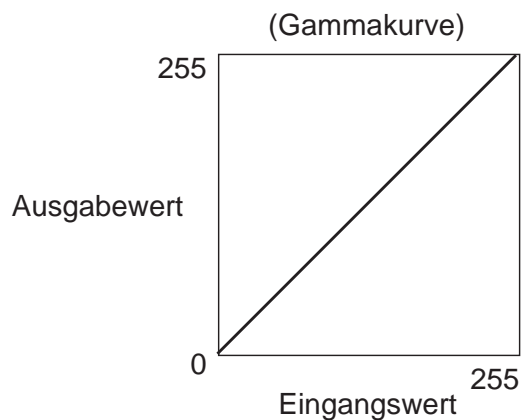
Kleine für die Gammadaten eingegebenen Werte führen zu einem dunklen Bild, und große Werte zu einem hellen.

◆ Beispiel

Normalerweise werden nach rechts geneigte Gammakurven vorbereitet. Eine nach links geneigte Gammakurve kann aber erstellt werden, indem alle Ausgangswerte umgekehrt werden. Als Ergebnis wird das Ausgabebild ebenfalls invertiert.

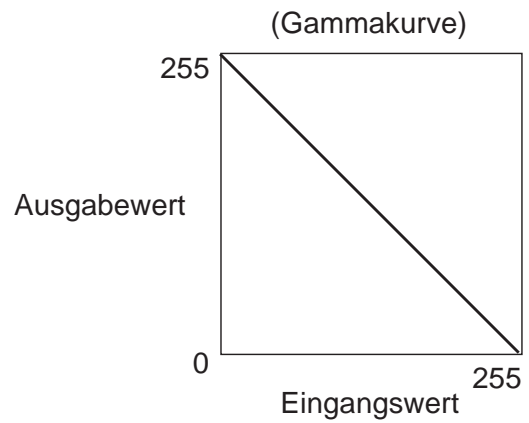
Gammakurvendaten

- 1. Zeile: Gammakurve
- 2. Zeile: 256
- 3. Zeile: 0
- 4. Zeile: 1
- 5. Zeile: 2
- |
- 253. Zeile: 250
- 254. Zeile: 251
- 255. Zeile: 252
- 256. Zeile: 253
- 257. Zeile: 254
- 258. Zeile: 255



Gammakurvendaten (invertiert)

1. Zeile: Gammakurve
2. Zeile: 256
3. Zeile: 255
4. Zeile: 254
5. Zeile: 253
- |
253. Zeile: 5
254. Zeile: 4
255. Zeile: 3
256. Zeile: 2
257. Zeile: 1
258. Zeile: 0

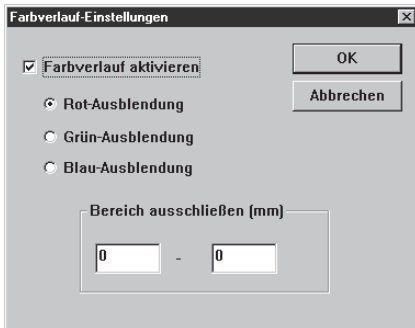


ANMERKUNG

Informationen über Gammakurvendaten werden intern vom Scanner bewahrt. Diese Informationen gehen nicht verloren, auch wenn der Scanner ausgeschaltet wird. Die Gammakurven-Information wird nicht geändert, bevor eine andere Gammakurve heruntergeladen wird.

Farbunterdrückung-Einstellungen (nur von DR-5080C unterstützt)

Unterdrückt das Scannen spezifischer Farben (Farbverlauf) in Dokumenten. Richten Sie die Farbunterdrückung im Farbverlauf-Einstellungen Dialogfeld ein.



Funktion	Beschreibung
Farbverlauf aktivieren (Farbe angeben)	<p>Klicken Sie hier, um die Farbunterdrückung-Funktion zu aktivieren.</p> <p>[Rot-Ausblendung] Rote Schrift/Bereiche auf dem Dokument werden unterdrückt/nicht gescannt.</p> <p>[Grün-Ausblendung] Grüne Schrift/Bereiche auf dem Dokument werden unterdrückt/nicht gescannt.</p> <p>[Blau-Ausblendung] Blaue Schrift/Bereiche auf dem Dokument werden unterdrückt/nicht gescannt.</p>
Bereich ausschließen (mm)	<p>Sie können den Bereich spezifizieren, wo die Farbunterdrückung begrenzt werden soll. Spezifizieren Sie die Startposition auf der linken Seite und die Endposition auf der rechten Seite. Spezifizieren Sie jede dieser Positionen als Abstand in mm von der Oberkante des Papiers.</p>

<Schaltflächen>

Funktion	Beschreibung
OK	Aktivieren der Einstellungen und Schließen des Dialogfelds.
Abbrechen-Schaltfläche	Hebt alle geänderten Einstellungen auf und schließt das Dialogfeld.

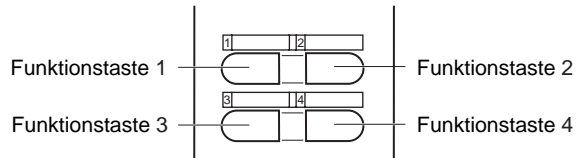
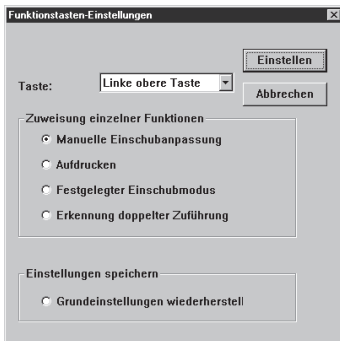


ANMERKUNG

- Farbunterdrückung ist gültig, wenn der Scannmodus auf Binär, Binäre ED oder Grauskalierung gestellt ist.
- Manchmal erscheinen Linien am Rand der Farbverlauf-Begrenzungssektion im gescannten Bild, wenn [Bereich ausschließen] eingestellt ist.

Funktionstasten-Einstellung

Den Funktionstasten können bestimmte Funktionen zugeordnet werden. Die folgenden Einstellpunkte werden im Funktionstasten-Dialogfeld eingestellt.



Funktion	Beschreibung
Taste Nr.	Die den Funktionstasten zuzuordnenden Funktionen auf dem Pull-down-Menü wählen.
Zuweisung einzelner Funktionen	Die folgenden fünf Funktionen stehen zur Wahl. Einzelheiten über diese Funktionen siehe getrennte DR-5020/5080C Anleitung "Einstellung der Funktionstasten". (S. 60) [Manuelle Papierstärkeneinstellung] Zum manuellen Einstellen der Papierstärke. [Aufdrucken aktivieren] Schaltet die Imprinter-Funktion ein oder aus, wenn der optionale Imprinter installiert ist. [Papierstärken-Modus] Stellt die Papierstärke auf einen festen Wert ein. [Doppelte Zuführung erkennen] Automatische Doppelblatterkennung. "Doppelte Zuführung" wird erkannt, wenn zwei oder mehr Blätter des Dokuments gleichzeitig eingezogen werden, oder wenn ein Teil eines Blatts ein anderes Blatt überlappt.
Einstellungen speichern	Sie können auch die Scannereinstellungen zusätzlich zu der Zuweisung einzelner Funktionen wie oben beschrieben registrieren. [Grundeinstellungen wiederherstellen] Durch Wählen dieser Funktion werden beim Klicken der Schaltfläche [Einstellen] vorhandenen Scannereinstellungen den Funktionstasten zugewiesen.

<Schaltflächen>

Funktion	Beschreibung
Einstellen	Aktiviert die Einstellungen und schließt das Dialogfeld.
Abbrechen	Streicht alle geänderten Einstellungen und schließt das Dialogfeld.

Kapitel 3

Fehlersuche

Dieses Kapitel beschreibt die Ursachen von Störungen, die auftreten können, und geeignete Abhilfemaßnahmen.

3.1 Wenn eine Fehlermeldung erscheint ...	86
3.2 Wenn das gescannte Bild nicht normal ist.....	88



Wenn eine Fehlermeldung erscheint

Fehlermeldungen können erscheinen, wenn das Dokument nicht richtig gescannt wird. Prüfen Sie die Art des Fehlers entsprechend dem Fehlercode und beheben Sie den Fehler wie folgt.

Meldung	JAM occured. Remove the paper.
Abhilfe	Papierstau im Scanner. Das gestaute Papier entfernen. Einzelheiten siehe separate DR-5020/5080C Anleitung.
Meldung	Cover is opened. Close the cover.
Abhilfe	Die Scanner-Abdeckung (obere Feedereinheit) ist offen. Die Abdeckung schließen.
Meldung	Scanner is not found. Check the cable.
Abhilfe 1	Der Computer kann den Scanner nicht erkennen. Sicherstellen, daß der Computer und Scanner richtig mit Kabel verbunden sind.
Abhilfe 2	Diese Meldung erscheint, wenn der Computer den Scanner nicht erkennt. In diesem Fall ist eine mögliche Ursache, daß die SCSI-Karte nicht zu dem Computer paßt, in den sie installiert ist. Diese Fehlermeldung wird manchmal nicht weiter ausgegeben, wenn asynchrone Übertragung im Anwendermodus des Scanners ausgeschaltet wird. Wenn das Problem dadurch nicht behoben wird, wenden Sie sich an den Hersteller des Computers oder der SCSI-Karte.
Meldung	Parameter is not valid. Change the parameters. Der Parameter ist nicht zulässig. Ändern Sie die Parameter.
Abhilfe	Ein ungültiger Wert wurde unter den Scannbedingungen im Dialogfeld Scannereinstellungen eingegeben. Ändern Sie die Einstellung zu einem gültigen Wert.
Meldung	Scanner reset detected. Try again.
Abhilfe	Folgen Sie den Bildschirm-Meldungen, um das Gerät aus- und wieder einzuschalten.
Meldung	No page was found. Set the paper and try again.
Abhilfe	Das Dokument ist nicht im Scanner eingelegt. Das Dokument einlegen und erneut scannen.

Meldung	Scanner is busy. Check if it is Count Only mode.
Abhilfe	Der Scanner ist möglicherweise derzeit im Nur-Zählen-Modus (Modus zum Zählen der Seitenzahl gescannter Dokumente) (S. 56). Den Nur-Zählen-Modus aufheben und erneut probieren.
Meldung	Scanner is busy. Wait for a while and try again.
Abhilfe	Der Scanner verarbeitet momentan andere Daten und kann keine neue Dokumente scannen. Kurz warten und dann erneut versuchen.
Meldung	Verify count error occurred. Try again.
Abhilfe	Die Anzahl der im Bestätigungs-Scan (P.54) eingegebenen Dokumente paßt nicht zur tatsächlichen Zahl gescannter Seiten. Wenn "U01" im Zählerdisplay erscheint, die Anzahl der Dokumentseiten erneut zählen. Wenn "U02" erscheint, sicherstellen, daß alle Dokumentseiten gescannt wurden.
Meldung	Parameter is not valid. Change the parameters again.
Abhilfe	Die Scannbedingung ist ungeeignet. Die Einrichtung ändern, und das Scannen wiederholen.
Meldung	File access error occurred. Check if another app. use this file or write protected.
Abhilfe	Die Bilddatei, die zu öffnen versucht wurde, wird von einer anderen Applikation verwendet und kann nicht geöffnet werden. Schließen Sie die Datei in einer anderen Applikation. Oder die Bilddatei, die zu speichern versucht wurde, ist schreibgeschützt. Diese Datei kann nicht überschrieben werden. Speichern Sie die Datei unter einem anderen Namen.
Meldung	File already exists, do you wish to over-write?
Abhilfe	Der zum Speichern eingegebene Dateiname existiert bereits. Zum Überschreiben der vorhandenen Datei klicken Sie auf [Ja]. Zum Abbrechen des Überschreibens klicken Sie auf [Nein] und speichern unter einem anderen Namen.
Meldung	Ein Doppelblatt-Einzug ist aufgetreten. Bitte prüfen Sie das Dokument und das gescannte Bild auf Ihrem Bildschirm. Scannen Sie dann das Dokument noch einmal.
Abhilfe	Ein Dokument wurde schräg eingezogen. Bitte entfernen Sie das Dokument und scannen es noch einmal. Beim Entfernen des Dokuments ziehen Sie es vorsichtig heraus, um es nicht zu zerreißen.
Meldung	Ein Dokument wurde schräg eingezogen. Bitte entfernen Sie das Dokument und scannen es noch einmal.
Abhilfe	Ein Doppelblatt-Einzug ist aufgetreten. Bitte prüfen Sie das Dokument und das gescannte Bild auf Ihrem Bildschirm. Scannen Sie dann das Dokument noch einmal. Dieser Fehler tritt auf, wenn ein Stapel Dokumente verschiedener Formate und Papierstärken gescannt wird. Sie sollten entweder nur Dokumente gleicher Größe und Papierstärke scannen oder die Doppelblatt-Einzug-Erkennung ausschalten.



Wenn das gescannte Bild nicht normal ist

Wenn ein Problem im gescannten Bild vorliegt (das Bild ist nicht scharf, oder Streifen erscheinen im Bild), kann eines der folgenden Probleme vorliegen. Prüfen Sie wie folgt und treffen Sie entsprechende Abhilfemaßnahmen.

- **Die Scannergläser und Walzen am Scanner sind schmutzig.**

Wenn die Scannergläser und Walzen verschmutzt sind, erscheinen solche Verschmutzungen im gescannten Bild.

→ Scannergläser und Walzen reinigen. Einzelheiten siehe Kapitel 5 "Tägliche Reinigung" (S. 83) in der separaten DR-5020/5080C Anleitung.

- **Ungeeignete Scannbedingungen**

Wenn die Scannbedingungen ungeeignet sind, kann das gescannte Bild unscharf sein oder dunkel erscheinen.

→ Die Helligkeit und andere Scannereinstellungen prüfen.
Wenn das gescannte Bild verschwommen ist oder das Dokument nicht gescannt wird, ist eine mögliche Ursache zu große Helligkeit.
Wenn das gescannte Bild dunkel erscheint, ist eine mögliche Ursache zu geringe Helligkeit.

- **Die Scanning Utility 5000 läuft nicht richtig.**

Wenn das Dokument nicht richtig gescannt werden kann, obwohl die Scannbedingungen eingestellt sind, ist eine mögliche Ursache, daß die Scanning Utility 5000 nicht richtig funktioniert.

→ Die Scanning Utility 5000 neu installieren.
Einzelheiten zur Installation der Scanning Utility 5000 siehe "1.2 Installation der Scanning Utility 5000"

- **Andere Ursachen**

Wenn sich durch die obigen Maßnahmen das Problem nicht beheben läßt, wenden Sie sich an den Canon-Kundendienst.

Stichwortverzeichnis

- A -

About	16, 17
Actual pixel (Print Format)	14, 30
Actual size (Print Format)	14, 30
Anfangswert	73
Annotation	64
Annotationsart	72
Aufdrucken	64
Aufdrucken/Annotation Einstellungen	69
Aufgaben-Trennblatt	51
Auflösung	22, 61
Auslöser erhöhen	73
Auslöser zurücksetzen	73
Ausrichtung	72
Auto (Feeding Option)	34, 40, 66
Autom. Belichtung	67
Automatisch Neue Datei	64

- B -

Barcode	64
Barcodeleser-Einstellungen	74
Barcodes per	75
Beenden	12, 15
Benutzer-Gamma	67
Bereich ausschließen	82
Best Fit	15, 16
Bestätigen des gescannten Bildes ..	27
Betrachten-Menü	15
BMP	28

- C -

Cancel Scan	15
Codabar	77
Code 25	78
Code 39	78
Code 128	75

- D -

Datei-Menü	14
Deinstallieren der Scanning Utility 5000 ...	11
Dialogfeld Detail-Einstellungen	63
Drucken des gescannten Bildes	30

Duplex-Scannen	46
----------------------	----

- E -

EAN	77
Einstellen der grundlegenden Scanbedingungen	22
Einstellungen der Rückseite	66
Einstellungen speichern	83
Einzugmodus	33, 66
Erhöhung	73
Erkennung doppelter Zuführung ..	65, 83

- F -

Farbverlauf aktivieren	82
Farbverlauf-Einstellungen	82
Fehlermeldung	86
Fehlersuche	85
Fern	23, 33, 66
Fit to paper (Print Format)	14, 30
Fit to width	15, 16
Flußdiagramm des Scanvorgangs ..	20
Funktionstasten-Einstellung	83

- G -

Grundeinstellungen wiederherstell .	83
Grundlegende Einstellungen	61

- H -

Haarlinie ergänzen	67
Halbautomatisch-Modus	34, 37, 66
Helligkeit	22, 62
Helligkeit d. Rücks.	66
Hilfe-Menü	16
Horizont. Abstand	71

- I -

Installation der Scanning Utility 5000 7	
--	--

- J -

JBIG	28
JPEG	28

- K -	
Kleine Schriftart	72
Kontrast	22, 62
Kontrollblätter	49, 66

- L -	
Laden und Scannen eines Dokuments	23

- M -	
Manual thickness adjustment ...	64, 83
Manuell-Modus	34, 43, 66
Menüleiste	13, 14
Modus	22, 61

- N -	
Negativ	67
Next page	16, 17
Nut löschen	67

- O -	
Öffnen einer Bilddatei	32
Open	14, 16

- P -	
Prev. page	16, 17
Print	14, 16
Print Format	14, 30
Printer setting	14

- R -	
Rand scannen	65
Randhervorhebung	67
Rechts nach links	72
Rotate Left	15, 17
Rotate Right	15, 17
Rücks. scannen	66

- S -	
Save Page As	14, 16, 29
Scan batch to file	14, 17, 23
Scan batch to printer	14
Scan page	14, 26
Scannen mit Überprüfen der Anzahl .	54, 64
Scanner setting	14, 17, 22, 60
Scanner-Kontrollblatt	49
Scanverfahren	21

Schnelles Scannen	52, 63
Schwarze Punkte löschen	67
Seite-Menü	16
Seiten	71
Seitengröße	22, 62
Seitengröße erkennen	63
Select Scanner	15
Setup-CD-ROM	7
Speicherformate	28
Speichern des gescannten Bildes ..	28
Starten	12
Statusleiste	13
Systemanforderungen	6

- T -	
Taste Nr.	83
Text	69
TIFF	28
Toolleiste	13, 16

- U -	
UPC	76

- V -	
Vermerk	64
Vertikaler Abstand	71
View Gray	15
View menu	15
Vorbereiten des Scanners und des Computers	21

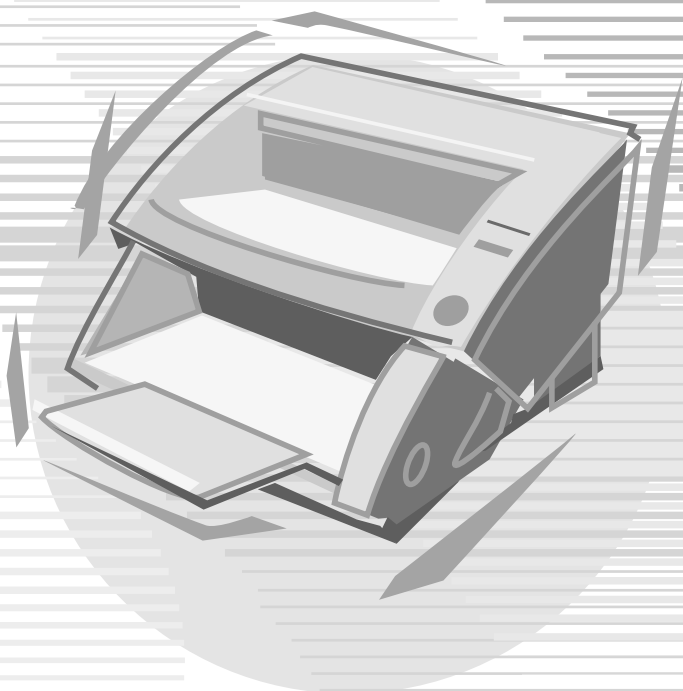
- W -	
Weißer Punkte löschen	67
Wenn das gescannte Bild nicht normal ist	88

- Z -	
Zoom Down	15, 16
Zoom Up	15, 16
Zuführungsoption	66
Zuweisung einzelner Funktionen	83

Scanning Utility 5000

Instrucciones

Antes de utilizar esta unidad, cerciórese de leer detenidamente este manual, y después guárdelo en un lugar seguro.



AVISO

- ① Copyright© 1999 por CANON ELECTRONICS INC. Reservados todos los derechos. Ninguna de esta parte de esta publicación deberá reproducir, transmitir, transmitir, ni almacenarse en un sistema de recuperación, ni traducirse a ningún idioma ni lenguaje de PC de ninguna forma y con ningún medio, electrónico, mecánico, magnético, óptico, químico, manual, ni ningún otro, sin el previo permiso de CANON ELECTRONICS INC.
- ② El contenido de este manual está sujeto a cambios sin previo aviso.
- ③ Se han hecho todos los esfuerzos posibles para asegurar la precisión de la información presentada en este manual. Sin embargo, Canon Electronics Inc. Y las subsidiarias de la contraportada no se harán responsables por ningún error ni sus consecuencias.
- ④ No nos haremos responsables por ningún daño resultante de cualquier operación, a pesar del punto ③.

Marcas comerciales y registradas

- Microsoft Windows® y Microsoft Windows NT® son marcas registradas de Microsoft Corporation en EE.UU. y en otros países.
- ISIS® es una marca registrada de Pixel Translation A Division of ActionPoint Inc.
- Adaptec es una marca registrada de ADAPTEC Inc.
- IBM y PC/AT son marcas registradas de International Business Machines Corporation.
- Pentium® es una marca registrada de Intel Corporation U.S.A.
- Los nombres de los productos mencionados aquí son para fines de identificación solamente y pueden ser marcas comerciales y/o registradas de sus respectivas compañías.

INTRODUCCIÓN

Muchas gracias por la adquisición del escáner de documentos Canon DR-5020/5080C.

En total, con el DR-5020/5080C se suministran tres manuales: Instrucciones de la Scanning Utility 5000 (este manual), Instrucciones del DR-5020/5080C, e Instrucciones del Controlador ISIS/TWAIN.

Este manual describe el modo de utilizar la “Scanning Utility 5000” provista con el DR-5020/5080C. Para asegurarse de poder utilizar de forma efectiva las funciones del DR-5020/5080C, asegúrese de leer este manual y las Instrucciones del DR-5020/5080C por separado. Como la aplicación de escáner empaquetada con el DR-5020/5080C utiliza un controlador de escáner exclusivo, no necesita el uso de controladores de escáner, tales como el controlador ISIS o TWAIN. Cuando haya leído este manual, asegúrese de guardarlo en un lugar seguro.

A continuación se describe el contenido de cada uno de estos manuales.

Instrucciones para la Scanning Utility 5000 (este manual)

Este manual describe el modo de utilizar la aplicación de escáner “Scanning Utility 5000” provista con el escáner.

Instrucciones para el DR-5020/5080C

Este manual describe el modo de conectar el escáner, cargar documentos, retirar el papel atascado y otra información sobre el manejo del escáner. Lea este manual antes de utilizar el DR-5020/5080C.

Instrucciones para el Controlador ISIS/TWAIN

Este manual describe operaciones para cuando el escáner es utilizado con una utilidad compatible con el controlador ISIS o controlador TWAIN.

■ Precaución

Tenga en cuenta lo siguiente cuando utilice el escáner para hacer copias:

- Es ilegal reproducir dinero, billetes, valores negociables y demás documentos prohibidos y puede estar sujeta a penalización judicial.
- También es ilegal reproducir certificados legales, billetes de viaje, documentos con derecho de autor y privados y otros ítems, y puede estar sujeta a penalización judicial.
- Cuando vaya a utilizar una imagen copiada con cualquier otro fin que no sea para uso estrictamente personal o dentro de los confines de su propio hogar deberá obtener el permiso del propietario de los derechos de autor.

CONVENCIONALISMOS

Este manual utiliza los siguientes símbolos e indicaciones. Antes de empezar a leer este manual, lea lo siguiente y familiarícese con sus significados.



Lea atentamente para evitar la muerte o heridas graves.



Lea atentamente para evitar daños al equipo o la pérdida de valiosos datos.



Los memorándums indican el lugar donde podrá encontrar información útil en este manual. Un número entre paréntesis indica un número de página que contiene más información sobre la frase o párrafo previo.



Observaciones sobre operaciones y cómo evitar pequeñas dificultades.

■ Esta unidad

En este manual se hace referencia al DR-5020 y al DR-5080C conjuntamente como el «escáner». Si se requiere una información individual para cada tipo de máquina, este manual hace referencia al escáner específicamente mediante DR-5020 y DR-5080C.

ÍNDICE

INTRODUCCIÓN	1
CONVENCIONALISMOS	2

Capítulo 1 Instalación y operación básica de la Scanning Utility 5000 **5**

1.1 Requisitos del sistema	6
1.2 Instalación de la Scanning Utility 5000	7
Antes de comenzar la instalación	7
Instalación de la Scanning Utility 5000	8
Desinstalación de la Scanning Utility 5000	11
1.3 Operaciones básicas de la Scanning Utility 5000	12
Inicio y salida.	12
◆ Inicio	12
◆ Salida	12
Explicación de la pantalla Scanning Utility 5000	13
◆ Barra de menú	14
◆ Barra de herramientas	16

Capítulo 2 Exploración de un documento **19**

2.1 Esquema de la exploración	20
2.2 Procedimiento de exploración	21
Preparación del escáner y ordenador	21
Ajuste de las condiciones básicas para la exploración	22
Carga y exploración de un documento	23
◆ Exploración de dos o más páginas	23
◆ Exploración de una sola página y confirmación de la imagen explorada	26
Confirmación de la imagen explorada	27
Almacenamiento de la imagen explorada	28
◆ Acerca de los formatos para guardar imágenes	28
◆ Almacenamiento de las imágenes explorada en archivos (exploración de una página)	29
Impresión de la imagen explorada	30
Para abrir archivos de imagen	32
2.3 Diferentes modos de exploración	33
Exploración de acuerdo con el modo de alimentación	33
◆ Selección del modo de alimentación.	35

◆ Exploración en el modo semiautomático	37
◆ Exploración en el modo automático	40
◆ Exploración en el modo manual	43
Exploración Dúplex	46
Impresión de las hojas exploradas directamente	47
Utilización de las hojas de función	48
◆ Hojas de control del escáner	49
◆ Hojas de separación de tareas	51
Exploración a gran velocidad	52
Exploración con verificación de cuenta	54
◆ Ajuste de la exploración con verificación de cuenta	54
◆ Introducción del número de hojas de un documento	56
◆ Exploración de documentos	58
2.4 Fijación de las condiciones de exploración.....	60
Configuración básica	61
Configuración detallada	63
Opciones de Sello/Suplemento	69
Opciones del decodificador de código de barras	74
Configuración de curva Gamma	79
Opciones de Quitar color (sólo las soporta el DR-5080C)	82
Opciones de las teclas de función	83
Chapter 3 Solución de problemas	85
3.1 Cuando se visualice un mensaje de error	86
3.2 Cuando la imagen explorada no sea normal	88
Índice alfabético	89

Capítulo 1

Instalación y operación básica de la Scanning Utility 5000

Este capítulo describe el modo de instalar la Scanning Utility 5000, y la operación básica de la misma.

1.1 Requisitos del sistema	6
1.2 Instalación de la Scanning Utility 5000	7
1.3 Operaciones básicas de la Scanning Utility 5000	12

1.1

Requisitos del sistema

Para un funcionamiento correcto de la Scanning Utility 5000 deberá disponer del hardware y sistema operativo siguiente.

- Un ordenador IBM PC/AT o compatible con una CPU Pentium a 133 MHz o superior y un mínimo de 64 MB de memoria
 - OS: Microsoft Windows® 95/98/Me o Microsoft WindowsNT® 4.0 Workstation/Windows 2000 Professional
 - Al menos 100 MB de espacio libre en el disco duro (al menos 5 MB después de la instalación)
- Monitor compatible con SVGA
- Teclado, ratón e impresora compatibles con Microsoft Windows, Unidad de disco CD-ROM (velocidad 4x o más rápida)
- Tarjeta SCSI cuya operación haya sido confirmada
Se ha confirmado la operación de las siguientes tarjetas SCSI:
Adaptec Serie AHA-1540 y serie AHA-2940
- Cable SCSI compatible con SCSI-2



MEMORÁNDUM

- La Scanning Utility 5000 utiliza un controlador de escáner exclusivo. No requiere el uso de otros controladores de escáner tales como el controlador ISIS o el controlador TWAIN.
- Cuando se instala la Scanning Utility 5000, se crea otra carpeta “ceiscan” en la carpeta de Windows, además de la carpeta de destino de instalación, y el archivo “cei*.dll” se copia en \Windows\system.
Tenga en cuenta que la Scanning Utility 5000 dejará de funcionar correctamente si se modifican estos archivos.
- Los nombres de las carpetas \Windows y \Windows\system variarán de acuerdo con la versión de Windows que esté utilizando. En las siguientes explicaciones, sustituya los nombres de las carpetas \Windows y \Windows\system con los nombres de las carpetas de la versión Windows que esté utilizando.

1.2

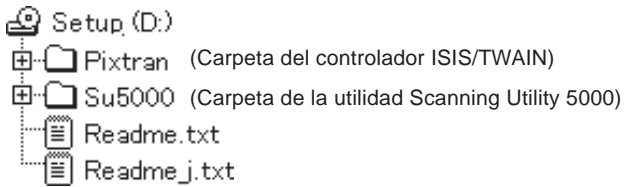
Instalación de la Scanning Utility 5000

Esta sección describe el modo de instalar la Scanning Utility 5000 y el procedimiento de instalación.

Antes de comenzar la instalación

Antes de comenzar la instalación de la Scanning Utility 5000, compruebe los ítems siguientes.

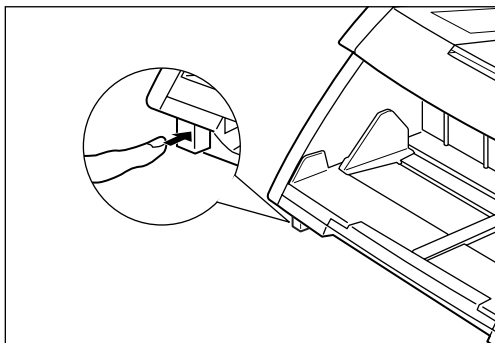
- **Cerciórese de que el sistema operativo del ordenador en el que va a instalar la Scanning Utility 5000 es Microsoft Windows® 95/98/Me o Microsoft WindowsNT® 4.0 Workstation/Windows 2000 Professional.**
- **Conexión al ordenador**
Para detalles sobre cómo conectar el escáner, refiérase a las Instrucciones del DR-5020/5080C por separado.
- **CD-ROM de instalación**
El CD-ROM de instalación está compuesto de las siguientes capas.
Antes de instalar la Scanning Utility 5000, asegúrese de leer [Readme.txt].
Después de que haya instalado el la Scanning Utility 5000, guarde el disco CD-ROM de instalación en un lugar seguro.



Instalación de la Scanning Utility 5000

A continuación se describe el procedimiento de instalación de la Scanning Utility 5000 en el ordenador.

1 Encienda el escáner.



2 Encienda el ordenador.

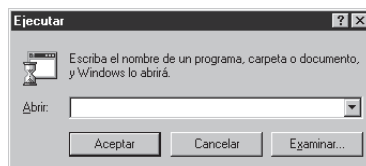
⇒ Se iniciará Windows.

3 Inserte el disco de instalación en la unidad de CD-ROM.

4 Haga clic en el botón [Inicio] y seleccione Ejecutar.

La pantalla que aparezca variará de acuerdo con la versión de Windows que esté utilizando.

[Windows95]



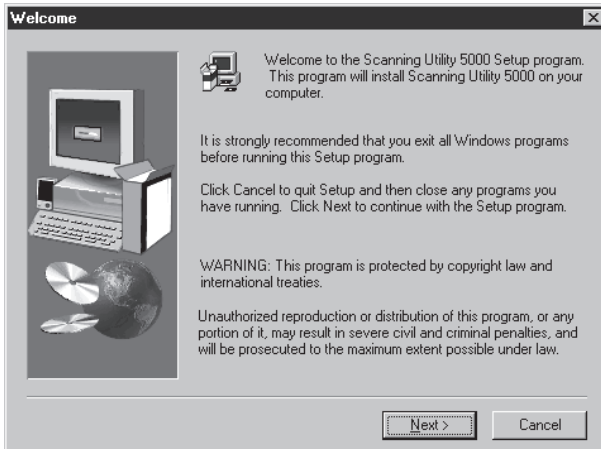
- 5** En **Abrir**, escriba “D:\su5000\setup.exe” y haga clic en **[Aceptar]**.
En estas instrucciones, la unidad de CD-ROM esté especificada como D.

⇒ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo **Seleccione el idioma de configuración**.



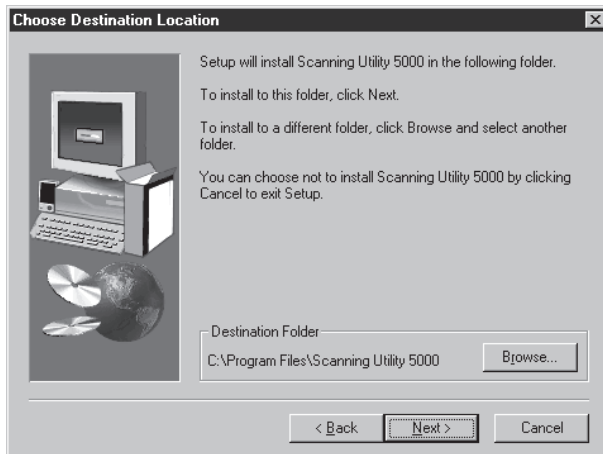
- 6** **Seleccione English (USA)** y haga clic en **[Aceptar]**.

⇒ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo “Welcome”.



7 Haga clic en [Next].

⇒ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo “Chose Destination Location”.

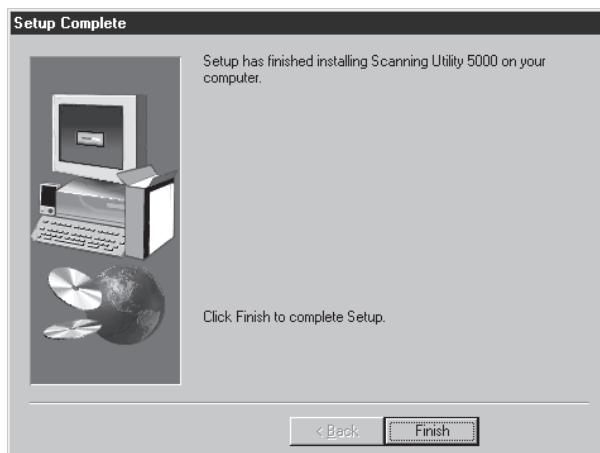


8 Compruebe el directorio de instalación visualizado, y haga clic en [Next].

Para cambiar el directorio de instalación, haga clic en [Browse], y luego elija el nuevo directorio de instalación.

⇒ Comenzará la instalación.

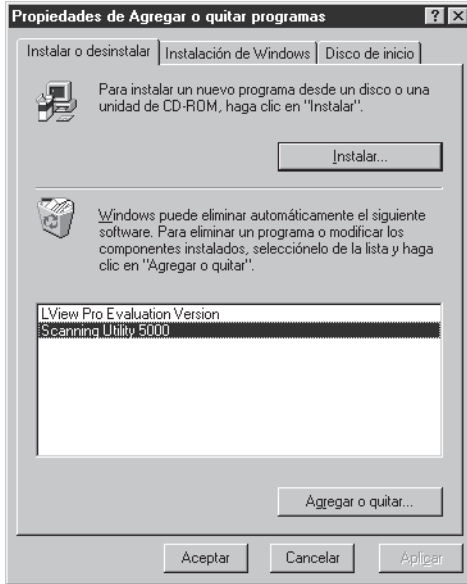
9 Continuará la instalación. Después de un corto tiempo, aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo “Setup Complete”.



10 Haga clic en [Finish] para completar la instalación.

Desinstalación de la Scanning Utility 5000

Para desinstalar la Scanning Utility 5000, abra “Agregar o quitar programas” en el panel de control, seleccione [Scanning Utility 5000] y haga clic en [Agregar o quitar].



1.3

Operaciones básicas de la Scanning Utility 5000

Esta sección describe el modo de iniciar y salir de la Scanning Utility 5000, y las pantallas de la Scanning Utility 5000.

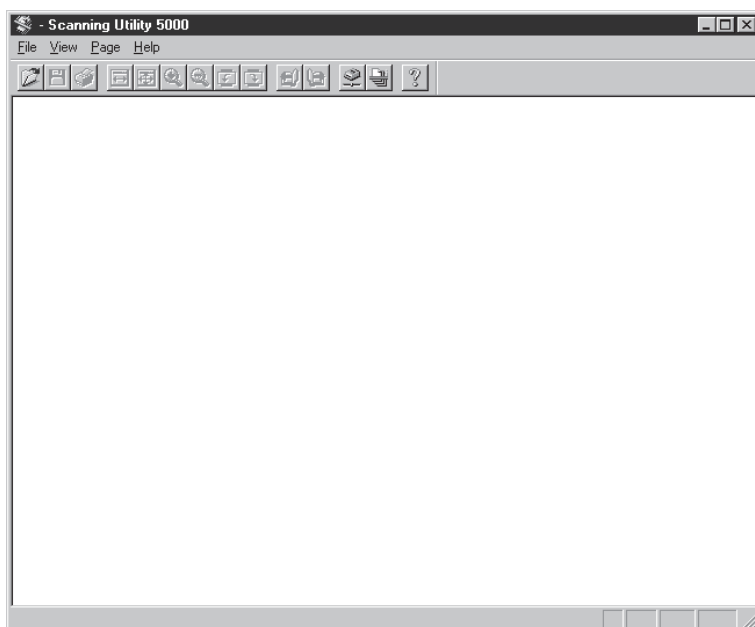
Inicio y salida

Inicie o salga de la Scanning Utility 5000.

◆ Inicio

1 Haga clic en [Inicio] y elija [Programas] – [Scanning Utility 5000].

⇒ Se iniciará la Scanning Utility 5000.



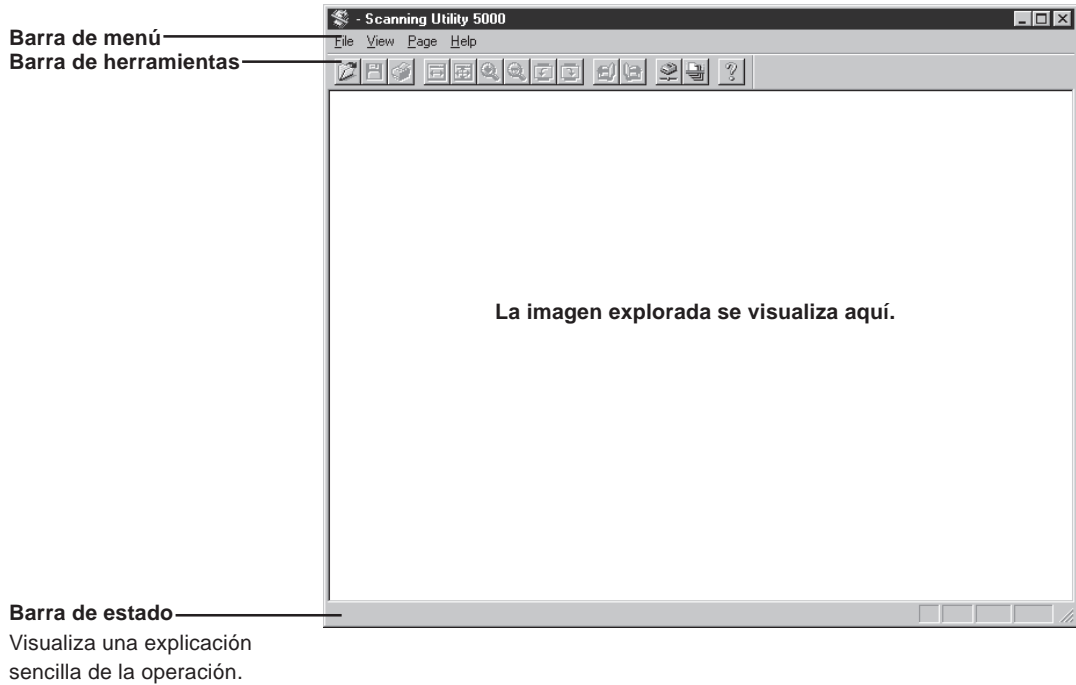
◆ Salida

1 En la pantalla [Scanning Utility 5000], seleccione [File] – [Exit].

⇒ Podrá salir de la Scanning Utility 5000.

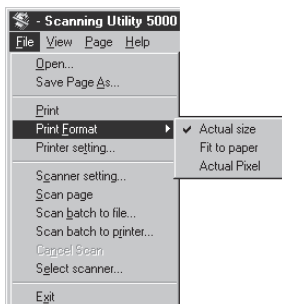
Explicación de la pantalla Scanning Utility 5000

Esta sección describe las funciones de la barra de menú y barra de herramientas de la pantalla de la Scanning Utility 5000.



◆ Barra de menú

Menú File



Open

Abre una imagen guardada en un archivo.

Save Page As...

Guarda la página visualizada actualmente con un nombre diferente después de haber explorado una página.

Print

Imprime la imagen.

Print Format

Actual size: Imprime en el mismo tamaño que el papel independientemente del papel o de la resolución con que se haya explorado la imagen.

Fit to paper: Imprime la imagen ajustándola al tamaño del papel cuando el documento es más grande que el papel.

Actual pixel: Imprime cada punto individual de la imagen explorada usando un punto de resolución de la impresora. Por esta razón, cuando una imagen explorada se imprime en una impresora de punto de resolución pequeño, el tamaño impreso es más pequeño.

Printer setting...

Fija la impresora. El nombre de impresora ajustado actualmente en “Normally used printer” o Impresora usada normalmente, se visualiza como nombre de impresora.

Scanner Setting...

Ajusta el escáner. Para detalles sobre el ajuste, consulte “2.4 Fijación de las condiciones de exploración” (P. 60).

Scan page

Explora una sola hoja.

Scan batch to file...

Explora y guarda el documento en un archivo especificado.

Scan batch to printer...

Explora e imprime el documento en la impresora ajustada actualmente en “Normally used printer”.

Cancel Scan

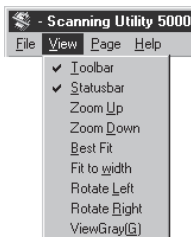
Cancela la exploración.

Select scanner...

Selecciona un escáner a usar.

Exit

Salte de la Scanning Utility 5000.

Menú View**Toolbar**

La barra de herramientas se puede quitar y poner. Cuando esté ítem esté marcado, la barra de herramientas estará puesta. Cuando no esté marcado, estará quitada. Cada vez que haga clic en este ítem la barra de herramientas se quitará o pondrá.

Statusbar

La barra de estado se puede quitar y poner. Cuando esté ítem esté marcado, la barra de estado estará puesta. Cuando no esté marcado, estará quitada.

Cada vez que haga clic en este ítem la barra de estado se quitará o pondrá.

Zoom Up

Cada vez que haga clic en este botón, la imagen en pantalla se ampliará. Las imágenes no se pueden ampliar más del 100% (tamaño real).

Zoom Down

Cada vez que haga clic en este botón, la imagen en pantalla se reducirá.

Best Fit

Visualiza la imagen entera en la ventana.

Fit to width

Visualiza la imagen haciendo coincidir su ancho con el ancho de la ventana.

Rotate Left

Gira la imagen 90° hacia la izquierda (en el sentido contrario a las agujas del reloj).

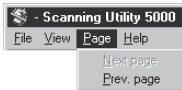
Rotate Right

Gira la imagen 90° hacia la derecha (en el sentido de las agujas del reloj).

View Gray

Visualiza imágenes en blanco y negro en la escala de grises.

Menú Page



Next page

Visualiza la imagen de la página siguiente.

Prev. page

Visualiza la imagen de la página anterior.

Menú Help



About

Visualiza información sobre la versión y derechos de autor de la Scanning Utility 5000.

◆ Barra de herramientas



Abre una imagen explorada guardada en un archivo.



Guarda la pagina visualizada actualmente con un nombre diferente después de haber explorado una página.



Imprime la imagen explorada.



Visualiza la imagen haciendo coincidir su anchura con la anchura de la ventana.



Visualiza la imagen entera en la ventana.



Cada vez que haga clic en este botón, la imagen en pantalla se ampliará. Las imágenes no se pueden ampliar más del 100% (tamaño real).



Cada vez que haga clic en este botón, la imagen en pantalla se reducirá.



Gira la imagen 90° hacia la izquierda (en el sentido contrario a las agujas del reloj).



Gira la imagen 90° hacia la derecha (en el sentido de las agujas del reloj).



Visualiza la imagen de la página anterior.



Visualiza la imagen de la página siguiente.



Ajusta el escáner. Para más detalles sobre el ajuste, consulte “2.4 Fijación de las condiciones de exploración” (P. 60).



Explora y guarda el documento en un archivo especificado. Para más detalles sobre el procedimiento de exploración, consulte “2.2 Procedimiento de exploración” (P. 21).



Visualiza información sobre la versión y derechos de autor de la Scanning Utility 5000.

Capítulo 2

Exploración de un documento

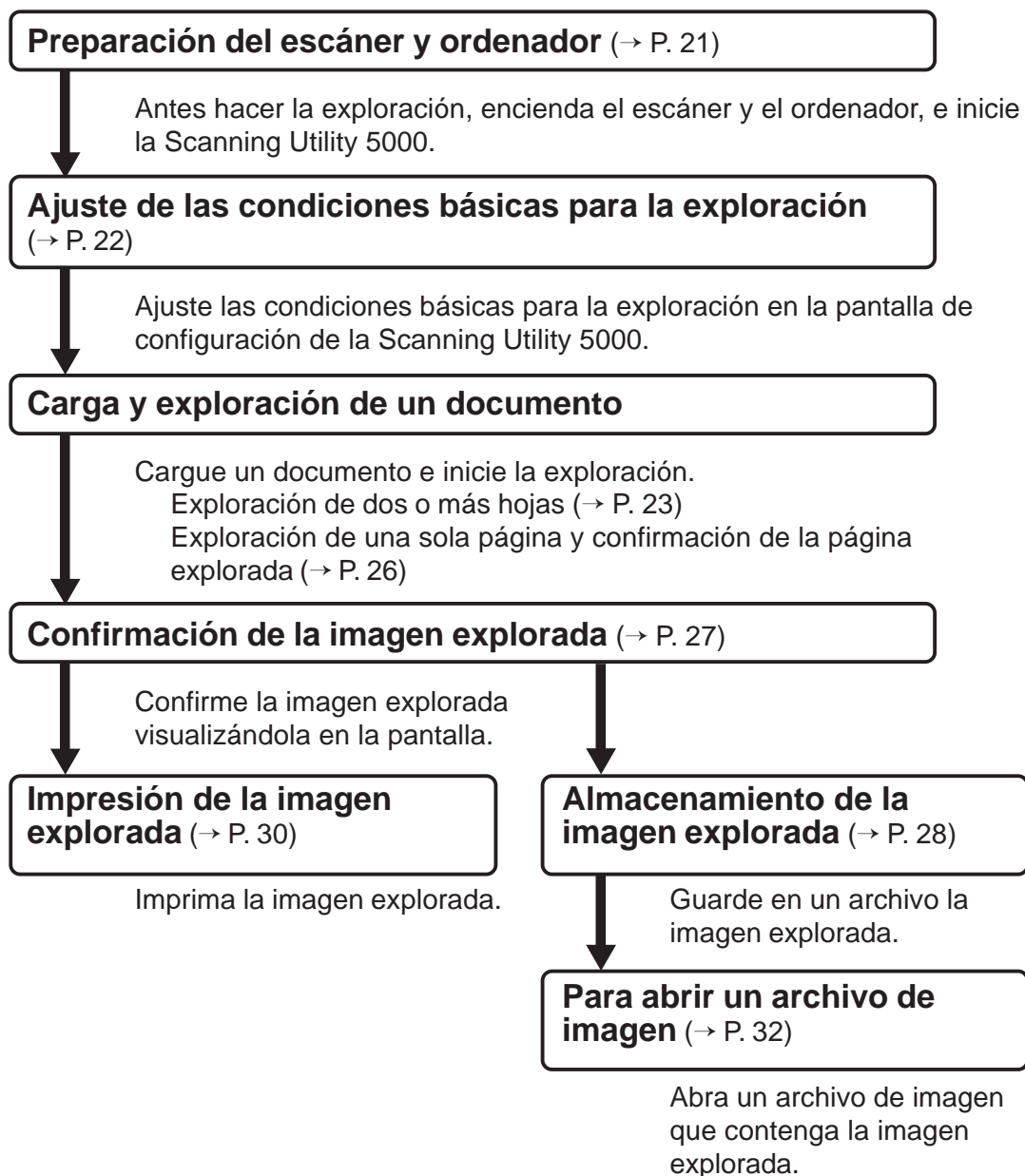
Este capítulo describe el modo de explorar un documento usando la Scanning Utility 5000.

2.1 Esquema de la exploración	20
2.2 Procedimiento de exploración	21
2.3 Diferentes modos de exploración	33
2.4 Fijación de las condiciones de exploración	60

2.1

Esquema de la exploración

Siga este procedimiento general para iniciar la exploración de un documento utilizando la Scanning Utility 5000.

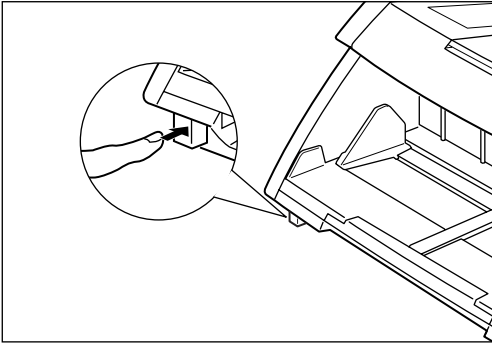


2.2 Procedimiento de exploración

Preparación del escáner y ordenador

Antes de hacer la exploración, encienda el escáner y el ordenador, e inicie la Scanning Utility 5000.

1 Encienda el escáner.

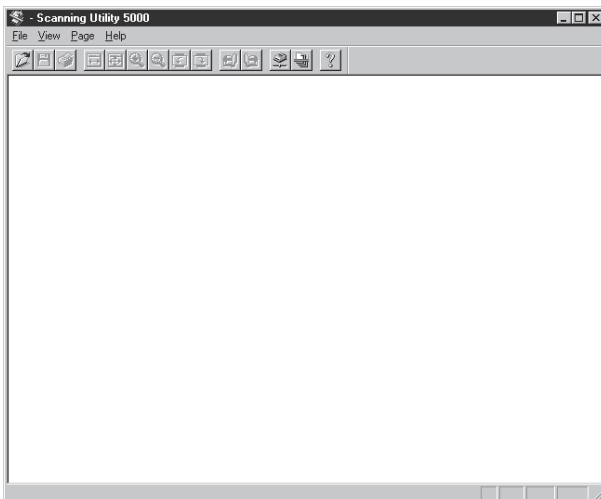


2 Encienda el ordenador.

⇒ Windows se iniciará.

3 Haga clic en el botón [Inicio] y elija [Programas] – [Scanning Utility 5000].

⇒ Se iniciará la Scanning Utility 5000.

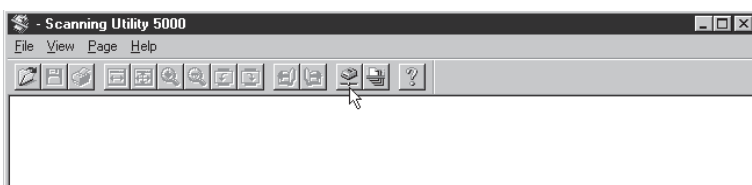


Ajuste de las condiciones básicas para la exploración

Ajuste las condiciones básicas para la exploración en el cuadro de diálogo “Opciones del escáner”.

Hay cinco ítems a ajustar en las condiciones básicas para la exploración: Modo, Resolución, Tamaño página, Brillo y Contraste. Para detalles sobre la configuración, consulte “2.4 Fijación de las condiciones de exploración” (P. 60).

1 Seleccione [File] – [Scanner setting] o bien haga clic en  de la barra de herramientas.



⇒ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo Opciones del escáner.

2 Ajuste los ítems básicos.



Modo: Ajusta el tipo de imagen a explorar.

Resolución: Ajusta la resolución (ppp)

Tamaño pág.: Especifica el tamaño del documento a explorar.

Brillo: Ajusta el brillo de toda la imagen explorada.

Contraste: Ajusta el contraste de toda la imagen explorada.



Para más detalles, consulte “2.4 Fijación de las condiciones de exploración” (P. 60).

3 Haga clic en [Aceptar] para volver a la pantalla de operación del escáner.

Carga y exploración de un documento

Cargue un documento en la bandeja de documentos e inicie la exploración. Hay dos formas de explorar documentos: exploración de dos o más páginas, y exploración de una sola página y luego confirmación de la imagen explorada.

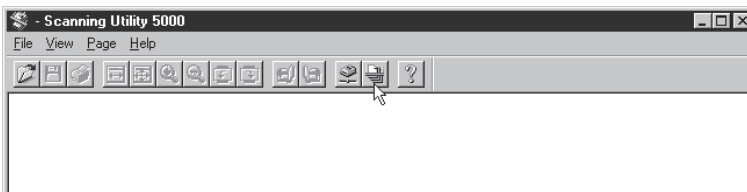
◆ Exploración de dos o más páginas

Puede explorar documentos compuestos de dos o más páginas en uno de los cuatro modos siguientes:

Remoto, Automático, Semiautomático y Manual. El procedimiento de exploración varía de acuerdo con cada uno de estos modos.

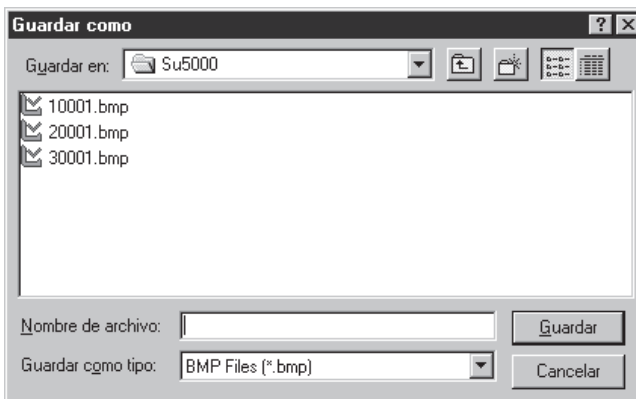
La descripción siguiente es para un documento explorado en el modo Remoto. Para detalles sobre la exploración en los otros modos, consulte “2.3 Diferentes modos de exploración” (P. 33).

- 1 **Seleccione [File] – [Scan batch to file], o haga clic en  de la barra de herramientas.**



⇒ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo “Guardar como”.

- 2 **Decida el nombre de archivo con el que guardar la imagen a explorar, tipo de archivo (formato para guardarla) y dónde guardar el archivo, y haga clic en [Guardar].**



⇒ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo de “Start Scanning”.



OBSERVACIÓN

En Guardar como tipo aparecen los diferentes tipos de formatos en los que puede guardar las imágenes exploradas.

Aparecen los cuatro tipos de archivos siguientes coincidiendo con el modo en el que esté explorando el documento.

TIFF (*.tif), BMP (*.bmp), JBIG (*.jbg), JPEG (*.jpg)



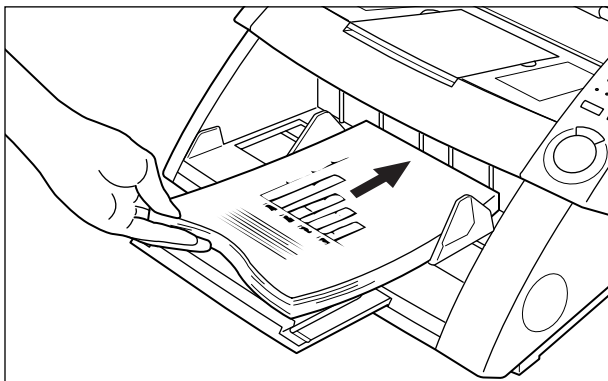
MEMORÁNDUM

Si está seleccionado TIFF, la imagen, que podrá abarcar varias páginas exploradas (incluido el modo Dúplex), se guardará como un solo archivo.

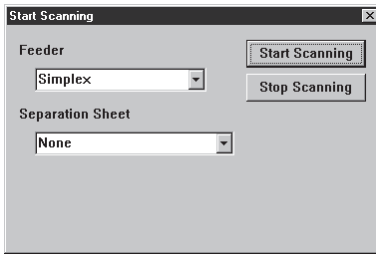
Si selecciona el formato BMP, JPEG o JBIG, cada una de las páginas del documento se guardará en un archivo separado en la carpeta especificada como destino para guardarlo. Los archivos constan del nombre que se ha especificado para la primera imagen, y un número consecutivo "0001", "0002", y así sucesivamente, que se añade automáticamente a los títulos subsiguientes. (Por ejemplo, asumiendo que las páginas se guardan en el formato BMP en un archivo de nombre "scan.bmp". Se crearán los archivos "scan.bmp", "scan0001.bmp", "scan0002.bmp" y así sucesivamente.)

Si separa los archivos usando la función "Auto New File" o "File Separator Sheet", se crearán automáticamente carpetas con un número consecutivo adjunto ("0001", "0002" y así sucesivamente) después de cada separación de archivo, y las imágenes se guardarán como archivos de esas carpetas.

3 Cargue el documento en la bandeja de documentos.



4 Haga clic en [Start Scanning].



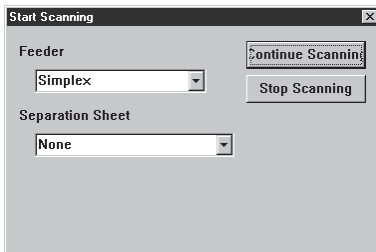
➔ Se iniciará la exploración.



Si no se inicia la exploración, compruebe que todas las lámparas "Feeding Option" del panel de operación del escáner están apagadas (modo Remoto).

5 La exploración hace una pausa cuando en la bandeja de documentos no quedan más hojas para explorar.

➔ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo "Start Scanning" (en pausa).



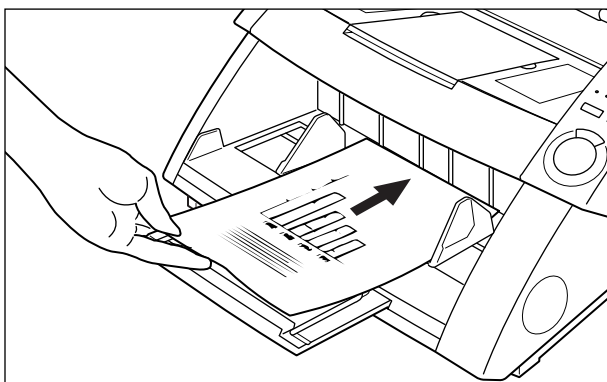
6 Para continuar explorando, cargue otro documento en la bandeja de documentos y haga clic en [Continue Scanning]. Para parar la exploración, haga clic en [Stop Scanning].

7 Confirme la imagen explorada. (P. 27)

◆ Exploración de una sola página y confirmación de la imagen explorada

Antes de empezar a explorar un documento compuesto de un número de hojas, puede explorar sólo una página y confirmar la imagen explorada. En este modo de exploración, la imagen explorada no se guarda automáticamente. Si quiere guardarla, guárdela manualmente. (Consulte “Almacenamiento de la imagen explorada”.) (P. 28)

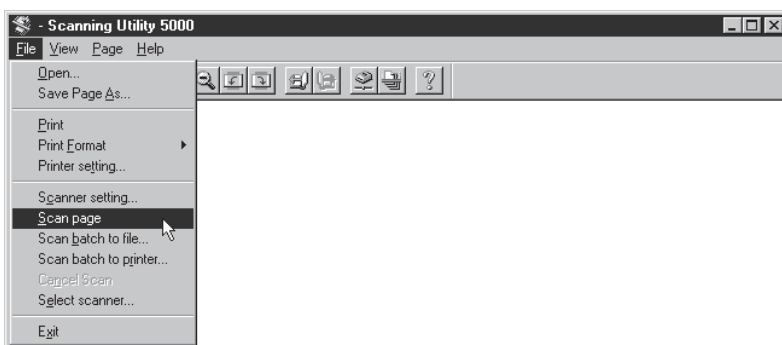
1 Cargue una hoja en la bandeja de documentos.



Si ha puesto dos o más hojas en la bandeja de documentos, la bandeja de documentos permanecerá en la posición elevada después de explorarse la primera página del documento.

Retire las otras hojas de la bandeja de documentos, y baje la bandeja de documentos hasta la posición bajada.

2 Seleccione [File] – [Scan Page]



⇒ El documento será explorado.

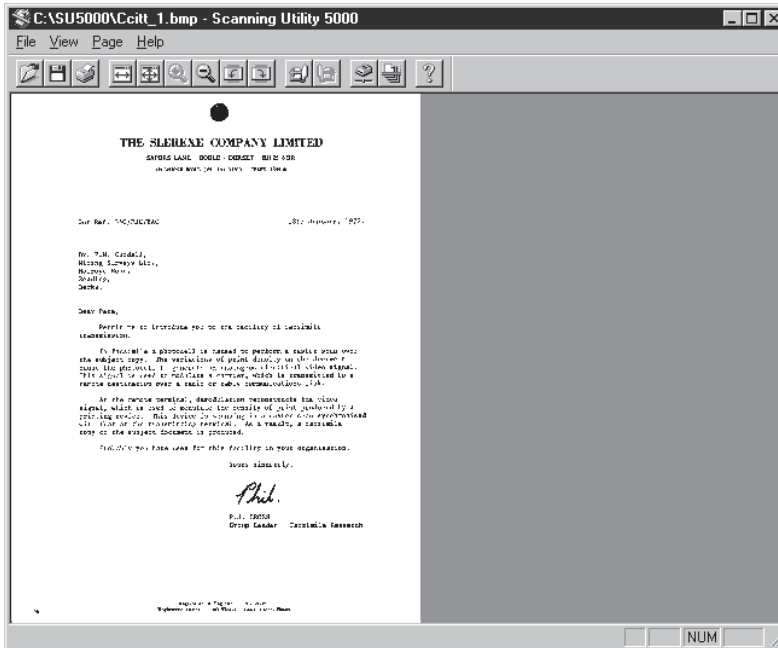
3 Confirme la imagen explorada. (P. 27)

4 Guarde la imagen explorada si fuera necesario. (P. 29)

Confirmación de la imagen explorada









Visualice en la pantalla la imagen explorada para confirmarla.

1 Confirme en la pantalla la imagen explorada.



OBSERVACIÓN

Puede usar los botones de la barra de herramientas para ampliar o reducir la imagen visualizada, y girar la imagen explorada para confirmarla.

-  Visualiza la imagen haciendo coincidir su anchura con la anchura de la ventana.
-  Visualiza la imagen entera en la ventana.
-  Cada vez que haga clic en este botón, la imagen en pantalla se ampliará. Las imágenes no se pueden ampliar más del 100% (tamaño real).
-  Cada vez que haga clic en este botón, la imagen en pantalla se reducirá.
-  Gira la imagen 90° hacia la izquierda (en el sentido contrario a las agujas del reloj).
-  Gira la imagen 90° hacia la derecha (en el sentido de las agujas del reloj).
-  Visualiza la imagen siguiente.
-  Visualiza la imagen anterior.

Almacenamiento de la imagen explorada

◆ Acerca de los formatos para guardar imágenes

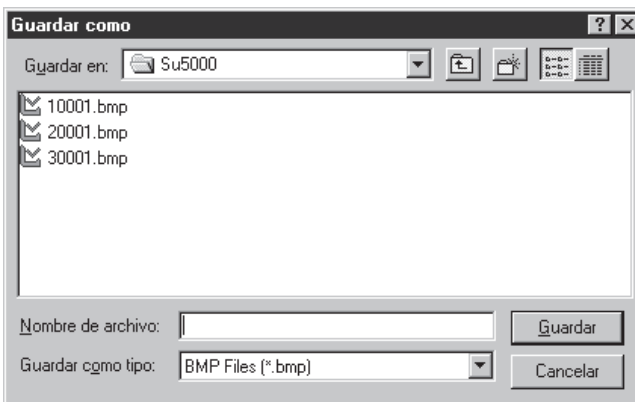
Las imágenes exploradas pueden guardarse en archivos en uno de estos formatos de archivo TIFF, BMP, JPEG o JBIG.

El formato de archivo para guardar disponible variará de acuerdo con el ajuste de Modo de exploración cuando se esté realizando la exploración.

La tabla siguiente muestra los formatos de archivo soportados por la Scanning Utility 5000.

Modo de exploración	Formato de archivo compatible			
	BMP	JBIG	JPEG	TIFF (MMR)
Blanco y negro, Blanco y negro-ED	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>
Escala de grises de 2 bits, 4 bits	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>
Escala de grises de 8 bits	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	
Color	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>	

Especifique el formato de archivo en el cuadro de diálogo Guardar como.



Seleccione el formato de archivo en Guardar como tipo.



MEMORÁNDUM

Si está seleccionado TIFF, la imagen, que podrá abarcar varias páginas exploradas (incluido el modo Dúplex), se guardará como un solo archivo.

Si selecciona el formato BMP, JPEG o JBIG, cada una de las páginas del documento se guardará en un archivo separado en la carpeta especificada como destino para guardarlo. Los archivos constan del nombre que se ha especificado para la primera imagen, y un número consecutivo "0001". "0002", y así sucesivamente, que se añade automáticamente a los títulos subsiguientes. (Por ejemplo, asumiendo que las páginas se guardan en el formato BMP en un archivo de nombre "scan.bmp". Se crearán los archivos "scan.bmp", "scan0001.bmp", "scan0002.bmp" y así sucesivamente.)

Si separa los archivos usando la función "Auto New File" o "File Separator Sheet", se crearán automáticamente carpetas con un número consecutivo adjunto ("0001", "0002" y así sucesivamente) después de cada separación de archivo, y las imágenes se guardarán como archivos de esas carpetas.

◆ Almacenamiento de las imágenes explorada en archivos (exploración de una página)

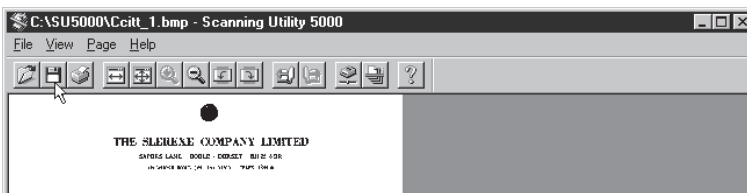
Cuando se explora un documento de una sola hoja, la imagen explorada no se guarda. Si necesita guardar la imagen explorada, siga el procedimiento siguiente:



MEMORÁNDUM

Cuando se exploran dos o más hojas (P. 23), las imágenes se guardan automáticamente en el archivo especificado cuando se exploran, y no es necesario guardarlas de nuevo.

- 1 Seleccione [File] – [Save Page As...], o bien haga clic en  de la barra de herramientas con la imagen explorada visualizada en la pantalla de la Scanning Utility 5000.



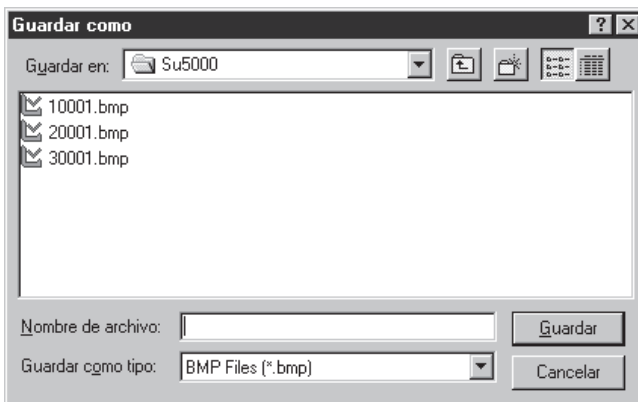
➔ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo Guardar como.



MEMORÁNDUM

[Save Page As] sólo guarda la página visualizada actualmente como archivo diferente. Cuando esté explorando dos o más páginas, y utilice este comando para guardar imágenes tomadas de un solo archivo TIFF (multi TIFF), asegúrese de guardar las imágenes con un nombre de archivo diferente. Tenga en cuenta que si las guarda con el mismo nombre de archivo, las imágenes que haya actualmente en ese archivo se perderán.

2 Decida el nombre de archivo con el que guardar la imagen a explorar, tipo de archivo (formato para guardarla) y dónde guardar el archivo, y haga clic en [Guardar].



➔ La imagen explorada se guardará en el archivo que haya especificado.



Antes de decidir el nombre de archivo y el tipo (formato de archivo), y dónde guardarlo, lea completamente “Acerca de los formatos para guardar imágenes” (P. 28).

Impresión de la imagen explorada


Imprima la imagen explorada.

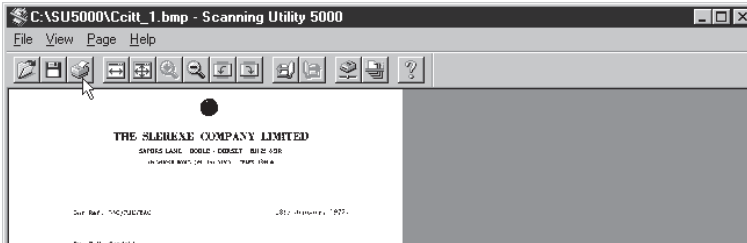


Hay tres formas de imprimir las imágenes exploradas.

Antes de empezar a imprimir, seleccione uno de los elementos siguientes en [File] – [Print Format].

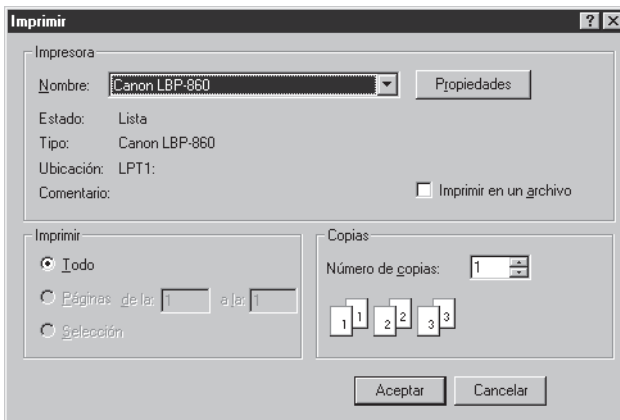
- Actual size.
Imprime la imagen explorada en el tamaño actual independientemente del papel en el que se vaya a imprimir y con la resolución a la que se explora.
- Fit to paper
Imprime la imagen explorada acomodándola al tamaño del papel cuando el tamaño del documento es más grande que el papel en el que se imprime la imagen explorada.
- Actual Pixel
Un punto en la imagen explorada se imprime como un punto en la impresora.

- 1 Seleccione [File] – [Print], o bien haga clic en  de la barra de herramientas con la imagen explorada visualizada en la pantalla de la Scanning Utility 5000.



⇒ Se visualizará la pantalla de ajuste Imprimir.

- 2 Ajuste los detalles de impresión, y haga clic en [Aceptar].



⇒ Se imprimirá la imagen explorada.



MEMORÁNDUM

- La pantalla de propiedades de la impresora varía de acuerdo con su impresora. Para más detalles, consulte el manual o el archivo de ayuda del controlador de la impresora que esté usando.
- Aunque seleccione [Todo] en Imprimir, sólo se imprimirá la hoja visualizada actualmente.


Para abrir archivos de imagen

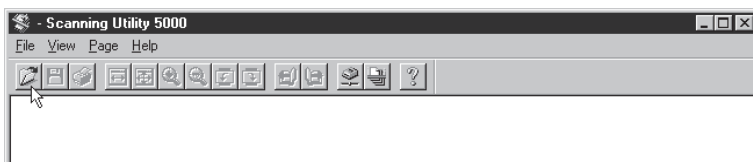
Abra un archivo que contenga una imagen explorada.



MEMORÁNDUM

En la Scanning Utility 5000 solamente se pueden abrir imágenes del formato TIFF, BMP, JPEG o JBIG guardadas en la Scanning Utility 5000.

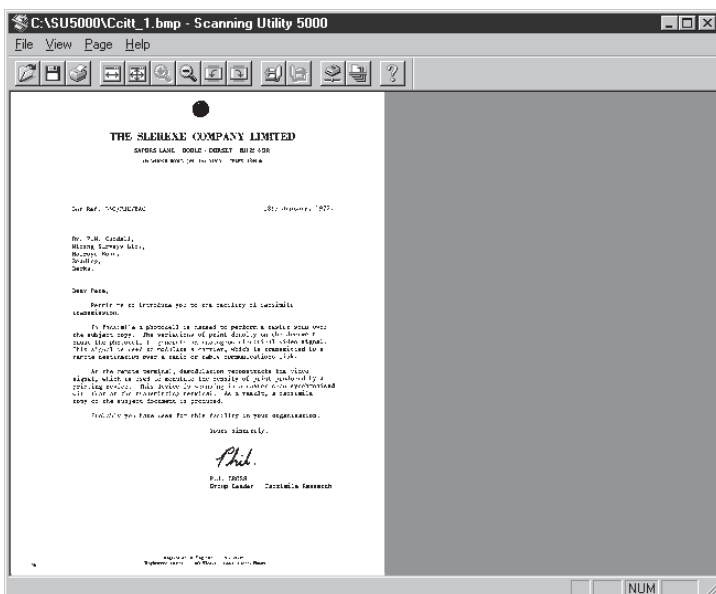
1 Seleccione [File] – [Open], o bien haga clic en  de la barra de herramientas.




➔ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo Abrir.

2 Seleccione un archivo y haga clic en [Abrir].

➔ El archivo seleccionado se visualizará.



MEMORÁNDUM

- Tenga en cuenta que si abre un archivo TIFF (multi TIFF) y lo guarda seleccionando [File] – [Save Page As] o haciendo clic en el botón , sólo se guardará la imagen visualizada actualmente, y las imágenes de todas las demás páginas guardadas en el archivo se perderán.
- Para cerrar un archivo abierto, salga de la Scanning Utility 5000 haciendo clic en [File] – [Exit].

2.3

Diferentes modos de exploración

Con la Scanning Utility 5000 podrá explorar los documentos en varios modos. Por ejemplo, puede cambiar el modo de alimentación del documento para acomodarlo a los requisitos particulares de exploración, explorar ambos lados de un documento, o explorar los documentos a gran velocidad.

Esta sección describe las siguientes formas de explorar documentos:

- Exploración de acuerdo con el modo de alimentación (modos Remoto, Semiautomático, Automático, Manual)
- Exploración Dúplex
- Imprimiendo directamente las imágenes exploradas (exploración con impresión)
- Usando las Hojas de función
- Exploración a gran velocidad
- Exploración con verificación de cuenta

Exploración de acuerdo con el modo de alimentación

Seleccione de entre los siguientes modos de alimentación de acuerdo con la calidad del documento y tipo de papel.

Están disponibles los siguientes modos de alimentación.

- **Remoto**

Cuando carga el documento en el escáner y selecciona “Start Scanning” en la Scanning Utility 5000, el papel empieza a pasar. En este modo se pueden cargar dos o más hojas.



Para detalles sobre el modo Remoto, consulte “Exploración de dos o más hojas” (P. 23).

- **Semiautomático**

Seleccione “Start Scanning” en la Scanning Utility 5000, cargue el documento, y presione la tecla de inicio del escáner para que empiecen a pasar las hojas. En este modo se pueden cargar dos o más hojas.

- **Automático**

Cuando seleccione “Start Scanning” en la Scanning Utility 5000 y cargue el documento en el escáner, las hojas empezarán a pasar automáticamente. En este modo se pueden cargar dos o más hojas.

- **Manual**

Seleccione “Start Scanning” en la Scanning Utility 5000, e inserte hojas una a una manualmente.

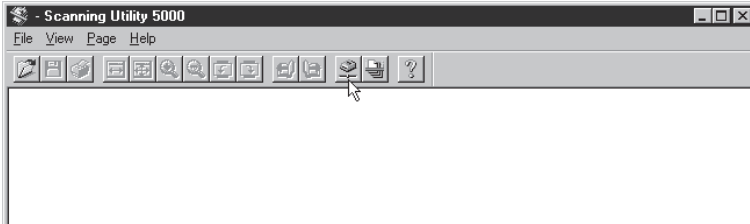


Para detalles sobre cómo cargar documentos, consulte “3.2 Carga y exploración de un documento” (P. 38) en las Instrucciones del DR-5020/5080C.

A continuación se describe el procedimiento para seleccionar el modo de alimentación y el procedimiento de exploración de acuerdo con cada modo de alimentación.

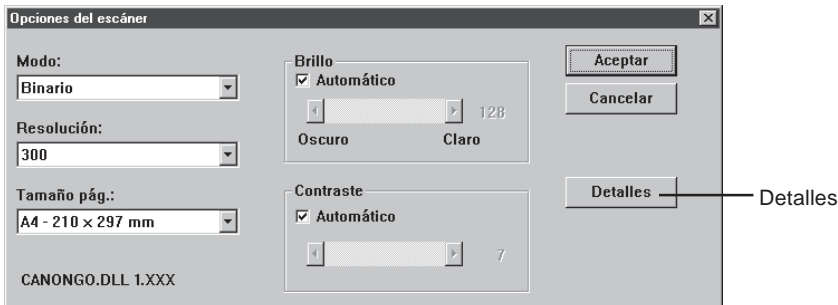
◆ Selección del modo de alimentación.

- 1 Seleccione [File] – [Scanner setting] o bien haga clic en  de la barra de herramientas.



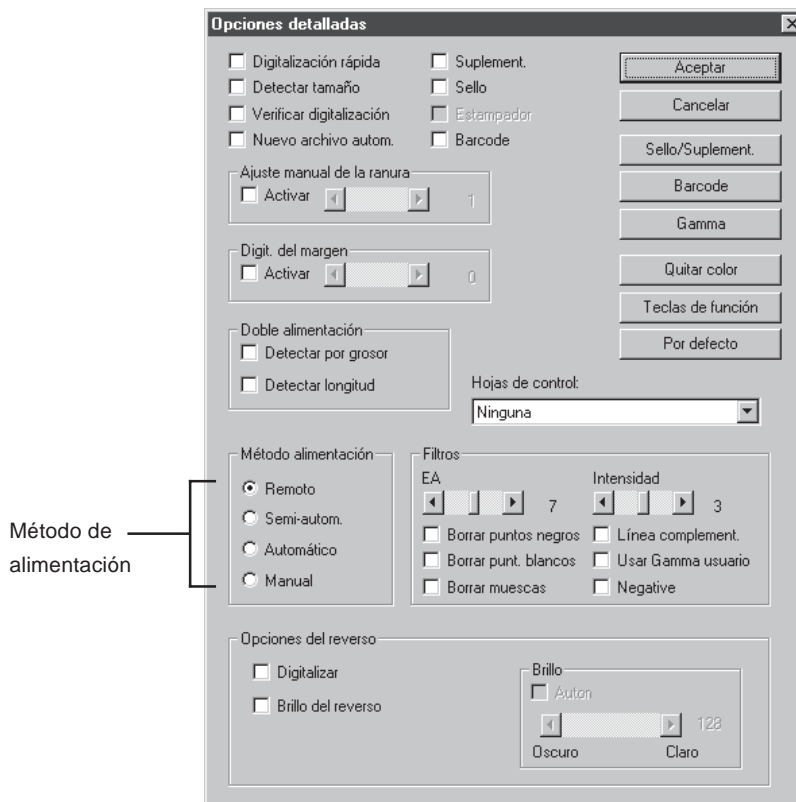
⇒ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo Opciones del escáner.

- 2 En el cuadro de diálogo Opciones del escáner, haga clic en el botón [Detalles].



⇒ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo Opciones detalladas.

3 En Método alimentación, seleccione el modo de alimentación.



4 Haga clic en [Aceptar] para volver al cuadro de diálogo Opciones del escáner.

5 Haga clic en [Aceptar] para volver a la pantalla de operación del escáner.



El modo de alimentación también se puede ajustar en el panel de operación del escáner. Presione la tecla [Feeding Option] del panel de operación para encender la lámpara del modo de alimentación deseado. Cuando ajuste el modo Remoto, no se encenderá ninguna de las lámparas.

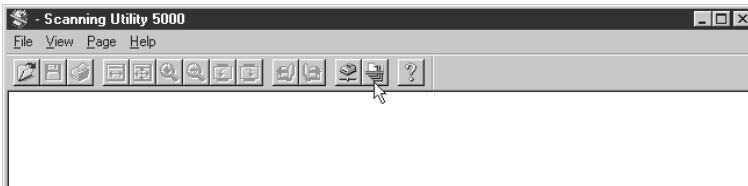
◆ Exploración en el modo semiautomático

Ajuste el modo de alimentación en el modo semiautomático y luego explore el documento.

1 Realice la operación descrita en “Selección del modo de alimentación” y seleccione “Semi-autom.”.

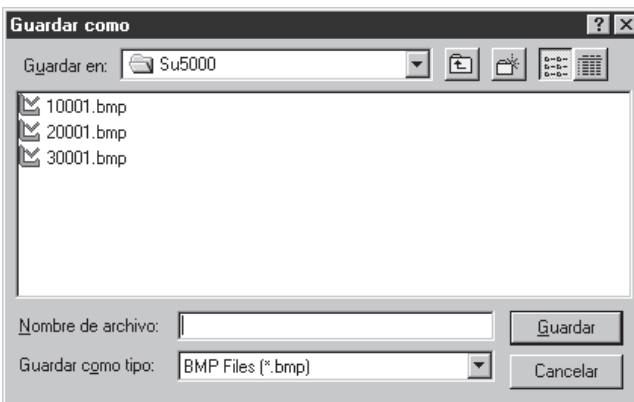
⇒ Se encenderá Semi-Auto en el panel de operación.

2 Seleccione [File] – [Scan batch to file], o bien haga clic en de la barra de herramientas.



⇒ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo Guardar como.

3 Decida el nombre de archivo con el que guardar la imagen a explorar, tipo de archivo (formato para guardarla) y dónde guardar el archivo, y haga clic en [Guardar].

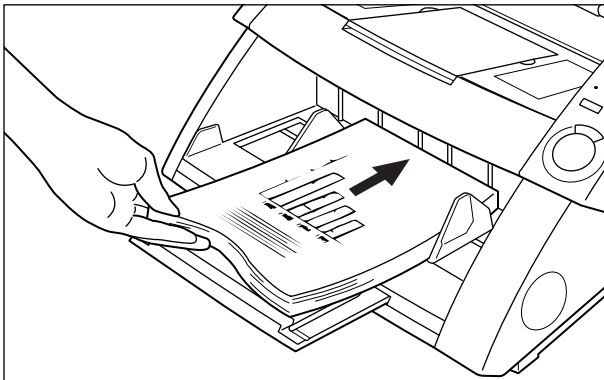


⇒ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo de “Start Scanning”.

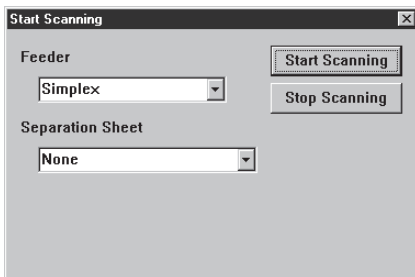


Antes de decidir el nombre de archivo y el tipo (formato de archivo), y dónde guardarlo, lea completamente “Acerca de los formatos para guardar imágenes” (P. 28).

4 Cargue el documento en la bandeja de documentos.

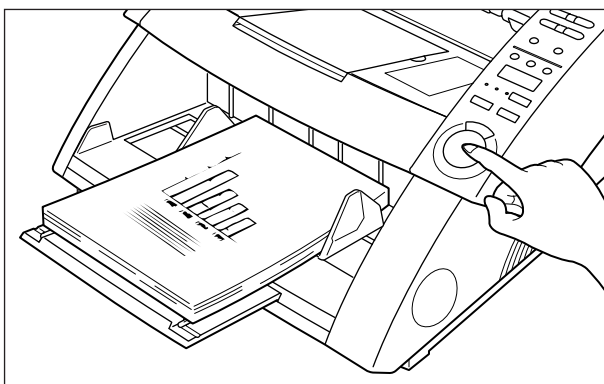


5 Haga clic en [Start Scanning].



⇒ La tecla de inicio en el centro del panel de operación se encenderá (verde).

6 Presione la tecla de inicio en el panel de operación del escáner.



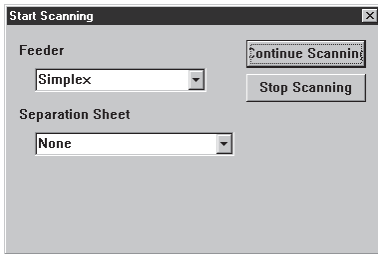
⇒ Se iniciará la exploración.

Cuando se agoten las hojas del documento en el escáner, la bandeja de documentos se bajará, y el escáner esperará hasta que se cargue el siguiente documento.

7 Cargue el siguiente documento en la bandeja de documentos y presione la tecla de inicio en el panel de operación del escáner.

8 Cuando se agoten las hojas del documento en el escáner, presione la tecla de parada.

⇒ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo "Start Scanning" (en pausa).



9 Para parar la exploración, haga clic en [Stop Scanning]. Para continuar explorando, haga clic en [Start Scanning], y vuelva al paso 7.

10 Confirme la imagen explorada. (P. 27)

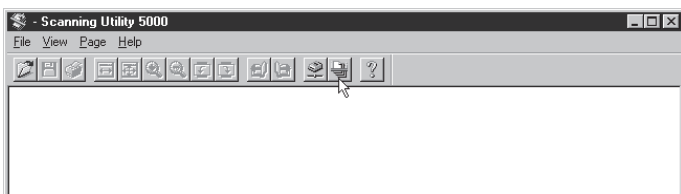
◆ Exploración en el modo automático

Ajuste el modo de alimentación en el modo automático y luego explore el documento.

1 Realice la operación descrita en “Selección del modo de alimentación” y seleccione “Autom.”.

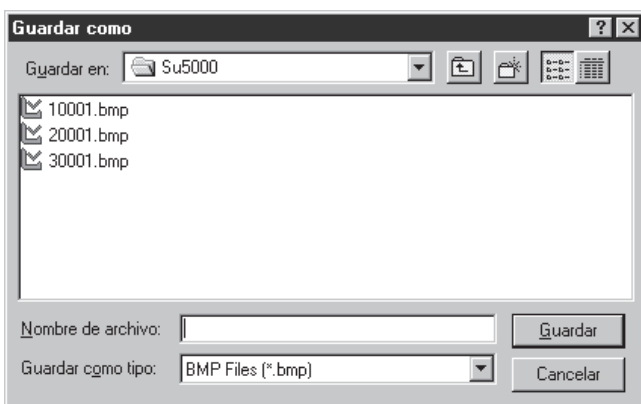
⇒ Se encenderá Auto en el panel de operación.

2 Seleccione [File] – [Scan batch to file], o bien haga clic en de la barra de herramientas.



⇒ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo Guardar como.

3 Decida el nombre de archivo con el que guardar la imagen a explorar, tipo de archivo (formato para guardarla) y dónde guardar el archivo, y haga clic en [Guardar].

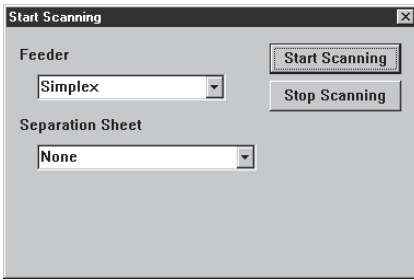


⇒ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo de “Start Scanning”.



Antes de decidir el nombre de archivo y el tipo (formato de archivo), y dónde guardarlo, lea completamente “Acerca de los formatos para guardar imágenes” (P. 28).

4 Haga clic en el botón [Start Scanning].



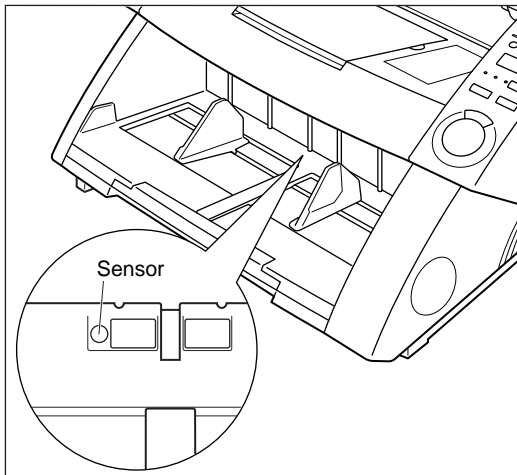
⇒ La tecla de inicio en el centro del panel de operación se encenderá (verde).



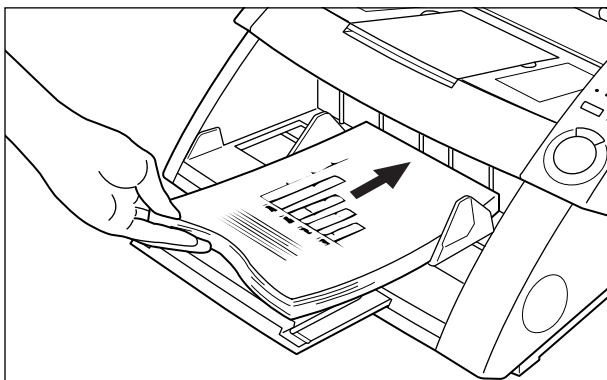
PRECAUCIÓN

Cuando el modo de exploración esté ajustado en Auto, el sensor ubicado en la bandeja de documentos, mostrado en la figura de abajo, detectará automáticamente el documento para empezar a explorar.

Cuando haya algo cubriendo el sensor en la bandeja de documentos después de haber dado la orden de exploración en la aplicación, el escáner discernirá erróneamente que ha sido cargado un documento, y la bandeja de documentos empezará a moverse. Asegúrese de que ningún objeto, a excepción del documento, cubra el sensor de la bandeja de documentos.



5 Cargue el documento en la bandeja de documentos.



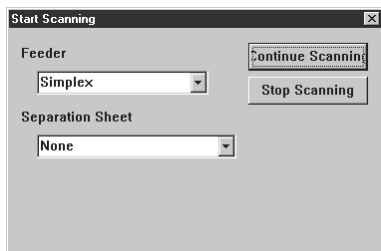
⇒ Se iniciará la exploración.

Cuando se agoten las hojas del documento en el escáner, la bandeja de documentos se bajará, y el escáner esperará hasta que se cargue el siguiente documento.

6 Cargue el siguiente documento en la bandeja de documentos.

7 Cuando se agoten las hojas del documento en el escáner, presione la tecla de parada en el panel de operación del escáner.

⇒ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo "Start Scanning" (en pausa).



8 Para parar la exploración, haga clic en [Stop Scanning].

Para continuar explorando, haga clic en [Start Scanning], y vuelva al paso 5.

9 Confirme la imagen explorada. (P. 27)

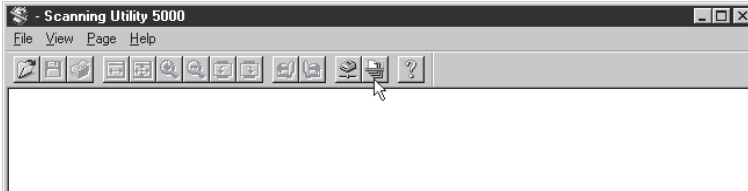
◆ Exploración en el modo manual

Las hojas del documento se exploran a medida que usted las va insertando en el escáner una a una.

1 Realice la operación descrita en “Selección del modo de alimentación” y seleccione “Manual”.

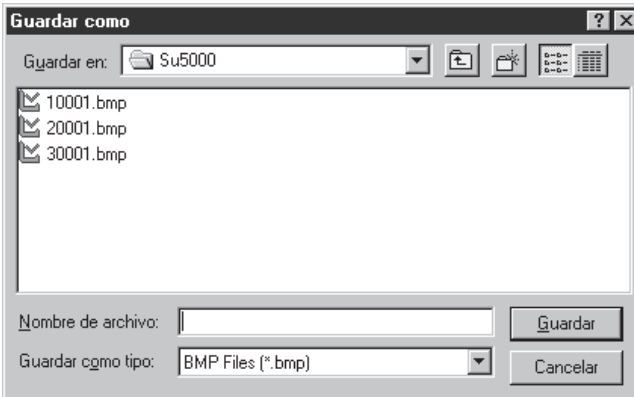
⇒ Se encenderá Manual en el panel de operación, y la bandeja de documentos se elevará.

2 Seleccione [File] – [Scan batch to file], o bien haga clic en de la barra de herramientas.



⇒ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo Guardar como.

3 Decida el nombre de archivo con el que guardar la imagen a explorar, tipo de archivo (formato para guardarla) y dónde guardar el archivo, y haga clic en [Guardar].

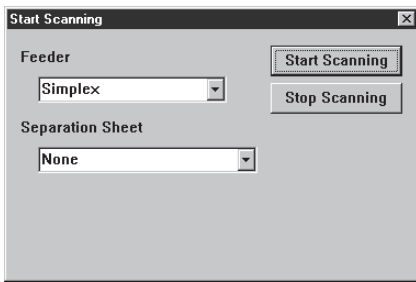


⇒ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo de “Start Scanning”.

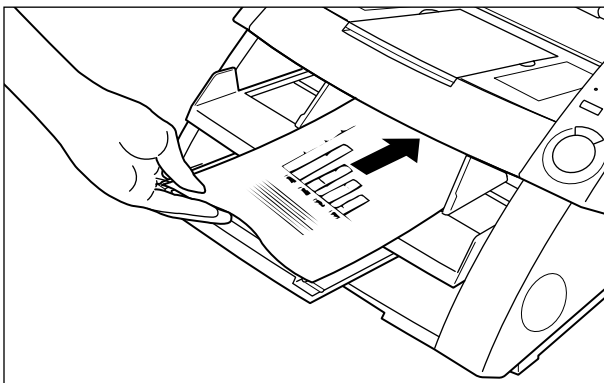


Antes de decidir el nombre de archivo y el tipo (formato de archivo), y dónde guardarlo, lea completamente “Acerca de los formatos para guardar imágenes” (P. 28).

4 Haga clic en [Start Scanning].



5 Cargue una hoja en la bandeja de documentos.

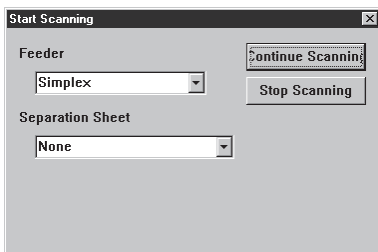


⇒ El escáner explorará la hoja, y esperará a que inserte la siguiente.

6 Continúe insertando hojas, una a una.

7 Cuando termine la exploración, haga clic en [Stop Scanning].

⇒ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo "Start Scanning" (en pausa).



8 Para parar la exploración, haga clic en [Stop Scanning].

Para continuar explorando, haga clic en [Start Scanning], y vuelva al paso 5.



Aun después de finalizar la exploración, la bandeja de documentos no se bajará hasta que cancele el modo Manual. Cancele este modo presionando la tecla “Feeding Option” o mediante “Selección del modo de alimentación” (P. 35).

9 Confirme la imagen explorada. (P. 27)

Exploración Duplex

La exploración duplex permite explorar documentos por ambos lados.

La exploración duplex se realiza de la misma forma que la exploración habitual, excepto en que usted selecciona Dúplex cuando da la orden de iniciar la exploración.

1 Haga los ajustes de exploración y explore el documento de acuerdo con el modo de alimentación seleccionado actualmente.

Para detalles sobre cada modo de alimentación, consulte la página indicada.

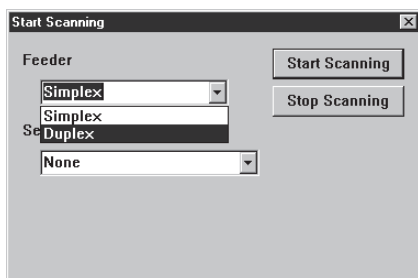
Modo Remoto: “Exploración de dos o más páginas” (P. 23)

Modo Semi-autom.: “Exploración en el modo semiautomático” (P. 37)

Modo Automático: “Exploración en el modo automático”. (P. 40)

Modo Manual: “Exploración en el modo manual” (P. 43)

2 Cuando aparezca el cuadro de diálogo “Start Scanning”, haga clic en la lengüeta de “Feeder” y seleccione Duplex para empezar la exploración.



- La exploración Duplex también se puede ajustar en el panel de operación del escáner.
Presione la tecla Simplex/Duplex en el panel de operación para seleccionar [Duplex] y realice las operaciones de exploración necesarias (paso 1 de arriba).
- También puede hacer la exploración duplex usando las Hojas de función (Hojas de control del escáner).
Si pone la hoja de control del escáner encima del documento, se explorarán automáticamente ambos lados del documento. Para más detalles, consulte “Utilización de las Hojas de función” (P. 48) o consulte las Instrucciones del DR-5020/5080C por separado.

Impresión de las hojas exploradas directamente

Las imágenes de los documentos explorados pueden ser impresas tal cual. En este caso, las imágenes exploradas no serán guardadas en archivo.



La imagen explorada se imprime automáticamente en la impresora seleccionada actualmente en “Normally Used Printer”.
Ajuste la impresora a usar en [File] – [Printer setting].

1 Haga los ajustes de exploración y explore el documento de acuerdo con el modo de alimentación seleccionado actualmente.

Para detalles sobre cada modo de alimentación, consulte la página indicada.

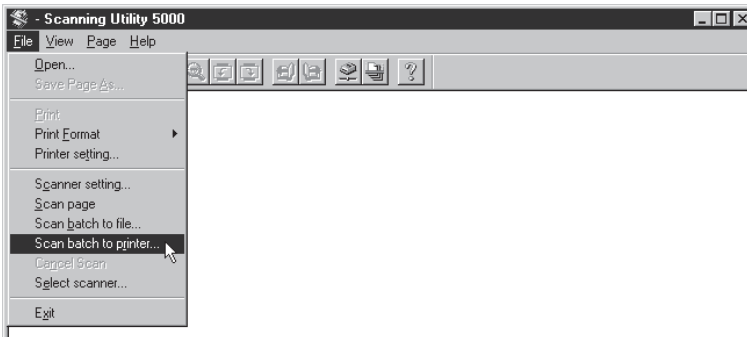
Modo Remoto: “Exploración de dos o más páginas” (P. 23)

Modo Semi-autom.: “Exploración en el modo semiautomático” (P. 37)

Modo Automático: “Exploración en el modo automático”. (P. 40)

Modo Manual: “Exploración en el modo manual” (P. 43)

2 Seleccione [File] - [Scan batch to printer...].



⇒ El documento será explorado y se imprimirá en la impresora seleccionada actualmente en “Normally Used Printer”.

Utilización de las hojas de función

Las Hojas de función se incluyen con el escáner. Estas hojas se utilizan para controlar la operación del escáner.

Hay dos tipos de Hojas de función:

● Hojas de control del escáner

Estas hojas controlan el modo en el que se explora el documento. Se han provisto las siguientes hojas de control para cada uno de los modos de exploración.

Para el modo dúplex

Ordena al escáner que explore y almacene el contenido de las caras frontal y posterior de la hoja. Inserte esta Hoja de función antes del documento a explorar, y cárguela junto con el documento en el escáner.

Para el modo símplex

Ordena al escáner que explore y almacene sólo la cara frontal de la hoja. Inserte esta Hoja de función antes del documento a explorar, y cárguela junto con el documento en el escáner.

Para el modo foto

Ordena al escáner que active el modo Foto para explorar y almacenar fotografías. Inserte esta Hoja de función antes del documento de fotografía, y cárguela junto con el documento en el escáner. Esta hoja es para usar sólo cuando el modo de exploración de la aplicación está ajustado en Blanco y negro. Si se carga con el modo de exploración ajustado en GrayScale o Color, será ignorada.

Para el modo texto

Ordena al escáner que active el modo Texto para explorar y almacenar texto. Inserte esta Hoja de función antes del documento a explorar, y cárguela junto con el documento en el escáner. Esta hoja es para usar sólo cuando el modo de exploración de la aplicación está ajustado en Blanco y negro. Si se carga con el modo de exploración ajustado en Grayscale o Color, será ignorada.

● Hojas de separación de tareas

Divide automáticamente un documento en archivos separados y los almacena como diferentes documentos. Inserte esta Hoja de función en donde quiera dividir el documento, y cárguela junto con el documento en el escáner.




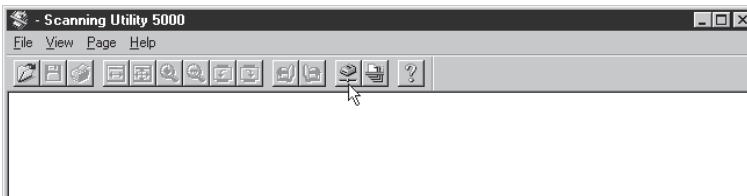
- Para más detalles sobre las hojas de arriba, consulte las Instrucciones del DR-5020/5080C o las Instrucciones de las Hojas de función por separado.
- Aunque las Hojas de función pueden mezclarse con documentos de diferentes tamaños y ser exploradas, intente en la medida de lo posible usar Hojas de función del mismo tamaño que el documento.

A continuación se describen los procedimientos respectivos para explorar documentos usando las Hojas de función.

◆ Hojas de control del escáner

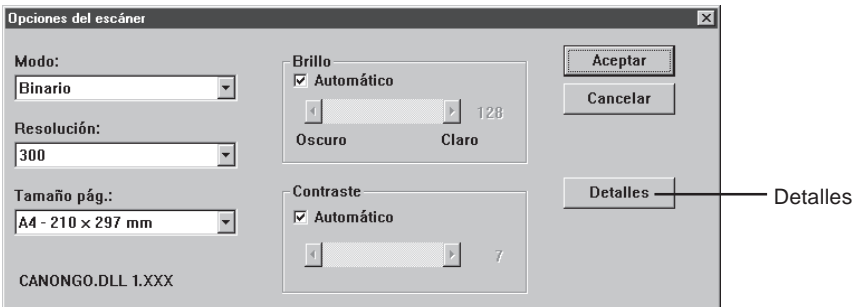
Antes de utilizar las hojas de control del escáner cuando vaya a explorar un documento, seleccione el ajuste de detección de hoja.

- 1 Seleccione o bien [File] – [Scanner setting] o bien haga clic en  de la barra de herramientas.



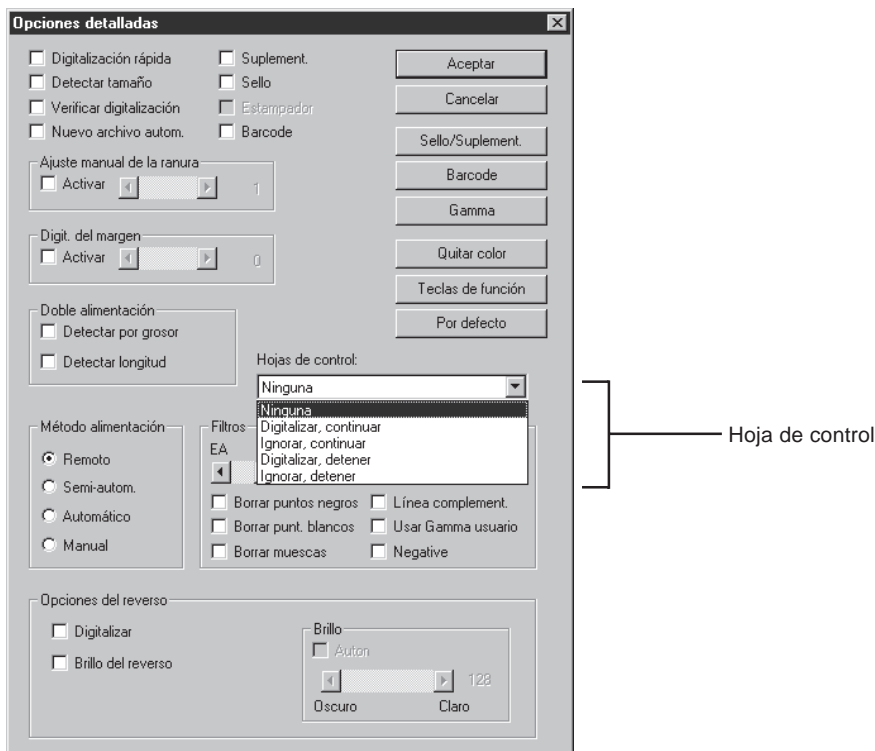
⇒ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo Opciones del escáner.

- 2 En el cuadro de diálogo Opciones del escáner, haga clic en el botón [Detalles].



⇒ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo Opciones detalladas.

3 En Hojas de control, seleccione el tipo de detección.



- **Ninguna**
Las hojas de control del escáner no se detectan.
- **Digitalizar, continuar**
La hoja de control del escáner se detecta y explora, y luego continúa la exploración.
- **Ignorar, Continuar**
La hoja de control del escáner se detecta e ignora (no se explora), y luego continúa la exploración.
- **Digitalizar, detener**
La hoja de control del escáner se detecta y explora, y luego se detiene la exploración.
- **Ignorar, detener**
La hoja de control del escáner se detecta y omite (no se explora), y luego se detiene la exploración.

4 Haga clic en [Aceptar] para volver al cuadro de diálogo Opciones del escáner.

5 Haga clic en [Aceptar] para volver a la pantalla de operación del escáner.

6 Explore el documento junto con la Hoja de control.

◆ Hojas de separación de tareas

Cuando utilice una hoja de separación de tareas, la exploración se realizará de la misma forma que la exploración habitual, excepto en que tiene que seleccionar el tipo de detección cuando da la orden de iniciar la exploración.

1 Haga el ajuste de exploración y explore el documento de acuerdo con el modo de alimentación seleccionado actualmente.

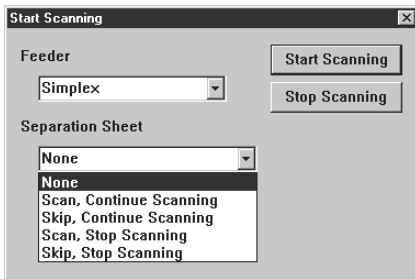
Para detalles sobre cada modo de alimentación, consulte la página indicada.

Modo Remoto: “Exploración de dos o más páginas” (P. 23)

Modo Semi-autom.: “Exploración en el modo semiautomático” (P. 37)

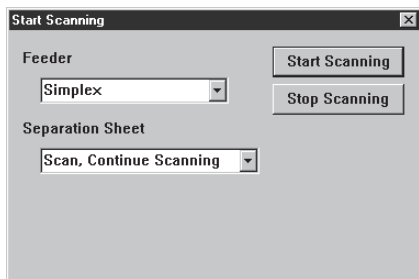
Modo Automático: “Exploración en el modo automático”. (P. 40)

2 Cuando aparezca el cuadro de diálogo “Start Scanning”, haga clic en la lengüeta ▾ de “Separation Sheet” y seleccione el tipo de detección.



- **None**
El escáner no detecta las hojas de separación de tareas.
- **Scan, Continue Scanning**
Registra los detalles de la hoja de separación de tareas como imagen y continúa explorando.
- **Skip, Continue Scanning**
Continúa explorando sin registrar los detalles de la hoja de separación de tareas como imagen.
- **Scan, Stop Scanning**
Registra los detalles de la hoja de separación de tareas como imagen y para la exploración.
- **Skip, Stop Scanning**
Para la exploración sin registrar los detalles de la hoja de separación de tareas como imagen.

3 Haga clic en [Start Scanning].



Exploración a gran velocidad

Explore los documentos a gran velocidad.

Aunque se aumenta la velocidad de alimentación del documento, reduciendo el tiempo que lleva explorarlo, la imagen pierde algo de calidad.

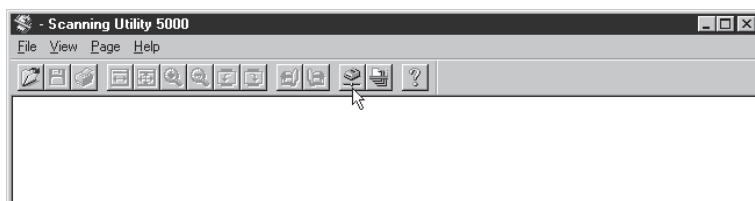


La exploración a gran velocidad solamente se puede realizar cuando la resolución está ajustada a 200 ppp o 300 ppp.

Cuando se haya ajustado 200 ppp, las imágenes se explorarán a 200 x 100 ppp (horizontal x vertical) y se obtendrán imágenes a 200 x 200 ppp.

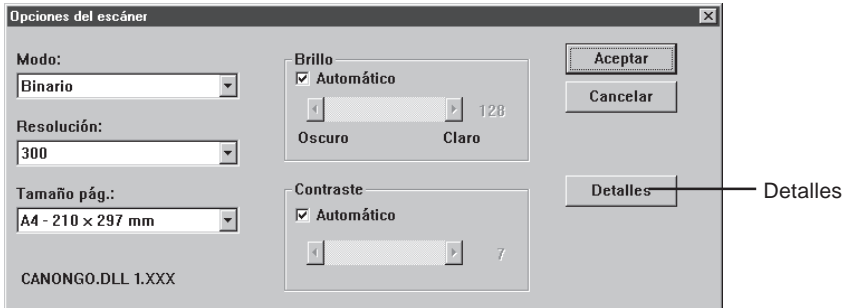
Cuando se haya ajustado 300 ppp, las imágenes se explorarán a 300 x 150 ppp (horizontal x vertical) y se obtendrán imágenes a 300 x 300 ppp.

1 Seleccione [File] – [Scanner setting...], o bien haga clic en de la barra de herramientas.



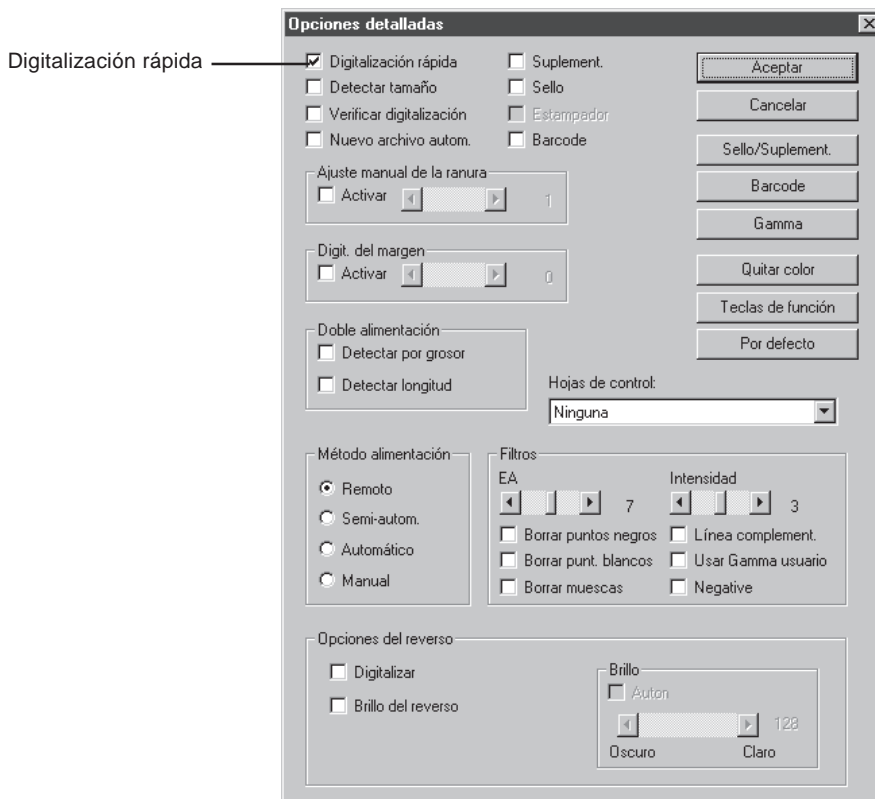
⇒ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo Opciones del escáner.

2 En el cuadro de diálogo Opciones del escáner, haga clic en el botón [Detalles].



⇒ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo Opciones detalladas.

3 Para seleccionar la exploración a gran velocidad, marque la casilla de Digitalización rápida haciendo clic en ella.



4 Haga clic en [Aceptar] para volver al cuadro de diálogo Opciones del escáner.

5 Haga clic en [Aceptar] para volver a la pantalla de operación del escáner.

6 Explore el documento de acuerdo con el modo de alimentación seleccionado actualmente.

Para detalles sobre cada modo de alimentación, consulte la página indicada.

Modo Remoto: “Exploración de dos o más páginas” (P. 23)

Modo Semi-autom.: “Exploración en el modo semiautomático” (P. 37)

Modo Automático: “Exploración en el modo automático”. (P. 40)

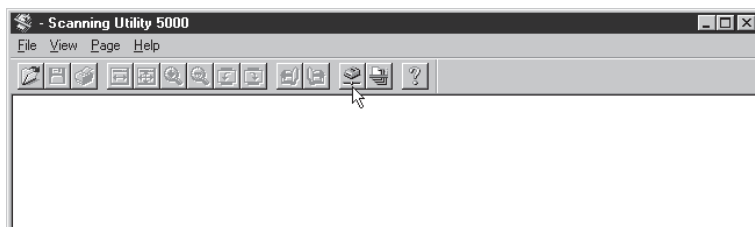
Modo Manual: “Exploración en el modo manual” (P. 43)

Exploración con verificación de cuenta

Esta función le permite verificar el número de hojas del documento que han entrado (o, se han contado) antes de hacer la exploración, en relación con el número de hojas exploradas realmente. Si el número difiere, se visualiza un mensaje de error.

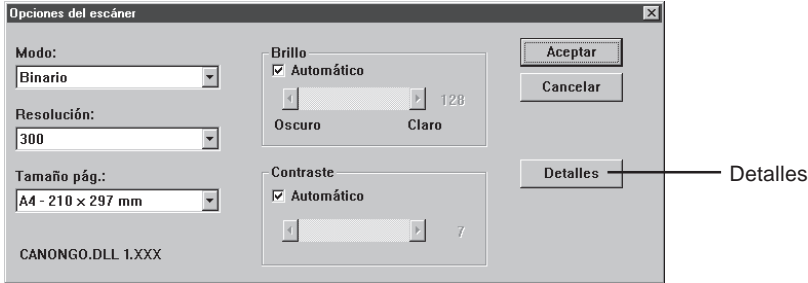
◆ Ajuste de la exploración con verificación de cuenta

1 Seleccione [File] – [Scanner setting...], o bien haga clic en  de la barra de herramientas.



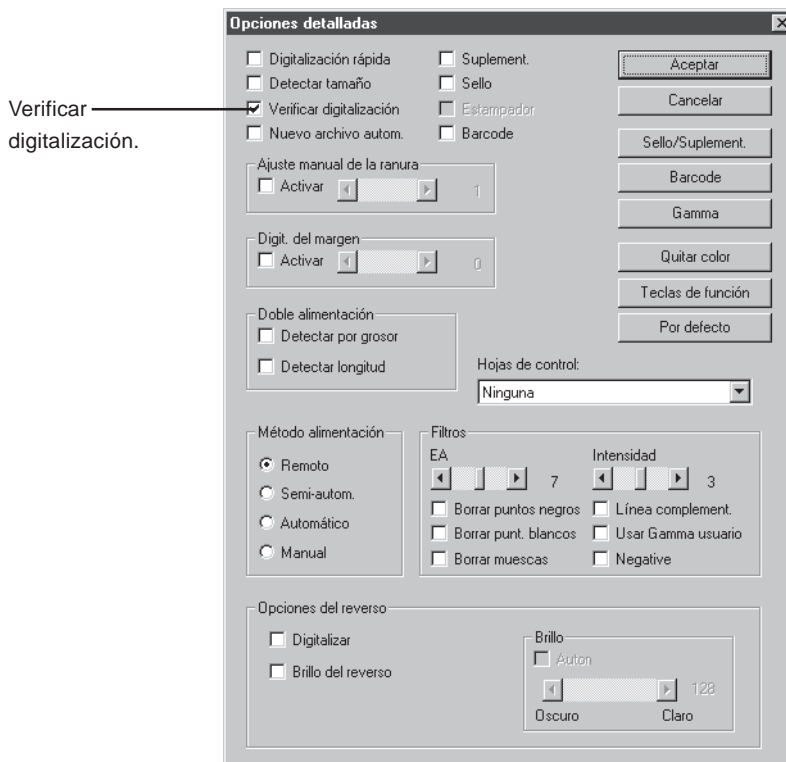
➞ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo Opciones del escáner.

- 2** En el cuadro de diálogo Opciones del escáner, haga clic en [Detalles].



⇒ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo Opciones detalladas.

- 3** Para seleccionar la exploración con verificación de cuenta, marque la casilla Verificar digitalización haciendo clic en ella.



- 4** Haga clic en [Aceptar] para volver al cuadro de diálogo Opciones del escáner.

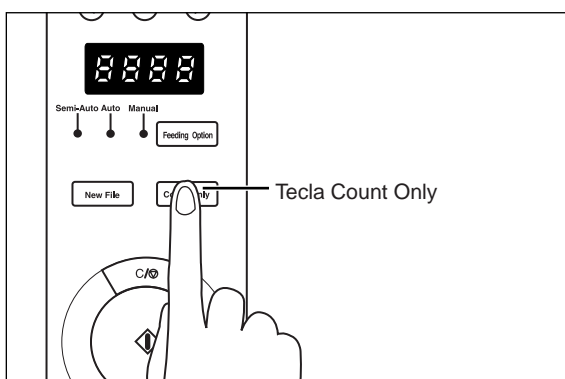
- 5** Haga clic en [Aceptar] para volver a la pantalla de operación del escáner.

◆ Introducción del número de hojas de un documento

Si ya conoce el número de hojas que tiene el documento

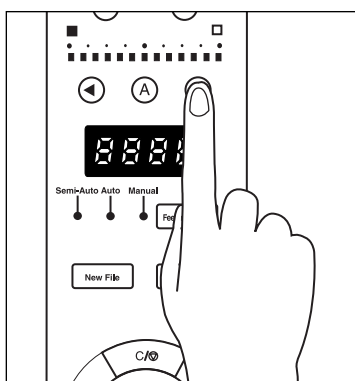
Introduzca directamente el número de hojas en el visor de contador.

1 Presione la tecla Count Only en el panel de operación del escáner.



➔ La tecla Count Only y la lámpara Semi-Auto se encenderán, y la tecla de inicio se iluminará en verde.

2 Presione los botones ◀ y ▶ del panel de operación del escáner para introducir el número de hojas.



➔ El número aparecerá en el visor de contador.



Al presionar el botón ▶ aumenta el número, y al presionar el botón ◀ disminuye. Para aumentar o disminuir rápidamente el número, mantenga presionado el botón.

3 Cuando haya ajustado el número de hojas que tiene el documento, presione la tecla Count Only para cancelar el modo Count Only.

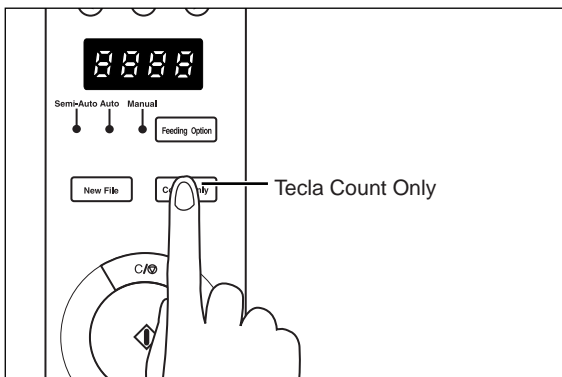


Para reponer el visor de contador, mantenga presionada la tecla de inicio durante dos segundos por lo menos.

Si no conoce el número de hojas del documento

Utilice la función de cuenta del escáner para contar el número de hojas.

1 Presione la tecla Count Only en el panel de operación del escáner.



➔ La tecla Count Only y la lámpara Semi-Auto se encenderán, y la tecla de inicio se iluminará en verde.

2 Cargue el documento en la bandeja de documentos y presione la tecla de inicio.

➔ Se contará el número de hojas del documento, y el número de hojas del documento aparecerá en el visor de contador.

3 Cuando haya ajustado el número de hojas que tiene el documento, presione la tecla Count Only para cancelar el modo Count Only.



Para reponer el visor de contador, mantenga presionada la tecla de inicio durante dos segundos por lo menos.

◆ Exploración de documentos

Si el número de hojas del documento que ha introducido (o, se han contado) difiere del número de hojas exploradas realmente, aparecerá un mensaje de error en el visor de contador cuando finalice la exploración.

1 Explore el documento de acuerdo con el modo de alimentación seleccionado actualmente.

Para detalles sobre cada modo de alimentación, consulte la página indicada.

- Modo Remoto: “Exploración de dos o más páginas” (P. 23)
- Modo Semi-autom.: “Exploración en el modo semiautomático” (P. 37)
- Modo Automático: “Exploración en el modo automático” (P. 40)
- Modo Manual: “Exploración en el modo manual” (P. 43)

2 Cargue el documento y empiece la exploración

- **Si el número de hojas exploradas es mayor que el número de hojas visualizado en el visor de contador:**

El documento será explorado y la exploración se parará en el número de hojas visualizado en el visor de contador.

El visor de contador cambiará a la visualización de error “U01”, y en la pantalla del ordenador se visualizará el mensaje de error “Verify Count Error”.

Vuelva al escáner y cuente otra vez el número de hojas que tiene el documento.



“U01” se visualizará también junto con el mensaje de error cuando se haga una exploración de verificación sin visualizar el número de hojas del documento.

- **Si el número de hojas exploradas es menor que el número de hojas visualizado en el visor de contador:**

El visor de contador cambiará a “U02” para indicar un error de cuenta de verificación.

Vuelva al escáner y cuente otra vez el número de hojas que tiene el documento.

Una causa probable es que está ocurriendo doble alimentación.

Compruebe si han sido o no exploradas todas las hojas del documento.



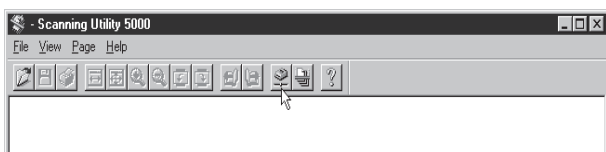
Para reponer el visor de contador, presione la tecla de parada.

2.4

Fijación de las condiciones de exploración

Fije las condiciones a aplicar al documento que va a explorar. Seleccione el cuadro de diálogo acorde con la función, y haga el ajuste necesario. Para detalles sobre los parámetros de cada uno de estos cuadros de diálogo, consulte la página de referencia indicada para el cuadro de diálogo.

1 Seleccione [File] – [Scanner setting] o bien haga clic en  de la barra de herramientas.

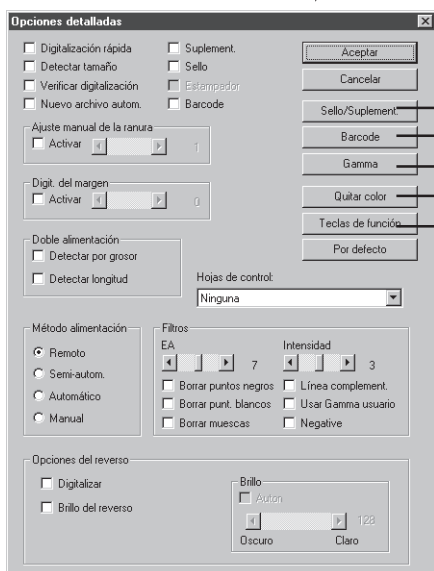


⇒ Aparecerá el cuadro de diálogo Opciones del escáner.

2 Visualice la pantalla de ajuste deseada, y haga los ajustes necesarios.



Cuadro de diálogo Opciones del escáner (→ P. 61)



- Sello/Suplemento (→ P. 69)
- Códigos (→ P. 74)
- Gamma (→ P. 79)
- Quitar color (→ P. 82)
- Teclas de función (→ P. 83)

Configuración básica

Establezca las condiciones básicas para explorar documentos.

La configuración básica se hace en el cuadro de diálogo Opciones del escáner.



<Opciones del escáner>

Ítem	Descripción
Modo	<p>Establece el modo en que se explora la imagen. El DR-5020 solamente dispone de [Blanco y negro] y [Blanco y negro-ED]. Los modos disponibles estarán algunas veces limitados en función del tamaño del papel. Para más detalles, consulte las "Tablas de modos de exploración del DR-5020/5080C" (P. 88) en las instrucciones del DR-5020/5080C.</p> <p>[Blanco y negro] Explora la imagen completamente en blanco y negro sin sombreado en gris.</p> <p>[Blanco y negro-ED] Explora la imagen completamente en blanco y negro. Las zonas grises de medios tonos se simulan y se reproducen usando la difuminación de errores.</p> <p>[GrayScale - 4 (16, 256) Level] Seleccione este modo cuando explore fotografías y documentos de medios tonos en la escala de grises. Cuanto más alto sea el valor de nivel, más aumentará el tamaño del archivo.</p> <p>[Color - 3 (6, 12, 24) Bit] Seleciones este modo cuando explore fotografías y documentos de medios tonos en color. Cuanto mayor sea el valor de bit, más aumentará el tamaño del archivo.</p>
Resolución	<p>Le permite fijar la resolución, el número de puntos por pulgada (ppp). Tiene 13 opciones: 100, 200, 210, 220, 230, 240, 250, 260, 270, 280, 290, 300 y 400 ppp.</p> <p>Si selecciona 200 ó 300, también podrá seleccionar Digitalización rápida (P. 63) en el cuadro de diálogo Opciones detalladas.</p> <p>Los modos disponibles estarán algunas veces limitados en función del tamaño del papel. Para más detalles, consulte las "Tablas de modos de exploración del DR-5020/5080C" (P. 88) en las instrucciones del DR-5020/5080C.</p>

<p>Tamaño página</p>	<p>Le permite seleccionar uno de los siguientes tamaños de documentos a explorar: Las opciones disponibles son las siguientes: LETTER - 8.5 x 11 pulgadas LEGAL – 8.5 x 14 pulgadas A3 - 297 x 420 mm A4 - 210 x 297 mm A4-R – 297 x 210 mm A5 - 148 x 210 mm A6 - 105 x 148 mm B4 (ISO) - 250 x 353 mm B4 (JIS) – 257 x 364 mm B5 (ISO) - 176 x 250 mm B5 (JIS) - 182 x 257 mm Máximo (295 x 432 mm) Si se explora un documento más grande que el tamaño especificado, se recortarán los bordes adyacentes del documento. También, si se explora un documento más pequeño que el tamaño especificado, en los bordes adyacentes del documento se formará un margen negro. Si ha seleccionado Detectar tamaño (P. 63) en el cuadro de diálogo Opciones detalladas, se ignorará esta configuración.</p>
<p>Brillo</p>	<p>Ajusta automática o manualmente el brillo de la imagen. Cuando ajuste el brillo manualmente, podrá ajustarlo dentro del margen 1 a 225.</p>
<p>Contraste</p>	<p>Ajusta automática o manualmente el contraste. Cuando ajuste el contraste manualmente, podrá ajustarlo dentro del margen 1 a 13. Un valor más alto aumentará el contraste, mientras que un valor más bajo lo reducirá.</p>



MEMORÁNDUM

- Cuando [Modo] esté ajustado en [Blanco y negro], el ajuste de contraste estará desactivado.
- En el DR-5020, la casilla de verificación [Contraste] estará en gris cuando [Modo] esté ajustado en [Blanco y negro].

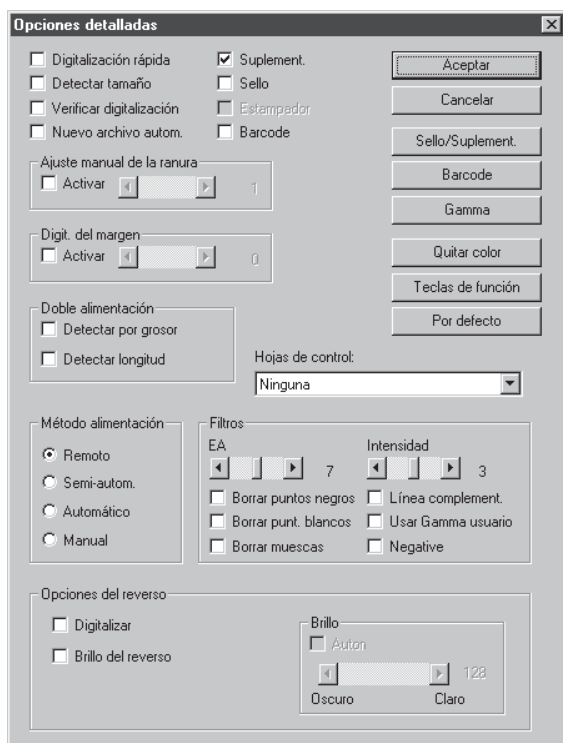
<Botones>

Ítem	Descripción
<p>Aceptar</p>	<p>Cuando haya terminado de hacer los ajustes, haga clic en [Aceptar] para activarlos y cerrar el cuadro de diálogo.</p>
<p>Cancelar</p>	<p>Cancela cualquier configuración que haya cambiado y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.</p>
<p>Detalles</p>	<p>Abre el cuadro de diálogo Opciones detalladas (P. 63) para que pueda ajustar detalles especiales tales como filtro, velocidad de exploración, detección del tamaño de hoja y detección de hoja de control.</p>

Configuración detallada



Establece las condiciones de exploración detalladamente.

Estos ítems se ajustan en el cuadro de diálogo Opciones detalladas.



Ítem	Descripción
Digitalización rápida	<p>Este ajuste estará disponible cuando la resolución esté ajustada a 200 ppp o 300 ppp.</p> <p>Cuando se haya ajustado 200 ppp, las imágenes se explorarán a 200 x 100 ppp (horizontal x vertical) y se obtendrán imágenes a 200 x 200 ppp.</p> <p>Cuando se haya ajustado 300 ppp, las imágenes se explorarán a 300 x 150 ppp (horizontal x vertical) y se obtendrán imágenes a 300 x 300 ppp.</p> <p>Aunque la exploración se realiza a igual rapidez en cualquiera de los casos, tenga en cuenta que la calidad de la imagen explorada a alta velocidad disminuirá ligeramente.</p> <p>Para más detalles sobre la exploración a gran velocidad, consulte P. 52.</p>
Detectar tamaño	<p>El DR-5020/5080C ajusta el área de exploración de acuerdo con el ancho y alto detectado del documento y explora toda la página.</p> <p>Cuando lo seleccione, el ajuste Tamaño página (P. 62) del cuadro de diálogo Opciones del escáner quedará desactivado.</p>

Verificar digitalización	Verifica el número de hojas contadas antes de explorar el documento en relación con el número de hojas exploradas realmente. Si el número difiere, se visualizará un error. Para detalles sobre el procedimiento de exploración con verificación de cuenta, consulte P. 54.
Nuevo archivo autom	Este ajuste genera una señal de salto de página cada vez que se para una exploración continua.
Suplement	Activa la función del impresor para imprimir cualesquiera caracteres especificados en los documentos explorados. Para ello se requiere el impresor opcional.
Sello	Activa y desactiva la función del sello para introducir cualesquiera caracteres especificados en la imagen explorada.
Estampador	Activa el uso del estampador. Para ello se requiere el estampador opcional.
Barcode	Activa la función de códigos de barras para leer códigos de barras en los documentos. Para ello se requiere el decodificador de códigos de barras opcional.
Ajuste manual de la ranura	Ajuste manualmente el grosor del papel cuando no use el ajuste automático del grosor del papel. Marque la casilla Activar y ajuste el grosor con los botones ◀ y ▶. Especifique el grosor dentro de los límites 1 (el más fino) a 13 (el más grueso). Utilice esta función para ajustar manualmente el grosor del papel cuando explore documentos recubiertos con una capa especial o cuyo grosor de papel no pueda ser ajustado automáticamente, o cuando en el modo de ajuste automático del grosor de papel ocurra doble alimentación con frecuencia. Este ajuste puede hacerse también en el panel de operación del escáner. Para más detalles, consulte las Instrucciones del DR-5020/5080C.

Margen	<p>Ajusta los márgenes (superior, inferior, izquierdo y derecho) de la zona de exploración.</p> <p>Para ajustar los márgenes, marque la casilla Activar y utilice los botones  y .</p> <p>Especifique entre los límites -10 (reduce la zona de exploración en 10 mm) a +10 (aumenta la zona de exploración en 10 mm). Por ejemplo, si quiere aumentar ligeramente la zona de exploración para que los bordes del documento no se recorten, ajuste en la dirección de +.</p> <p>O, si quiere reducir ligeramente la zona de exploración para que no se forme cuadro negro alrededor de la imagen explorada, ajuste en la dirección de -.</p>
Doble alimentación	<p>Seleccione el método utilizado para detectar doble alimentación. “Doble alimentación” será detectada cuando entren juntas dos o más hojas del documento o cuando parte de una hoja solape a otra hoja al explorarse continuamente las hojas del documento.</p> <p>[Detectar por grosor] Detecta doble alimentación por el grosor del papel. Cuando entra una hoja más gruesa que la primera del documento(*), el escáner la toma como doble alimentación y visualiza un error.</p> <p>[Detectar por longitud] Detecta doble alimentación por la longitud del papel. Cuando entra una hoja más larga que la primera del documento(*), el escáner la toma como doble alimentación y visualiza un error.</p> <p>* La detección de doble alimentación se realiza tomando el grosor y longitud de la primera hoja del documento como hoja estándar. Cuando entra la primera hoja del documento, el escáner memoriza su grosor y la longitud.</p>

<p>Hojas de control</p>	<p>Selecciona el modo en que el escáner detecta las hojas de control del escáner. (P. 48)</p> <p>-Ninguna No se detectan las hojas de control del escáner.</p> <p>-Digitalizar, continuar Se detecta y explora la hoja de control del escáner, y luego continúa la exploración.</p> <p>-Ignorar, Continuar Se detecta la hoja de control del escáner y se ignora (no se explora), y luego continúa la exploración.</p> <p>-Digitalizar, detener Se detecta y explora la hoja de control del escáner, y luego se detiene la exploración.</p> <p>-Ignorar, detener Se detecta la hoja de control del escáner y omite (no se explora), y luego se detiene la exploración.</p> <p>Para detalles sobre cómo explorar con las hojas de control, consulte “Hojas de función” en las Instrucciones del DR-5020/5080C por separado.</p>
<p>Método alimentación</p>	<p>Selecciona el método de alimentación.</p> <p>Remoto: El documento empieza a pasar (es explorado) cuando lo carga y da la orden de exploración en la aplicación.</p> <p>Semi-autom.: El documento pasa (es explorado) cuando da la orden de exploración en la aplicación y cuando lo carga y presiona la tecla de inicio.</p> <p>Autom.: El documento pasa (es explorado) automáticamente cuando lo carga.</p> <p>Manual: Tiene que cargar el documento una a una hoja después de dar la orden de exploración en la aplicación. Utilice este modo cuando explore hojas especialmente gruesas o finas.</p> <p>Este ítem puede ajustarse también en el panel de operación del escáner. Para más detalles, consulte las Instrucciones del DR-5020/5080C por separado.</p>
<p>Opciones del reverso</p>	<p>Ajuste este ítem para explorar el lado posterior de los documentos.</p> <p>[Digitalizar] Explora el lado posterior del documento (los documentos se cargan mirando hacia abajo en el escáner).</p> <p>[Brillo del reverso] Ajusta automática o manualmente el brillo de la imagen. Cuando ajuste el brillo manualmente, podrá ajustarlo dentro de los límites 1 a 255.</p>



MEMORÁNDUM

- Cuando la casilla [Digitalizar] esté marcada, al abrir el cuadro de diálogo [Start Scanning], el ajuste “Feeder” se pondrá en [Simplex].
- Cuando la exploración sea realizada con la casilla [Digitalizar] marcada y el ajuste “Feeder” ajustado en [Duplex], al abrir el cuadro de diálogo [Opciones detalladas], la casilla [Digitalizar] se pondrá gris.
- Cuando la casilla de verificación [Digitalizar] esté gris, podrá devolverla a su estado normal haciendo clic en ella.

<Fijación de filtros>

Fije los filtros de procesamiento de imagen.

Ítem	Descripción
EA	Especifique el nivel de contraste dentro de la gama 1 a 13 haciendo clic en los botones ◀ y ▶. Por defecto es 7.
Intensidad	Fija el nivel para acentuar el contorno de las letras, y suavizar la granulosidad de imágenes tales como fotografías. Este ajuste puede configurarse en 5 pasos con los botones ◀ y ▶. Por defecto es 3.
Borrar puntos negros	Borra automáticamente los puntos negros aislados (individuales) sobre fondos blancos.
Borrar puntos blancos	Borra automáticamente los puntos blancos aislados (individuales) sobre fondos negros.
Borrar muescas	Borra automáticamente las partes (muescas) que salen de los contornos.
Línea complementaria	Une automáticamente las líneas apenas visibles o intermitentes que aparecen al explorar documentos que contiene líneas finas.
Usar Gamma usuario	Marque este ítem para usar los datos gamma leídos por el botón Gamma.
Negativo	Muestra la imagen explorada en negativo.



MEMORÁNDUM

- [EA] estará activado cuando [Modo] esté ajustado en [Blanco y negro].
- [Intensidad borde] estará activado en todos los modos.
- [Borrar puntos negros], [Borrar puntos blancos], [Borrar muescas] y [Línea complementaria] estarán activados cuando [Modo] esté ajustado en [Blanco y negro], [Blanco y negro-ED] o [Color-3Bit].

<Botones>

Ítem	Descripción
Aceptar	Activa las configuraciones y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.
Cancelar	Cancela cualquier configuración que haya cambiado y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.
Sello/ Suplemento	Abre el cuadro de diálogo Opciones de Sello/Suplemento (P. 69). Establece la función del impresor o la función del sello. La función de impresor imprime caracteres especificados en el documento explorado cuando está instalado el impresor opcional. La función del sello agrega caracteres especificados a las imágenes exploradas.
Barcode	Abre el cuadro de diálogo Opciones de Barcode (P. 74). Establece parámetros relacionados con la exploración de códigos de barras cuando está instalado el decodificador de código de barras opcional.
Gamma	Abre el cuadro de diálogo Opciones Gamma (P. 79). Carga y guarda en archivo datos gamma para expresar colores y tonos. Los datos gamma cargados están activados cuando está marcada la casilla Usar Gamma usuario.
Quitar color	Abre el cuadro de diálogo Opciones de quitar color (P. 82). Desactiva la exploración de colores específicos (los quita) en los documentos. Esta función solamente está disponible en el DR-5080C.
Teclas de función	Abre el cuadro de diálogo Opciones de las teclas de función (P. 83). Asigna funciones específicas a las teclas de función del escáner.
Por defecto	Haga clic en este botón para devolver todos los ajustes a sus valores por defecto.



MEMORÁNDUM

Quitar color es válido cuando el modo de exploración está ajustado en Blanco y negro, Blanco y negro-ED o GrayScale.

Opciones de Sello/Suplemento

Cuando tenga instalado el impresor opcional, podrá imprimir cualesquiera caracteres y contadores en el documento explorado. Cuando utilice la función de sello, podrá añadir cualesquiera caracteres o contadores a la imagen explorada. Las secuencias de caracteres a imprimir o añadir con la función de sello y las condiciones para su impresión se ajustan en el cuadro de diálogo Opciones de Sello/Suplemento.

Los ajustes hechos en este cuadro de diálogo se aplican a ambas funciones, la de sello y la de impresor. Por lo tanto, las secuencias de caracteres que se impriman con el impresor serán las mismas que las que se añadan con la función de sello.




MEMORÁNDUM

- La función de sello se puede usar aunque no esté instalado el impresor.
- Si ajusta la función de sello y explora un documento en el modo Duplex, los caracteres se imprimirán en la imagen del lado frontal (lado mirando hacia arriba cuando entra el documento) del documento.

Ítem	Descripción
Texto	<p>Introduzca los detalles a imprimir (agregar). Puede introducir hasta 32(*) de los siguientes caracteres:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Números (0 a 9) • Caracteres alfabéticos (mayúsculas y minúsculas) • Espacio (en blanco) • Los símbolos siguientes: ! " # \$ % & ' () * + - . / : ; < = > ? @ [\] ^ _ { } ~ ` <p>Los caracteres de arriba se imprimen (agregan) según se introduzcan.</p> <p>Además de estos caracteres, se pueden especificar como caracteres especiales los contadores, fecha, hora y flechas.</p>

	<p><Contador> Para imprimir (agregar) un contador, especifique un número en corchetes []. El número dentro de corchetes [] pasará a ser el número de inicio de contador, y el número de dígitos introducidos pasará a ser el número de dígitos del contador. Para fijar dos contadores, introduzca dos contadores delimitados por un "." (punto) en el formato "Contador 1.Contador 2". (Consulte el ejemplo de introducción mostrado abajo.) El momento en que el contador aumenta o disminuye se ajusta en "Configuración del primer y segundo contador" descrito más adelante. (Cuando sólo fije un contador, ajuste el momento en el ajuste "Primer contador".</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>[Introducción]</td> <td>[Resultado de Impresor/sello]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CANON[10001.00001]</td> <td>CANON 10001 00001</td> </tr> </table> <p><Hora> Para imprimir (agregar) la hora en que ha sido explorado el documento, introduzca "\TIME". La hora en el sistema de 24 horas se imprime (agrega) como ocho dígitos como sigue. (Ejemplo: 16:28:30)</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>[Introducción]</td> <td>[Resultado de Impresor/sello]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>\TIME</td> <td>16:28:30</td> </tr> </table> <p><Fecha> Para imprimir (agregar) la fecha en que ha sido explorado el documento, introduzca una de las combinaciones siguientes "\MDY", "\DMY" o "\YMD", siendo Y (año), M (mes) y D (día). La fecha del calendario occidental se imprime (agrega) como diez dígitos de la forma siguiente. El año, mes y el día están delimitados por una barra oblicua "/". (Ejemplo: 2001/9/3/4 (4 de marzo, 2001))</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>[Introducción]</td> <td>[Resultado del Impresor/sello]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>\YMD</td> <td>2001/03/04</td> </tr> </table>	[Introducción]	[Resultado de Impresor/sello]	CANON[10001.00001]	CANON 10001 00001	[Introducción]	[Resultado de Impresor/sello]	\TIME	16:28:30	[Introducción]	[Resultado del Impresor/sello]	\YMD	2001/03/04
[Introducción]	[Resultado de Impresor/sello]												
CANON[10001.00001]	CANON 10001 00001												
[Introducción]	[Resultado de Impresor/sello]												
\TIME	16:28:30												
[Introducción]	[Resultado del Impresor/sello]												
\YMD	2001/03/04												

	<p><Flechas> Para imprimir (agregar) una flecha, introduzca lo siguiente:</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>[Introducción]</td> <td>[Resultado del Impresor/sello]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>\u</td> <td>↑</td> </tr> <tr> <td>\d</td> <td>↓</td> </tr> <tr> <td>\l</td> <td>←</td> </tr> <tr> <td>\r</td> <td>→</td> </tr> </table> <p>(*) Para ser más precisos, se pueden imprimir (agregar) hasta 32 caracteres. Cuando se introduce un contador, fecha u hora, el número real de caracteres que se imprimen (agregan) es superior a 32 incluso aunque el número de caracteres introducidos no pase de 32. Si se da el caso, se visualizará un mensaje de error. En el ejemplo de abajo, el resultado del impresor/sello es de 32 caracteres, aunque se han introducido 25 caracteres.</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>[Introducción]</td> <td>[Resultado del impresor/sello]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CANON \YMD \TIME [000001]</td> <td>CANON 2001/03/04 16:28:30 000001</td> </tr> </table>	[Introducción]	[Resultado del Impresor/sello]	\u	↑	\d	↓	\l	←	\r	→	[Introducción]	[Resultado del impresor/sello]	CANON \YMD \TIME [000001]	CANON 2001/03/04 16:28:30 000001
[Introducción]	[Resultado del Impresor/sello]														
\u	↑														
\d	↓														
\l	←														
\r	→														
[Introducción]	[Resultado del impresor/sello]														
CANON \YMD \TIME [000001]	CANON 2001/03/04 16:28:30 000001														
Distancia horizontal (mm)	Especifique la posición en la imagen explorada, distancia en mm desde el borde izquierdo de la entrada de alimentación de papel en la dirección de alimentación del papel, para agregar caracteres y contadores cuando use la función de sello.														
Distancia vertical (mm)	Especifique la posición a imprimir o agregar caracteres como distancia en mm desde el borde superior del documento.														
Páginas	Selecciona la página en la que imprimir o agregar. [Páginas] Imprime o agrega en todas las páginas. [Separador] Imprime o agrega en la página siguiente indicada por la hoja de separación de tareas o tecla New File.														

<p>Tipo sello</p>	<p>Selecciona cómo se van a agregar las letras en los datos.</p> <p>[Negro en blanco] Imprime (agrega) caracteres negros sobre un fondo blanco. DR-5020/5080C</p> <p>[Blanco en negro] Imprime (agrega) caracteres blancos sobre un fondo negro. DR-5020/5080C</p> <p>[Negro en imagen] Imprime (agrega) caracteres negros en la imagen. </p>
<p>Orientación</p>	<p>Selecciona la rotación de fuentes a imprimir o agregar. Seleccione una de las siguientes:</p> <p>[Ninguna] (por defecto) Sin rotación</p> <p>[Horizontal] Rotación 90 grados a derecha</p> <p>[180 grados] Rotación 180 grados</p> <p>[270 grados] Rotación 270 grados a derecha</p>
<p>Tipo pequeño</p>	<p>Imprime (agrega) caracteres usando un tipo de fuente pequeño (8 x 7 puntos). (La fuente normal es de 12 x 12 puntos.) Cuando su usa la función de sello, el tamaño de los caracteres, como el de la imagen, cambia de acuerdo con la resolución a la que se explora el documento.</p> <p>Tamaño normal <i>CANON canon</i></p> <p>Fuente pequeña <i>CANON canon</i></p>
<p>Dcha.-izda</p>	<p>Imprime (agrega) caracteres de derecha a izquierda.</p>

<Configuración del primer y segundo contador>

En una secuencia de texto se pueden ajustar dos contadores. Ajuste los detalles del contador cuando haya fijado un contador.

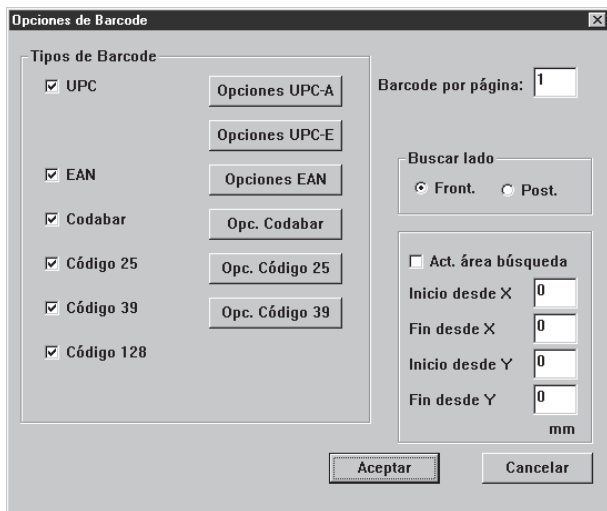
Ítem	Descripción
Activ. Incremento	Selecciona el momento para aumentar el contador de entre lo siguiente: [Separador] Cuando se inserta una hoja de separación de tareas o se guarda el archivo en un destino diferente. [Página] Cuando cambia la página [Nunca] Ninguno
Incremento	Seleccione el incremento del contador.
Vuelta inicio	Selecciona el momento para reponer el contador de entre lo siguiente: [Separador] Cuando se inserta una hoja de separación de tareas [Página] Cuando cambia la página [Nunca] Ninguno (por defecto)
Valor inicio	Establece el valor de inicio del contador (el primer valor después de reponer). Por defecto es 0.

<Botones>

Ítem	Descripción
Aceptar	Activa las configuraciones y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.
Cancelar	Cancela cualquier configuración que haya cambiado y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.

Opciones del decodificador de código de barras

Realice los ajustes para explorar códigos de barras. Estos ajustes sólo se activarán cuando esté instalado el decodificador de códigos de barras opcional. Estos ítems se ajustan en el cuadro de diálogo Opciones de Barcode.



MEMORÁNDUM

- Si alinea horizontalmente dos o más tipos de códigos de barras, podrá ocurrir un error de reconocimiento. Seleccione sólo un tipo de código de barras en el área de ajuste de código de barras.
- Los códigos de barras con códigos de sello no pueden detectarse al mismo tiempo que los códigos de barras sin códigos de sello. Cuando explore originales que contengan códigos de barras con código de sello y códigos de barras sin sello, asegúrese de ajustar la zona a detectar en el ajuste de área de código de barras antes de empezar a explorar.
- Cuando ajuste la exploración a 400 ppp y dúplex, solamente se detectarán los códigos de barras dentro del ancho A4.
- Cuando explore originales que contengan dos o más códigos de barras y sólo quiera detectar un tipo de código de barras específico, ajuste el área a detectar en el ajuste de área de código de barras.
Cuando ajuste esta área en el ajuste de área de código de barras, también se detectarán los códigos de barras de fuera de esta área de exploración.
- Si no conoce el tipo de código de barras, marque las casillas de todos los códigos de barras antes de explorar los originales para que se detecten automáticamente todos los tipos de códigos de barras y no se explore la suma control.
- Cuando se explora un código de barras, se crea automáticamente el archivo "Barcode.log" en la carpeta Scanning Utility 5000.

<Tipo de códigos de barras>

Ajuste el tipo de códigos de barras a leer con el decodificador de códigos de barras.

Ítem	Descripción
UPC	Haga clic aquí para leer códigos de barras UPC.
EAN	Haga clic aquí para leer códigos de barras EAN.
Codabar	Haga clic aquí para leer códigos de barra Codabar.
Código 25	Haga clic aquí para leer el Código 25.
Código 39	Haga clic aquí para leer el Código 39.
Código 128	Haga clic aquí para leer el código 128.

<Opciones de exploración>

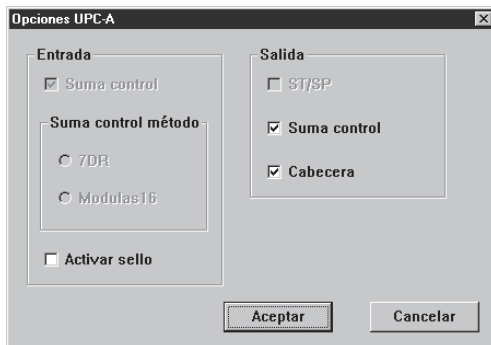
Ítem	Descripción
Códigos por página	Ajuste el número de códigos de barra a leer por página (1 a 4).
Buscar lado	Seleccione el lado a leer (Frontal o Posterior).
Área	Fija el área en la que se va a leer el código de barras. Marque la casilla Act. Área búsqueda e introduzca los valores.

<Botones>

Ítem	Descripción
Aceptar	Activa las configuraciones y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.
Cancelar	Cancela cualquier configuración que haya cambiado y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.

◆ Opciones del código de barras UPC-A

Ajuste los detalles del código de barras UPC-A.



[Entrada] – [Activar sello]

Haga clic aquí para leer códigos de sello. (El ajuste hecho aquí también se refleja en el código de barras UPC-E.)

[Salida] – [Suma control]

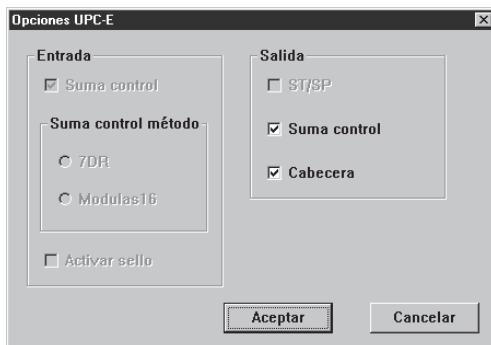
Haga clic aquí para activar la salida de código suma control.

[Salida] – [Cabecera]

Haga clic aquí para activar la salida de la cabecera en códigos UPC.

◆ Opciones del código de barras UPC-E

Ajuste los detalles del código de barras UPC-E.



[Salida] – [Suma control]

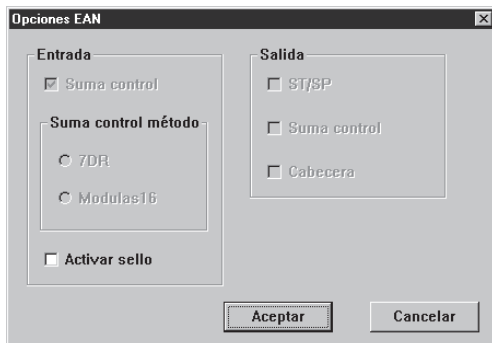
Haga clic aquí para activar la salida de código suma control.

[Salida] – [Cabecera]

Haga clic aquí para activar la salida de la cabecera en códigos UPC.

◆ Opciones del código de barras EAN

Ajuste los detalles del código de barras EAN.

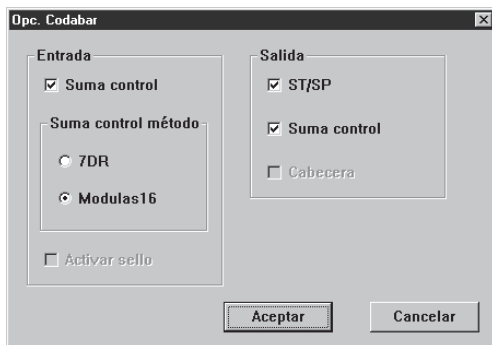


[Entrada] – [Activar sello]

Haga clic aquí para leer códigos de sello.

◆ Opciones del código de barras Codabar

Ajuste los detalles del código de barras Codabar.



[Entrada] – [Suma control]

Haga clic aquí para leer códigos de suma control.

[Entrada] – [7DR]

Haga clic aquí cuando la suma control calculada por Codabar lea un código de barras 7DR.

[Entrada] – [Modulas16]

Haga clic aquí cuando la suma control calculada por Codabar lea un código de barras Modulo 16.

[Salida] – [ST/SP]

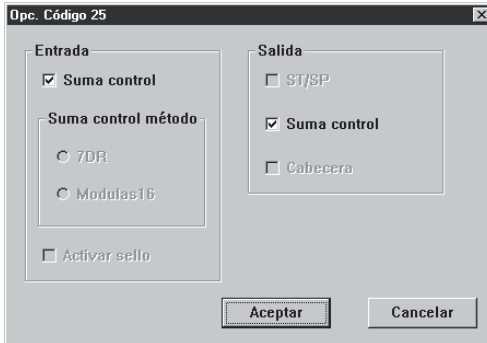
Haga clic aquí para activar la salida de códigos de inicio/parada.

[Salida] – [Suma control]

Cuando [Entrada] – [Suma control] esté marcado, podrá ajustar si quiere o no salida de código suma control.

◆ Opciones del código de barras 25

Ajuste los detalles del código de barras 25.



[Entrada] – [Suma control]

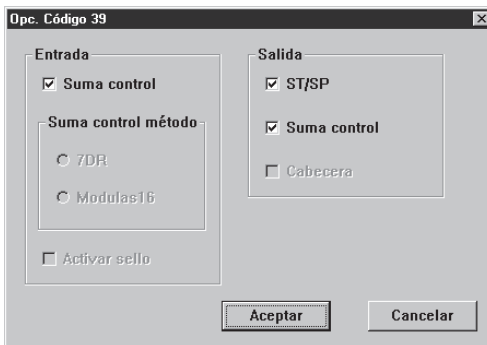
Haga clic aquí para leer códigos de suma control.

[Salida] – [Suma control]

Cuando [Entrada] – [Suma control] esté marcado, podrá ajustar si quiere o no salida de código suma control.

◆ Opciones del código de barras 39

Ajuste los detalles del código de barras 39.



[Entrada] – [Suma control]

Haga clic aquí para leer códigos de suma control.

[Salida] – [ST/SP]

Haga clic aquí para activar la salida de códigos de inicio/parada.

[Salida] – [Suma control]

Cuando [Entrada] – [Suma control] esté marcado, podrá ajustar si quiere o no salida de código suma control.

Configuración de curva Gamma

Configure la curva Gamma.



MEMORÁNDUM

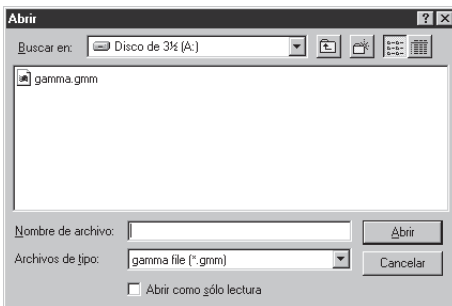
Para la “Configuración de curva Gamma” se usan los datos de curva gamma preparados por el usuario para ajustar los valores de salida (salida al ordenador) con respecto a los valores de entrada para 256 niveles de brillo en la imagen explorada. Las curvas gamma individuales se configuran para gris (banco y negro), rojo, verde y azul.

La curva gamma configurada aquí no se activará a menos que marque [Usar Gamma usuario] en la fijación de filtros (P. 67).

- 1 Prepare datos de curva gamma apropiados para la curva gamma. (Consulte “Preparación de datos de curva gamma” en P. 80.)
- 2 Seleccione el color para el que va a configurar la curva gamma.



- 3 Haga clic en [Descargar], y seleccione los datos de curva preparados.



4 Haga clic en [Abrir]. Esto configura la curva gamma y retorna al cuadro de diálogo Opciones detalladas.

5 Para configurar la curva gamma para otros colores, repita los pasos 1 a 4.

◆ Preparación de datos de curva gamma

Los datos de la curva gamma se guardan en un archivo de texto (*.gmm) compuesto de 258 líneas. Este archivo describe los valores de salida de cada uno de los 256 niveles de los valores de entrada.

Cerciórese de introducir un comentario en la 1ª línea de este archivo y “256” en la 2ª. Las líneas a partir de 3ª son para introducir cada valor de salida para cada valor de entrada. Ajuste “0”, “1”, “2”, etc. desde la 3ª línea en adelante, y “255” para el valor de entrada en la línea 258ª.

La introducción de valores pequeños para los datos de la curva gamma producirán una imagen oscura, y los valores altos producirán una imagen clara.

◆ Ejemplo

Normalmente, se preparan curvas gamma inclinadas hacia la derecha. Sin embargo, se puede preparar una curva gamma inclinada hacia la izquierda invirtiendo todos los valores de salida. Esto dará como resultado una imagen también invertida.

Datos de curva gamma

1ª línea: curva gamma

2ª línea: 256

3ª línea: 0

4ª línea: 1

5ª línea: 2

|

253ª línea: 250

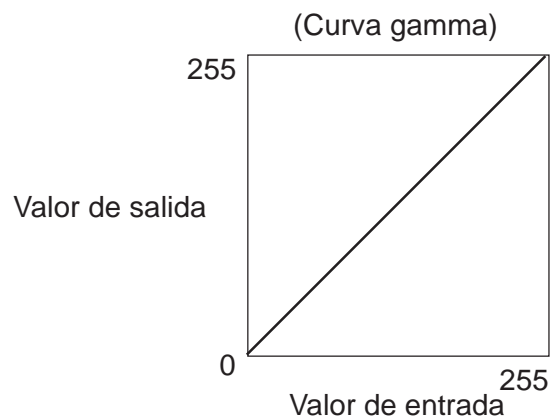
254ª línea: 251

255ª línea: 252

256ª línea: 253

257ª línea: 254

258ª línea: 255



Datos de curva gamma (invertida)

1ª línea: curva gamma lineal invertida

2ª línea: 256

3ª línea: 255

4ª línea: 254

5ª línea: 253

253ª línea: 5

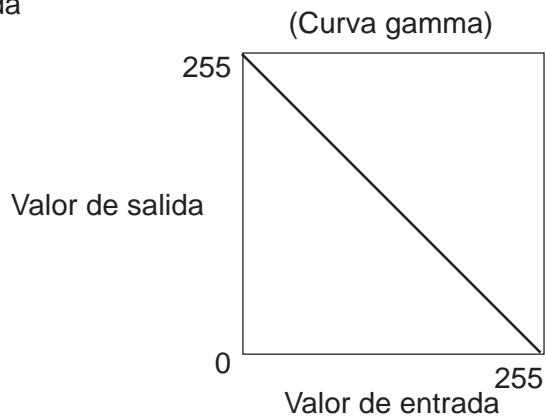
254ª línea: 4

255ª línea: 3

256ª línea: 2

257ª línea: 1

258ª línea: 0



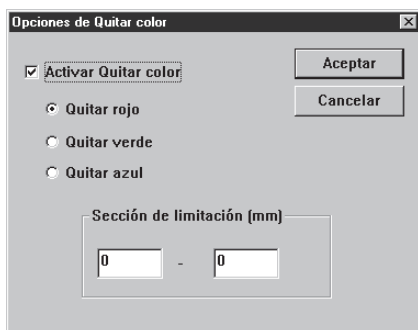
MEMORÁNDUM

La información sobre los datos de la curva gamma se mantiene en el interior del escáner, y no se borra aunque se apague el escáner. La información de la curva gamma no cambia hasta que se descargan los datos de otra curva gamma.

Opciones de Quitar color (sólo las soporta el DR-5080C)

Desactiva la exploración de zonas con colores específicos (los quita) rojo, azul o verde en los documentos.

Ajuste el quitar color en el cuadro de diálogo Opciones de quitar color.



Ítem	Descripción
Activar Quitar color (especificar color)	Haga clic aquí para activar la función de quitar color. [Quitar rojo] No se exploran las partes rojas del documento. [Quitar verde] No se exploran las partes verdes del documento. [Quitar azul] No se exploran las partes azules del documento.
Sección de limitación (mm)	Puede especificar la parte en la que quiere quitar color. Especifique la posición de inicio en el lado izquierdo y la posición final en el lado derecho. Especifique cada una de estas posiciones como la distancia en mm desde el borde superior del papel.

<Botones>

Ítem	Descripción
Aceptar	Activa las configuraciones y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.
Cancelar	Cancela cualquier configuración que haya cambiado y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.

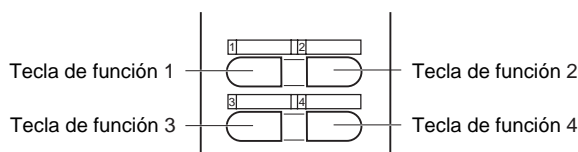
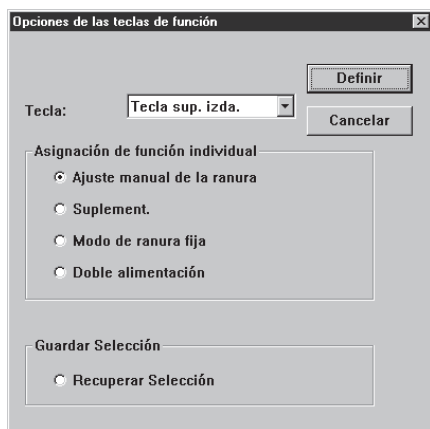


MEMORÁNDUM

- Quitar color es válido cuando el modo de exploración está ajustado en Blanco y negro, Blanco y negro-ED o GrayScale.
- Cuando esté establecida la [Sección de limitación], algunas veces aparecerán líneas en los contornos de la sección de limitación de la página explorada.

Opciones de las teclas de función

A las teclas de función del escáner se les puede asignar funciones específicas. Las funciones se asignan en el cuadro de diálogo Opciones de las teclas de función.



Ítem	Descripción
N.º de tecla	Seleccione en el menú desplegable la tecla a la que quiera asignar una función.
Asignación de función individual	<p>Puede asignar las cuatro funciones siguientes a las teclas de función. Para detalles sobre estas funciones y sus ajustes por defecto, consulte “Configuración de las teclas de función” (P.60) de las instrucciones del DR-5020/5080C por separado.</p> <p>[Ajuste manual de la ranura] Ajuste manualmente el grosor del papel.</p> <p>[Suplemento] Seleccione si quiere o no usar el impresor cuando está instalado el impresor opcional.</p> <p>[Modo de ranura fija] Fija el grosor de papel a un valor determinado.</p> <p>[Doble alimentación] Detecta automáticamente doble alimentación. “Doble alimentación” será detectada cuando entren juntas dos o más hojas del documento o cuando parte de una hoja solape a otra.</p>
Guardar Selección	<p>También puede asignar los ajustes de escáner además de la Asignación de función individual de arriba.</p> <p>[Recuperar Selección] Al seleccionar esta función se asignan a las teclas de función los ajustes de escáner ajustados cuando se hace clic en [Definir].</p>

<Botones>

Ítem	Descripción
Definir	Activa las configuraciones y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.
Cancelar	Cancela cualquier configuración que haya cambiado y cierra el cuadro de diálogo.

Capítulo 3

Solución de problemas

Este capítulo describe las causas de los problemas que pueden ocurrir y cómo remediar el problema.

3.1 Cuando se visualice un mensaje de error	86
3.2 Cuando la imagen explorada no sea normal	88



3.1

Cuando se visualice un mensaje de error

Si el documento no se puede explorar debidamente podrán aparecer mensajes de error.

Compruebe el tipo de error de acuerdo con el código y remédíelo de la forma siguiente.

Mensaje **JAM occured. Remove the paper.**

Remedio Ha ocurrido atasco de papel en el escáner. Retire el papel atascado. Para más detalles, consulte las Instrucciones del DR-5020/5080C por separado.

Mensaje **Cover is opened. Close the cover.**

Remedio La cubierta del escáner (unidad superior) está abierta. Cierre la cubierta.

Mensaje **Scanner is not found. Check the cable.**

Remedio 1 El ordenador no puede reconocer el escáner. Asegúrese de que el ordenador y el escáner están correctamente conectados con un cable.

Remedio 2 Este mensaje podrá visualizarse con el ordenador reconociendo el escáner. En este caso, una causa probable es que la tarjeta SCSI no es apta para el ordenador en la que está instalada. Este mensaje de error algunas veces dejará de aparecer desactivando la transferencia asincronizada en el modo Usuario del escáner. Si esto no resuelve el problema, póngase en contacto con el fabricante del ordenador o de la tarjeta SCSI.

Mensaje **El parámetro no es válido. Cambie los parámetros de nuevo. Parameter is not valid. Change the parameters.**

Remedio Se ha ajustado un valor incorrecto en las condiciones de exploración en el cuadro de diálogo Opciones del escáner. Cambie el ajuste por un valor correcto.

Mensaje **Scanner reset detected. Try again.**

Remedio Siga las instrucciones del mensaje en pantalla para conectar y desconectar la alimentación otra vez.

Mensaje	No page was found. Set the paper and try again.
Remedio	El documento no está cargado en el escáner. Cargue el documento, e intente explorarlo otra vez.
Mensaje	Scanner is busy. Check if it is CountOnly mode.
Remedio	El escáner puede que esté actualmente en el modo Count Only (modo para contar el número de hojas exploradas del documento) (P. 56). Cancele el modo Count Only y pruebe otra vez.
Mensaje	Scanner is busy. Wait for a while and try again.
Remedio	El escáner está procesando datos ahora, y no puede explorar nuevos documentos. Pruebe otra vez más tarde.
Mensaje	Verify count error occured. Try again.
Remedio	El número de hojas de documento ajustadas en la exploración con verificación (P. 54) no concuerda con el número de hojas exploradas realmente. Si se visualiza "U01" en el visor de contador, cuente el número de hojas del documento otra vez. Si se visualiza "U02", asegúrese de que se han explorado todas las hojas del documento.
Mensaje	Parameter is not valid. Change the parameters again.
Remedio	El ajuste de la condición de exploración no es apropiado. Cambie el ajuste, y pruebe explorando otra vez.
Mensaje	File access error occured. Check if another app. use this file or write pretected.
Remedio	El archivo de imagen que ha intentado abrir está siendo usado por otra aplicación, y no puede abrirse. Cierre el archivo en la otra aplicación. O, el archivo de imagen que ha intentado guardar está protegido contra la escritura. Este archivo no se puede reemplazar. Guarde el archivo con otro nombre.
Mensaje	File already exists, do you wish to over-write?
Remedio	El nombre de archivo con el que está intentando guardar la imagen explorada ya existe. Para reemplazarlo, haga clic en [Sí]. Para cancelar el reemplazo, haga clic en [No] y guárdelo con un nombre diferente.
Mensaje	Alimentación simultánea de dos papeles. Por favor, compruebe el documento y la imagen escaneada y vuelva a explorar el documento.
Remedio	Documento torcido. Retire el documento y vuélvalo a escanear. Cuando retire el documento sáquelo suavemente teniendo cuidado de no rasgarlo.
Mensaje	Documento torcido. Retire el documento y vuélvalo a escanear.
Remedio	Alimentación simultánea de dos papeles. Por favor, compruebe el documento y la imagen escaneada y vuelva a explorar el documento. Este error sucede si escanea una pila de documentos que contengan diferentes tamaños y grosor del papel. Escanee documentos que tengan el mismo tamaño y grosor del papel, o ajuste la detección de la alimentación simultánea de dos papeles a OFF.

3.2

Cuando la imagen explorada no sea normal

Si hay algún problema en la hoja explorada (la imagen no es nítida o aparecen bandas en la imagen), podrá deberse a una de las causas siguientes. Compruebe lo siguiente y tome la medida apropiada.

- **Los vidrios de exploración y los rodillos del escáner están sucios.**

Si los vidrios de exploración y los rodillos están sucios, la suciedad aparecerá en la imagen explorada.

→ Limpie los vidrios de exploración y los rodillos. Para detalles, consulte el Capítulo 5 “Limpieza diaria” (P. 83) en las Instrucciones del DR-5020/5080C por separado.

- **Las condiciones de exploración no son apropiadas.**

Cuando el ajuste de las condiciones de exploración no sean apropiadas, la imagen explorada no será nítida o estará oscurecida.

→ Compruebe el brillo y otros ajustes del escáner.

Si la imagen explorada está borrosa o el documento no se explora en absoluto, una de las causas probables será que el brillo está ajustado muy alto.

Si la imagen explorada está oscurecida, una de las causas probables será que el brillo está muy bajo.

- **La Scanning Utility 5000 no funciona correctamente.**

Si el documento no se puede explorar correctamente aunque se ajusten las condiciones de exploración, una de las causas probables será que la Scanning Utility 5000 no está funcionando correctamente.

→ Reinstale la Scanning Utility 5000. Consulte “1.2 Instalación de la Scanning Utility 5000” (P. 7).

- **Otras causas**

Si los remedios de arriba no resuelven el problema, póngase en contacto con el departamento de servicio Canon.

Índice alfabético

- A -

About	16, 17
Activ. Incremento	73
Activar Quitar color	82
Actual pixel (Print Format)	14, 30
Actual size (Print Format)	14, 30
Ajuste de las condiciones básicas para la exploración	22
Ajuste manual de la ranura	64, 83
Almacenamiento de la imagen explorada	28
Asignación de función individual	83
Auto (Feeding Option)	34, 40, 66

- B -

Barcode	64
Barra de estado	13
Barra de herramientas	13, 16
Barra de menú	13, 14
Best Fit	15, 16
BMP	28
Borrar muescas	67
Borrar puntos blancos	67
Borrar puntos negros	67
Brillo	22, 62
Brillo del reverso	66

- C -

Cancel Scan	15
Carga y exploración de un documento	23
CD-ROM de instalación	7
Codabar	77
Code 25	78
Code 39	78
Code 128	75
Códigos por página	75
Configuración básica	61
Confirmación de la imagen explorada	27
Contraste	22, 62
Cuadro de diálogo Opciones	

detalladas	63
Cuando la imagen explorada no sea normal	88

- D -

Dcha.-izda	72
Desinstalación de la Scanning Utility 5000	11
Detectar tamaño	63
Digitalización rápida	52, 63
Digitalizar	66
Distancia horizontal	71
Distancia vertical	71
Doble alimentación	65, 83

- E -

EA	67
EAN	77
Esquema de la exploración	20
Estampador	64
Exploración Duplex	46

- F -

Fit to paper (Print Format)	14, 30
Fit to width	15, 16
Formatos para guardar imágenes ..	28

- G -

Gurdar Selección	83
------------------------	----

- H -

Hojas de control	49, 66
Hojas de control del escáner	49

- I -

Impresión de la imagen explorada ..	30
Incremento	73
Inicio	12
Instalación de la Scanning Utility 5000	7
Intensidad	67

- J -

JBIG	28
JPEG	28

- L -

Línea com-plementaria	67
-----------------------------	----

- M -

Margen	65
Mensaje de error	86
Menú File	14
Menú Help	16
Menú Page	16
Menú View	15
Método alimentación	66
Modo	22, 61
Modo de alimentación	33, 66
Modo Manual	34, 43, 66
Modo semiautomático	34, 37, 66

- N -

N.º de tecla	83
Negativo	67
Next page	16, 17
Nuevo archivo autom	64

- O -

Opciones de las teclas de función ..	83
Opciones de Quitar color	82
Opciones de Sello/Suplemento	69
Opciones del decodificador de código de barras	74
Opciones del reverso	66
Open	14, 16
Orientación	72

- P -

Páginas	71
Para abrir un archivo de imagen	32
Preparación del escáner y ordenador	21
Prev. page	16, 17
Print	14, 16
Print Format	14, 30
Printer setting	14
Procedimiento de exploración	21

- R -

Recuperar Selección	83
Remoto	23, 33, 66
Requisitos del sistema	6
Resolución	22, 61
Rotate Left	15, 17
Rotate Right	15, 17

- S -

Salida	12, 15
Save Page As	14, 16, 29
Scan batch to file	14, 17, 23
Scan batch to printer	14
Scan page	14, 26
Scanner setting	14, 17, 22, 60
Sección de limitación	82
Select Scanner	15
Sello	64
Solución de problemas	85
Start Value	73
Suplement	64

- T -

Tamaño página	22, 62
Texto (Imprinter/Addon)	69
TIFF	28
Tipo sello	72

- U -

UPC	76
Usar Gamma usuario	67

- V -

Valor inicio	72
Verificar digitalización	54, 64
View Gray	15
Vuelta inicio	73

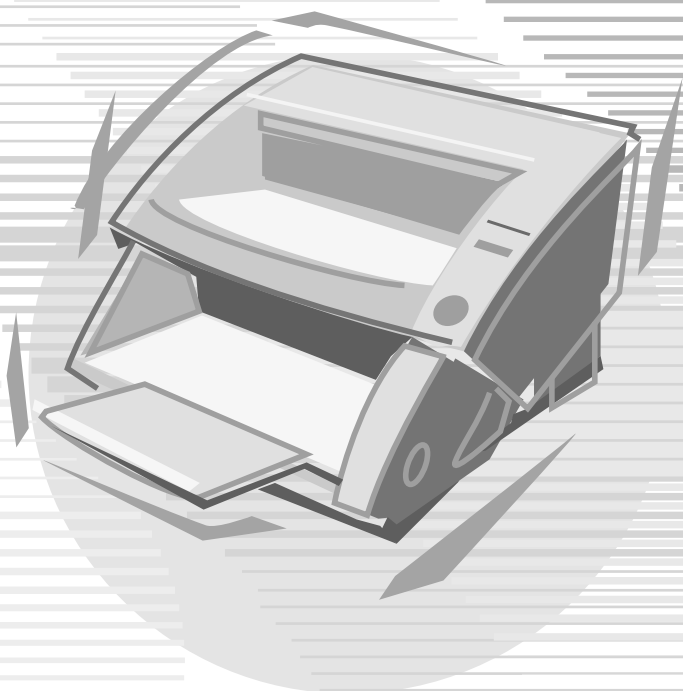
- Z -

Zoom Down	15, 16
Zoom Up	15, 16

Scanning Utility 5000

Intruzioni

Assicurarsi di leggere attentamente queste Istruzioni prima di usare l'unità e conservare questo manuale in un luogo sicuro dopo l'uso.



AVVISO

- ① Copyright© 1999 di CANON ELECTRONICS INC. Tutti i diritti riservati. Nessuna parte di questa pubblicazione può essere riprodotta, trasmessa, trascritta, memorizzata in sistemi di recupero o tradotta in qualsiasi lingua o linguaggio informatico in qualsiasi forma e con qualsiasi mezzo, elettronico, meccanico, magnetico, ottico, chimico, manuale o altrimenti, senza previo permesso di CANON ELECTRONICS INC.
- ② Il contenuto di questo manuale è soggetto a modifiche senza preavviso.
- ③ Si è fatto il possibile per assicurare l'accuratezza delle informazioni contenute in questo manuale. Tuttavia, Canon Electronics Inc. e le consociate indicate sul retro copertina non si assumono alcuna responsabilità per alcun errore o le sue conseguenze.
- ④ Non ci assumiamo alcuna responsabilità per danni derivanti dalle operazioni nonostante la voce ③.

Marchi e marchi registrati

- Microsoft Windows® e Microsoft Windows NT® sono marchi registrati di Microsoft Corporation negli Stati Uniti e in altri paesi.
- ISIS® è un marchio registrato di Pixel Translation A Division of ActionPoint Inc.
- Adaptec è un marchio registrato di ADAPTEC Inc.
- IBM e PC/AT sono marchi registrati di International Business Machines Corporation.
- Pentium® è un marchio registrato di Intel Corporation U.S.A.
- In questo manuale si fa riferimento a nomi di prodotto esclusivamente a scopo d'identificazione e teniamo a precisare che potrebbero essere marchi e/o marchi.

INTRODUZIONE

Grazie per avere acquistato Document Scanner DR-5020/5080C Canon. In tutto vengono forniti tre manuali con i modelli DR-5020/5080C: le Istruzioni per Scanning Utility 5000 (questo manuale), le Istruzioni per DR-5020/5080C e le Istruzioni per il driver ISIS/TWAIN.

Questo manuale descrive il funzionamento dell'applicazione "Scanning Utility 5000" usando i modelli DR-5020/5080C. Leggere questo manuale e le Istruzioni per DR-5020/5080C prima dell'uso e assicurarsi che le funzioni dei modelli DR-5020/5080C vengano effettivamente utilizzate. Siccome l'applicazione acclusa ai modelli DR-5020/5080C utilizza un driver esclusivo, driver per scanner come ISIS oppure TWAIN non sono necessari.

Inoltre, dopo la lettura, riporre questo manuale in luogo sicuro.

Quanto segue descrive il contenuto di ciascuno di questi manuali.

Istruzioni per Scanning Utility 5000 (questo manuale)

Questo manuale spiega come funziona l'applicazione "Scanning Utility 5000" fornita insieme allo scanner.

Istruzioni per il DR-5020/5080C

Questo manuale spiega come collegare lo scanner, come caricare documenti, come rimuovere carta inceppata e altre informazioni su come usare lo scanner. Leggere questo manuale prima di fare funzionare i modelli DR-5020/5080C.

Istruzioni per il driver ISIS/TWAIN

Questo manuale descrive il funzionamento dello scanner con un driver ISIS o con un'applicazione compatibile con il driver TWAIN.

■ **Attenzione**

Quando lo scanner viene utilizzato per eseguire copie, tenere conto di quanto segue:

- La riproduzione di monete, altre forme di valute o titoli negoziabili è reato e viene perseguita in termini di legge.
- La riproduzione di certificati ufficiali, licenze, biglietti di viaggio, documenti protetti da copyright o privati e simili, anche costituisce reato e viene perseguito in termini di legge.
- Quando la copia di un'immagine viene utilizzata per altri scopi che non sia quello personale o l'uso entro i confini della propria abitazione, richiedere il permesso del proprietario del copyright.

CONVENZIONI

In questo manuale vengono utilizzati i seguenti simboli e indicazioni. Prima di cominciare a leggere il manuale, leggere quanto segue e apprenderne il significato.



Leggere attentamente per evitare rischi di morte o gravi lesioni personali.



Leggere attentamente per evitare danni all'apparecchio o perdite di dati indispensabili.



I riferimenti indicano dove reperire informazioni utili in questo manuale. Il numero racchiuso tra parentesi indica il numero della pagina che contiene ulteriori informazioni circa la frase o il paragrafo precedente.



Fornisce consigli per l'esecuzione delle operazioni e su come risolvere piccoli problemi.

■ Questa unità

In questo manuale DR-5020 e DR-5080C vengono indicati collettivamente come lo “scanner”. Quando occorre una descrizione specifica per il singolo tipo di macchina, nel manuale viene specificato lo scanner DR-5020 o DR-5080C.

INDICE

INTRODUZIONE	1
CONVENZIONI	2

Capitolo 1 Installazione e funzioni principali della Scanning Utility 5000 **5**

1.1 Requisiti di sistema	6
1.2 Installazione della Scanning Utility 5000	7
Prima di cominciare	7
Installazione della Scanning Utility 5000	8
Disinstallare la Scanning Utility 5000	11
1.3 Operazioni principali di Scanning Utility 5000	12
Apertura e chiusura	12
◆ Apertura	12
◆ Chiusura	12
Spiegazione della schermata Scanning Utility 5000	13
◆ Barra dei menu	14
◆ Barra degli strumenti	16

Capitolo 2 Scansione di un documento **19**

2.1 Diagramma di scansione	20
2.2 Procedura di scansione	21
Preparazione dello scanner e del computer	21
Impostazione delle condizioni di scansione principali	22
Caricamento e scansione del documento	23
◆ Digitalizzare due o più pagine	23
◆ Scansione di una sola pagina e conferma dell'immagine digitalizzata	26
Controllo dell'immagine digitalizzata	27
Salvataggio dell'immagine digitalizzata	28
◆ Formati dei file d'immagine	28
◆ Salvataggio delle immagini digitalizzate in un file (scansione di una sola pagina)	29
Stampa dell'immagine digitalizzata	30
Apertura dei file d'immagine	32
2.3 Varie modalità di scansione	33

Scansione in base alla modalità di alimentazione	33
◆ Selezione della modalità di alimentazione	35
◆ Scansione in modalità semi auto	37
◆ Scansione in modalità auto	40
◆ Scansione in modalità manuale	43
Scansione Duplex	46
Stampa diretta delle immagini digitalizzate	47
Uso dei Fogli funzione	48
◆ Foglio di controllo dello scanner	49
◆ Foglio di divisione lavoro	51
Scansione veloce	52
Scansione di verifica	54
◆ Impostazione della verifica di scansione	54
◆ Immissione del numero di pagine di un documento	56
◆ Digitalizzare documenti	58
2.4 Impostazione delle condizioni di scansione	60
Impostazioni fondamentali	61
Impostazioni dettagliate	63
Impostazioni di stampa/timbro	69
Impostazioni del decodificatore di codici a barre	74
Impostazioni Curva Gamma	79
Impostazioni di Elimina colore (supportato soltanto da DR-5080C)	82
Impostazioni dei tasti di funzione	83

Capitolo 3 Guida e rimedi in caso di problemi di funzionamento 85

3.1 Quando appare un messaggio d'errore 86

3.2 Quando l'immagine digitalizzata non è normale 88

INDICE ANALITICO 89

Capitolo 1

Installazione e funzioni principali della Scanning Utility 5000

Questo capitolo descrive come installare la Scanning Utility 5000 e le sue funzioni principali.

1.1	Requisiti di sistema	6
1.2	Installazione della Scanning Utility 5000	7
1.3	Operazioni principali di Scanning Utility 5000	12

1.1

Requisiti di sistema

Affinché le Scanning Utility 5000 funzioni correttamente occorrono i seguenti hardware e sistema operativo.

- Un computer IBM PC/AT o compatibile con CPU Pentium 133 MHz o superiore e almeno 64 MB di memoria
 - SO: Microsoft Windows® 95/98/Me or Microsoft Windows NT® 4.0 Workstation/Windows 2000 Professional
 - Almeno 100 MB di spazio libero sull'hard disk (almeno 5 MB dopo l'installazione)
- Monitor compatibile SVGA
- Tastiera, mouse e stampante compatibili Windows Microsoft, Unità CD-ROM (velocità 4x o superiore)
- Una scheda SCSI il cui funzionamento sia stato certificato
E' stato certificato il funzionamento delle seguenti schede SCSI:
Adaptec Serie AHA-1540 e serie AHA-2940
- Cavo SCSI compatibile con SCSI-2



RIFERIMENTO

- La Scanning Utility 5000 utilizza un driver di scanner dedicato. I driver di scanner quali il driver ISIS e il driver TWAIN non sono richiesti.
- Quando si installa le Scanning Utility 5000, viene creata un'altra cartella "ceiscan" sotto la cartella Windows in aggiunta alla cartella di destinazione dell'installazione e il file "cei*.dll" viene copiato in \Windows\system.
Notare che se questi file vengono modificati le Scanning Utility 5000 non funziona più correttamente.
- I nomi delle cartelle \Windows e \Windows\System variano a seconda della versione di Windows utilizzata. Nelle spiegazione che seguono, sostituire i nomi delle cartelle \Windows e \Windows\System con i nomi delle cartelle della versione di Windows che si sta utilizzando.

1.2

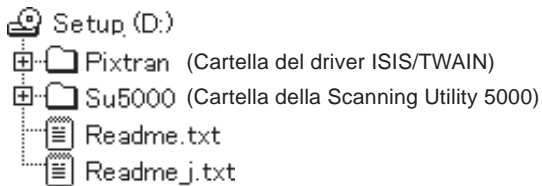
Installazione della Scanning Utility 5000

Questa sezione descrive come installare le Scanning Utility 5000 e la procedura di installazione.

Prima di cominciare

Prima di procedere all'installazione delle Scanning Utility 5000 controllare le seguenti voci.

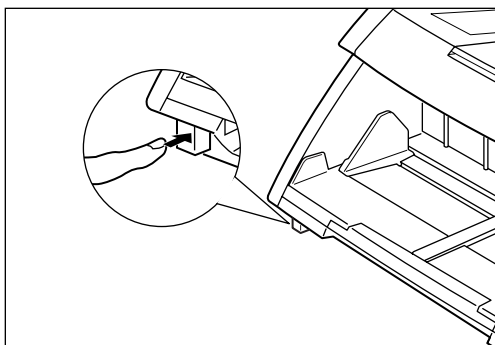
- **Assicurarsi che il Sistema Operativo in funzione sul computer su cui devono essere installate le Scanning Utility 5000 sia Microsoft Windows® 95/98/Me oppure Microsoft Windows NT® Workstation/Windows 2000 Professional.**
- **Collegamento al computer**
Per maggiori dettagli su come collegare lo scanner fare riferimento alle Istruzioni per DR-5020/5080C fornite a parte.
- **CD-ROM di installazione**
Il CD-ROM di installazione comprende gli elementi seguenti.
Prima di installare Scanning Utility 5000, si raccomanda di leggere il file "Readme.txt".
Dopo aver installato Scanning Utility 5000, conservare il CD-ROM di installazione in un luogo sicuro.



Installazione della Scanning Utility 5000

Quanto segue è la descrizione della procedura di installazione sul computer delle Scanning Utility 5000.

1 Accendere lo scanner.



2 Accendere il computer.

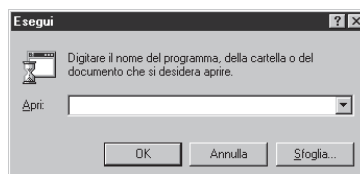
⇒ Windows si avvia.

3 Inserire il disco di installazione nel lettore di CD-ROM.

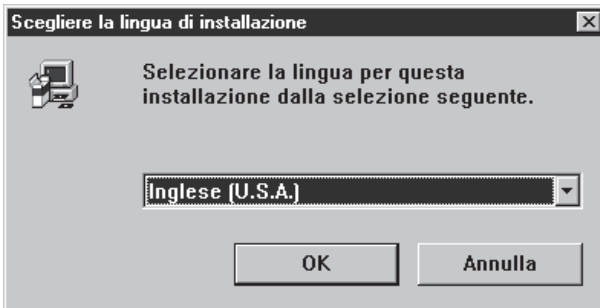
4 Cliccare il tasto [Avvio] e selezionare Esegui.

La schermata che appare varia a seconda dell'applicazione in uso.

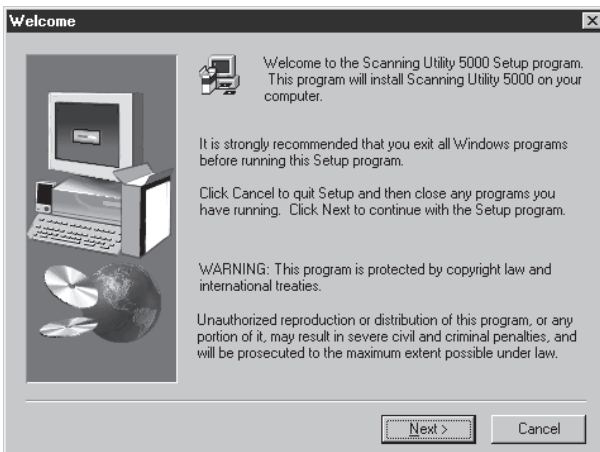
[Windows95]



- 5** In Esegui, digitare “D:\su5000\setup.exe” e cliccare [OK].
In queste istruzioni il lettore di CD-ROM viene indicato con D.
⇒ Appare la finestra di dialogo Scelta della Lingua di Impostazione.

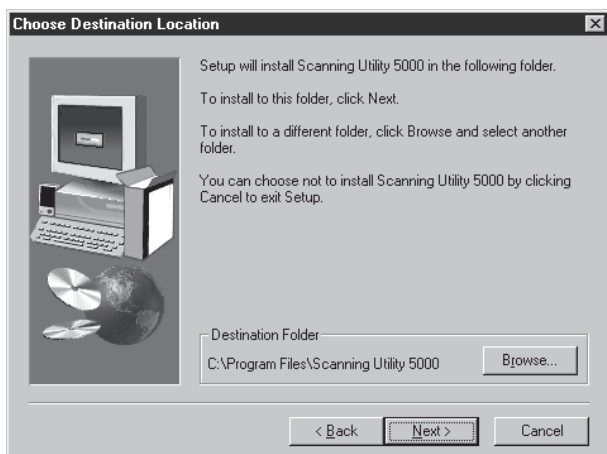


- 6** Selezionare Inglese e cliccare [OK].
⇒ Appare la finestra di dialogo Welcome (Benvenuti).



7 Cliccare [Next].

⇒ Appare la finestra di dialogo Choose Destination Location (Seleziona directory di destinazione).

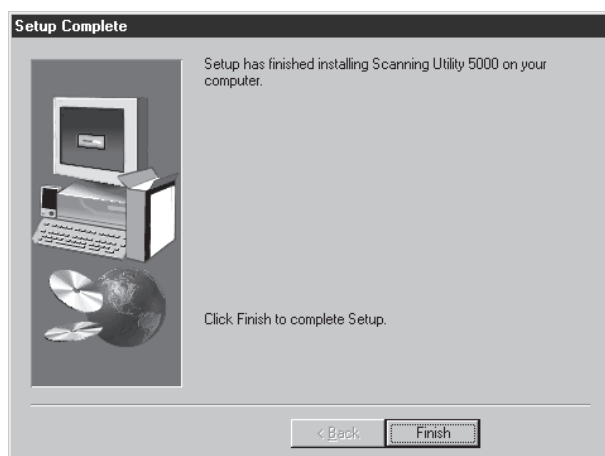


8 Controllare la directory di installazione visualizzata e quindi cliccare [Next].

Per cambiare la directory di installazione, cliccare [Browse], quindi scegliere la nuova directory di installazione.

⇒ L'installazione ha inizio.

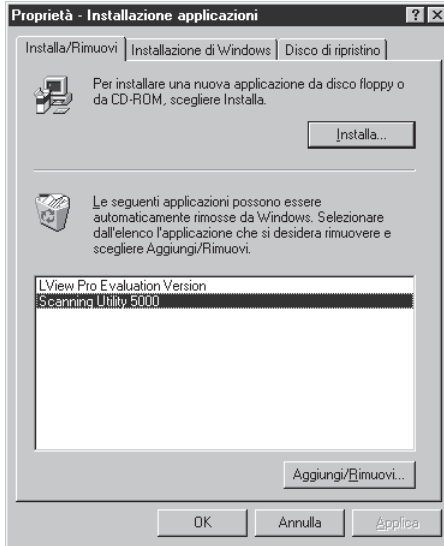
9 Questo fa continuare l'installazione. Dopo un po', appare la finestra di dialogo Setup Complete (Installazione Completata).



10 Cliccare [Finish] per completare l'installazione.

Disinstallare la Scanning Utility 5000

Per disinstallare le Scanning Utility 5000, nel pannello di controllo aprire “Installazione applicazioni”, selezionare [Scanning Utility 5000] e cliccare [Aggiungi/Rimuovi].



1.3

Operazioni principali di Scanning Utility 5000

Questo paragrafo descrive come aprire e chiudere le Scanning Utility 5000 e le finestre delle Scanning Utility 5000.

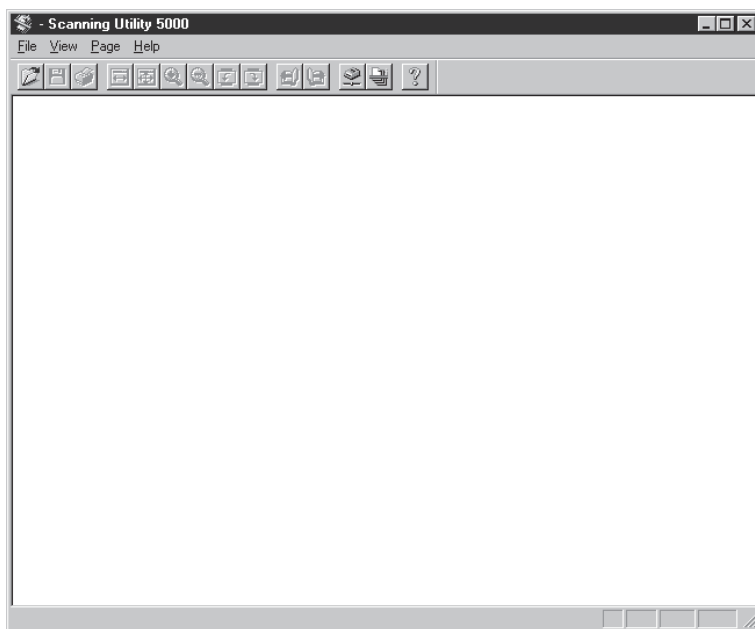
Apertura e chiusura

Aprire o chiudere Scanning Utility 5000.

◆ Apertura

- 1 **Cliccare il pulsante [Avvio] e selezionare [Programmi] - [Scanning Utility 5000].**

➡ Si apre Scanning Utility 5000.



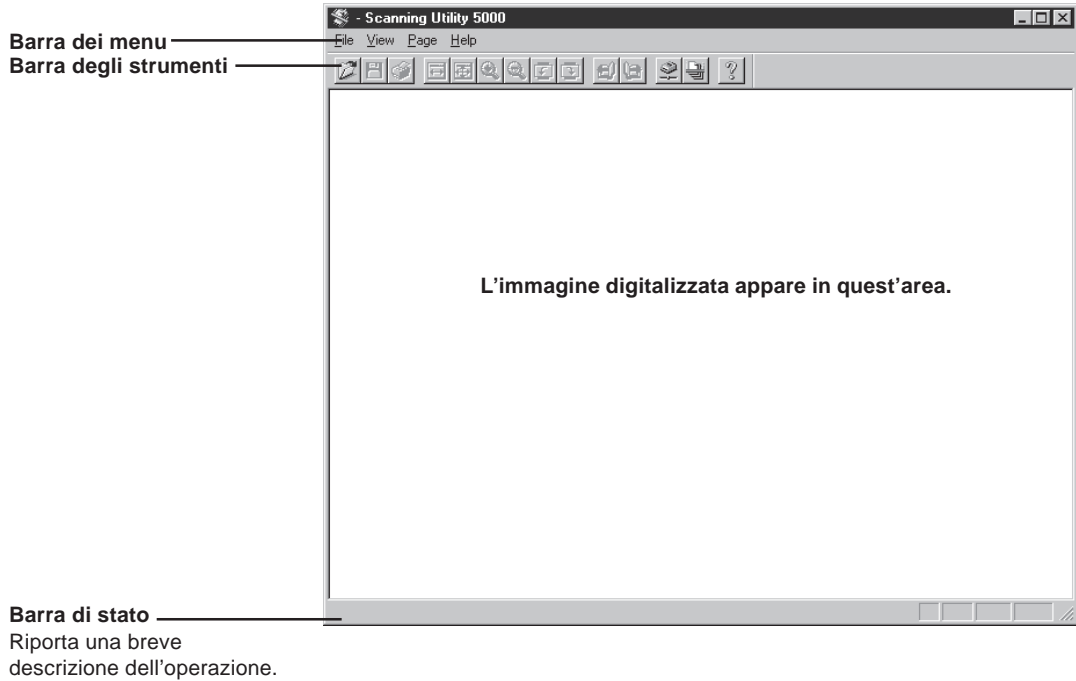
◆ Chiusura

- 1 **Nella finestra di Scanning Utility 5000, selezionare [File] - [Exit].**

➡ Si può uscire da Scanning Utility 5000.

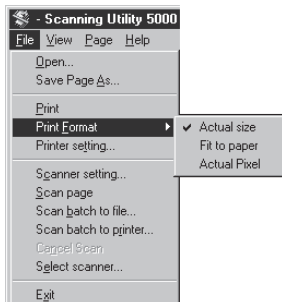
Spiegazione della schermata Scanning Utility 5000

Questa sezione descrive le funzioni della barra dei menu e della barra degli strumenti della schermata Scanning Utility 5000.



◆ Barra dei menu

Menu File



Open

Apri un'immagine digitalizzata salvata in file.

Save Page As...

Dopo che una pagina è stata digitalizzata salva la pagina correntemente visualizzata con un nome diverso.

Print

Stampa l'immagine.

Print Format

Actual size: Stampa con lo stesso formato della carta indipendentemente dalla carta o dalla risoluzione con la quale l'immagine viene digitalizzata.

Fit to paper: Stampa l'immagine adattandola al formato della carta quando il documento è più grande della carta.

Actual pixel: Stampa ogni singolo punto nell'immagine digitalizzata utilizzando un punto di stampa sulla stampante. Per questa ragione, il formato di stampa diventa più piccolo quando l'immagine digitalizzata viene stampata su una stampante con risoluzione a punti piccoli.

Printer Setting

Imposta la stampante. Il nome della stampante correntemente impostata in Stampante predefinita viene visualizzato come nome della stampante.

Scanner setting...

Imposta lo scanner. Per i dettagli sulle impostazioni, vedere "2.4 Impostazione delle condizioni di scansione" (P. 60).

Scan page

Digitalizza solo una pagina.

Scan batch to file...

Digitalizza e salva il documento in un determinato file.

Scan batch to printer...

Digitalizza e stampa il documento sulla stampante correntemente impostata in Stampante predefinita.

Cancel Scan

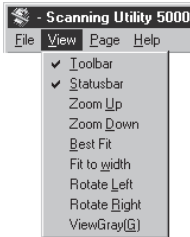
Annulla l'operazione di scansione.

Select Scanner

Seleziona lo scanner da utilizzare.

Exit

Chiudere Scanning Utility 5000.

Menu View**Toolbar**

Si può scegliere se visualizzare o meno la barra degli strumenti. Quando la voce viene selezionata, appare la barra degli strumenti. Quando non viene selezionata, la barra degli strumenti non viene visualizzata.

Ogni volta che la voce del menu viene cliccata la barra appare o scompare.

Statusbar

Si può scegliere se visualizzare o meno la barra di stato. Quando la voce viene selezionata, appare la barra di stato. Quando non viene selezionata, la barra di stato non viene visualizzata.

Ogni volta che la voce del menu viene cliccata la barra appare o scompare.

Zoom Up

Ogni volta che questo pulsante viene cliccato l'immagine sullo schermo viene ingrandita. Le immagini non possono essere ingrandite oltre il 100% (grandezza reale).

Zoom Down

Ogni volta che questo pulsante viene cliccato la grandezza dell'immagine sullo schermo viene ridotta.

Best Fit

Visualizza tutta l'immagine nella finestra.

Fit to width

Visualizza l'immagine adattandone la larghezza alla larghezza della finestra.

Rotate Left

Ruota l'immagine di 90° a sinistra (in senso antiorario).

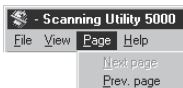
Rotate Right

Ruota l'immagine di 90° a destra (in senso orario).

View Gray

Visualizza immagini in bianco e nero in toni di grigio.

Menu Page



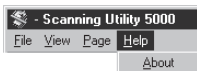
Next page

Visualizza l'immagine della pagina successiva.

Prev. page

Visualizza l'immagine della pagina precedente.

Menu Help



About

Riporta le informazioni sulla versione e il copyright di Scanning Utility 5000.

◆ Barra degli strumenti



Apri un'immagine digitalizzata salvata in un file.



Dopo che una pagina è stata digitalizzata, salva la pagina correntemente visualizzata in un file con un nome diverso.



Stampa l'immagine digitalizzata.



Visualizza l'immagine adattandone la larghezza alla larghezza della finestra.



Visualizza tutta l'immagine nella finestra.



Ogni volta che questo pulsante viene cliccato l'immagine sullo schermo viene ingrandita. Le immagini non possono essere ingrandite oltre il 100% (grandezza reale).



Ogni volta che questo pulsante viene cliccato la grandezza dell'immagine sullo schermo viene ridotta.



Ruota l'immagine di 90° a sinistra (in senso antiorario).



Ruota l'immagine di 90° a destra (in senso orario).



Visualizza l'immagine della pagina precedente.



Visualizza l'immagine della pagina successiva.



Imposta lo scanner. Per i dettagli sulle impostazioni, vedere "2.4 Impostazione delle condizioni di scansione" (P. 60).



Digitalizza e salva il documento in un determinato file. Per i dettagli sulla procedura sulla scansione, vedere "2.2 Procedura di scansione" (P. 21)



Riporta le informazioni sulla versione e il copyright di Scanning Utility 5000.

Capitolo 2

Scansione di un documento

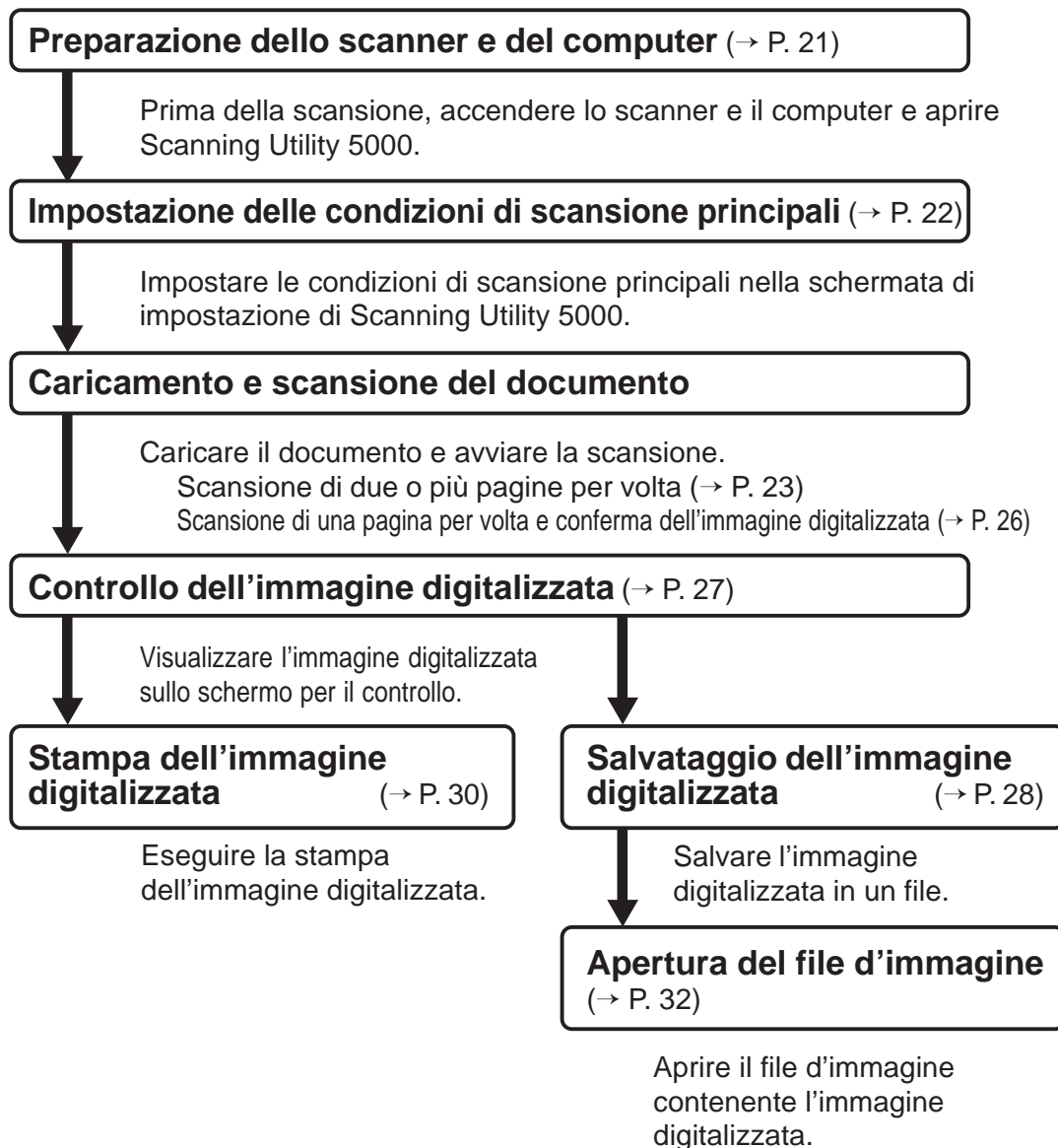
Questo capitolo descrive come digitalizzare un documento usando Scanning Utility 5000.

2.1 Diagramma di scansione	20
2.2 Procedura di scansione	21
2.3 Varie modalità di scansione	33
2.4 Impostazione delle condizioni di scansione	60

2.1

Diagramma di scansione

Per eseguire la scansione di un documento usando Scanning Utility 5000 attenersi a questa procedura generale.

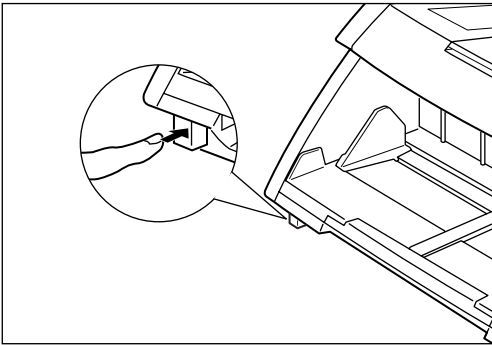


2.2 Procedura di scansione

Preparazione dello scanner e del computer

Prima della scansione, accendere lo scanner e il computer e avviare Scanning Utility 5000.

1 Accendere lo scanner.

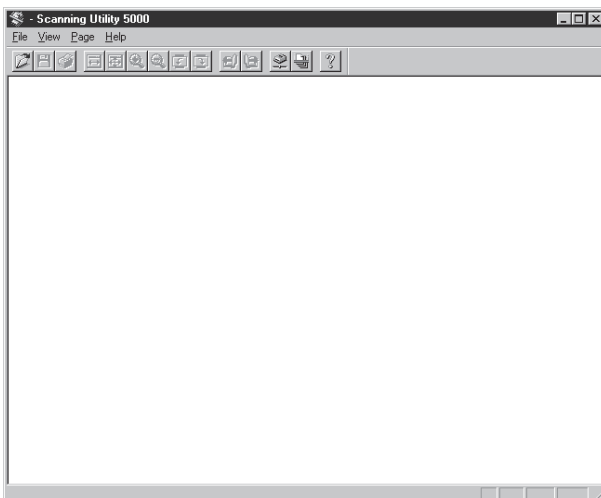


2 Accendere il computer.

⇒ Si avvia Windows.

3 Cliccare [Avvio] e selezionare [Programmi] - [Scanning Utility 5000].

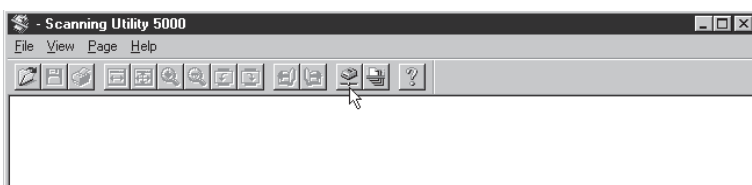
⇒ Si apre Scanning Utility 5000.



Impostazione delle condizioni di scansione principali

Impostare le condizioni di scansione principali nella finestra di dialogo “Impostazioni scanner”. Nelle condizioni di scansione di base ci sono cinque voci da impostare: modalità, risoluzione (punti per pollice o dpi), formato pagina, luminosità e contrasto. Per i dettagli, vedere “2.4 Impostazione delle condizioni di scansione” (P. 60).

1 Sulla barra degli strumenti, selezionare [File] - [Scanner Setting], oppure cliccare .



⇒ Appare la finestra di dialogo Impostazioni scanner.

2 Impostare le voci di base.



Modalità: Imposta il tipo di immagine da digitalizzare.

Risoluzione: Imposta la risoluzione (dpi).

Dimensioni: Specifica il formato del documento da digitalizzare.

Luminosità: Regola la luminosità di tutta l'immagine digitalizzata.

Contrasto: Regola il contrasto di tutta l'immagine digitalizzata.



RIFERIMENTO

Per le impostazioni dettagliate, vedere 2.4 Impostazione delle condizioni di scansione (P. 60).

3 Cliccare [OK] per ritornare alla finestra di scansione principale.

Caricamento e scansione del documento

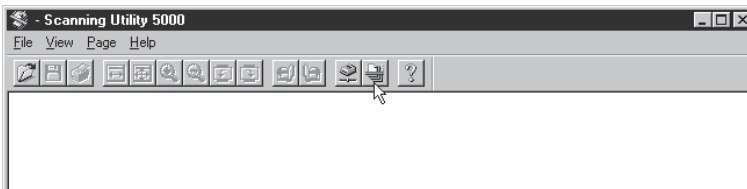
Predisporre un documento sul vassoio del documento e cominciare la scansione. Ci sono due modi di digitalizzare i documenti: digitalizzare due o più pagine, digitalizzare una sola pagina e quindi confermare l'immagine digitalizzata.

◆ Digitalizzare due o più pagine

È possibile digitalizzare documenti costituiti da due o più pagine in quattro modi: modalità Remota, Semi Auto, Auto, manuale. La procedura di scansione è diversa per ciascuna di queste modalità.

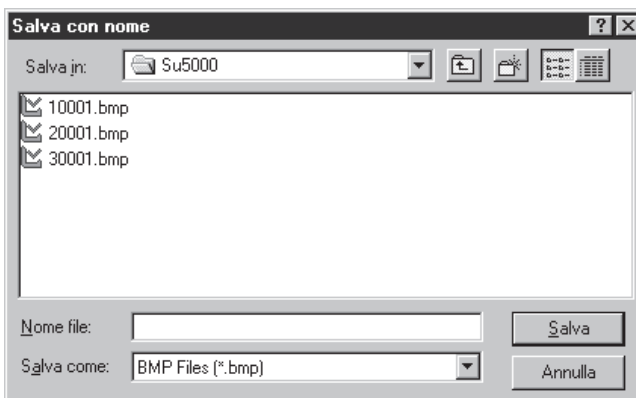
La descrizione che segue riguarda un documento digitalizzato in modalità remota. Per maggiori dettagli sulla scansione in altre modalità, vedere "2.3 Varie modalità di scansione" (P.33).

- 1 **Selezionare [File] - [Scan batch to file], oppure cliccare  sulla barra degli strumenti.**



⇒ Appare la finestra di dialogo salva con nome.

- 2 **Assegnare un nome al file dell'immagine digitalizzata, scegliere il tipo di file (formato del file) e la directory dove salvare il file e cliccare [Salva].**



⇒ Appare la finestra di dialogo Start Scanning.



SUGGERIMENTO

Tipo File visualizza i vari formati di file in cui è possibile salvare le immagini digitalizzate.

Vengono visualizzati i quattro tipi di file seguenti accoppiati alla modalità in cui si sta digitalizzando il documento:

TIFF (*.tif), BMP (*.bmp), JBIG (*.jbg), JPEG (*.jpg)

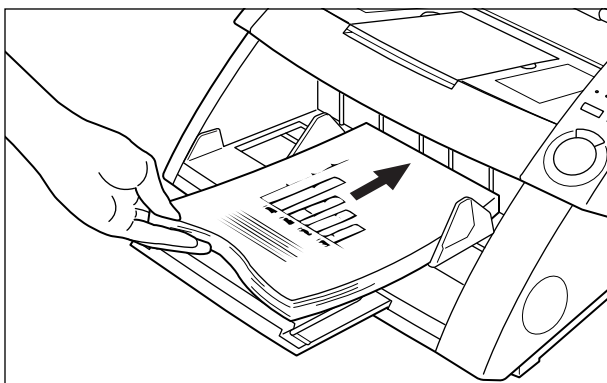


RIFERIMENTO

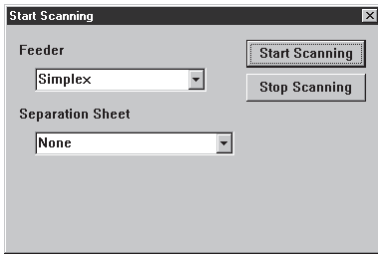
Quando viene selezionato TIFF, le immagini sparse su diverse pagine digitalizzate (inclusa la scansione fronte-retro) vengono salvate in un unico file.

Quando i file vengono salvati in formato BMP, JPEG o JBIG, tutte le pagine del documento vengono salvate come file distinti nella cartella specificata come destinazione di memorizzazione. I file comprendono il nome con il quale viene specificata la prima immagine e ai file seguenti vengono aggiunti i numeri progressivi "0001", "0002" e così via. (Per esempio, supponiamo di salvare le immagini digitalizzate in formato BMP sotto il nome "scan.bmp". Vengono creati automaticamente i file "scan.bmp", "scan0001.bmp", "scan0002.bmp" e così via.) Separando i file con la funzione Auto New File o con un foglio di divisione lavoro, dopo ogni separazione di file vengono automaticamente create cartelle contraddistinte da un numero progressivo ("0001", "0002", ecc.), e le immagini vengono salvate in file contenuti in queste cartelle.

3 Caricare il documento nel vassoio degli originali.



4 Cliccare [Start Scanning].



➔ Inizia la scansione.

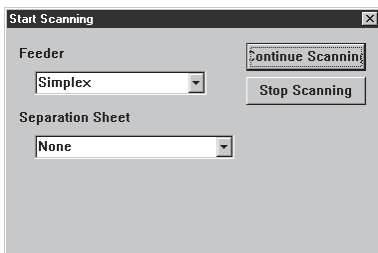


RIFERIMENTO

Se non inizia la scansione, controllare per vedere se tutte gli indicatori di tasto Feeding Option, sul pannello operativo dello scanner, sono spenti (modalità remota).

5 Quando il vassoio degli originali non ha più pagine da digitalizzare la scansione viene messa in pausa.

➔ Appare la finestra di dialogo Start Scanning (in pausa).



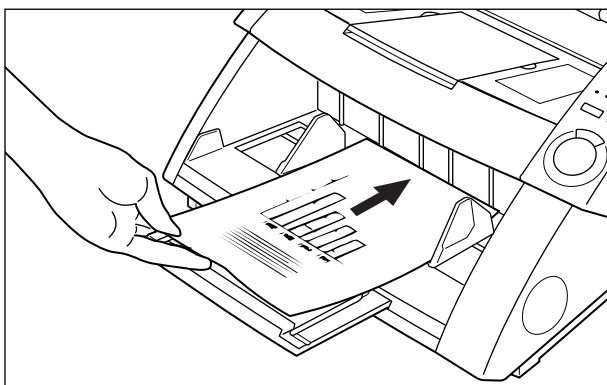
6 Per continuare la scansione, caricare sul vassoio degli originali un altro documento e cliccare [Continue Scanning]. Per fermare la scansione cliccare [Stop Scanning].

7 Controllare l'immagine digitalizzata. (P.27)

◆ Scansione di una sola pagina e conferma dell'immagine digitalizzata

Prima di avviare la scansione di un documento costituito da un certo numero di fogli, è possibile digitalizzare una pagina e confermare l'immagine digitalizzata. In questa modalità di scansione, l'immagine digitalizzata non viene registrata automaticamente. Se la si vuole registrare, lo si deve fare manualmente. (Vedere "Salvataggio dell'immagine digitalizzata" P. 28)

1 Caricare una pagina sul vassoio degli originali.

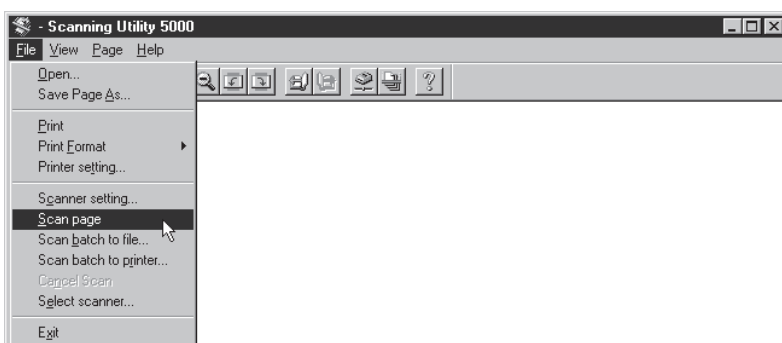


RIFERIMENTO

Se sul vassoio degli originali sono stati messe due o più pagine, dopo che la prima pagina del documento è stata digitalizzata il vassoio degli originali rimane in posizione sollevata.

Rimuovere le altre pagine dal vassoio degli originali e portare il vassoio degli originali nella posizione abbassata.

2 Selezionare [File] - [Scan Page].



⇒ Il documento viene digitalizzato.

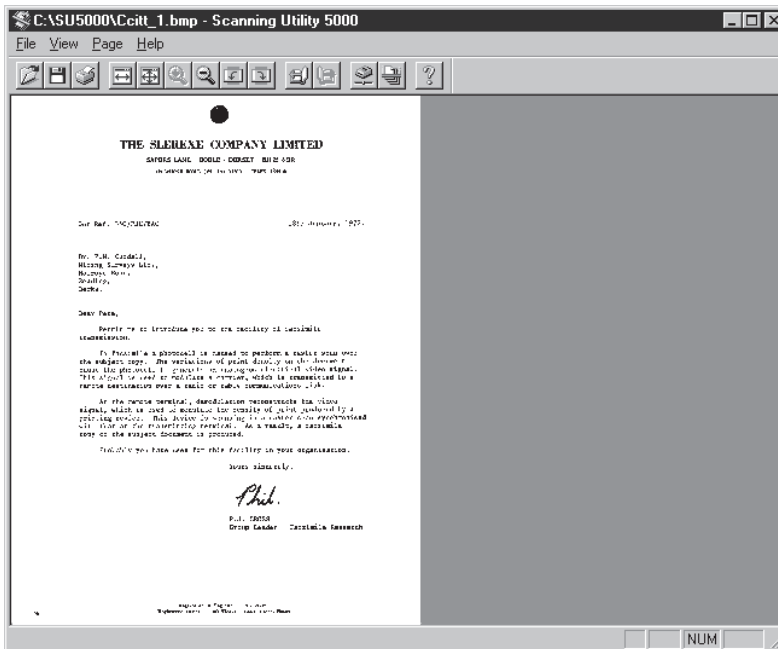
3 Controllare l'immagine digitalizzata. (P. 27)

4 Salvare l'immagine digitalizzata, se necessario. (P. 29)

Controllo dell'immagine digitalizzata









Visualizzare l'immagine digitalizzata sullo schermo per un controllo.

1 Controllare l'immagine digitalizzata sullo schermo.



SUGGERIMENTO

Per il controllo si possono usare i pulsanti della barra degli strumenti per ingrandire o ridurre il formato dell'immagine e ruotare l'immagine digitalizzata.

-  Visualizza l'immagine adattandone la larghezza alla larghezza della finestra.
-  Visualizza tutta l'immagine nella finestra.
-  Ogni volta che questo pulsante viene cliccato l'immagine sullo schermo viene ingrandita. Le immagini non possono essere ingrandite oltre il 100% (grandezza reale).
-  Ogni volta che questo pulsante viene cliccato la grandezza dell'immagine sullo schermo viene ridotta.
-  Ruota l'immagine di 90° a sinistra (in senso antiorario).
-  Ruota l'immagine di 90° a destra (in senso orario).
-  Visualizza l'immagine successiva.
-  Visualizza l'immagine precedente.

Salvataggio dell'immagine digitalizzata

◆ Formati dei file d'immagine

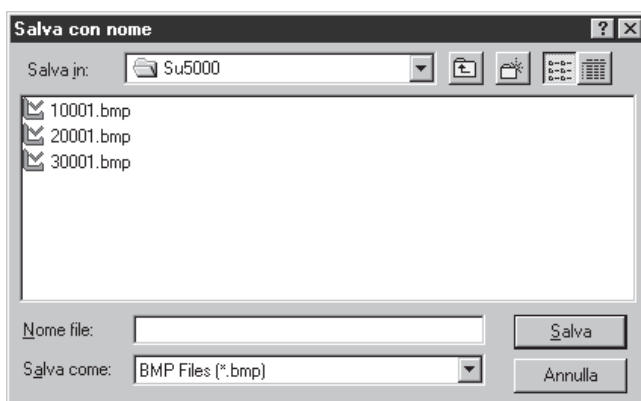
Le immagini digitalizzate possono essere salvate in file di formato TIFF, BMP, JPEG o JBIG.

Il formato di file disponibile varia a seconda dell'impostazione della modalità di scansione durante la corrente scansione.

La tabella seguente mostra i formati di file supportati da Scanning Utility 5000.

Modalità di scansione	Formato di file compatibile			
	BMP	JBIG	JPEG	TIFF (MMR)
Binaria, Binaria mezzatinta	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>
Gradazioni grigio 2 bit, 4 bit	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>
Gradazioni grigio 8 bit	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	
Colore	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>	

Specificare il formato del file nella finestra di dialogo Salva con nome.



Selezionare il nome del file e premere salva.



RIFERIMENTO

Quando si seleziona TIFF, l'immagine distribuita su diverse pagine digitalizzate (inclusa la scansione fronte-retro) viene registrata come singolo file.

Quando i file vengono salvati in formato BMP, JPEG o JBIG, tutte le pagine del documento vengono salvate come file distinti nella cartella specificata come destinazione di memorizzazione. I file comprendono il nome con il quale viene specificata la prima immagine e ai file seguenti vengono aggiunti i numeri progressivi "0001", "0002" e così via. (Per esempio, supponiamo di salvare le immagini digitalizzate in formato BMP sotto il nome "scan.bmp". Vengono creati automaticamente i file "scan.bmp", "scan0001.bmp", "scan0002.bmp" e così via.)

Se i file vengono separati usando la funzione Nuovo file automatico oppure Foglio separatore file, dopo ogni separazione di file vengono create automaticamente cartelle contrassegnate da un numero progressivo ("0001", "0002" e così via) e le immagini vengono registrate come file in queste cartelle.

◆ Salvataggio delle immagini digitalizzate in un file (scansione di una sola pagina)

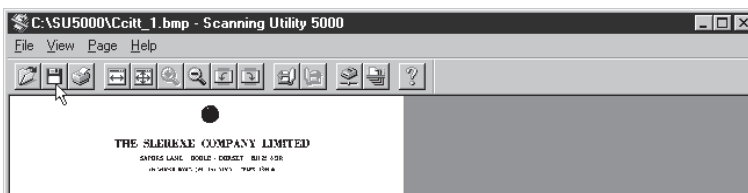
Quando si digitalizza un documento costituito da una sola pagina, l'immagine digitalizzata non viene registrata. Se si vuole registrare un'immagine digitalizzata, seguire la seguente procedura.



RIFERIMENTO

Quando si digitalizzano due o più pagine (P. 23), le immagini digitalizzate vengono automaticamente registrate nel file indicato. Così, non c'è bisogno di registrarle di nuovo.

1 Con l'immagine digitalizzata visualizzata sulla schermata Scanning Utility 5000 selezionare [File] - [Save Page As...] oppure cliccare .



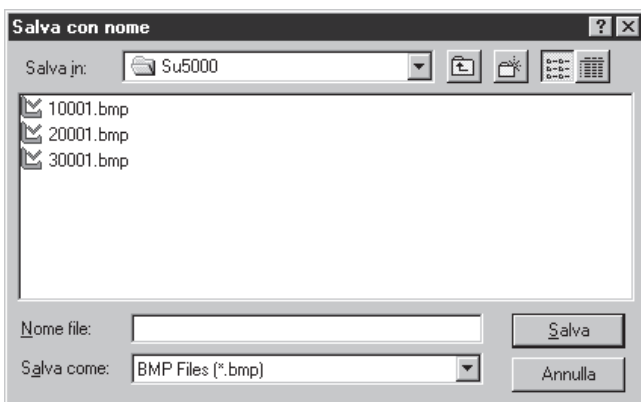
➔ Appare la finestra di dialogo Salva con nome.



RIFERIMENTO

[Save Page As] registra soltanto la pagina attualmente visualizzata come un file nuovo. Quando si digitalizzano due o più pagine e si usa questo comando per registrare immagini già registrate come un singolo file TIFF (TIFF multiplo, fare attenzione a registrare il file con un nome diverso. Si noti che si sovrascrivono le immagini registrandole con lo stesso nome, le immagini di una pagina differente attualmente non visualizzate vengono cancellate.

2 Assegnare un nome al file dell'immagine digitalizzata, scegliere il tipo di file (formato di file) e la directory dove salvare il file e cliccare [Salva].



➔ L'immagine digitalizzata viene salvata nel file specificato.



RIFERIMENTO

Prima di decidere il nome del file e il tipo (formato del file) e dove deve essere salvato, leggere attentamente "Formati dei file d'immagine" (P.28).

Stampa dell'immagine digitalizzata

Stampare l'immagine digitalizzata.



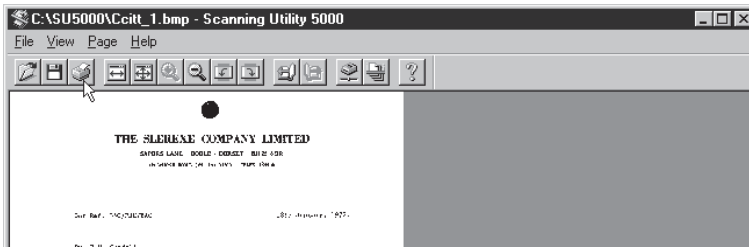
RIFERIMENTO

Ci sono due modi di stampare immagini digitalizzate.

Prima di iniziare a stampare, selezionare una tra le seguenti voci sotto [File] - [Print Format].

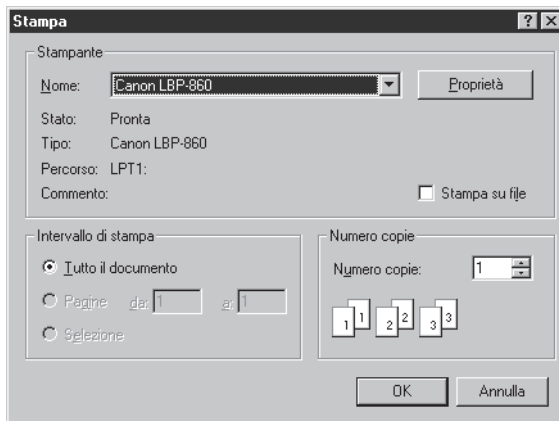
- Actual size
Stampa l'immagine digitalizzata nelle dimensioni attuali senza tenere conto su quale carta deve essere stampata e a quale risoluzione l'immagine è stata digitalizzata .
- Fit to paper
Quando il documento è più grande della carta su cui l'immagine digitalizzata deve essere stampata l'immagine digitalizzata viene stampata in modo che si adatti alla carta.
- Actual Pixel
Un punto nell'immagine digitalizzata corrisponde a un punto sulla stampante.

1 Selezionare [File] - [Print] o cliccare sulla barra degli strumenti con l'immagine digitalizzata visualizzata nella schermata Scanning Utility 5000.



⇒ Appare la finestra per le impostazioni di stampa.

2 Impostare le opzioni di stampa e cliccare [OK].



⇒ L'immagine digitalizzata viene stampata.



RIFERIMENTO

- La schermata delle proprietà della stampante cambia a seconda della stampante in uso. Per maggiori dettagli, fare riferimento al manuale o al file di aiuto del driver della stampante in uso.
- Benché nelle impostazioni di range di stampa venga selezionato [Tutto il documento], viene stampata soltanto la pagina attualmente visualizzata.

Apertura dei file d'immagine

Aprire un file contenente un'immagine digitalizzata.



RIFERIMENTO

Soltanto le immagini TIFF, BMP, JPEG, JBIG registrate con Scanning Utility 5000 possono essere aperte come file di immagine in Scanning Utility 5000.

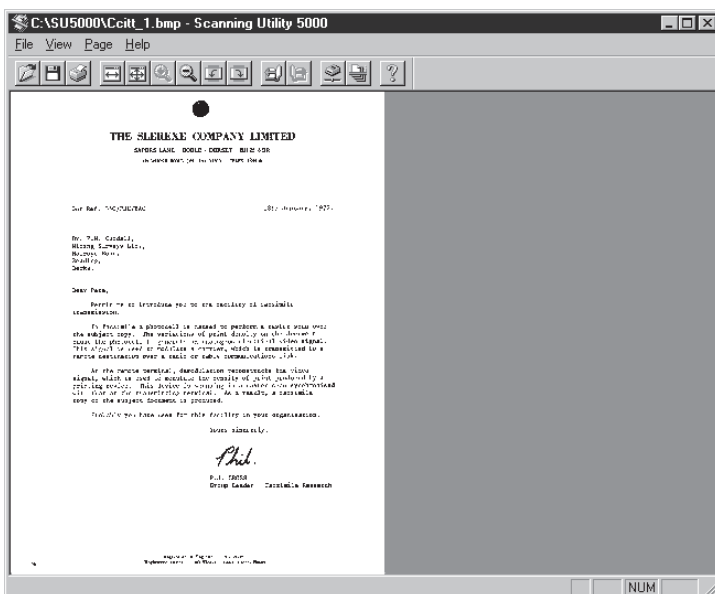
1 Selezionare [File] - [Open] o cliccare sulla barra degli strumenti.




⇒ Appare la finestra di dialogo Apri.

2 Selezionare un file e cliccare [Apri].

⇒ Il file selezionato viene visualizzato.



RIFERIMENTO

- Si noti che se si sovrascrive e si salva con [File] - [Save Page As] oppure cliccando il tasto  un file aperto come TIFF (TIFF multiplo), viene salvata soltanto la pagina attualmente visualizzata e le immagini di tutte le altre pagine vengono cancellate.
- Per chiudere un file aperto, uscire da Scanning Utility 5000 con [File] - [Exit].

2.3

Varie modalità di scansione

In Scanning Utility 5000 è possibile digitalizzare documenti in modi diversi. Per esempio, è possibile cambiare il modo di alimentazione per adattare l'alimentazione a particolari esigenze di scansione, digitalizzazione di ambedue le facciate del documento, oppure digitalizzazione di documenti ad alta velocità.

Questo paragrafo descrive i seguenti modi di scansione dei documenti:

- Scansione in base alla modalità di alimentazione (modalità remota, semi auto, auto, manuale)
- Scansione fronte-retro
- Stampa diretta delle immagini digitalizzate (stampa di gruppo scansione)
- Uso dei Fogli funzione
- Scansione veloce
- Scansione con conteggio delle pagine

Scansione in base alla modalità di alimentazione

Selezionare una delle seguenti modalità di alimentazione a seconda della qualità del documento e del tipo di carta.

Sono disponibili le seguenti modalità di alimentazione:

- **Remota**

Quando si carica un documento nello scanner e in Scanning Utility 5000 si impartisce il comando "Start scanning", la carta inizia ad essere alimentata. In questo modo possono essere caricate due o più pagine.



RIFERIMENTO

Per maggiori dettagli sulla Modalità remota, vedere "Digitalizzare due o più pagine" (P.23).

- **Semi Auto**

In Scanning Utility 5000 cliccare “Start scanning”, caricare il documento e premere il tasto di avvio sullo scanner per iniziare la scansione.

In questa modalità si possono caricare due o più pagine.

- **Auto**

Quando in Scanning Utility 5000 viene cliccato “Start scanning” e il documento viene caricato nello scanner, lo scanner inizia automaticamente la scansione.

In questa modalità si possono caricare due o più pagine.

- **Manuale**

In Scanning Utility 5000 cliccare “Start scanning” e inserire una pagina per volta.



RIFERIMENTO

Per i dettagli su come caricare i documenti, vedere “3.2 Alimentazione documenti e loro digitalizzazione” (P. 38) nelle Istruzioni per il DR-5020/5080C.

Di seguito viene descritta la procedura per selezionare la modalità di alimentazione e la procedura di scansione in base alla modalità di alimentazione.

◆ Selezione della modalità di alimentazione

- 1 Sulla barra degli strumenti, selezionare [File] - [Scanner Setting], oppure cliccare  .



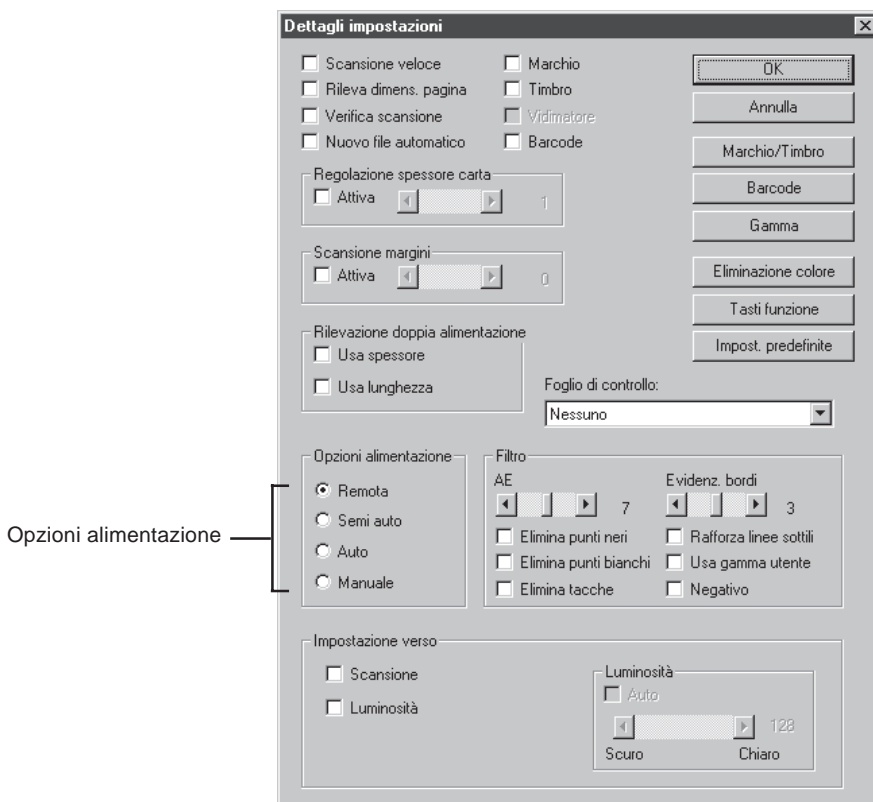
⇒ Appare la finestra di dialogo Impostazioni scanner.

- 2 Nella finestra di dialogo Scanner Setting, cliccare [Dettagli].



⇒ Appare la finestra di dialogo per l'impostazione dei dettagli.

3 Selezionare la modalità di scansione in Opzioni alimentazione.



4 Cliccare [OK] per ritornare alla finestra di dialogo Impostazioni scanner.

5 Cliccare [OK] per ritornare alla finestra di scansione principale.



RIFERIMENTO

La modalità di alimentazione può essere impostata anche sul pannello operativo dello scanner. Premere il tasto [Feeding Option] sul pannello operativo per accendere l'indicatore della modalità di alimentazione desiderata. Quando viene impostata la modalità remota, tutti gli indicatori rimangono spenti.

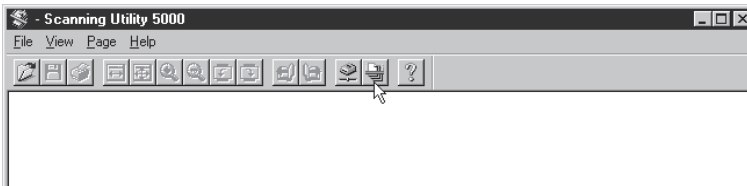
◆ Scansione in modalità semi auto

Impostare la modalità di alimentazione su modalità semi auto e poi digitalizzare il documento.

1 Eseguire l'operazione descritta in “Selezione della modalità di alimentazione” e selezionare “Semi Auto”.

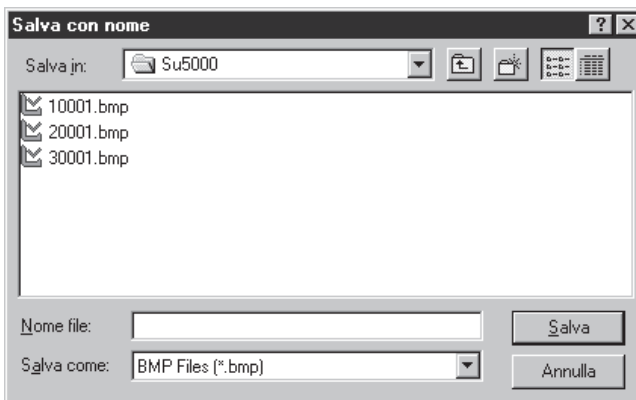
⇒ Sul pannello operativo si illumina Semi-Auto.

2 Selezionare [File] - [Scan batch to file], oppure cliccare sulla barra degli strumenti.



⇒ Appare la finestra di dialogo Salva con nome.

3 Assegnare un nome al file dell'immagine digitalizzata, scegliere il tipo di file (formato del file) e la directory dove salvare il file e cliccare [Salva].



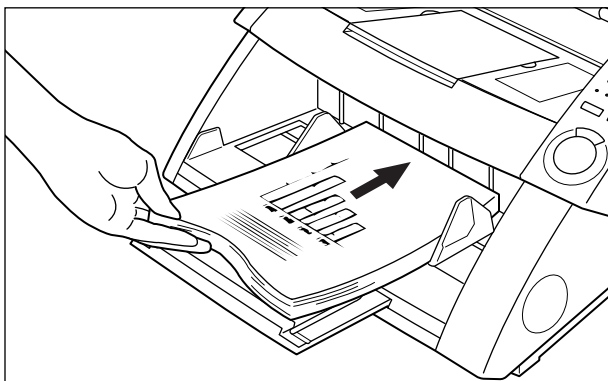
⇒ Appare la finestra di dialogo Start Scanning.



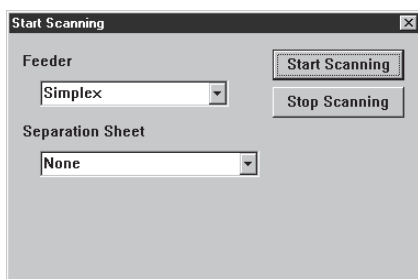
RIFERIMENTO

Prima di decidere il nome del file e il tipo (formato del file) e dove deve essere salvato, leggere attentamente “Formati dei file d'immagine” (P. 28).

4 Caricare il documento nello scanner.

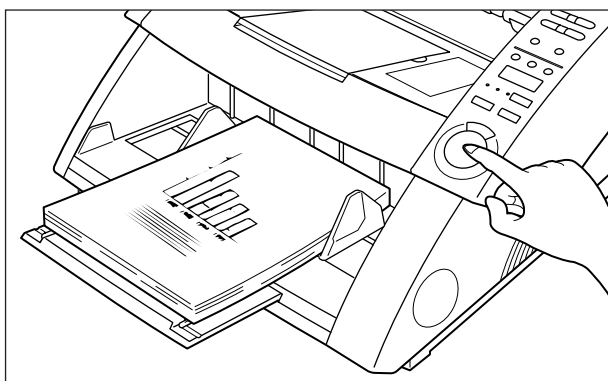


5 Cliccare [Start Scanning].



➔ Il tasto Start nella parte centrale del pannello operativo si illumina (in verde).

6 Premere il tasto Start sul pannello operativo dello scanner.



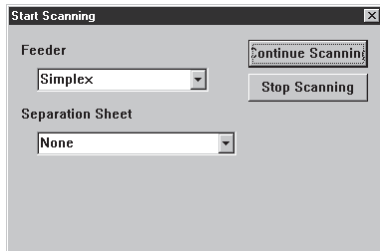
➔ Inizia la scansione.

Quando lo scanner non ha più fogli da digitalizzare, il vassoio degli originali si abbassa e lo scanner attende che venga inserito il documento successivo.

7 Caricare il documento successivo sul vassoio degli originali e premere il tasto Start sul pannello operativo dello scanner.

8 Quando lo scanner non ha più fogli da digitalizzare, premere il tasto Stop.

⇒ Appare la finestra di dialogo Start scanning (in pausa).



9 Per fermare la scansione, cliccare [Stop Scanning].
Per continuare nella scansione, cliccare [Start Scanning] e ritornare al punto 7.

10 Controllare l'immagine digitalizzata. (P. 27)

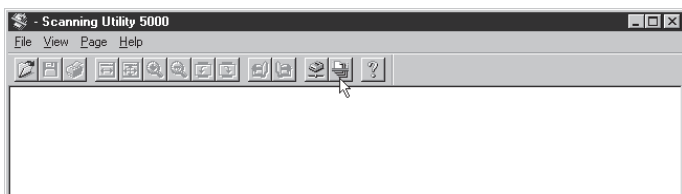
◆ Scansione in modalità auto

Impostare la modalità di alimentazione su modalità auto e poi digitalizzare il documento.

1 Eseguire l'operazione descritta in “Selezione della modalità di alimentazione” e selezionare “Auto”.

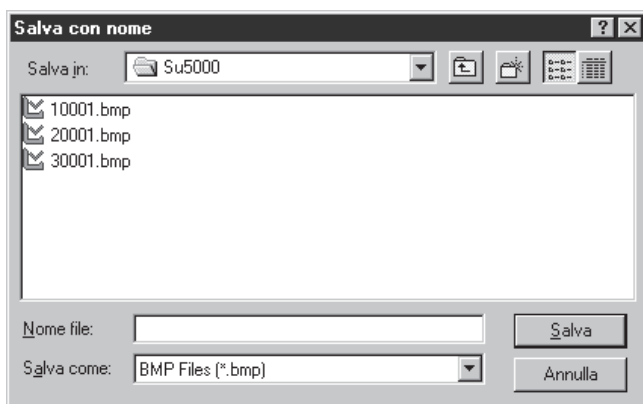
⇒ Sul pannello operativo si illumina Auto.

2 Selezionare [File] - [Scan batch to file], oppure cliccare sulla barra degli strumenti.



⇒ Appare la finestra di dialogo Salva con nome.

3 Assegnare un nome al file dell'immagine digitalizzata, scegliere il tipo di file (formato del file) e la directory dove salvare il file e cliccare [Salva].



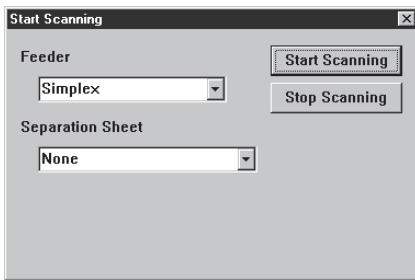
⇒ Appare la finestra di dialogo “Start Scanning”.



RIFERIMENTO

Prima di decidere il nome del file e il tipo (formato del file) e dove deve essere salvato, leggere attentamente “Formati dei file d'immagine” (P.28).

4 Cliccare [Start Scanning].



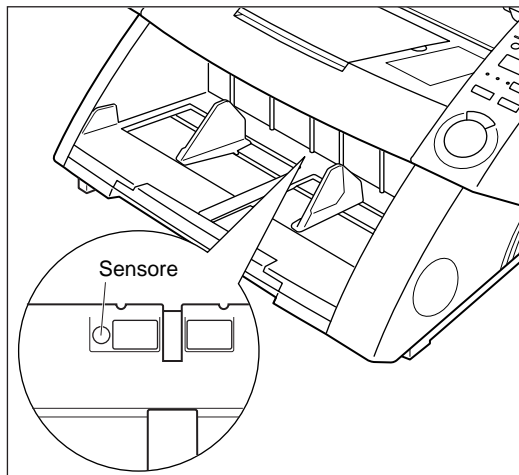
⇒ Il tasto Start nella parte centrale del pannello operativo si illumina (in verde).



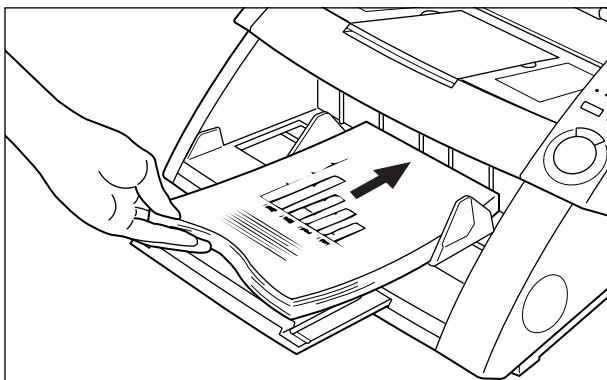
ATTENZIONE

Quando la modalità di scansione è impostata su Auto, il sensore situato sul vassoio degli originali mostrato nell'immagine qui in basso individua automaticamente il documento per avviare la scansione.

Se qualcosa dovesse coprire il sensore sul vassoio degli originali dopo avere impartito l'ordine di avviare la scansione nell'applicazione, lo scanner valuta erroneamente che un documento è stato caricato e il vassoio degli originali inizia a muoversi. Fare attenzione che oggetti diversi dal documento non coprano il sensore sul vassoio degli originali.



5 Caricare il documento sul vassoio degli originali.



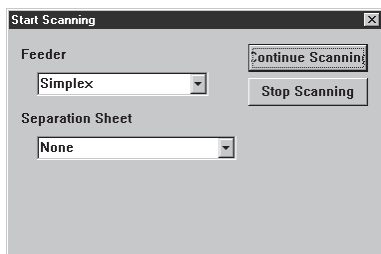
⇒ La scansione si avvia.

Quando lo scanner non ha più fogli da digitalizzare, il vassoio degli originali si abbassa e lo scanner attende che venga inserito il documento successivo.

6 Caricare il documento successivo sul vassoio degli originali.

7 Quando lo scanner non ha più fogli da digitalizzare, premere il tasto Stop sul pannello operativo dello scanner.

⇒ Appare la finestra di dialogo Start scanning (in pausa).



8 Per fermare la scansione, cliccare [Stop Scanning].

Per continuare nella scansione, cliccare [Start Scanning] e ritornare al punto 5.

9 Confermare l'immagine digitalizzata. (P.27)

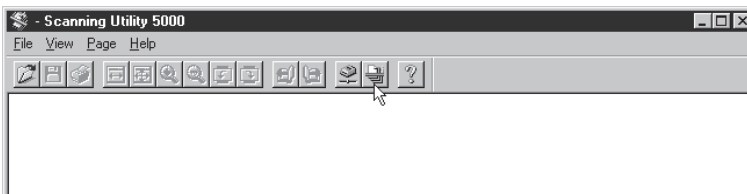
◆ Scansione in modalità manuale

Ciascuna pagina del documento viene digitalizzata man mano che si inserisce nello scanner un foglio per volta.

1 Eseguire l'operazione descritta in “Selezione della modalità di alimentazione” e selezionare “Manuale”.

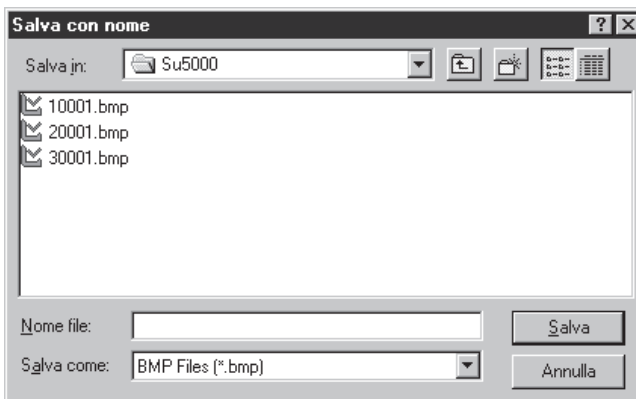
⇒ Manual lampeggia sul pannello operativo e il vassoio degli originali si solleva.

2 Selezionare [File] - [Scan bath to file] o cliccare sulla barra degli strumenti.



⇒ Appare la finestra di dialogo Salva con nome.

3 Decidere il nome e il tipo (formato del file) dell'immagine da digitalizzare e dove salvare il file e cliccare [Salva].



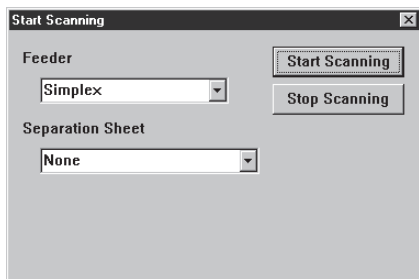
⇒ Appare la finestra di dialogo Start Scanning.



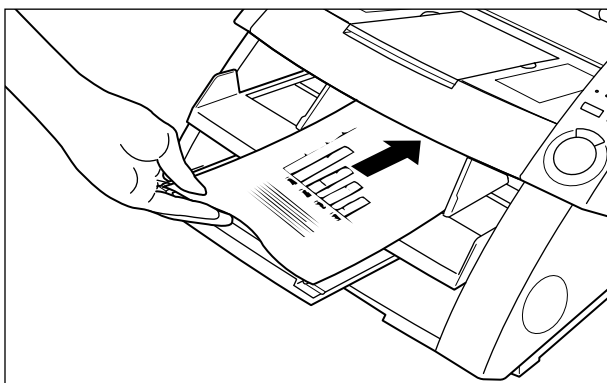
RIFERIMENTO

Prima di decidere il nome del file e il tipo (formato del file) e dove deve essere salvato, leggere attentamente “Formati dei file d'immagine” (P.28).

4 Cliccare [Start Scanning].



5 Caricare un foglio sul vassoio degli originali.

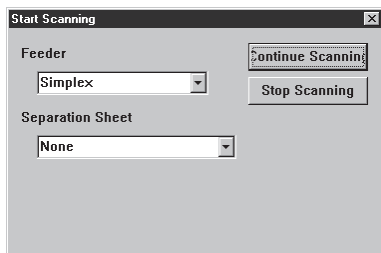


⇒ Il documento viene digitalizzato e lo scanner attende che venga inserito il documento successivo.

6 Continuare a digitalizzare il documento, una pagina per volta.

7 Quando la scansione è terminata, premere [Stop Scanning].

⇒ Appare la finestra di dialogo Start Scanning (in pausa).



8 Per fermare la scansione, cliccare [Stop Scanning].

Per continuare nella scansione, cliccare [Start Scanning] e ritornare al punto 5.



RIFERIMENTO

Anche se la scansione è terminata, il vassoio degli originali non si abbassa finché non viene annullata la modalità Manuale. Annullare questa modalità premendo il tasto Feeding Option oppure “Selezione della modalità di alimentazione” (P.35).

9 Confermare l'immagine digitalizzata. (P.27)

Scansione Duplex

La scansione Duplex permette la scansione di documenti a doppia facciata.

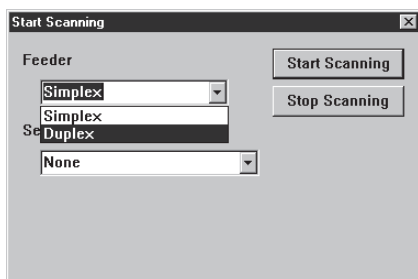
La scansione Duplex viene eseguita allo stesso modo della scansione normale solo che occorre selezionare Duplex per avviare la scansione.

1 **Predisporre le impostazioni di scansione e digitalizzare il documento a seconda dell'attuale modalità di alimentazione selezionata.**

Per maggiori dettagli su ciascuna modalità di alimentazione fare riferimento alla pagina indicata.

- Modalità remota: "Digitalizzare due o più pagine" (P. 23)
- Modalità Semi Auto: "Scansione in modalità Semi Auto" (P. 37)
- Modalità Auto: "Scansione in modalità Auto" (P. 40)
- Modalità manuale: "Scansione in modalità manuale" (P. 43)

2 **Quando viene visualizzata la finestra di dialogo Start Scanning, cliccare la scheda Feeder e selezionare Duplex per avviare la scansione.**



RIFERIMENTO

- La scansione Duplex può essere impostata anche sul pannello operativo dello scanner.
Premere il tasto Simplex/Duplex sul pannello operativo per selezionare [Duplex] e predisporre le necessarie operazioni per eseguire la scansione (punto 1 in alto).
- È inoltre possibile eseguire scansioni Duplex usando i Fogli funzione (Fogli Controllo Scanner).
Se il foglio di controllo scanner è posto all'inizio del documento, ambedue le facciate del documento vengono automaticamente digitalizzate. Per maggiori dettagli, vedere "Uso dei Fogli funzione" (P.48) oppure fare riferimento alle Istruzioni per DR-5020/5080C, fornite a parte.

Stampa diretta delle immagini digitalizzate

Le immagini dei documenti digitalizzati possono essere stampate come sono. In questo caso, le immagini digitalizzate non vengono salvate in un file.



RIFERIMENTO

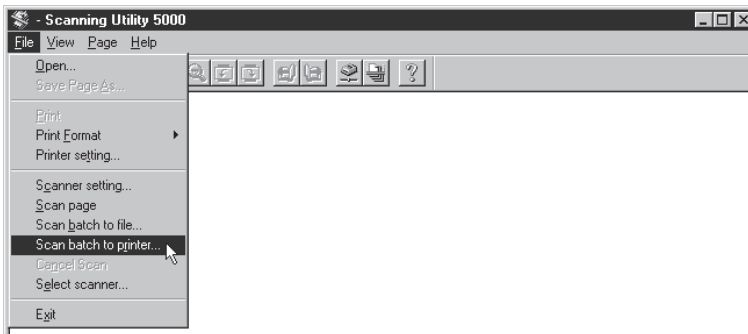
L'immagine digitalizzata viene stampata automaticamente sulla stampante normalmente selezionata come Stampante predefinita. Impostare la stampante da usare in [File] - [Printer setting].

1 Predisporre le impostazioni di scansione e digitalizzare il documento a seconda dell'attuale modalità di alimentazione selezionata.

Per maggiori dettagli su ciascuna modalità di alimentazione fare riferimento alla pagina indicata.

- Modalità remota: "Digitalizzare due o più pagine" (P. 23)
- Modalità Semi Auto: "Scansione in modalità Semi Auto" (P. 37)
- Modalità Auto: "Scansione in modalità Auto" (P. 40)
- Modalità manuale: "Scansione in modalità manuale" (P. 43)

2 Selezionare [File] - [Scan batch to printer...].



⇒ Il documento viene digitalizzato e stampato sulla stampante correntemente impostata come Stampante predefinita.

Uso dei Fogli funzione

I Fogli funzione sono acclusi allo scanner. Questi fogli vengono utilizzati per regolare il funzionamento dello scanner.

Ci sono due tipi di Fogli funzione:

● Fogli Controllo Scanner

Questi fogli regolano la modalità con la quale il documento viene digitalizzato. Vengono forniti i seguenti Fogli funzione per ciascuna delle modalità di scansione.

Per la modalità duplex (fronte-retro)

Comunica allo scanner di digitalizzare e di memorizzare il contenuto della parte frontale e del retro della pagina. Inserire questo foglio di funzione prima che il documento venga digitalizzato, e caricare nello scanner questo foglio insieme al documento.

Per la modalità simplex (una facciata)

Comunica allo scanner di digitalizzare e di memorizzare il contenuto della parte frontale della pagina. Inserire questo foglio di funzione prima che il documento venga digitalizzato, e caricare nello scanner questo foglio insieme al documento.

Per la modalità foto

Comunica allo scanner di attivare la modalità foto per digitalizzare e memorizzare fotografie. Inserire questo foglio di funzione prima del documento fotografico, e caricarlo nello scanner assieme al documento. Questo foglio è valido soltanto quando nell'applicazione la modalità scanner è regolata in bianco e nero. Questo foglio viene ignorato se caricato con la modalità scanner regolata su scala di grigio o colore.

Per la modalità testo

Comunica allo scanner di attivare la modalità testo per digitalizzare e memorizzare fotografie. Inserire questo foglio di funzione prima del documento di testo, e caricarlo nello scanner assieme al documento. Questo foglio è valido soltanto quando nell'applicazione la Modalità Scanner è regolata in bianco e nero. Questo foglio viene ignorato se caricato con la modalità scanner regolata su Scala di Grigio o Colore.

● Foglio di separazione lavori

Divide automaticamente un documento in file separati per memorizzare l'immagine digitalizzata per ciascun lavoro. Inserire questo foglio di funzione prima del documento successivo, e caricarlo nello scanner assieme al documento.



RIFERIMENTO

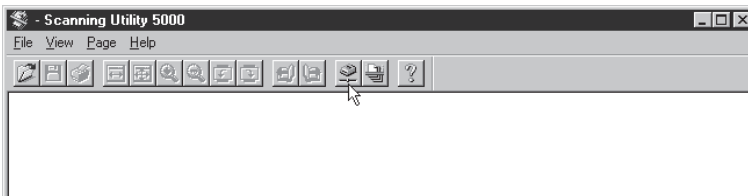
- Per maggiori dettagli sui fogli sopra illustrati, vedere le Istruzioni per DR-5020/5080C, fornite a parte oppure le Istruzioni dei Fogli funzione.
- Benché i Fogli funzione possono essere inseriti in documenti di diverse dimensioni e digitalizzati, cercare per quanto è possibile di utilizzare Fogli funzione delle stesse dimensioni del documento.

Di seguito vengono descritte le rispettive procedure per la digitalizzazione di documenti utilizzando i Fogli funzione.

◆ Foglio di controllo dello scanner

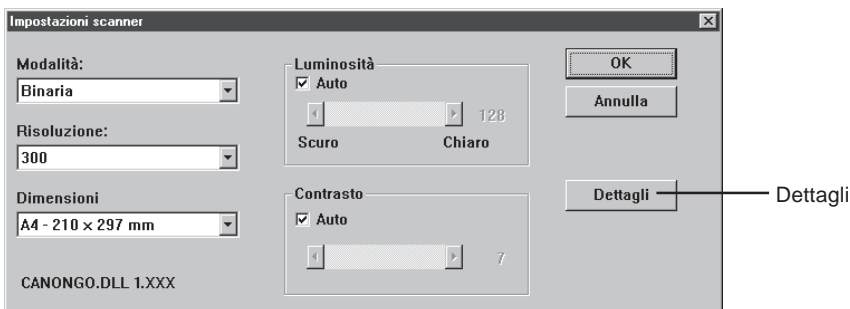
Durante la scansione di un documento, prima di usare un foglio di controllo dello scanner, selezionare l'impostazione di rilevamento foglio.

- 1 **Selezionare [File] - [Scanner setting], oppure cliccare  sulla barra degli strumenti.**



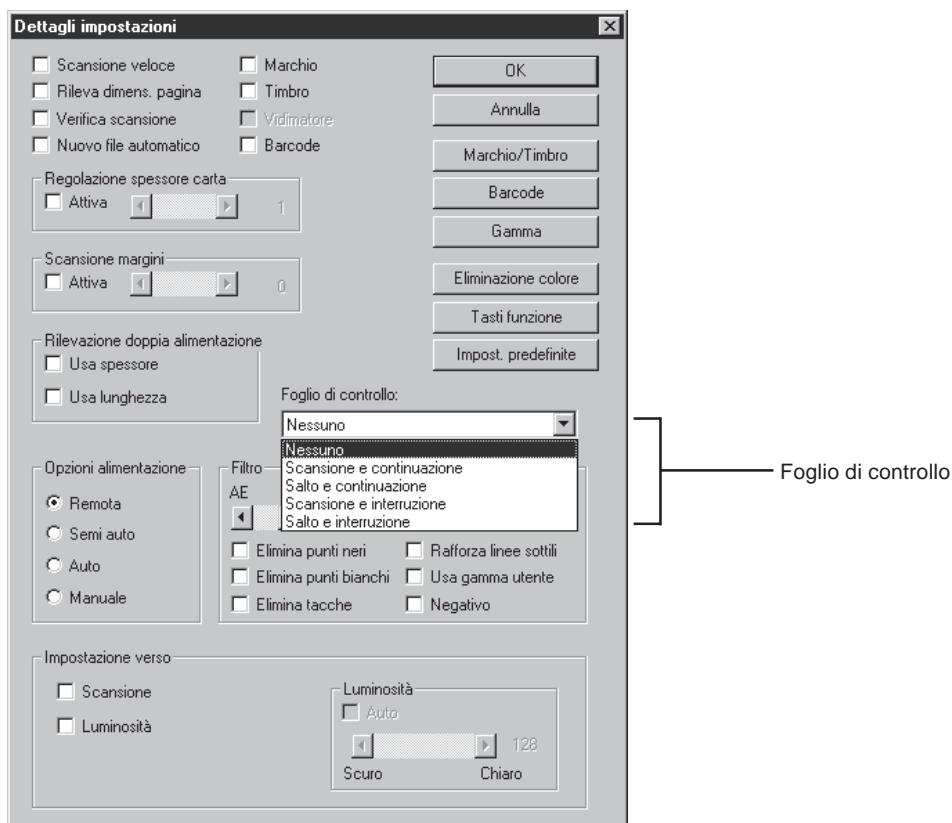
⇒ Appare la finestra di dialogo Impostazioni scanner.

- 2 **Nella finestra di dialogo Scanner Settings, cliccare [Dettagli].**



⇒ Viene visualizzata la finestra di dialogo Dettagli impostazioni.

3 Nel foglio di controllo, selezionare il tipo di rilevamento.



- **Nessuno**
I fogli di controllo dello scanner non vengono rilevati.
- **Scansione e continuazione**
Il foglio di controllo dello scanner viene rilevato e digitalizzato e poi la scansione continua.
- **Salto e continuazione**
Il foglio di controllo dello scanner viene rilevato e saltato (non digitalizzato) e poi la scansione continua.
- **Scansione e interruzione**
Il foglio di controllo dello scanner viene rilevato e digitalizzato e poi la scansione si arresta.
- **Salto e interruzione**
Il foglio di controllo dello scanner viene rilevato e saltato (non digitalizzato) e poi al scansione si arresta.

4 Cliccare [OK] per ritornare alla finestra di dialogo Impostazioni scanner.

5 Cliccare [OK] per ritornare alla finestra di scansione principale.

6 Digitalizzare il documento assieme al foglio di controllo.

◆ Foglio di divisione lavoro

Quando si utilizza un Foglio di divisione lavoro, la scansione viene eseguita allo stesso modo di una scansione normale ad eccezione del fatto che bisogna selezionare le impostazioni di individuazione al momento di impartire l'ordine di avvio della scansione.

1 Predisporre le impostazioni di scansione e digitalizzare il documento a seconda dell'attuale modalità di alimentazione selezionata.

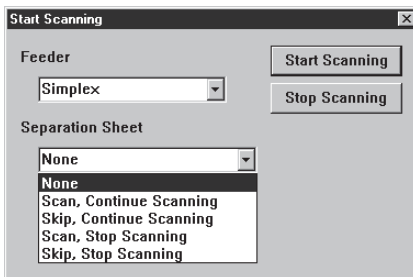
Per maggiori dettagli su ciascuna modalità di alimentazione fare riferimento alla pagina indicata.

Modalità remota: "Digitalizzare due o più pagine" (P. 23)

Modalità Semi Auto: "Scansione in modalità Semi Auto" (P. 37)

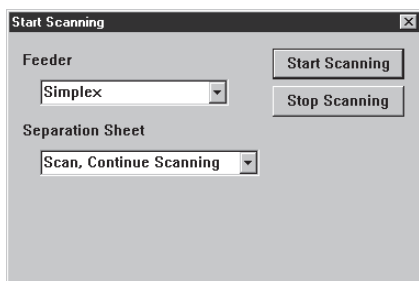
Modalità Auto: "Scansione in modalità Auto" (P. 40)

2 Quando viene visualizzata la finestra di dialogo Start Scanning, cliccare la scheda Separation Sheet ▾ e selezionare il tipo di individuazione.



- **None**
Non individua il Foglio di divisione lavoro.
- **Scan, Continue Scanning**
Memorizza i dettagli del Foglio di divisione lavoro come un'immagine e continua la scansione.
- **Skip, Continue Scanning**
Continua a digitalizzare senza memorizzare i dettagli del Foglio di divisione come un'immagine.
- **Scan, Stop Scanning**
Memorizza i dettagli del Foglio di divisione lavoro come un'immagine e arresta la scansione.
- **Skip, Stop Scanning**
Arresta la scansione senza memorizzare i dettagli del Foglio di divisione come un'immagine.

3 Cliccare [Start Scanning].



Scansione veloce

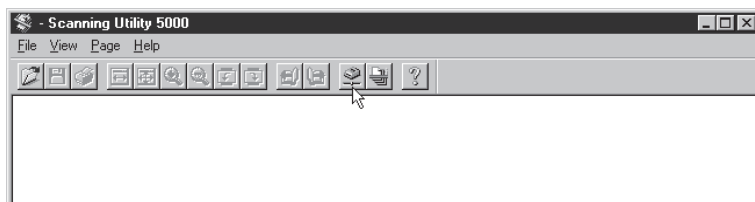
Digitalizzare i documenti ad alta velocità. Sebbene la velocità di alimentazione del documento aumenti e il tempo di scansione di un documento si riduce, la qualità dell'immagine si abbassa leggermente.



RIFERIMENTO

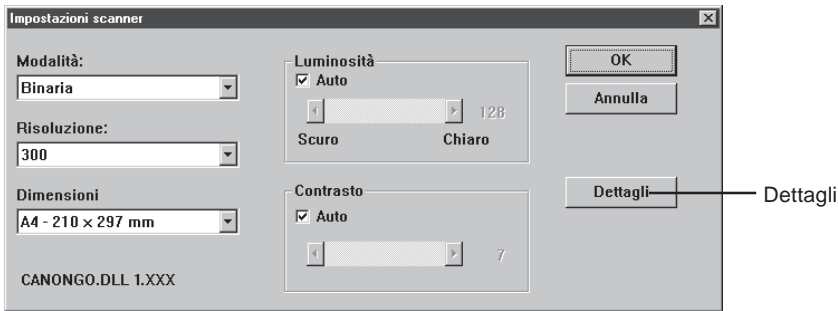
La scansione veloce può essere eseguita soltanto quando la risoluzione viene impostata su 200 dpi o 300 dpi. Quando viene impostato 200 dpi, le immagini vengono digitalizzate a 200 x 100 (orizzontale x verticale) dpi ed emesse come immagini a 200 x 300 dpi. Quando viene impostato 300 dpi, le immagini vengono digitalizzate a 300 x 150 (orizzontale x verticale) dpi ed emesse come immagini a 300 x 300 dpi.

1 Selezionare [File] - [Scanner setting...], oppure cliccare  sulla barra degli strumenti.



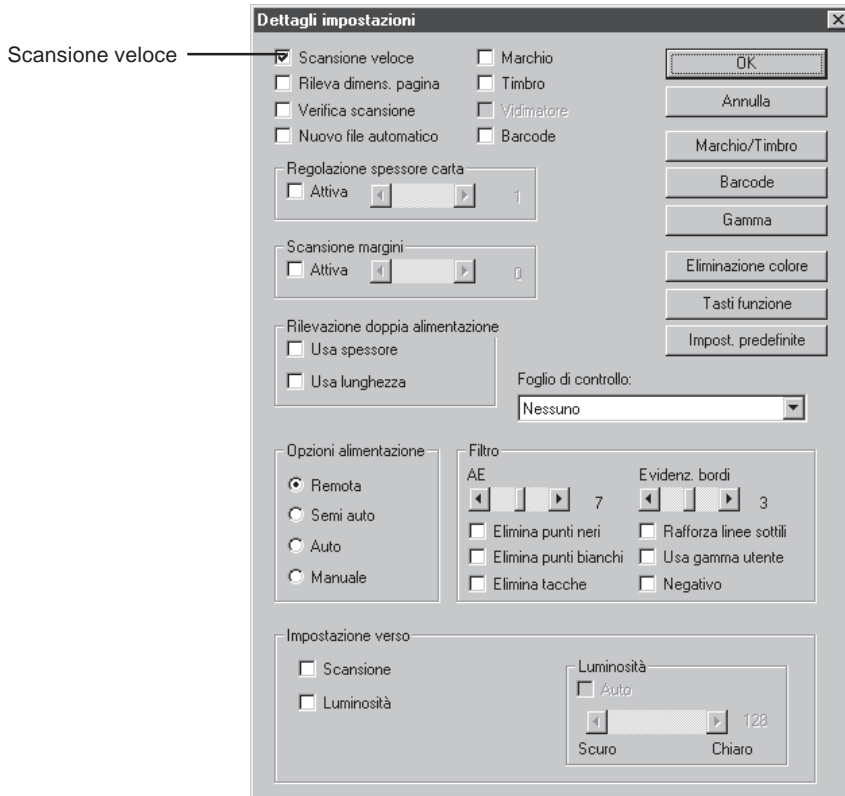
⇒ Appare la finestra di dialogo Impostazioni scanner.

2 Nella finestra di dialogo Scanner Settings, cliccare [Dettagli].



⇒ Viene visualizzata la finestra di dialogo Dettagli impostazioni.

3 Per selezionare la scansione veloce, cliccare la casella di controllo della scansione veloce.



4 Cliccare [OK] per ritornare alla finestra di Impostazioni scanner.

5 Cliccare [OK] per ritornare alla finestra di scansione principale.

6 Digitalizzare il documento a seconda dell'attuale modalità di alimentazione selezionata.

Per maggiori dettagli su ciascuna modalità di alimentazione fare riferimento alla pagina indicata.

Modalità remota: "Digitalizzare due o più pagine" (P.23)

Modalità Semi Auto: "Scansione in modalità Semi Auto" (P.37)

Modalità Auto: "Scansione in modalità Auto" (P.40)

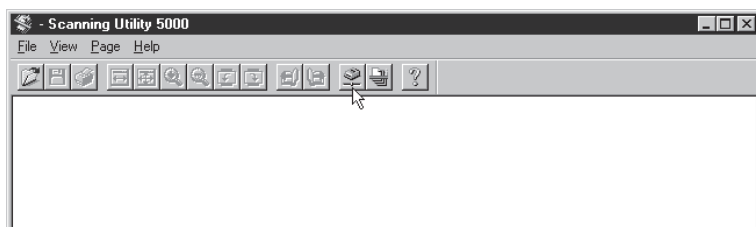
Modalità manuale: "Scansione in modalità manuale" (P.43)

Scansione di verifica

La caratteristica consente di verificare il numero di pagine del documento immesso (oppure calcolato) prima della scansione a fronte dell'attuale numero di pagine digitalizzate. Se il numero è diverso, viene visualizzato un messaggio di errore.

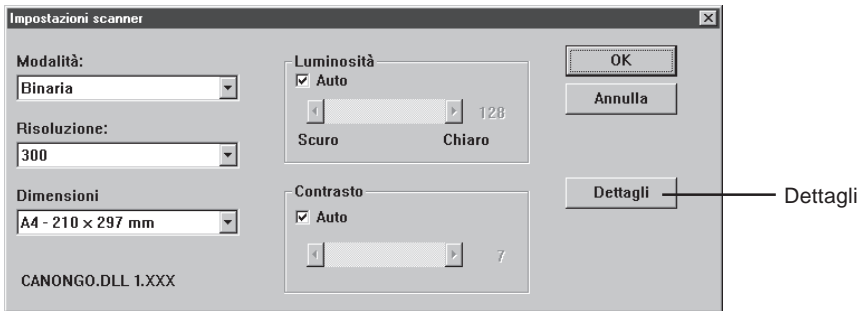
◆ Impostazione della verifica di scansione

1 Selezionare [File] - [Scanner Setting...], oppure cliccare  sulla barra degli strumenti.



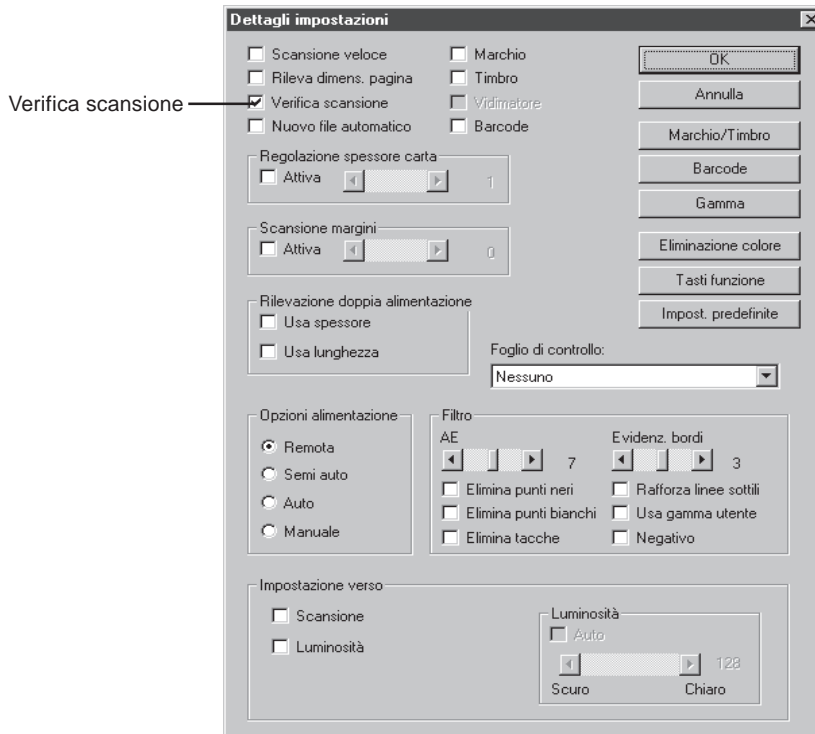
⇒ Viene visualizzata la finestra di dialogo Impostazioni scanner.

2 Nella finestra di dialogo Scanner Setting, cliccare Dettagli.



⇒ Viene visualizzata la finestra di dialogo Dettagli impostazioni.

3 Per selezionare la scansione con verifica del numero di pagine, cliccare la casella di controllo Verifica scansione.



4 Cliccare [OK] per ritornare alla finestra di dialogo Impostazioni scanner.

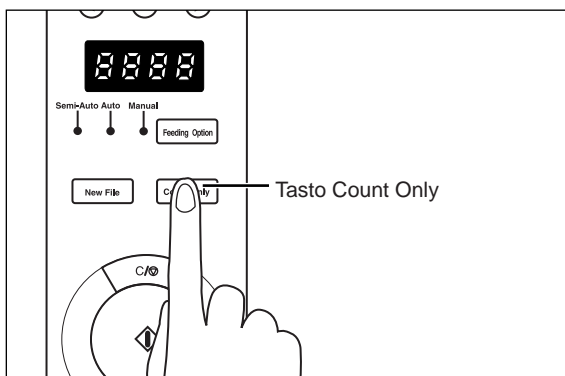
5 Cliccare [OK] per ritornare alla finestra di scansione principale.

◆ Immissione del numero di pagine di un documento

Se si conosce già il numero di pagine del documento

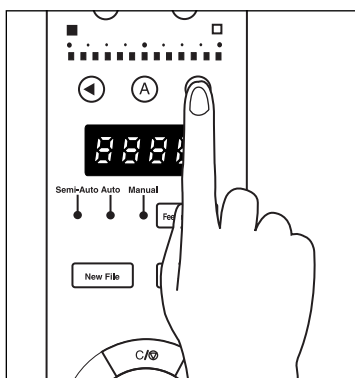
Inserire direttamente il numero di pagine sul display contacopie.

1 Premere il tasto Count Only sul pannello operativo dello scanner.



⇒ Il tasto Count Only e la spia Semi-Auto lampeggiano e il tasto Start diventa verde.

2 Premere i pulsanti ◀ e ▶ sul pannello operativo dello scanner per inserire il numero di pagine.



⇒ Il numero viene visualizzato sul display contacopie.



Premendo il pulsante ▶ i numeri aumentano e premendo il pulsante ◀ i numeri diminuiscono.

Per aumentare o diminuire rapidamente i numeri, tenere premuto il pulsante.

3 Quando si è impostato il numero di pagine del documento, premere il tasto Count Only per annullare la modalità Conteggio.



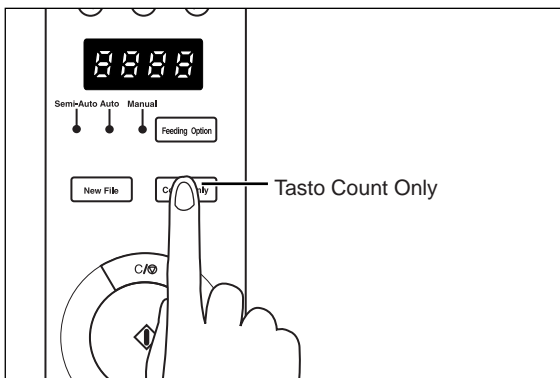
RIFERIMENTO

Per azzerare il display contacopie, tenere premuto per almeno due secondi il tasto Stop.

Se non si conosce il numero di pagine del documento

Usare la funzione di calcolo dello scanner per calcolare il numero delle pagine.

1 Premere il tasto Count Only sul pannello operativo dello scanner.



➔ Il tasto Count Only e la spia Semi-Auto si illuminano e il tasto Start diventa verde.

2 Caricare il documento sul vassoio degli originali e premere il tasto Start.

➔ Il numero di pagine del documento viene conteggiato e il numero delle pagine del documento appare sul display contacopie.

3 Quando il conteggio del numero di pagine del documento è terminato, premere il tasto Count Only per annullare la modalità Conteggio.



RIFERIMENTO

Per azzerare il display contacopie, tenere premuto per almeno due secondi il tasto Stop.

◆ Digitalizzare documenti

Se il numero di pagine immesso (oppure conteggiato) è diverso dall'attuale numero di pagine digitalizzato, sul contatore appare un messaggio di errore dopo che la scansione è terminata.

1 Digitalizzare il documento a seconda dell'attuale modalità di alimentazione selezionata.

Per maggiori dettagli su ciascuna modalità di alimentazione fare riferimento alla pagina indicata.

- Modalità remota: "Digitalizzare due o più pagine" (P.23)
Modalità Semi Auto: "Scansione in modalità Semi Auto" (P.37)
Modalità Auto: "Scansione in modalità Auto" (P.40)
Modalità manuale: "Scansione in modalità manuale" (P.43)

2 Caricare il documento e avviare la scansione.

- **Se l'attuale numero di pagine digitalizzate è superiore al numero di pagine visualizzate sul display contacopie:**

Il documento viene digitalizzato e la scansione si arresta al numero di pagine visualizzato sul display contacopie.

Il display contacopie cambia e visualizza l'errore "U01" e sullo schermo del computer appare il messaggio "Errore di conteggio".

Tornare indietro e avviare di nuovo il conteggio del numero di pagine del documento.



RIFERIMENTO

"U01" viene inoltre visualizzato assieme a un messaggio di errore quando una scansione di verifica viene eseguita senza visualizzare il numero di pagine del documento.

- **Se l'attuale numero di pagine digitalizzate è inferiore al numero di pagine visualizzate sul display contacopie:**

Il display contacopie cambia e visualizza l'errore "U02" per indicare un errore di conteggio di verifica.

Tornare indietro e avviare di nuovo il conteggio del numero di pagine del documento.

Una delle probabili cause è un'alimentazione doppia. Controllare che tutte le pagine del documento siano state digitalizzate.



RIFERIMENTO

Per azzerare la visualizzazione dell'errore, premere il tasto Stop.

2.4

Impostazione delle condizioni di scansione

Impostare le condizioni applicate quando si digitalizza un documento. Selezionare la finestra di dialogo collegata alla funzione ed eseguire l'impostazione desiderata.

Per maggiori dettagli sui parametri di ciascuna di queste finestre di dialogo, vedere la pagina di riferimento indicata per la finestra di dialogo.

- 1** Selezionare [File] - [Scanner Setting...], oppure cliccare  sulla barra degli strumenti.

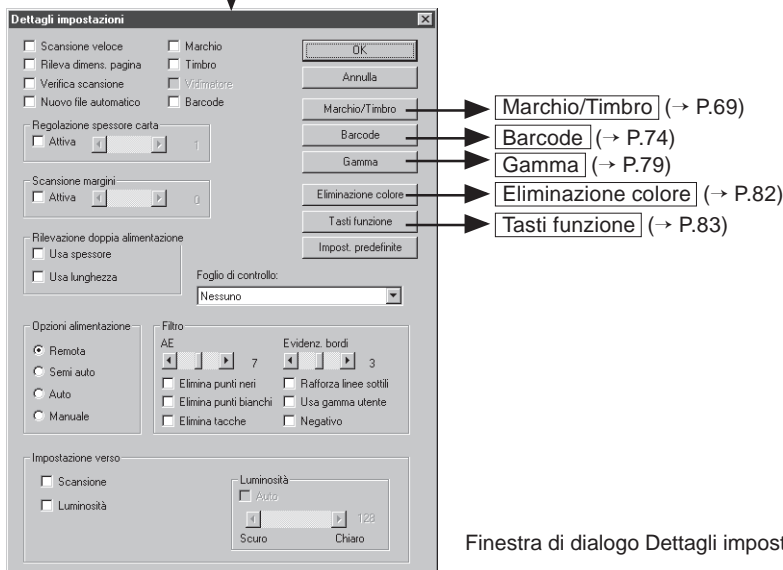


⇒ Appare la finestra di dialogo Impostazioni scanner.

- 2** Visualizzare la schermata di impostazione desiderata ed eseguire le dovute impostazioni.



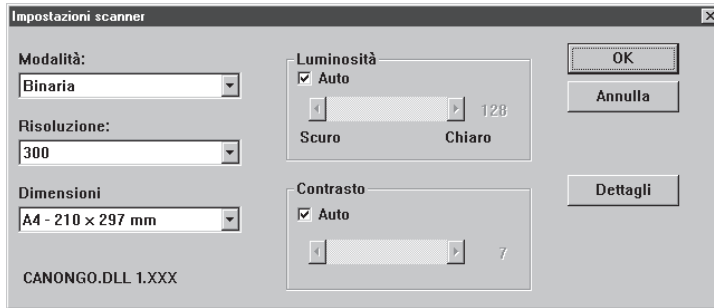
Finestra di dialogo Impostazioni scanner (→ P.61)



Finestra di dialogo Dettagli impostazione (→ P.63)

Impostazioni fondamentali

Impostare le condizioni fondamentali per la scansione dei documenti.
Le impostazioni fondamentali vengono impostate nella finestra di dialogo Impostazioni scanner.



<Impostazione dello scanner>

Voce	Descrizione
Modalità	<p>Imposta come le immagini devono essere digitalizzate. Per DR-5020 è disponibile soltanto [Bianco e nero] [Bianco e nero ED]. A volte, a seconda del formato della carta, le modalità disponibili sono limitate. Per i dettagli, vedere “Tabelle delle modalità di scansione dei modelli DR-5020 e DR-5080C” (P. 88) nelle Istruzioni per il DR-5020/5080C.</p> <p>[Binaria] Con questa impostazione le immagini vengono digitalizzate completamente in bianco e nero senza toni di grigio.</p> <p>[Binaria mezzatinta] Con questa impostazione le immagini vengono digitalizzate completamente in bianco e nero. Le parti in toni di grigio vengono simulate e riprodotte utilizzando la diffusione di errore.</p> <p>[Gradazioni grigio-4 (16, 256) level] Selezionare questa modalità per digitalizzare con la scala dei toni di grigio, foto e documenti in toni di grigio. Più grande è il valore del livello, maggiore è il formato del file.</p> <p>[Colore-3 (6, 12, 24 bit)] Selezionare questa modalità per digitalizzare a colori, foto e documenti in toni di grigio. Più grande è il numero di bit, maggiore è il formato del file.</p>
Risoluzione	<p>Permette di impostare la risoluzione, il numero di punti per pollice (dpi). Le opzioni selezionabili sono 13: 100, 200, 210, 220, 230, 240, 250, 260, 270, 280, 290, 300 e 400. Selezionando 200 o 300, è possibile anche selezionare la Scansione veloce (P. 63) nella finestra di dialogo Dettagli impostazione. A volte, a seconda del formato della carta, le modalità disponibili sono limitate. Per i dettagli, vedere “Tabelle delle modalità di scansione dei modelli DR-5020 e DR-5080C” (P. 88) nelle Istruzioni per il DR-5020/5080C fornite a parte.</p>

Dimensioni	<p>Permette di selezionare il formato della carta del documento da digitalizzare. Le scelte disponibili sono le seguenti:</p> <p>LETTER - 8,5 x 11 pollici LEGAL - 8,5 x 14 pollici A3 - 297 x 420 mm A4 - 210 x 297 mm A4-R - 297 x 210 mm A5 - 148 x 210 mm A6 - 105 x 148 mm B4 (ISO) - 250 x 353 mm B4 (JIS) - 257 x 364 mm B5 (ISO) - 176 x 250 mm B5 (JIS) - 182 x 257 mm Massimo per lo scanner (295 x 432 mm)</p> <p>Se viene digitalizzato un documento più grande del formato specificato, i bordi intorno al documento vengono tagliati. Viceversa, se viene digitalizzato un documento più piccolo del formato specificato, sui bordi intorno al documento viene aggiunto un margine nero.</p> <p>Quando nella finestra di dialogo Detail Settings viene selezionato Rileva formato pagina (P. 63), questa impostazione viene ignorata.</p>
Luminosità	<p>Imposta automaticamente o manualmente la luminosità dell'immagine. Quando si imposta la luminosità manualmente, si può impostare in un range da 1 a 255.</p>
Contrasto	<p>Imposta il contrasto manualmente o automaticamente. Quando si imposta il contrasto manualmente, è possibile impostare in un range da 1 a 13. Un valore più grande fa aumentare il contrasto e un valore più piccolo lo fa diminuire.</p>



RIFERIMENTO

- Le impostazioni del contrasto vengono disabilitate quando si imposta [Modalità] su [Binaria].
- Su DR-5020, la finestra di controllo [Contrasto] è grigia quando [Modalità] è impostata su [Binaria].

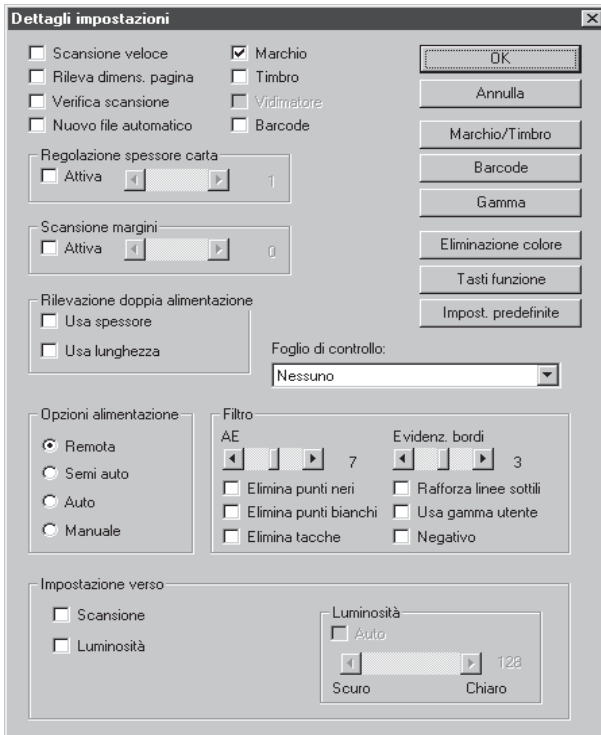
<Pulsanti>

Voce	Descrizione
OK	Dopo avere eseguito le impostazioni, cliccare [OK] per attivarle e chiudere la finestra di dialogo.
Annulla	Annulla tutte le modifiche alle impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.
Dettagli	Apri la finestra di dialogo Detail Settings (P. 63) in modo che si possano impostare le opzioni specifiche quali filtro, velocità, rilevamento formato pagina e rilevamento foglio di controllo.

Impostazioni dettagliate

Impostare le condizioni di scansione dettagliate.

Queste voci vengono impostate nella finestra di dialogo Dettagli impostazioni.



Voce	Descrizione
Scansione veloce	<p>Questa impostazione è disponibile quando viene impostata la risoluzione 200 o 300 dpi.</p> <p>Quando viene impostato 200 dpi, le immagini vengono digitalizzate a 200 x 100 dpi (orizzontale x verticale) ed emesse come immagini a 200 x 200 dpi.</p> <p>Quando viene impostato 300 dpi, le immagini vengono digitalizzate a 300 x 150 dpi (orizzontale x verticale)) ed emesse come immagini a 300 x 300 dpi.</p> <p>Sebbene la scansione venga eseguita più velocemente in entrambi i casi, ricordare che la qualità delle immagini digitalizzate ad alta velocità diminuisce leggermente.</p> <p>Per i dettagli sulla scansione veloce, vedere “Scansione veloce” (P. 52).</p>
Rileva dimens. pagina	<p>Il DR-5020/5080C imposta l'area di scansione in base alla larghezza e alla lunghezza rilevate del documento e digitalizza tutta la pagina.</p> <p>Quando viene selezionata, Dimensioni (P. 62) nella finestra di dialogo Impostazioni scanner, viene disattivata.</p>

Verifica scansione	<p>Verifica il numero di pagine contato prima della scansione del documento rispetto al numero effettivo di pagine digitalizzate. Se il numero è diverso, viene visualizzato un errore. Per i dettagli sulla procedura Verify Scan (scansione di verifica), vedere a P. 54.</p>
Nuovo file automatico	<p>Con questa impostazione viene generato un segnale di interruzione pagina ogni volta che finisce una scansione continua.</p>
Marchio	<p>Attiva le funzione di stampa per stampare specifici caratteri sui documenti digitalizzati. Occorre l'unità di stampa opzionale.</p>
Timbro	<p>Attiva la funzione timbro per stampare specifici caratteri sull'immagine digitalizzata.</p>
Vidimatore	<p>Attiva l'uso del vidimatore. Per usare questa funzione è necessario il vidimatore opzionale.</p>
Barcode	<p>Attiva la funzione codici a barre per la lettura dei codici a barre nei documenti. Per utilizzare questa funzione è necessario il decodificatore di codici a barre, opzionale.</p>
Regolazione spessore carta	<p>Imposta manualmente lo spessore della carta quando non viene usata la regolazione automatica dello spessore della carta. Selezionare la casella di controllo Attiva e usare i tasti < e > per regolare lo spessore. Specificare lo spessore nell'intervallo da 1 (più sottile) a 13 (più spessa). Usare questa impostazione per regolare a mano lo spessore della carta quando vengono digitalizzati originali con coperture speciali e documenti il cui lo spessore della carta non può essere regolato automaticamente o quando si verifica frequentemente la doppia alimentazione nella modalità di regolazione automatica dello spessore della carta. Questa voce può essere impostata anche sul pannello operativo dello scanner. Per i dettagli, far riferimento alle Istruzioni per DR-5020/5080C per l'hardware fornite separatamente.</p>

Scansione margini	<p>Per regolare i margini (superiore, inferiore, sinistro e destro) dell'area di scansione.</p> <p>Per regolare i margini, cliccare Attiva e usare i pulsanti ◀ e ▶.</p> <p>Specificare un valore nell'intervallo -10 (riduce l'area di scansione di 10 mm) e +10 (aumenta l'area di scansione di 10 mm).</p> <p>Per esempio, se si desidera aumentare leggermente l'area di scansione in modo che i bordi del documento non vengano tagliati, regolare nella direzione +. Oppure, se si desidera ridurre leggermente l'area di scansione in modo che non venga aggiunta una cornice nera intorno all'immagine digitalizzata, regolare nella direzione -.</p>
Rilevazione doppia alimentazione	<p>Seleziona il metodo usato per rilevare la doppia alimentazione. Viene rilevata "Doppia alimentazione" quando due o più fogli del documento vengono alimentati assieme o quando una parte di un foglio si sovrappone a un altro foglio quando i fogli nel documento vengono digitalizzati in modo continuo.</p> <p>[Usa spessore]</p> <p>Rileva la doppia alimentazione in base allo spessore della carta. Se viene alimentato un documento(*) di spessore maggiore del primo foglio del documento, lo scanner giudica questa cosa come doppia alimentazione e visualizza un errore.</p> <p>[Usa lunghezza]</p> <p>Rileva la doppia alimentazione in base alla lunghezza della carta. Se viene alimentato un documento di lunghezza maggiore del primo foglio del documento(*), lo scanner giudica questa cosa come doppia alimentazione e visualizza un errore.</p> <p>* Il rilevamento di doppia alimentazione viene eseguito considerando lo spessore e la lunghezza del primo foglio del documento come foglio standard. Quando il primo foglio del documento viene alimentato, lo scanner memorizza lo spessore e la lunghezza del documento.</p>

<p>Foglio di controllo</p>	<p>Per selezionare la modalità di rilevamento dei fogli di controllo dello scanner (fogli di funzione) (P. 48).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Nessuno I fogli di controllo dello scanner non vengono rilevati. - Scansione e continuazione Il foglio di controllo dello scanner viene rilevato e digitalizzato, poi continua la scansione. - Salto e continuazione Il foglio di controllo dello scanner viene rilevato e saltato (non digitalizzato), poi continua la scansione. - Scansione e interruzione Il foglio di controllo dello scanner viene rilevato e digitalizzato, poi la scansione si arresta. - Salto e interruzione Il foglio di controllo dello scanner viene rilevato e saltato (non digitalizzato), poi la scansione si arresta. <p>Per i dettagli su come digitalizzare con Fogli di controllo, vedere "Fogli funzione" nelle Istruzioni per il DR-5020/5080C, fornite a parte.</p>
<p>Opzioni alimentazione</p>	<p>Per selezionare il metodo di alimentazione.</p> <p>Remota: Il documento comincia ad essere alimentato (digitalizzato) quando viene caricato e vengono date le istruzioni di digitalizzazione nell'applicazione.</p> <p>Semi auto: Il documento viene fatto avanzare (digitalizzato) quando la scansione viene avviata dall'applicazione e quando il documento viene caricato e poi viene premuto il tasto di avvio.</p> <p>Auto: Il documento viene fatto avanzare (digitalizzato) automaticamente quando viene caricato.</p> <p>Manuale: Il documento viene fatto avanzare a mano una pagina per volta dopo che è stata avviata la scansione dall'applicazione. Usarlo per digitalizzare pagine particolarmente spesse o sottili.</p> <p>Questa voce può anche essere impostata sul pannello operativo dello scanner. Per i dettagli, far riferimento alle Istruzioni per il DR-5020/5080C, fornite a parte.</p>
<p>Impostazione verso</p>	<p>Impostare questa voce per digitalizzare il retro dei documenti.</p> <p>[Scansione] Digitalizza il retro del documento (i documenti vengono caricati a faccia in giù nello scanner).</p> <p>[Luminosità] Imposta automaticamente o manualmente la luminosità dell'immagine. Quando si imposta la luminosità manualmente, si può impostare in un range da 1 a 255.</p>



RIFERIMENTO

- Quando è evidenziata la finestra di controllo [Scansione], l'impostazione del Feeder sulla finestra di dialogo [Start Scanning] diventa [Simplex].
- Quando si procede alla scansione con la finestra di controllo [Scansione] evidenziata e il Feeder è impostato su [Duplex], la finestra di controllo [Scansione] diventa grigia nel caso in cui sia aperta la finestra di dialogo [Dettagli impostazioni].
- Per tornare alla visualizzazione solita (non grigia) della finestra di controllo [Scansione] è sufficiente fare clic sulla finestra stessa.

<Impostazione dei filtri>

Impostare i filtri di elaborazione delle immagini.

Voce	Descrizione
AE	Specificare il livello di contrasto nell'intervallo da 1 a 13 cliccando i pulsanti ◀ e ▶. Il valore predefinito è 7.
Evidenz. bordi	Imposta il livello di enfaticizzazione per marcare i contorni dei caratteri ed eliminare le irregolarità delle immagini quali le foto. Questa voce può essere impostata in 5 incrementi utilizzando i pulsanti ◀ e ▶. Il valore predefinito è 3.
Elimina punti neri	Elimina automaticamente i punti neri (punti singoli) su sfondi bianchi.
Elimina Punti bianchi	Elimina automaticamente i punti bianchi (punti singoli) su sfondi neri.
Elimina tacche	Elimina automaticamente le parti sporgenti (punte) dai contorni.
Rafforza linee sottili	Unisce automaticamente le linee sottili tratteggiate che si formano quando si digitalizzano documenti contenenti linee sottili.
Usa gamma utente	Selezionare questa voce quando si vogliono usare i dati gamma letti con il pulsante Gamma.
Negativo	Stampa un'immagine digitalizzata in negativo.



RIFERIMENTO

- [AE] è abilitata quando [Modalità] è impostato su [Binaria].
- [Enfatizza contorni] è abilitata in tutte le modalità.
- [Elimina punti neri], [Elimina punti bianchi], [Elimina punte] e [Rafforza linee sottili] vengono abilitate quando [Modo] è impostato su [Bianco e nero], [Bianco e nero ED] o [Colore a 3 bit].

<Pulsanti>

Voce	Descrizione
OK	Attiva le impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.
Annulla	Annulla tutte le modifiche alle impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.
Marchio/ Timbro	Apri la finestra di dialogo Stampa/timbro (P. 69). Per impostare la funzione stampa o la funzione timbro. La funzione stampa serve per stampare caratteri particolari sul documento digitalizzato quando è stata installata l'unità di stampa opzionale. La funzione timbro serve per aggiungere immagini digitalizzate con caratteri particolari.
Barcode	Apri la finestra di dialogo Codici a barre (P. 74). Per impostare i parametri di lettura dei codici a barre quando è stato installato il decodificatore di codici a barre opzionale.
Gamma	Apri la finestra di dialogo Gamma (P. 79). Carica e salva in un file i dati gamma, per l'espressione dei colori e dei toni. I dati gamma caricati vengono attivati quando viene selezionato Uso Utente Gamma.
Eliminazione colore	Apri la finestra di dialogo Elimina colore (P. 82). Disattiva la digitalizzazione di colori specifici (esclusi) del documento. Questa funzione è disponibile solo per il DR-5080C.
Tasti funzione	Apri la finestra di dialogo Impostazioni dei tasti funzione (P. 83). Imposta la registrazione di specifiche funzioni da assegnare ai tasti di funzione dello scanner.
Impost. predefinite	Cliccare questo pulsante per ripristinare tutte le impostazioni predefinite.



RIFERIMENTO

La voce Elimina è valida quando la modalità di digitalizzazione è impostata su Bianco e nero, Bianco e nero ED o Toni di grigio.

Impostazioni di stampa/timbro

Quando la stampante opzionale viene installata, sul documento digitalizzato può essere stampato qualsiasi carattere e conteggio. Quando viene usata la funzione Timbro, all'immagine digitalizzata può essere aggiunto qualsiasi carattere o conteggio.

Le stringhe dei caratteri da stampare oppure aggiunte con la funzione Timbro e le relative condizioni di stampa vengono impostate nella finestra di dialogo Imposta marchio/timbro.

Le impostazioni eseguite in questa finestra di dialogo vengono applicate sia alla stampante che alla funzione Timbro. Così, le stringhe dei caratteri stampate con la stampante sono le stesse delle stringhe dei caratteri aggiunte con la funzione Timbro.



RIFERIMENTO

- La funzione Timbro può essere usata anche se la stampante non è installata.
- Se si imposta la funzione Timbro e si digitalizza il documento in modalità fronte-retro, i caratteri vengono stampati sull'immagine della facciata frontale del documento (la facciata rivolta verso l'alto quando si alimenta il documento).

Voce	Descrizione
Testo	<p>Immettere i dettagli da stampare (Timbro). È possibile immettere fino a 32(*) tra i seguenti caratteri:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Numeri (da 0 a 9) • Caratteri alfabetici (maiuscoli e minuscoli) • Spazio (vuoto) • I seguenti simboli: ! " # \$ % & ' () * + - . / : ; < = > ? @ [\] ^ _ { } ~ ` <p>I caratteri sopra esposti vengono stampati (Timbro) così come vengono immessi. In aggiunta a questi caratteri, contatori, data, orario e frecce possono essere specificati come caratteri speciali.</p>

<Contatore>

Per stampare (Timbro) un contatore, specificare un numero chiuso tra le parentesi [].

Il numero chiuso tra le parentesi [] diventa il numero di avvio del contatore e la numerazione delle cifre immesse diventa la numerazione delle cifre del contatore.

Per impostare due contatori, immettere due contatori separati da "." (punto) nel formato "Contatore 1. Contatore 2". (Vedere l'esempio di immissione che segue.)

La temporizzazione che il contatore ha aumentato o diminuito viene impostata in "Impostazione Contatore 1/Contatore 2" descritta più avanti. (Quando viene impostato soltanto il Contatore 1, impostare la temporizzazione in "Impostazione Contatore 1".)

[Immissione]	[Risultato Stampa/Timbro]
CANON[10001.00001]	CANON 10001 00001

<Ora>

Per stampare (Timbro) l'ora in cui il documento è stato digitalizzato, immettere "\TIME".

L'ora dell'orologio a 24 ore (Timbro) viene stampato in otto cifre come segue.

(Esempio: 16:28:30)

[Immissione]	[Risultato Stampa/Timbro]
\TIME	16:28:30

<Data>

Per stampare (Timbro) la data in cui il documento è stato digitalizzato, immettere "\MDY", "\DMY", oppure "\YMD" come combinazione di Y (anno), M (mese) oppure D (giorno).

La data nel calendario occidentale viene stampata (Timbro) in dieci cifre come segue.

Anno, mese e giorno vengono separati da una barra "/".

(Esempio: 2001/9/3/4 (Marzo 4, 2001))

[Immissione]	[Risultato Stampa/Timbro]
\YMD	2001/03/04

	<p><Freccia> Per stampare (Timbro), immettere quanto segue:</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>[Immissione]</td> <td>[Risultato Stampa/Timbro]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>\u</td> <td>↑</td> </tr> <tr> <td>\d</td> <td>↓</td> </tr> <tr> <td>\l</td> <td>←</td> </tr> <tr> <td>\r</td> <td>→</td> </tr> </table> <p>(*) Per essere più precisi, è possibile stampare fino a 32 caratteri (Timbro). Quando si immette un contatore, data oppure orario, il numero dei caratteri attualmente stampati (Timbro) supera i 32 anche se il numero dei caratteri immessi è compreso in 32. Se ciò accade, viene visualizzato un messaggio di errore. Nell'esempio qui in basso, l'esito stampa/Timbro è di 32 caratteri benché ne siano stati immessi 25.</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>[Immissione]</td> <td>[Risultato Stampa/Timbro]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CANON \YMD \TIME [000001]</td> <td>CANON 2001/03/04 16:28:30 000001</td> </tr> </table>	[Immissione]	[Risultato Stampa/Timbro]	\u	↑	\d	↓	\l	←	\r	→	[Immissione]	[Risultato Stampa/Timbro]	CANON \YMD \TIME [000001]	CANON 2001/03/04 16:28:30 000001
[Immissione]	[Risultato Stampa/Timbro]														
\u	↑														
\d	↓														
\l	←														
\r	→														
[Immissione]	[Risultato Stampa/Timbro]														
CANON \YMD \TIME [000001]	CANON 2001/03/04 16:28:30 000001														
Offset orizzontale (mm)	Specificare la posizione sull'immagine digitalizzata, la distanza in mm dal margine sinistro dell'apertura di alimentazione della carta dalla direzione di avanzamento, per aggiungere caratteri e contatori quando si utilizza la funzione timbro.														
Offset verticale (mm)	Specificare la posizione per stampare o aggiungere i caratteri come distanza in mm dal margine superiore del documento.														
Pagine	Seleziona quale pagina da stampare o timbrare. [Pagina] Stampa o aggiunge su ciascuna pagina. [Separatore] Stampa o aggiunge sulla pagina successiva indicata con il Foglio di divisione lavoro o il tasto New File.														

<p>Tipo timbro</p>	<p>Seleziona come devono essere aggiunte le lettere sui dati.</p> <p>[Nero su bianco] Stampa (aggiunge) lettere nere su uno sfondo bianco.</p> <p>DR-5020/5080C</p> <p>[Bianco su nero] Stampa (aggiunge) lettere nere su uno sfondo nero.</p> <p>DR-5020/5080C</p> <p>[Nero su immagine] Stampa (aggiunge) lettere nere sull'immagine.</p> <p>DR-5020/5080C</p>
<p>Orientamento</p>	<p>Seleziona l'orientamento dei caratteri da stampare o aggiungere.</p> <p>[Orizzontale] (predefinita) Senza rotazione dei caratteri.</p> <p>[Verticale] Rotazione di 90 gradi in senso orario</p> <p>[180 gradi] Rotazione di 180 gradi</p> <p>[270 gradi] Rotazione di 270 gradi in senso orario</p>
<p>Caratteri piccoli</p>	<p>Stampa (aggiunge) caratteri utilizzando un carattere piccolo (8 x 7 punti). (Il formato normale è 12 x 12 punti.) Quando si utilizza la funzione timbro, il formato dei caratteri come l'immagine cambia in funzione della risoluzione a cui il documento viene digitalizzato.</p> <p>Formato normale <i>CANON canon</i></p> <p>Carattere piccolo <i>CANON canon</i></p>
<p>Da destra a sinistra</p>	<p>Stampa (aggiunge) caratteri da destra a sinistra.</p>

<Impostazioni primo e secondo contatore>

In una stringa di testo possono essere impostati due contatori. Quando viene impostato un contatore, impostare i dettagli del contatore.

Voce	Descrizione
Trigger incremento	Seleziona quando deve essere incrementato il contatore tra i seguenti: [Separatore] Quando viene inserito un foglio di divisione lavoro oppure viene cambiato il file di destinazione memorizzazione. [Pagina] Quando cambia la pagina. [Mai] Nessuno (default)
Incremento	Imposta l'incremento del contatore
Trigger azzeram.	Seleziona quando deve essere azzerato il contatore tra i seguenti: [Separatore] Quando viene inserito un foglio di divisione lavoro. [Pagina] Quando cambia la pagina. [Mai] Nessuno (default)
Valore iniziale	Imposta il valore iniziale del contatore (il primo valore dopo l'azzeramento). Il valore predefinito è 0.

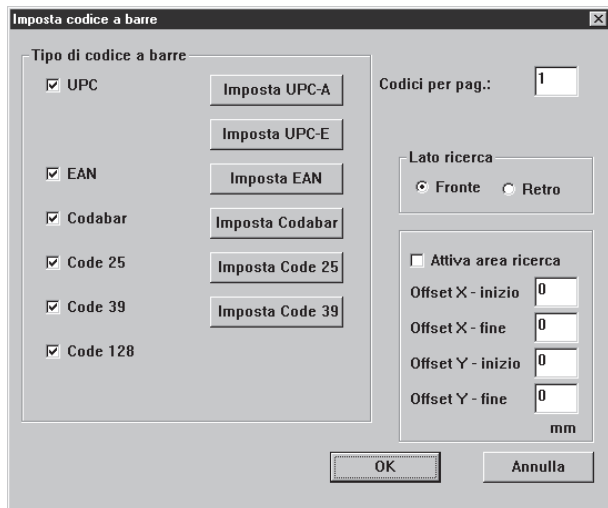
<Pulsanti>

Voce	Descrizione
OK	Attiva le impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.
Annulla	Annulla tutte le modifiche alle impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.

Impostazioni del decodificatore di codici a barre

Eseguire le impostazioni per la lettura dei codici a barre. Queste impostazioni sono attivabili soltanto quando viene installato il decodificatore di codici a barre opzionale.

Queste voci vengono impostate nella finestra di dialogo Imposta codice a barre.



RIFERIMENTO

- Quando due o più tipi di codice a barre sono allineati in orizzontale, potrebbe verificarsi un errore di riconoscimento. Selezionare solo un tipo di codice a barre nell'impostazione dell'area dei codici a barre.
- I codici a barre con codici di timbro non possono essere rilevati contemporaneamente ai codici a barre senza codici di timbro. Quando si digitalizza originali contenenti sia codici a barre con codici di timbro che codici a barre senza codici di timbro, prima di cominciare l'operazione di digitalizzazione, si raccomanda di impostare l'area per rilevare nell'impostazione dell'area dei codici a barre.
- Quando 400 dpi e scansione duplex sono impostate, possono essere rilevati solo i codici a barre all'interno della larghezza A4.
- In caso di digitalizzazione di originali contenenti due o più codici a barre, se si vuole rilevare solo uno specifico tipo di codice a barre, impostare l'area per rilevare nell'impostazione dell'area dei codici a barre. Quando quest'area viene impostata nell'impostazione dell'area dei codici a barre, anche i codici a barre che cadono fuori dall'area di scansione vengono rilevati.
- Se non si conosce il tipo di codice a barre, marcare tutte le caselle di controllo dei codici a barre prima di digitalizzare l'originale in modo che tutti i tipi di codice a barre vengano automaticamente rilevati e la somma di controllo non venga digitalizzata.
- Quando un codice a barre viene digitalizzato, viene creato automaticamente il file "Barcode.log" nella cartella \Scanning Utility 5000.

<Tipo di codice a barre>

Impostare il tipo di codice a barre da leggere con il decodificatore di codici a barre.

Voce	Descrizione
UPC	Cliccare qui per leggere i codici a barre UPC.
EAN	Cliccare qui per leggere i codici a barre EAN.
Codabar	Cliccare qui per leggere i codici a barre Codabar.
Code 25	Cliccare qui per leggere i codici a barre Code 25.
Code 39	Cliccare qui per leggere i codici a barre Code 39.
Code 128	Cliccare qui per leggere i codici a barre Code 128.

<Impostazioni di scansione>

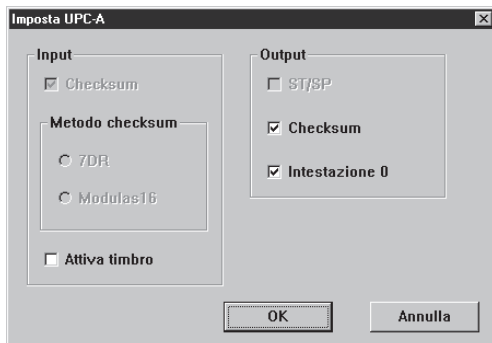
Voce	Descrizione
Codici per pag.	Impostare il numero di codici a barre da leggere per pagina (da 1 a 4).
Lato ricerca	Selezionare il lato da leggere (fronte o retro).
Area	Imposta l'area di ricerca in cui il codice a barre deve essere letto. Controllare la casella di controllo Attiva area di ricerca e immettere i valori.

<Pulsanti>

Voce	Descrizione
OK	Attiva le impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.
Annulla	Annulla tutte le modifiche alle impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.

◆ Impostazioni del codice a barre UPC-A

Impostare i dettagli dei codici a barre UPC-A.



[Input] - [Attiva timbro]

Cliccare qui per leggere i codici timbro. (L'impostazione fatta qui viene anche riflessa nel codice a barre UPC-E.)

[Output] - [Checksum]

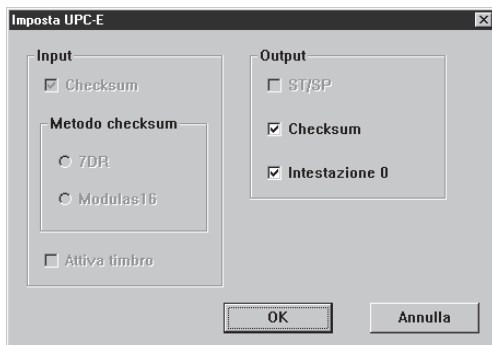
Cliccare qui per attivare l'emissione del codice di somma di controllo.

[Output] - [Intestazione 0]

Cliccare qui per attivare l'emissione della testata sui codici UPC.

◆ Impostazioni del codice a barre UPC-E

Impostare i dettagli dei codici a barre UPC-E.



[Output] - [Checksum]

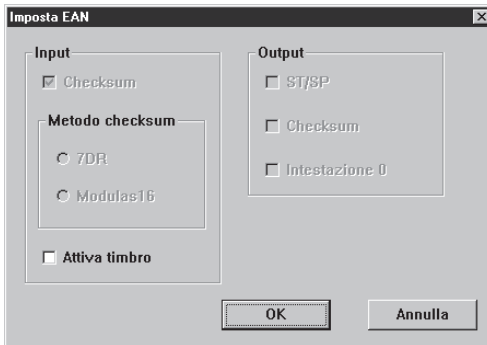
Cliccare qui per attivare l'emissione del codice di somma di controllo.

[Output] - [Intestazione 0]

Cliccare qui per attivare l'emissione della testata sui codici UPC.

◆ Impostazioni del codice a barre EAN

Impostare i dettagli dei codici a barre EAN.

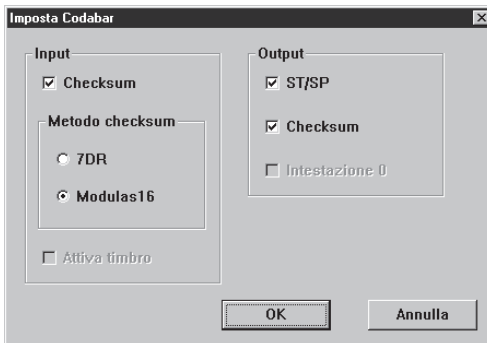


[Input] - [Attiva timbro]

Cliccare qui per leggere i codici timbro.

◆ Impostazioni del codice a barre Codabar

Impostare i dettagli dei codici a barre Codabar.



[Input] - [Checksum]

Cliccare qui per leggere i codici di somma di controllo.

[Input] - [7DR]

Cliccare qui quando la somma di controllo calcolata con Codabar legge un codice a barre 7DR.

[Input] - [Modulus16]

Cliccare qui quando la somma di controllo calcolata con Codabar legge un codice a barre Modulus16.

[Output] - [ST/SP]

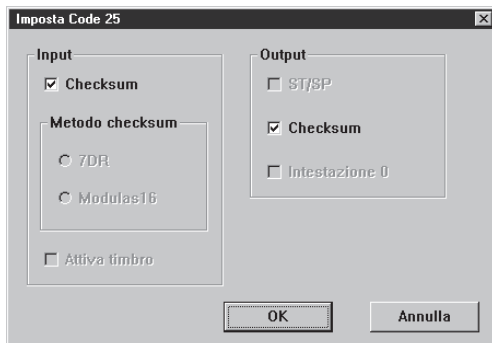
Cliccare qui per attivare l'emissione dei codici start/stop.

[Output] - [Checksum]

Quando [Input] - [Checksum] viene selezionata, è possibile impostare se stampare o meno il codice di somma di controllo.

◆ Impostazioni del codice a barre Code 25

Impostare i dettagli dei codici a barre Code 25.



[Input] - [Checksum]

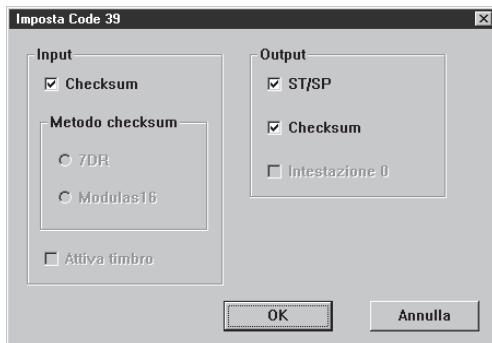
Cliccare qui per leggere i codici di somma di controllo.

[Output] - [Checksum]

Quando [Input] - [Checksum] viene selezionata, è possibile impostare se stampare o meno il codice di somma di controllo.

◆ Impostazioni del codice a barre Code 39

Impostare i dettagli dei codici a barre Code 39.



[Input] - [Checksum]

Cliccare qui per leggere i codici di somma di controllo.

[Output] - [ST/SP]

Cliccare qui per attivare l'emissione dei codici start/stop.

[Output] - [Checksum]

Quando [Input] - [Checksum] viene selezionata, è possibile impostare se stampare o meno il codice di somma di controllo.

Impostazioni Curva Gamma

Impostare la curva gamma.



RIFERIMENTO

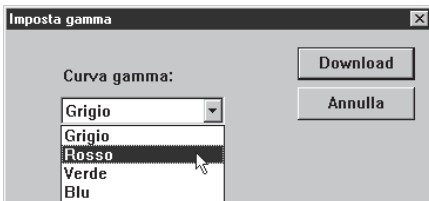
La “impostazione curva gamma” per regolare i valori di uscita (uscita verso il computer) usa i dati curva gamma predisposti dall’utente rispettando i valori d’ingresso di 256 livelli di luminosità nell’immagine digitalizzata.

Per il grigio (nero e bianco), rosso, verde e blu vengono impostate curve gamma individuali.

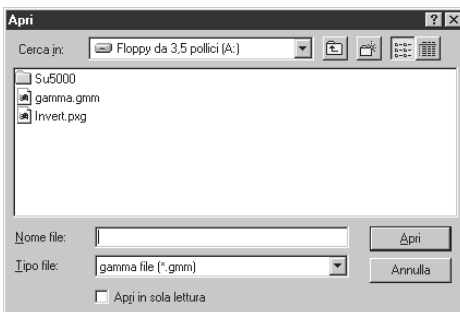
La curva gamma qui impostata è disabilitata fino a quando si esegue il controllo [Usa gamma utente] nell’impostazione dei filtri (P.67).

1 **Predisporre i dati della curva gamma adattati alla curva gamma.**
(Vedere “Predisposizione dei dati curva gamma” a P.80.)

2 **Selezionare il colore per il quale deve essere impostata la curva gamma.**



3 **Cliccare [Download] e selezionare dati curva gamma predisposti.**



4 Cliccare [Apri]. Questo imposta la curva gamma e riporta il display alla finestra di dialogo Detail Settings.

5 Per impostare la curva gamma di altri colori, ripetere dal punto 1 al punto 4.

◆ Predisposizione dei dati della curva gamma

I dati della curva gamma vengono memorizzati in un file di testo (*.gmm) formato da 258 linee. Questo file descrive i valori di uscita per ciascuno dei 256 livelli dei valori d'ingresso.

Inserire un commento nella prima linea di questo file e "256" nella seconda linea di questo file. Nelle linee dalla terza in avanti va inserito il valore di uscita di ciascun valore d'ingresso. Inserire "0", "1", "2" e così via dalla terza linea in avanti e "255" il valore d'ingresso nella 258^a linea.

L'immissione di valori bassi per i dati della curva gamma determina un'immagine scura e valori alti determinano un'immagine chiara.

◆ Esempio

Di norma, vengono predisposte curve gamma inclinate verso destra. Tuttavia è possibile predisporre una curva gamma inclinata verso sinistra invertendo tutti i valori di uscita. Ne risulta, che anche l'immagine di uscita sarà invertita.

Dati della curva gamma

1^a linea: curva gamma

2^a linea: 256

3^a linea: 0

4^a linea: 1

5^a linea: 2

|

253^a linea: 250

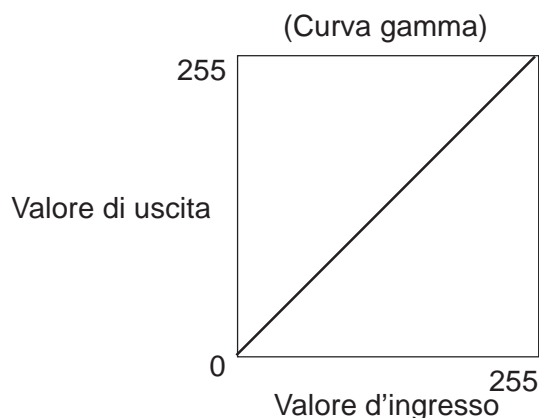
254^a linea: 251

255^a linea: 252

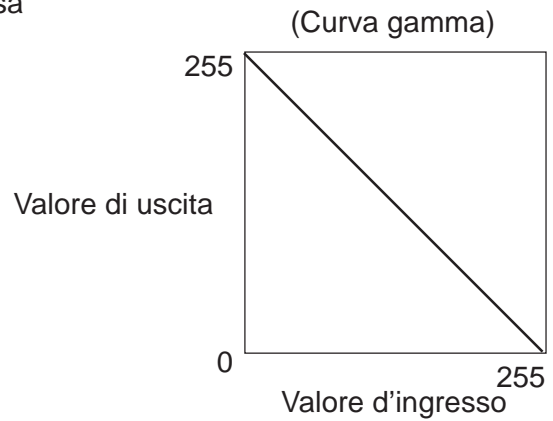
256^a linea: 253

257^a linea: 254

258^a linea: 255



Dati della curva gamma (inversa)

1^a linea: curva gamma lineare inversa2^a linea: 2563^a linea: 2554^a linea: 2545^a linea: 253|
253^a linea: 5254^a linea: 4255^a linea: 3256^a linea: 2257^a linea: 1258^a linea: 0

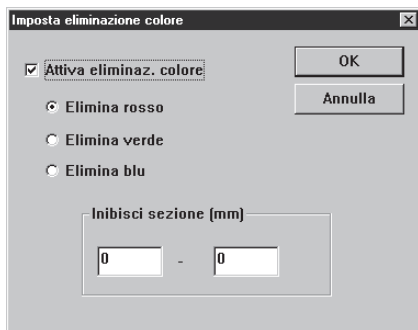
RIFERIMENTO

Le informazioni sui dati della curva gamma si trovano all'interno dello scanner e anche se lo scanner viene spento non vengono cancellate. Le informazioni sulla curva gamma non vengono cambiate fino a quando si caricano altri dati della curva gamma.

Impostazioni di Elimina colore (supportato soltanto da DR-5080C)

Disattiva la digitalizzazione di colori specifici (esclusi) nei documenti, parti rosso, blu o verdi.

Impostare l'esclusione nella finestra di dialogo Imposta eliminazione colore.



Voce	Descrizione
Attiva eliminaz. colore (Specificare il colore)	Cliccare qui per attivare la funzione di esclusione colore. [Elimina rosso] Non vengono digitalizzate le parti di colore rosso del documento. [Elimina verde] Non vengono digitalizzate le parti di colore verde del documento. [Elimina blu] Non vengono digitalizzate le parti di colore blu del documento.
Inibisci sezione (mm)	Si può specificare un'area in cui il colore non deve essere escluso. Specificare il punto iniziale sul margine sinistro e sul margine destro. Specificare tutti i punti come una distanza in mm dal margine superiore della carta.

<Pulsanti>

Voce	Descrizione
OK	Attiva le impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.
Annulla	Annulla tutte le modifiche alle impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.

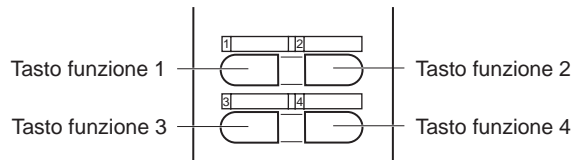
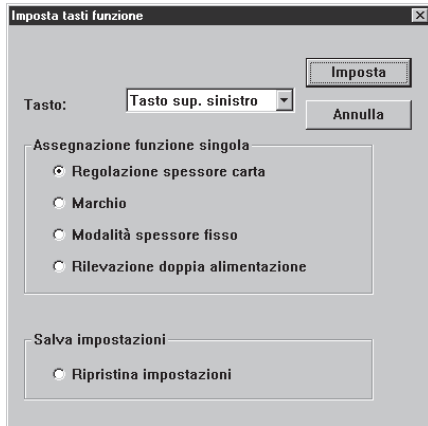


RIFERIMENTO

- La voce Elimina è valida quando la modalità di digitalizzazione è impostata su Bianco e nero, Bianco e nero ED o Toni di grigio.
- Quando è impostata la voce [Inibisci sezione], ai margini della sezione dell'immagine scansionata da cui il colore non viene eliminato possono apparire delle righe.

Impostazioni dei tasti di funzione

Specificare le funzioni da assegnare ai tasti di funzione dello scanner.
Le impostazioni dei tasti di funzione vengono eseguite nella finestra di dialogo Imposta tasti funzione.



Voce	Descrizione
No. tasto	Selezionare dal menu a cascata il tasto a cui assegnare la funzione.
Assegnazione di una singola funzione	<p>Si possono assegnare le seguenti quattro funzioni ai tasti di funzione. Per i dettagli di queste funzioni e le loro impostazioni predefinite, far riferimento alle "Impostazioni dei tasti di funzione" nelle Istruzioni per il DR-5020/5080C fornite a parte. (P.60)</p> <p>[Regolazione spessore carta] Regola manualmente lo spessore della carta</p> <p>[Marchio] Seleziona se usare o meno la stampante quando la stampante opzionale è installata.</p> <p>[Modalità spessore fisso] Imposta lo spessore della carta su un valore fisso.</p> <p>[Rilevazione doppia alimentazione] Rileva automaticamente la doppia alimentazione. Viene rilevata "Doppia alimentazione" quando due o più fogli del documento vengono alimentati assieme o quando una parte di un foglio si sovrappone a un altro foglio.</p>
Salva impostazioni	<p>In aggiunta a Assegnazione di una singola funzione, descritta sopra, è possibile anche memorizzare le impostazioni dello scanner.</p> <p>[Ripristina impostazioni] Selezionando questa funzione si memorizza sotto i tasti di funzione le impostazioni dello scanner che vengono impostate quando il tasto [Set] viene cliccato.</p>

<Pulsanti>

Voce	Descrizione
Imposta	Attiva le impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.
Annulla	Annulla tutte le modifiche alle impostazioni e chiude la finestra di dialogo.

Capitolo 3

Guida e rimedi in caso di problemi di funzionamento

Questo capitolo descrive le cause dei guasti che potrebbero verificarsi e come rimediarvi.

3.1	Quando appare un messaggio d'errore	86
3.2	Quando l'immagine digitalizzata non è normale	88



Quando appare un messaggio d'errore

Messaggi d'errore possono essere visualizzati se il documento non viene digitalizzato in modo corretto. Confrontare il tipo di errore con il codice d'errore e rimediare secondo le seguenti istruzioni.

Messaggio **JAM occurred. Remove the paper.**

Rimedio Si è verificato un inceppamento della carta nello scanner. Rimuovere la carta inceppata. Per maggiori dettagli vedere Istruzioni per DR-5020/5080C fornite a parte.

Messaggio **Cover is opened. Close the cover.**

Rimedio Il coperchio dello scanner (unità superiore) è aperto. Chiudere il coperchio.

Messaggio **Scanner is not found. Check the cable.**

Rimedio 1 Il computer non riconosce lo scanner. Controllare che il computer e lo scanner siano correttamente collegati con un cavo.

Rimedio 2 Questo messaggio può essere visualizzato durante il riconoscimento dello scanner da parte del computer. In questo caso, una delle probabili cause è che la scheda SCSI non è adatta al computer sul quale è installata. Questo messaggio di errore a volte non appare più disattivando il trasferimento asincrono nella modalità utente dello scanner. Se ciò non elimina il problema, contattare il costruttore del computer oppure della scheda SCSI.

Messaggio **Parametro non valido. Modificare il parametro.**

Parameter is not valid. Change the parameters.

Rimedio Un valore non valido è stato impostato nelle condizioni di scansione nella finestra di dialogo Impostazioni scanner. Cambiare l'impostazione con un valore valido.

Messaggio **Scanner reset detected. Try again.**

Rimedio Seguire il messaggio sullo schermo per accendere (ON) e spegnere (OFF) di nuovo.

Messaggio **No page was found. Set the paper and try again.**

Rimedio Il documento non viene caricato nello scanner. Caricare il documento e provare ad eseguire di nuovo la scansione.

Messaggio	Scanner is busy. Check if it is CountOnly mode.
Rimedio	Lo scanner potrebbe essere attualmente in Modalità conteggio (modalità per il conteggio del numero di pagine del documento digitalizzato) (P.56). Annullare la Modalità conteggio e provare di nuovo.
Messaggio	Scanner is busy. Wait for a while and try again.
Rimedio	Lo scanner è attualmente in fase di elaborazione di altri dati e non può digitalizzare nuovi documenti. Provare di nuovo più tardi.
Messaggio	Verify count error occured. Try again.
Rimedio	Il numero delle pagine del documento impostato nella scansione di verifica (P.54) non corrisponde all'attuale numero di pagine digitalizzate. Quando sul display contacopie viene visualizzato "U01", conteggiare di nuovo le pagine del documento. Quando viene visualizzato "U02", accertarsi che tutte le pagine del documento siano state digitalizzate.
Messaggio	Parameter is not valid. Change the parameters again.
Rimedio	L'impostazione delle condizioni di scansione non sono appropriate. Cambiare impostazione e provare ad eseguire di nuovo la scansione.
Messaggio	File access error occured. Check if another app. use this file or write pretected.
Rimedio	Il file di immagine che si è provato ad aprire è utilizzato da un'altra applicazione e non può essere aperto. Chiudere il file nell'altra applicazione. Oppure, il file di immagine che si è provato a registrare è protetto dalla scrittura. Questo file non può essere sovrascritto. Registrare il file con un altro nome.
Messaggio	File already exists, do you wish to over-write?
Rimedio	Il nome del file che si è cercato di registrare come file di immagine digitalizzata esiste già. Per sovrascrivere un file esistente, cliccare [Si]. Per annullare la sovrascrittura, cliccare [No] e registrare con un altro nome.
Messaggio	È avvenuta una doppia alimentazione del documento. Controllare il documento e l'immagine scansionata sul PC e eseguire nuovamente la scansione del documento.
Rimedio	Un documento è stato alimentato in modo inclinato. Rimuovere il documento ed eseguire nuovamente la scansione. Quando si rimuove il documento, tirare dolcemente facendo attenzione a non strapparlo.
Messaggio	Un documento è stato alimentato in modo inclinato. Rimuovere il documento ed eseguire nuovamente la scansione.
Rimedio	Due fogli sono stati alimentati contemporaneamente. Controllare il documento e l'immagine scansionata sul display e scansionare nuovamente il documento. Questo errore si verifica quando si impilano documenti di diversi formati e spessori carta. Scansionare documenti dello stesso formato e spessore o regolare su OFF l'individuazione dell'alimentazione di fogli doppi



Quando l'immagine digitalizzata non è normale

Se c'è un problema con l'immagine digitalizzata (l'immagine non è nitida oppure se appaiono delle linee nell'immagine), una tra le seguenti può esserne la causa. Controllare quanto segue e adottare l'appropriato rimedio.

- **Gli specchi di scansione e i rulli dello scanner sono sporchi.**

Se gli specchi e i rulli di scansione dello scanner sono sporchi e lo sporco appare sull'immagine digitalizzata.

→ Pulire gli specchi e i rulli. Per maggiori dettagli, vedere il Capitolo 5 "Pulizia quotidiana" (P.83) nelle Istruzioni per il DR-5020/5080C fornite a parte.

- **Le condizioni di scansione non sono adatte.**

Quando la messa a punto delle condizioni di scansione non è adatta, l'immagine digitalizzata non risulta nitida o appare scurita.

→ Controllare la luminosità, il contrasto e altre impostazioni dello scanner. Se l'immagine digitalizzata risulta nebbiosa oppure se il documento non è stato digitalizzato nella sua interezza, una delle probabili cause è che la luminosità è regolata troppo alta. Se l'immagine digitalizzata risulta scurita una delle probabili cause è che il contrasto è regolato troppo basso.

- **Le Scanning Utility 5000 non funzionano in modo corretto.**

Se il documento non viene digitalizzato in modo corretto anche se le condizioni di scansione sono regolate, una delle probabili cause è che le Scanning Utility 5000 non funzionano in modo corretto.

→ Installare di nuovo le Scanning Utility 5000. Vedere "Installazione delle Scanning Utility 5000" (P.7).

- **Altre cause**

Se i rimedi sopra illustrati non eliminano il problema, contattare il servizio assistenza clienti Canon.

INDICE ANALITICO

- A -

About	16, 17
Actual pixel (Print Format)	14, 30
Actual size (Print Format)	14, 30
AE	67
Apertura	12
Apertura dei file d'immagine	32
Assegnazione di una singola funzione	83
Attiva eliminaz. colore	82
Auto (Feeding Option)	34, 40, 66

- B -

Barcode	64
Barra degli strumenti	13, 16
Barra dei menu	13, 14
Barra di stato	13
Best Fit	15, 16
BMP	28

- C -

Cancel Scan	15
Caratteri piccoli	72
Caricamento e scansione del documento	23
CD-ROM di installazione	7
Chiusura	12, 15
Codabar	77
Code 25	78
Code 39	78
Code 128	75
Codici per pag.	75
Contrasto	22, 62
Controllo dell'immagine digitalizzata	27

- D -

Da destra a sinistra	72
Diagramma di scansione	20
Dimensioni	22, 62
Disinstallare la Scanning Utility 5000	11

- E -

EAN	77
Elimina Punti bianchi	67
Elimina punti neri	67
Elimina tacche	67
Evidenz. bordi	67

- F -

Finestra di dialogo Impostazioni in dettaglio	63
Fit to paper (Print Format)	14, 30
Fit to width	15, 16
Foglio di controllo	49, 66
Formati di salvataggio	28

- G -

Guida e rimedi in caso di problemi di funzionamento	85
--	----

- I -

Impostazione delle condizioni di scansione principali	22
Impostazione verso	66
Impostazioni dei tasti di funzione	83
Impostazioni del decodificatore di codici a barre	74
Impostazioni di Elimina colore	82
Impostazioni di stampa/timbro	69
Impostazioni fondamentali	61
Incremento	73
Inibisci sezione	82
Installazione della Scanning Utility 5000	7

- J -

JBIG	28
JPEG	28

- L -

Luminosità	22, 62
Luminosità (Impostazione verso)	66

- M -	
Marchio	64
Menu File	14
Menu Help	16
Menu Page	16
Menu View	15
Messaggio di errore	86
Modalità	22, 61
Modalità di alimentazione	33, 66
Modalità manuale	34, 43, 66
Modalità Semi-Auto	34, 37, 66

- N -	
Negativo	67
Next page	16, 17
No. tasto	83
Nuovo file automatico	64

- O -	
Offset orizzontale	71
Offset verticale	71
Open	14, 16
Opzioni alimentazione	66
Orientamento	72

- P -	
Pagine	71
Preparazione dello scanner e del computer	21
Prev. page	16, 17
Print	14, 16
Print Format	14, 30
Printer setting	14
Procedura di scansione	21

- Q -	
Quando l'immagine digitalizzata non è normale	88

- R -	
Rafforza linee sottili	67
Regolazione spessore carta	64, 83
Remota	23, 33, 66
Requisiti di sistema	6
Rileva dimens. pagina	63
Rilevazione doppia alimentazione	65, 83

Ripristina impostazioni	83
Risoluzione	22, 61
Rotate Left	15, 17
Rotate Right	15, 17

- S -	
Salva impostazioni	83
Salvataggio dell'immagine digitalizzata	28
Save Page As	14, 16, 29
Scan batch to file	14, 17, 23
Scan batch to printer	14
Scan page	14, 26
Scanner setting	14, 17, 22, 60
Scansione (Impostazione verso)	66
Scansione Duplex	46
Scansione margini	65
Scansione veloce	52, 63
Select Scanner	15
Stampa dell'immagine digitalizzata	30

- T -	
Testo	69
TIFF	28
Timbro	64
Tipo timbro	72
Trigger azzeram.	73
Trigger incremento	73

- U -	
UPC	76
Usa gamma utente	67

- V -	
Valore iniziale	73
Verifica scansione	54, 64
Vidimatore	64
View Gray	15

- Z -	
Zoom Down	15, 16
Zoom Up	15, 16

Canon

CANON ELECTRONICS INC.

1248, SHIMOKAGEMORI, CHICHIBU-SHI, SAITAMA 369-1892, JAPAN

CANON U.S.A. INC.

ONE CANON PLAZA, LAKE SUCCESS, N.Y.11042, U.S.A.

CANON CANADA INC.

6390 DIXIE ROAD, MISSISSAUGA, ONTARIO L5T 1P7, CANADA

CANON EUROPA N.V.

BOVENKERKERWEG 59-61, 1185XB AMSTELVEEN, THE NETHERLANDS

CANON LATIN AMERICA, INC.

6505, BLUE LAGOON DRIVE, SUITE 325 MIAMI, FLORIDA 33126 U.S.A.

CANON AUSTRALIA PTY. LTD.

1 THOMAS HOLT DRIVE, NORTH RYDE, SYDNEY. N.S.W, 2113. AUSTRALIA

CANON SINGAPORE PTE. LTD.

79 ANSON ROAD #09-01/06, SINGAPORE 079906

CANON HONG KONG COMPANY LTD.

10/F., LIPPO SUN PLAZA, 28 CANTON ROAD, TSIMSHATSUI, KOWLOON, HONG KONG.

